



## BOARD OF BUILDING STANDARDS

### EDUCATION COMMITTEE MEETING AGENDA **(REVISED 11/15/2023)**

DATE: NOVEMBER 16, 2023  
TIME: 10:00 AM  
LOCATION: BBS LIBRARY, 6606 TUSSING ROAD, REYNOLDSBURG, OHIO  
[Click here to join the meeting](#)

#### Call to Order

#### Consent Agenda

#### Course Applications

- [ER-1](#) Changes to the NEC 2023 (Ohio Certified Inspection Bureau)  
All certifications (10 hours in three sessions: 4 + 4 + 2)  
Staff Notes: There are no slides. Teaching is from the 2023 NEC itself, the *NEC Analysis of Changes*, and "NEC 101 online code criteria." Received after submission to ESIAC  
Committee Recommendation:
- [ER-2](#) Electrical Safety Inspector Training and Updated 2023 NEC (Sonnenstein Training Agency)  
All certifications (25 hours in five sessions)  
Staff Notes: There is no slide presentation, only the book. "Students are required to bring their own code book and follow along our screen presentation. It is a lecture presentation with plenty of open discussion and questions."  
ESIAC Recommendation: Recommend approval  
Committee Recommendation:
- [ER-3](#) Ohio Plumbing Code Updated 2024 (Sonnenstein Training Agency)  
All certifications (25 hours in five sessions)  
Staff Notes: The screen presentation will be the 2024 OPC, students will be required to bring the 2021 IPC. "It is a lecture presentation with plenty of open discussion and questions."  
Committee Recommendation:



[ER-4](#) Fire and Smoke Dampers (Underwriters Laboratories Solutions)  
All certifications (2 hours)  
Staff Notes: For ratification of administrative approval of course presented on October 18.  
Committee Recommendation:

[ER-5](#) Fire-Rated Construction (Underwriters Laboratories Solutions)  
All certifications (2 hours)  
Staff Notes: For ratification of administratively approved course presented on October 18.  
Committee Recommendation:

[ER-6](#) Protecting Penetrations in Fire-Rated Construction (Underwriters Laboratories Solutions)  
All certifications (2 hours)  
Staff Notes: For ratification of administratively approved course presented on October 18.  
Committee Recommendation:

**Old Business**

**New Business**

**Adjourn**

**EDUCATION COMMITTEE MEETING  
CONSENT AGENDA**

**Course Applications**

- [EC-1](#) 2023 NEC Updates (IAEI Northwest)  
All certifications (24 hours in twelve sessions)
  
- [EC-2](#) Analysis of 2023 NEC Code Changes Part 1 (Central Electric Inspection Bureau)  
All certifications (5 hours)
  
- [EC-3](#) Analysis of 2023 NEC Code Changes Part 2 (Central Electric Inspection Bureau)  
All certifications (5 hours)
  
- [EC-4](#) Building Officials Round Table (BOCONEO)  
All certifications (nine sessions, 1 hour each)
  
- [EC-5](#) Concrete Construction Inspections (SWOBOA)  
All certifications (3 hours)
  
- [EC-6](#) Significant Changes to the 2023 NEC Part A (Electrical Trades Center)  
All certifications (10 hours in three sessions: 3.5 + 3.5 + 3)
  
- [EC-7](#) Significant Changes to the 2023 NEC Part B (Electrical Trades Center)  
All certifications (10 hours in three sessions: 3.5 + 3.5 + 3)
  
- [EC-8](#) Transformers 2023 NEC Article 450 (Ohio Certificate Renewal)  
All certifications (4 hours)

**File Attachments for Item:**

ER-1 Changes to the NEC 2023 (Ohio Certified Inspection Bureau)

All certifications (10 hours in three sessions: 4 + 4 + 2)

Staff Notes: There are no slides. Teaching is from the 2023 NEC itself, the *NEC Analysis of Changes*, and "NEC 101 online code criteria." Received after submission to ESIAC

Committee Recommendation:

# APPLICATION

## FOR Continuing Education Course Approval

Continuing education programs approved for education credit by the Ohio Board of Building Standards may be used for compliance with certification requirements related to code enforcement, plan review, and inspection responsibilities. The credit is to be used to renew the certifications issued by the Ohio Board of Building Standards pursuant to section 3781.10(E) ORC.



### Board of Building Standards

6606 Tussing Road, P.O. Box 4009  
Reynoldsburg, Ohio 43068-9009  
(614) 644-2613 Fax: (614) 644-3147  
dic.bbs@com.state.oh.us  
www.com.state.oh.us/dic/dicbbs.htm

#### COURSE SUBMITTER:

Course Submitter: Mary Ward  
(Contact Name)

Organization: OCIB Training Agency  
(Organization/Company)

Address: 6566 South State Route 78  
(Include Room Number, Suite, etc.)

City: Glouster State: Ohio Zip: 45732

E-Mail: rlw8169@yahoo.com

Telephone: 740-591-5448 Fax: 740-767-4797

Course Sponsor: Agency

#### COURSE INFORMATION:

Course Title: Changes to the NEC 2023 Part 1, Part 2, Part 3

New Course Submittal:  Update Course:  Prior Approval Number: ~~BBS2023-100~~

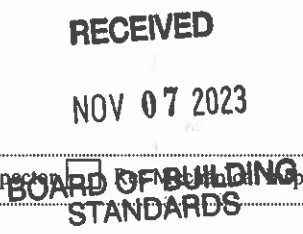
Purpose and Objective: To make inspectors aware of 2023 code changes in code cycle. Obtain hours for renewal of certification

Number of Instructional Contact Hours that can be obtained upon completion: 4, 4, and 2

If Multi-Session, Number of Instructional Contact Hours Per Session: Maximum 10 hours

#### Program Applicable for the Following Participants:

Building Official <input type="checkbox"/>	Master Plans Examiner <input type="checkbox"/>	Building Inspector <input type="checkbox"/>	Fire Protection Inspector <input type="checkbox"/>	Mechanical Inspector <input type="checkbox"/>
	Building Plans Exam. <input type="checkbox"/>			Plumbing Inspector <input type="checkbox"/>
	Plumbing Plans Exam. <input type="checkbox"/>			Non-Res IU Inspector <input type="checkbox"/>
	Electrical Plans Exam. <input type="checkbox"/>			
	Mechanical Plans Exam. <input type="checkbox"/>			
	Fire Protect. Plans Exam. <input type="checkbox"/>			



Res Building Official  Res Plans Examiner  Res Building Inspector  Res IU Inspector

Electrical Safety Inspectors

Location of ESI Course: 23 North Main Street, Kingston, Ohio 45644 Date(s) of ESI Course(s): February 03, 2024

SUBMITTAL CHECKLIST: Make Sure all of the Following Information is Submitted:		Check Off
Course Submitter:	Name of contact person and their certification numbers, organization, address, fax, phone	x
	Organization sponsoring or requesting the program (if any)	x
Course Title:	Name of course (related to content)	x
Purpose/Objective:	Describe purpose and how course will improve competency of certification(s) listed	x
Contact Hours:	Indicate instructional time and credit requested in hours (e.g.: 0.5 hr, 1 hr, 3.5 hrs)	x
Participants:	Check off each certification for which credit is requested (for which course relates to certification)	x
Content of Program:	Include collated agenda, time schedule, course outline; list specific sections of code, references, and topics covered	x
Course Materials:	Collated workbooks, handouts, hard copy or electronic versions of program is available	x
Instructor(s) Info.:	Resume of professional/educational qualifications & teaching/training experience/BBS certifications	x
Test Materials:		
Completed Application:		x

**NOTE: The Board does NOT grant retroactive approval for courses presented prior to approval date.**

# **CONTINUING EDUCATION CLASSES**

**Submittals for OCIB Agency #48144**

**Agency coordinator: Mary Ward**

**Intended for 2 four hour courses and 1 two hour course for approval on February 3<sup>rd</sup>, 2024, March 2<sup>nd</sup>, 2024, and September 21<sup>st</sup>, 2024**

**Reference material used for classes is NEC 2023 code book, NEC Analysis for Changes, and NEC 101 online code criteria**

**Documentation is attached**

# **Qualifications Pertaining to Continuing Education Courses**

## **Instructor: Tim Shoemaker**

ESI# 2673

OCILB Training Agency #439 (20 years)

NASEA QEI Certified Elevator Inspector #C2633

Associate Degree in Electro-Mechanical Technology from Shawnee State University.

Electrical Contactor in the Ross county are for 11 years prior to employment with the State of Ohio.

Electrical Inspector for the State of Ohio, for 2 years prior to becoming and Elevator Inspector (15 years).

# **Qualifications Pertaining to Continuing Education Courses**

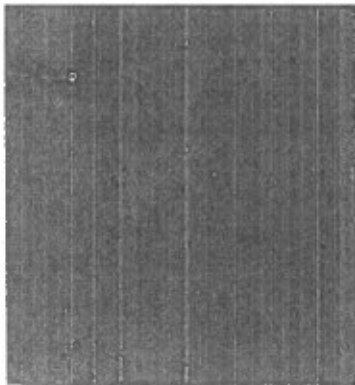
## **Instructor: Randy Ward**

ESI# 2723

Electrical Inspector for the State of Ohio (11 years).

Elevator Inspector – QEI Certified (5 years).

OCILB Investigator – Laws and Rules (8 years).



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

About This Textbook.....xi

Additional Products to Help You Learn.....xv

How to Use the *National Electrical Code*.....1

Global Changes in the 2023 *National Electrical Code*.....7

Global Changes.....7

Article 90—Introduction to the *National Electrical Code*.....9

90.1 Scope.....9

90.2 Use and Application.....10

90.4 Enforcement.....14

90.5 Mandatory Rules, Permissive Rules, and Explanatory Material,  
(C) Explanatory Material.....16

## CHAPTER 1—GENERAL RULES.....19

Article 100—Definitions.....21

Article 100 Global Summary.....21

Article 110—General Requirements for Electrical  
Installations.....33

110.1 Use and Product Listing (Certification) of Equipment.....33

110.2 Wiring Methods.....34

110.3 Mechanical Execution of Work.....35

110.4 Arc-Flash Hazard Warning.....36

110.5 Servicing and Maintenance of Equipment.....37

110.6 Reconditioned Equipment.....37

110.7 Identification of Disconnecting Means.....38

110.8 Spaces About Electrical Equipment.....38

## CHAPTER 2—WIRING AND PROTECTION.....49

Article 200—Use and Identification of Grounded  
Conductors.....51

200.6 Means of Identifying Grounded Conductors.....51

Article 210—Branch Circuits.....53

210.1 Scope.....53

210.4 Multiwire Branch Circuits.....54

210.5 Identification for Branch Circuits.....55

210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Personnel.....57

210.11 Branch Circuits Required.....66

210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection.....68

210.17 Guest Rooms and Guest Suites.....71

210.19 Conductors—Minimum Ampacity and Size.....71

210.23 Multiple-Outlet Branch Circuits.....75

210.52 Dwelling Unit Receptacle Outlets.....75

210.62 Show Windows.....80

210.65 Meeting Rooms.....80

210.70 Lighting Outlets Required.....81

Article 215—Feeders.....87

215.2 Conductor Sizing.....87

215.15 Barriers.....88

215.18 Surge Protection.....89

Article 220—Branch-Circuit, Feeder, and Service Load  
Calculations.....91

220.1 Scope.....91

220.5 Calculations.....92

220.53 Appliance Load—Dwelling Unit(s).....93

220.57 Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE) Load.....94

220.60 Noncoincident Loads.....95

220.70 Energy Management Systems (EMSs).....96

220.87 Determining Existing Loads.....96

220.120 Receptacle Loads.....96



Article 225—Outside Branch Circuits and Feeders.....	99	<b>CHAPTER 3—WIRING METHODS AND MATERIALS</b> .....	141
225.1 Scope.....	99	<b>Article 300—General Requirements for Wiring Methods and Materials</b> .....	145
225.27 Raceway Seal.....	100	300.3 Conductors.....	145
225.41 Emergency Disconnects.....	100	300.4 Protection Against Physical Damage.....	148
225.42 Surge Protection.....	101	300.5 Underground Installations.....	149
<b>Article 230—Services</b> .....	103	300.6 Protection Against Corrosion.....	150
230.1 Scope.....	103	300.12 Mechanical Continuity—Raceways and Cables.....	151
230.7 Service Conductors Separate from Other Conductors.....	104	300.14 Length of Free Conductors at Outlets, Junctions, and Switch Points.....	152
230.8 Raceway Seal.....	104	300.15 Boxes or Fittings.....	153
230.24 Clearances.....	105	300.25 Exit Stair Towers.....	154
230.43 Wiring Methods for 1000V, Nominal, or Less.....	106	<b>Article 310—Conductors for General Wiring</b> .....	157
230.62 Service Equipment—Enclosed or Guarded.....	107	310.10 Uses Permitted.....	157
230.67 Surge Protection.....	107	<b>Article 312—Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures</b> .....	161
230.71 Maximum Number of Disconnects.....	109	312.5 Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures.....	161
230.85 Emergency Disconnects.....	110	312.8 Overcurrent Device Enclosures.....	162
<b>Article 240—Overcurrent Protection</b> .....	113	312.10 Screws or Other Fasteners.....	163
240.4 Protection of Conductors.....	113	<b>Article 314—Boxes, Conduit Bodies, and Handhole Enclosures</b> .....	165
240.6 Standard Ampere Ratings.....	116	314.5 Screws or Other Fasteners.....	165
240.24 Location of Overcurrent Protective Devices.....	117	314.17 Conductors and Cables Entering Boxes, Conduit Bodies, or Fittings.....	166
<b>Article 242—Overvoltage Protection</b> .....	119	314.23 Supports.....	166
242.9 Indicating.....	120	314.25 Covers and Canopies.....	167
<b>Article 250—Grounding and Bonding</b> .....	121	314.29 Boxes, Conduit Bodies, and Handhole Enclosures to be Accessible.....	168
250.36 Impedance Grounded Systems—480V to 1000V.....	121	<b>Article 320—Armored Cable (Type AC)</b> .....	171
250.53 Grounding Electrode Installation Requirements.....	122	320.23 In Accessible Attics.....	171
250.64 Grounding Electrode Conductor Installation.....	124	320.30 Securing and Supporting.....	171
250.66 Sizing Grounding Electrode Conductors.....	127	<b>Article 330—Metal-Clad Cable (Type MC)</b> .....	175
250.68 Grounding Electrode Conductor and Bonding Jumper Connection to Grounding Electrodes.....	128	330.10 Uses Permitted.....	175
250.70 Grounding Electrode Conductor Termination Fittings.....	129	330.30 Securing and Supporting.....	176
250.92 Bonding Metal Parts Containing Service Conductors.....	131		
250.94 Bonding for Communications Systems.....	133		
250.102 Neutral Conductor, Main Bonding Jumper, System Bonding Jumper, Supply-Side Bonding Jumper, Load-Side Bonding Jumper.....	135		
250.109 Metal Enclosures.....	136		
250.140 Frames of Ranges, Ovens, and Clothes Dryers.....	137		
250.148 Continuity of Equipment Grounding Conductors and Attachment in Boxes.....	138		

**Article 334—Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable: Types NM and NMC**..... 179

334.10 Uses Permitted ..... 179

334.15 Exposed Work ..... 181

334.19 Cable Entries ..... 182

334.40 Boxes and Fittings ..... 183

**Article 352—Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride Conduit (PVC)**..... 185

352.10 Uses Permitted ..... 185

352.44 Expansion Fittings ..... 187

**Article 356—Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (LFNC)**..... 189

356.10 Uses Permitted ..... 189

**Article 358—Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)**..... 191

358.10 Uses Permitted ..... 191

**Article 362—Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT)**..... 193

362.10 Uses Permitted ..... 193

**Article 376—Metal Wireways**..... 197

376.50 Equipment Grounding Conductor ..... 197

**CHAPTER 4—EQUIPMENT FOR GENERAL USE**..... 199

**Article 404—Switches**..... 201

404.1 Scope ..... 201

404.14 Rating and Use of Switches ..... 201

**Article 406—Receptacles, Attachment Plugs, and Flanged Inlets**..... 203

406.3 Receptacle Rating and Type ..... 203

406.4 General Installation Requirements ..... 204

406.6 Receptacle Faceplates ..... 207

406.9 Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations ..... 208

406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles ..... 211

**Article 408—Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards**..... 215

408.4 Circuit Directory and Descriptions of Circuit Source ..... 215

408.9 Replacement Panelboards ..... 216

408.43 Panelboard Orientation ..... 217

**Article 410—Luminaires, Lampholders, and Lamps**..... 219

410.10 Luminaires in Specific Locations ..... 219

410.42 Luminaire(s) with Exposed Conductive Surfaces ..... 221

410.71 Disconnecting Means for Fluorescent or LED Luminaires that Utilize Double-Ended Lamps ..... 221

410.184 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Protection and Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) Protection ..... 223

**Article 422—Appliances**..... 225

422.5 GFCI Protection ..... 225

422.13 Storage-Type Water Heaters ..... 227

422.16 Flexible Cords ..... 228

422.18 Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans ..... 230

422.33 Disconnection of Cord-and-Plug-Connected or Attachment Fitting-Connected Appliances ..... 231

**Article 424—Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment**..... 233

424.4 Branch Circuits ..... 233

**Article 430—Motors**..... 235

430.1 Scope ..... 235

430.6 Conductor Ampacity and Motor Rating Determination ..... 236

430.31 General ..... 237

430.83 Ratings ..... 238

**Article 440—Air-Conditioning and Refrigerating Equipment**..... 241

440.8 Single Machine and Location ..... 241

440.11 General ..... 241

440.14 Location ..... 242

440.22 Application and Selection ..... 243

**Article 445—Generators**..... 245

445.11 Marking ..... 245

445.19 Emergency Shutdown of Prime Mover ..... 245

<b>Article 450—Transformers and Transformer Vaults (Including Secondary Ties)</b> .....	247	<b>Article 517—Health Care Facilities</b> .....	281
450.1 Scope.....	247	517.1 Scope.....	282
450.10 Grounding and Bonding.....	248	517.10 Applicability.....	282
		517.13 Equipment Grounding Conductor for Receptacles and Fixed Electrical Equipment in Patient Care Spaces.....	283
<b>Article 480—Stationary Standby Batteries</b> .....	249		
Article 480—Article Analysis.....	249	<b>Article 518—Assembly Occupancies</b> .....	287
480.4 Battery and Cell Terminations.....	249	518.2 General Classification.....	287
480.10 Battery Locations.....	250		
		<b>Article 547—Agricultural Buildings</b> .....	289
<b>CHAPTER 5—SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES</b> .....	251	547.20 Wiring Methods.....	290
<b>Article 500—Hazardous (Classified) Locations, Classes I, II, and III, Divisions 1 and 2</b> .....	253	547.25 Flexible Connections.....	290
500.1 Scope.....	254	547.26 Physical Protection.....	290
500.4 Documentation.....	254	547.44 Equipotential Planes and Bonding of Equipotential Planes.....	291
500.5 Classifications of Locations.....	255		
		<b>Article 555—Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities</b> .....	293
<b>Article 501—Class I Locations</b> .....	257	555.4 Location of Service Equipment.....	293
501.1 Scope.....	257	555.15 Replacement of Equipment.....	293
501.10 Wiring Methods.....	257	555.30 Electrical Equipment and Connections.....	294
501.15 Sealing and Drainage.....	260	555.34 Wiring Methods and Installation.....	295
501.30 Grounding and Bonding.....	265	555.35 Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment (GFPE) and Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter.....	296
501.135 Utilization Equipment.....	266	555.36 Shore Power Receptacle Disconnecting Means.....	298
501.145 Receptacles and Attachment Plugs, Class I, Division 1 and Division 2.....	267	555.37 Equipment Grounding Conductor.....	299
		555.38 Luminaires.....	300
<b>Article 502—Class II Locations</b> .....	269		
502.10 Wiring Methods.....	269	<b>CHAPTER 6—SPECIAL EQUIPMENT</b> .....	301
502.15 Sealing.....	271	<b>Article 600—Electric Signs and Outline Lighting</b> .....	303
502.30 Grounding and Bonding.....	272	600.5 Branch Circuits.....	303
		600.6 Disconnects.....	304
<b>Article 511—Commercial Garages, Repair and Storage</b> .....	275		
511.3 Area Classification.....	275	<b>Article 620—Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, Moving Walks, Platform Lifts, and Stairway Chairlifts</b> .....	307
511.7 Wiring and Equipment Installed Above Hazardous (Classified) Locations.....	276	620.6 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Personnel.....	307
511.8 Underground Wiring Hazardous (Classified) Locations.....	277	620.22 Branch Circuits for Car Lighting, Receptacle(s), Ventilation, Heating, and Air-Conditioning.....	308
<b>Article 514—Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities</b> .....	279		
514.7 Wiring and Equipment Above Hazardous (Classified) Locations.....	279		

Article 625—Electric Vehicle Power Transfer System.....	311	Article 695—Fire Pumps.....	353
625.6 Listed.....	311	695.1 Scope.....	353
625.40 Electric Vehicle Branch Circuit.....	312	695.6 Power Wiring.....	354
625.43 Disconnecting Means.....	312	695.7 Fire Pump Controller Voltage Drop.....	354
625.49 Island Mode.....	312		
		<b>CHAPTER 7—SPECIAL CONDITIONS.....</b>	<b>357</b>
Article 630—Electric Welders.....	315	Article 700—Emergency Systems.....	359
630.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Personnel.....	315	700.1 Scope.....	359
		700.3 Tests and Maintenance.....	360
Article 680—Swimming Pools, Fountains, and Similar Installations.....	317	700.4 Capacity and Rating.....	361
680.5 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) and Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) Protection.....	317	700.6 Signals.....	361
680.7 Grounding and Bonding.....	318	700.8 Surge Protection.....	361
680.10 Electric Water Heaters and Heat Pumps.....	318	700.11 Wiring, Class-2-Powered Emergency Lighting Systems.....	362
680.14 Corrosive Environment.....	319	700.12 General Requirements.....	362
680.21 Pool Pump Motors.....	320	700.27 Class 2 Powered Emergency Lighting Systems.....	365
680.22 Receptacles, Luminaires, and Switches.....	321		
680.26 Equipotential Bonding.....	324	Article 701—Legally Required Standby Systems.....	367
680.32 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) and Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) Protection.....	328	701.3 Commissioning and Maintenance.....	367
680.43 Indoor Installations.....	329	701.4 Capacity and Rating.....	368
680.44 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) and Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) Protection.....	330		
680.50 General.....	331	Article 702—Optional Standby Systems.....	369
680.54 Connection to an Equipment Grounding Conductor.....	331	702.4 Capacity and Rating.....	369
680.58 GFCI or SPGFCI Protection of Receptacles.....	332	702.5 Interconnection or Transfer Equipment.....	370
680.59 Ground-Fault Protection for Permanently Installed Nonsubmersible Pumps.....	332	702.12 Portable Outdoor Generators.....	371
680.74 Bonding.....	333		
		Article 705—Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources.....	373
Article 690—Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems.....	335	705.6 Equipment Approval.....	373
690.4 General Requirements.....	335	705.11 Source Connections to a Service.....	373
690.7 Maximum PV System Direct-Current Circuit Voltage.....	336	705.13 Energy Management Systems (EMS).....	375
690.12 Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings.....	338	705.28 Circuit Sizing and Current.....	375
690.15 PV Equipment Disconnect or Isolating Device.....	340	705.30 Overcurrent Protection.....	377
690.31 Wiring Methods.....	342	705.82 Single 120-Volt Supply.....	378
690.43 Equipment Grounding and Bonding.....	348		
690.56 Identification of Power Sources.....	349	Article 706—Energy Storage Systems.....	379
		706.7 Commissioning and Maintenance.....	380
Article 691—Large-Scale Photovoltaic (PV) Electric Supply Systems.....	351	706.15 Disconnecting Means.....	380
691.4 Special Requirements for Large-Scale PV Electric Supply Stations.....	351	706.31 Overcurrent Protection.....	381
		Article 710—Stand-Alone Systems.....	383
		710.1 Scope.....	383
		710.6 Equipment Approval.....	384

**Article 722—Cables for Power-Limited Circuits and Fault-Managed Power Circuits** .....387  
 Article 722—Article Analysis .....387  
 722.1 Scope .....387  
 722.3 Other Articles .....386  
 722.24 Mechanical Execution of Work.....388  
 722.179 Listing and Marking of Cables.....390

**Article 724—Class 1 Power-Limited Circuits and Class 1 Power-Limited Remote-Control and Signaling Circuits** .....393  
 Article 724—Article Analysis .....393  
 724.40 Class 1 Circuits .....393

**Article 725—Class 2 and Class 3 Power-Limited Circuits** .....395  
 Article 725—Article Analysis .....395

**Article 726—Class 4 Fault-Managed Power Systems** ...397  
 Article 726—Article Analysis .....397

**Article 750—Energy Management Systems** .....399  
 750.6 Listing .....399  
 750.30 Load Management .....399

**Article 760—Fire Alarm Systems**.....401  
 760.33 Supply-Side Overvoltage Protection.....401

**CHAPTER 8—COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS** .....403

**Article 800—General Requirements for Communications Systems** .....405  
 800.3 Other Articles .....405  
 800.24 Mechanical Execution of Work.....406  
 800.133 Installation of Coaxial Cables and Equipment .....407  
 800.170 Plenum Cable Ties .....408

**Article 810—Antenna Systems** .....409  
 Article 810—Article Analysis .....409  
 810.3 Other Articles .....409

**2023 NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE CHANGES REVIEW QUIZ** .....411

**About the Author** .....423

**About the NFPA Review Team** .....424

**About the Illustrator** .....425

**About the Mike Holt Team** .....426

**File Attachments for Item:**

ER-2 Electrical Safety Inspector Training and Updated 2023 NEC (Sonnenstein Training Agency)

All certifications (25 hours in five sessions)

Staff Notes: There is no slide presentation, only the book. "Students are required to bring their own code book and follow along our screen presentation. It is a lecture presentation with plenty of open discussion and questions."

ESIAC Recommendation: Recommend approval

Committee Recommendation:



# APPLICATION

FOR

## Continuing Education Course Approval

Continuing education programs approved for education credit by the Ohio Board of Building Standards may be used for compliance with certification requirements related to code enforcement, plan review, and inspection responsibilities. The credit is to be used to renew the certifications issued by the Ohio Board of Building Standards pursuant to section 3781.10(E) ORC.



## Board of Building Standards

6606 Tussing Road, P.O. Box 4009

Reynoldsburg, Ohio 43068-9009

(614) 644-2613 Fax: (614) 644-3147

dic\_bbs@com.state.oh.us

www.com.state.oh.us/dic/dicbbs.htm

### COURSE SUBMITTER:

Course Submitter: Howard Sonenstein

(Contact Name)

Organization: Howard Sonenstein Train Agency #253

(Organization/Company)

Address: 1604 SOM Center Rd.

(Include Room Number, Suite, etc.)

City: Mayfield Hts.

State: OH

Zip: 44124

E-Mail: HowardSonenstein@aol.com

Telephone: 4403430008

Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

Course Sponsor: Howard Sonenstein Train Agency #253

### COURSE INFORMATION:

Course Title: Electrical Safty Inspector Training & Updated 2023 NEC

New Course Submittal:

Update Course:

Prior Approval Number: \_\_\_\_\_

BBS 2023 002-008t to BBS-2023011

Purpose and Objective: To review current electrical code updates

This class will identify and teach in the electrical code book with the intent of learning electrical code requirements and how to apply

them in chapters 1 through 8 Students are required to bring their code book And follow along our screened presentation It is a lecture presentation with plenty of open discussion and questions

Number of Instructional Contact Hours that can be obtained upon completion: 25

If Multi-Session, Number of Instructional Contact Hours Per Session: 5

### Program Applicable for the Following Participants:

Building Official  Master Plans Examiner  Building Inspector  Fire Protection Inspector  Mechanical Inspector   
 Plumbing Plans Exam.  Plumbing Inspector   
 Electrical Plans Exam.  Non-Res IU Inspector   
 Mechanical Plans Exam.

Res Building Official  Res Plans Examiner  Res Building Inspector  Res Mechanical Inspector  Res IU Inspector

Electrical Safety Inspectors

Location of ESI Course: See Attached

Date(s) of ESI Course(s): See Attached

### SUBMITTAL CHECKLIST: Make Sure all of the Following Information is Submitted

	Check Off
Course Submitter:	Name of contact person and their certification numbers, organization, address, fax, phone
Course Sponsor:	Organization sponsoring or requesting the program (if any)
Course Title:	Name of course (related to content)
Purpose/Objective:	Describe purpose and how course will improve competency of certification(s) listed
Contact Hours:	Indicate instructional time and credit requested in hours (e.g.: 0.5 hr, 1 hr, 3.5 hrs)
Participants:	Check off each certification for which credit is requested (for which course relates to certification)
Content of Program:	Include collated agenda, time schedule, course outline; list specific sections of code, references, and topics covered
Course Materials:	Collated workbooks, handouts, hard copy or electronic versions of program is available
Instructor(s) Info.:	Resume of professional/educational qualifications & teaching/training experience/BBS certifications
Test Materials:	Copy of quizzes or tests to be given
Completed Application:	

**NOTE: The Board does NOT grant retroactive approval for courses presented prior to approval date.**

25  
**25 Hour Electrical Code Class**  
~~2020 NEC Analysis of Changes~~

- Course 1 - Day 1      Article 100 Definitions
  - \* Requirement for electrical installations
  - \* Spaces about electric equipment
  
- Course 2 - Day 2      Wiring and Protection
  
- Chapter 2
  - \*Use and identification of grounded conductors
  - \*Branch circuits
  - \*GFCI protection for personnel
  - \*GFCI protection
  - \*Feeders
  
- Course 3 - Day 3
  - \*General requirement for wiring methods and materials.
  - \*Conductors for general wiring.
  - \*Cables permitted uses.
  
- Course 4 - Day 4      Article 700
  - \*Emergency systems
  - \*Energy storage systems
  - \*Critical operation power systems
  - \*Fire alarm
  
- Course 5 - Day 5      Article 800
  - \*General requirement for communication systems
  - \*Overhead communication wires and cables
  - \*Premises powered broadband communication systems



# Mark J. Patterson

9620 Omega Court • Mentor, OH 44060  
440-520-8605 • mpatterson@live.com

## 31 YEARS EXPERIENCE IN THE CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTION FIELDS.

Providing a well rounded view of building codes and construction methods, and possessing excellent communication, leadership and management skills, I am able to create an environment that delivers results while fostering trust, integrity, and respect.

## CERTIFICATIONS

Building Official (#1133 Ohio) ♦ Residential Building Official (#1133 Ohio) ♦ Building Inspector (#1133 Ohio) ♦ Electrical Safety Inspector (#1133 Ohio) ♦ Certified Flood Plain Manager ASFPM ♦ Journeyman Electrician (Ohio) ♦ Fire Alarm License (#54-43-0158 Ohio)

## PROFESSIONAL HISTORY

### LAKE COUNTY BUILDING DEPARTMENT, Painesville, OH (2000-2010)

#### **Supervising Inspector (2006-2010)**

Scheduled and conducted building inspections on residential, commercial, and industrial buildings reporting activities to the Chief Building Official.

Essential duties included:

- Interpreting and enforcing the State of Ohio Building Code and other codes pertinent to the department.
- Supervising the inspection staff in review of residential construction documents and specifications for compliance with building codes, state laws, and county resolutions.
- Confering with contractors, architects, engineers, owners and others regarding compliance and interpretation of building, zoning, fire, American with Disabilities Act, flood plain ordinances and other codes and ordinances being enforced by the County.
- Providing assistance to the general public on requirements for making application for construction or alteration permits.
- Assisting the Chief Building Official with periodic plan review for compliance with the OBC, NEC, NFPA 72, and NFPA13 and other codes and resolutions being enforced by the County.
- Assisting the Chief Building Official in budget presentations for the Lake County Commissioners.
- Supervising the archiving of documents per document retention regulations.

#### **Certified Building/ Electrical Inspector (2003-Present)**

- Interpreted and enforced the State of Ohio Building Code and other codes pertinent to the department.
- Reviewed residential construction documents and specifications for compliance with building codes, state laws, and county resolutions.
- Conducted commercial and residential building and electrical inspections.

# **Mark J. Patterson**

## **Certified Electrical Inspector (2003-Present)**

- Interpreted and enforced the State of Ohio Building Code and other codes pertinent to the department.
- Reviewed residential construction documents and specifications for compliance with building codes, state laws, and county resolutions.
- Conducted residential building and commercial electrical inspections.

## **LOCAL 673 INTERNATIONAL BROTHERHOOD OF ELECTRICAL WORKERS (1980-2000)**

Electrical construction union employing journeyman wiremen serving Lake, Geauga, and Ashtabula counties in Northeast Ohio.

## **Journeyman Wireman (1980-2011)**

Worked as a general foreman, foreman, and journeyman wireman and test technician for various contractors on a variety of commercial, industrial and residential jobs, including Perry Nuclear Power Plant, Lake Hospital Systems, and City of Painesville and Lake County government offices.

## **UNITED STATES AIR FORCE**

Crew Chief on F-4 Phantom aircraft. (1977-1980)

## **Lakeland Community College**

Instructor Electrical re-certification course (2009 - Present)

## **EDUCATION**

### **Journeyman Wireman**

Four Year Apprenticeship approved by the State of Ohio

### **Attended Lakeland Community College**

### **Graduate, Lake Catholic High School**

## **PROFESSIONAL AFFILIATIONS**

Building Officials Conference of Northeast Ohio (BOCONEO)

Association of State Flood Plain Managers (ASFPM)

International Code Council (ICC)

International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers (IBEW)

Lake County Citizen Corps

**File Attachments for Item:**

ER-3 Ohio Plumbing Code Updated 2024 (Sonnenstein Training Agency)

All certifications (25 hours in five sessions)

Staff Notes: The screen presentation will be the 2024 OPC, students will be required to bring the 2021 IPC. "It is a lecture presentation with plenty of open discussion and questions."

Committee Recommendation:

# APPLICATION

FOR

## Continuing Education Course Approval

Continuing education programs approved for education credit by the Ohio Board of Building Standards may be used for compliance with certification requirements related to code enforcement, plan review, and inspection responsibilities. The credit is to be used to renew the certifications issued by the Ohio Board of Building Standards pursuant to section 3781.10(E) ORC.



### Board of Building Standards

6606 Tussing Road, P.O. Box 4009

Reynoldsburg, Ohio 43068-9009

(614) 644-2613 Fax: (614) 644-3147

the bbs# com state oh us

www.com.state.oh.us/dic/dicbbs.htm

#### COURSE SUBMITTER

Course Submitter: Howard Sonenstein

Organization: Howard Sonenstein Training Agency #253 (Contact Name)

Address: 1604 SOM Center Rd (Organization Company)

City: Mayfield Hts. (Include Room Number, Suite, etc.) State: OH Zip: 44124

E-Mail: HowardSonenstein@aol.com

Telephone: 4403430008 Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

Course Sponsor: Howard Sonenstein Training Agency #253

#### COURSE INFORMATION

Course Title: Plumbing Code & Code Updates

New Course Submittal:  Update Course:  Prior Approval Number: BBS2023-01-4 to BBS2023-007

Purpose and Objective: To provide continuing updates on the plumbing codes. This course will continue to identify changes in the plumbing code book 2024. Discourse will teach plumbing code requirements and plumbing code changes and how to Apply them.

Number of Instructional Contact Hours that can be obtained upon completion: 25

If Multi-Session, Number of Instructional Contact Hours Per Session: 5

#### Program Applicable for the Following Participants:

Building Official  Master Plans Examiner  Building Inspector  Fire Protection Inspector  Mechanical Inspector   
 Plumbing Plans Exam.  Plumbing Inspector   
 Electrical Plans Exam.  Non-Res IU Inspector   
 Mechanical Plans Exam.

Res Building Official  Res Plans Examiner  Res Building Inspector  Res Mechanical Inspector  Res IU Inspector

Electrical Safety Inspectors

Location of ESI Course: See Attached Sheets

Date(s) of ESI Course(s): See Attached Sheets 2024

#### SUBMITTAL CHECKLIST: Make Sure all of the Following Information is Submitted

Check Off

Course Submitter:	Name of contact person and their certification numbers, organization, address, fax, phone	
Course Sponsor:	Organization sponsoring or requesting the program (if any)	
Course Title:	Name of course (related to content)	
Purpose/Objective:	Describe purpose and how course will improve competency of certification(s) listed	
Contact Hours:	Indicate instructional time and credit requested in hours (e.g.: 0.5 hr, 1 hr, 3.5 hrs)	
Participants:	Check off each certification for which credit is requested (for which course relates to certification)	
Content of Program:	Include collated agenda, time schedule, course outline; list specific sections of code, references, and topics covered	
Course Materials:	Collated workbooks, handouts, hard copy or electronic versions of program is available	
Instructor(s) Info.:	Resume of professional/educational qualifications & teaching/training experience/BBS certifications	
Test Materials:	Copy of quizzes or tests to be given	
Completed Application:		

**NOTE: The Board does NOT grant retroactive approval for courses presented prior to approval date.**

25 Hour Plumbing Code Class

Course 1 - Day 1

Chapter 1: 4101:3-1-01 Scope and Administration

Chapter 2: 4101:3-2-01 Definitions

Chapter 3: 4101:3-3-01 General Regulations

Course 2 - Day 2

Chapter 4: 4101:3-4-01 Fixtures, faucet, and fixture fittings

Chapter 5: 4101:3-5-01 Water heaters

Course 3 - Day 3

Chapter 6: 4101:3-6-01 Water supply and distribution

Chapter 7: 4101:3-7-01 Sanitary drainage

Chapter 8: 4101:3-8-01 Indirect/special waste

Course 4 - Day 4

Chapter 9: 4101:3-9-01 Vents

Chapter 10: 4101:3-10-01 Traps, interceptors and separators

Course 5 - Day 5

Chapter 11: 4101:3-11-01 Storm drainage

Chapter 12: 4101:3-12-01 Special piping

Chapter 13: 4101:3-13-01 Non-potable water systems

Chapter 14: 4101:3-14-01 Subsurface gray water soil absorption systems

Chapter 15: 4101:3-15-01 Reference standard

## **BIOGRAPHIES FOR BBS PLUMBING INSTRUCTORS**

### **BIOGRAPHY FOR INSTRUCTOR DANIEL NICHOLSON**

- 1. PLUMBING CONTRACTOR 35 YEARS**
- 2. OWNER DAN NICHOLSON PLUMBING -35 YEARS**
- 3. 38 YEARS PRACTICAL PLUMBING EXPERIENCE**
- 4. STATE OF OHIO CONTRACTOR #13842**
- 5. STATE OF OHIO BACKFLOW # 1967**
- 6. STATE OF OHIO PLUMBING INSPECTOR #K-00846**
- 7. PLUMBING INSPECTOR LAKE COUNTY GENERAL HEALTH DISTRICT**
- 8. INSTRUCTED PLUMBING CLASSES LAKE COUNTY GENERAL HEALTH DISTRICT**
- 9. INSTRUCTED PLUMBING CLASSES LAKELAND COMMUNITY COLLEGE (VOLUNTEER)**
- 10. INSTRUCTED PLUMBING CLASSES AUBURN CAREER CENTER (VOLUNTEER)**

### **Biography for Instructor Nino Monaco**

**Nino Monaco is the Building Commissioner for Brooklyn Heights and was the former Commissioner of Pepper Pike, Ohio. He was a building inspector in Mayfield Heights for nearly 20 years. Nino is a certified electrical safety inspector, as well as a certified plumbing inspector. Nino has a Class I and Class III state certification. Mr. Monaco is registered with the state of Ohio as an inspector in plumbing, electrical, HVAC and resides in Mayfield Heights, Ohio. Mr. Monaco has also assisted in instructing our OCILB Plumbing Code Course over the past eighteen plus years.**

**File Attachments for Item:**

ER-4 Fire and Smoke Dampers (Underwriters Laboratories Solutions)

All certifications (2 hours)

Staff Notes: For ratification of administrative approval of course presented on October 18.

Committee Recommendation:

## 2-HR Program: **Fire and Smoke Dampers**

*This class will provide students with an overview of the 2018 IBC Chapter 7 requirements for duct and air transfer openings and fire and smoke dampers as related to overall fire-resistance construction for passive fire protection. This will include requirements for damper testing, ratings and actuation. The class will provide students with insight on how the different types of dampers are tested to achieve fire damper and/or smoke damper ratings and the proper installation and maintenance of dampers for code compliance. Students will receive useful tips for conducting plan review and field inspections of dampers to ensure code compliance with IBC Chapter 7 requirements.*

### Bio

Jonathan Roberts:

- Senior Regulatory Engineer in UL Solutions' Codes and Regulatory Services department, joining UL Solutions in June 2013.
- Prior to coming to UL, Jon worked for the Oklahoma State Fire Marshal as the Building Division Chief and Fire Protection Engineer.
- Served on the ICC Fire Service Membership Council and Large Jurisdiction Committee, the International Building Code Fire Safety committee, and Exam Development Committee; Serves on NFPA 101/5000 and NFPA 220/221.
- Former adjunct college instructor at Oklahoma State University instructing in the areas of fire protection systems building structures and codes and regulations.
- Extensive expertise in building construction and fire prevention codes, code and standard development and code administration.
- *Distinguished Member of Technical Staff* - William Henry Merrill Society.

### Course Outline:

- A brief IBC Fire-resistance-rated construction
- Ducts and air transfer openings
- Plan review and inspection
- Navigating UL Solutions resources
- Summary and closing





# Dampers for fire and smoke protection

Jon Roberts  
codes and regulatory services, UL Solutions



**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

# Meet the speaker



- Senior Regulatory Engineer in UL Solutions' Codes and Regulatory Services department, joining UL Solutions in June 2013.
- Prior to coming to UL, Jon worked for the Oklahoma State Fire Marshal as the Building Division Chief and Fire Protection Engineer.
- Served on the ICC Fire Service Membership Council and Large Jurisdiction Committee, the International Building Code Fire Safety committee, and Exam Development Committee; Serves on NFPA 101/5000 and NFPA 220/221.
- Former adjunct college instructor at Oklahoma State University instructing in the areas of fire protection systems building structures and codes and regulations.
- Extensive expertise in building construction and fire prevention codes, code and standard development and code administration.
- *Distinguished Member of Technical Staff* - William Henry Merrill Society.

# Objectives

At the end of this lesson, you will:



Understand the intent and purpose behind fire-resistive construction



Understand the code requirements relating to the use of dampers for fire and smoke protection



Be able to navigate the UL Product iQ<sup>®</sup> database to identify listed products and assemblies that demonstrate compliance with the requirements of the International Building Code

# Agenda

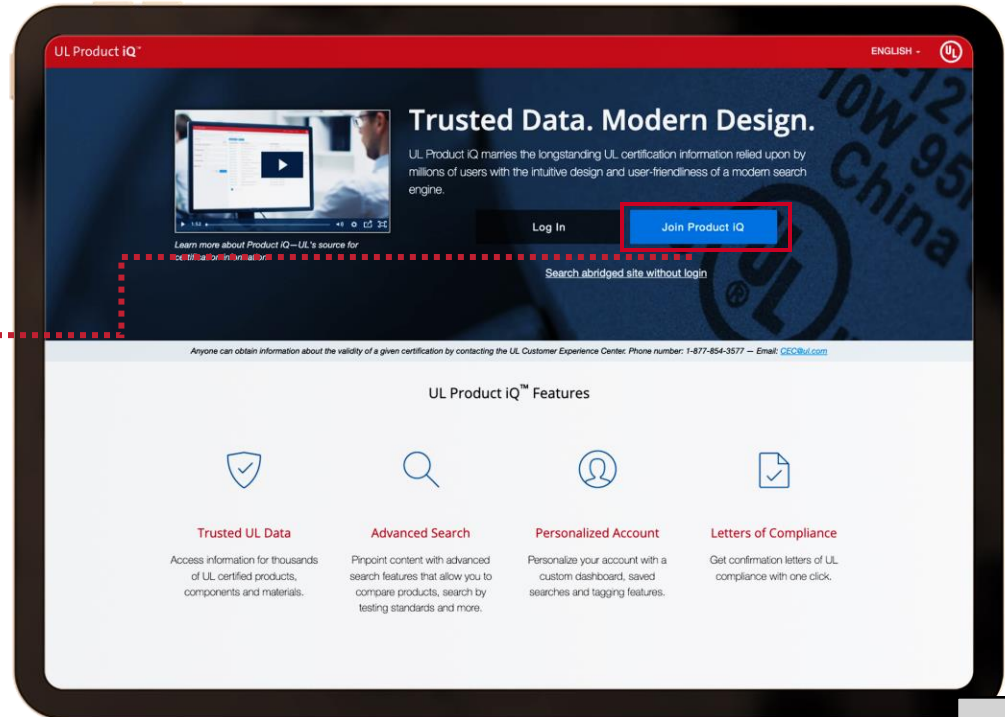
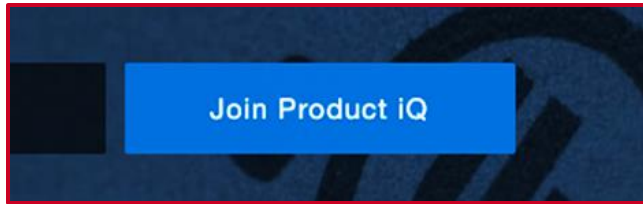
- A brief IBC Fire-resistance-rated construction
- Ducts and air transfer openings
- Plan review and inspection
- Navigating UL Solutions resources
- Summary and closing



# UL Product iQ<sup>®</sup> — registration

Works best with Chrome

[ProductiQ.UL.com](https://ProductiQ.UL.com)



# Questions or comments?



# Use of the IBC



Definitions:  
chapter 2



Occupancy  
classification



Use of tables:  
scoping section



Table  
footnotes



Code  
exceptions

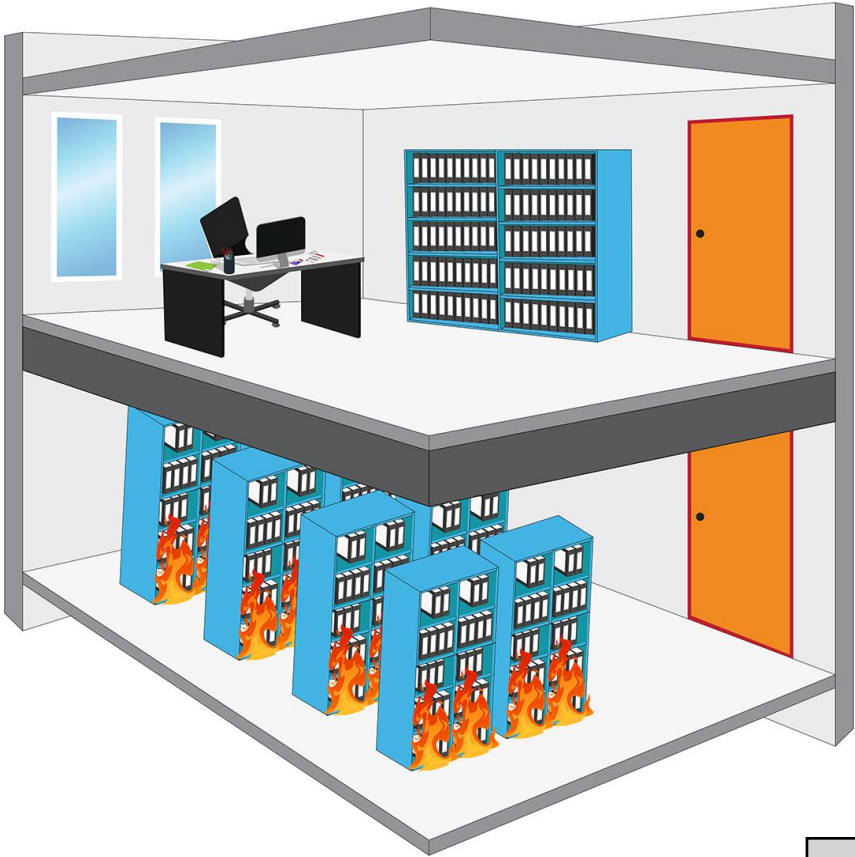


Reference  
standards



Index and  
glossary

# Fire resistance-rated construction





# Fire protection for buildings

The International Building Code (IBC) illustrates two different means for building fire protection, including:

## Passive fire protection

### Containment:

Enclosing the area with fire walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies (within a building or between buildings).

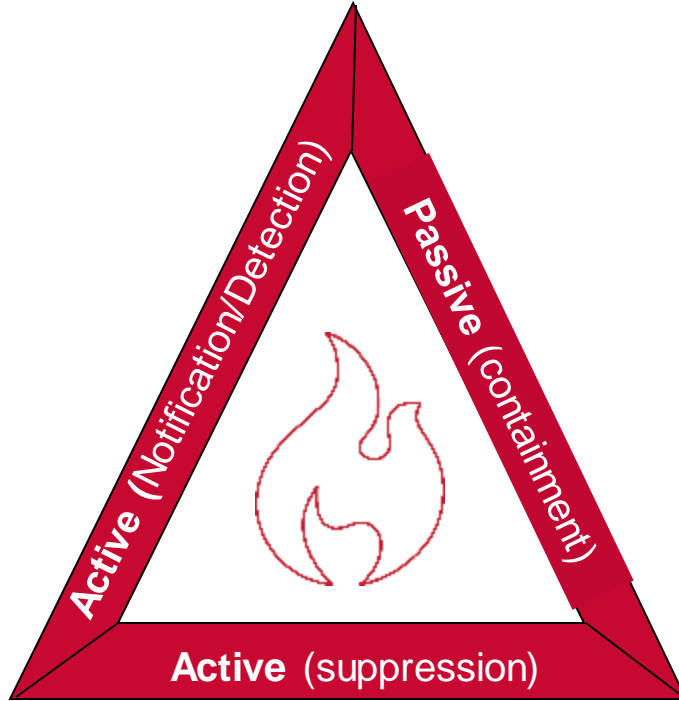
## Active fire protection

### Fire protection system:

Systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

# Passive fire protection

The International Building Code (IBC) takes a systematic approach to building fire protection :



Reasonable level of redundancy; inspection, testing and maintenance

# Fire resistance (rating)



## Building elements: beams, columns, walls and horizontal assemblies

- Expressed as an hourly time period
- Ratings range from 30 minutes to 4 hours
- Structural integrity
- Containment of fire to room or floor of origin (prevent passage of flame and heat)

# Ensuring the fire resistance rating - fire rated walls and floors



# Ducts and air transfer openings



# Damper types



# Damper types



# Fire dampers definition

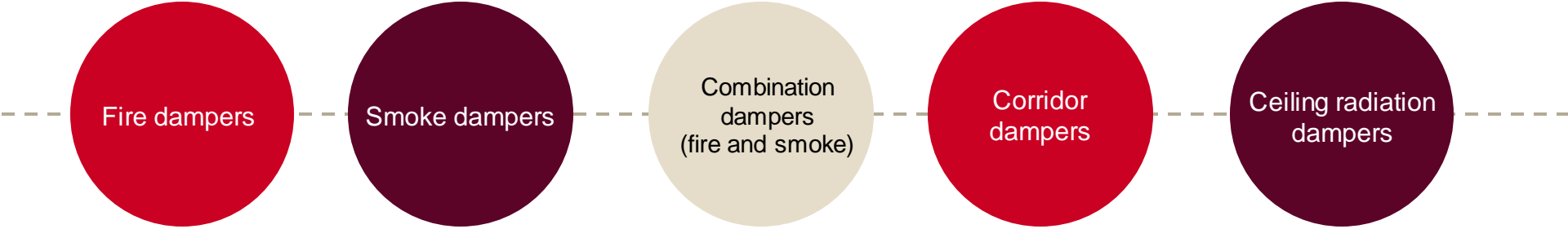
## Fire damper

- A Listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon detection of heat and to resist the passage of flame
- Fire dampers are classified for use in either **static systems** that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in **dynamic systems** that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.





# Damper types



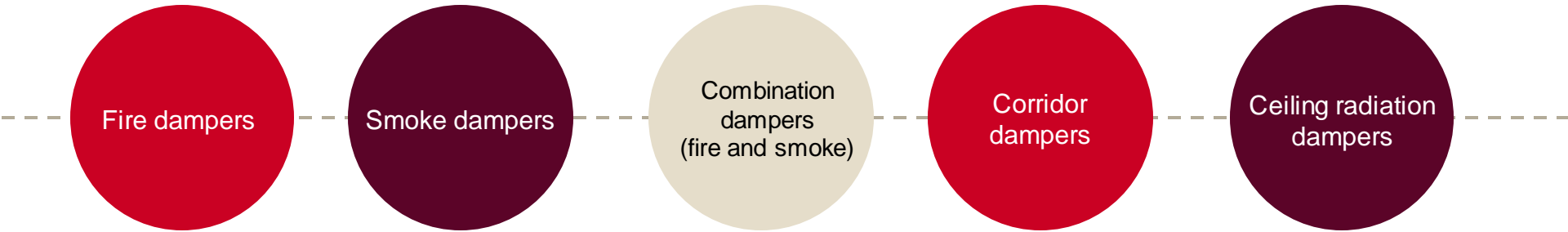
# Smoke dampers definition

## Smoke damper

- A Listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke.
- The device is installed to operate automatically.
- Controlled by a smoke detection system, and, where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.



# Damper types



# Combination dampers definition

## Combination fire/smoke damper

- A Listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke
- The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and, where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.



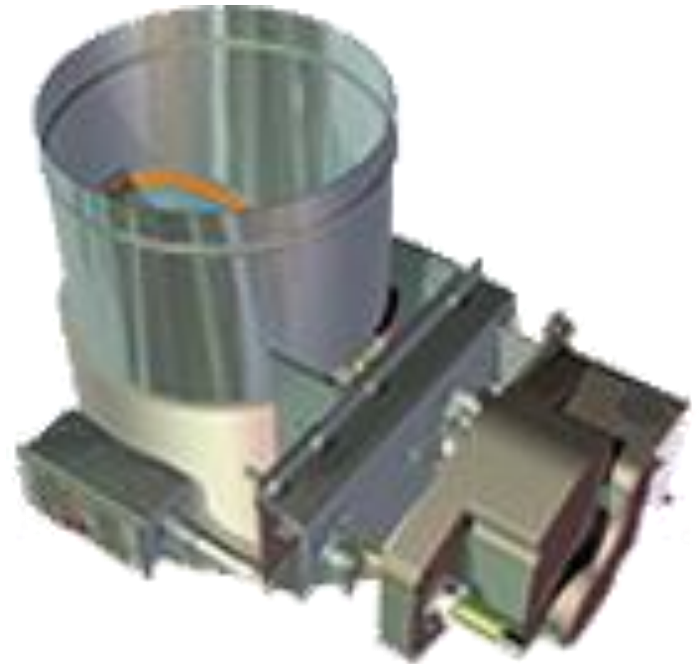
# Damper types



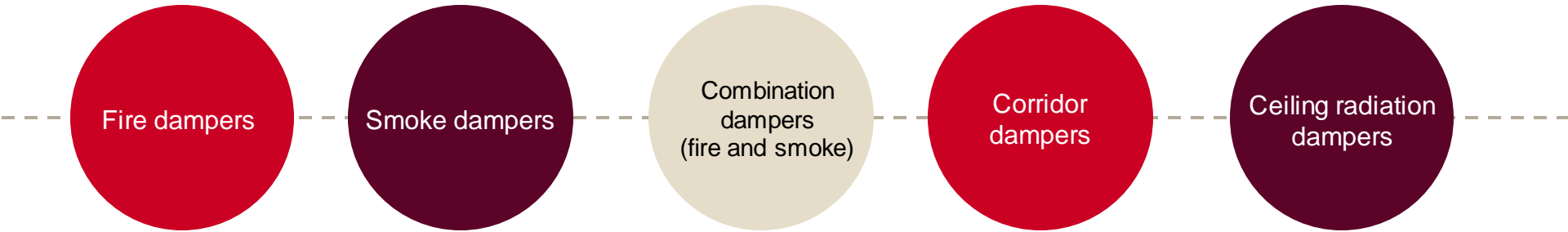
# Corridor dampers definition

## Corridor damper

- A Listed device intended for use where air ducts penetrate or terminate at horizontal openings in the ceilings of fire-resistance-rated corridors, where the corridor ceiling is permitted to be constructed as required for the corridor walls
- IBC 708.4 Continuity – Exception 3



# Damper types



# Ceiling radiation dampers definition

## Ceiling radiation damper

- A Listed device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to automatically limit the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening
- Ceiling radiation dampers include air terminal units, ceiling dampers and ceiling air diffusers.





# Building code basics

Some fundamentals



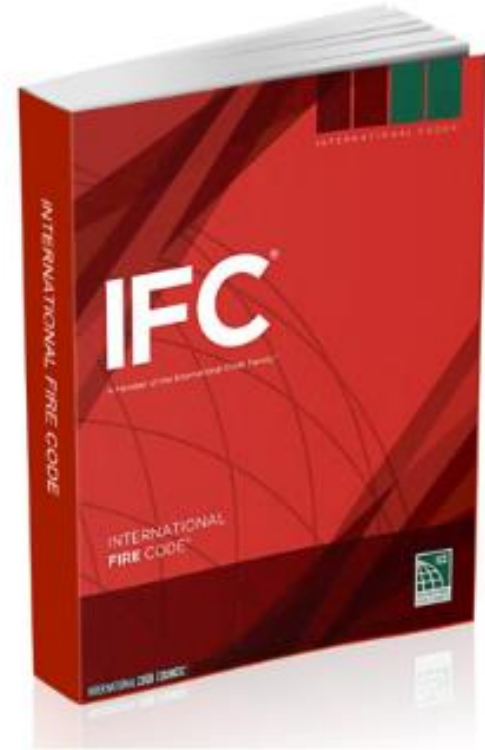
Courtesy International Code Council, <https://www.iccsafe.org/>

# Unsafe conditions IFC 701.7

Where any components in this chapter:

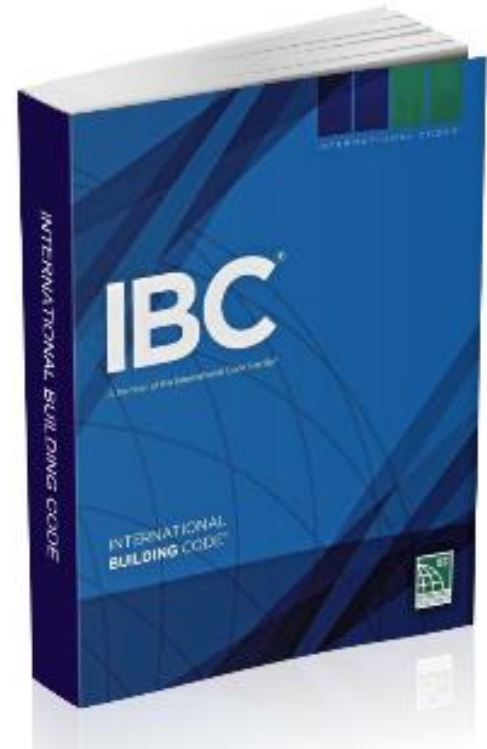
- Are not maintained and do not function as intended
- Do not have the *fire resistance* or the resistance to the passage of smoke required by the code.
- Components or portions thereof determined to be unsafe shall be repaired or replaced to conform to that code under which the building was constructed

...to conform to that code under which the building was constructed



# Unsafe conditions – IFC 701.7

- Components or portions thereof determined to be unsafe shall be repaired or replaced to conform to that code under which the building was constructed, remodeled or altered or this chapter, as deemed appropriate by the *fire code official*.



# Other Requirements

NFPA 80

NFPA 90A

NFPA 92

NFPA 204

NFPA 105 Maint smoke partition

## NFPA Standards



# Code requirements: fire dampers

## Section 717 of the IBC

- 717.5 – Penetrations of fire walls, fire barriers, shaft enclosures and fire partitions by duct or air transfer openings shall be protected by the appropriate damper
- 717.6 – Penetrations of horizontal assemblies by duct or air transfer openings shall be protected by shaft enclosures
- 717.6.1 – Ducts connecting not more than two stories shall be protected with a fire damper or a firestop system
- 717.3.1 – Fire dampers shall be Listed and labeled (tested) to UL 555, the Standard for Fire Dampers

# Code requirements: fire dampers

## Section 717 of the IBC

- 717.3.1 – Static or dynamic
- 717.3.2.1 – Minimum fire protection rating (table):
  - 1.5 hrs when assembly rating is less than 3 hrs
  - 3 hrs when assembly rating is 3 hrs or greater
- Fire dampers shall be Listed and labeled (717.3.1)
- Installed per manufacturer's instructions (717.2)

# Code requirements: smoke dampers

## Section 717 of the 2018 IBC

- 717.5.3 – Penetrations of shaft enclosures, corridor walls, smoke barriers and smoke partitions by duct or air transfer opening shall be protected by a smoke damper.
- 717.3.2.2 – Leakage rating shall be Class I or II with a temperature rating of not less than 250 °F.

# Code requirements: smoke dampers

- 717.3 – Smoke dampers shall be Listed and labeled to UL 555S, the Standard for Smoke Dampers.
- Also used to control pressure differentials in smoke control systems
- Installed per manufacturer's instructions





# Code requirements 717.3.2.2 — smoke damper leakage

## Smoke dampers

- Smoke dampers (leakage-rated dampers) are intended for the protection of openings in smoke barriers, or in engineered smoke-control systems as specified in ANSI/NFPA 90A. Smoke dampers are prescribed for use by codes such as the IBC, IMC and UMC.
- Leakage ratings for smoke dampers are identified as Class Designation I, II or III as shown in the following table. Leakage ratings of the dampers are established at a minimum differential pressure of 4 in. water gauge (WG), across the closed damper. Leakage rates may also be established at higher differential pressures, in increments of in. water gauge.

### Maximum Leakage (CFM/ft<sup>2</sup>)

Class	4 In. WG	6 In. WG	8 In. WG	10 In. WG	12 In. WG
I	8.0	9.5	11.0	12.5	14.0
II	20.0	24.0	28.0	31.5	35.0
III	80.0	96.0	112.0	125.0	140.0

- Leakage ratings for smoke dampers are determined at elevated temperatures. The elevated temperatures are in increments of 100°F with the minimum temperature being 250°F. Leakage ratings if smoke dampers are established based on test conditions using heated air.
- Certified dampers are marked with respect to the Leakage Class at elevated test temperature.

# Code requirements: combination dampers

- 717.3 – Dampers that meet the requirements of both a fire damper and a smoke damper
- Tested per UL 555 and UL 555S
- Combination dampers shall be Listed and labeled
- Installed per manufacturer's instructions

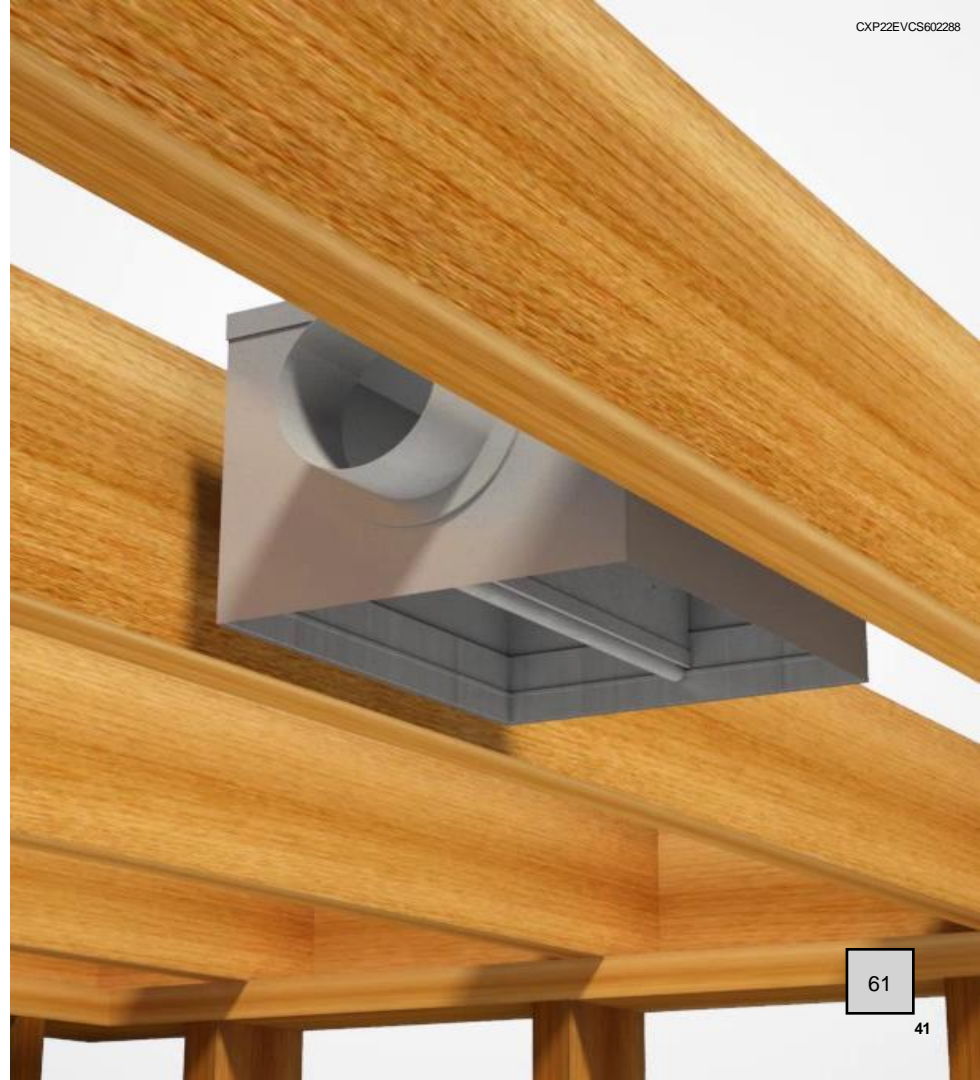


# Corridor dampers

- Used in ceilings of exit corridors where ceiling is constructed as required for corridor walls per Section 708.4, Exception 3
- Designed to be installed in horizontal “wall”
- Operation specified in 2020 BC NYS Section
  - 717.3.3.5 – Actuation as a fire damper
  - (717.3.3.1) and smoke damper (717.3.3.2)
- Combination fire damper and smoke damper
  - One-hour fire rated
  - Leakage rating shall be Class I or II with a temperature rating of not less than 250°F
  - Must close when subjected to 150 fpm velocity across the face of the damper during fire exposure
- Corridor dampers shall be Listed and labeled to UL 555 and UL 555S per 717.3.1 (5)
- Installed per manufacturer’s instructions

# Code requirements: ceiling radiation dampers

- 717.6.2 – Used in fire-resistive floor-ceiling and roof-ceiling assemblies where duct penetrates membrane ceiling
- Intent is to minimize heat transfer into concealed space



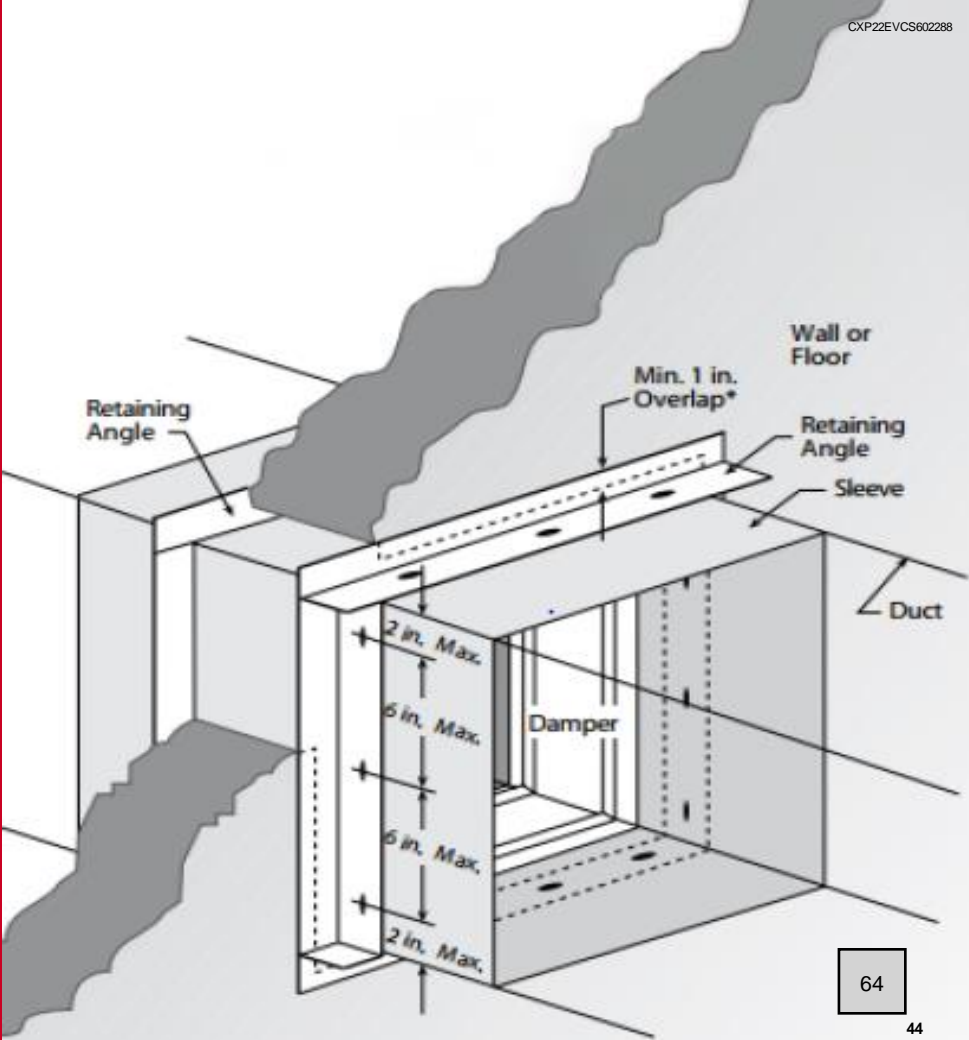
# Code requirements: ceiling radiation dampers

- In acoustical ceilings, performance compared to generic hinged blade damper in accordance with UL 555C, the Standard for Ceiling Dampers
  - Listings permit substitution of ceiling radiation damper for generic hinged blade damper specified in the design
  - If hinged blade damper is not specified in design, no ceiling radiation damper may be substituted into the design
- In gypsum ceilings, ceiling radiation dampers may be tested as part of floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263
  - Ceiling radiation damper may be used only if specified in the design
  - Design will specify manufacturer and designation of the ceiling radiation damper(s) that may be used
- Ceiling radiation dampers shall be Listed and labeled 2018 IBC
- Installed per manufacture's instructions

# Questions or comments?

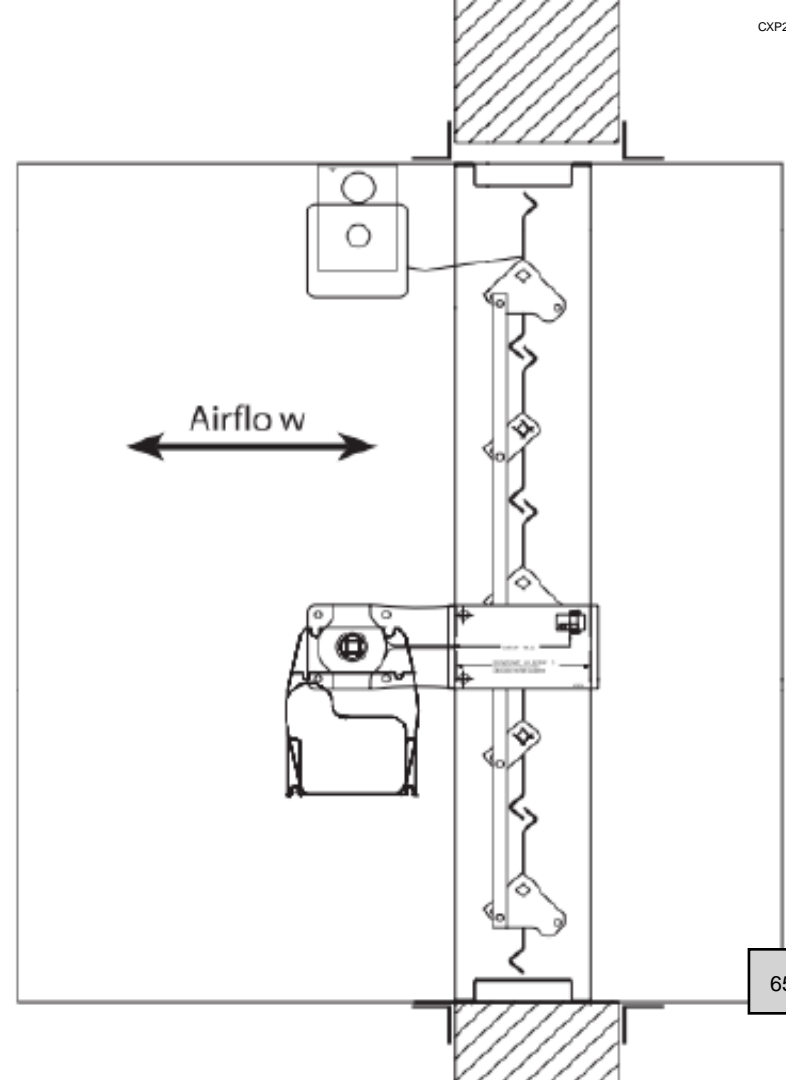


# Damper installation considerations



# What makes a code-compliant installation?

- Fire- and/or smoke-rated barrier
- Correct Listed damper
- Installation in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions



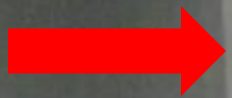




# What is the correct damper type?

## Damper types







 **TOP**   
 \* MOUNTED VERTICALLY

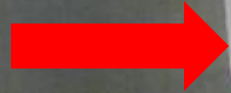
• DAMPER MAY BE MOUNTED VERTICALLY OR HORIZONTALLY  
 • BLADES MUST BE HORIZONTAL



3117 WILSON ROAD, SUITE 100  
 WASHINGTON, DC 20007  
 P.O. 37412393 ESTD-211-14X10  
 Qty: 1 of 1  
 2,000 Spcs (10 in. x 6 in.) @ 4 in. Spacing (1997) 2000  
 AMCA LABEL 400157

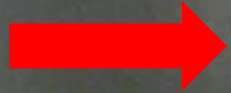
For Use in DYNAMIC Systems  
 Degradation test temperature: 250 degrees F

UL Label: 461969  
 Tag: HP13  
 Actuator: FKT-1206

See Drawings for installation and operating instructions for the model.



 **FLOW** 



CLASSIFIED  
  
 CC-26881  
 ASSES BY NANCY C. T. NEW'S  
 INVESTIGATION SERVICES, INC.

FINAL TESTING: 14300  
 DATE: DEC 11 2012

  
**AMCA CERTIFIED PARTING**  
**AIR PERFORMANCE**  
 AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL  
 ENGINEERING  
 INTERNATIONAL, INC.

  
 0684321

# Required markings: UL 555

## Each damper shall be legibly marked with the following:

- Manufacturer's name, trade name, trademark or other identification
- Distinctive (catalog or model) number or equivalent
- Date or other dating period of manufacture not exceeding any three consecutive months
- The words "Fire damper for static systems," "Fire damper for dynamic systems," "Combination fire and smoke damper" or "Corridor damper," as appropriate
- Hourly fire resistance rating

# Required markings: UL 555

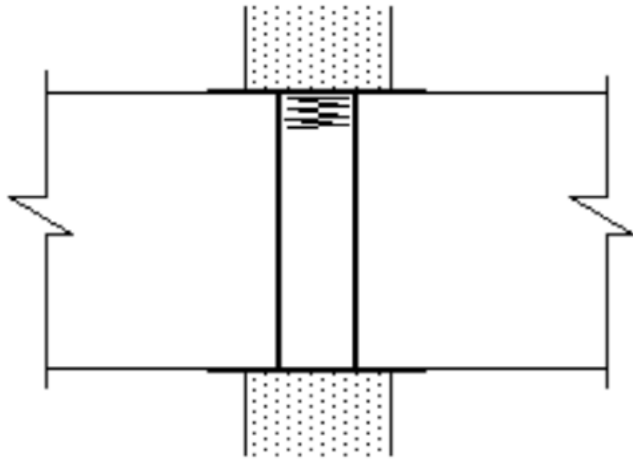
## Each damper shall be legibly marked with the following:

- For a fire damper for dynamic systems, a combination fire and smoke damper and a corridor damper: airflow and closure pressure rating
- Intended mounting position (vertical, horizontal or both)
- Top or bottom of the fire damper, or both
- The statement “See (manufacturer’s or private labeler’s name) installation and operating instructions for this model.”
- Fire damper actuators shall be marked with their electrical ratings when electrical, or the maximum and minimum pressure ratings when pneumatic, as specified by the manufacturer of the actuator (found on the actuator, not the damper label).

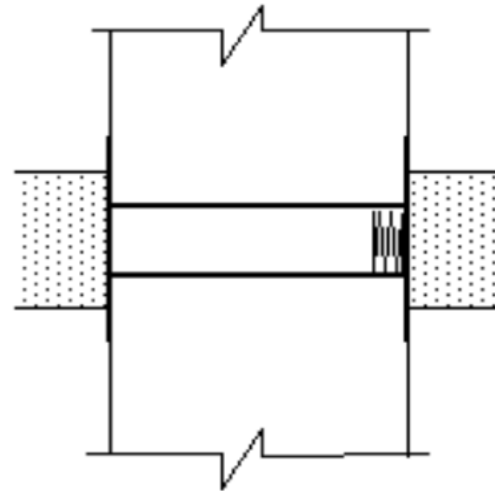
# What is the correct damper?

Orientation

Fire, smoke and combination dampers



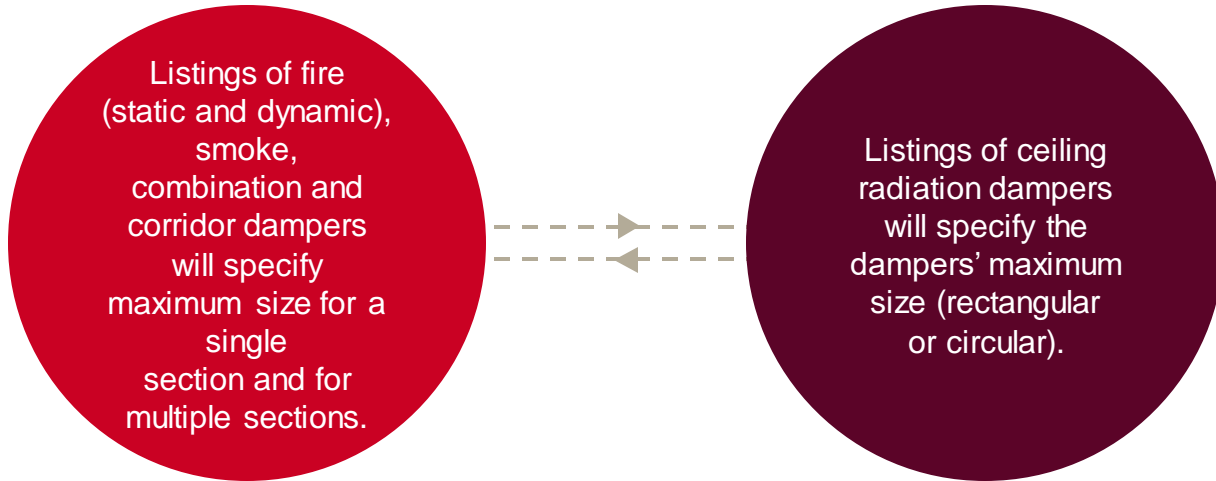
Vertical



Horizontal

# What is the correct damper?

## Damper size



# What is the correct damper?

Air flow conditions

## Fire and ceiling radiation dampers

### Static

- For use with heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems that automatically shut down in the event of a fire

### Dynamic

- For use with HVAC systems that remain operational during a fire
- Tested to demonstrate ability to close under air flow conditions
- Pressure and flow ratings must match installation



# What is the correct damper?

Air flow conditions

## Dynamic fire, smoke, combination and corridor dampers

- Listings state maximum air flow and pressure ratings
- Field installation conditions must match listing

# What is the correct damper?

## Performance criteria

### Static fire dampers

- Hourly rating
- Actuation temperature
  - Approx. 50°F above duct operating temperature, but not less than 160°F per BC
  - Maximum temperature rating of 212°F on the fusible link

# What is the correct damper?

## Performance criteria

### Dynamic fire dampers

- Hourly rating
- Actuation temperature
  - Approx. 50°F above duct operating temperature, but not less than 160°F per IBC
  - Not more than 350°F where located in smoke control system

# What is the correct damper?

## Performance criteria

### Smoke dampers

- Leakage rating (2018 IBC 717.3.2.2)
  - Class I or II
  - Elevated temperature rating not less than 250°F
- Actuation conditions (717.3.3.2)
  - Smoke detectors
  - Smoke control system

# What is the correct damper?

Performance criteria

## Combination fire/smoke dampers

In accordance with requirements of dynamic fire and smoke dampers  
(2018 IBC 717.3.3.3)

# What is the correct damper?

## Performance criteria

### Corridor dampers 2018 IBC 717.3.1(5)

- One-hour fire rating
- Leakage rating
  - Class I or II
  - Elevated temperature rating of not less than 250°F
- Must close when subjected to 150 fpm velocity across the face of the damper during fire exposure

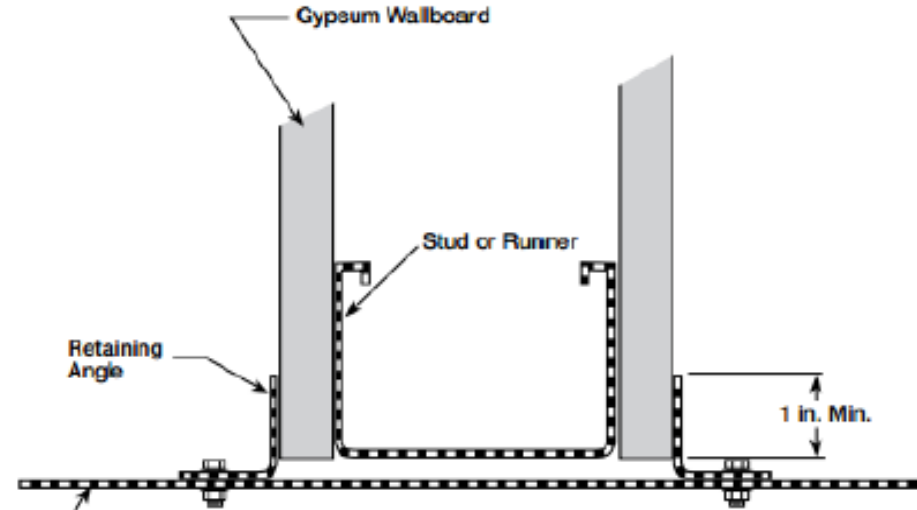
# What is the correct damper?

## Performance criteria

### Ceiling radiation dampers

- Hourly rating must match the fire-resistive assembly rating
- Actuation temperature – 50°F above duct operating temperature, but not less than 160°F per 2018 IBC (717.3.3.4)

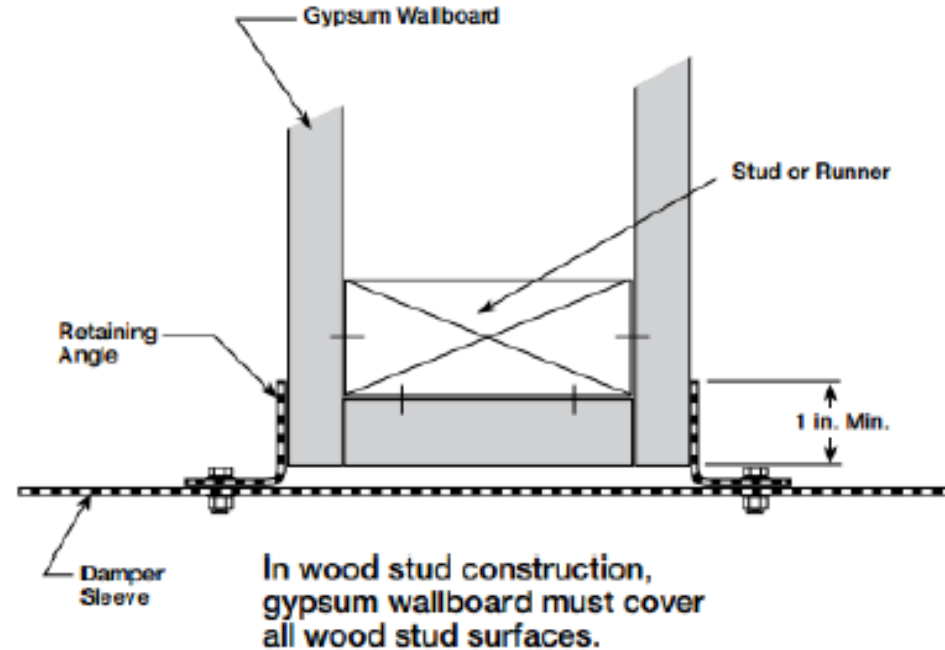
# Typical installation details: steel stud walls



**In metal stud construction,  
exposed steel surfaces need  
not be covered with gypsum  
wallboard.**

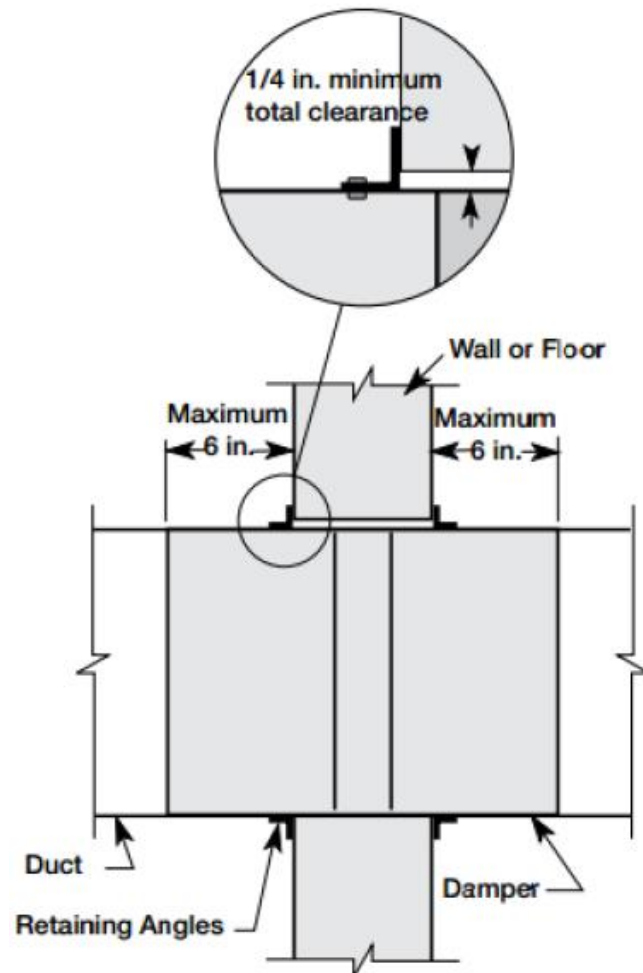


# Typical installation details: wood stud walls



# Traditional installation

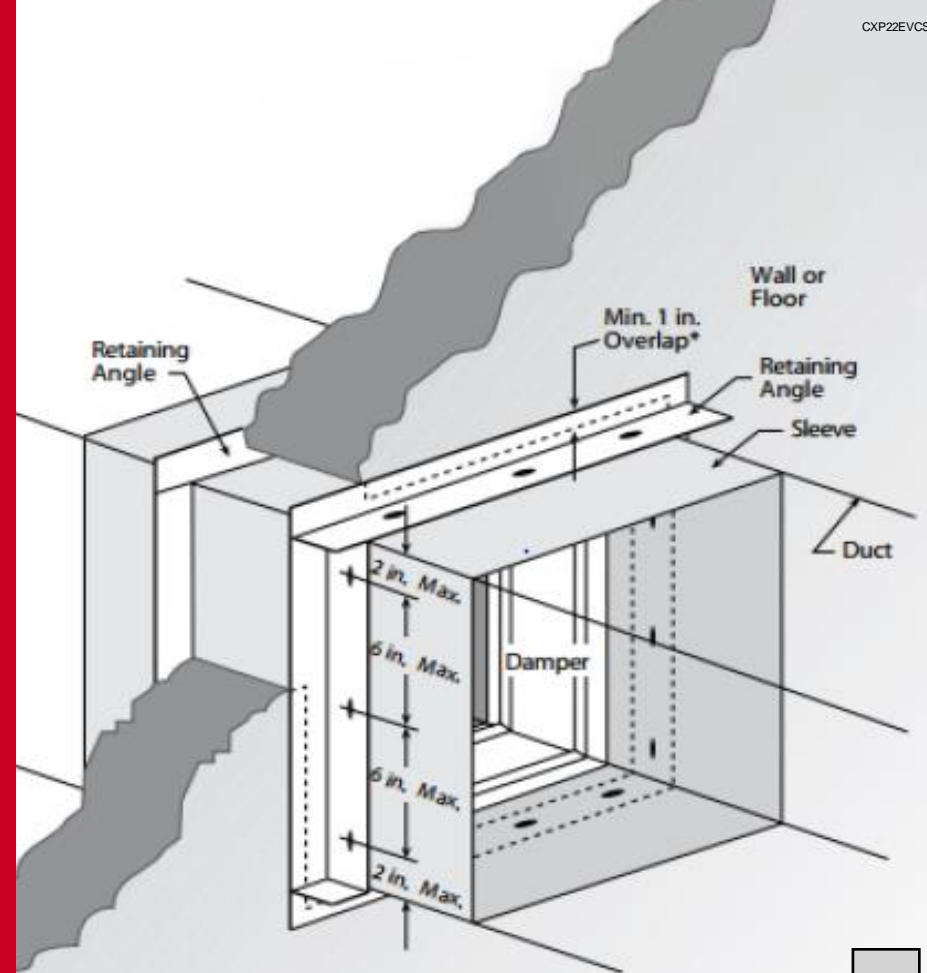
- Damper's centerline must be in plane of wall or floor
- Annular space required to allow room for expansion under fire conditions



# Traditional installation

## Retaining angles

- Fastened to sleeve
- Spacing in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions
- No sealants in annular space unless part of listing



\*only applicable for damper sizes above 36 in. x 36 in.

# Alternate installations



Single-side  
angles

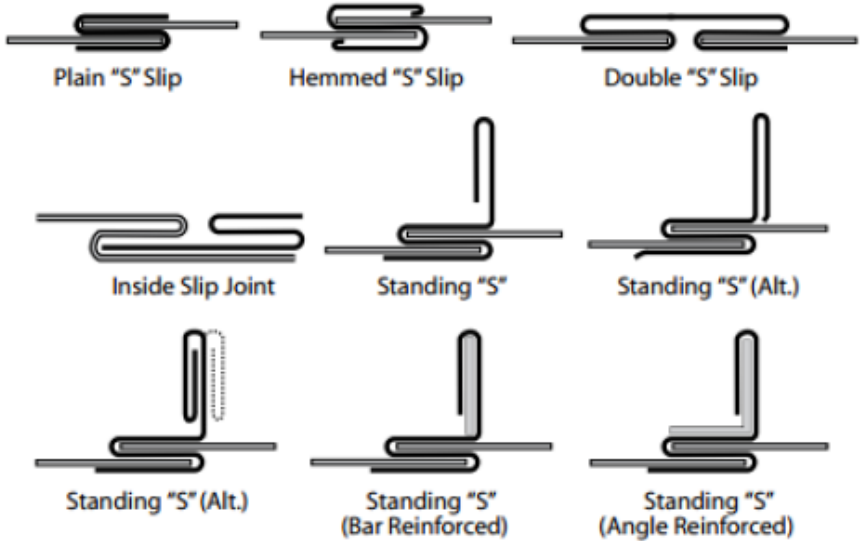
Three-sided  
angles

Sealant in  
addition  
to angles

Out-of-wall  
installations –  
typically used  
in shaft wall  
applications to  
allow access  
to actuators

# Traditional installation

## Breakaway duct connections



# Questions or comments?



# Fire-resistance-rated construction

Plan review and inspection testing and maintenance





# For the architect/ contractor

**UL Solutions Designs serve two roles:**

1. Evidence of compliance
2. A set of build-instructions





# For the certified code official

**UL Solutions Designs serve two roles:**

1. Evidence of compliance
2. Document by which to inspect





# Testing and inspection

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.



# Operational Test

The first test after installation is an operational test to confirm the following:

- Damper fully closes
- There are no obstructions
- There is full and unobstructed access to the damper
- If it's a dynamic damper, the velocity in the duct is proper for the damper
- All the indicating devices are working and reporting properly
- If there is a fusible link it's the right rating and temperature classification

# Acceptance Testing

An acceptance test is a test of the damper that is completed by a qualified person after the damper is installed, an operational test is completed, and the entire heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) system is complete.

The acceptance test is performed to confirm the following prior to placing the entire system in service:

- The damper is not damaged or missing any parts.
- If actuated, dampers close fully upon disconnection of electrical power or air pressure.
- If actuated, dampers fully reopen when electrical power or air pressure is reapplied.
- If non-actuated, the damper closes upon removal of the fusible link and is manually reset to the full-open position.

Testing must be done under maximum airflow after HVAC system balancing, unless acceptance testing is being performed for dampers with fusible links. In that case, it is permitted to turn the fan in the system off.

# Periodic Testing

- Need to be inspected and tested:
  - 1 year after the initial acceptance test
  - Every 4 years (If installed in a hospital they can be inspected and tested every 6 years)



# Periodic Testing - Smoke Dampers

- During the prescribed period an inspection consisting of the following needs to be completed:
  - Confirm that the damper is in the full-open or full-closed position as required by the system design.
  - Visually confirm the damper moved to the full-closed or full-open position when commanded.
  - Visually confirm that the damper returns to the original operating position as required by the system design.

# Periodic Testing - Fire dampers with actuated damper

The following needs to be completed during the periodic inspection:

- Confirm that the damper is in the full-open or full-closed position as required by the system design
- Visually confirm the damper moved to the full-closed or full-open position
- Visually confirm that the damper returns to the original operating position

# Periodic Testing – Fire Damper with Non Actuated Damper

During the periodic inspection of a non-actuated fire damper, the following needs to be confirmed:

- That the fusible link is not painted
- The damper fully closes when the fusible link is removed or activated with the damper in the full-open position
- The damper latches in the full-closed position (Where equipped)
- The damper is returned to the full-open and operational position with fusible link installed



# Questions or comments?



# Product iQ

Works best with Chrome

[ProductiQ.UL.com](https://ProductiQ.UL.com)



UL Product iQ™

ENGLISH -

**Trusted Data. Modern Design.**

UL Product iQ marries the longstanding UL certification information relied upon by millions of users with the intuitive design and user-friendliness of a modern search engine.

Learn more about Product iQ—UL's source for certification information

Log In **Join Product iQ**

Search abridged site without login.

Anyone can obtain information about the validity of a given certification by contacting the UL Customer Experience Center: Phone number: 1-877-854-3577 — Email: [CEC@ul.com](mailto:CEC@ul.com)

UL Product iQ™ Features

Trusted UL Data	Advanced Search	Personalized Account	Letters of Compliance
<p>Access information for thousands of UL certified products, components and materials.</p>	<p>Pinpoint content with advanced search features that allow you to compare products, search by testing standards and more.</p>	<p>Personalize your account with a custom dashboard, saved searches and tagging features.</p>	<p>Get confirmation letters of UL compliance with one click.</p>

# Guide information



Equipment, materials  
or systems included  
in the category



Intended use, restrictions  
or supplemental  
information that applies



Standard(s) used to  
evaluate products  
under the category



Listing or Classification  
Mark information for  
the category

# Product categories: dampers

- Easily search damper-related product categories using Product iQ
- Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination dampers and corridor dampers are listed in the Dampers for Fire Barrier and Smoke Applications (EMME) category

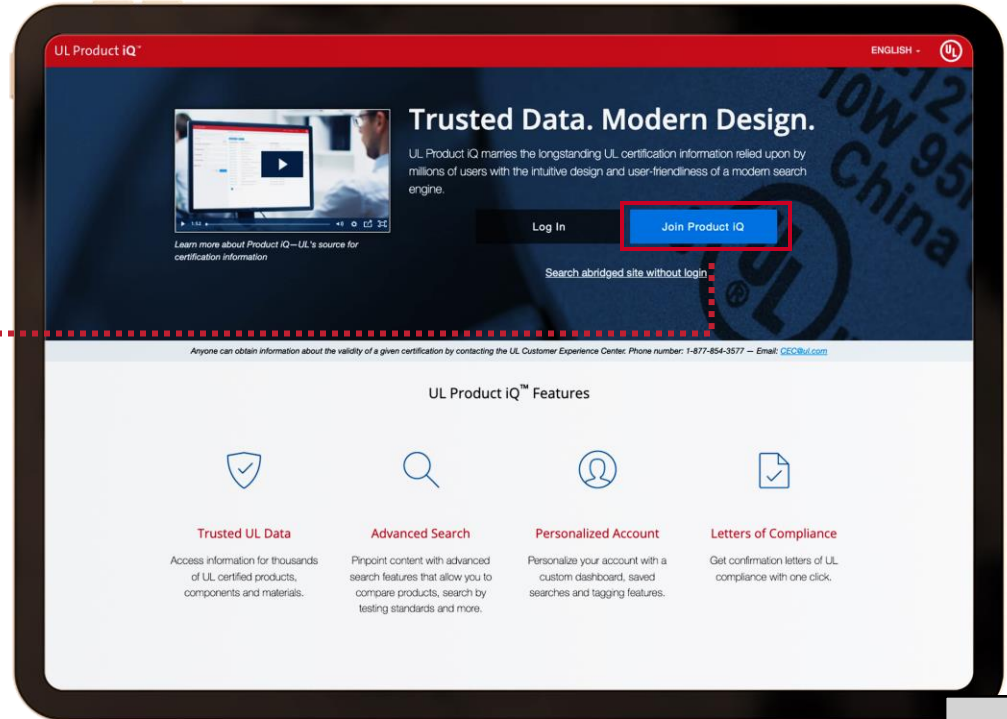
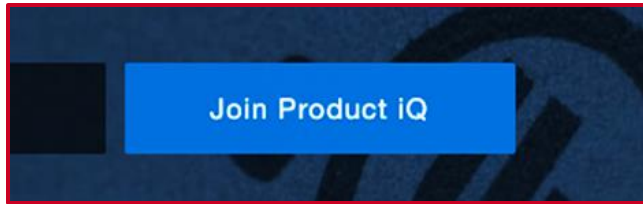
- Ceiling radiation dampers are listed under the Air Terminal Units (BZGU), Ceiling Air Diffusers (BZZU) and Ceiling Dampers (CABS) categories
- Product category begins with guide information, followed by the individual manufacturer's listings

- Manufacturers arranged alphabetically within each product category
- Each manufacturer's classification describes model number and details of listing

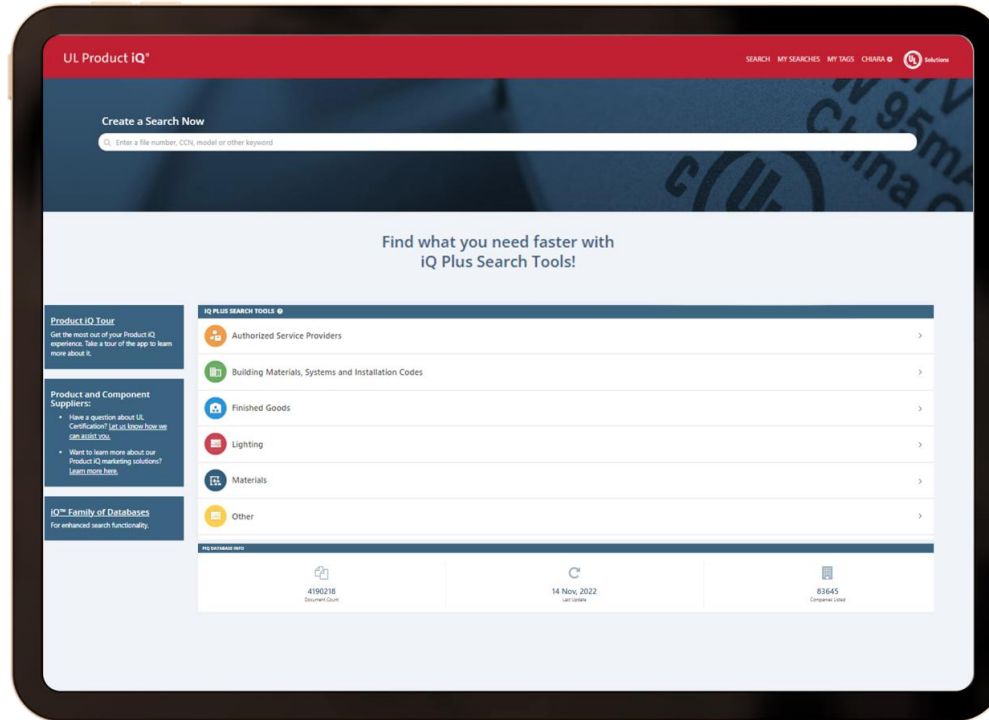
# Product iQ

Works best with Chrome

[ProductiQ.UL.com](https://ProductiQ.UL.com)

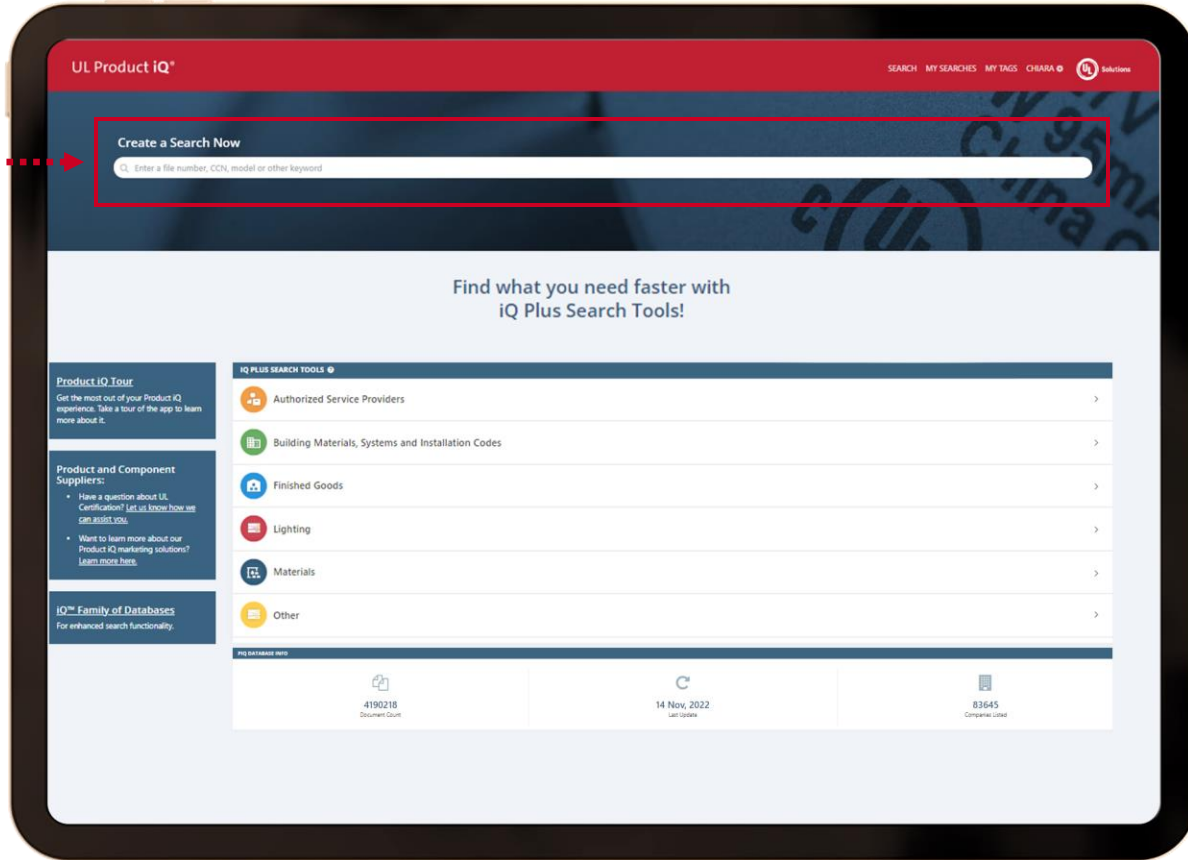


# Start with the Product iQ homepage



# Keyword search

One field  
for almost  
everything





# iQ Plus Search Tools

Enhanced  
search  
functionality  
drop-down menu

The screenshot displays the UL Product iQ app interface. At the top, there is a red header with the text "UL Product iQ™" and navigation links for "SEARCH", "MY SEARCHES", "MY TAGS", and "BAO". Below the header is a search bar with the placeholder text "Enter a file number, CCN, model or other keyword".

The main content area features a section titled "Find what you need faster with iQ Plus Search Tools!". Below this, there is a "IQ PLUS SEARCH TOOLS" section with a drop-down menu. The menu is currently open, showing three options:

- Authorized Service Providers** (with a right-pointing arrow)
- Building Materials, Systems and Installation Codes** (with a downward-pointing arrow, highlighted by a red box)
- Continuity Head-of-Wall Joint Systems** (with a right-pointing arrow)

Below the menu, there are two descriptive cards:

- Continuity Head-of-Wall Joint Systems**: Covers continuity head-of-wall joint systems, consisting of a fire-resistance-rated wall, a non-fire-resistance-rated horizontal assembly, and materials to prevent the spread of fire through the linear opening between these assemblies.
- Dampers**: The category Dampers for Fire Barrier and Smoke Applications covers fire dampers, smoke dampers (leakage-rated dampers), combination fire and smoke dampers (fire and leakage-rated dampers), and corridor dampers.

On the left side of the interface, there are three promotional cards:

- Product iQ Tour**: Get the most out of your Product iQ experience. Take a tour of the app to learn more about it.
- Product and Component Suppliers:**
  - Have a question about UL Certification? [Let us know how we can assist you.](#)
  - Want to learn more about our Product iQ marketing solutions? [Learn more here.](#)
- iQ™ Family of Databases**: For enhanced search functionality.

On the right side, there are two promotional cards:

- Learn more about Product iQ™ features**: Includes a play button icon and a "Learn more" button.
- Receive notification of an update to a search or file with an upgraded Product iQ account**: Includes a play button icon and a "Learn more" button.

A red dashed line with arrows points from the text "Enhanced search functionality drop-down menu" to the search bar and the "Building Materials, Systems and Installation Codes" menu item.



Enhanced  
search  
functionality  
drop-down menu

The screenshot displays the UL Product IQ app interface. At the top, there is a red header with the UL logo and navigation links for SEARCH, MY SEARCHES, MY TAGS, and BAO. Below the header, a large search bar prompts users to "Create a Search Now" and "Enter a file number, CCN, model or other keyword".

The main content area is titled "Find what you need faster with iQ Plus Search Tools!". It features a central "iQ PLUS SEARCH TOOLS" section with a drop-down menu. The menu is currently open, showing the following options:

- Authorized Service Providers** (with a right-pointing chevron)
- Building Materials, Systems and Installation Codes** (with a downward-pointing chevron)

The "Building Materials, Systems and Installation Codes" option is expanded, showing a search description: "Search for designs, systems, assemblies, and products that include, or are related to, hourly fire-resistance ratings. Or search by installation code section." Below this, there are links for "Continuity Head-of-Wall Joint Systems" and "Dampers". The "Dampers" link is highlighted with a red box and a red arrow pointing from the text on the left.

On the left side of the interface, there are three informational cards:

- Product IQ Tour**: "Get the most out of your Product IQ experience... Take a tour of the app to learn more about it."
- Product and Component Supplies:**
  - Have a question about UL Certification? Let us know how we can assist you.
  - Want to learn more about our Product IQ marketing solutions? [Learn more here.](#)
- iQ™ Family of Databases**: "For enhanced search functionality."

On the right side, there are two promotional cards:

- Learn more about Product IQ™ features**: Includes a video player and a "Learn more" button.
- Receive notification of an update to a search or file with an upgraded Product IQ account**: Includes a "Learn more" button.

A red dashed line and arrow originate from the text "Enhanced search functionality drop-down menu" on the left and point to the search bar and the "Dampers" link in the search tools section.

# Product iQ — dampers

UL Product iQ™

SEARCH MY SEARCHES MY TAGS BAO

**Product and Component Suppliers:**

- Have a question about UL Certification? Let us know how we can assist you.
- Want to learn more about our Product iQ marketing solutions? [Learn more here.](#)

**IQ™ Family of Databases**  
For enhanced search functionality.

**Building Materials, Systems and Installation Codes**

Search for designs, systems, assemblies, and products that include, or are related to, hourly fire-resistance ratings. Or search by installation code section.

[Learn more](#)

**Continuity Head-of-Wall Joint Systems**  
Covers continuity head-of-wall joint systems, consisting of a fire-resistance-rated wall, a non-fire-resistance-rated horizontal assembly, and materials to prevent the spread of fire through the linear opening between these assemblies.

**Dampers**  
The category Dampers for Fire Barrier and Smoke Applications covers fire dampers, smoke dampers (leakage-rated dampers), combination fire and smoke dampers (fire and leakage-rated dampers), and corridor dampers.

**Fire Rated Roofs, Walls, Floors, Beams and Columns**  
This category covers roof-ceilings, walls and partitions, floor-ceilings, beams and columns certified to US based requirements for an hourly fire-resistance rating per UL 253.

**Fire Rated Roofs, Walls, Floors, Beams and Columns for Canada**  
This category covers roof-ceilings, walls and partitions, floor-ceilings, beams and columns certified to Canadian based requirements for an hourly fire-resistance rating per CAN/ULC-S101.

**Fire-rated Grease Duct Assemblies**  
Covers the fire-resistive performance of grease duct assemblies investigated to UL 2221, "Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies," and/or ASTM E2336-04, "Standard Test

supply production performance materials and components testing

Empowering Trust! [Start here](#)

Try more gaskets search options with the Gaskets IQ Plus Tool

LEARN MORE ABOUT THE GASKETS IQ PLUS SEARCH TOOL

## Dampers

The category Dampers for Fire Barrier and Smoke Applications covers fire dampers, smoke dampers (leakage-rated dampers), combination fire and smoke dampers (fire and leakage-rated dampers), and corridor dampers.

# Product iQ

## Search results — dampers

UL Product iQ<sup>®</sup> SEARCH MY SEARCHES MY TAGS

REFINE RESULTS  
Build or filter your results by keyword and/or adding criteria

Search Template Dampers

- Keyword
  - Filter by Keyword
  - Search
- UL Category Control Number
  - Click to view and filter values
- File Number
  - Click to view and filter values
- Company Name
  - Click to view and filter values
- UL Mark
  - Click to view and filter values

+ Add Filter

Cancel Reset Save Search

Dashboard Search [Help us improve](#)

► 231 Results :: Case Template: Dampers :: No Search Criteria

Action ▾ Display: General ▾ Rows: 15 ▾

Document Name	Company Name	Notes	UL CCN Description	My Tags
<a href="#">BZGU_GuideInfo</a>			Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGU_R10828</a>	KRUEGER		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGU_R12231</a>	NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGU_R13401</a>	TITUS PRODUCTS, DIV OF TOMKINS INDUSTRIES		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGU_R18544</a>	RAYMON ENTERPRISES		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGU_R18874</a>	PRICE INDUSTRIES LTD		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGU7_GuideInfo</a>			Air Terminal Units Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">BZGU7_R12231</a>	NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC		Air Terminal Units Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">BZGU7_R18544</a>	RAYMON ENTERPRISES		Air Terminal Units Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">BZGU7_R18874</a>	PRICE INDUSTRIES LTD		Air Terminal Units Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">BZGUC_GuideInfo</a>			Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGUC_R18874</a>	PRICE INDUSTRIES LTD		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGUC_R19568</a>	NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC		Air Terminal Units	
<a href="#">BZGUC_R38924</a>	NAD KLIMA		Air Terminal Units	

► 231 Results

# Product iQ — enhanced search functionality

Search under Building Materials and Systems for a fire-resistance-rated wall design based on specific parameters

- Ceiling radiation damper

The screenshot displays the UL Product iQ search interface. The main heading is "UL Product iQ®". Below it, the "REFINE RESULTS" section is active, showing "Search Template Dampers". The interface includes several filter fields: "Keyword" (with a search button), "UL Category Control Number", "File Number", "Company Name", and "UL Mark", each with a "Click to view and filter values" link. At the bottom of the filters are "Cancel", "Reset", and "Save Search" buttons.

The results section shows "231 Results" and a table with columns "Document Name" and "Company Name". The table lists several entries:

Document Name	Company Name
<a href="#">BZGU.GuidelInfo</a>	
<a href="#">BZGU.R10828</a>	KRUEGER
<a href="#">BZGU.R12231</a>	NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC
<a href="#">BZGU.R13401</a>	TITUS PRODUCTS, DIV OF TOMKINS INDUS
<a href="#">BZGU.R18544</a>	RAYMON ENTERPRISES
<a href="#">BZGU.R18874</a>	PRICE INDUSTRIES LTD
<a href="#">BZGU7.GuidelInfo</a>	
<a href="#">BZGU7.R12231</a>	NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC
<a href="#">BZGU7.R18544</a>	RAYMON ENTERPRISES
<a href="#">BZGU7.R18874</a>	PRICE INDUSTRIES LTD
<a href="#">BZGU7C.GuidelInfo</a>	

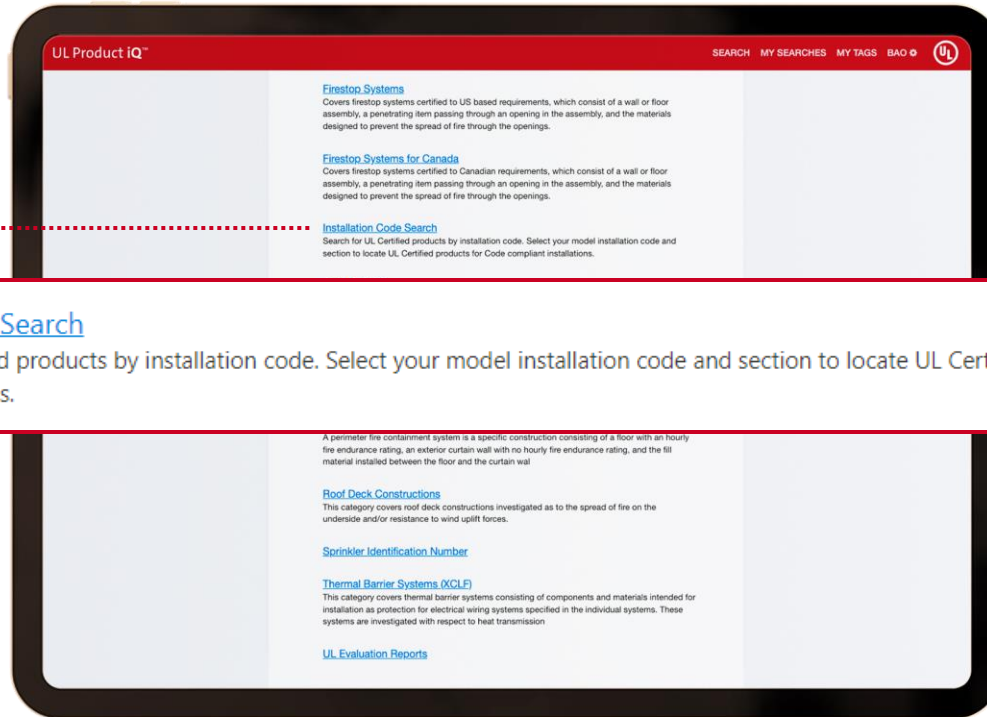
# Product iQ

## Search results — dampers — BZZU

The screenshot shows the UL Product iQ interface. On the left, the 'REFINE RESULTS' sidebar is active, showing search filters for 'Search Template Dampers'. The 'UL Category Control Number' filter is set to 'BZZU'. The main content area displays 7 search results for 'Base Template: Dampers - UL Category Control Number: BZZU'. The results are presented in a table with columns for Document Name, Company Name, Notes, UL CCN Description, and My Tags. The first result is 'BZZU:GuideInfo' with a description of 'Ceiling Air Diffusers'. Other results include 'BZZU:R10053' (NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC), 'BZZU:R12260' (KRUEGER), 'BZZU:R12261' (TITUS), 'BZZU:R17090' (TUTTLE & BAILEY), 'BZZU:R19208' (SHOEMAKER MFG CO INC), and 'BZZU:R38924' (NAD KLIMA). The table is currently on page 1 of 1.

Document Name	Company Name	Notes	UL CCN Description	My Tags
<a href="#">BZZU:GuideInfo</a>			Ceiling Air Diffusers	
<a href="#">BZZU:R10053</a>	NAILOR INDUSTRIES INC		Ceiling Air Diffusers	
<a href="#">BZZU:R12260</a>	KRUEGER		Ceiling Air Diffusers	
<a href="#">BZZU:R12261</a>	TITUS		Ceiling Air Diffusers	
<a href="#">BZZU:R17090</a>	TUTTLE & BAILEY		Ceiling Air Diffusers	
<a href="#">BZZU:R19208</a>	SHOEMAKER MFG CO INC		Ceiling Air Diffusers	
<a href="#">BZZU:R38924</a>	NAD KLIMA		Ceiling Air Diffusers	

# Product iQ — installation code search



## [Installation Code Search](#)

Search for UL Certified products by installation code. Select your model installation code and section to locate UL Certified products for Code compliant installations.

# Product iQ

## Search results — installation code search

UL Product iQ<sup>®</sup> SEARCH MY SEARCHES MY TAGS

REFINE RESULTS

6998 Results • 0 in Template: Installation Code Search • No Search Criteria

6998 Results

Search Template: Installation Code Search

Keyword

Installation Code

Year

Section

UL Category Control Number

Add Filter

Cancel Reset Save Search

Document Name	Company Name	Notes	UL CCN Description	My Tags
<a href="#">AABM.GuideInfo</a>			Building Materials	
<a href="#">AABM7.GuideInfo</a>			Building Materials Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">AACD.GuideInfo</a>			Evaluation of Thermal Runaway Fire Propagation in Batteries and Energy Storage Systems	
<a href="#">AAFC.GuideInfo</a>			European Ex Certified Service Facility Scheme	
<a href="#">AAFP.GuideInfo</a>			Fire Protection Equipment	
<a href="#">AAFP7.GuideInfo</a>			Fire Protection Equipment Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">AAFS.GuideInfo</a>			Food Safety and Quality, Products and Equipment	
<a href="#">AAHC.GuideInfo</a>			Heating, Cooling, Ventilating and Cooking Equipment	
<a href="#">AAHC7.GuideInfo</a>			Heating, Cooling, Ventilating and Cooking Equipment Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">AAIZ.GuideInfo</a>			Equipment for Use in and Relating to Class I, II and III, Division 1 and 2 Hazardous Locations	
<a href="#">AAIZ7.GuideInfo</a>			Equipment for Use in and Relating to Class I, II and III, Division 1 and 2 Hazardous Locations Certified for Canada	
<a href="#">AALP.GuideInfo</a>			Laser Pointers	
<a href="#">AALP7.GuideInfo</a>			Laser Pointers Certified for Canada	

# Installation code



Correlates  
model code  
sections to  
UL Solutions  
product  
categories

Covers  
many model  
codes and  
editions  
(IBC, IFC,  
NEC, etc.)

Flexible  
search  
capabilities

Powerful  
tool to  
locate  
appropriate  
Listings

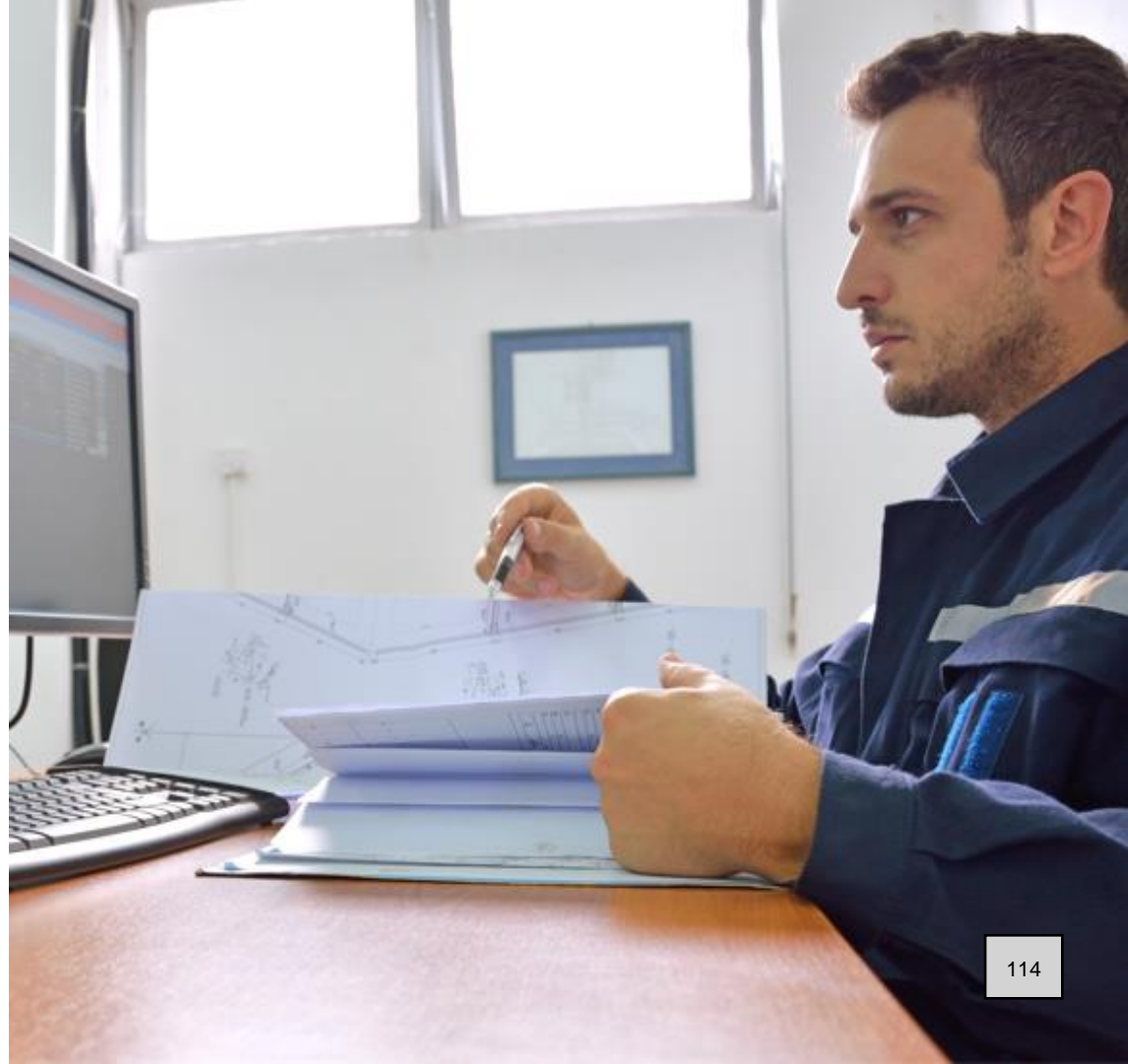




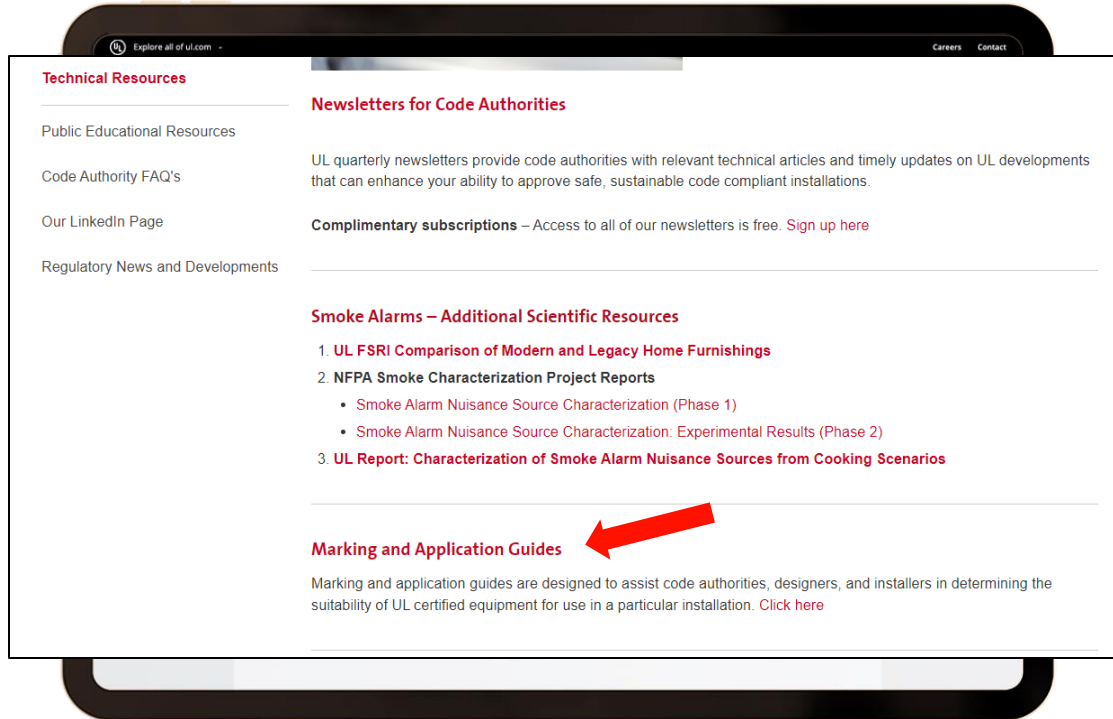
# Additional Resources

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.



# <http://www.ul.com/CodeAuthorities>



UL Explore all of ul.com Careers Contact

**Technical Resources**

Public Educational Resources

Code Authority FAQ's

Our LinkedIn Page

Regulatory News and Developments

**Newsletters for Code Authorities**

UL quarterly newsletters provide code authorities with relevant technical articles and timely updates on UL developments that can enhance your ability to approve safe, sustainable code compliant installations.

**Complimentary subscriptions** – Access to all of our newsletters is free. [Sign up here](#)

**Smoke Alarms – Additional Scientific Resources**

1. [UL FSRI Comparison of Modern and Legacy Home Furnishings](#)
2. [NFPA Smoke Characterization Project Reports](#)
  - [Smoke Alarm Nuisance Source Characterization \(Phase 1\)](#)
  - [Smoke Alarm Nuisance Source Characterization: Experimental Results \(Phase 2\)](#)
3. [UL Report: Characterization of Smoke Alarm Nuisance Sources from Cooking Scenarios](#)

**Marking and Application Guides**

Marking and application guides are designed to assist code authorities, designers, and installers in determining the suitability of UL certified equipment for use in a particular installation. [Click here](#)

<http://www.ul.com/CodeAuthorities>

## BUILDING, FIRE AND MECHANICAL GUIDES

**Application guides for equipment regulated by building, fire and mechanical codes.**

[Commercial Cooking Application Guide »](#)

[Damper Marking and Application Guide »](#)



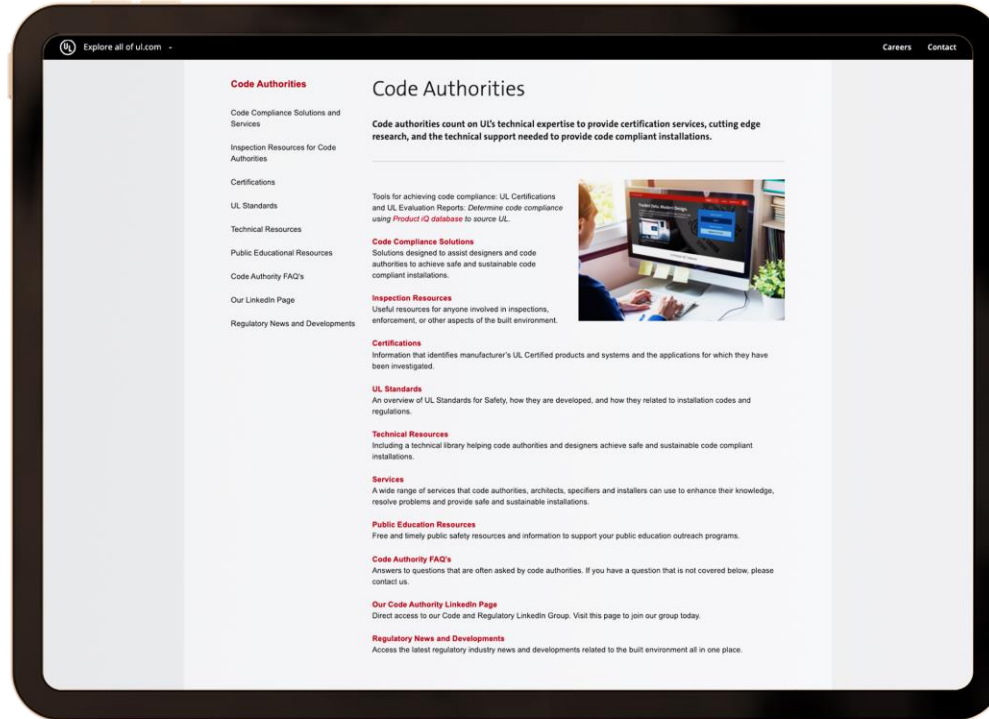
[Damper Marking and Application Guide \(PDF Format\) »](#)

[Damper Marking and Application Guide \(Arabic\) »](#)

[Doors, Windows and Related Hardware Application Guide »](#)

[Doors, Windows and Related Hardware Application Guide \(PDF Format\) »](#)

# <http://www.ul.com/CodeAuthorities>



# Questions or comments?

For more information regarding **dampers for fire and smoke protection**, please contact us at:

- 405-760-6724
- [Jonathan.roberts@ul.com](mailto:Jonathan.roberts@ul.com)
- [www.UL.com/CodeAuthorities](http://www.UL.com/CodeAuthorities)

[UL.com/Solutions](http://UL.com/Solutions)



# Thank you

[UL.com/Solutions](https://www.ul.com/Solutions)

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**



### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: Kelly Nicoletto  
Organization: UL Solutions  
Address: 333 Pfingsten Rd, Northbrook Il 60062  
E-mail: Kelly.Nicoletto@ul.com Telephone: 6822018938  
Website: UL.com  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Fire and Smoke Dampers  
Course instructor: Jonathan Roberts  
Course description: This class will provide students with an overview of the 2018 IBC Chapter 7 requirements for duct and air transfer openings and fire and smoke dampers as related to overall fire-resistance construction for passive fire protection. This will include requirements for damper testing, ratings and actuation. The class will provide students with insight on how the different types of dampers are tested to achieve fire damper and/or smoke damper ratings and the proper installation and maintenance of dampers for code compliance. Students will receive useful tips for conducting plan review and field inspections of dampers to ensure code compliance with IBC Chapter 7 requirements.  
Instructional hours per session: 2 Number of Sessions: 1  
Course Date(s) and Location: 18 October 2023, Virtual

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:   
Existing Buildings:   
Electrical Instruction:   
Plumbing Instruction:   
Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online?  On Demand  Webinar

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation): \_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:  Administrative Course, All Certifications:  Commercial Certifications:

**Application materials included:**

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives  
 Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)  
 Assessment Materials (for online courses)  
 Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

**File Attachments for Item:**

ER-5 Fire-Rated Construction (Underwriters Laboratories Solutions)

All certifications (2 hours)

Staff Notes: For ratification of administratively approved course presented on October 18.

Committee Recommendation:



## 2-HR Program: **Fire-rated Construction**

*This class will provide students with an overview of the 2018 IBC Chapter 7 requirements for fire resistance-rated construction covering the requirements for fire-resistant assemblies. The class will provide students with insight on how walls, ceilings, structural elements (beams and columns) are tested to achieve fire-resistance ratings. Students will receive useful tips for conducting plan review and field inspections to ensure code compliance with IBC Chapter 7 requirements.*

### Bio:

Bruce Johnson

- Regulatory Services Manager in UL Solutions' Codes and Regulatory Services department, joining UL Solutions in April 2015
- Served several decades in the fire, emergency services and life safety arena beginning his career in the late 1970s as a volunteer firefighter on Long Island, New York
- More recently, Bruce Johnson has worked for the International Code Council (ICC) as a vice president in the government relations department focusing on fire service activities.
- Currently serves on the ICC International Fire Code development committee; serves on NFPA 1 Fire Code (Chair of Building Systems and Special Occupancies TC) and serves as an alternate to 101, 730, 731 and 5000.
- Former adjunct college instructor at SUNY Empire State College instructing in the areas of fire protection structures and systems, emergency management and community risk reduction
- Extensive expertise in building construction and fire prevention codes, code and standard development and code administration
- *Distinguished Member of Technical Staff*  
**William Henry Merrill Society**

### Course Outline:

A brief IBC/BC Basics Review

Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction

- Definitions
- International Building Code
- Establishing Fire-Resistance Ratings
- Methods of Showing Code Compliance
- Permitted Changes to Designs

- Plan Review
  - Inspection Process
  - Navigating the UL Solutions' on-line search tool **Product iQ**
- Summary and Closing



### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: Kelly Nicoletto  
Organization: UL Solutions  
Address: 333 Pfingsten Rd, Northbrook Il 60062  
E-mail: Kelly.Nicoletto@ul.com Telephone: 6822018938  
Website: UL.com  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Fire Rated Construction  
Course instructor: Bruce Johnson  
Course description: This class will provide students with an overview of the 2018 IBC Chapter 7 requirements for fire resistance-rated construction covering the requirements for fire-resistant assemblies. The class will provide students with insight on how walls, ceilings, structural elements (beams and columns) are tested to achieve fire-resistance ratings. Students will receive useful tips for conducting plan review and field inspections to ensure code compliance with IBC Chapter 7 requirements.

Instructional hours per session: 2 Number of Sessions: 1  
Course Date(s) and Location: 18 October 2023, Virtual

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:   
Existing Buildings:   
Electrical Instruction:   
Plumbing Instruction:   
Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online?  On Demand  Webinar

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation): \_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:   
Administrative Course, All Certifications:  Commercial Certifications:

**Application materials included:**

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives  
 Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)  
 Assessment Materials (for online courses)  
 Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)



# Fire Resistance- Rated Construction

**Ohio Building Officials**  
October 18, 2023

Bruce E. Johnson,  
UL Solutions Codes and Regulatory Services



**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.

# Copyright materials

---

This presentation is protected by US and International Copyright laws. Reproduction, distribution, display and use of the presentation without written permission of the speaker is prohibited.

# Brief Bio - Bruce E. Johnson



- Regulatory Services Manager in UL Solutions' Codes and Regulatory Services department, joining UL Solutions in April 2015
- Served several decades in the fire, emergency services and life safety arena beginning his career in the late 1970s as a volunteer firefighter on Long Island, New York
- More recently, Bruce Johnson has worked for the International Code Council (ICC) as a vice president in the government relations department focusing on fire service activities.
- Currently serves on the ICC International Fire Code development committee; serves on NFPA 1 Fire Code (Chair of Building Systems and Special Occupancies TC) and serves as an alternate to 101, 730, 731 and 5000.
- Former adjunct college instructor at SUNY Empire State College instructing in the areas of fire protection structures and systems, emergency management and community risk reduction
- Extensive expertise in building construction and fire prevention codes, code and standard development and code administration
- *Distinguished Member of Technical Staff*  
**William Henry Merrill Society**

# Agenda

A brief IBC/BC NYS Basics Review  
Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction

- Definitions
- International Building Code/NY State Building Code Requirements
- Establishing Fire-Resistance Ratings
- Methods of Showing Code Compliance
- Permitted Changes to Designs
- Plan Review
- Inspection Process
- Navigating the UL Solutions' on-line search tool **Product iQ**

Summary and Closing



# Objectives

At the end of this lesson, you will:



Understand the intent and purpose behind *fire-resistive construction*



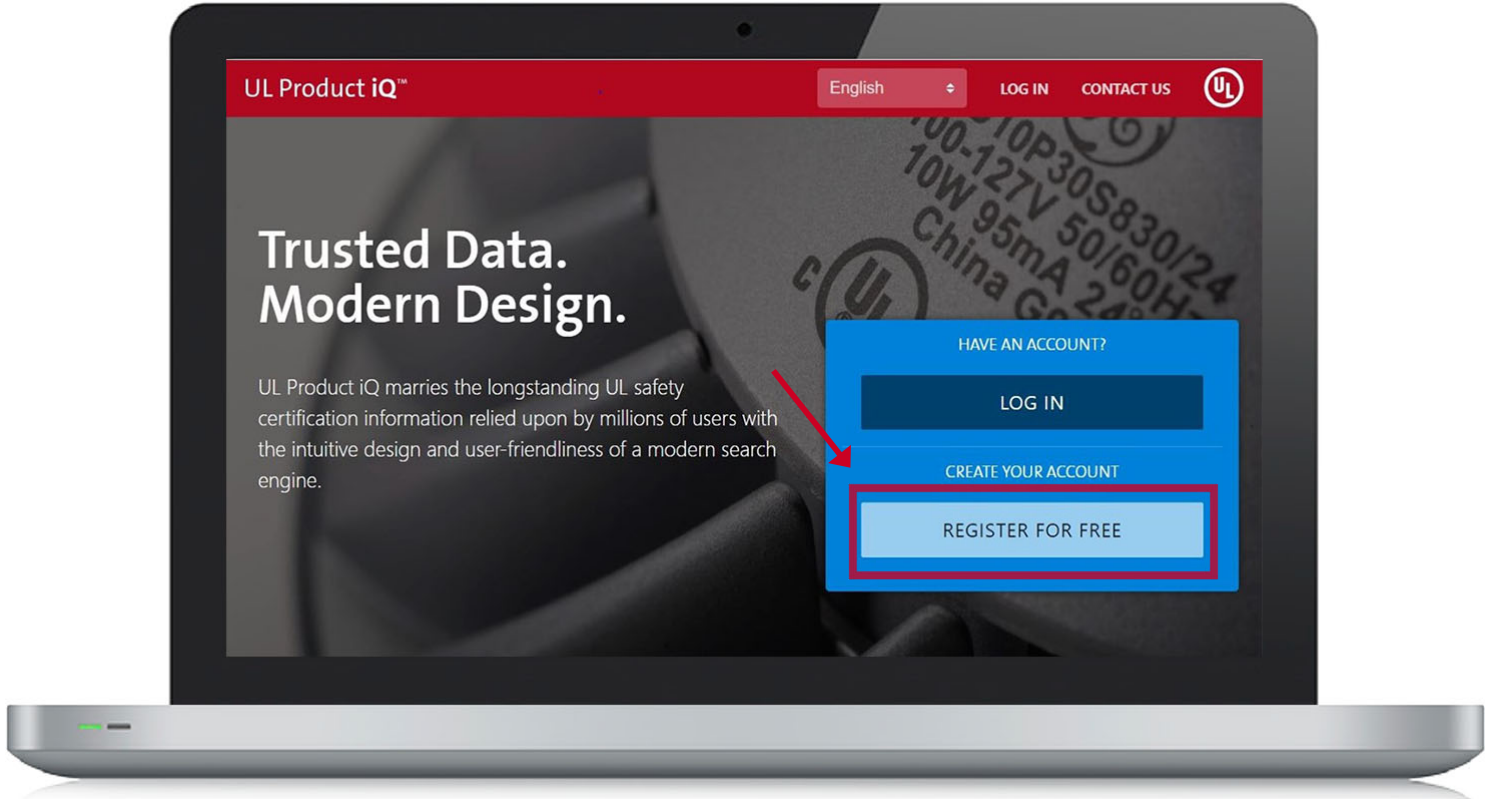
Understand the code requirements, testing procedures, plan review requirements and inspection practices relating to *fire-resistive construction*



Be able to navigate UL's Product iQ in order to identify *listed* products and assemblies, which demonstrate compliance with the requirements of the 2018 *International Building Code (IBC)* / 2020 *NY State BC*.

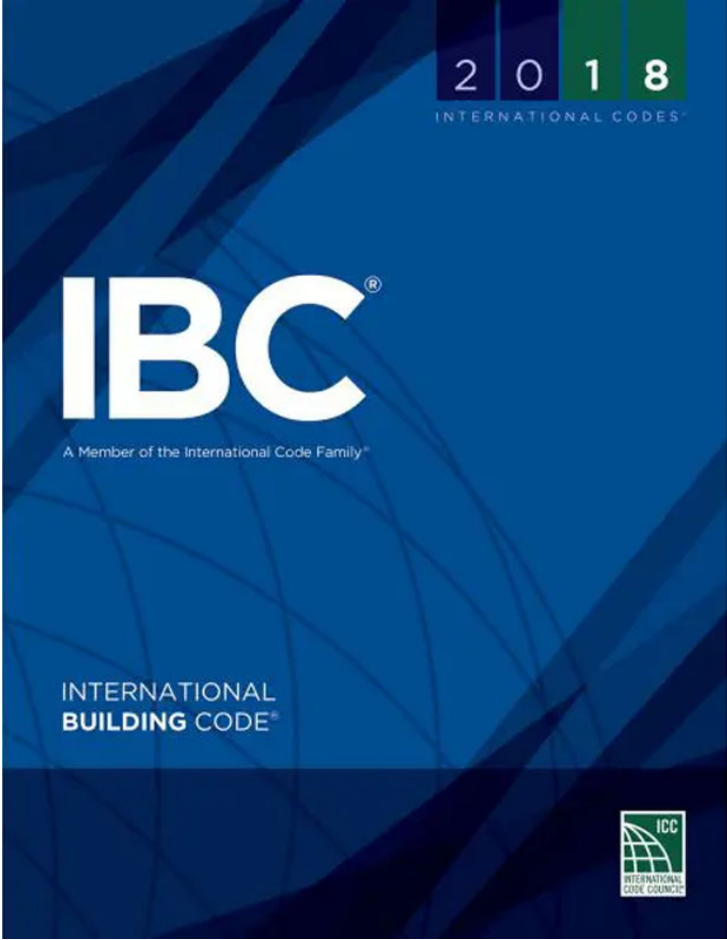


# Let's Get You Registered



# Building Code Basics

Some Fundamentals



# Use of the International Building Code (IBC)



*Definitions* –  
Chapter 2



Occupancy  
Classification



Use of Tables –  
Scoping Section



Table  
Footnotes



Code  
Exceptions



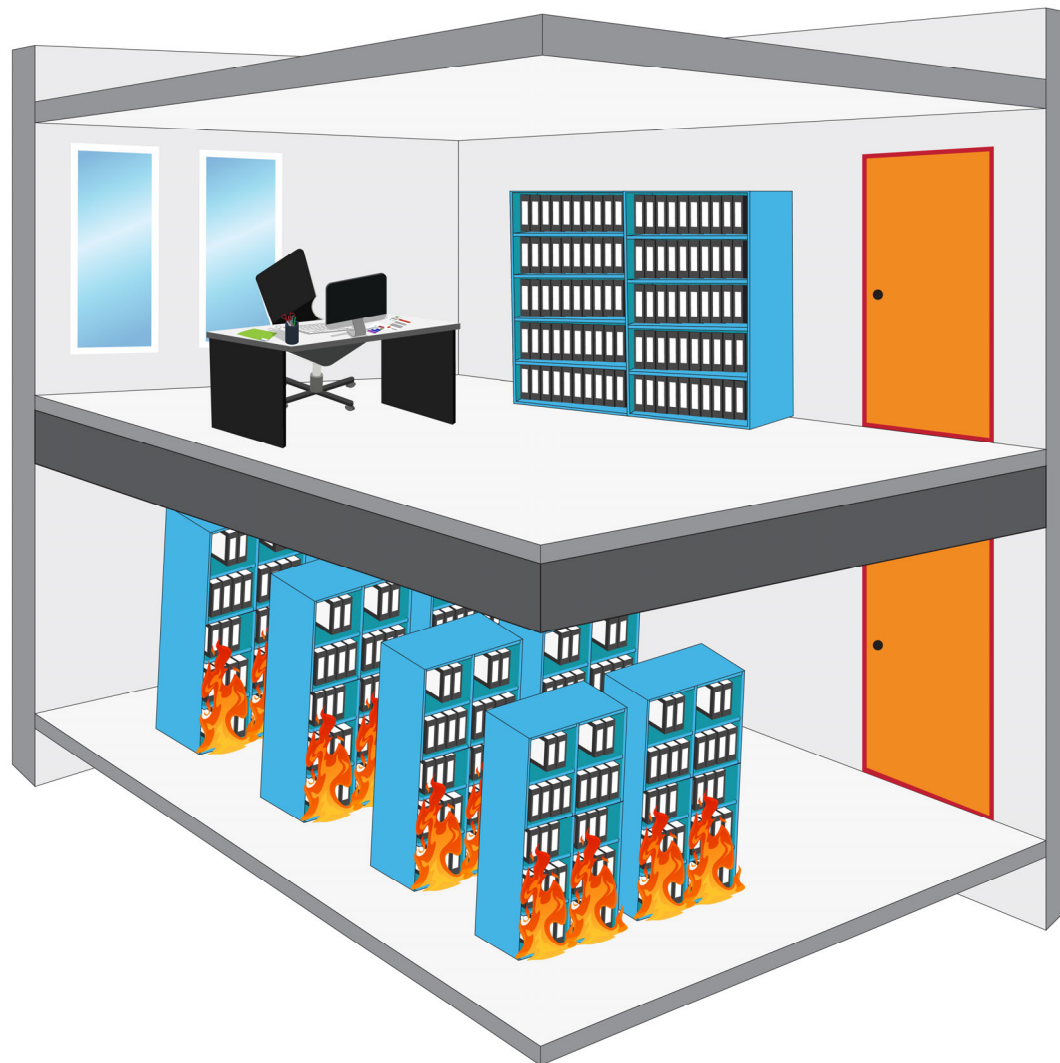
Reference  
Standards



Index and  
Glossary

# Fire-resistance rated construction

CXP22EVCS506456



# Passive Fire Protection

The IBC takes a systematic approach to building fire protection, including:

## Passive Fire Protection

**Fire Area** = The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by *fire walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies* of a building.

## Active Fire Protection

**Fire Protection System** = Approved devices, equipment and systems or combinations of systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

Reasonable level of redundancy; inspection, testing and maintenance

# More Definitions

## Fire resistance

That property of materials or their assemblies that prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases or flames under conditions of use. (IBC)

## Fire resistance-rating

The period of time a building element, component or assembly maintains the ability to confine a fire, continues to perform a given structural function, or both, as determined by the tests, or the methods based on tests, prescribed in Section 703.3 (IBC)

- Passage of Flames
- Heat Transmission
- Structural Integrity

## Fire protection-rating

The period of time that an opening protective will maintain the ability to confine a fire as determined by tests prescribed in Section 715. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes. (IBC)

- Passage of Flames
- Structural Integrity

# Standards Writing Organizations



American National Standards Institute (ANSI)



**Solutions**

Underwriters Laboratories  
(UL Solutions)



FM Global  
(FM)



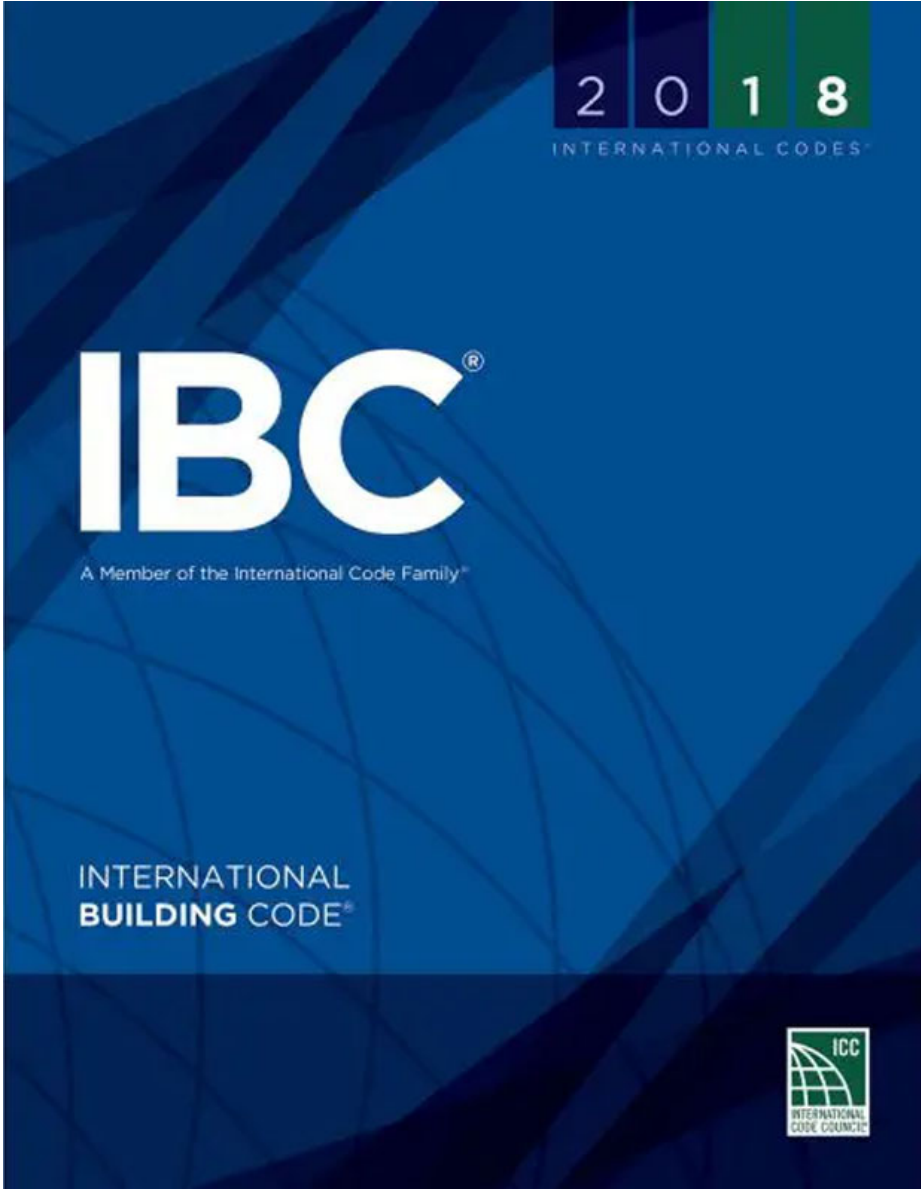
National Fire  
Protection Association (NFPA)



ASTM  
International  
(ASTM)

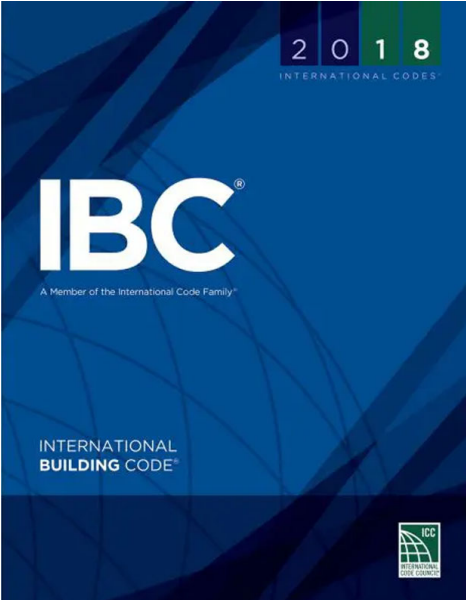


# Fire-Resistance- Rated Construction





# Code Requirements



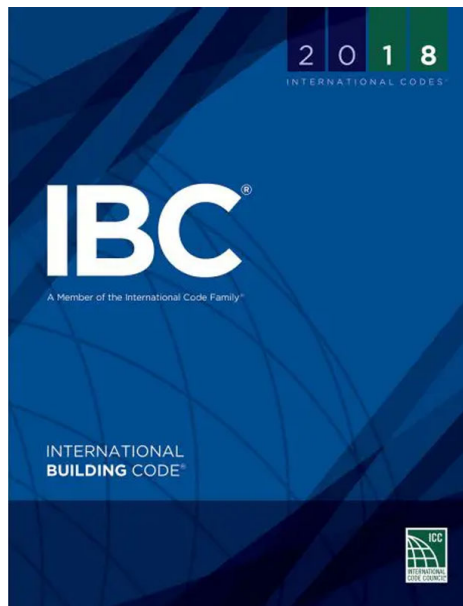
Chapters 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 10 of the IBC

Chapters 3 and 4 – Defines Occupancies

Chapter 5 – General Building Heights and Areas

- Permitted building area based on four factors:
  - Type of construction
  - Occupancy
  - Available frontage
  - Use of sprinklers
- Section 508 – Covers mixed use considerations

# Code Requirements Cont.



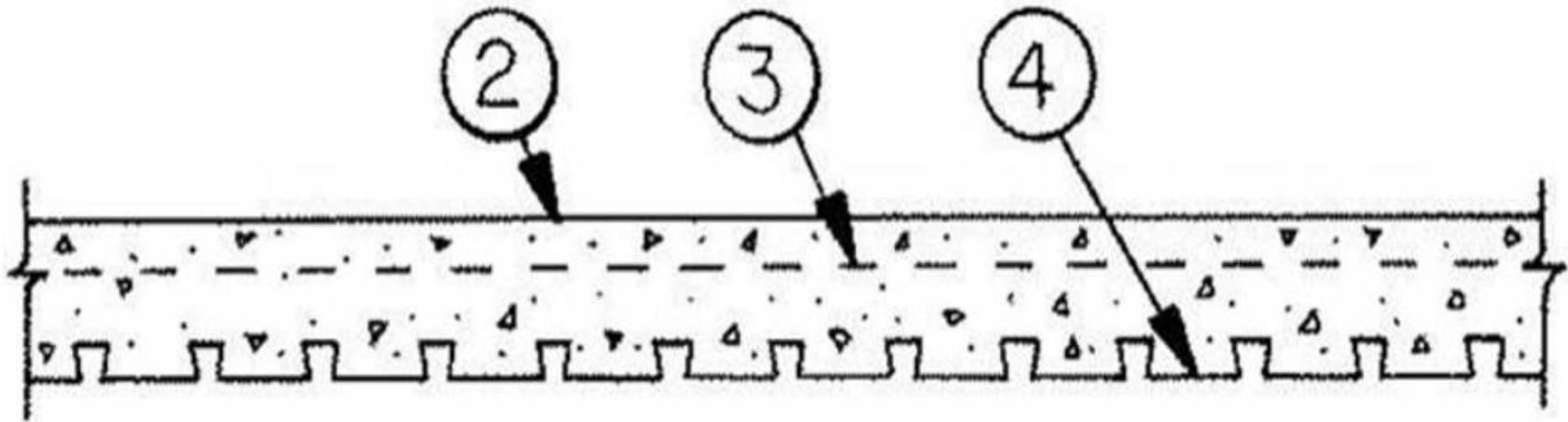
## Chapter 6 – Types of Construction

- Table 601 – Establishes hourly rating required for building elements based on Type of Construction

## Chapter 7 – Fire and Smoke Protection Features

- 703.2 – *Fire-resistance ratings* shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263
- 703.2.1 – Nonsymmetrical walls shall be tested from both faces
- 703.2.3 – Assemblies considered unrestrained unless registered design professional provides evidence satisfactory to AHJ that construction qualifies for restrained classification per ASTM E 119 or UL 263

# Restrained and Unrestrained



**Designer and AHJ  
must determine**

**Unrestrained ratings may  
be used for either condition**

# Restrained & Unrestrained Cont.

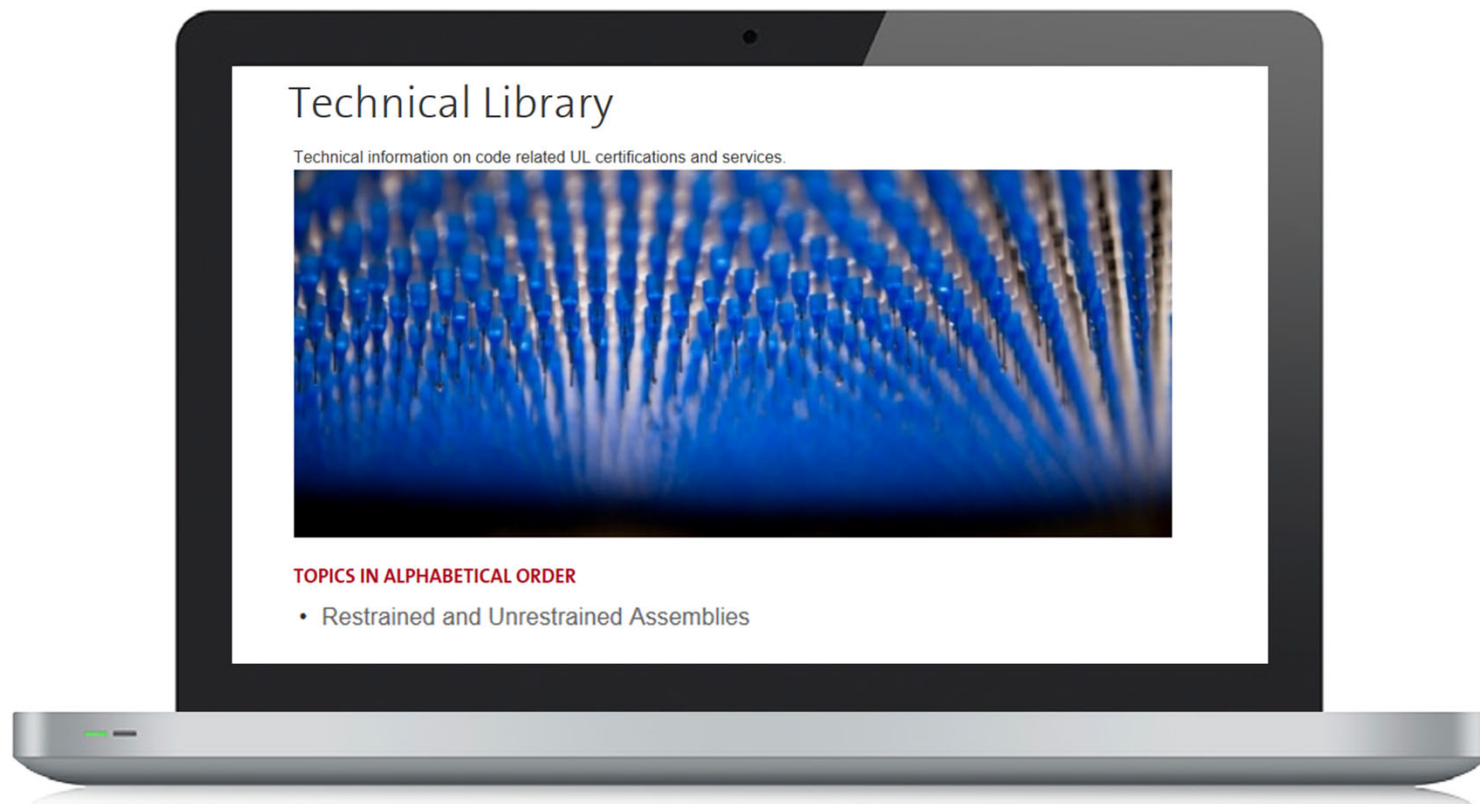
- |    |  |              |
|----|--|--------------|
| I. | Wall Bearing:  |              |
| A. | Single span and simply supported end spans of multiple bays, <sup>a</sup>                                |              |
| 1. | Open-web steel joists or steel beams supporting concrete slab, precast units, or metal decking           | Unrestrained |
| 2. | Concrete slabs, precast units, or metal decking  | Unrestrained |
| B. | Interior spans of multiple bays  |              |
| 1. | Open-web steel joists, steel beams, or metal decking supporting continuous concrete slab                 | Restrained   |
| 2. | Open-web steel joists or steel beams, supporting precast units or metal decking                          | Unrestrained |
| 3. | Cast-in-place concrete slab systems  | Restrained   |
| 4. | Precast concrete where the potential thermal expansion is resisted by adjacent construction <sup>b</sup> | Restrained   |

# Restrained & Unrestrained Cont.

## II. Steel Framing:

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| A. Steel beams welded, riveted, or bolted to the framing members   | Restrained |
| B. All types of cast-in-place floor and roof systems (such as beam-and-slabs, flat slabs, pan joists, and waffle slabs) where the floor or roof system is secured to the framing members   | Restrained |
| C. All types of prefabricated floor or roof systems where the structural members are secured to the framing members and the potential thermal expansion of the floor or roof system is resisted by the framing system or the adjoining floor or roof construction <sup>b</sup> | Restrained |

# Code Authority – Technical Library

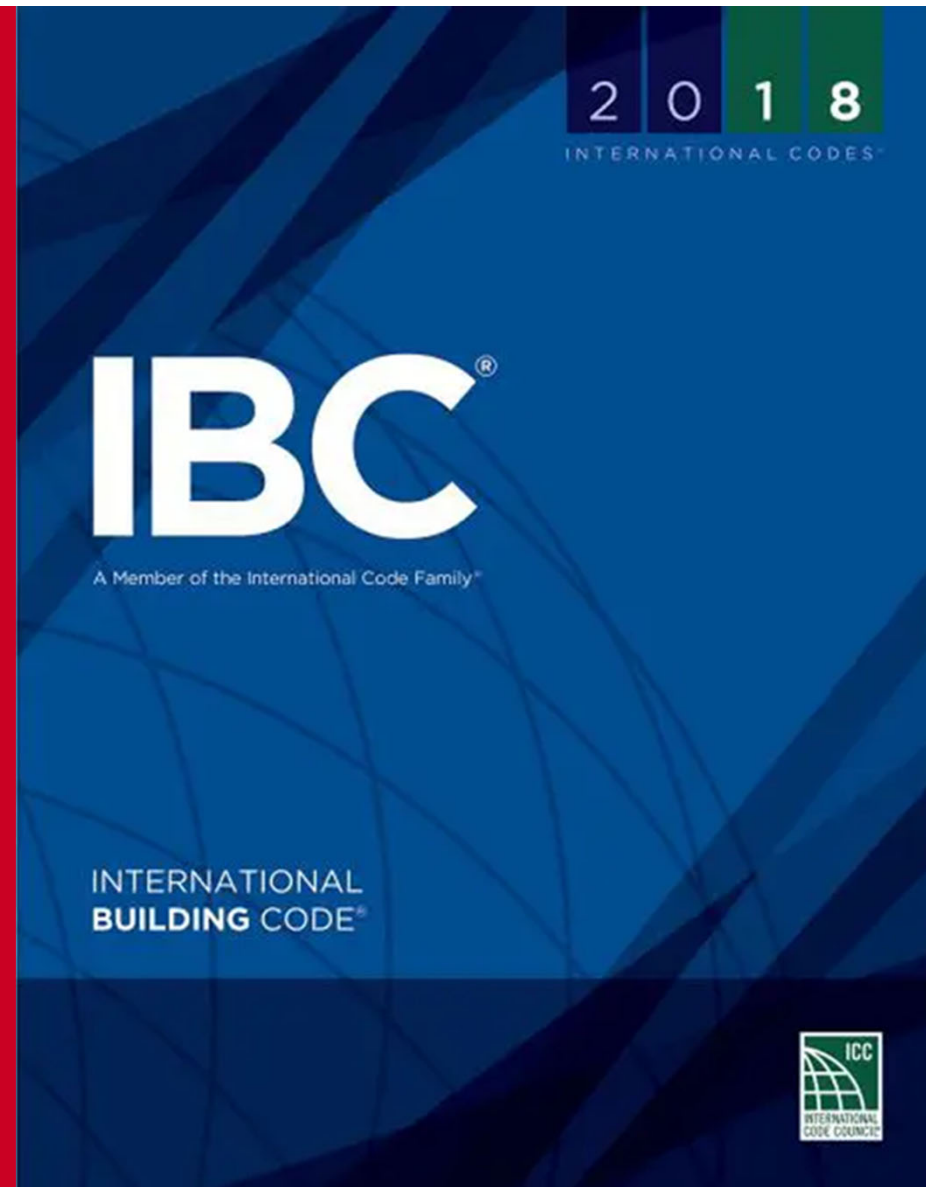


# Code Requirements Cont.

- 703.3 – Methods for determining *fire resistance* shall be based on fire exposure and acceptance criteria of ASTM E 119 or UL 263

**703.3** Cont. – Required *fire resistance* permitted to be established based on any of the following:

1. Designs documented from approved sources
2. Prescriptive requirements from Section 721
3. Calculations in accordance with Section 722
4. Engineering analysis based on ASTM E 119 or UL 263
5. Alternative protection methods as allowed in Section 104.11
6. Fire-resistance designs certified by an *approved agency*



## Code Requirements Cont.

- Breaches of assemblies shall be protected in accordance with Sections 712, 713, 714, 715 and 716

### Chapter 10 – Means of Egress

- Table 1020.1– Establishes hourly rating required for corridors based on Occupancy Group





# Important Definitions

## Fire-resistance

That property of materials or their assemblies that prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases or flames under conditions of use. (IBC)

## Fire-resistance rating

The period-of-time a building element, component or assembly maintains the ability to confine a fire, continues to perform a given structural function, or both, as determined by the tests, or the methods based on tests, prescribed in Section 703.3. (IBC)

- Passage of Flames
- Heat Transmission
- Structural Integrity

# Fire Resistance

- Expressed as an Hourly Time Period
- Ratings range from 1/2 to 4 hours
- Containment of fire to room or floor of origin (horizontal and vertical compartmentalization)



# Definitions Cont.

## Fire-protection rating

The period of time that an opening protective will maintain the ability to confine a fire as determined by tests prescribed in Section 715. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes. (IBC)

- Passage of Flames
- Structural Integrity

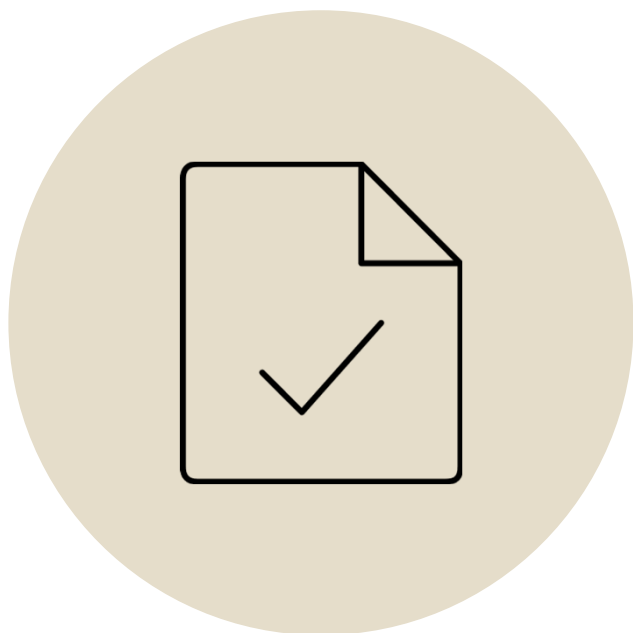
FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION

---

# Establishing Fire-Resistance Ratings



# Standards



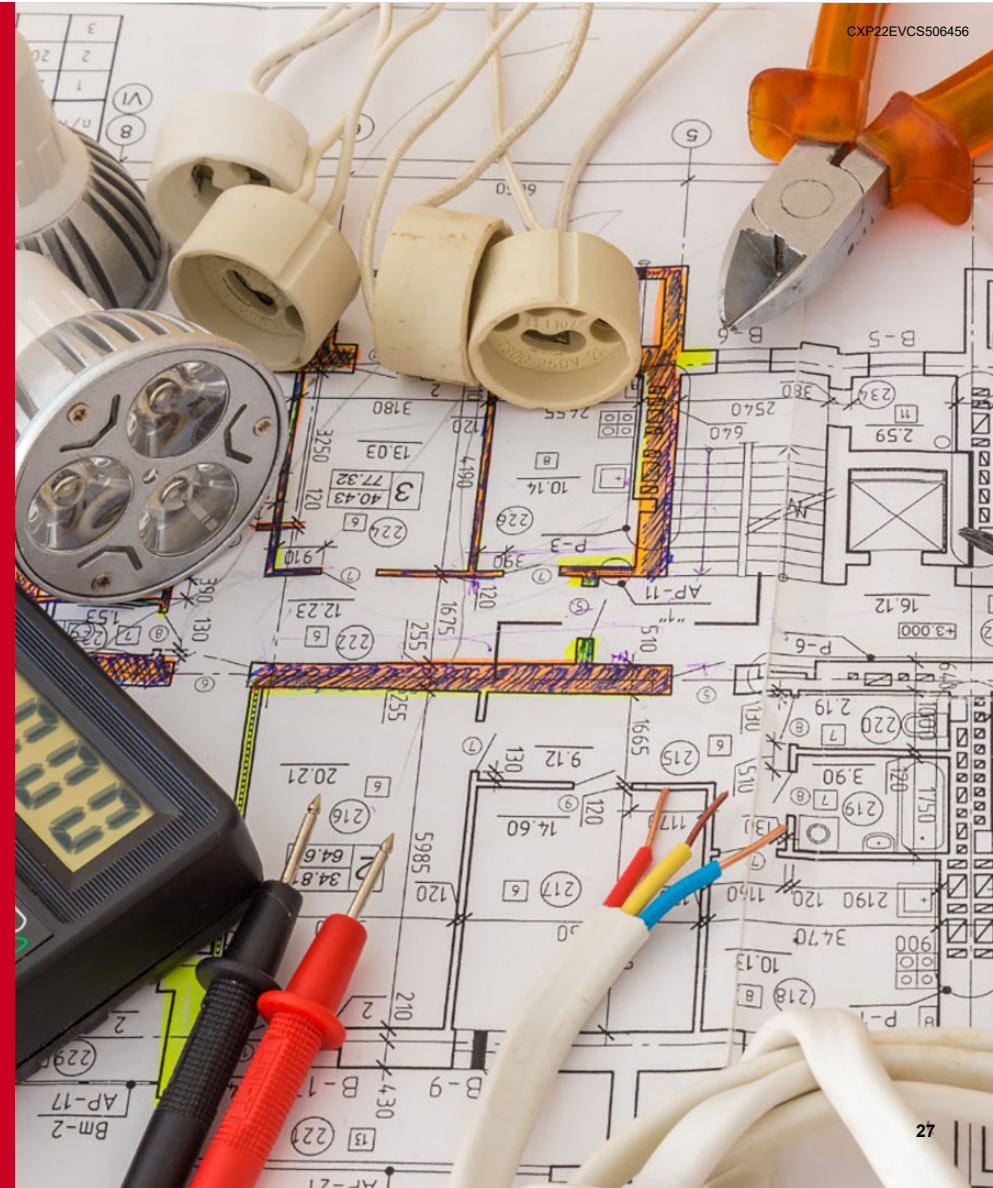
ANSI / UL 263

ASTM E 119

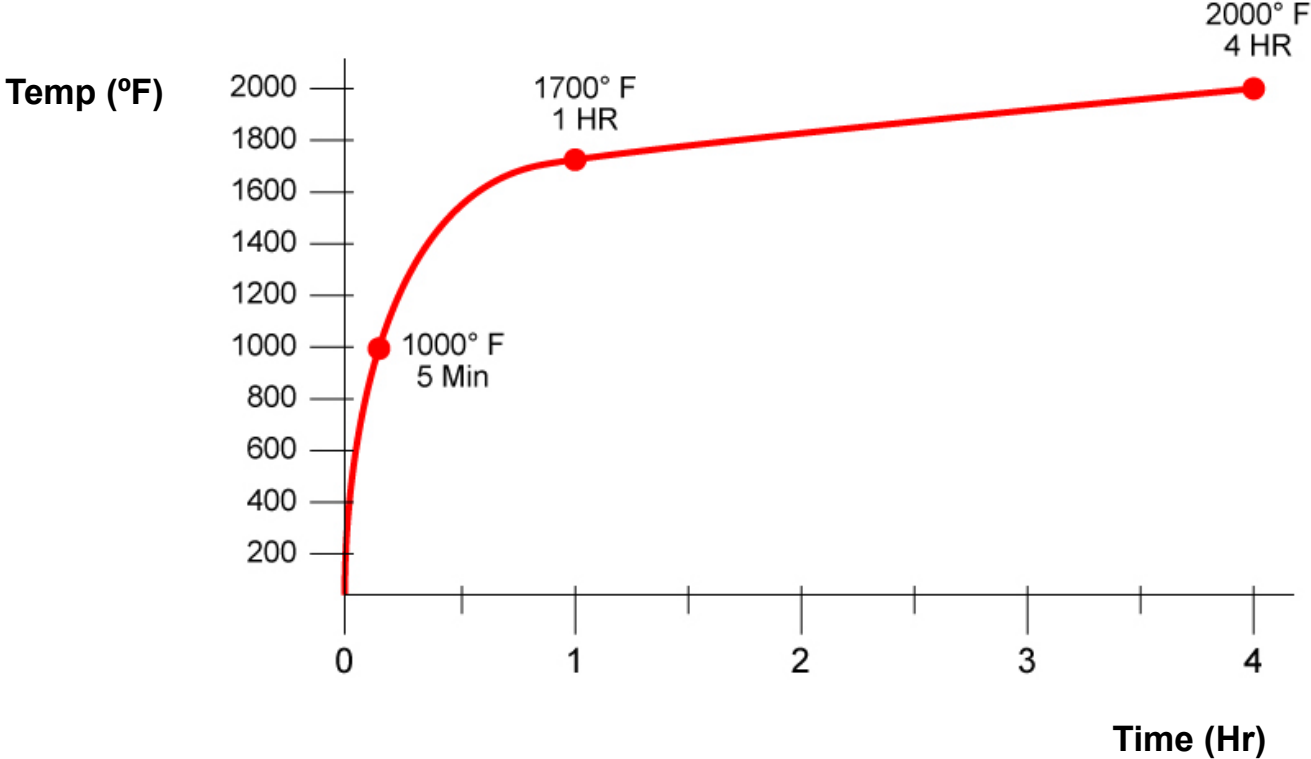


# Building Components

- Columns
- Beams
- Floor/Ceilings (F/C) or Roof/Ceilings (R/C)
- Walls



# Time - Temperature Curve



# Columns

Sample size – Minimum 9 ft

Tested unloaded











# Conditions of Acceptance – Columns



1000°F /  
1200°F











# Beams



Sample size –  
Minimum 12 ft



Load applied –  
Per design



















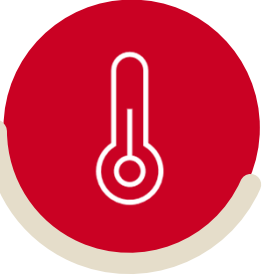




# Conditions of Acceptance – Beams



Support load



1100°F / 1300°F

# Floor/Ceiling or Roof/Ceilings



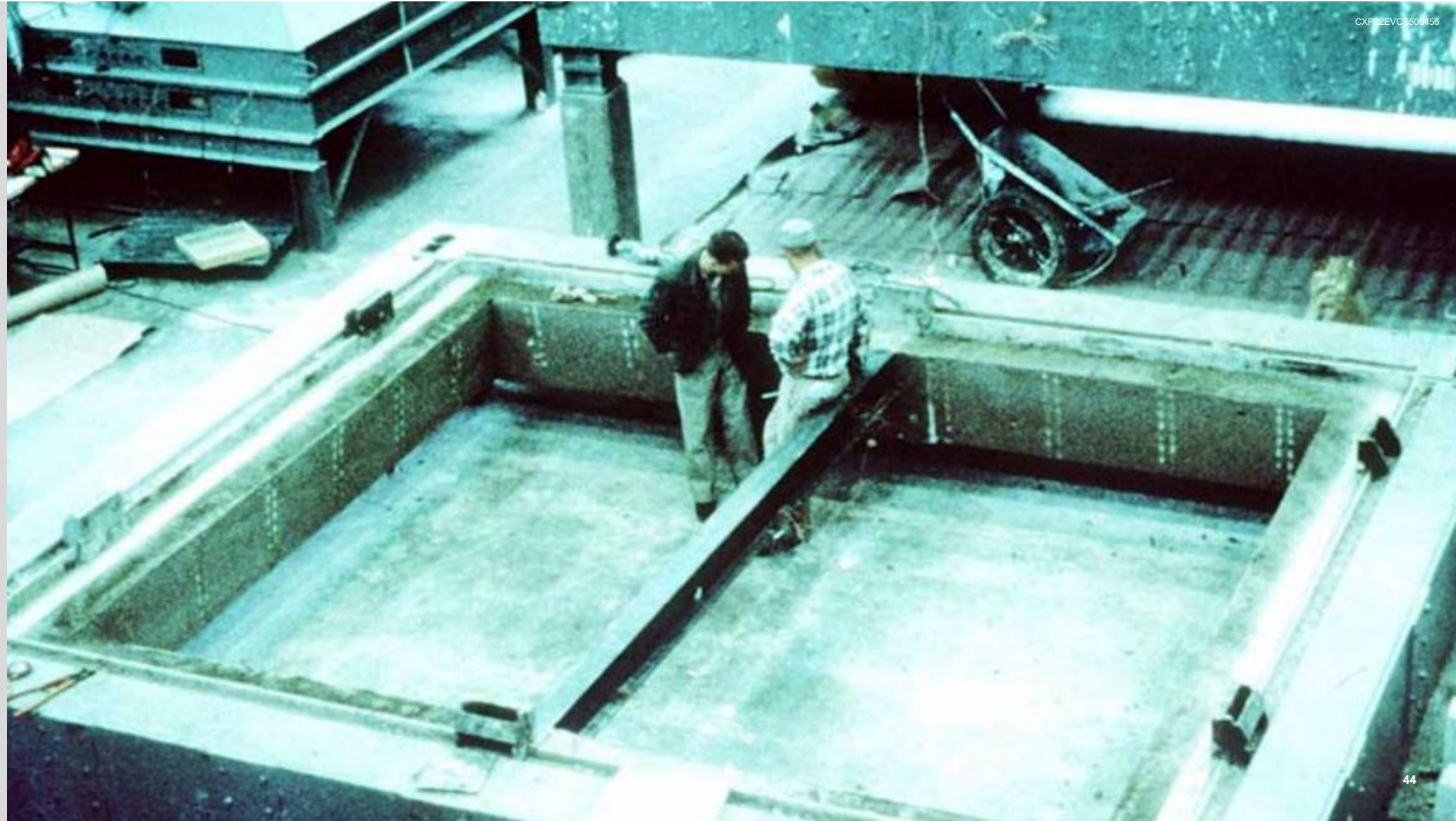
Sample size –  
180 sq ft / 12 ft



Load applied –  
Per design































# Conditions of Acceptance Floor/Ceilings or Roof/Ceilings



Support load



Flame passage



250°F / 325°F



Support temperatures  
(beams) 1100°F / 1300°F







# Walls



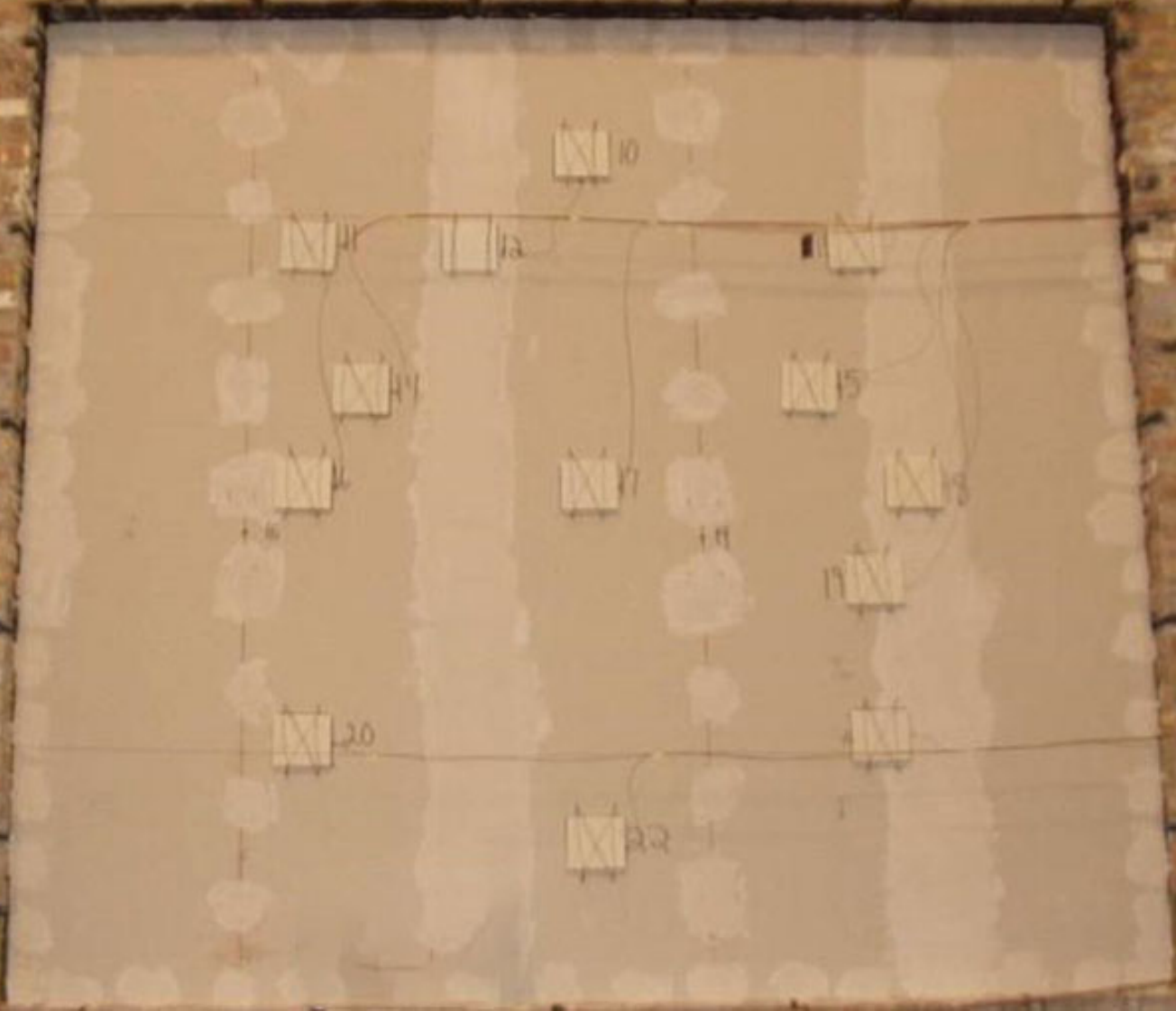
100 sq ft / 9 ft



Load applied –  
Per design























# Conditions of Acceptance – Walls



Flame passage



250°F / 325°F



Support load

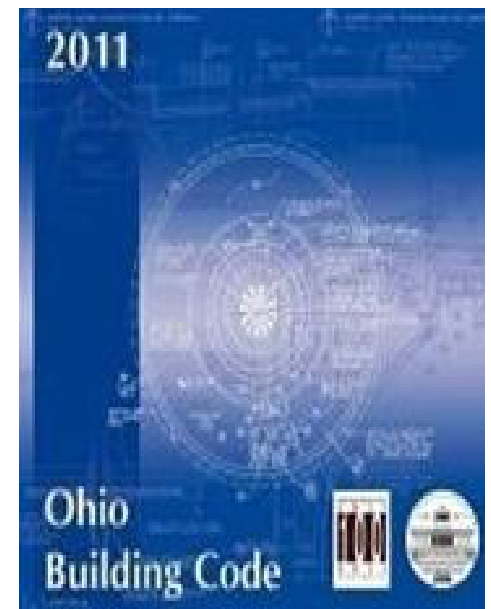
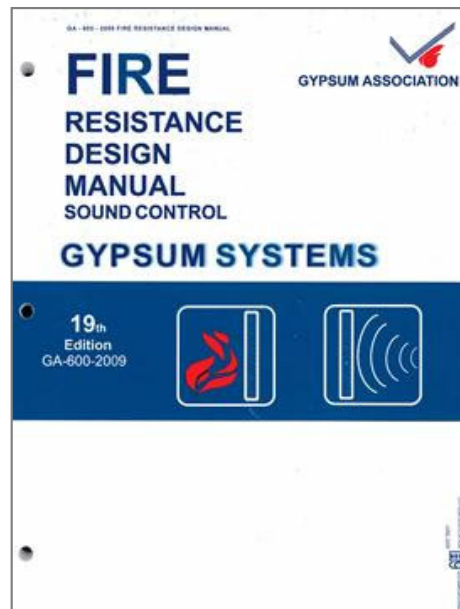
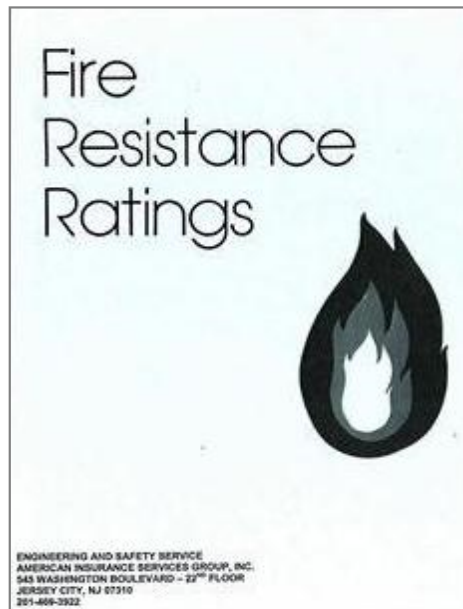
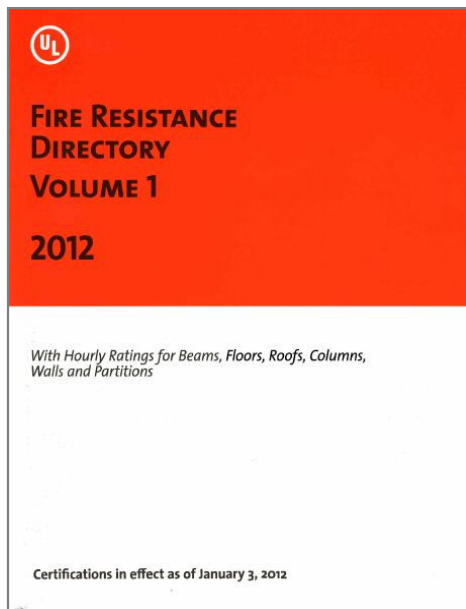


Hose stream  
(2 ½ minutes at 30 psi)



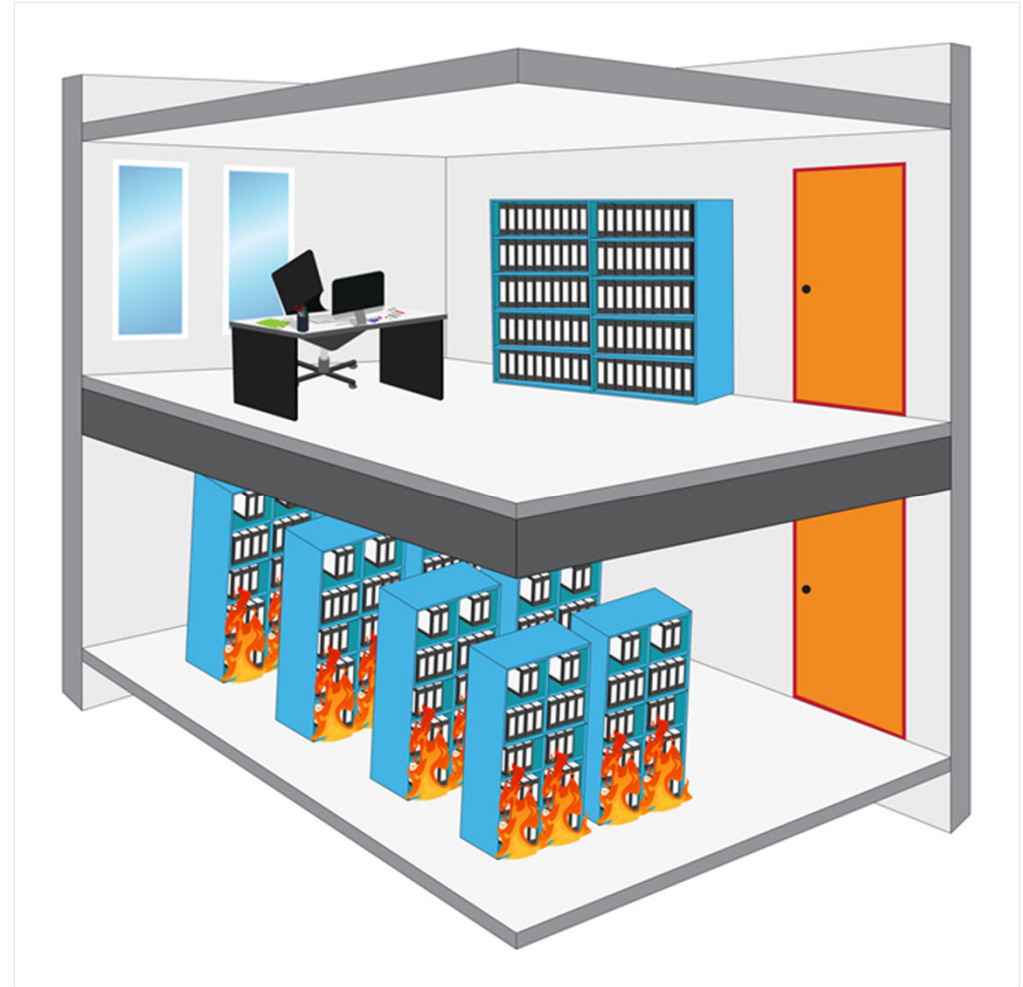
# Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction

- Methods of Showing Code Compliance



## Methods of Showing Compliance with the Fire Resistance Requirements of the IBC

- 703.2 – *Fire-resistance* ratings shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263
- 703.3 – Methods for determining *fire resistance* shall be based on fire exposure and acceptance criteria of ASTM E 119 or UL 263



## Code Requirements Cont.

**703.3** Cont. – Required *fire resistance* permitted to be established based on any of the following:

1. Designs documented from *approved* sources
2. Prescriptive requirements from Section 721
3. Calculations in accordance with Section 722
4. Engineering analysis based on ASTM E 119 or UL 263
5. Alternative protection methods as allowed in Section 104.11
6. Fire-resistance designs certified by an approved agency.



# Designs Documented From Approved Sources

- Product Directories of Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories

UL Solutions	Intertek	FM Global
<i>Fire Resistance Directory and Online Product iQ</i>	<i>Intertek Directories of Certified Products</i>	<i>Factory Mutual Approval Guide</i>

# Designs Documented From Approved Sources Cont.

<b>Gypsum Association</b>	<b>BOCA</b>	<b>ASCE / SFPE 29</b>	<b>ACI 261.1 / TMS 0216.1</b>
<i>Fire Resistance Design Manual</i>	<i>Guidelines for Determining Fire Resistance Ratings of Building Elements</i>	<i>Standard Calculation Methods for Structural Fireproofing</i>	<i>Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies</i>

# Prescriptive Fire Resistance Section 721 of the IBC

FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

TABLE 720.1(1) — continued  
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS<sup>a</sup>

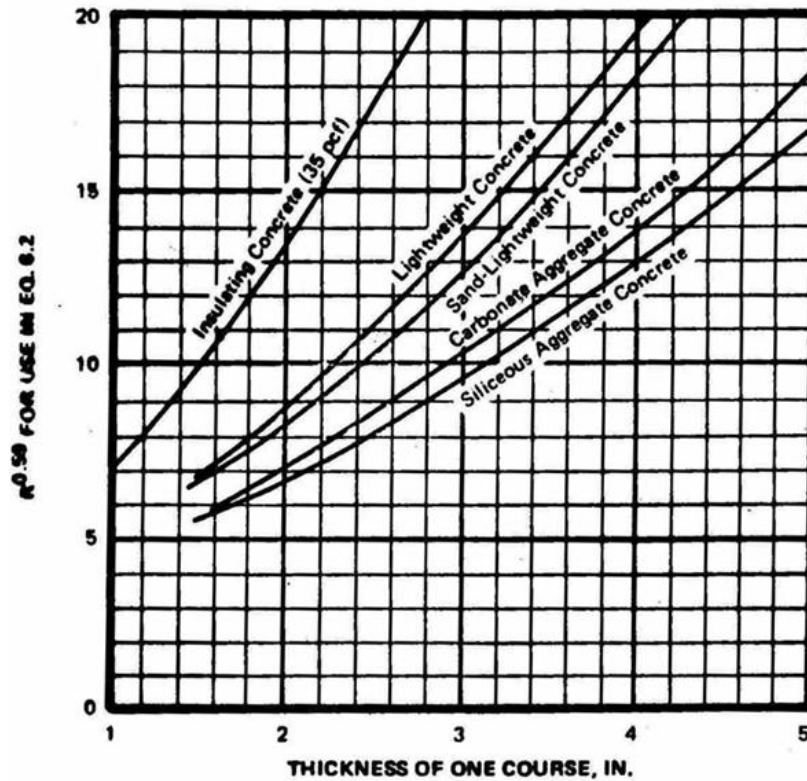
STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hour	3 hour	2 hour	1 hour
	2-3.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on a metal lath cage, wire tied to 0.165" diameter (No. 8 B.W. gage) steel wire hangers wrapped around beam and spaced 16" on center. Metal lath ties spaced approximately 5" on center at cage sides and bottom.  Two layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>b</sup> are attached to U-shaped brackets spaced 24" on center. 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) 1 3/4" deep by 1" galvanized steel runner channels are first installed parallel to and on each side of the top beam flange to provide a 1/2" clearance to the flange. The channel runners are attached to steel deck or concrete floor construction with approved fasteners spaced 12" on center. U-shaped brackets are formed from members identical to the channel runners. At the bent portion of the U-shaped bracket, the flanges of the channel are	—	7/8	—	—

3. Bonded prestensioned reinforcement in prestressed concrete <sup>e</sup>	3-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous <sup>f</sup> aggregate concrete	4 <sup>g</sup>	3 <sup>g</sup>	2 1/2	1 1/2
		Beams or girders		2	1 1/2	1
		Solid slabs <sup>h</sup>				

3. Bonded prestensioned reinforcement in prestressed concrete <sup>e</sup>	3-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous <sup>f</sup> aggregate concrete	4 <sup>g</sup>	3 <sup>g</sup>	2 1/2	1 1/2
		Beams or girders		2	1 1/2	1
		Solid slabs <sup>h</sup>				
		Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous <sup>f</sup> aggregate concrete				
		Unrestrained members:				
		Solid slabs <sup>h</sup>	—	2	1 1/2	—
		Beams and girders <sup>i</sup>	4 1/2	2 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2
		8" wide	3	2 1/2	2	1 1/2
		greater than 12" wide				
		Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous aggregate				
		Restrained members: <sup>j</sup>				
		Solid slabs <sup>h</sup>	1 1/4	1	3/4	—
		Beams and girders <sup>i</sup>	2 1/2	2	1 1/4	—
		8" wide	2	1 1/4	1 1/4	—
		greater than 12" wide				

(continued)

# Calculated Fire Resistance Section 722 of the IBC



R, MINUTES	$R^{0.59}$
60	11.20
120	16.85
180	21.41
240	25.37

MATERIAL	$R^{0.59}$
1-IN. CELLULAR PLASTIC	2.57
3/4-IN. GLASS FIBER BOARD	4.03
1-1/2-IN. GLASS FIBER BOARD	8.57
1/2-IN. GYPSUM WALLBOARD	7.44
5/8-IN. GYPSUM WALLBOARD	8.49
2-IN. FOAM GLASS	10.61

# Alternate Materials, Design and Methods of Construction and Equipment

Allows authority having jurisdiction to accept other information to show compliance

- Evaluation Services Reports
- IAPMO Evaluation Services
- ICC Evaluation Services
- UL Evaluation Services

PASSIVE FIRE PROTECTION

# Engineering Judgments





# Engineering Judgments

- An Engineering Judgment is a letter or report issued by some knowledgeable party which evaluates the construction of some site-specific application which deviates from a tested design, system or assembly and concludes with a judgment of the applicable rating of that assembly

- Typically, an Engineering Judgment is used when a tested design, systems or assembly is unavailable
- Most often applied to fire resistive construction

- Applications for an Engineering Judgment
  - Design and system concept where multiple components, some listed and some unlisted, are used to field construct the finished assembly (e.g., wall)
  - Typically, products are not required to be listed by code
- Must be acceptable to the *Code Official*

# Who Issues Engineering Judgments?



Who issues Engineering Judgments?

- Professional engineer
- Fire protection engineer
- Manufacturer
- Testing laboratory

Individual issuing judgment must be acceptable to the *Code Official*

# Important Points of an Engineering Judgment



- No guidance from the International Code Council or the various *I-Codes*
- No guidance from UL Solutions
- Best documents available are from the International Firestop Council (IFC) – [www.firestop.org](http://www.firestop.org)

# IFC Guidelines



Four Documents – *International Firestop Council* (IFC) [www.firestop.org](http://www.firestop.org)

- Recommended IFC Guidelines for Evaluating Firestop Systems in Engineering Judgments (EJs)
  - Covers firestops, joint systems and grease/air duct assemblies
- Perimeter fire barrier systems
- Fire resistant duct enclosure systems for commercial kitchen exhaust ducts
- Fire resistant duct enclosure systems for ventilation ducts

# Summary of Engineering Judgments

Emphasizes  
importance of  
tested designs

Not a substitute  
for existing  
designs

Should be issued  
only by those  
who know the  
components

Based on sound  
engineering  
practices and  
knowledge of  
performance of  
the designs

Based on  
interpolation of  
previous testing

Issued only for a  
specific jobsite

Presented in  
clear detail

## FIRE RESISTIVE CONSTRUCTION

# UL Solutions Online Search Tools





# Organization Under Each Product Area



Guide Information



Designs, Systems or Assemblies



Product Categories (indexed by manufacturer's names)

# Guide Information

---

Equipment,  
materials or  
systems included  
in the Category

---

**Intended use,  
restrictions or  
supplemental  
information  
that apply**

---

Standard(s) used  
to evaluate  
products under  
the Category

---

Listing or  
Classification  
Mark information  
for the Category

### NUMBERING SYSTEM FOR FIRE-RATED ASSEMBLIES

#### TYPES OF PROTECTION

Groups of Construction	Membrane Protection					Direct-applied Protection			Unprotected	
	000-099	100-199	200-299	300-399	400-499	500-599	600-699	700-899		900-999
Floors-Ceilings: A or B* Concrete and Cellular Steel Floor	Concealed Grid System	(Reserved)	Exposed Grid System	(Reserved)	Metal Lath	Gypsum Board		Misc.	Spray-applied Fire-resistant Material	Unprotected
C - Glazing Systems	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)		(Reserved)	(Reserved)	Unprotected
D, E* or F* Concrete and Steel Floor Units	Concealed Grid System	(Reserved)	Exposed Grid System	Mineral and Fiber Boards	Metal Lath	Gypsum Board	Intumescent Fire-resistant Materials (IFRM)		Spray-applied Fire-resistant Material	Unprotected
G or H* Concrete and Steel Joists	Concealed Grid System	(Reserved)	Exposed Grid System	Mineral and Fiber Boards	Metal Lath	Gypsum Board		Misc.	Spray-applied Fire-resistant Material	Unprotected
I Non-load-bearing Horizontal Barrier	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)	Gypsum Board		(Reserved)	(Reserved)	(Reserved)

# Designs

---

Each design  
contains specific  
construction features

---

Many designs contain  
various options and  
various ratings

---

Must be followed exactly  
for rating to apply

FIRE RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION

---

# Permitted Changes to Designs



CXP22EVCS506456

81

# Guide Information

---

Equipment,  
materials or  
systems included  
in the Category

---

Intended use,  
restrictions or  
supplemental  
information  
that apply

---

Standard(s) used to  
evaluate products  
under the Category

---

Listing or  
Classification Mark  
information for  
the Category



**Fire-resistance Ratings - ANSI/UL 263, BXUV**

Guide Information for Fire-resistance Ratings

**Design Information Section**

The Design Information Section supplements the individual published designs and is organized as follows:

**I. INTRODUCTION**

1. Rapid-rise Fire Test	
2. Definitions	

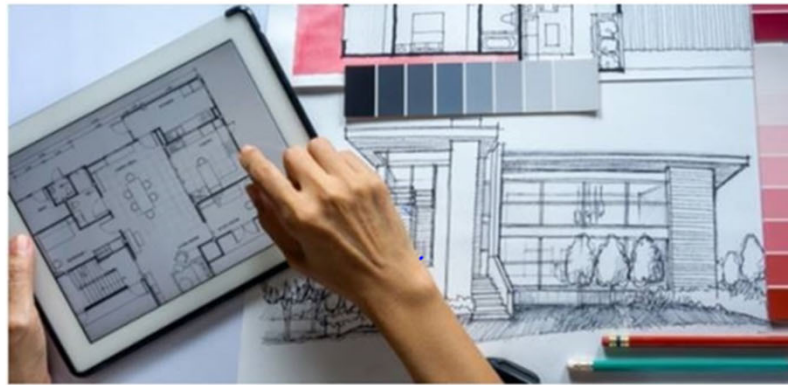
**II. GENERAL**

1. Metric Dimensions	12. Dampers
2. Loading of Test Specimens	13. Wood Structural Panels
3. Finish Ratings	14. Blanket Insulation
4. Nails and Screws	15. Sound Transmission Class (STC)
5. Interior and Exterior Applications	16. Impact Insulation Class (IIC)
6. Exposed Interior Finishes	17. Penetrations
7. Radiant Heating Cable and Panels	18. Curtain Wall/Floor Protection Systems
8. Coating Materials	19. Fire-resistant Joint Systems
9. Gypsum Board	20. Fire Doors, Frames and Hardware
10. Gypsum Board Joint Treatment (Taping)	21. Glazing, Wired Glass and Glass Blocks
11. Plaster	22. Exterior Wall Systems

**III. FLOOR-CEILINGS AND ROOF-CEILINGS**

1. Concrete	12. Enclosures for Fluorescent Recessed Luminaires (Troffers)
-------------	---

## Architectural, Engineering and Construction (AEC) Resources



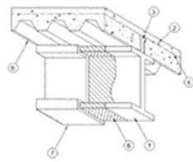
This page allows you to search for your desired product or assembly. Please click the specific link below to access the information you are looking for.

### SEARCH INSTRUCTIONS AND RESOURCES

Helpful instructions and resources to help you locate assemblies, designs and related information.

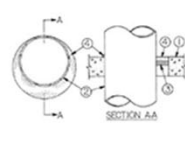
- **Fire-resistance rated assemblies.** Step-by-step instructions on locating rated walls, floors, beams and columns.
- **Firestop systems.** Step-by-step instructions on locating through penetration firestop system certifications.
- **Joint systems.** Links to joint systems for use in static and dynamic applications.
- **Perimeter fire containment systems.** Links to systems used to protect voids between floor-ceiling assemblies and curtain walls.

### FIRE RESISTANCE - LOCATE SPECIFIC DESIGNS AND SYSTEMS



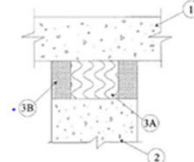
[Find Walls, Floors, Roofs, Beams and Columns >](#)

[Find Walls, Floors, Roofs, Beams and Columns for Canada >](#)



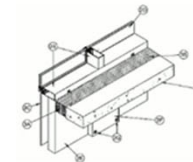
[Find Firestop Systems >](#)

[Find Firestop Systems for Canada >](#)



[Find Joint Systems >](#)

[Find Joint Systems for Canada >](#)



[Find Perimeter Fire Containment Systems >](#)

## Frequently Asked Questions

[View the answers to the most commonly asked questions - Architectural services FAQs](#)

## DESIGN CRITERIA AND ALLOWABLE VARIANCES

In order to remain within the design criteria the assembly must be constructed as specified in the published design. There are three potential types of acceptable modifications, as follows:

- If a construction element is identified as "optional" or "may be provided" it is not mandatory and doesn't need to be included in the construction.
- If a dimension is indicated as a minimum or maximum, the construction can include greater or lesser dimensions, respectfully.
- The link at the top of each design entitled "See General Information for Fire-resistance Ratings - UL 263" should be consulted. This link provides information on construction details, including clarifications and permitted variations.

Product category guide information can clarify construction and application requirements for the certifications and view acceptable variances allowed for the designs and systems. Click below for details.

- [Walls, floors, beams and columns](#)
- [Firestop systems](#)
- [Joint systems](#)
- [Perimeter fire containment systems](#)

# Fasteners

---

Cement-coated box or cooler nails shall be used for securing gypsum board, unless otherwise specified in design

---

Screws meeting ASTM C 1002 or C 954 may be substituted for nails providing head diameter and length are equal or larger than specified nail



# Primers with SFRM

May be applied to primed structural elements providing:

- Beam flange width shall not exceed 12 inch
- Column flange width shall not exceed 16 inch
- Web depth shall not exceed 16 inch
- Pipe diameter or tube width shall not exceed 12 inch
- Bond tests conducted to ASTM E 736
  - Average > 80% of uncoated steel and individual > 50% of uncoated steel, or
  - Wrap member with metal lath



# Concrete in Horizontal Assemblies

---

Compressive strength specified may be reduced 500 psi

---

Unit weight tolerance 3 pcf

---

Do not substitute lightweight concrete if normal weight specified

---

Do not substitute normal weight concrete if lightweight specified

# Outlet Boxes in Ceilings

Metallic boxes may be installed in F/C and R/C assemblies incorporating gypsum board protection providing:

Clearance not to exceed 1/8 in.

Area of each box not to exceed 16 sq in.

Total area of boxes not to exceed 100 sq in. per 100 sq ft of ceiling area

Nonmetallic boxes tested and listed (CEYY)

# Steel Joists

Specified joist is minimum depth

Specified joist is minimum weight/foot

K-Series joist may often substitute for older series joists specified

Spacing between joists may be increased to 4 ft OC providing:

- Structural integrity of floor is maintained
- Hanger wire spacing is not increased

Bridging bar size is minimum

# Gypsum Board on Horizontal Assemblies

Thickness may be increased providing fastener length is also increased

Additional layers may be added – no increase in fire resistance-rating

# Recessed (Can) Lighting

---

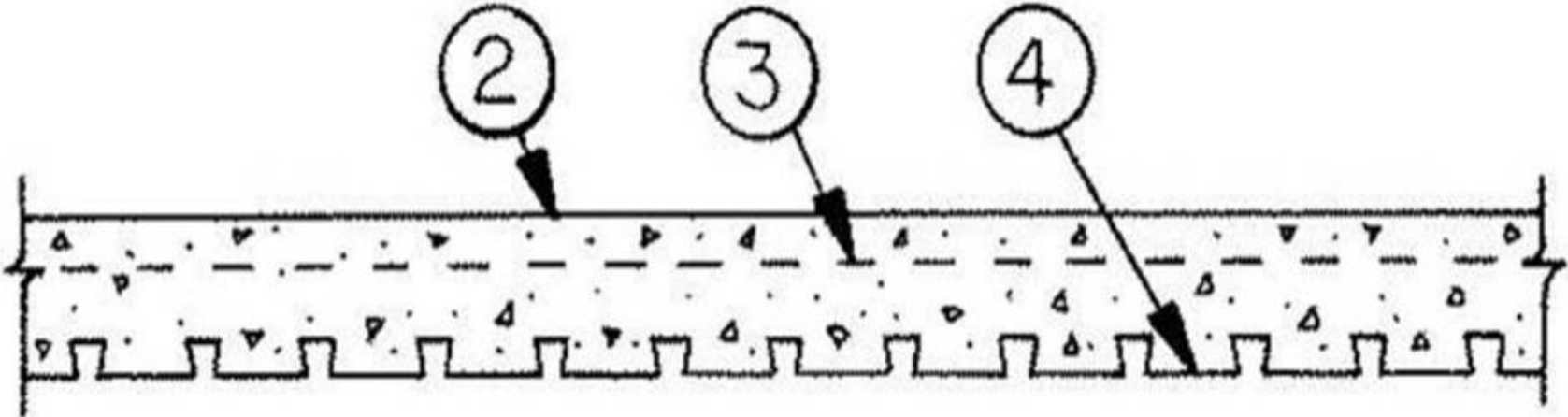
Generic recessed luminaires not permitted unless covered in design

---

Luminaires specifically tested and Listed for use in fire resistive construction covered in “Luminaires and Luminaire Assemblies Classified for Fire Resistance Category” (CDHW)



# Restrained & Unrestrained



**Designer & AHJ  
must determine it**

**Unrestrained ratings may be used for  
either condition**



# Restrained & Unrestrained Cont.

- |    |  |              |
|----|--|--------------|
| I. | Wall Bearing:  |              |
| A. | Single span and simply supported end spans of multiple bays, <sup>a</sup>                                |              |
| 1. | Open-web steel joists or steel beams supporting concrete slab, precast units, or metal decking           | Unrestrained |
| 2. | Concrete slabs, precast units, or metal decking  | Unrestrained |
| B. | Interior spans of multiple bays  |              |
| 1. | Open-web steel joists, steel beams, or metal decking supporting continuous concrete slab                 | Restrained   |
| 2. | Open-web steel joists or steel beams, supporting precast units or metal decking                          | Unrestrained |
| 3. | Cast-in-place concrete slab systems  | Restrained   |
| 4. | Precast concrete where the potential thermal expansion is resisted by adjacent construction <sup>b</sup> | Restrained   |

# Restrained & Unrestrained Cont.

## II. Steel Framing:

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| A. Steel beams welded, riveted, or bolted to the framing members   | Restrained |
| B. All types of cast-in-place floor and roof systems (such as beam-and-slabs, flat slabs, pan joists, and waffle slabs) where the floor or roof system is secured to the framing members   | Restrained |
| C. All types of prefabricated floor or roof systems where the structural members are secured to the framing members and the potential thermal expansion of the floor or roof system is resisted by the framing system or the adjoining floor or roof construction <sup>b</sup> | Restrained |

# HVAC Openings in Ceilings

- Most acoustical ceilings are tested with generic hinged blade damper
- UL Classified Ceiling Damper, Ceiling Air Diffuser or Air Terminal Unit may be substituted for generic hinged blade damper
- Duct Protection Systems A and B may also be substituted per Guide Info
- Some assemblies with gypsum board ceilings have been test with specific UL Classified Ceiling Dampers
- In assemblies with gypsum board ceilings, damper may not be utilized if not specified in design



# Blanket Insulation in Horizontal Assemblies

---

May cause premature  
disruption of  
ceiling membrane

---

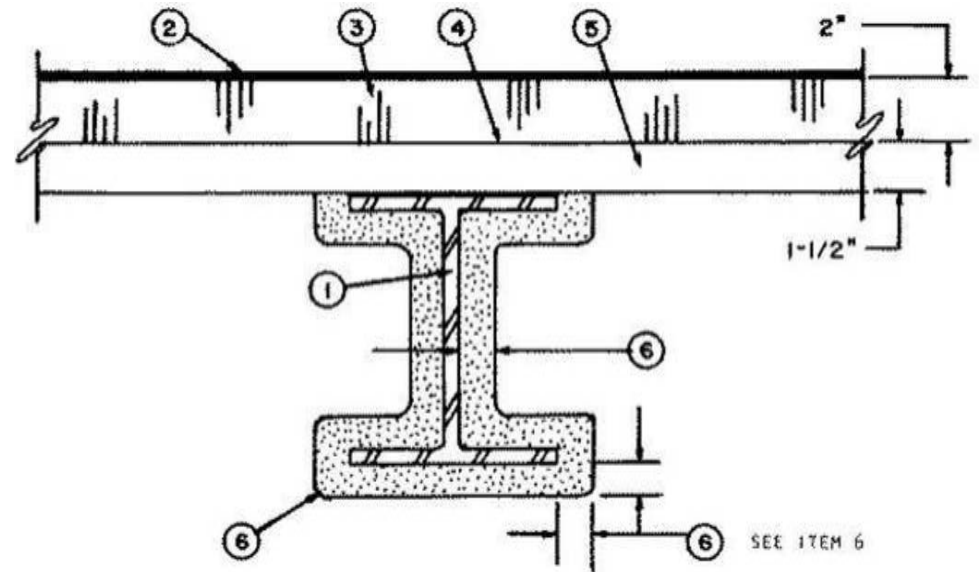
For certain assemblies,  
fiberglass insulation can  
be used with additional  
layer of gypsum board

---

Otherwise, use only  
permitted as specified

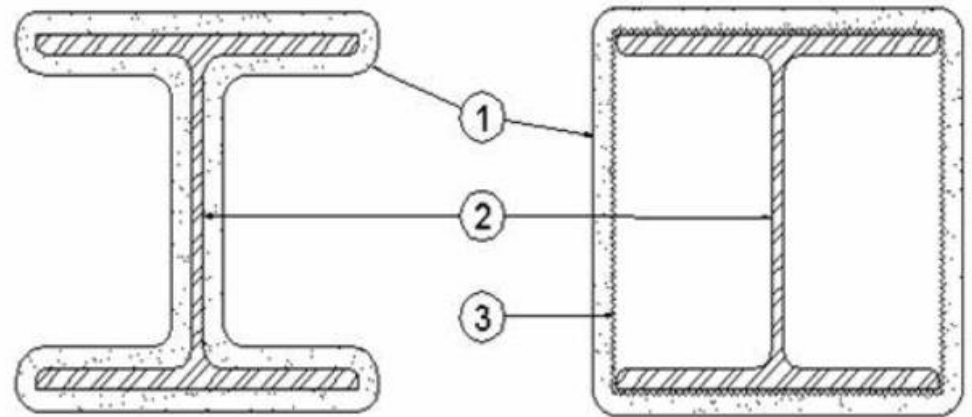
# Beam Size

- Larger beams may be substituted without restriction
- Larger is based on W/D ratio
- $W/D = \text{weight of unit measure} / \text{divided by heated perimeter (exposed surface except top flange)}$
- Larger W/D yields greater fire resistance



# Column Size

- Larger columns may be substituted without restriction
- Based on W/D ratio
- Larger W/D yields greater fire resistance





# Walls & Partitions

---

Rating applies when either face is exposed to fire, unless otherwise noted

---

Unsymmetrical walls are tested from both sides

---

Exterior walls may only require rating from inside face

---

Load bearing rating applies to non load bearing applications



## Walls & Partitions Cont.

Size of studs specified  
is minimum

Stud spacing specified  
is maximum

Board orientation as  
specified in design

Metallic boxes may be installed in wall assemblies incorporating gypsum board protection providing:

- Max 2 hr rated assemblies
- Clearance not to exceed 1/8 in.
- Area of each box not to exceed 16 sq in.
- Total area of boxes not to exceed 100 sq in. per 100 sq ft of wall surface
- Boxes on opposite sides of wall separated by min 24 in. or provided with protection (CLIV)

Nonmetallic boxes tested and listed (CEYY)

FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION

---

# Plan Review



# For the Architect / Contractor

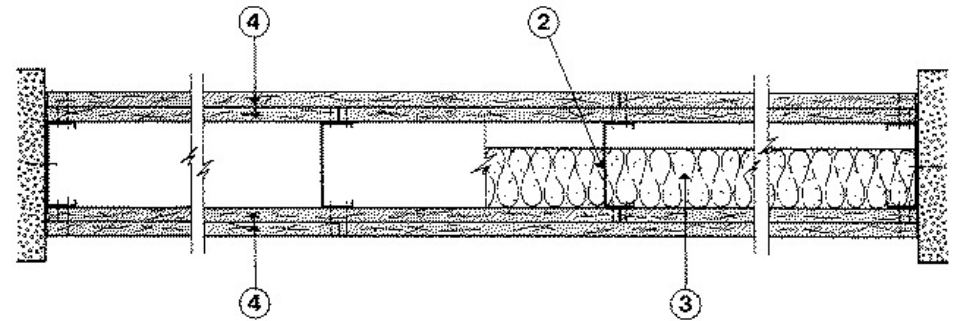
UL Solutions Designs serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 A set of build-instructions

## Design No. U411

May 29, 2012

Nonbearing Wall Rating — 2 HR.



1. **Floor and Ceiling Runner** — (Not Shown) — Min. 25 MSG galv steel, 1 in. return legs, 2-1/2 in. deep (min), attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC max.

1A. **Framing Members\*— Floor and Ceiling Runners** — (Not shown) — As an alternate to Item 1 - For use with Item 2A, channel shaped, min 2-1/2 in. deep, attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC. max.

**ALLSTEEL & GYPSUM PRODUCTS INC** — Type SUPREME Framing System

**CALIFORNIA EXPANDED METAL PRODUCTS CO** — Viper20™ Track

**CONSOLIDATED FABRICATORS CORP, BUILDING PRODUCTS DIV** — Type SUPREME Framing System

# For the Certified Code Official

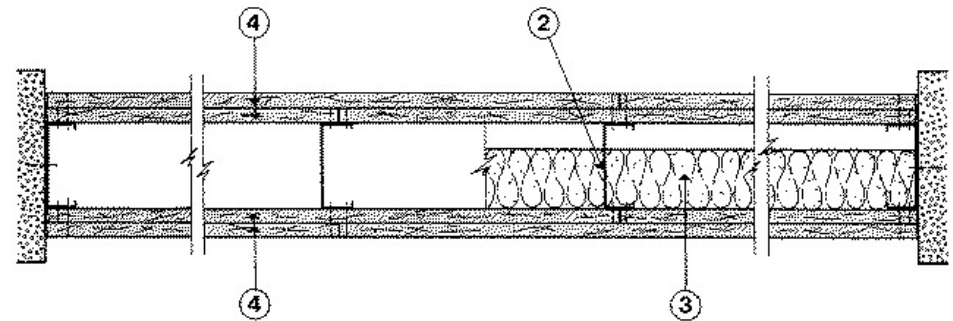
UL Solutions Designs serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 Document by which to inspect

## Design No. U411

May 29, 2012

Nonbearing Wall Rating — 2 HR.



1. **Floor and Ceiling Runner** — (Not Shown) — Min. 25 MSG galv steel, 1 in. return legs, 2-1/2 in. deep (min), attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC max.

1A. **Framing Members\*— Floor and Ceiling Runners** — (Not shown) — As an alternate to Item 1 - For use with Item 2A, channel shaped, min 2-1/2 in. deep, attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC. max.

**ALLSTEEL & GYPSUM PRODUCTS INC** — Type SUPREME Framing System

**CALIFORNIA EXPANDED METAL PRODUCTS CO** — Viper20™ Track

**CONSOLIDATED FABRICATORS CORP, BUILDING PRODUCTS DIV** — Type SUPREME Framing System

# Plan Review

## 107 – Submittal Documents

**CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS.** Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building *permit*

Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the *building official*.

- 107.2.2 Fire protection system shop drawings
- 107.2.4 Exterior wall envelope
- 107.2.5 Exterior balconies and elevated walking surfaces.
- 107.2.6 Site plan.
- 107.2.7 Structural information.
- 107.2.8 Relocatable buildings



## Plan Review Cont.

Details showing compliance with the fire-resistive requirements of the IBC should be included on the plans and in the specifications

It is recommended that the UL Solutions designs (or others) be imported into the plans

Importing designs into plans does NOT violate UL Solutions copyright requirements

UL Solutions permits the reproduction of the material contained in the Online Certification Directory subject to the following conditions:

1. The Guide Information, Assemblies, Constructions, Designs, Systems, and/or Certifications (files) must be presented in their entirety and in a non-misleading manner, without any manipulation of the data (or drawings).
2. The statement "Reprinted from the Online Certifications Directory with permission from UL Solutions" must appear adjacent to the extracted material.
3. In addition, the reprinted material must include a copyright notice in the following format: "© 2021 UL LLC"

# Plan Review Cont.

Review proposed fire-resistance-rated assemblies for compliance with code

- Hourly rating requirement
- Type of Construction
- Details of assemblies proposed relative to actual construction
- Consider variations identified relative to permitted substitutions stated in the UL Solutions Fire Resistance Guide Information
- Consider need for engineering judgments if permitted by department policy
- Consider need for special inspections as required by code and/or by department policy

## FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION

# Inspection Process

- New Construction



# Inspection of Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies

Inspections are typically done by Building Inspector, but may be inspected by an approved agency or individual. They:

- Verify approved design is being used
- Verify assembly is being constructed in accordance with the approved design

# For the Architect / Contractor

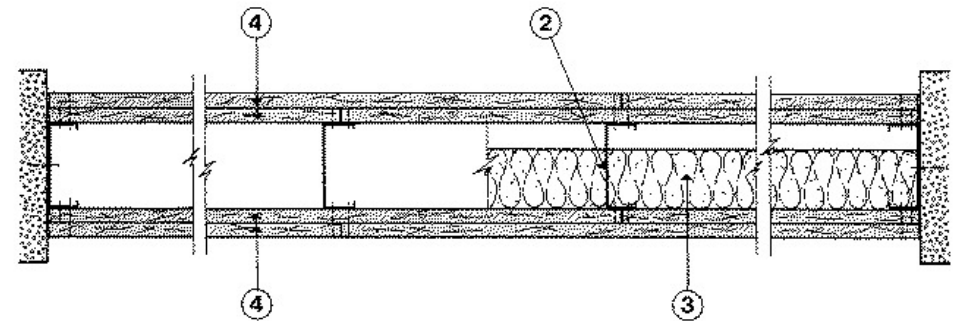
UL Solutions Designs serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 A set of build-instructions

## Design No. U411

May 29, 2012

Nonbearing Wall Rating — 2 HR.



1. **Floor and Ceiling Runner** — (Not Shown) — Min. 25 MSG galv steel, 1 in. return legs, 2-1/2 in. deep (min), attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC max.

1A. **Framing Members\*— Floor and Ceiling Runners** — (Not shown) — As an alternate to Item 1 - For use with Item 2A, channel shaped, min 2-1/2 in. deep, attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC. max.

**ALLSTEEL & GYPSUM PRODUCTS INC** — Type SUPREME Framing System

**CALIFORNIA EXPANDED METAL PRODUCTS CO** — Viper20™ Track

**CONSOLIDATED FABRICATORS CORP, BUILDING PRODUCTS DIV** — Type SUPREME Framing System

# For the Certified Code Official

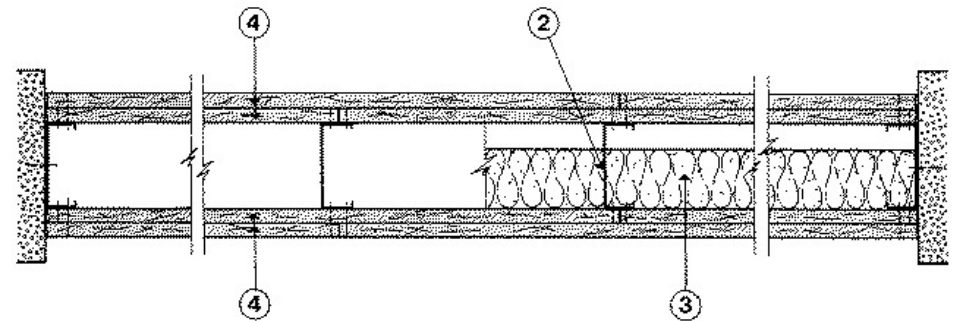
UL Solutions Designs serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 Document by which to inspect

## Design No. U411

May 29, 2012

Nonbearing Wall Rating — 2 HR.



1. **Floor and Ceiling Runner** — (Not Shown) — Min. 25 MSG galv steel, 1 in. return legs, 2-1/2 in. deep (min), attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC max.

1A. **Framing Members\*— Floor and Ceiling Runners** — (Not shown) — As an alternate to Item 1 - For use with Item 2A, channel shaped, min 2-1/2 in. deep, attached to floor and ceiling with fasteners 24 in. OC. max.

**ALLSTEEL & GYPSUM PRODUCTS INC** — Type SUPREME Framing System

**CALIFORNIA EXPANDED METAL PRODUCTS CO** — Viper20™ Track

**CONSOLIDATED FABRICATORS CORP, BUILDING PRODUCTS DIV** — Type SUPREME Framing System



# Pre-Construction Meeting

- Review selected designs
- Obtain engineering judgments as needed
- Establish inspection guidelines and expectations
- Establish work and inspection schedules
- Review qualifications /experience of contractors



# Pre-Inspection



- Require construction documents that detail all fire-resistance-rated assemblies
- Obtain copies of all fire-resistance-rated designs
- Develop a plan to inspect each assembly at the appropriate times during the construction process

## At the Inspection Site

- Have your inspection tools such as a flashlight, coring device, depth gauge, calipers, tape measure, etc.
- Review the general layout of the assembly
- Verify the building materials being utilized match those described in the approved design
- For board products, verify the type, manufacturer, thickness and orientation match what is described in the approved design
- Verify fastener type, size and spacing for compliance with the approved design
- For insulation products, verify the type, manufacturer, thickness and density match what is described in the approved design
- Verify that the approved third party testing agency's labels are on the products, empty containers or boxes
- When necessary, conduct destructive evaluations on the assemblies
- During the inspection, have the contractor follow along to repair assemblies after destructive testing

# Marking and Identification

IBC Section 703.7 requires:

---

## Marking in accessible concealed spaces of:



Fire Walls, Fire Barriers or Fire Partitions



Smoke Barriers or Smoke Partitions



Floor-Ceiling or Horizontal assembly

## Assembly Rating Sign:

“Fire and/or smoke barrier – protect all openings”



Within 15 ft of end of wall



Intervals not exceeding 30 feet

## FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED CONSTRUCTION

# Inspection Process

- Existing Buildings
- Alterations, Additions



# Passive Fire Protection

The IBC takes a systematic approach to building fire protection, including:

## Passive Fire Protection

**Fire Area** = The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded *by fire walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies* of a building.

## Active Fire Protection

**Fire Protection System** = Approved devices, equipment and systems or combinations of systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

Reasonable level of redundancy; inspection, testing & maintenance



## IFC Chapter 7 Section 701.2

Requires Maintenance of:

- Structural members
- Walls & Floors
- Fire and Smoke Barriers and Partitions
- Firestops (membrane and through penetrations)
- Shaft enclosures
- Fire resistive coatings/SFRM
- Joint systems

Requires annual visual inspection by owner

Repaired, restored or replaced when damaged

# IFC Chapter 7

701.5	Maintaining Protection	705	Door and Window Openings
701.6	Owner's responsibility	705.2	Opening Protectives inspected and maintained in accordance with NFPA 80
701.7	Unsafe conditions	705.2.1	Labeling – Fire Doors (field labeling requirements)
701.2.1	Ceilings (prohibited items from rated ceiling)	705.2.2	Signs
703	Penetrations	705..2.3	Hold-open Devices
704	Joints and Voids		

# Reference Materials

## ASTM E 736

Standard Test Method for Cohesion / Adhesion of Sprayed Fire Resistive Materials Applied to Structural Members

## ASTM E 605

Standard Test Methods for Thickness and Density of Sprayed Fire Resistive Material Applied to Structural Members

# Reference Materials Cont.

**Association of Wall and Ceiling Industry**

*Technical Manuals 12, 12-A and 12-B*

**Gypsum Association**

*Fire Resistance Design Manual*

**International Firestop Council Video**

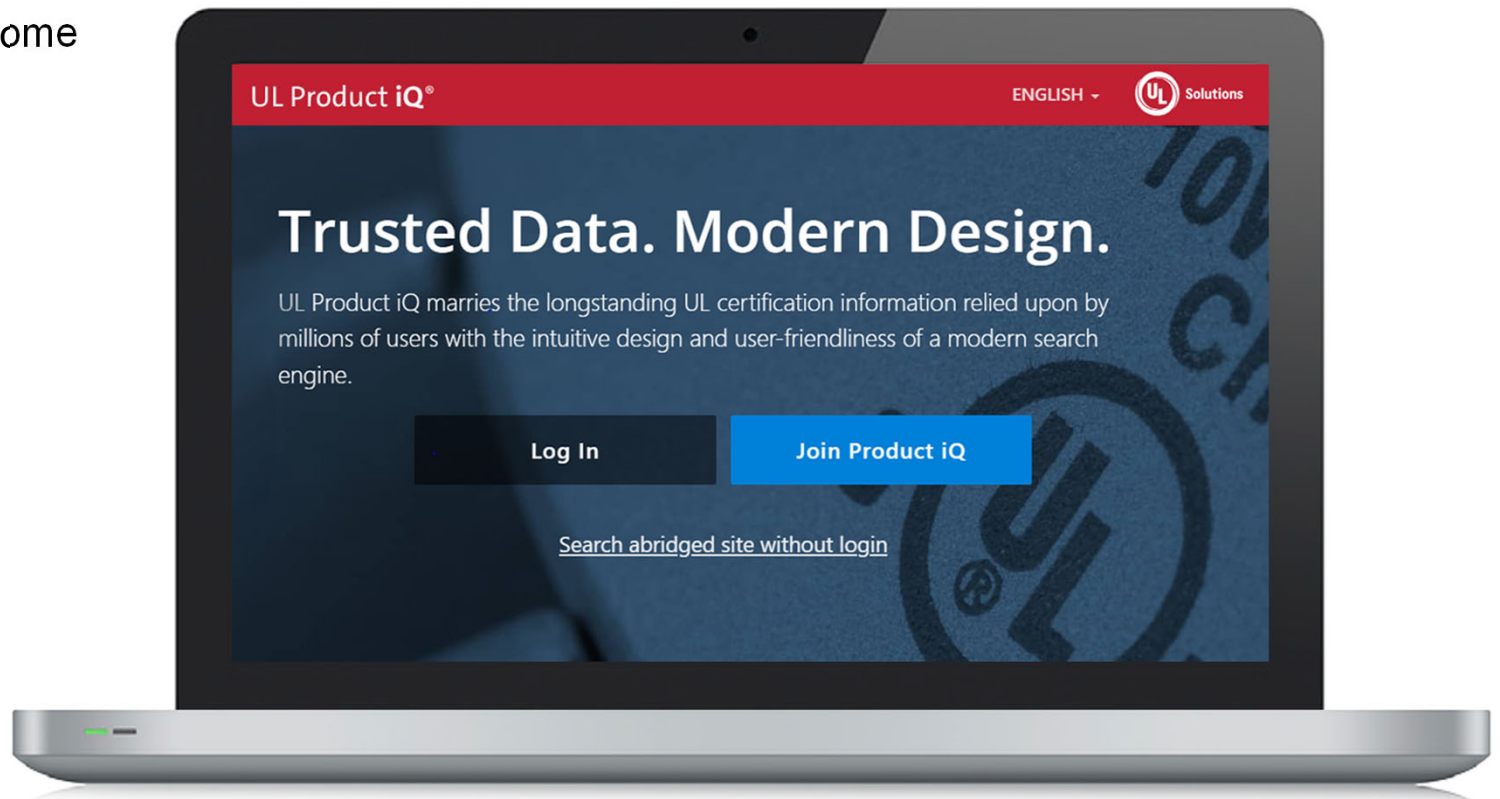
*Inspecting Firestop for Compliance*

# Available Resources

- Association of Wall and Ceilings Industry (AWCI) – [www.awci.org](http://www.awci.org)
- Gypsum Association (GA) – [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org)
- Firestop Contractors International Association [www.FCIA.org](http://www.FCIA.org)
- National Fireproofing Contractors Association [www.NFCA-online.org](http://www.NFCA-online.org)

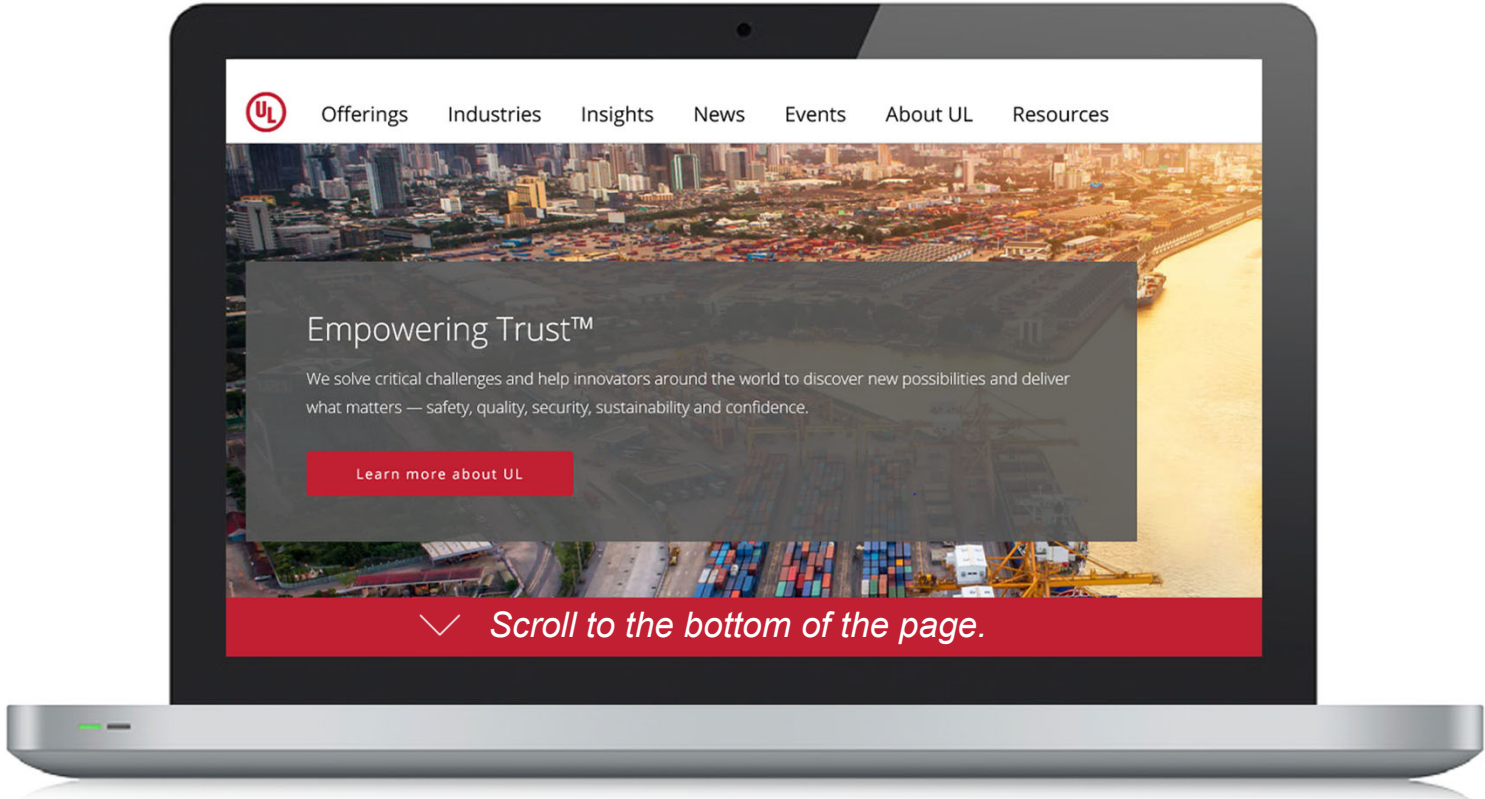
# UL Product iQ®

- Works best with Chrome  
[www.ul.com/PiQ](http://www.ul.com/PiQ)

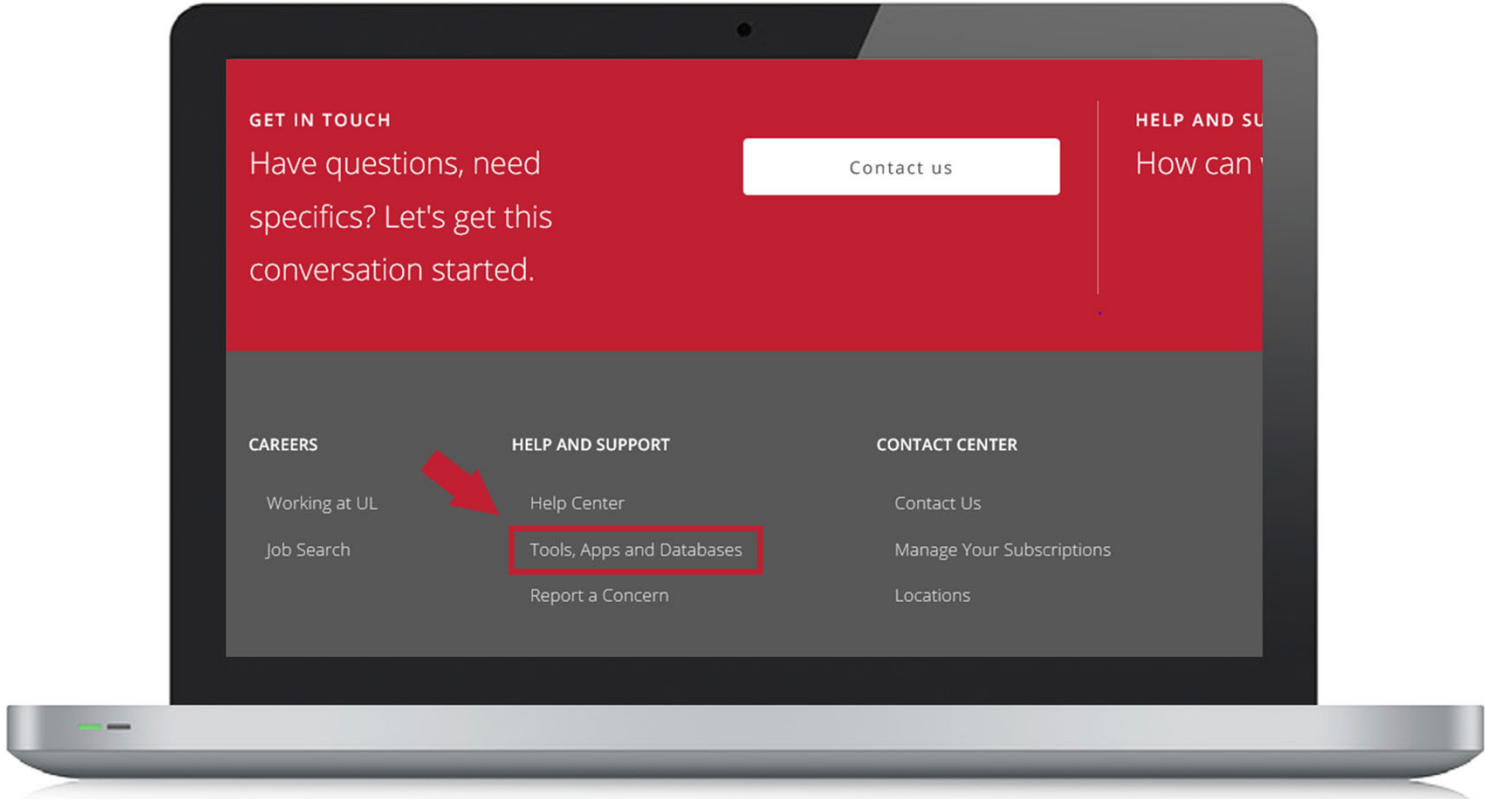




# Product iQ – www.ul.com



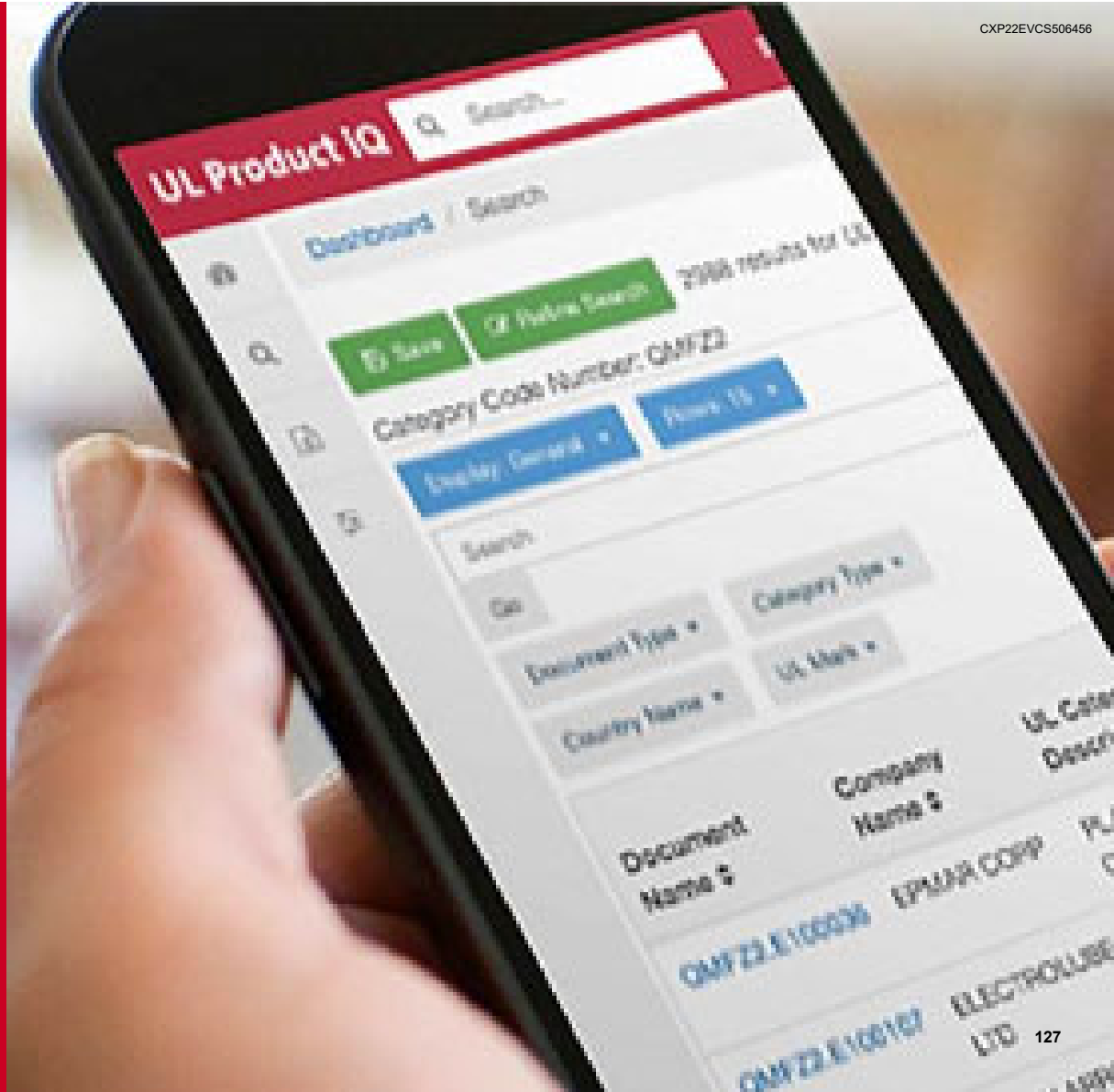
# www.ul.com



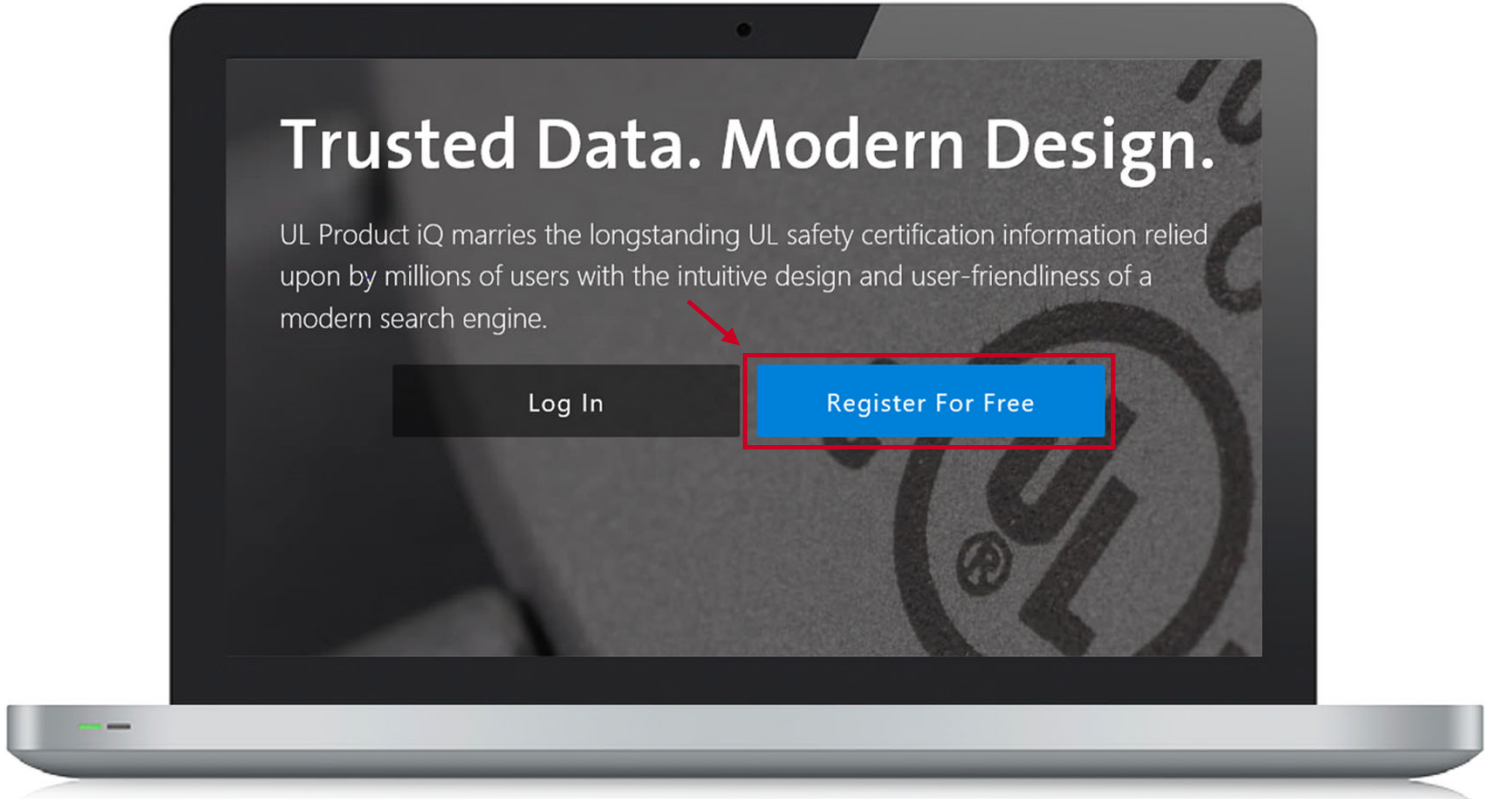
# TOOL

## Product iQ™

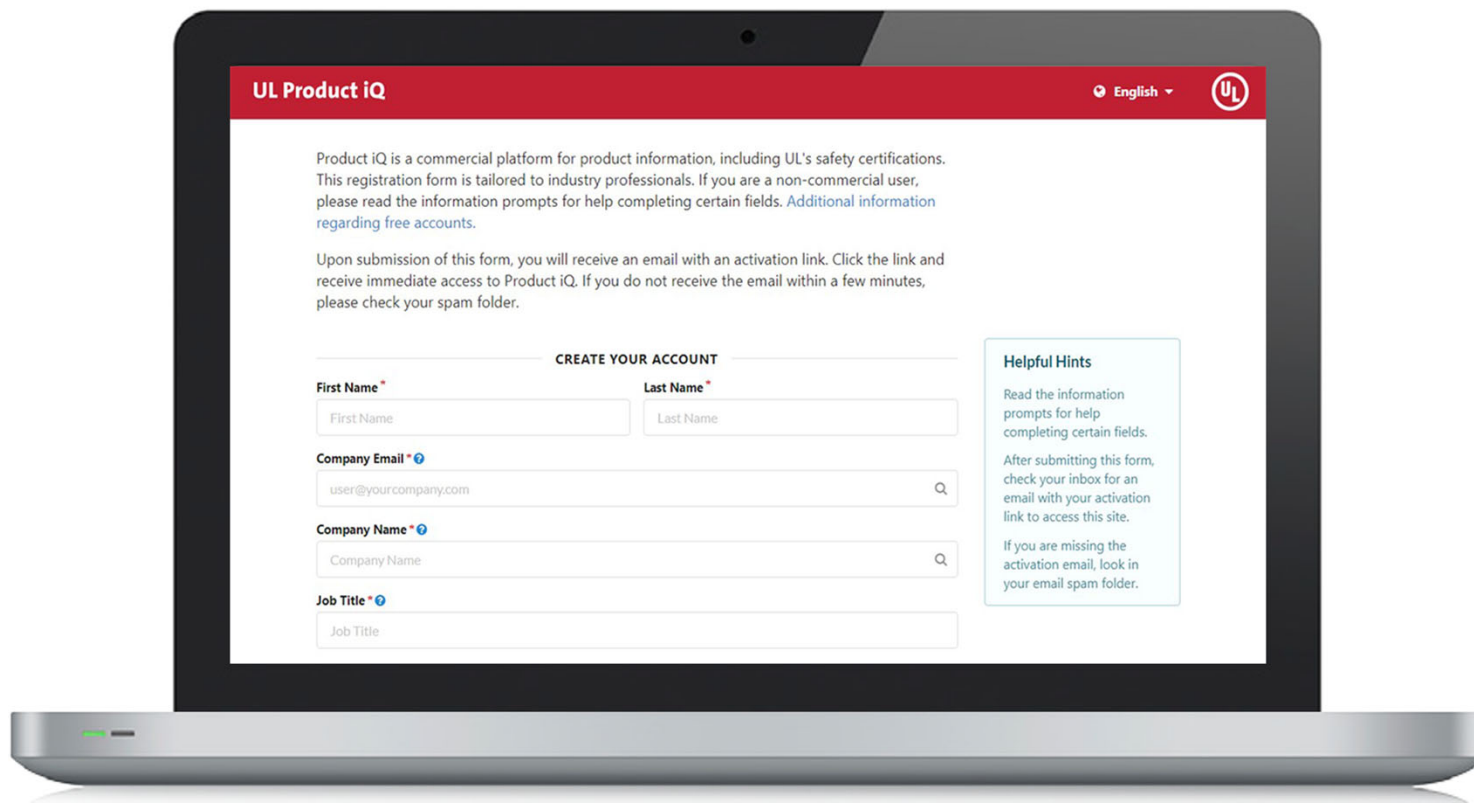
Engineers, product developers and other professionals can use Product iQ to verify UL Solutions' certification of products and components, locate UL Solutions' guide information and search for alternative products they can trust.



# Product iQ Cont.



# Product iQ Cont.



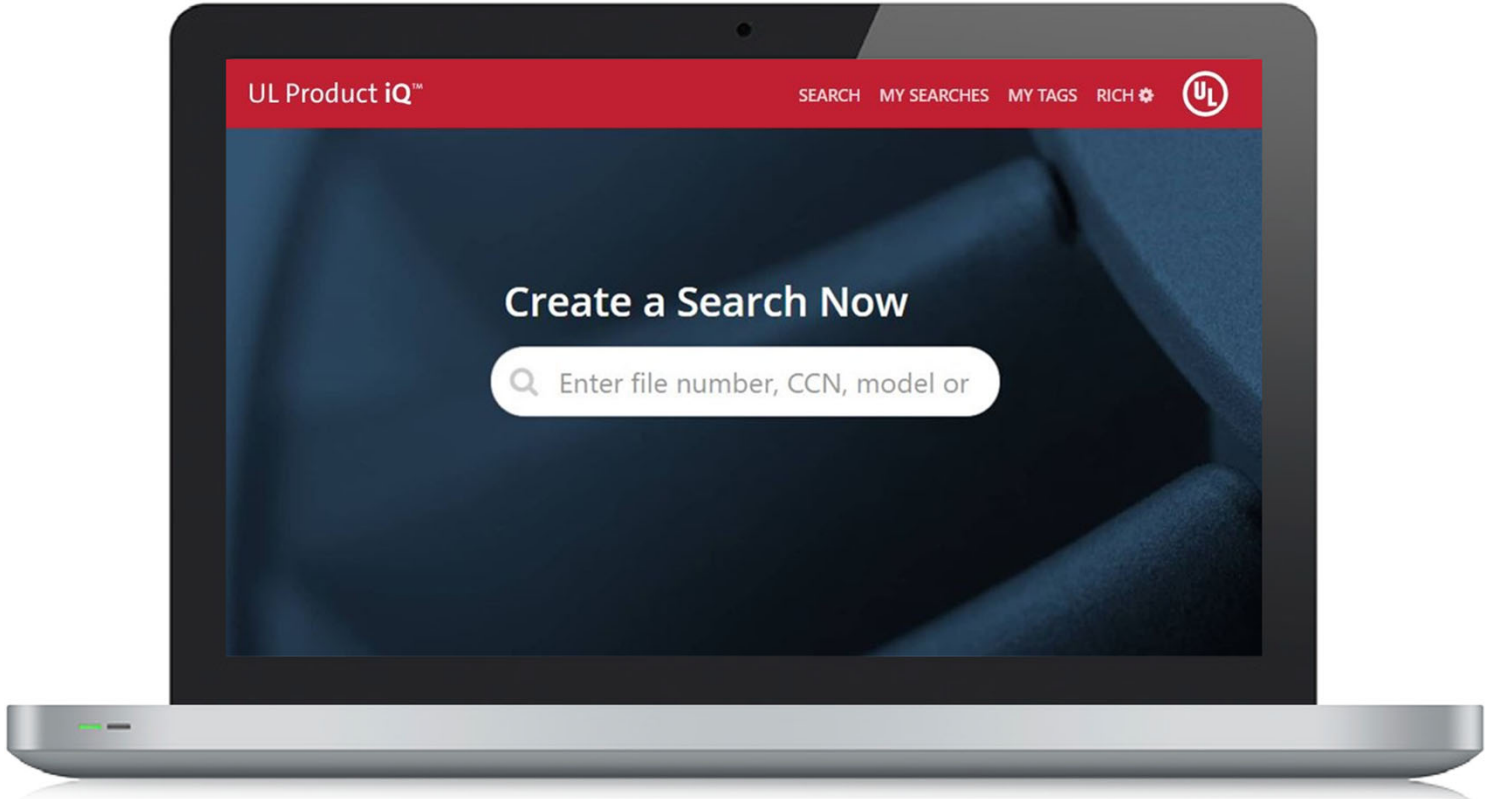
# Product iQ – UL Solutions Complimentary Online Directory



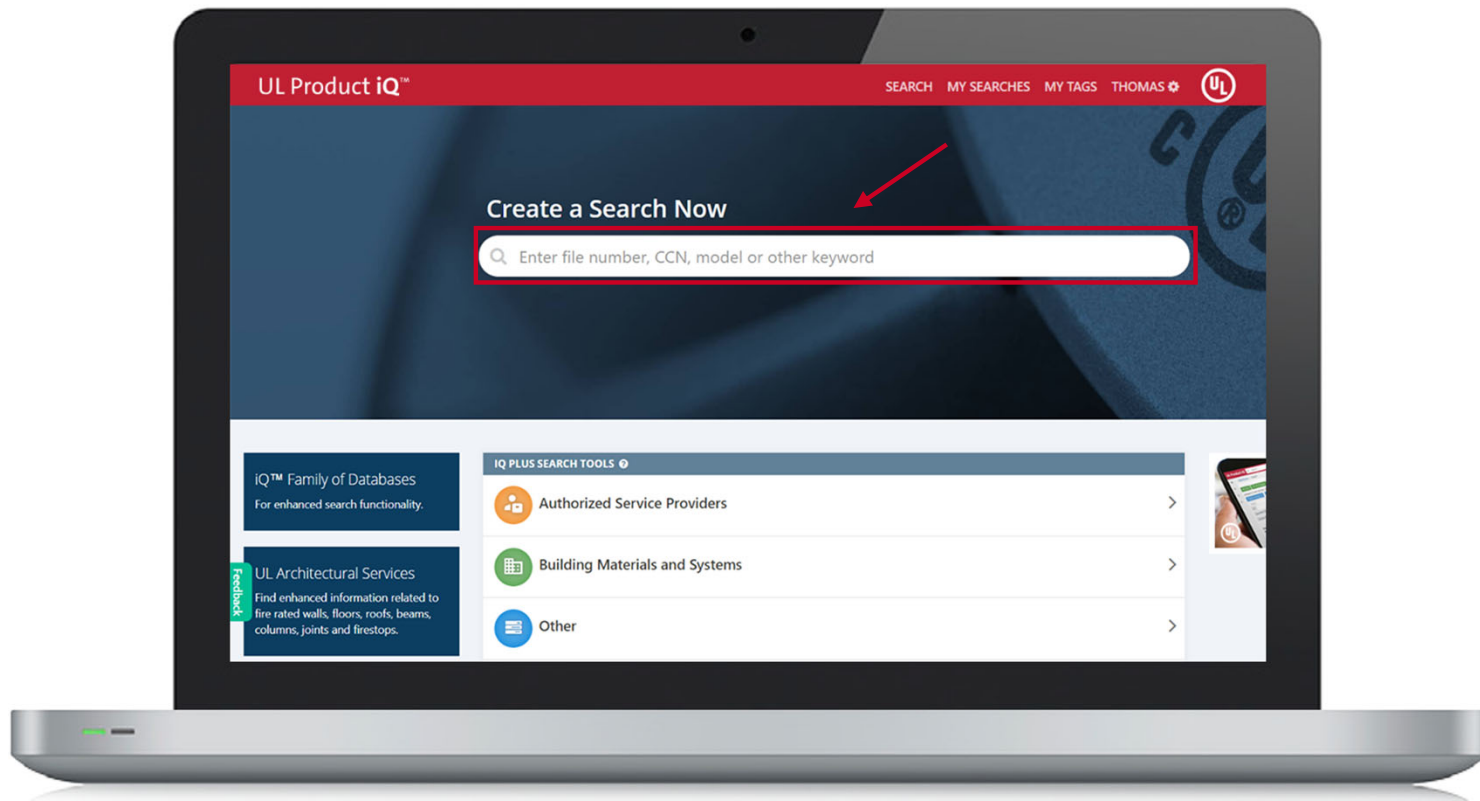
- Helps you achieve code compliance
- Is continuously updated
- Requires registration to create user account
- Basic Service – no charge for use
- Paid Subscription Service provides more features
- <http://www.ul.com/PiQ>



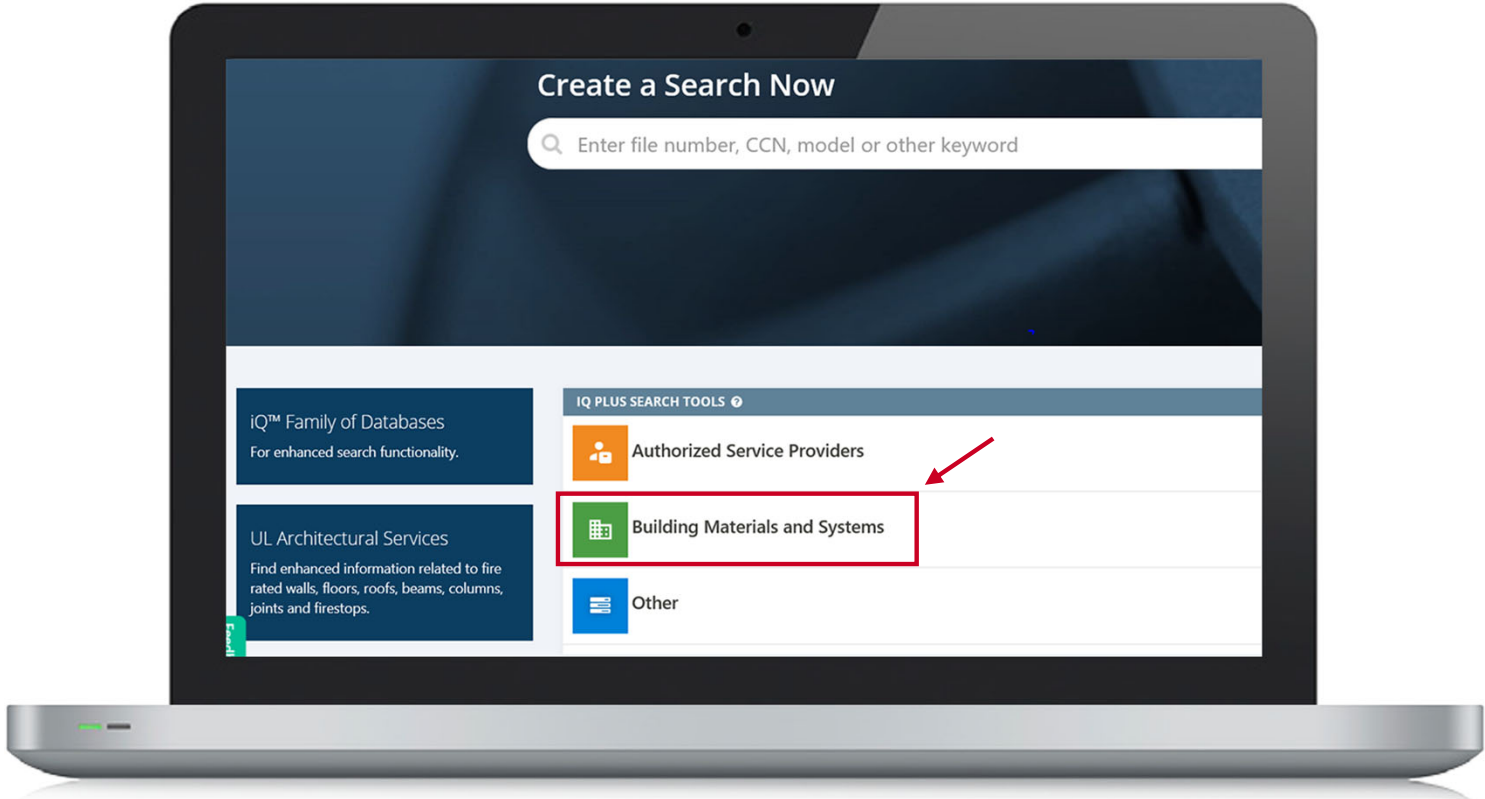
# Product iQ Cont. Smart Search



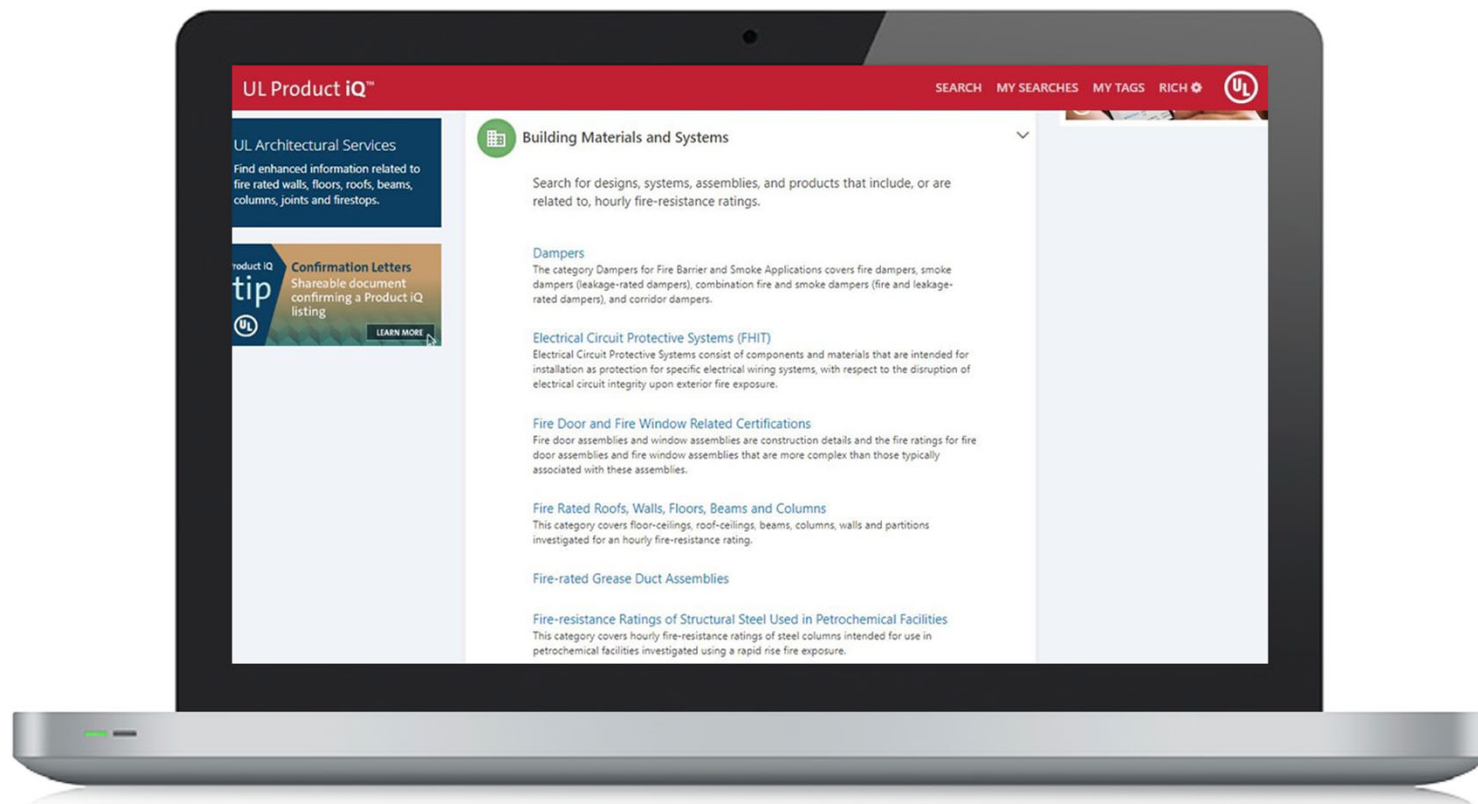
# Keyword Search- One Field For Almost Everything



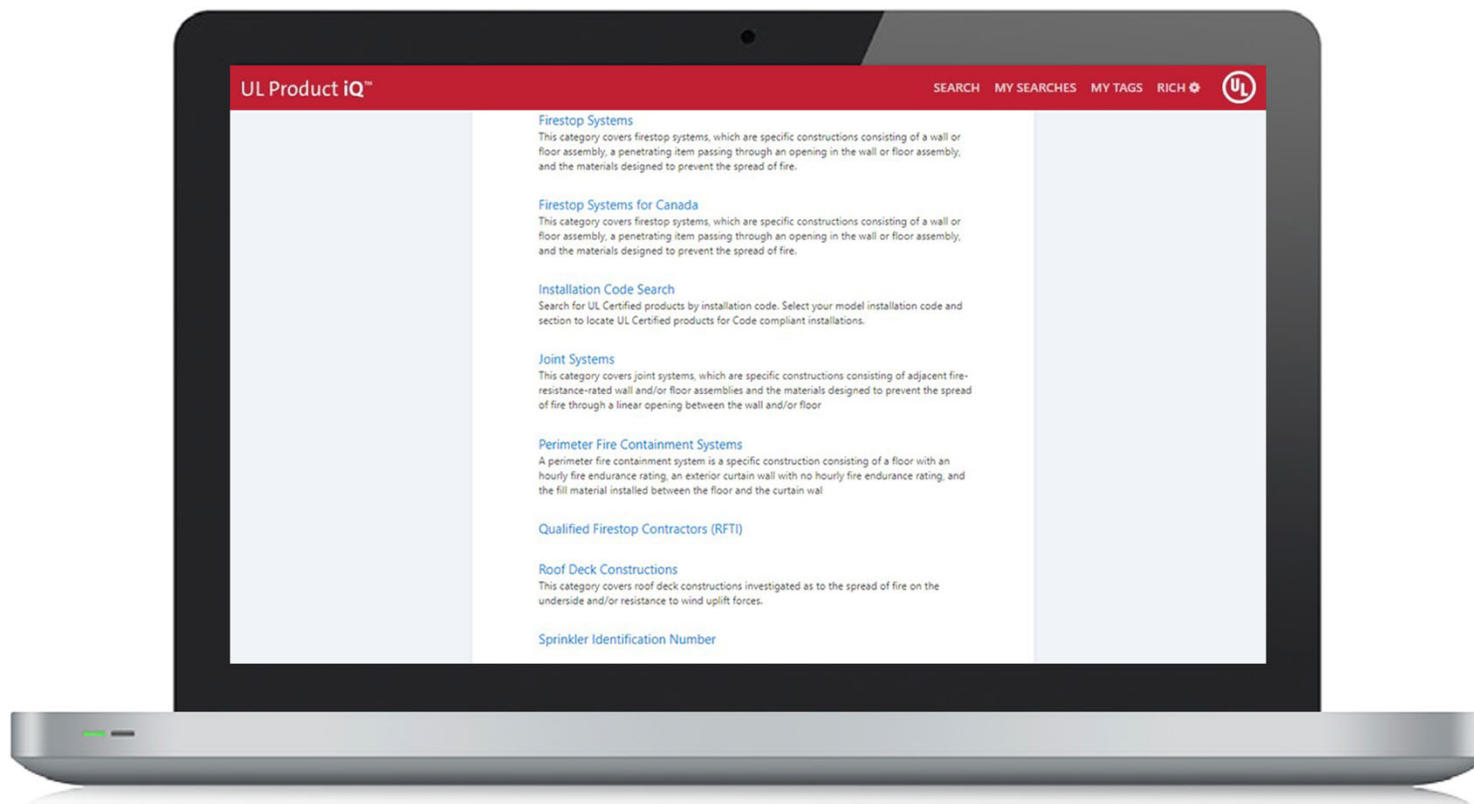
# Product iQ Home page



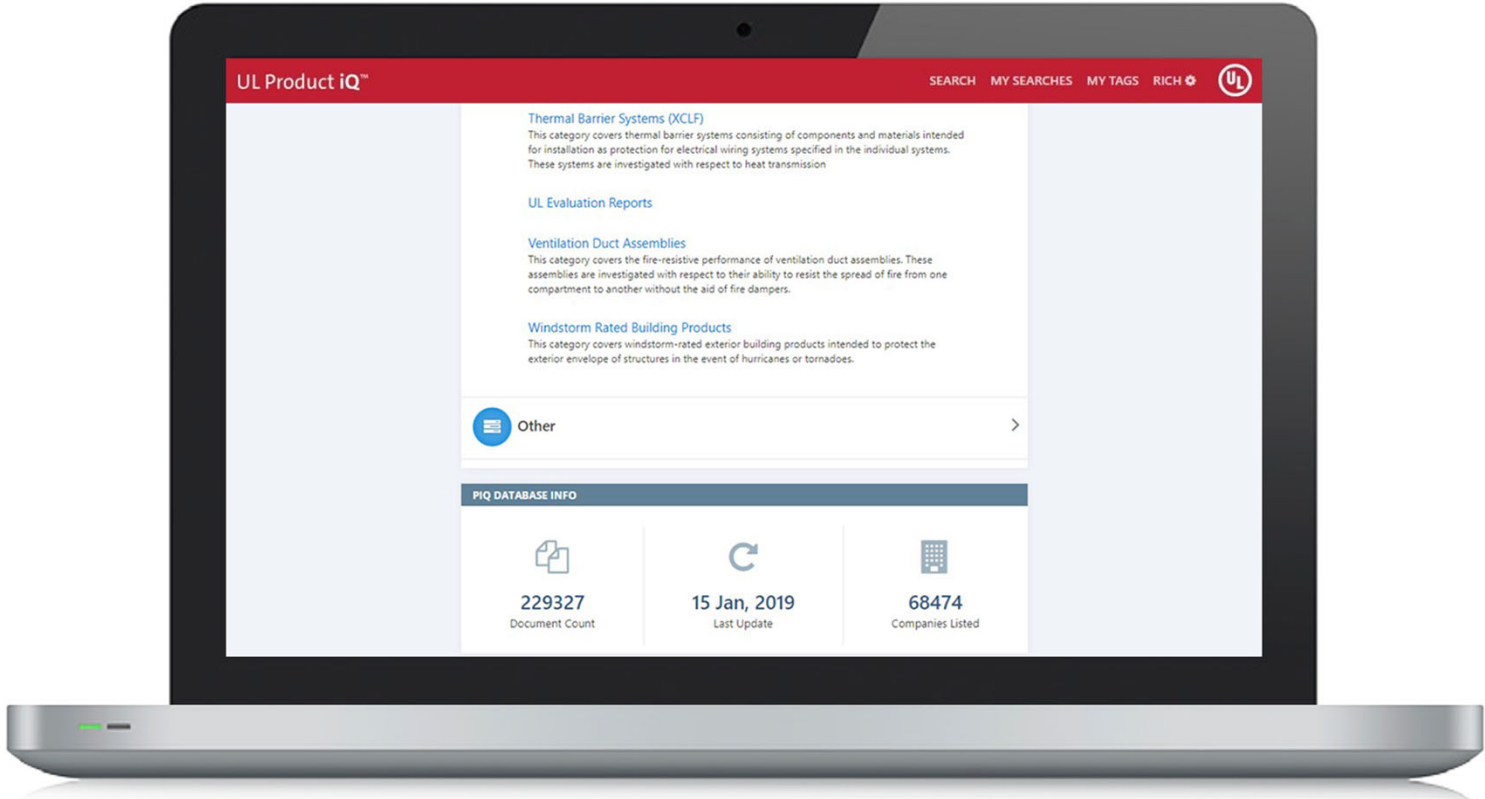
# Product iQ Cont. iQ Plus Search



# Product iQ Cont. iQ Plus Search



# Product iQ Cont. iQ Plus Search



# UL Product iQ Search

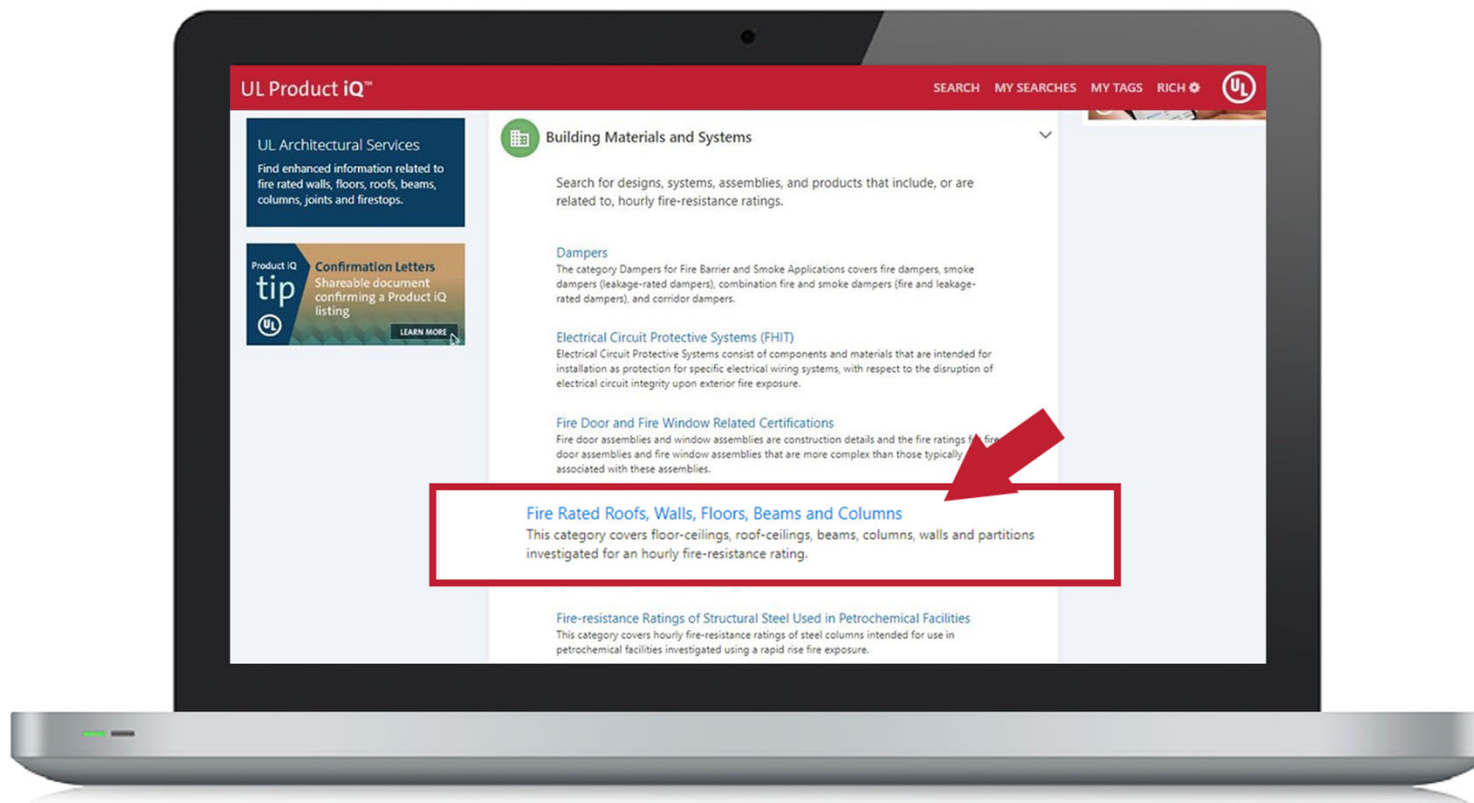
iQ Plus Search under Building Materials and Systems for fire-resistance-rated wall design based on specific parameters

- Wood stud/gypsum board wall assembly
- 2-hour rating
- Gypsum board supplied by the United States Gypsum Company

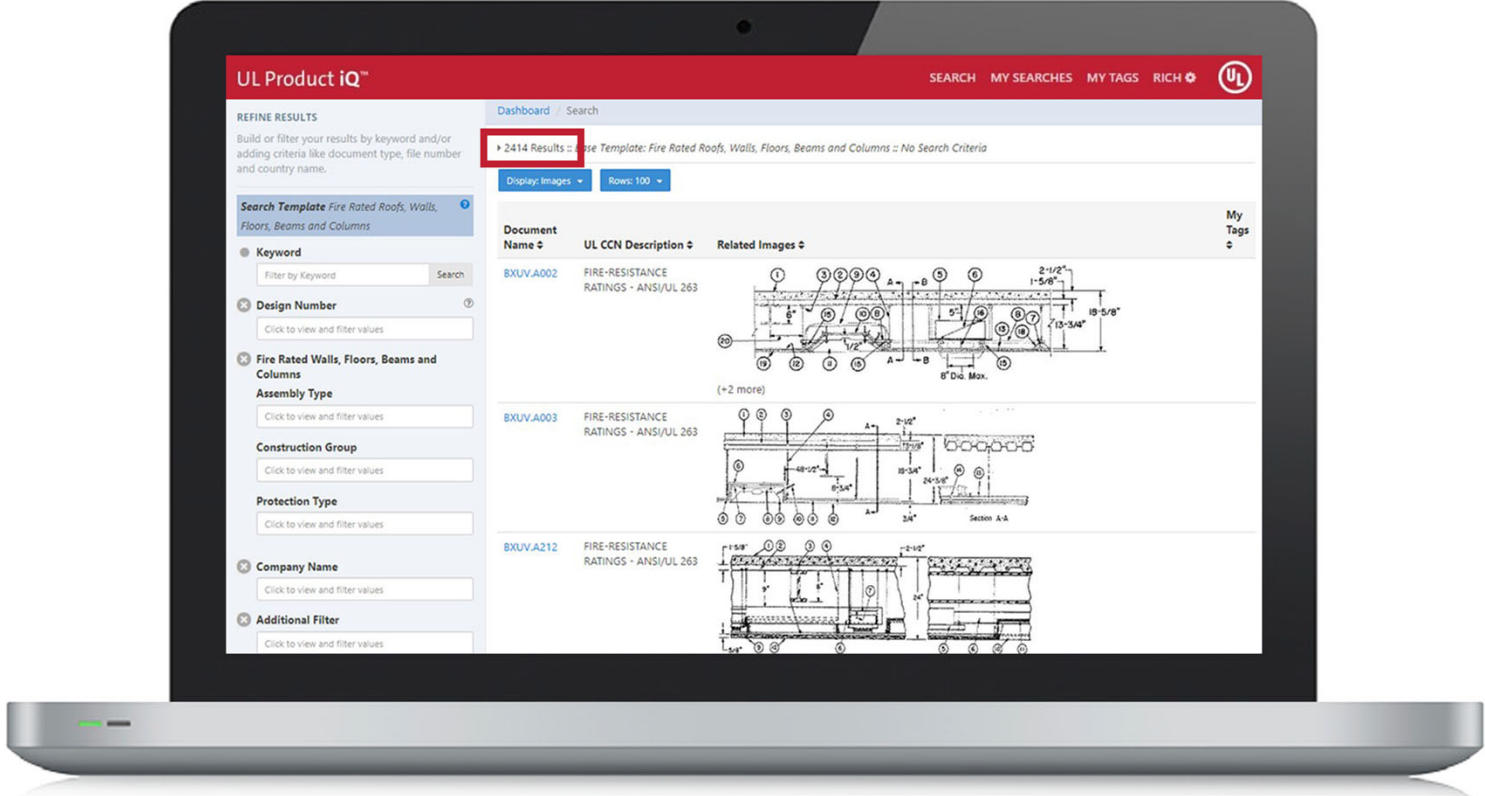




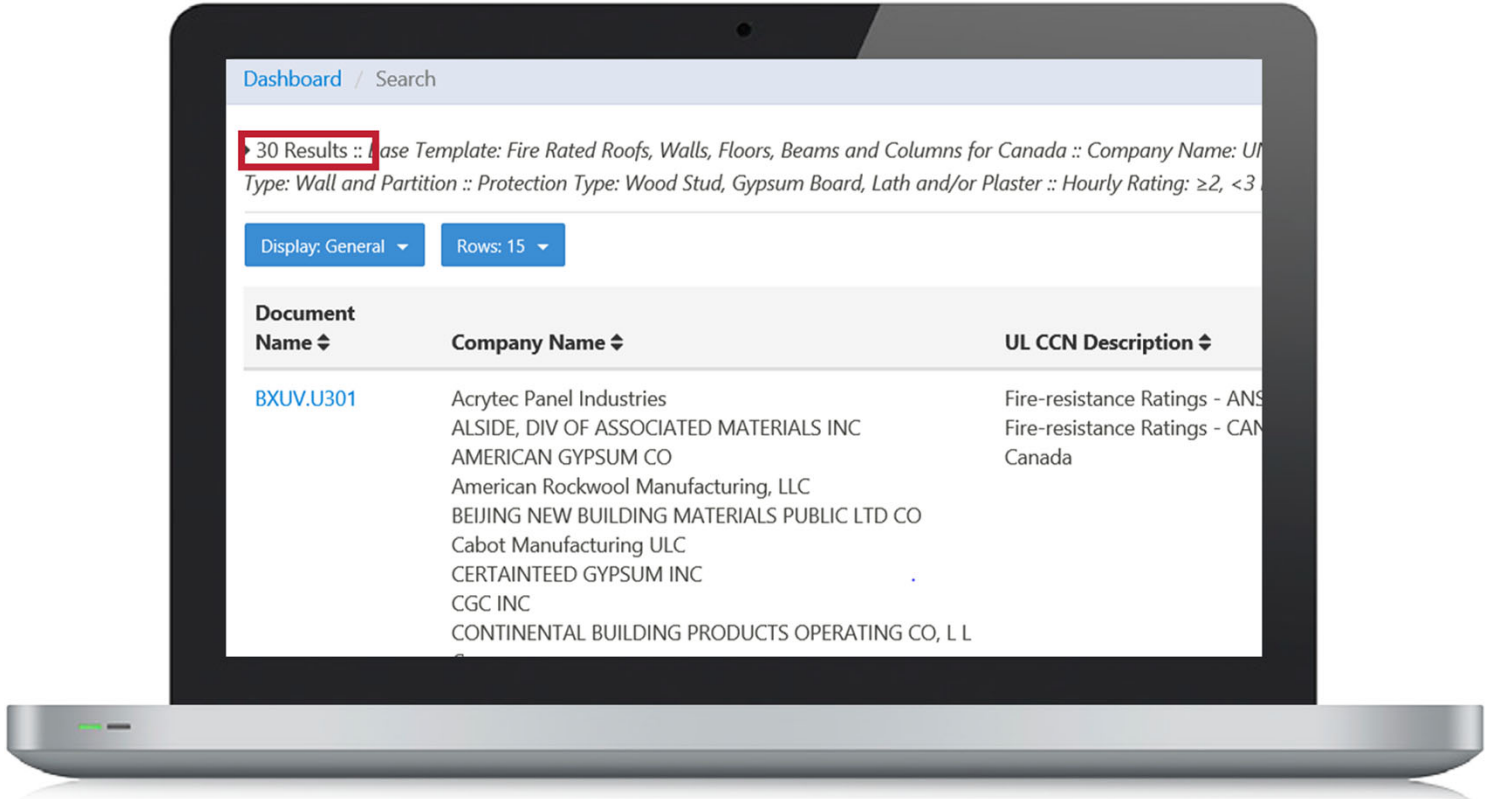
# Product iQ Search



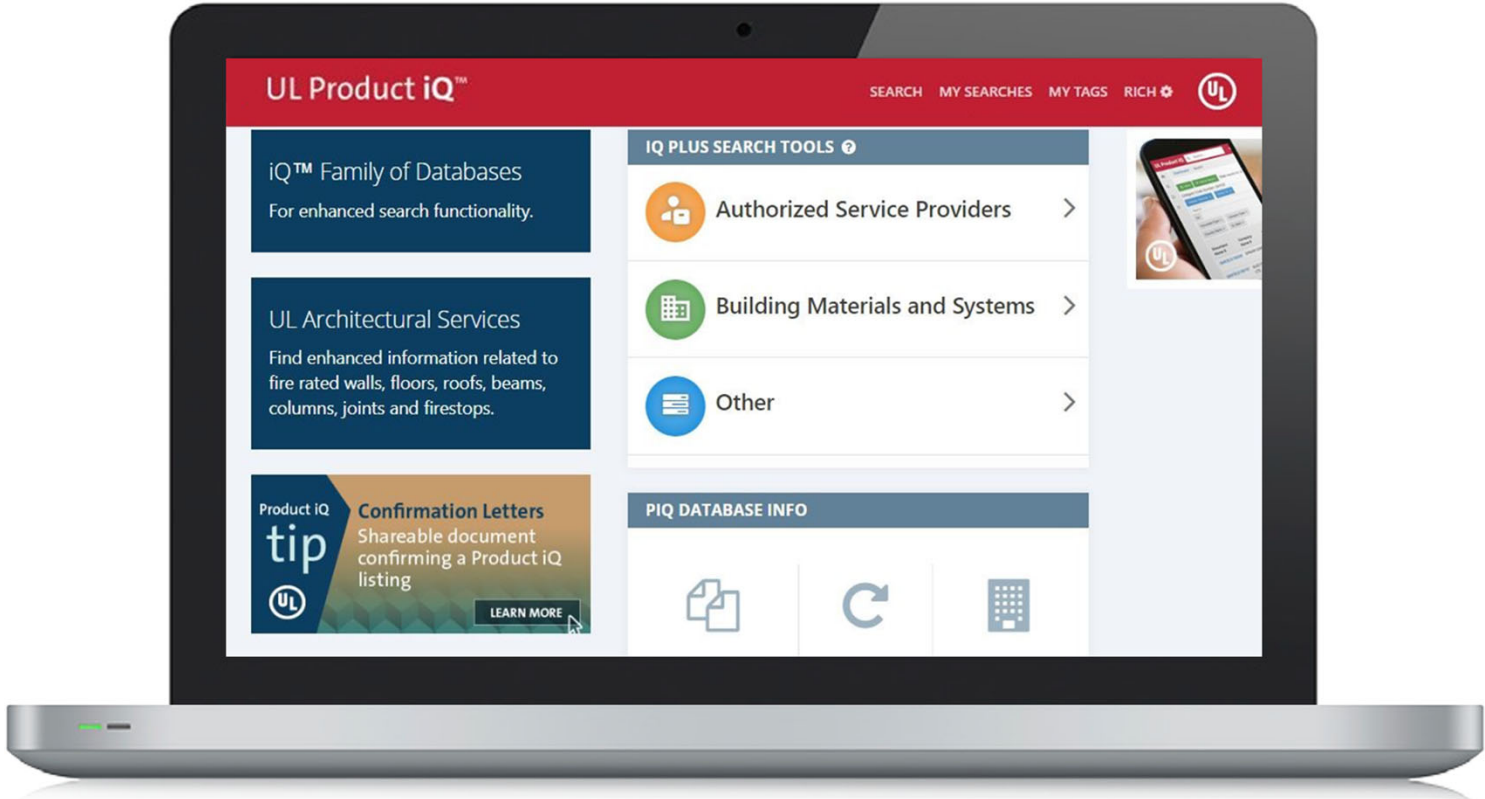
# Product iQ Search



# Product iQ Search



# Product iQ Cont.



# Q&A





# For more information regarding:

## Fire Resistance-Rated Construction

Please contact us at



631-680-5174



[Bruce.Johnson@ul.com](mailto:Bruce.Johnson@ul.com)



[www.UL.com/LMS](http://www.UL.com/LMS)





# Thank you

[UL.com/Solutions](https://www.ul.com/Solutions)

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.



**File Attachments for Item:**

ER-6 Protecting Penetrations in Fire-Rated Construction (Underwriters Laboratories Solutions)

All certifications (2 hours)

Staff Notes: For ratification of administratively approved course presented on October 18.

Committee Recommendation:

## 2-HR Program: **Protecting Penetrations in Fire Rated Construction**

*This class provides an overview of the 2018 IBC Chapter 7 requirements for protecting penetrations in fire resistance-rated construction; explanation of how fire-stop systems are tested in accordance with UL 1479/ASTM E 814 to meet IBC requirements. The course also provides an overview on the latest UL Resources that are available to support building and fire code officials with their responsibilities to ensure code compliance and the safety of the built environment and to locate and verify code compliant fire-stop systems.*

### Bio

Kelly Nicoletto:

Codes and Advisory Services, UL Solutions.

- With UL Solutions since May 2015.
- Completed a career in Fire Protection with the United States Air Force.
- Completed a career with the Alaska Department of Public Safety appointed to the position of Alaska State Fire Marshal on September 10, 2012.
- Lifetime member of the National Association of State Fire Marshals (NASFM).
- Founding member of the NASFM Model Code Committee.
- Established the NASFM Model Standards Review Committee.
- A member of all 4 NFPA 1 Fire Code Technical Committees.
- Honorary Member of the International Code Council (ICC).
- Member of the ICC Fire Service Membership Governing Committee.
- Served on numerous ICC Code Development Committees since 2004.

### Course Outline:

1. Introductory comments
2. Through- and membrane penetration firestop systems
3. Navigating UL Product iQ<sup>®</sup> for code compliance
4. Engineering judgments
5. Summary and closing



### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: Kelly Nicoletto  
Organization: UL Solutions  
Address: 333 Pfungsten Rd, Northbrook Il 60062  
E-mail: Kelly.Nicoletto@ul.com Telephone: 6822018938  
Website: UL.com  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Protecting Penetrations in Fire Rated Construction  
Course instructor: Kelly Nicoletto  
Course description: This class provides an overview of the 2018 IBC Chapter 7 requirements for protecting penetrations in fire resistance-rated construction; explanation of how fire-stop systems are tested in accordance with UL 1479/ASTM E 814 to meet IBC requirements. The course also provides an overview on the latest UL Resources that are available to support building and fire code officials with their responsibilities to ensure code compliance and the safety of the built environment and to locate and verify code compliant fire-stop systems.  
Instructional hours per session: 2 Number of Sessions: 1  
Course Date(s) and Location: 18 October 2023, Virtual

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:   
Existing Buildings:   
Electrical Instruction:   
Plumbing Instruction:   
Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online?  On Demand  Webinar

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation): \_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:  Commercial Certifications:   
Administrative Course, All Certifications:

**Application materials included:**

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives  
 Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)  
 Assessment Materials (for online courses)  
 Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)



# Protecting penetrations in fire-rated construction

Kelly Nicoletto,  
Codes and Advisory Services, UL Solutions.  
October 18, 2023

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.

# Copyright materials

---

UL Solutions and the UL Solutions logo are trademarks of UL LLC © 2023. All rights reserved. This document may not be copied without written permission from UL LLC and only in its entirety. The document is for general information purposes only and is not intended to convey legal or other professional advice. The information provided in this document is correct to the best of our knowledge, information and belief at the date of its publication.



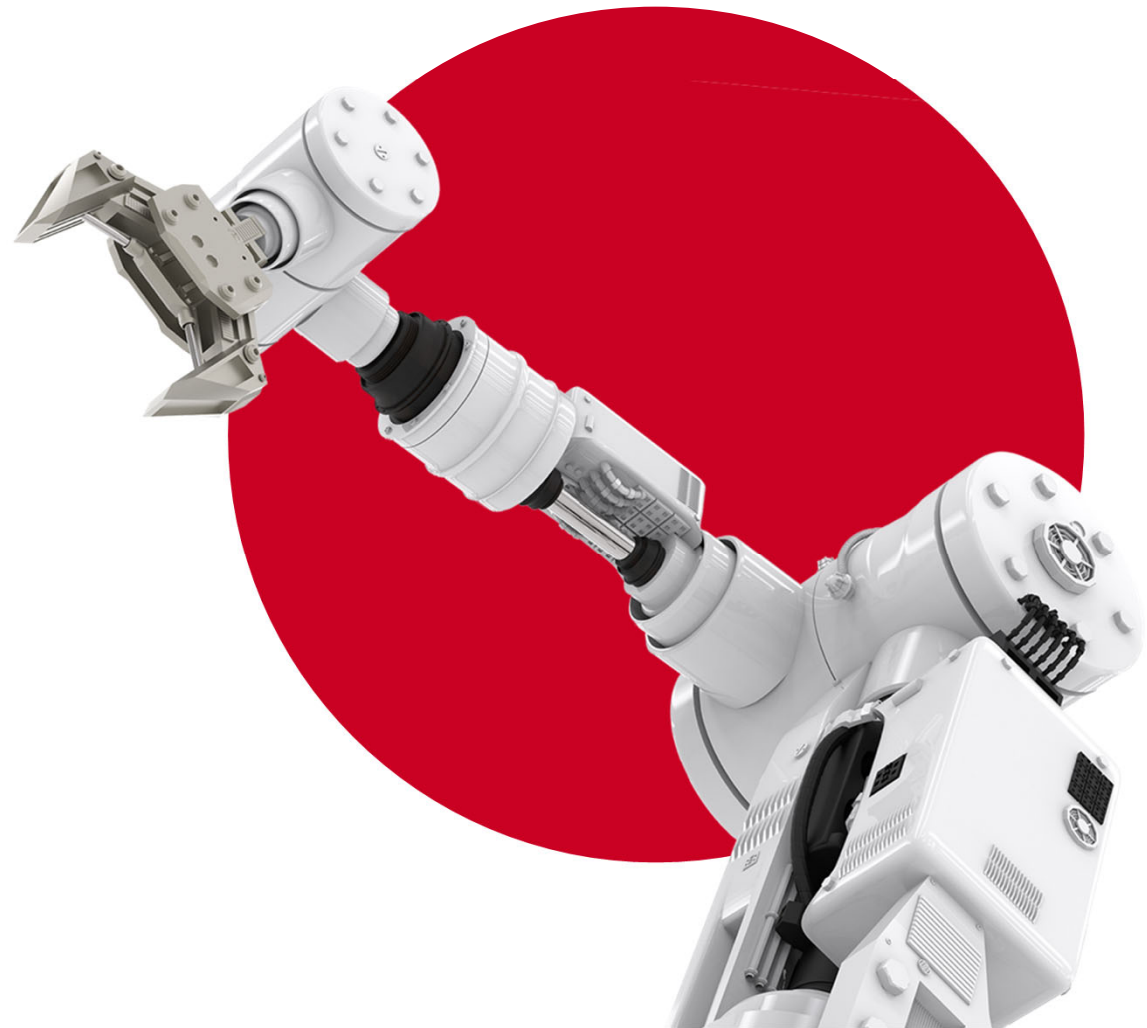
# We are now UL Solutions

New brand. Same mission.

Evolving safety science, exploring the world's pressing challenges and continuing to empower our customers to innovate with confidence.

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.



# Meet your speaker



## Kelly Nicoletto

Codes and Advisory Services, UL Solutions.

- With UL Solutions since May 2015.
- Completed a career in Fire Protection with the United States Air Force.
- Completed a career with the Alaska Department of Public Safety appointed to the position of Alaska State Fire Marshal on September 10, 2012.
- Lifetime member of the National Association of State Fire Marshals (NASFM).
- Founding member of the NASFM Model Code Committee.
- Established the NASFM Model Standards Review Committee.
- A member of all 4 NFPA 1 Fire Code Technical Committees.
- Honorary Member of the International Code Council (ICC).
- Member of the ICC Fire Service Membership Governing Committee.
- Served on numerous ICC Code Development Committees since 2004.



# Agenda

1. Introductory comments
2. Through- and membrane penetration firestop systems
3. Navigating **UL Product iQ**® for code compliance
4. Engineering judgments
5. Summary and closing



# Objectives

At the end of this lesson, you will:



Understand the intent and purpose behind fire-resistive construction



Understand the code requirements, testing procedures, plan review requirements and inspection practices relating to the protection of penetrations



Understand the 2018 International Building Code Chapter 7 requirements for protecting penetrations (firestop systems)



Be able to navigate **Product iQ** to identify listed products and assemblies that demonstrate compliance with the requirements of the 2018 IBC



# Building code basics

Some fundamentals

CXP22EVCS454981

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.



# Use of the IBC



Definitions –  
Chapter 2



Occupancy  
classification



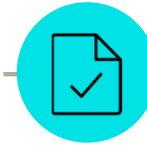
Use of tables –  
Scoping section



Table  
footnotes



Code  
exceptions

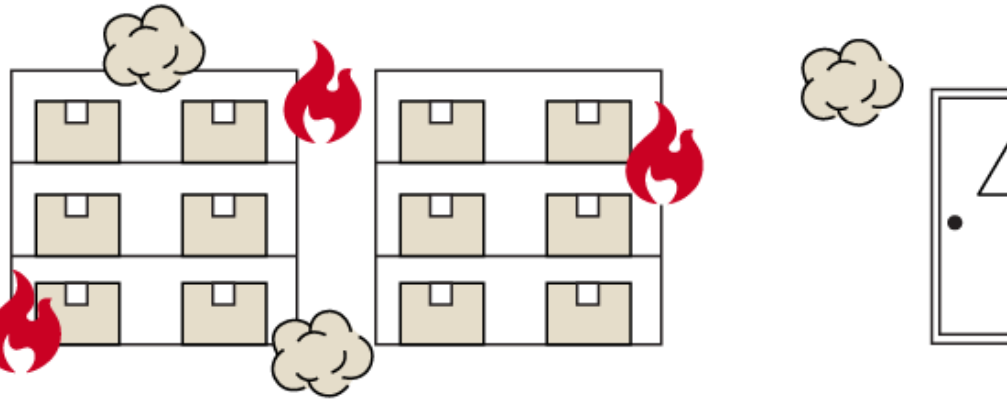
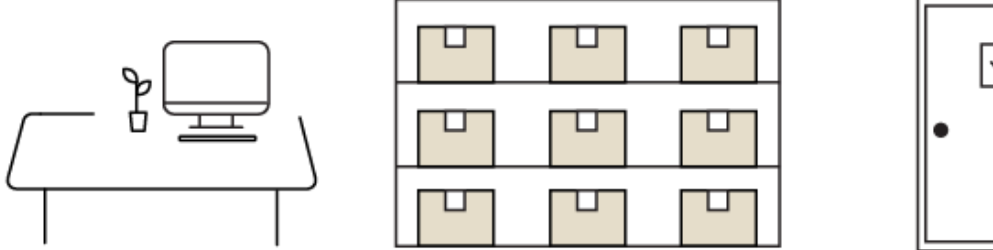


Reference  
standards



Index and  
glossary

# Fire resistance-rated construction



# Passive fire protection

The IBC takes a systematic approach to building fire protection, including:

## Passive fire protection

**Fire area:** The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by fire walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies of a building.

## Active fire protection

**Fire protection system:** Approved devices, equipment and systems or combinations of systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

Reasonable level of redundancy; inspection, testing and maintenance

# International Firestop Council





# Important definitions

## Fire resistance

That property of materials or their assemblies that prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases or flames under conditions of use –

**2018 IBC**

## Fire resistance rating

The period-of-time a building element, component or assembly maintains the ability to confine a fire, continues to perform a given structural function, or both, as determined by the tests, or the methods based on tests, prescribed in Section 703.3 –

**2018 IBC**

- Passage of flames
- Heat transmission
- Structural integrity

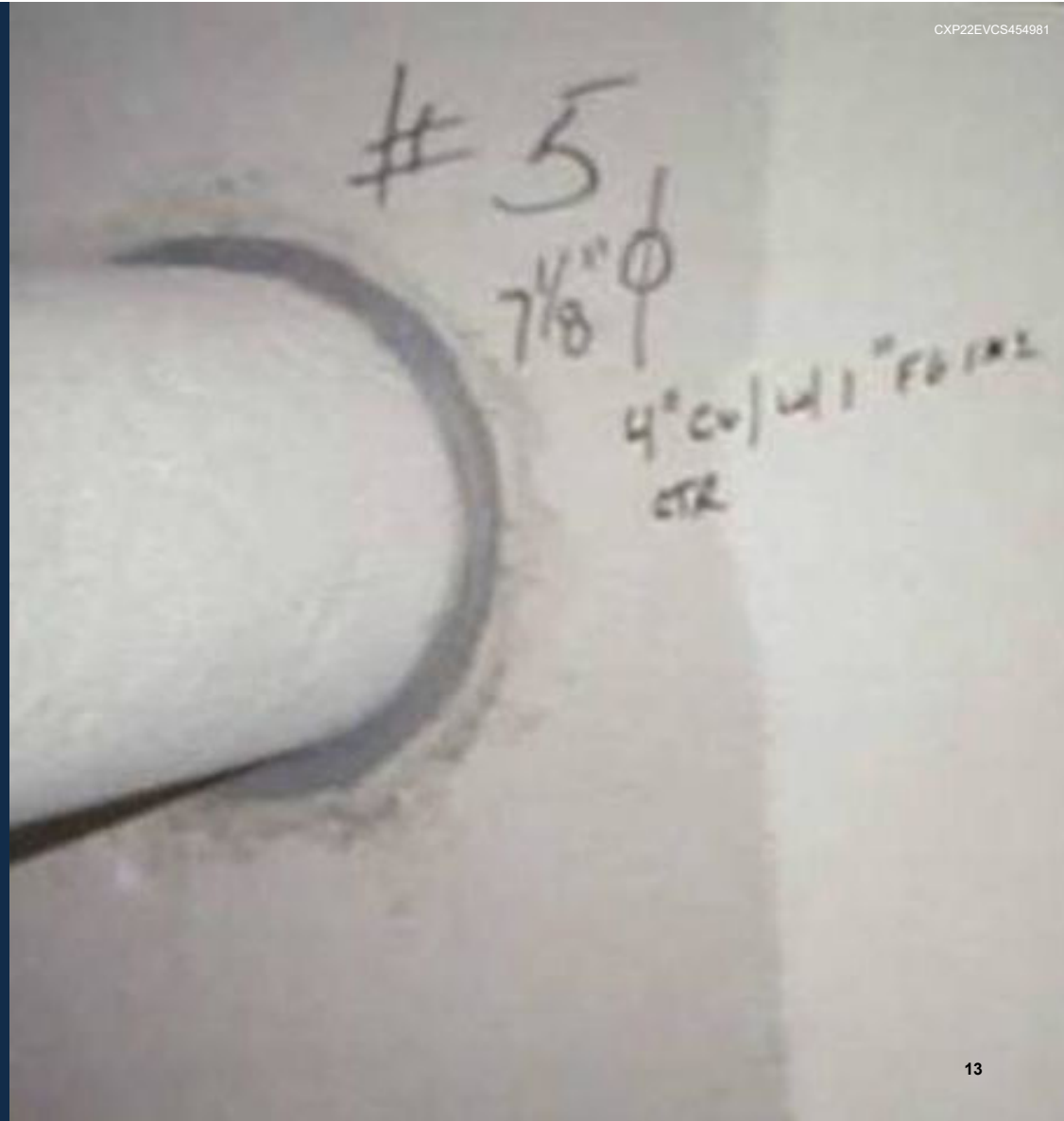
## Fire protection rating

The period-of-time that an opening protective will maintain the ability to confine a fire as determined by tests prescribed in Section 715; ratings are stated in hours or minutes –

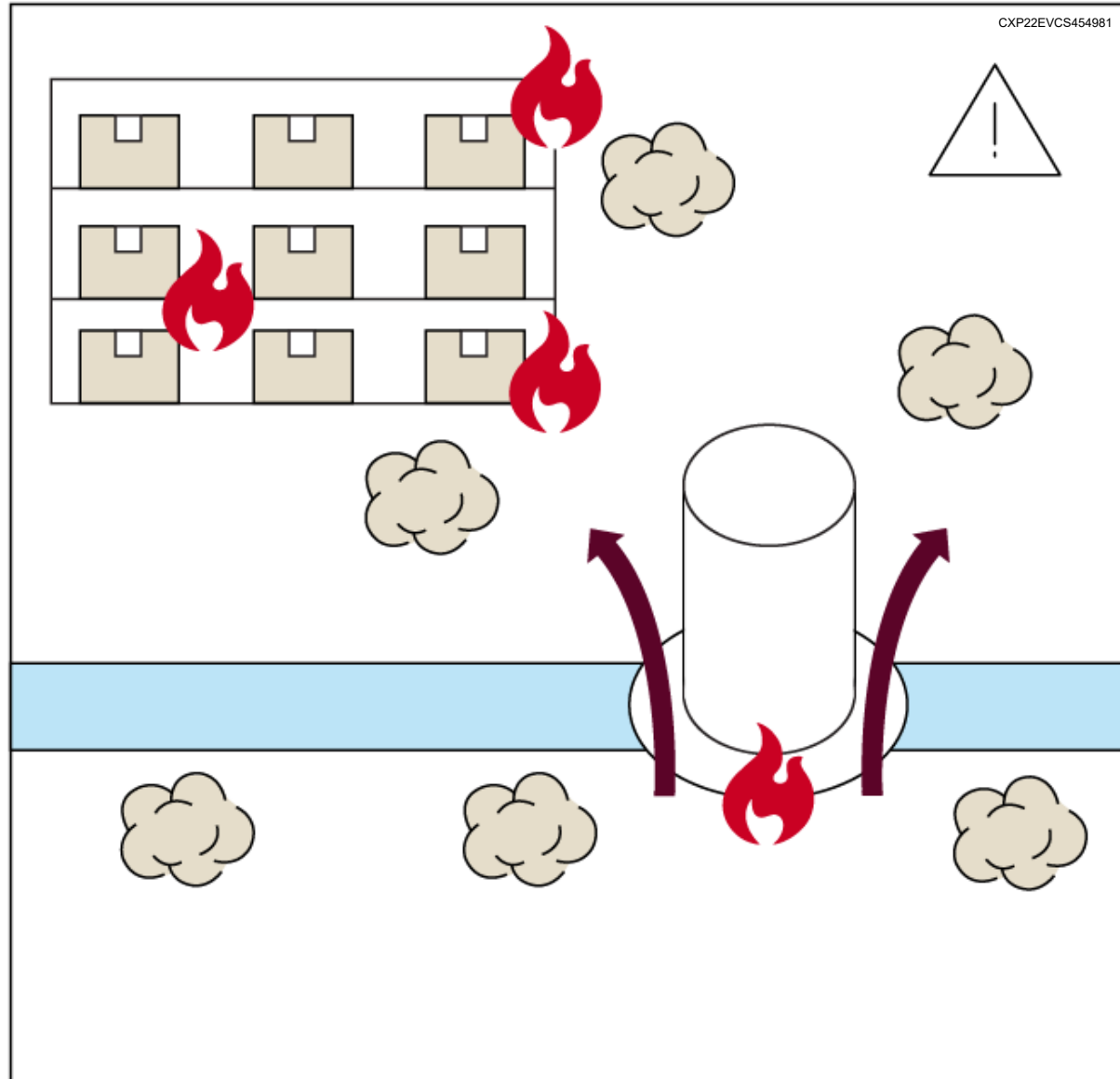
**2018 IBC**

- Passage of flames
- Structural integrity

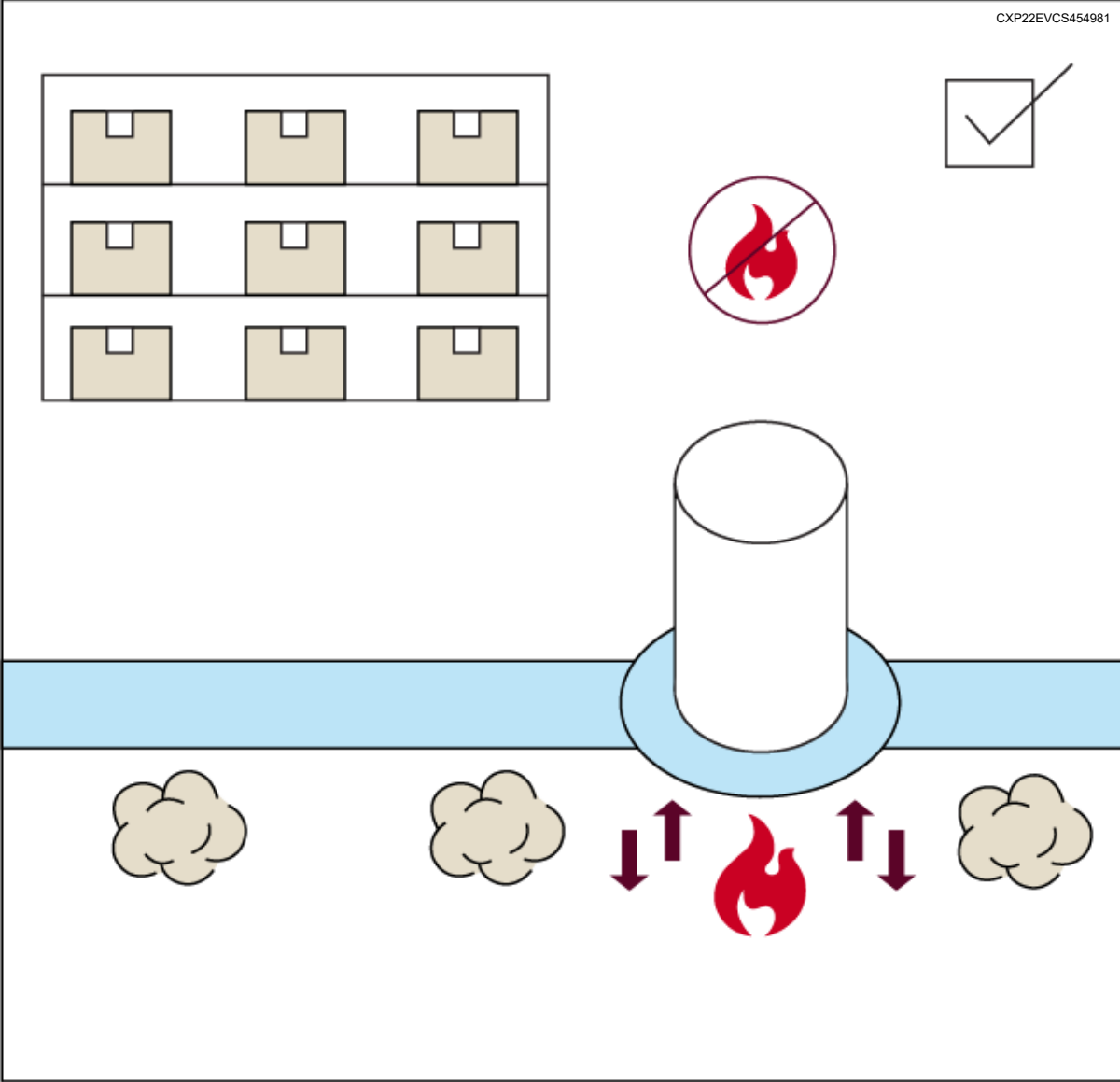
# Through and membrane penetration firestop systems



# No firestopping



# Proper firestopping



# More definitions

## What is firestopping?

**Firestopping (v)** is the process of restoring the integrity of a fire resistance-rated assembly at a penetration of the assembly through the use of a properly, designed, installed, inspected and maintained firestop system.

**Firestopping (n)** is a material or device installed to resist the passage of flame and heat through penetrations, i.e., a firestop.

## More definitions (continued)

### Membrane penetration

A breach in **one side** of a floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item installed into or passing through the breach –

**2018 IBC**

### Through-penetration

A breach in **both sides** of a floor, floor-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item passing through the breaches –

**2018 IBC**

### Membrane-penetration firestop

A material, device or construction installed to resist for a prescribed time period the passage of flame and heat through openings in a protective membrane in order to accommodate cables, cable trays, conduit, tubing, pipes or similar items –

**2018 IBC**

## More definitions (continued)

### Through-penetration firestop system

An assemblage consisting of a fire resistance-rated floor, floor-ceiling, or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items passing through the breaches on both sides of the assembly and the materials or devices (or both) installed to resist the spread of fire through the assembly for a prescribed period of time

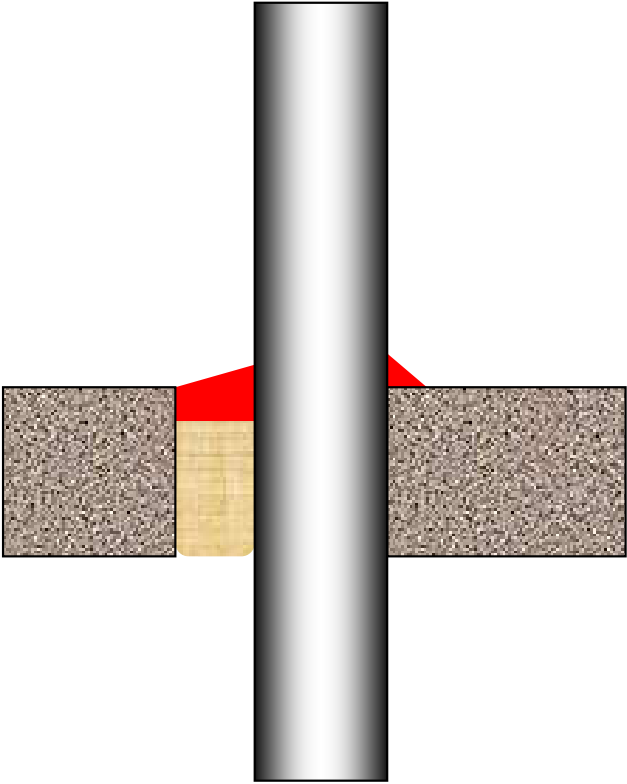
**2018 IBC**

### Firestop system

Membrane or through-penetration firestop system



# Three elements of a firestop system



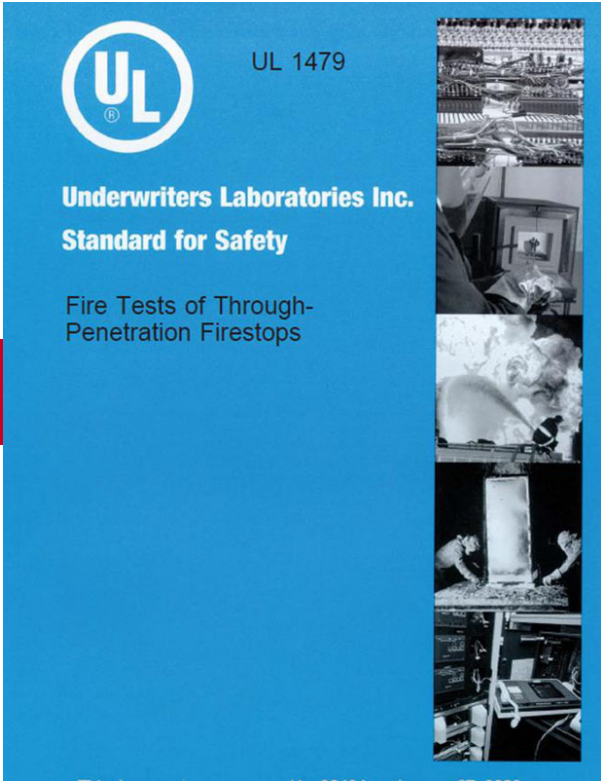
Floor  
or wall  
assembly

Penetrating  
item

Firestopping  
products

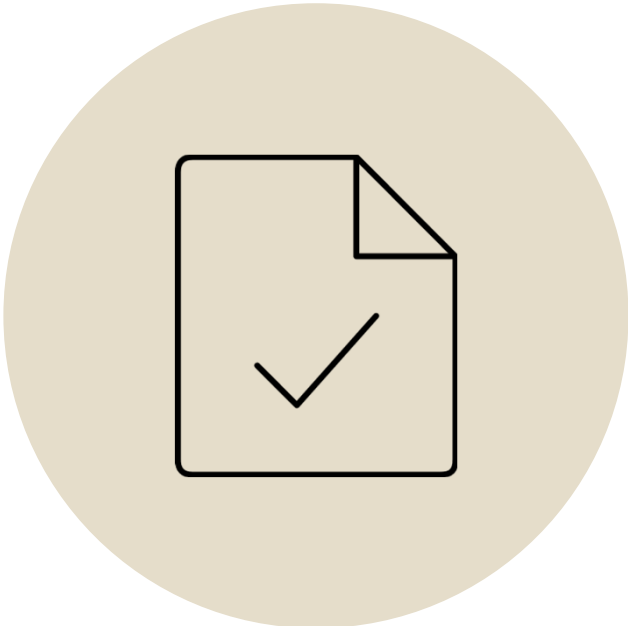
# Firestop systems

**Standards**



The image shows the cover of the UL 1479 standard. It features a blue background with the UL logo in a white circle at the top left. To the right of the logo, the text 'UL 1479' is displayed. Below the logo, the text reads 'Underwriters Laboratories Inc. Standard for Safety' and 'Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops'. On the right side of the cover, there is a vertical strip of four black and white photographs: the top one shows a large industrial building; the second shows a fire test setup; the third shows a fire test with a large plume of smoke; and the bottom one shows a person working at a computer workstation.

# Standards



## UL 1479

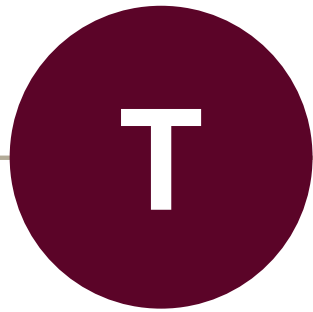
The Standard for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops

## ASTM E 814

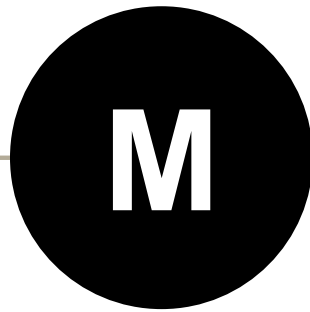
# Ratings



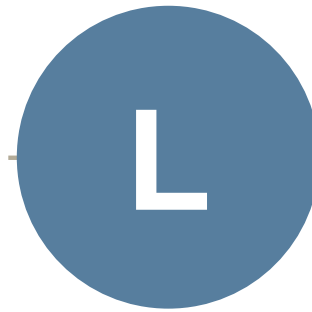
**Flame**  
occurrence



**Heat**  
transmission



**Movement**  
(optional)



**Leakage**  
(optional)



**Water leakage**  
(optional)

## Conditions of acceptance F Rating



Passage of flame



Hose stream

### 2018 IBC



#### F RATING:

The time period that the through-penetration firestop system limits the spread of fire through the penetration when tested in accordance with **ASTM E 814** or **UL 1479**.



## Conditions of acceptance T Rating



Passage of flame



325°F temperature rise



Hose stream

### 2018 IBC:



#### T RATING:

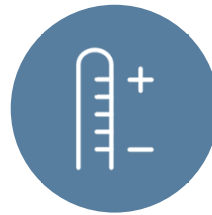
The time period that the penetration firestop system, including the penetrating item, limits the maximum temperature rise to 325°F (163°C) above its initial temperature through the penetration on the non-fire side when tested in accordance with **ASTM E 814** or **UL 1479**.



## Conditions of acceptance L Rating



Air leakage rate at ambient temperature



Air leakage rate at 400°F

### 2018 IBC:



#### L RATING:

The air leakage rating of a through-penetration firestop system or a fire-resistant joint system when tested in accordance with **UL 1479** or **UL 2079\***, respectively.

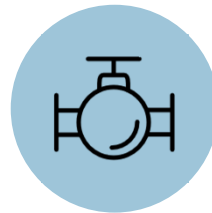




# Conditions of acceptance **W Rating**



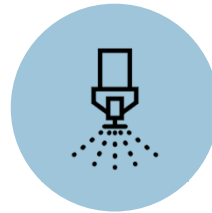
**Optional program\*** applicable to incidental water



3 ft WC pressure head / 72 hour exposure



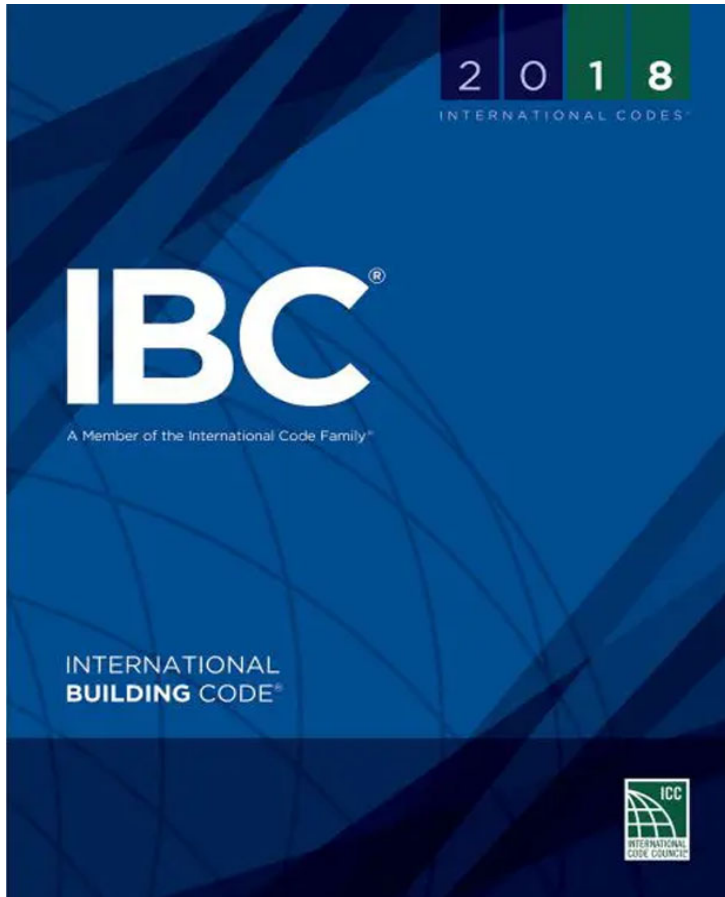
Firestop subjected to water exposure, followed by standard fire and hose stream tests



Firestop systems assigned a **W Rating**

\* No IBC definition or requirements.

# Code requirements general



## Section 714 of the 2021 IBC:

**714.4** – Penetrations into or through *fire walls, fire barriers, smoke barrier walls and fire partitions* shall comply with 714.4.1 through 714.4.3. Penetrations in *smoke barrier walls* shall also comply with 714.5.4.

**714.5** – Penetrations of horizontal assemblies not required to be protected by shaft enclosures shall be protected per Section 714.5.1 through 714.5.4.

# Code requirements wall assemblies

## Section 714.4.1 of the 2018 IBC

- **714.3.1** – Through-penetrations shall be protected by one of the following:
  - As tested as part of the entire wall assembly
  - As tested to UL 1479/ASTM E814

### Exceptions:

- Concrete, grout or mortar (full thickness of the wall)
- Annular space protection material (time-temperature curve exposure and time)



- **714.4.1.2** – When tested to UL 1479 or ASTM E814, through-penetrations shall have an **F Rating** of not less than the required rating of the wall penetrated

# Code requirements wall assemblies (continued)

## Section 714.4.1 of the 2018 IBC

- **714.4.2** – As specified in 714. Membrane penetration shall be protected as follows:
  - 4.1, i.e., through penetrations
  - Recessed fixtures shall be installed so as **not to reduce the required fire resistance**

### Exceptions (714.4.2):

- Steel electrical boxes installed per prescriptive requirements
- Listed electrical boxes of any material installed per listing
- Electrical boxes of any size or type installed with tested and listed protection
- Boxes other than electrical boxes tested and listed for such use
- Annular space created by fire sprinklers (covered by metal escutcheon plates)
- Steel electrical boxes exceeding 16 in.<sup>2</sup> area or any size exceeding prescriptive requirements protected by listed putty pads or other listed material and method installed per its listing

# Code requirements horizontal assemblies

## Section 714.4 of the 2018 IBC

- **714.4.1.1** – Through penetration shall be protected by one of the following:
  - As tested as part of the entire horizontal assembly
  - As tested to ANSI/UL 1479/ASTM E814

### Exceptions:

- Annular space protection material
- Concrete, grout or mortar
- Listed electrical boxes of any material installed per listing



# Code requirements horizontal assemblies (continued)

## Section 714.4 of the 2018 IBC

- **714.4.2** – Membrane penetration shall be protected as follows:
  - As specified in 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2, i.e., through penetrations
  - Recessed fixtures shall be installed so as **not to reduce** the required fire resistance

### Exceptions:

- Penetrations contained and located within the cavity of a wall above or below the floor do not require a T Rating
- Penetrations by floor, tub or shower drains contained and located within the concealed space of a horizontal assembly do not require a T Rating
- Penetrations less than 4 in. in diameter penetrating directly into metal-enclosed electrical power switchgear do not require a T Rating



# Code requirements horizontal assemblies (continued)

## Section 714.4 of the 2018 IBC

- **714.4.2** – Membrane penetration shall be protected as follows:
  - As specified in 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2, i.e., through penetrations
  - Recessed fixtures shall be installed so as **not to reduce** the required fire resistance

### Exceptions (714.5.1):

- If less than 100 in.<sup>2</sup> per 100 ft.<sup>2</sup>, metallic penetrants may be either firestopped or fireblocked
- Steel electrical boxes installed per prescriptive requirements
- Electrical boxes of any size or type installed with tested and listed protection
- Listed electrical boxes of any material installed per listing
- Annular space created by fire sprinklers (covered by metal escutcheon plate)
- Interruption by a double wood top plate of a wall assembly sheathed with X-rated gypsum, provided all penetrating items through the double top plates are protected and the ceiling membrane is tight to the top plates





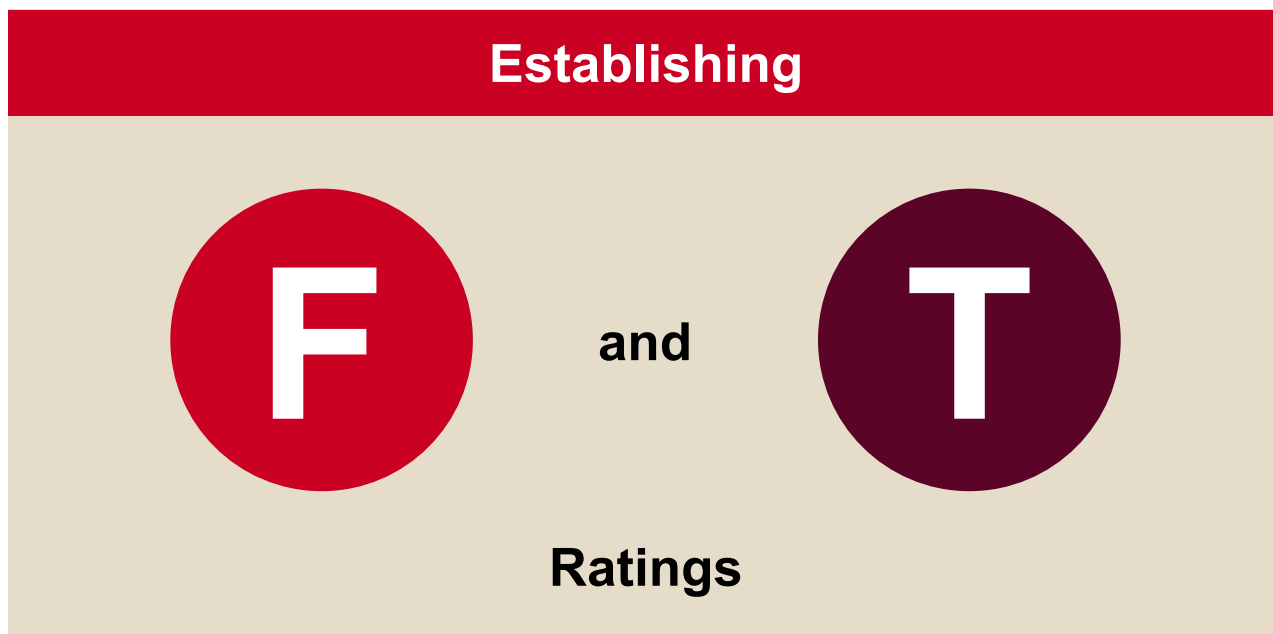
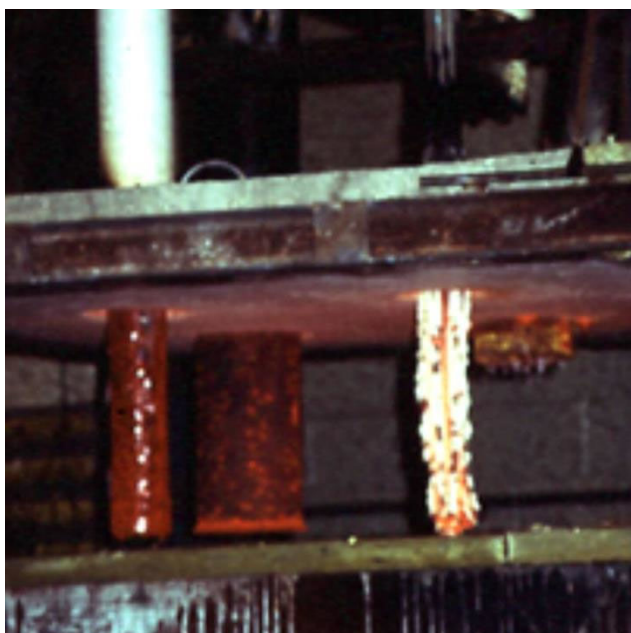
## Code requirements – miscellaneous

- **714.4.3** – Noncombustible penetrants **shall not be connected to combustible** penetrants beyond point of firestop system
- **714.5.4** – Penetrations in smoke barriers shall have an L Rating at ambient and 400°F

**Max 5.0 CFM/ft.<sup>2</sup> of opening**

**Aggregate 50 CFM / 100 ft.<sup>2</sup> of barrier**

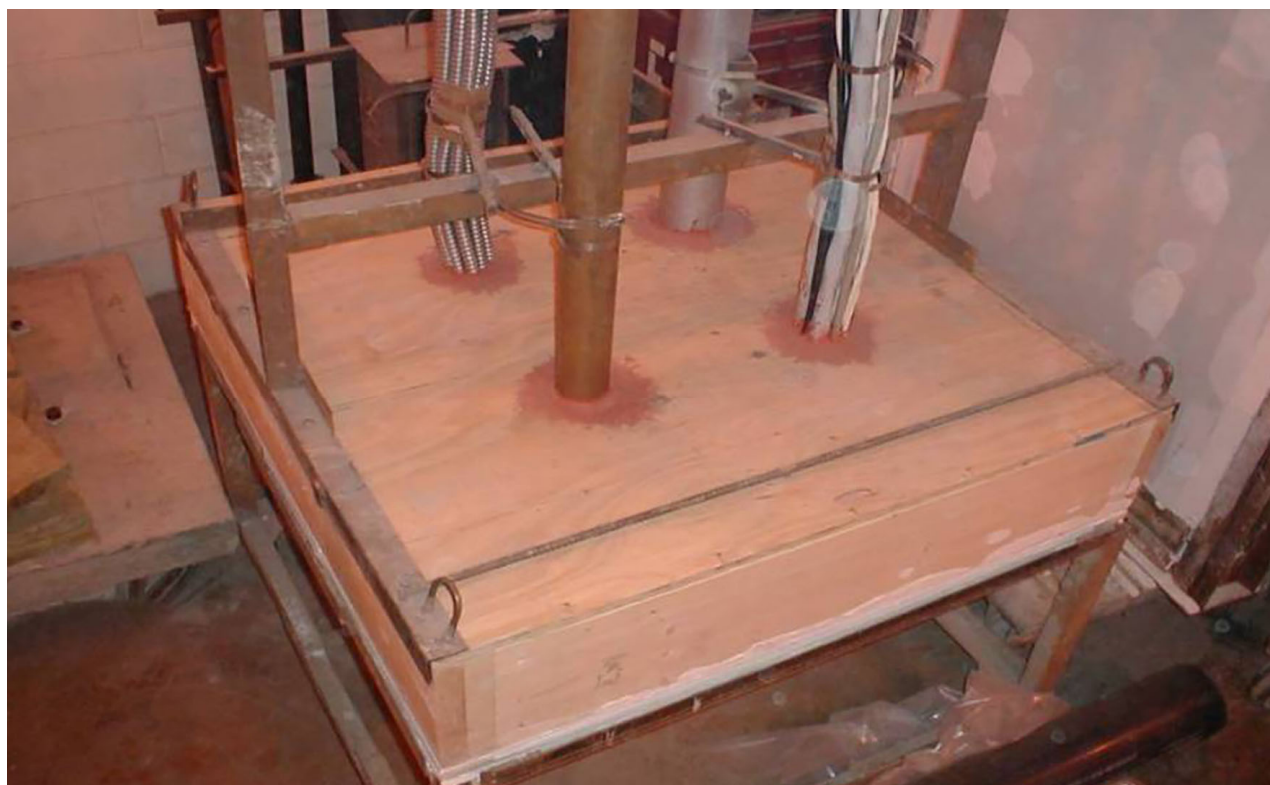
# Firestop systems



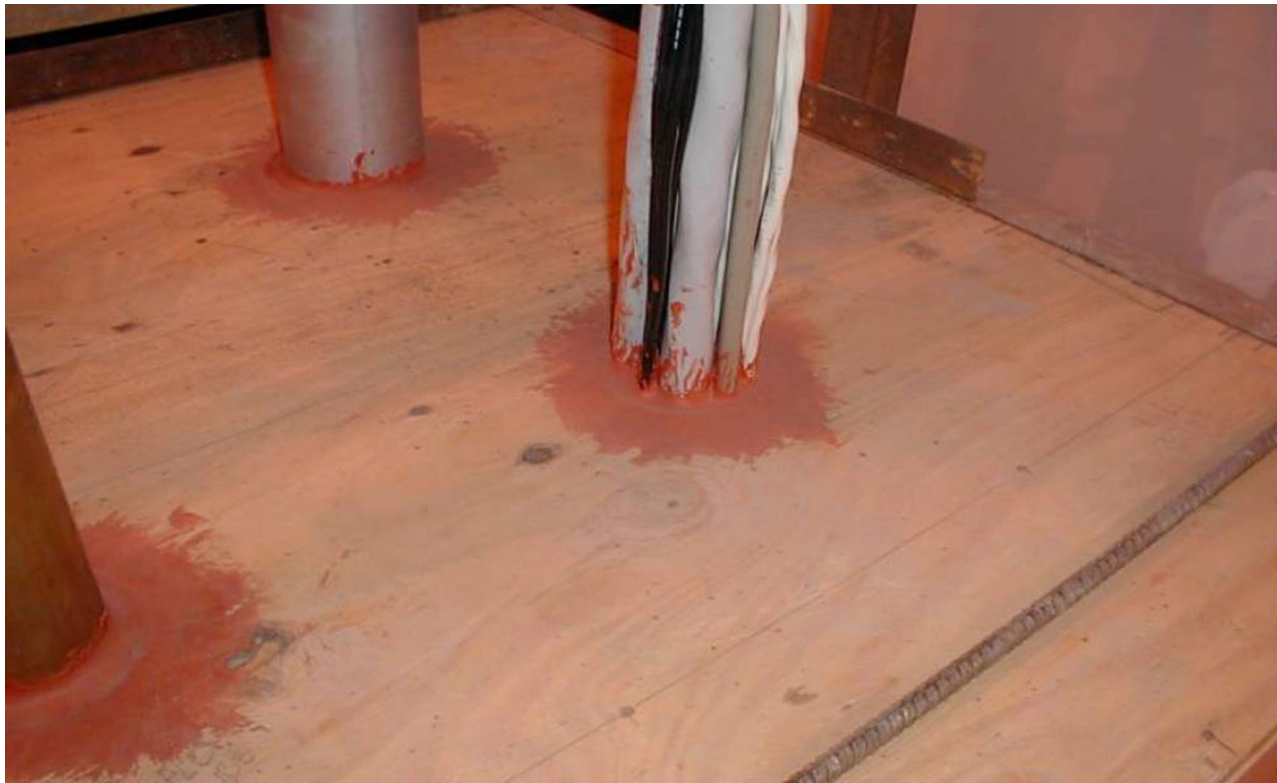
# Full-scale wall assembly



## Small-scale wood floor assembly

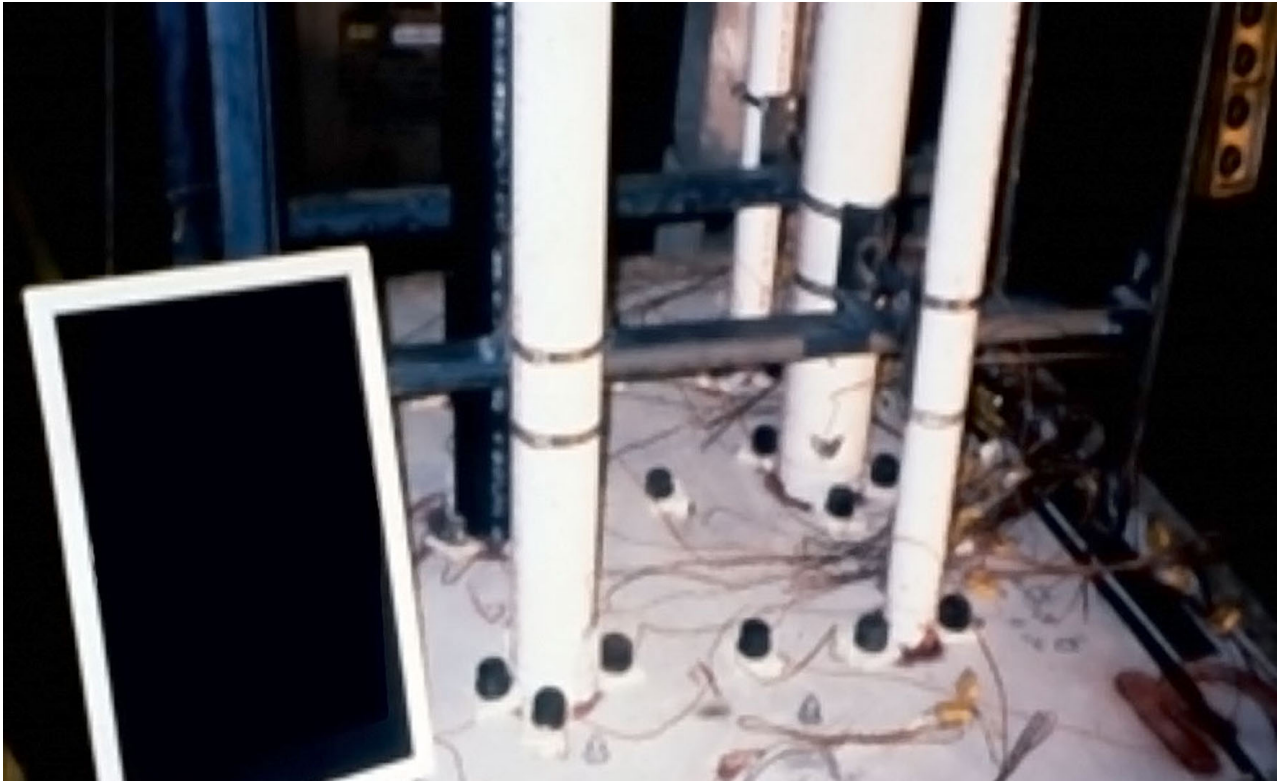


# Cables through wood floor

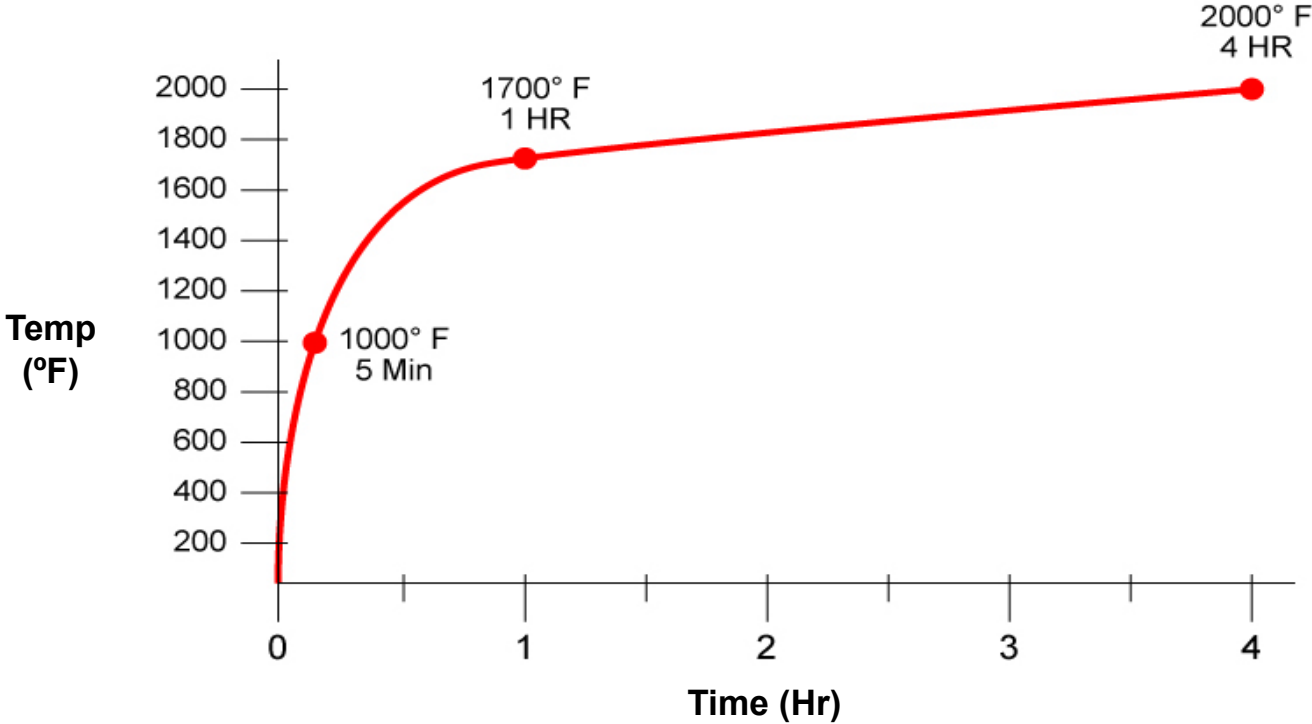




# Top view of a slab (pre-test)

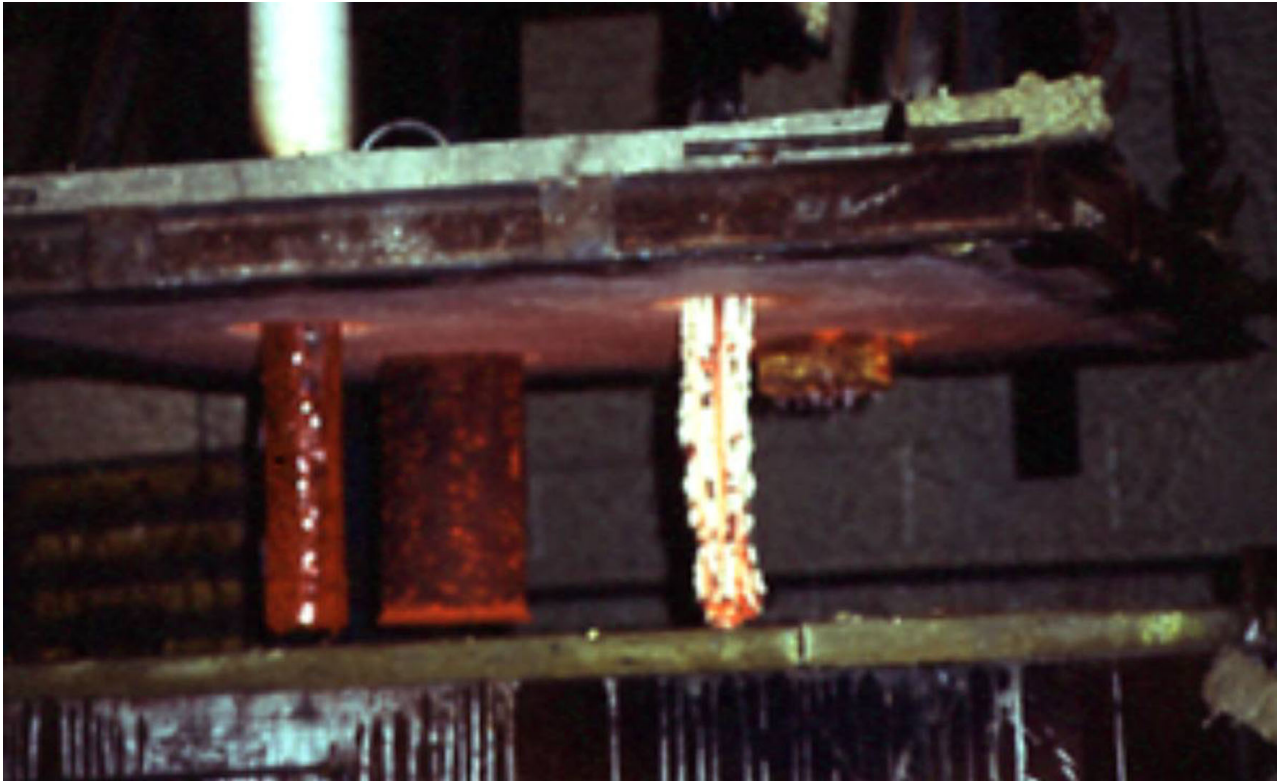


# Time-temperature curve





# Bottom view of a slab (post-test)



# Hose stream test

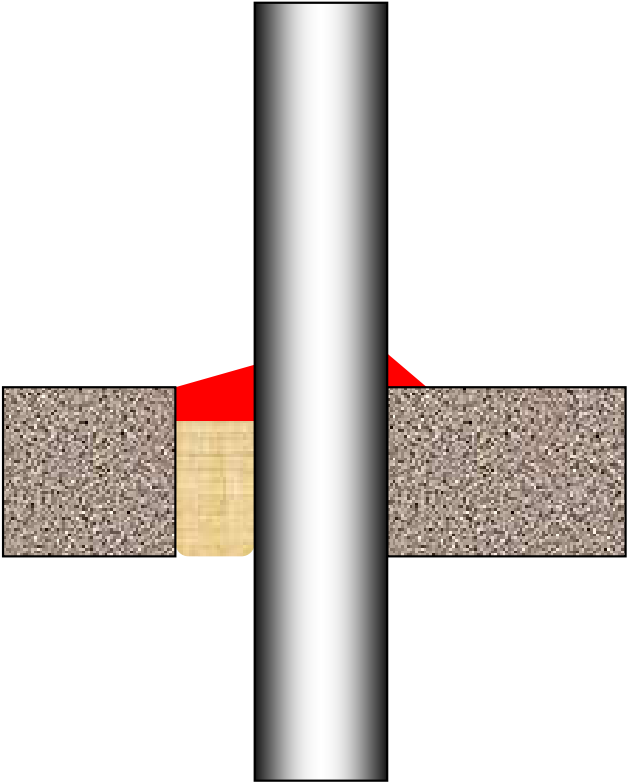


# Firestop systems



Key points about firestop systems

# Three elements of a firestop system



Floor  
or wall  
assembly

Penetrating  
item

Firestopping  
products

# Firestop systems



A red rectangular block containing a white icon of a document with a checkmark, positioned above the text "Plan Review" in white font.

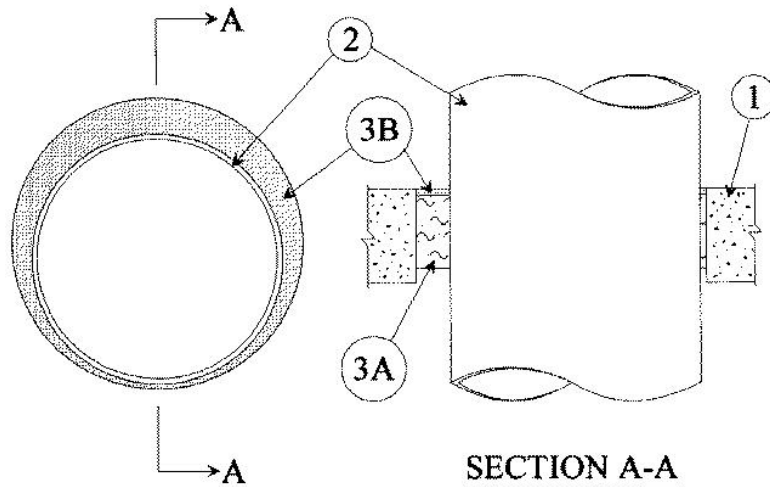
# For the architect/contractor

## System No. C-AJ-1251

March 20, 2000

F Rating – 2 Hr

T Rating – 1/4 Hr



1. **Floor or Wall Assembly** – Min 5 in. thick normal weight (150 pcf) concrete. Wall may also be constructed of any UL Classified **Concrete Blocks**\*. Max diam of opening is 14 in.

See **Concrete Blocks** (CAZT) category in the Fire Resistance Directory for names of manufacturers.

## Through-penetration firestop designs from UL Solutions serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 A set of build instructions

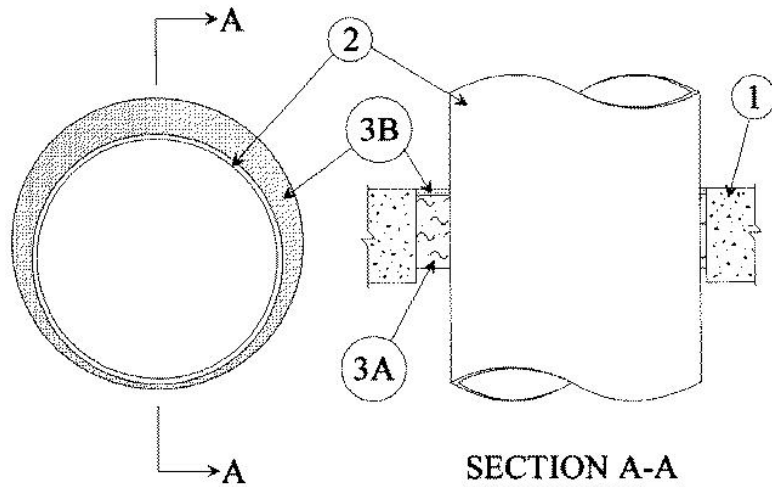
# For the certified code official

## System No. C-AJ-1251

March 20, 2000

F Rating – 2 Hr

T Rating – 1/4 Hr



1. **Floor or Wall Assembly** – Min 5 in. thick normal weight (150 pcf) concrete. Wall may also be constructed of any UL Classified **Concrete Blocks**\*. Max diam of opening is 14 in.

See **Concrete Blocks** (CAZT) category in the Fire Resistance Directory for names of manufacturers.

## Through-penetration firestop designs from UL Solutions serve two roles:

1

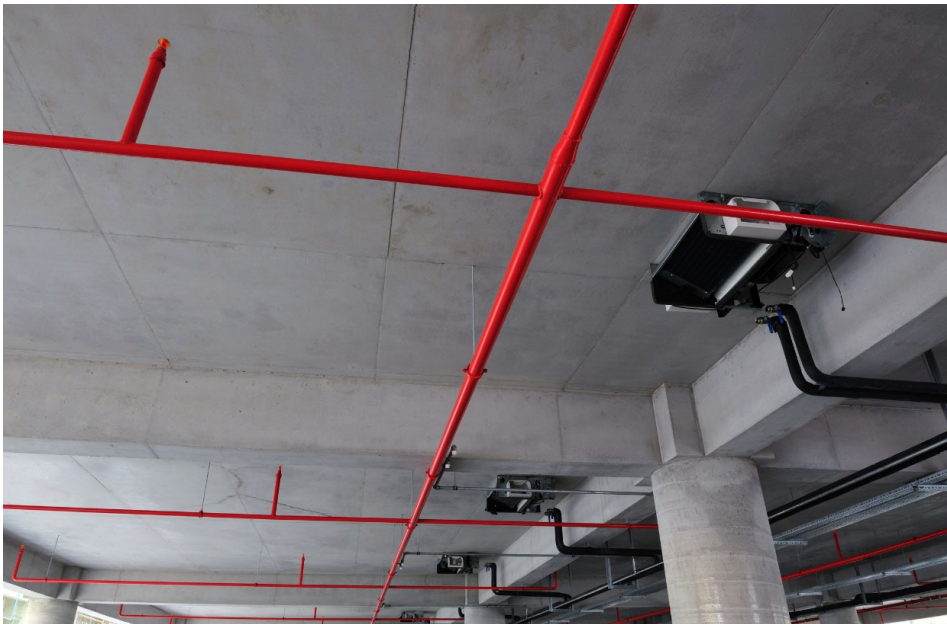
Evidence of compliance

2

Document by which to inspect



# Plan review



Details showing compliance with the firestop requirements of the Building Code should be included on the plans and in the specifications.

Recommended that the fire resistance-rated designs by UL Solutions (or others) be imported into the plans.

Importing systems into plans does NOT violate UL Solutions copyright requirements.

# Plan review (continued)

## Review proposed fire resistance-rated assemblies for compliance with code:

- Hourly rating requirement
- Details of assemblies proposed relative to actual construction
- Consider variations identified relative to permitted substitutions stated in the UL Fire Resistance Guide Information
- Consider need for engineering judgments if permitted by department policy
- Consider need for special inspections as required by code and/or by department policy

## Plan review (continued)

“ All firestop systems need to be reproduced on the plans. If an engineering judgment is needed, it must be noted on the plans and this judgment must be approved by the code enforcement official.” ”

The above information will be needed by the field inspectors during construction.

# Questions or comments?



# Firestop systems



# Inspection of firestop systems

## Section 1705.17 of the 2018 IBC

**Special inspections** are required for fire-resistant penetrations and joints in high-rise buildings and Risk Category III or IV.

# Inspection of firestop systems



Verifies *approved* system is being used

Verifies assembly is being constructed in accordance with the *approved* system



# Qualified firestop contractor programs



Qualified Firestop  
Contractor Program of UL Solutions

FM-approved specialty firestop  
installation contractor

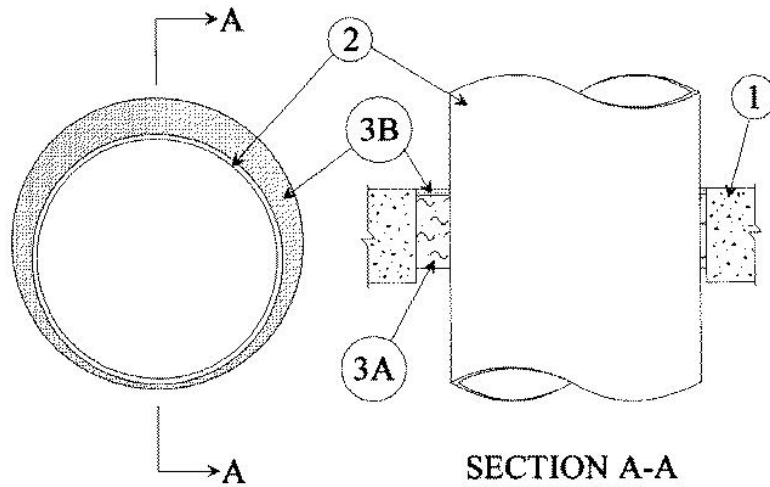
# For the architect/contractor

## System No. C-AJ-1251

March 20, 2000

F Rating – 2 Hr

T Rating – 1/4 Hr



1. **Floor or Wall Assembly** – Min 5 in. thick normal weight (150 pcf) concrete. Wall may also be constructed of any UL Classified **Concrete Blocks**\*. Max diam of opening is 14 in.

See **Concrete Blocks** (CAZT) category in the Fire Resistance Directory for names of manufacturers.

## Through-penetration firestop designs from UL Solutions serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 A set of build instructions

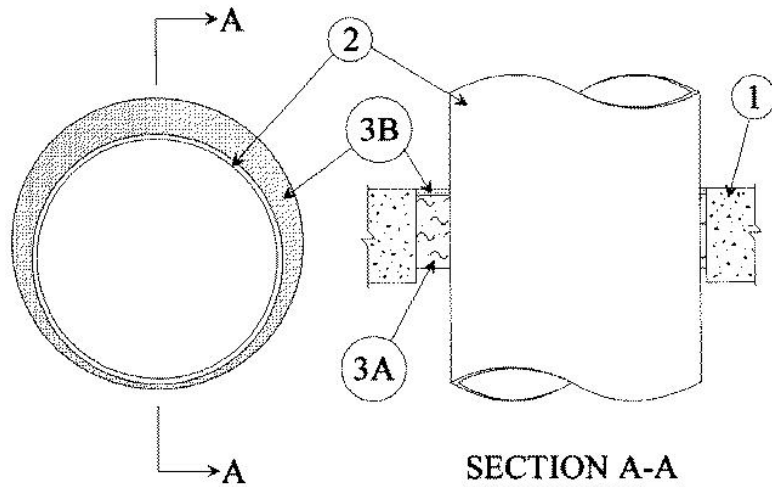
# For the certified code official

## System No. C-AJ-1251

March 20, 2000

F Rating – 2 Hr

T Rating – 1/4 Hr



1. **Floor or Wall Assembly** – Min 5 in. thick normal weight (150 pcf) concrete. Wall may also be constructed of any UL Classified **Concrete Blocks**\*. Max diam of opening is 14 in.

See **Concrete Blocks** (CAZT) category in the Fire Resistance Directory for names of manufacturers.

## Through-penetration firestop designs from UL Solutions serve two roles:

- 1 Evidence of compliance
- 2 Document by which to inspect

# Qualified firestop contractor programs



- Review selected systems
- Obtain engineering judgments as needed
- Establish inspection guidelines and expectations
- Establish work and inspection schedules
- Review qualifications/experience of contractors

# Pre-inspection



- Require construction documents that detail all firestop systems
- Obtain copies of all firestop systems
- Develop a plan to inspect each assembly at the appropriate times during the construction process

# At the inspection site



- Have your inspection tools such as a flashlight, coring device, depth gauge, calipers, tape measure, etc.
- Review the general layout of the assembly
- Verify that the building materials being utilized match those described in the approved system
- Verify that the firestop system is correct for the construction type of the floor or wall assembly penetrated
- Verify the type of penetrating item
- Verify that the specified firestopping products called out in the specified system are the ones installed
- For sealant products, verify that the type, manufacturer, location and thickness match what is described in the approved system
- Verify that the approved third-party testing agency's labels are on the products, empty containers or boxes
- When necessary, conduct destructive evaluations on the assemblies
- During the inspection, have the contractor follow along to repair assemblies after destructive testing

# Inspection of firestop systems (continued)

Reference materials:



## ASTM E2174

Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Firestop Systems



## IFC video

“Inspecting Firestop for Compliance”



## IFC Pocket Guide

Resource for inspectors



## IFC video

“Firestop Installations”



# Inspection of firestop systems (continued)

Available resources:



- Firestop Contractors International Association (FCIA) [www.fcia.org](http://www.fcia.org)
- Fire Safe North America [www.firesafenorthamerica.org](http://www.firesafenorthamerica.org)
- International Firestop Council (IFC) [www.firestop.org](http://www.firestop.org)

Questions or comments?

# UL Solutions product category designations

## **Membrane penetrations in fire resistance-rated wall assemblies:**

- CLIV – Wall Opening Protective Materials
- QCSN – Wall Opening Protective Materials

## **Through-penetrations in fire resistance-rated wall assemblies:**

XHEZ – Through-penetration Firestop Systems

## **Joint systems for fire resistance-rated assemblies:**

XHBN – Joint Systems

# Organization under each product area



**1**

Guide information



**2**

Designs, systems  
or assemblies



**3**

Product categories indexed  
by manufacturers' names

# UL Solutions guide information



- Equipment, materials or systems included in the category
- Intended use, restrictions or supplemental information
- Standard(s) used to evaluate products under the category
- Listing or Classification Mark information for the category

# Examples of guide information for firestop systems



- General description of a firestop system
- Standard
- Permitted substitutions
- Support of penetrating items
- Description of ratings
- Specifications of penetrating items
- Angle of penetration
- Description of numbering system

# C-AJ-1000 First alpha character



Either floor or wall  
being penetrated



Floor being  
penetrated



Wall being  
penetrated



## C-AJ-1000 Second and third alpha characters

Letter	Description
A	Concrete floors with a minimum thickness less than or equal to 5 in.
B	Concrete floors with a minimum thickness greater than 5 in.
C	Framed floors
D	Steel decks in marine vessels
E	Floor-ceiling assemblies consisting of concrete with membrane protection
F-I	Not used at present time
J	Concrete or masonry walls with a minimum thickness less than or equal to 8 in.
K	Concrete or masonry walls with a minimum thickness greater than 8 in.
L	Framed wall
M	Bulkheads in marine vessels
N	Composite panel walls
O-Z	Not used at present time

# C-AJ-1000 Numeric characters

<b>Numeric Range</b>	<b>Description</b>
0000-0999	No penetrating items
1000-1999	Metallic pipe, conduit or tubing
2000-2999	Nonmetallic pipe, conduit or tubing
3000-3999	Electrical cables
4000-4999	Cable trays with electrical cables
5000-5999	Insulated pipes
6000-6999	Misc. electrical penetrants such as busducts
7000-7999	Misc. mechanical penetrants such as air ducts
8000-8999	Groupings of penetrations including any combination of items listed above
9000-9999	Not used at present time

# Systems



Each firestop system contains specific construction features

Many firestop systems contain various options and ratings

Must be followed exactly for rating to apply

# Product categories



- Each product category describes some generic family of products, e.g., forming materials
- Each product category covers products used in joint systems, perimeter fire containment systems and firestop systems
- Each product category contains manufacturers and designations of products tested and specified in the systems
- Manufacturers arranged alphabetically within product category

# Firestop systems

Online search tool from UL Solutions



# Product iQ

UL Product iQ<sup>®</sup> combines UL certification information trusted around the globe with the design and functionality of a modern search engine. This intuitive search tool allows you to quickly locate the product or component that will meet your needs.



## **Trusted UL Solutions data**

Access information for thousands of UL Certified products, components and materials.



## **Advanced search**

Pinpoint content with advanced search features that allow you to compare products, search by testing standards and more.



## **Personalized account**

Personalize your account with a custom dashboard, saved searches and tagging features.



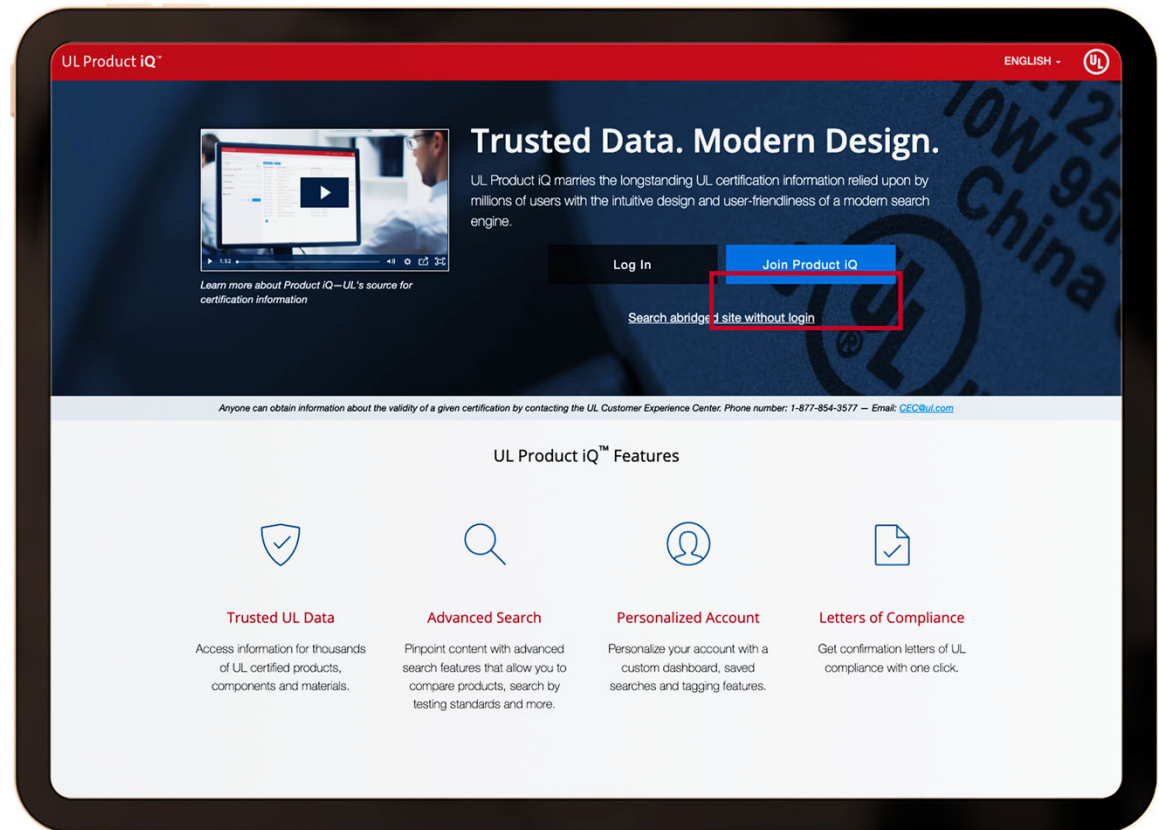
## **Confirmation letter**

Get confirmation of UL Solutions compliance with one click.

# Product iQ — UL Solutions online directory

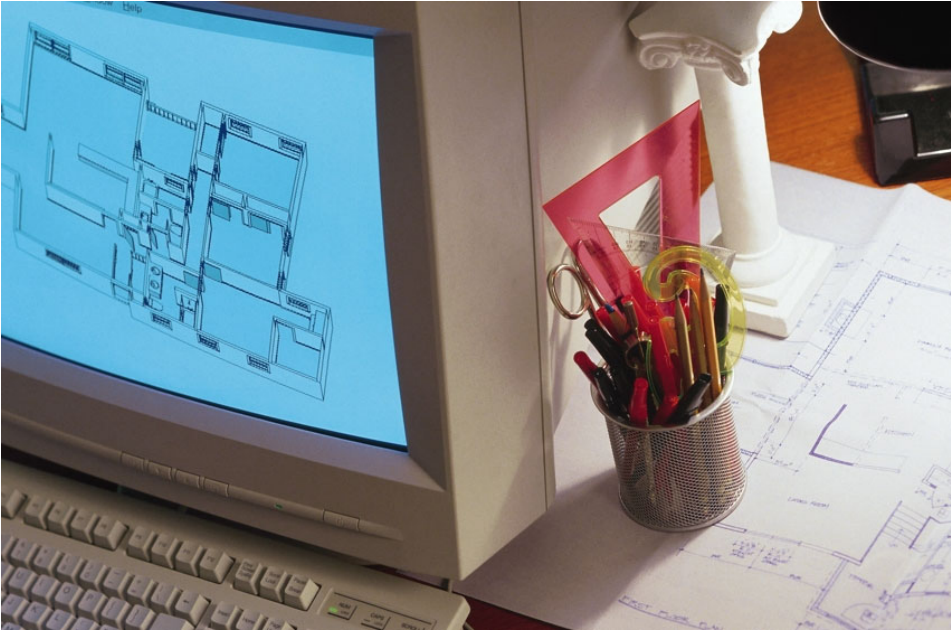
## [ProductiQ.UL.com](https://ProductiQ.UL.com)

- Helps you verify code compliance
- Continuously updated
- Mobile-friendly
- Requires registration to create a user account
- Basic service – no charge for use
- Paid subscription service provides more features – complimentary upgrade for code authorities. The first month of a premium subscription is for free if someone is interested in trying it out.





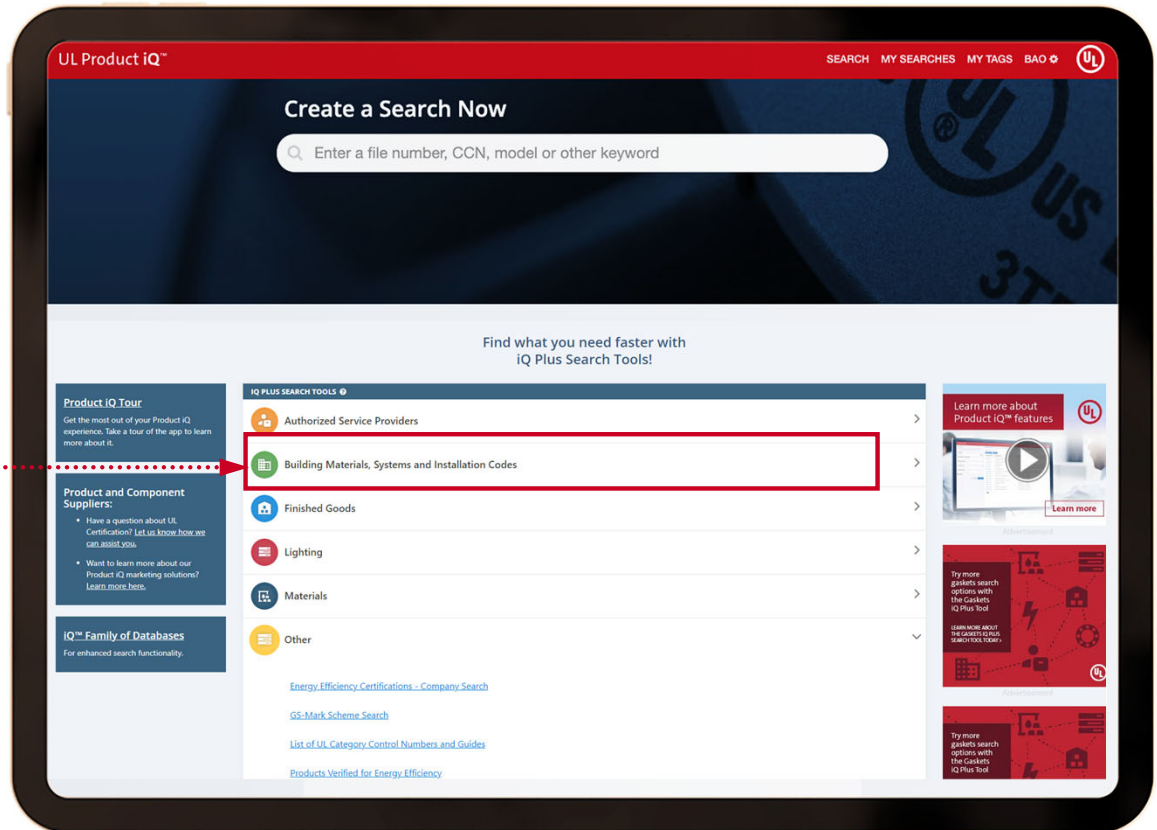
# Firestop systems



Searching for information  
on firestop systems

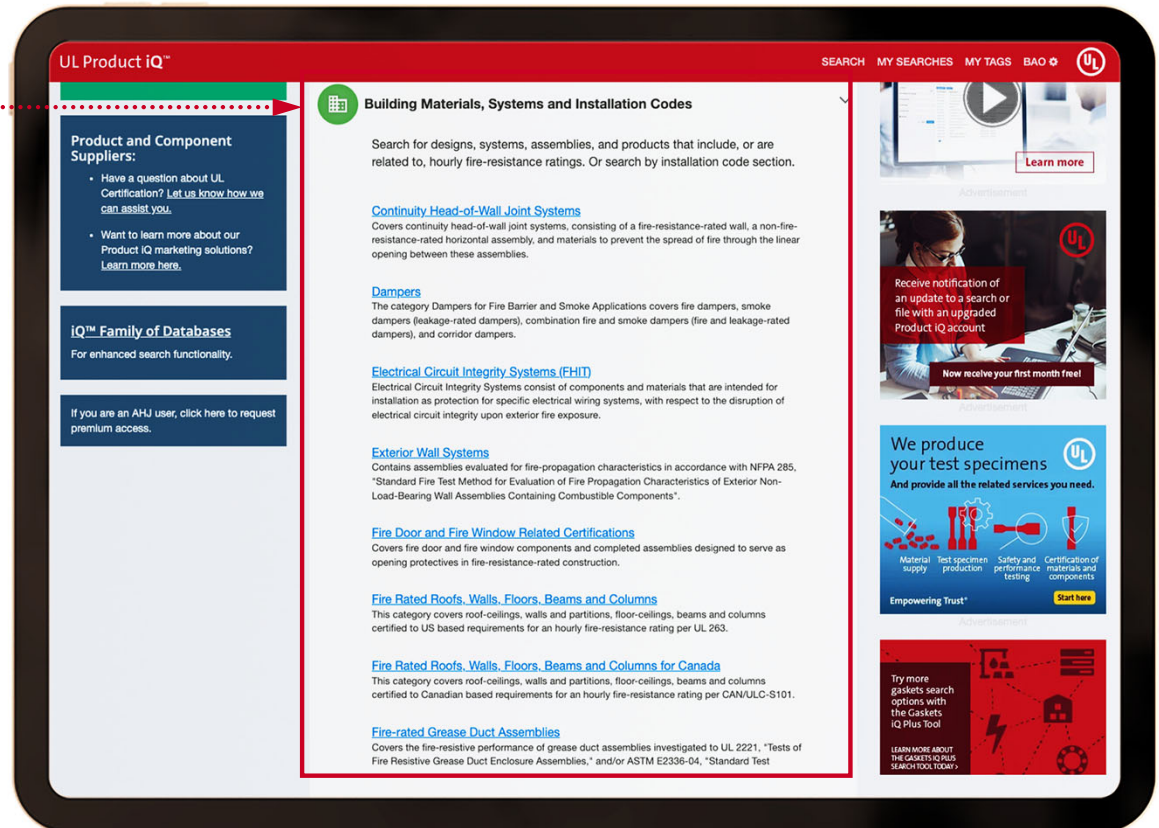
# Product iQ

Search: Building Materials, Systems and Installation Codes




# Product IQ

Enhanced search functionality  
drop-down menu



# Product IQ

Enhanced search functionality drop-down menu (continued)

 **Building Materials and Systems**
▼

Search for designs, systems, assemblies, and products that include, or are related to, hourly fire-resistance ratings.

**Dampers**  
The category Dampers for Fire Barrier and Smoke Applications covers fire dampers, smoke dampers (leakage-rated dampers), combination fire and smoke dampers (fire and leakage-rated dampers), and corridor dampers.

**Electrical Circuit Protective Systems (FHIT)**  
Electrical Circuit Protective Systems consist of components and materials that are intended for installation as protection for specific electrical wiring systems, with respect to the disruption of electrical circuit integrity upon exterior fire exposure.

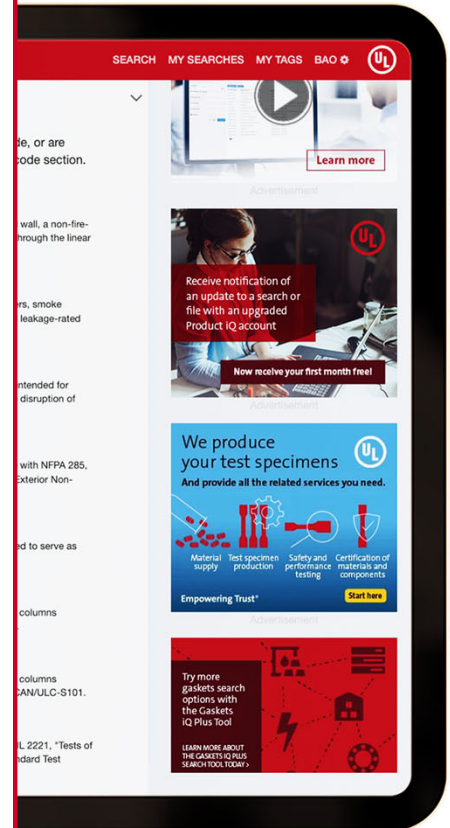
**Fire Door and Fire Window Related Certifications**  
Fire door assemblies and window assemblies are construction details and the fire ratings for fire door assemblies and fire window assemblies that are more complex than those typically associated with these assemblies.

**Fire Rated Roofs, Walls, Floors, Beams and Columns**  
This category covers floor-ceilings, roof-ceilings, beams, columns, walls and partitions investigated for an hourly fire-resistance rating.

**Fire-rated Grease Duct Assemblies**

**Fire-resistance Ratings of Structural Steel Used in Petrochemical Facilities**  
This category covers hourly fire-resistance ratings of steel columns intended for use in petrochemical facilities investigated using a rapid rise fire exposure.

**Firestop Systems**



# Product iQ

Enhanced search functionality drop-down menu (continued)

**Firestop Systems**  
This category covers firestop systems, which are specific constructions consisting of a wall or floor assembly, a penetrating item passing through an opening in the wall or floor assembly, and the materials designed to prevent the spread of fire.

**Firestop Systems for Canada**  
This category covers firestop systems, which are specific constructions consisting of a wall or floor assembly, a penetrating item passing through an opening in the wall or floor assembly, and the materials designed to prevent the spread of fire.

**Installation Code Search**  
Search for UL Certified products by installation code. Select your model installation code and section to locate UL Certified products for Code compliant installations.

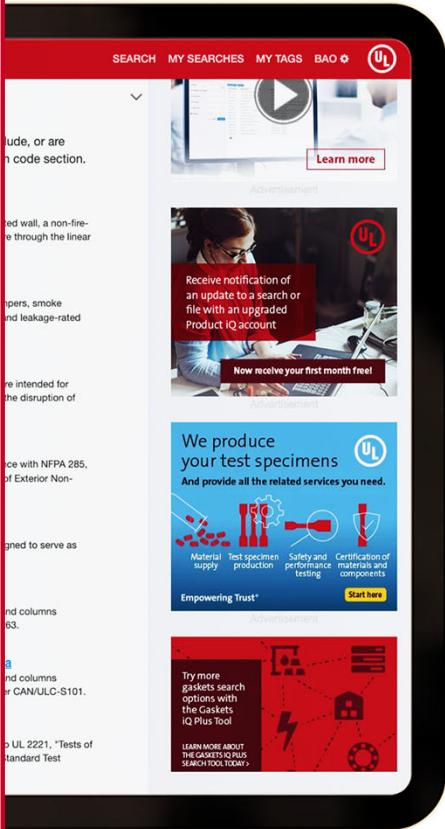
**Joint Systems**  
This category covers joint systems, which are specific constructions consisting of adjacent fire-resistance-rated wall and/or floor assemblies and the materials designed to prevent the spread of fire through a linear opening between the wall and/or floor

**Perimeter Fire Containment Systems**  
A perimeter fire containment system is a specific construction consisting of a floor with an hourly fire endurance rating, an exterior curtain wall with no hourly fire endurance rating, and the fill material installed between the floor and the curtain wall

**Qualified Firestop Contractors (RFTI)**

**Roof Deck Constructions**  
This category covers roof deck constructions investigated as to the spread of fire on the underside and/or resistance to wind uplift forces.

**Sprinkler Identification Number**





# Product IQ

Enhanced search functionality drop-down menu (continued)

**Thermal Barrier Systems (XCLF)**  
 This category covers thermal barrier systems consisting of components and materials intended for installation as protection for electrical wiring systems specified in the individual systems. These systems are investigated with respect to heat transmission




**UL Evaluation Reports**

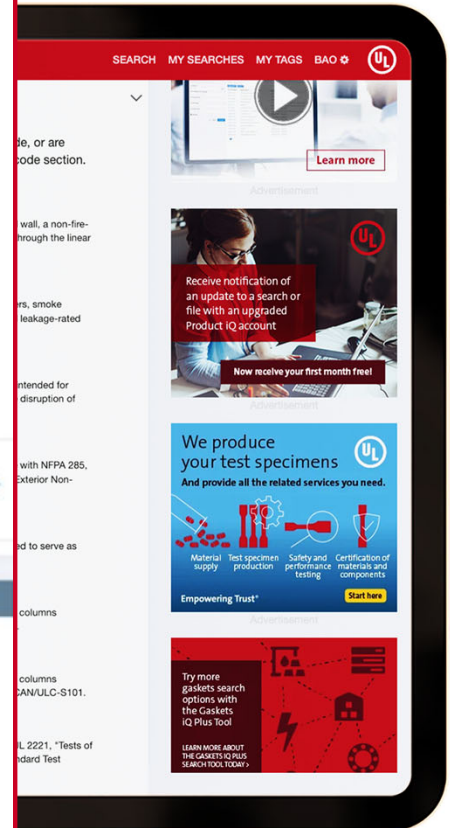
**Ventilation Duct Assemblies**  
 This category covers the fire-resistive performance of ventilation duct assemblies. These assemblies are investigated with respect to their ability to resist the spread of fire from one compartment to another without the aid of fire dampers.

**Windstorm Rated Building Products**  
 This category covers windstorm-rated exterior building products intended to protect the exterior envelope of structures in the event of hurricanes or tornadoes.

**Other**

**PIQ DATABASE INFO**

 <b>229327</b> Document Count	 <b>15 Jan, 2019</b> Last Update	 <b>68474</b> Companies Listed
--	---	---



# Product iQ — Firestop systems

The image shows a tablet displaying the UL Product iQ website. The website has a red header with the text 'UL Product iQ™' and navigation links for 'SEARCH', 'MY SEARCHES', 'MY TAGS', and 'BAO'. The main content area lists several firestop system categories with brief descriptions. A red dashed arrow points from a callout box on the left to the 'Firestop Systems' link on the website. The callout box contains the following text:

**Firestop Systems**  
Covers firestop systems certified to US based requirements, which consist of a wall or floor assembly, a penetrating item passing through an opening in the assembly, and the materials designed to prevent the spread of fire through the openings.

The website content includes the following sections:

- Firestop Systems**  
Covers firestop systems certified to US based requirements, which consist of a wall or floor assembly, a penetrating item passing through an opening in the assembly, and the materials designed to prevent the spread of fire through the openings.
- Firestop Systems for Canada**
- Joint Systems for Canada**  
Covers joint systems certified to Canadian requirements, which consist of adjacent fire-resistance-rated wall and/or floor assemblies and the materials designed to prevent the spread of fire through a linear opening between the wall and/or floor.
- Perimeter Fire Containment Systems**  
A perimeter fire containment system is a specific construction consisting of a floor with an hourly fire endurance rating, an exterior curtain wall with no hourly fire endurance rating, and the fill material installed between the floor and the curtain wall.
- Roof Deck Constructions**  
This category covers roof deck constructions investigated as to the spread of fire on the underside and/or resistance to wind uplift forces.
- Sprinkler Identification Number**
- Thermal Barrier Systems (XCLF)**  
This category covers thermal barrier systems consisting of components and materials intended for installation as protection for electrical wiring systems specified in the individual systems. These systems are investigated with respect to heat transmission.
- UL Evaluation Reports**



# Product iQ — Enhanced search functionality

iQ Enhanced search functionality under Building Materials and Systems for fire resistance-rated wall design based on specific parameters



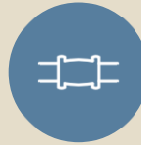
Concrete/masonry wall assembly – 6 in. thick



Rating: 2 hr



Rating: 2 hr



Nonmetallic pipe

# Product iQ (continued) — Search results

UL Product iQ™

SEARCH MY SEARCHES MY TAGS BAO

REFINE RESULTS

Build or filter your results by keyword and/or adding criteria like document type, file number and country name.

Search Template Firestop Systems

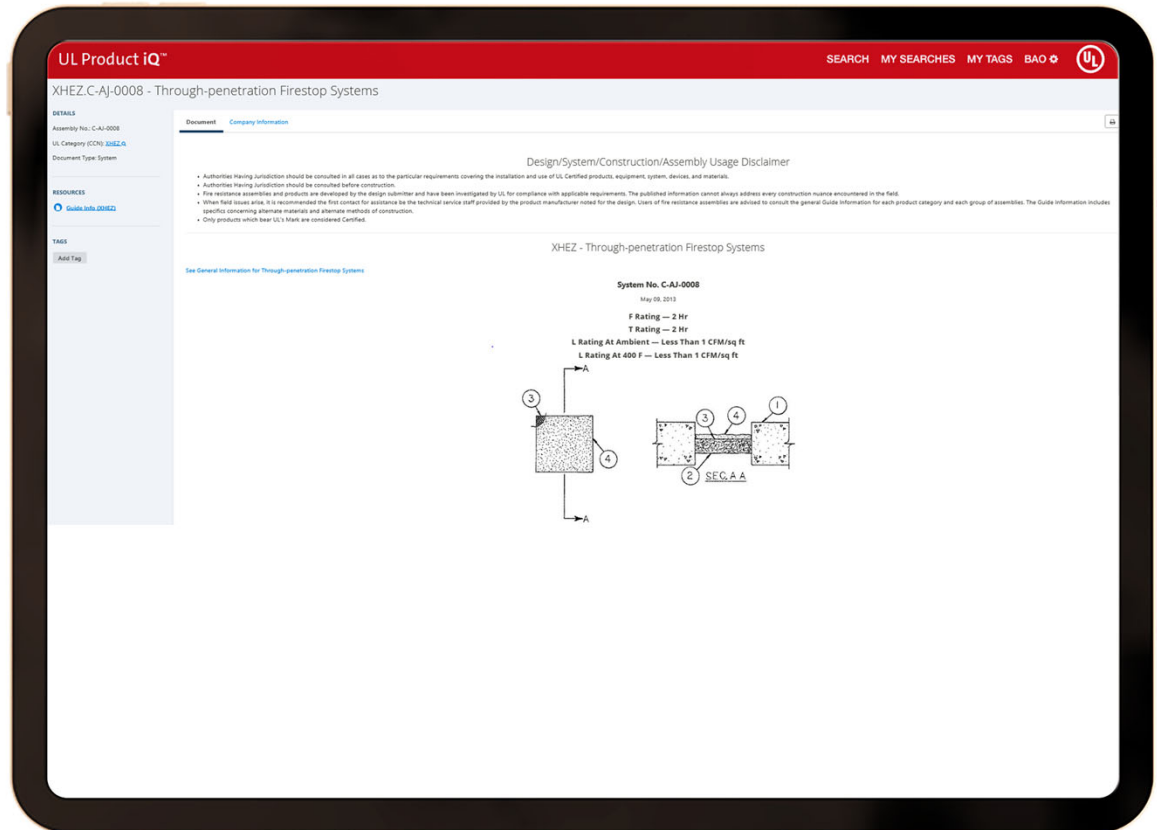
- Keyword
- System Number
- Through-Penetration Firestop System Firestop System
- Assembly Type
  - Concrete or masonry walls with a minimum thickness less than or equal to 203.2 mm (8 in.)
- Penetrating Item
- F Rating
  - ≥ 2, < 3 hr
- T Rating

634 Results :: Base Template: Firestop Systems :: Assembly Type: Concrete or masonry walls with a minimum thickness less than or equal to 203.2 mm (8 in.) :: F Rating: ≥2, <3 hr :: T Rating: ≥2, <3 hr

Document Name	Company Name	UL CCN Description	My Tags
XHEZC-AJ-0008	3M COMPANY	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0011	TREMCO INC	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0012	RECTORSEAL	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0013	PRC-DESOTO INTERNATIONAL INC	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0015	SPECIFIED TECHNOLOGIES INC	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0040	UNITED STATES MINERAL PRODUCTS CO, DBA ISOLATEK INTERNATIONAL	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0041	RECTORSEAL	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0047	SPECIFIED TECHNOLOGIES INC	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0064	PASSIVE FIRE PROTECTION PARTNERS	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	
XHEZC-AJ-0070	HILTI CONSTRUCTION CHEMICALS, DIV OF HILTI INC	Through-penetration Firestop Systems	

▶ 634 Results :: Base Template: Firestop Systems :: Assembly Type: Concrete or masonry walls with a minimum thickness less than or equal to 203.2 mm (8 in.) :: F Rating: ≥2, <3 hr :: T Rating: ≥2, <3 hr

# Product iQ (continued) — Enhanced search functionality



# Firestop systems engineering judgments

CXP22EVCS454981



# Engineering judgments

An engineering judgment is a **letter or report** issued by some knowledgeable party which evaluates the construction of some site-specific application that **deviates from a tested design, system or assembly** and concludes with a judgment of the applicable rating of that assembly.

- Typically, an engineering judgment is used when a **tested design, system or assembly is unavailable**
- Most often applied to fire-resistive construction

- Applications for an engineering judgment
  - Design and system concept where multiple components, some listed and some unlisted, are used to field-construct the finished assembly (wall, etc.)
  - Typically, products are not required to be listed by code
- Must be acceptable to the code official

# Who issues engineering judgments?



- Professional engineer
- Fire protection engineer
- Manufacturer
- Testing laboratory

Individual issuing judgment must be acceptable to the *code official*.

# 2021 IBC references justifying engineering judgments

## 2018 IBC

### IBC 104.11

Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment.

### 703.2

Fire resistance ratings.

### 703.3

Alternative methods for determining fire resistance – six options are permitted.



# Important points of an engineering judgment



- No guidance from the International Code Council or the various I-Codes.
- No guidance from UL Solutions
- Best documents available are from the International Firestop Council (IFC) – [www.firestop.org](http://www.firestop.org)

# IFC guidelines



- Four documents – International Firestop Council (IFC)  
[www.firestop.org](http://www.firestop.org)
- Recommended IFC Guidelines for Evaluating Firestop Systems in Engineering Judgments (EJs) – covers firestops, joint systems and grease/air duct assemblies
- Perimeter fire barrier systems
- Fire-resistant duct enclosure systems for commercial kitchen exhaust ducts
- Fire-resistant duct enclosure systems for ventilation ducts

# Summary of engineering judgments



- Emphasizes importance of tested designs
- Not a substitute for existing designs
- Should be issued only by those who know the components
- Based on sound engineering practices and knowledge of performance of the designs
- Based on interpolation of previous testing
- Issued only for a specific job site
- Presented in clear detail

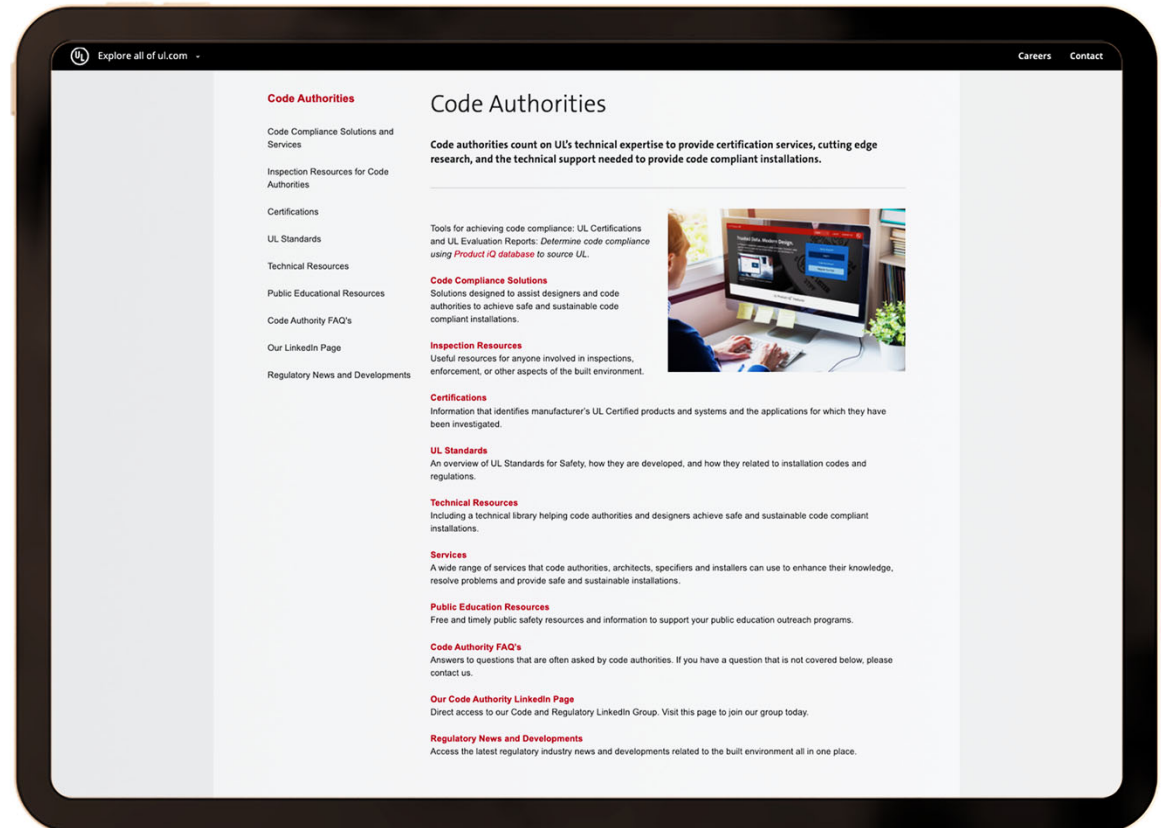
# UL Solutions resources for code authorities

- Webpages for code authorities
- Codes and regulatory services technical support
- Complimentary newsletters



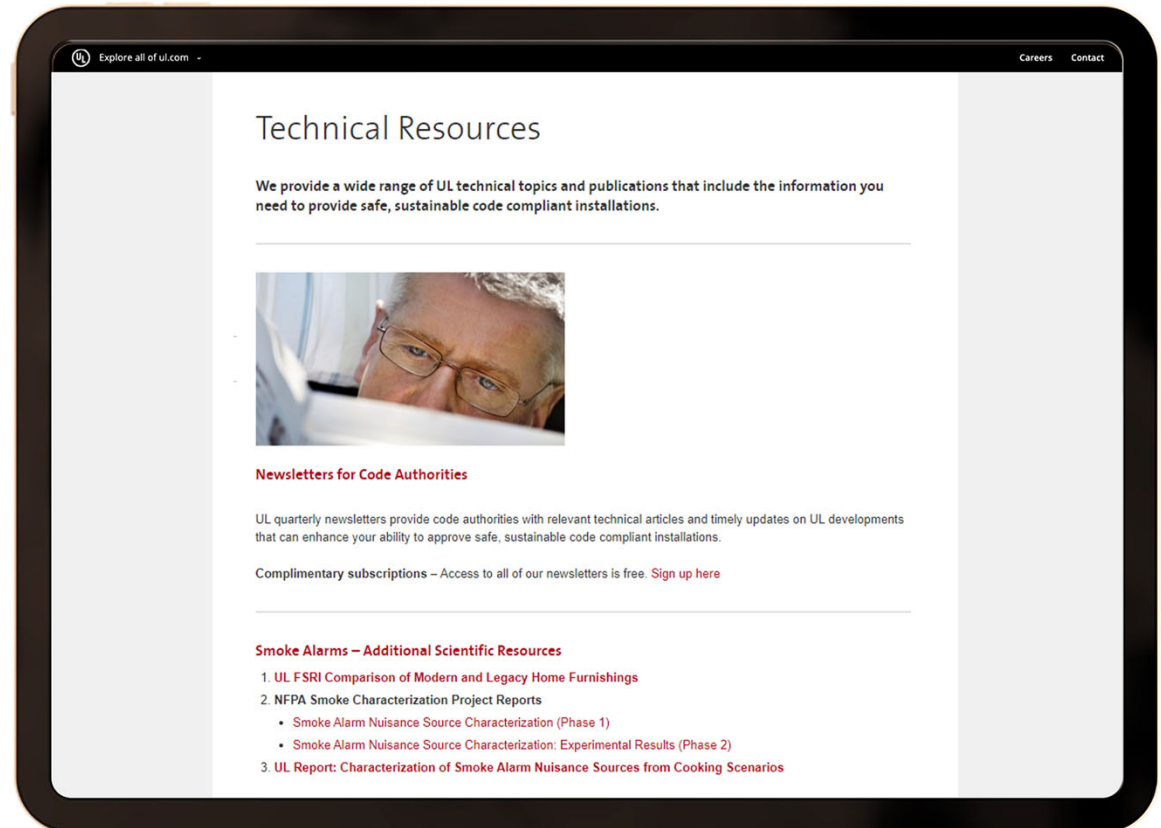
# UL Solutions resources for code authorities

[www.UL.com/CodeAuthorities](http://www.UL.com/CodeAuthorities)



# Technical resources for code authorities

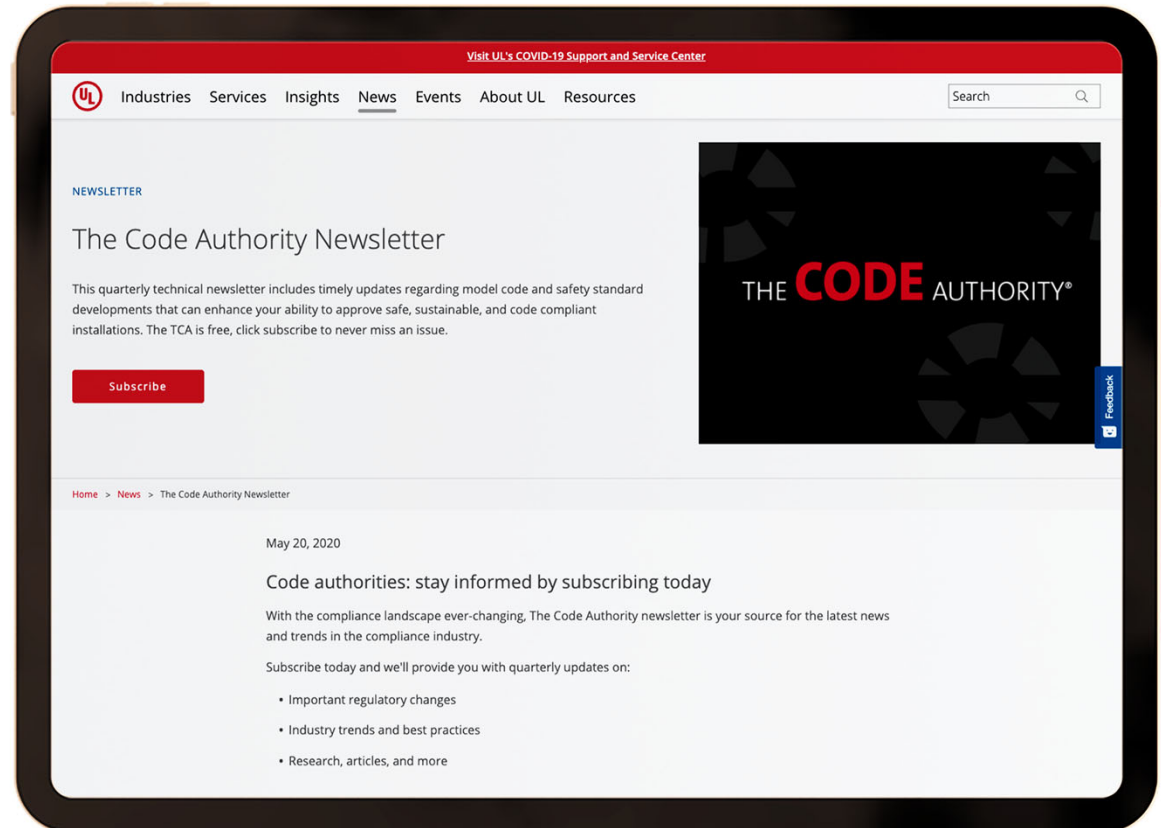
[www.code-authorities.UL.com/  
about/technical-resources/](http://www.code-authorities.UL.com/about/technical-resources/)



# Newsletters

## [UL.com/ultimate](https://www.ul.com/ultimate)

- Technical updates and code-related considerations for UL Certified products
- The Code Authority® (TCA)





# Other resources UL Solutions provides for architects



Architectural Services  
web page



Codes and Advisory Services  
technical support



Complementary  
newsletters

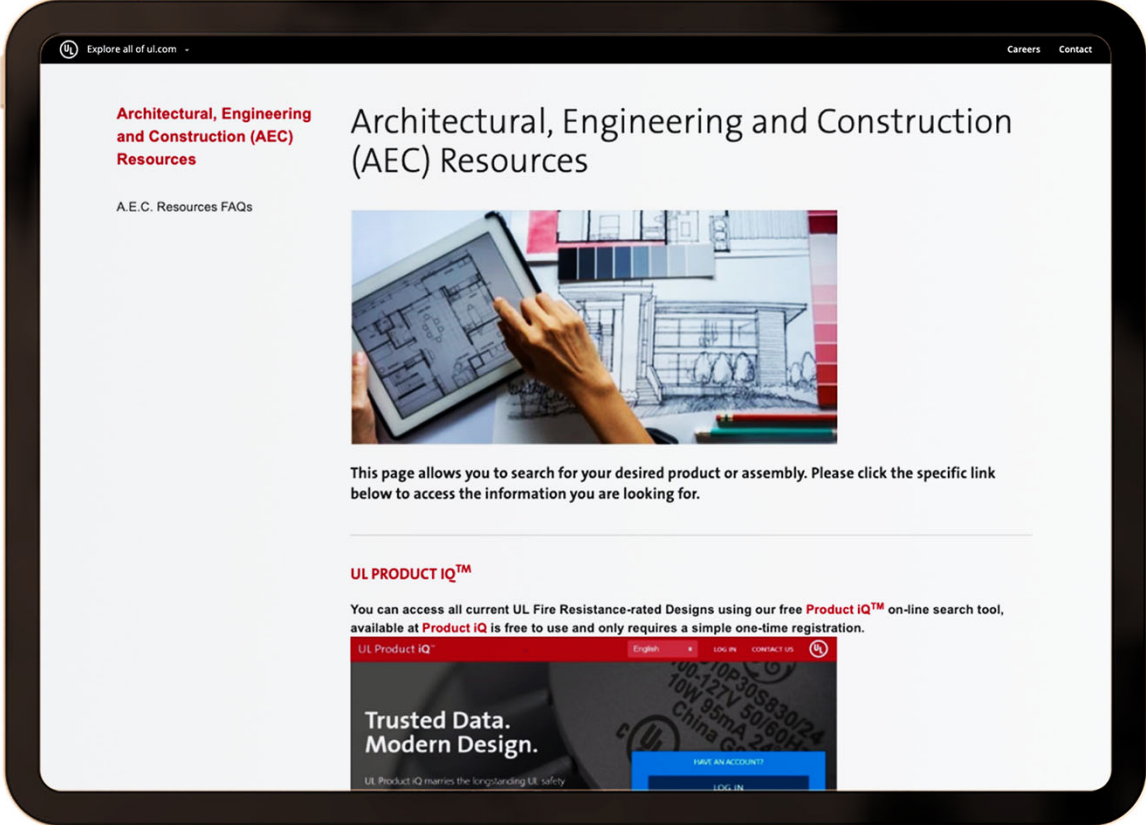


Service programs



# Architectural, engineering and construction (AEC) resources

[UL.com/AEC](http://UL.com/AEC)





Questions?

For more information regarding fire resistance-rated construction.

Kelly Nicoletto

[Kelly.Nicoletto@ul.com](mailto:Kelly.Nicoletto@ul.com)

[UL.com/CodeAuthorities](https://ul.com/CodeAuthorities)

[UL.com/Solutions](https://ul.com/Solutions)



# Thank you

[UL.com/Solutions](https://www.ul.com/Solutions)

**Safety. Science. Transformation.™**

© 2022 UL LLC. All rights reserved.

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-1 2023 NEC Updates (IAEI Northwest)

All certifications (24 hours in twelve sessions)



**APPLICATION FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION APPROVAL  
COURSE CONDITIONS AND GUIDELINES**

The Ohio Board of Building Standards is committed to the ongoing education and professional development of board-certified personnel through the delivery of high-quality, accurate and engaging professional continuing education content. To this end, the Board reviews and approves Continuing Education Courses for building department personnel.

Board approval is granted for course instruction on current codes and standards, including the OBC, OMC, OPC, and RCO, and any other content areas directly related to the responsibilities of the certification for which credit is being requested.

**Promotion:** Any person or organization promoting an approved course is required to make full and accurate disclosure regarding course title, course approval number, number of credit hours, categories for which the BBS has approved the class, and fees in promotion materials and advertising. **The Board does not grant retroactive approval. It is recommended that courses be submitted for approval well in advance of any scheduling of classes and advertising.** Advertising may not falsely state BBS approval before approval is granted. Course providers may state that BBS approval is pending.

**Application Submission:** All Applications and associated materials shall be submitted by email in .pdf format. Instructions for completing the application are attached.

**Certificate of Completion:** Course providers shall provide participants a certificate of completion containing the following information:

- Name of participant
- Title of approved courses
- BBS approval #
- BBS approved certifications
- Date of the continuing education program
- Number of approved credit hours awarded, and
- Signature of authorized sponsor or instructor.

Any person or organization administering an approved course shall return a completed BBS Course Attendance form by email.

**Participants:** Participants must attend the complete course as presented by the instructor to receive credit hours approved by the Board. The organization or instructor of online courses shall plan and execute methods to verify the individual's attendance and completion of the course. No partial credit will be given to any participant who failed to complete the entire course as approved.

**Board approval:** All courses are approved for the calendar year in which application is made. Courses may be renewed so long as the referenced code is in effect, and the CEUs, certification and content remain unchanged. When the referenced code is updated, courses must be updated, and new approvals obtained.

**Facility/training area:** BBS Course may be delivered in person or online, or both, at the sponsor's option. Course facilities shall include the following:

**In Person Classes:**

- Sufficient seating capacity
- ADA accessible facilities
- Appropriate Audio/Visual devices for delivery
- Writing surfaces for participants

**Online Classes:**

- Web-accessible
- ADA accessible delivery
- Tech support available
- Live and recorded courses permitted

In-person facilities shall comfortably and safely seat at least the number of attendees present in the room and shall be climate controlled, non-smoking, and sound controlled so that outside noise will not interfere with the training.



### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: Greg Capucini  
Organization: IAEI Northwest Div. Ohio Chapter  
Address: P.O. Box 167667, Oregon. Ohio 43616  
E-mail: gcapucini@gmail.com & gcapucini@cityofsandusky.com Telephone: 419-656-3108  
Website: nwohioiaei@yahoo.com  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Electrical code review  
Course instructor: Greg Capucini  
Course description: 2020 & 2023 NEC updates @ 803 Lime City Rd. Rossford Ohio 43460  
on the second Tuesday each month of 2024  
1-9-24 / 2-13-24 / 3-12-24 / 4-9-24 / 5-14-24 / 6-11-24 / 7-9-24 / 8-13-24 / 9-10-24 / 10-8-24 / 11-12-24 / 12-10-24

Instructional hours per session: 2 Number of Sessions: 12  
Course Date(s) and Location: See Above dates

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:  Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Existing Buildings:  Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Electrical Instruction:  Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_  
Plumbing Instruction:

Course to be offered online?  On Demand  Webinar

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation): \_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:  Commercial Certifications:   
Administrative Course, All Certifications:

**Application materials included:**

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives  
 Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)  
 Assessment Materials (for online courses)  
 Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)



## Instructions for new Continuing Education Approval form

### Provider Information

1. Please include all contact information.
2. If course is not part of a conference, leave conference sponsor and email blank.

### Course Renewal

1. Indicate if the course is being submitted for renewal. Include prior approval letter and write in prior course number.
2. Certification approval for courses has now changed: all existing courses being renewed will be approved within the new classification system.
  - a. Courses previously approved for only residential certifications will be approved for all residential certifications.
  - b. Courses previously approved for at least on commercial certification will now be approved for all commercial certifications and all residential certifications.
  - c. Courses on required instruction topics, Ohio Ethics, Code Administration and Existing Buildings, will be noted as Administrative Courses and be approved for all certifications.
3. Courses being renewed should skip the New Course information section and are not required to submit outline, agenda, slides or other instructional materials for review. Skip to Special Content, and mark any item that applies to the course.

### New Course Information

1. Enter course title, name of instructor, and a brief description of the course content. Learning objectives may be substituted for course description, if desired.
2. Number of instructional hours per session is the length of instructional time.
3. Number of sessions: can be 1 or the number of sessions planned.
4. Course date(s) and location: not necessary at this time, enter if known.

### Special Content

1. Indicate if the course will meet instructional time in Code Administration or Existing Buildings.
2. Indicate if the course is a plumbing or electrical course, for ESIAC review and trainee course tracking.
3. If the course is associated with a conference, indicate the conference name and location, as this will allow BBS to coordinate approvals with the conference provider.
4. If the course will be offered online, specify whether it will be on demand or offered as a virtual webinar, or both. Include website where the course will be provided.

Course applicable for the following certifications

***This section represents a major change from previous BBS course approval forms.***

1. If the course is only for residential certifications, check 'Residential Certifications Only'. The course, if approved, will be approved for all residential certifications.
2. If the course is appropriate for any commercial certifications, check Commercial Certifications. The course, if approved, will be approved for all commercial certification **AND** all residential certifications.
3. If the course is intended to meet required instruction in Code Administration (Chapter 1) or Existing Buildings (commercial or residential) check 'Administrative Course, All Certifications'.

#### Application Materials Included

This is a checklist for the course submitter's use, to be sure all materials necessary for review are included with the application. All materials should be submitted in .pdf format, along with the application, via email to [Michael.Lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:Michael.Lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

Greg Capucini

## BIO/Profile

I received my ESI license in 2000.

I have been employed by the City of Sandusky as a backup ESI since 2002. I became a full time ESI for them in 2016 to present.

In 2003 I joined the IAEI. I have been President and am currently the education chairperson of the Northwest Division Ohio Chapter.

In 1986 I joined the IBEW and went through the apprenticeship program.

## Class Outline Northwest Division Ohio IAEI -Training Agency

2024 OBBS classes held at:

Toledo Electrical JATC 803 Lime City Rd. Rossford, Ohio 43460 on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Tuesday of each month from 9:30 to 11:30 am. (2 hrs.)

All classes will be based on and utilize the 2020 & 2023 National Electrical Code

January 9<sup>th</sup> 2024 — Introduction to the 2017 NEC, review code wide changes and the editorial changes made to the NEC based on the NEC Style Manual. Cover Chapter 1 changes to Article 100 Definitions.

February 13<sup>th</sup> 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 1, Article 110. Requirements for Electrical Installations. Review effect of increasing voltage thresholds from 600v or less to 1000v or less, addition of reconditioned equipment to Article 110.3(A), addition of new torquing requirements for electrical equipment installations in Article 110.14(D), changes to working space clearances in Table 110.26(A)(1).

March 12<sup>th</sup>, 2024— cover changes to Chapter 2, Article 200 and 210. Review labeling requirements of Article 210.5, expansion of GFCI requirements in Article 210.8(A) and (B), new requirements in Article 210.12(C) for guest rooms and suites of motel/hotels, branch circuit requirements of Article 210.19 thru 210.24, outlet requirements of 210.52 and 210.70.

April 9<sup>th</sup>, 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 3, Article 300 and 310. Review requirements for Protection against Physical Damage found in Article 300.4, Burial and cover requirements of Article 300.5 for

Underground Installations, Firestopping requirements of article 300.21, requirements for Installations over 1000 volts in Article 110 Part II, Conductor Requirements of Article 310 for parallel installations and derating of conductors.

May 14<sup>th</sup> 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 2, Article 220 and 290. Review requirements of Article 220 Calculations for branch circuits, lighting and service load calculations, Article 230 Services Part I General and Part III and IV for Overhead and Underground Installations.

June 11<sup>th</sup> 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 2, Article 240 and 250.

Review requirements of Article 240 Overcurrent Protection, Part I I Tap Rules, new Arc Energy Reduction of Article 240.67, and Article 250 Grounding and Bonding and the grounding electrode system.

July 9<sup>th</sup>, 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 4, Articles 404 thru 424.

Review requirements for Switches per Article 404, Receptacles in Article 406 including the expansion of tamper-resistant receptacles in 406.12, labeling requirements in Article 408.4, Luminaires (fixtures) in Article 410, and Appliance requirements in Article 422 with a link from Article •422.5 to Article 210.8 GFCI Protection.

August 13<sup>th</sup>, 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 4, Articles 430 thru 490, and Chapter 5. Review requirements for Article 430 Motors and their disconnects per 430 Part Generators Article 445 and their markings per 445.11, Storage Batteries- Article 480 and Article 706 Energy Storage Systems, Article 490 Equipment over 1000 volts, Chapter 5, Articles 500 thru 506 for Hazardous locations, Article 517 Health Care Facilities and their Essential Electrical Systems, Article 590 Temporary Wiring Installations.

September 10<sup>th</sup>, 2024— Cover changes to Chapter 6, Articles 600 thru 680, Review requirements for Article 600 Signs, article 625 Electric Vehicle Charging, Article 680 Part I, II and III Swimming Pools, Part IV Hot Tubs and Spas, Part V Fountains.

October 8<sup>th</sup>, 2024 —Cover changes to Chapter 6, Articles 685 thru 694, Review requirements for Article 685 Integrated Electrical Systems, Article 690 Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems, Article 694 Wind Electric Systems, new Article 691 Large-Scale Photovoltaic (PV) Electric Power Production Facility, new Article 712 Direct Current Micro-grids, Review tie-in to Article 685 for alternative energy systems.

November 12<sup>th</sup>, 2024 — Cover changes to Article 695 Fire Pumps and Chapter 7 Articles 700 thru 760. Review requirements for Article 700 Emergency Systems, Article 701 and 702 for Standby Systems, Article 708 Critical Operations Power Systems (COPS), Article 760 Fire Alarm Systems and Article 728 Fire-Resistive Cable Systems.

December 10<sup>th</sup> 2024 — Cover changes to Chapter 8 Communications Systems Articles 800 thru 840, Chapter 7, Article 725 Class 1, 2, and 3 Wiring and Power Limited Cables and Article 750 Energy Management Systems.

All classes will include a round table.

## 2024 Course List

Jan. 9<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 100 intro to code & Building code amendments

Feb. 13<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 110 NEC changes

March 12<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Chapter 2 NEC changes

April 9<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Chapter 3 NEC Changes

May 14<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 2 Services & Grounding Changes

June 11<sup>th</sup>. 2024 overcurrent protection

July 9<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 4 Changes

Aug. 13<sup>th</sup>. Article 4 Continued

Sept. 10<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 6

Oct 8<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 690 and its Changes

Nov 12<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Article 695 Fire Pumps


Dec. 10<sup>th</sup>. 2024 Chapter 8 Changes

All classes will include a round table



# Analysis of Changes – 2020 NEC

Part 1 – NEC Chapters 1 through 4



Training Presentation By:  
International Association of Electrical Inspectors

1

# Licensing Agreement

- This program is licensed solely for the purpose of in-person electrical education and training by the licensee.
- Analysis of Changes-NEC 2020* training presentation is prohibited from being further copied, broadcast, posted online, sublicensed, used for on-line training or in any way further distributed or displayed for any other purpose by the licensee.




Copyright © IAEI 2020

2

# National Electrical Code® (NEC)

- Portions of this material are reprinted with permission from the 2020 edition of the National Electrical Code® copyright © 2019 National Fire Protection Association. This material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the reference subject which is represented solely by the standard in its entirety which can be obtained from the NFPA at [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org) and can be viewed at [www.nfpa.org/70](http://www.nfpa.org/70). Also available from IAEI at [www.iaei.org/NEC20](http://www.iaei.org/NEC20).
- National Electrical Code®, NFPA 70®, NEC®, and the NEC Logo™ are trademarks of the National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02169



Copyright © IAEI 2020

3

# Analysis of Changes – 2020 NEC



Copyright © IAEI 2020

4



5

### Code-Wide Changes

- There were a total of **3730** Public Inputs (PI) and **1930** Public Comments (PC) submitted from interested participants seeking changes to the 2020 *NEC*
- **Available Fault Current References.** Different terms like "available short-circuit current" and "short-circuit current" were previously used to describe large amounts of current capable of being delivered at a point on the system during a short-circuit condition. For the 2020 *NEC*, these large amounts of current descriptions were changed to "**available fault current**" throughout the *Code* for improved consistency
- **Reconditioned Equipment, Yes or No ?** Each Code Making Panel (CMP) was asked to review the equipment they have purview over and determine what equipment could be reconditioned and what equipment could not be reconditioned but rather replaced when necessary

Copyright © IAEE 2020

6

### Code-Wide Changes (cont.)

- **Definition Statements.** Two distinct statements added at XXX.2 sections of the *Code*
  - "The definitions in this section shall apply only within this article."
  - "The definitions in this section shall apply within this article and throughout the *Code*."
- **GFCI Requirements Alignment with 210.8.** Changes were proposed throughout the *Code* to align all GFCI requirements with the GFCI requirements of 210.8
- **"Allowable" Ampacity.** Several locations across the *NEC* where the term "allowable ampacity" was used and should have been simply stated as "**ampacity**" as it is the intent for those sections to determine the ampacity of a conductor based upon its conditions of use

Copyright © IAEE 2020

7

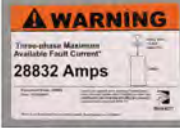
### Code-Wide Changes (cont.)

- **Grounding Conductor Changed to Equipment Grounding Conductor.** The term "grounding conductor" (*not a defined term*) was replaced with mainly the proper term "**equipment grounding conductor**," but in some instances with the terms "grounding electrode conductor" or one of the several types of "bonding jumpers"


Copyright © IAEE 2020

8

### Code-Wide Changes



Available Fault Current References




Reconditioned Equipment (Yes or No)

#### XXX.2 Definitions


"The definitions in this section shall apply only within this article."

"The definitions in this section shall apply within this article and throughout the Code"


Definition Statements



Alignment of GFCI Requirements



Allowable Ampacity vs Ampacity



Term "Grounding Conductor" Deleted

9

### New Articles for the 2020 NEC

#### Article 242 Overvoltage Protection (CMP-10)

This article provides the general requirements, installation requirements, and connection requirements for overvoltage protection and overvoltage protective devices. Part II covers surge-protective devices (SPDs) permanently installed on premises wiring systems of not more than 1000 volts, nominal, while Part III covers surge arresters permanently installed on premises wiring systems over 1000 volts, nominal.

#### Article 311 Medium Voltage Conductors and Cable (CMP-6)

This article covers the use, installation, construction specifications, and ampacities for Type MV medium voltage conductors and cable. Type MV conductor and cable requirements that were previously found in Articles 310 (Conductors or General Use) and 328 (Medium Voltage Cable) were consolidated into one article.

#### Article 337 Type P Cable (CMP-6)

This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for up through 2000 volt Type P cable (armored and unarmored). Type P cable is a factory assembly of one or more insulated flexible tinned copper conductors, with associated equipment grounding conductor(s), with or without a braided metallic armor and with an overall nonmetallic jacket.

#### Article 800 General Requirements for Communications Systems (CMP-16)

This article covers general requirements for communications systems. These general requirements apply to communications circuits, community antenna television and radio distribution systems, network-powered broadband communications systems, and premises-powered broadband communications systems, unless modified by Articles 805, 820, 830, and or 840. *[Previous Article 800 (Communication Circuits) is now Article 805]*

10



## Article 90 Introduction

# Not for Distribution

11

### 90.2(A) Scope

- Revision clarifies that the *NEC* covers installations **supplying shore power to ships and watercraft**, including monitoring of leakage current
- 90.2(B)(1) reveals that **installations in ships and watercraft (other than floating buildings)** are not covered by the *NEC*
  - This does not include electrical supply system **supplying shore power to ships and watercraft**
- Change intended for ships, boats, and other watercraft covered by **Article 555**
- New provision was necessary to address potential hazards created where shore power is supplied to ships and watercraft with a significant number of fatalities from **electric shock drowning (ESD)** associated with leakage of current from watercraft connected to shore power

12





13

90.2(A) Scope

- A new (6) has been added to 90.2(A) to address installations used to **export power from electric vehicles to premises wiring**
- Bidirectional flow of power is typically accomplished using utility interactive inverters

Copyright © JAEI 2020

Not for Distribution

14



15

Chapter One  
General

Not for Distribution

16

## Article 100: Definitions - Scope

- Scope of Article 100 is modified to include **new Part III for Hazardous (Classified) Locations**
- During the 2017 *NEC* revision cycle, several definitions that applied to hazardous (classified) locations were relocated to Article 100 of the *NEC*
- Previously located at 500.2 (2014 *NEC*)
- Creating new Part III and the relocation of these definitions will add clarity and usability and help users of the *Code* understand that these definitions only apply to hazardous (classified) location articles located in Chapter 5

Copyright © JAEI 2020

17

## Article 100 Part III Hazardous (Classified) Locations (CMP-14)

The hazardous (classified) location definitions will be moved to new Part III of Article 100 for added clarity and usability

18

## Article 100: Definitions – Scope (cont.)

- New sentence added to Scope of Article 100 to indicate that definitions can also be found at **“XXX.2 of other articles”**
- Two distinct statements added at XXX.2 sections of the *Code*
  - *“The definitions in this section shall apply only within this article.”*
  - *“The definitions in this section shall apply, within this article and throughout the Code”*
- This was in conjunction with an effort this *Code* cycle to make a distinction to definitions found throughout the *Code*, particularly at XXX.2 of individual articles

Copyright © JAEI 2020

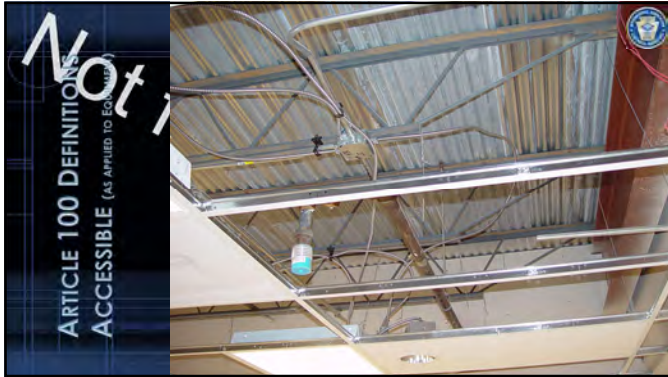
19

## Article 100: Definitions - Accessible

- **Accessible (as applied to equipment)**. Capable of being reached for operation, renewal, and inspection. (CMP-1)
- Definition revised for clarity and usability
- Previous definition seemed to contradict other sections of the *Code*
- By stating that equipment is not accessible, if “guarded by locked doors” was in contradiction with 110.26(F) *[electrical equipment rooms or enclosures housing electrical apparatus that are controlled by a lock(s) shall be considered accessible to qualified persons]*
- Former definition also stated that equipment could be considered not accessible by “elevation” while the *Code* demonstrates that equipment can still be considered accessible, despite being elevated *(above suspended ceiling)*

Copyright © JAEI 2020

20

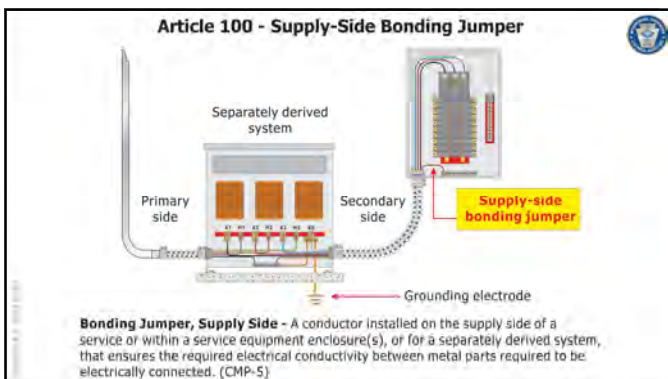


21

### Article 100: Definitions - SSBJ

- **Bonding Jumper, Supply-Side.** A conductor installed on the supply side of a service or within a service equipment enclosure(s), or for a separately derived system, that ensures the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected. (CMP-5)
- Definition of a **Supply-Side Bonding Jumper** was relocated from 250.2 to Article 100
- Prior to 2011 *NEC*, the term "equipment bonding jumper" used at most locations to describe a fault carrying conductor for a separately derived system
- Supply-side bonding jumper provides electrical continuity between the supply source (such as the utility transformer enclosure) and the various enclosures of the service equipment

22



23

### Article 100: Definitions – Dormitory Unit

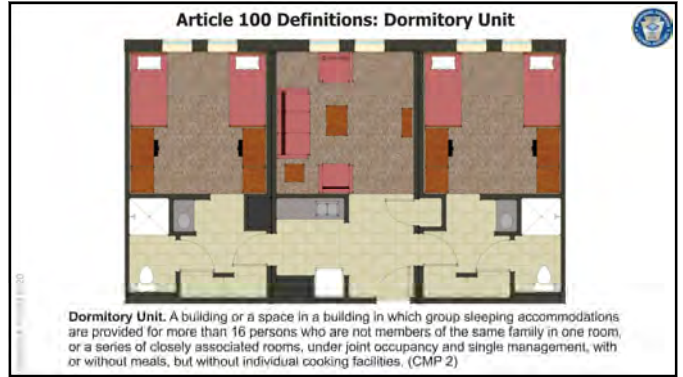
- **Dormitory Unit.** A building or a space in a building in which group sleeping accommodations are provided for more than 16 persons who are not members of the same family in one room, or a series of closely associated rooms, under joint occupancy and single management, with or without meals, but without individual cooking facilities. (CMP 2)
- New definition for a "Dormitory Unit" was introduced at Article 100
- Used in (4) different articles but was not defined in the *NEC*
- Without an *NEC* definition, installers and inspectors alike experience a **wide variety of interpretation** as to what constitutes a dormitory unit
- While a dormitory unit can certainly be found at a typical college campus, a dormitory unit is not limited to a learning institution

24

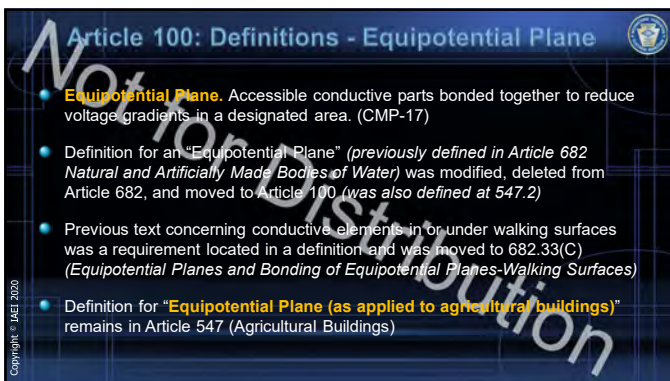




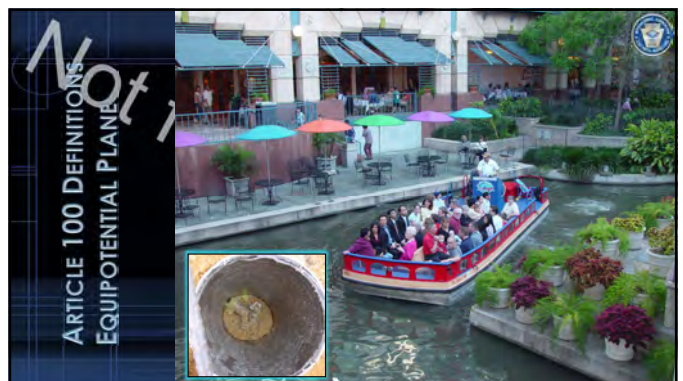
25



26



27



28



### Article 100: Fault Current and Fault Current, Available

- New definitions of the terms “**fault current**” and “**fault current, available**” have been added to Article 100
- A **new informational note** and associated figure have been added to enhance clarity and usability
- This revision aligns with similar recent revisions in other standards that use the terms, such as NFPA 70E
- Different terms were used to describe large amount of current capable of being delivered at a point on the system during a short-circuit condition:
  - Maximum available fault current and Maximum available short-circuit current, Short circuit, fault current, available fault current, short circuit current rating, interrupting rating, available short-circuit current, short circuit current, available fault current

Copyright © IAEI 2020

29

### Article 100: Definitions

**Fault Current.** The current delivered at a point on the system during a short-circuit condition. (CMP-10)

**Available Fault Current.** The largest amount of current capable of being delivered at a point on the system during a short-circuit condition. (CMP-10)

**Informational Note:** A short-circuit can occur during abnormal conditions such as a fault between circuit conductors or a ground fault. See Informational Note Figure 100.1.

**Figure Informational Note Figure 100.1 Available Fault Current.**

The diagram illustrates the path of available fault current. It starts at a 'Source' (ac or dc) which provides 'Available fault current'. This current flows through 'Equipment with a short-circuit current rating' containing an 'Overcurrent protective device with an interrupting rating' (OCPD). Finally, the 'Available fault current' is delivered to a 'Load'.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

30

### Article 100: Definitions – Free Air

- **Free Air (as applied to conductors).** Open or ventilated environment that allows for heat dissipation and air flow around an installed conductor. (CMP-6)
- New definition for “Free Air (as applied to conductors)” added to Article 100
- The term “free air” is used throughout the *NEC*, yet to this point, this term has not been defined in the *NEC*
- Contact or close proximity with additional conductors or other materials that could impede the flow of heat away from the conductor would not allow the use of free air ampacity ratings of the conductor ampacity tables in Article 310

Copyright © IAEI 2020

31

### Article 100 Definitions: Free Air (as Applied to Conductors)

**Free Air (as applied to conductors).** Open or ventilated environment that allows for heat dissipation and air flow around an installed conductor. (CMP-6)

New definition should clarify that contact or close proximity with additional conductors or other materials that could impede the flow of heat away from the conductor would not allow the use of free air ampacity ratings of the conductor ampacity tables in Article 310

The first photograph shows a clear, open space around a conductor, representing a 'free air' environment. The second photograph shows multiple conductors packed closely together, which would impede heat dissipation and thus not qualify as 'free air'.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

32

### Article 100: Definitions – Grounded Conductor, Informational Note

- A new Informational note was added to the definition of a "Grounded Conductor" to clarify that an **equipment grounding conductor is not subject** to the identification and connection rules of a grounded conductor
- I-Note states that although an equipment grounding conductor is grounded, it is **not considered a grounded conductor**
- Some would argue that an EGC is an "intentionally grounded" conductor while others would say an EGC is not by definition an "intentionally grounded" conductor as it is not a "system or circuit" conductor

Copyright © IAEI 2020

33

### Article 100 Definitions: Grounded Conductor (I-Note)

**Grounded Conductor.** A system or circuit conductor that is intentionally grounded. (CMP-5)

**Informational Note:** Although an equipment grounding conductor is grounded, it is not considered a grounded conductor.

34

### Article 100: Definitions – Habitable Room

- Habitable Room.** A room in a building for living, sleeping, eating, or cooking, but excluding bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, hallways, storage or utility spaces, and similar areas. (CMP-2)
- New definition for "Habitable Room" was added to Article 100
- Definition aligns with the same term that is used in *NFPA 5000, Building Construction and Safety Code* and promotes consistency of its use
- Adds clarity and usability to the *Code* for both the installer and AHJ in relation to sections of the *Code* that reference a "habitable room or area" (such as 210.8 GFCI requirements for dwelling units)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

35

### ARTICLE 100 DEFINITIONS HABITABLE ROOM

36

## Article 100: Definitions – Island Mode

- **Island Mode.** The operational mode for stand-alone power production equipment or an isolated microgrid, or for a multimode inverter or an interconnected microgrid that is disconnected from an electric power production and distribution network or other primary power source. (CMP-4)
- **Informational Note:** Isolated microgrids are distinguished from interconnected microgrids, which are addressed in Article 705.
- New definition for "Island Mode" primarily related to microgrid systems and stand-alone systems was added to Article 100
- A stand-alone (or islanded mode) microgrid never connects to the utility grid but instead operate in an island mode at all times
- Using terms like "stand-alone mode" and "islanded mode" necessitated the need to define these terms as they are used often in in the Chapter 7 articles

Copyright © IAEI 2020

37

## Article 100: Definitions – Island Mode (cont.)

- Name was changed to simply "Island Mode"
- Changes were made to the definition to better clarify the use of the term and how it applies to various applications that operate in island mode
- Name was changed from "Stand-Alone (Islanded) Mode" to "Island Mode" as the changes made to the definition of "Stand-Alone System" in Article 100 and the proposed definition of "Stand-Alone (Islanded) Mode" originally slated for 710.2 caused confusion with the definition of "Microgrid System" in Article 705
- Definitions consistent with IEEE 1547-2018 - IEEE Standard for Interconnection and Interoperability of Distributed Energy Resources with Associated Electric Power Systems Interfaces

Copyright © IAEI 2020

38



39

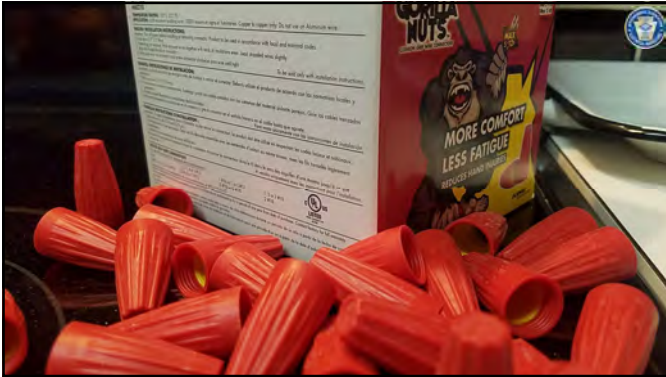
## Article 100 Labeled

- New Informational Note added explaining that even though a section of the NEC may require a product to be labeled, it is common practice to have the label, symbol, or other identifying mark applied to the **smallest unit container** in which the product is packaged
- Several types of electrical equipment addressed in the NEC that are required to not only be "Listed," but also required to be "Labeled"
- A typical pressure wire connector (wire nut) for splicing conductors together is required to be listed and labeled, but it is one of those products that are too small to affix a label to each individual pressure wire connector

Copyright © IAEI 2020

40





41

### Article 100: Definitions – Reconditioned

- A new definition for **“Reconditioned”** was added to Article 100 and an **informational note** added to indicate that the term reconditioned is frequently referred to as **rebuilt, refurbished, or remanufactured**
- Several requirements added throughout the *Code* added to indicate if specific equipment **can or cannot be reconditioned** (see *receptacles, switches, panelboards, circuit breakers, etc.*)
- Definition based on a National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) document titled, *“NEMA Policy on Reconditioned Electrical Equipment”*
- Marking requirements for reconditioned, refurbished or remanufactured electrical equipment added to 110.21(A)(2) for 2017 *NEC*

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

42

### Article 100 Definitions: Reconditioned

**Reconditioned.** Electromechanical systems, equipment, apparatus, or components that are restored to operating conditions. This process differs from normal servicing of equipment that remains within a facility, or replacement of listed equipment on a one-to-one basis. (CMP-10)

\*See also 110.21(A)(2)

**Informational Note:** The term reconditioned is frequently referred to as rebuilt, refurbished, or remanufactured.

43

### 110.3(B) Installation and Use of Listed Equipment

- Equipment that is listed, labeled, **or both** shall be installed and used in accordance with any instructions included in the listing or labeling
- Listing requirements were **modified** for clarity and usability to address equipment that is listed, labeled, **or both**
- The words “listed” and “labeled” are often looked upon as interchangeable by installers and inspectors alike even though both of these terms are defined in Article 100
- Electrical equipment can easily be both listed and labeled
- Marking on the product is the manufacturer’s substantiation that the product is in compliance with the appropriate product standard
- Only true way AHJ can determine whether the inspected product is compliant with the applicable product standard is the third-party label on the product

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

44

**110.3(B) Installation and Use of Listed Equipment**



Equipment that is listed, labeled, or both shall be installed and used in accordance with any instructions included in the listing or labeling

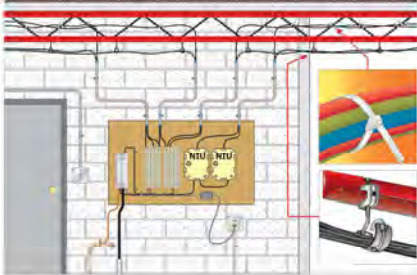
45

**110.12(C) Cables and Conductors**

- Redundant requirements for "Mechanical Execution of Work" for communication cables and conductors in Chapter 7 and 8 were relocated to Article 110
- A new subdivision (C) titled "Cables and Conductors" has been added to 110.12 which is titled "Mechanical Execution of Work"
- Includes relocated requirements from the 24 sections from the communications articles in Chapters 7 and 8
- Conductor and cable support and concerns about damage are addressed in both 110.12(C) and in 800.24

46

**110.12(C) Mechanical Execution of Work (Cables and Conductors)**



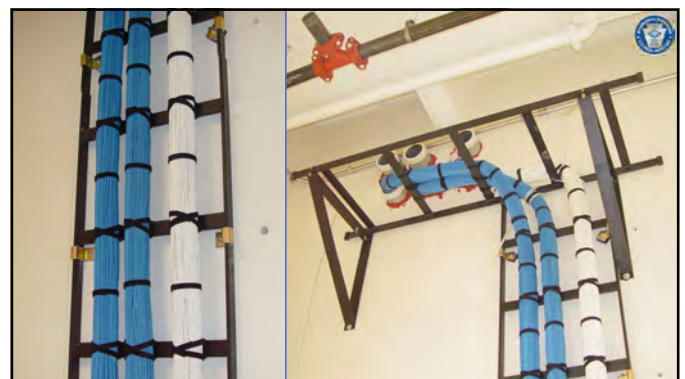
Exposed cables and conductors to be supported by building structure to prevent damaged by normal building use

Cables and conductors to be secured by hardware (straps, staples, cable ties, hangers, etc.) designed and installed to not damage the cable

Installation to comply with 300.4 and 300.11

Nonmetallic cable ties and other nonmetallic cable accessories used to secure and support cables in environmental air spaces (plenums) must be listed as having low smoke and heat release properties

47



48

### 110.14(D) Terminal Connection Torque

- The title of subdivision (D) has been changed from "Installation" to **Terminal Connection Torque**
- The term **"calibrated"** has been deleted from this section (*replaced with "approved means shall be used to achieve the indicated torque value"*)
- Three new informational notes provide practical guidance for installers and inspectors
- Proper emphasis needs to be on achieving the required torquing values rather than the tool used to achieve such values

Copyright © JAEI 2020

49

### 110.14(D) Terminal Connection Torque

Copyright © JAEI 2020

50

### 110.22(A) Identification of Disconnecting Means

- Disconnects are now required to **identify of the source** of the branch circuit or feeder for the disconnect at the disconnecting means enclosure (*other than one- or two-family dwellings*)
- Disconnecting means is required to be marked with a label to identify exactly what the disconnect is for
- Also required to provide identification of the circuit source that supplies the disconnecting means
- Same identification requirement for switchboards, switchgear, and panelboards [see 408.4(B)]
- Power supply identification practice will enhance the safety for the electrical personnel who service these disconnects

Copyright © JAEI 2020

51

### 110.22(A) Identification of Disconnecting Means

Copyright © JAEI 2020

52



### 110.26(C)(2) Large Equipment

- Revisions to "Large Equipment" working space to address the hazards presented by two or more service disconnects with combined ratings of **1200 amps or more**
- For service disconnecting means where **two or more service disconnect enclosures** are installed with combined ampere rating is 1200 amperes or more and over 1.8 m (6 ft) wide, the "Large Equipment" rules will now apply
- Requirements also added to prevent **open equipment doors** from impeding the entry to or egress from the working space of large equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2020

53

### 110.26(C)(2) Large Equipment

Open equipment doors shall not impede the entry to or egress from the working space

Entrance/Egress No. 1

Service disconnect rated 600 amperes

Service disconnect rated 600 amperes

90°

90°

Minimum required working space

Entrance/Egress No. 2

> 1.8 m (6 ft)

Large equipment is generally required to have an entrance/egress at each end of the working space for equipment rated 1200 amperes or more and over 1.8 m (6 ft) wide or for service disconnecting means installed in accordance with 230.71 where the combined ampere rating is 1200 amperes or more and over 1.8 m (6 ft) wide

Copyright © IAEI 2020

54

### 110.26(C)(3) Personnel Doors

- Revision added to clarify appropriate hardware (equipped with listed panic hardware or listed fire exit hardware) for personnel doors within 7.6 m (25 ft) from working space around electrical equipment rated 800 amperes or more
- The words "or listed fire exit hardware" have been added to 110.26(C)(3)
- An informational note has been added that references two UL standards that apply to the door hardware referred to in this rule
- Both panic hardware and fire exit hardware are listed to **UL 305** (Standard for Safety for Panic Hardware), while fire exit hardware is tested to **UL 10C** (Standard for Safety for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies)
- The revision differentiates **listed panic hardware** from **listed fire exit hardware**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

55

### 110.26(C)(3) Personnel Doors

Over 1.8 m (6 ft)

Minimum required working space

Equipment rated 800 amperes or more

Listed panic hardware or listed fire exit hardware

Where equipment rated 800 amperes or more that contains overcurrent devices, switching devices, or control devices is installed and there is a personnel door(s) intended for entrance to and egress from the working space less than 7.6 m (25 ft) from the nearest edge of the working space, the door(s) shall open in the direction of egress and be equipped with listed panic hardware or listed fire exit hardware.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

56





57



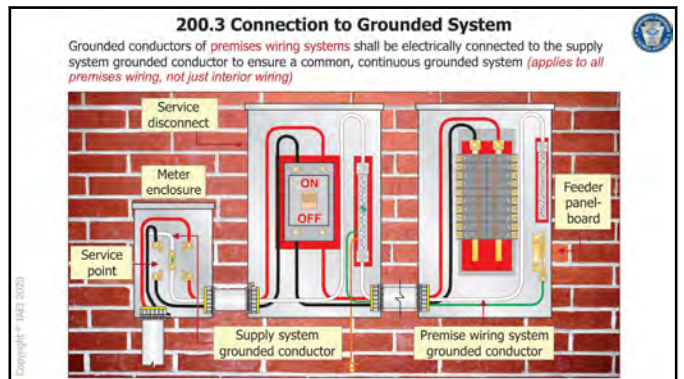
58

### 200.3 Connection to Grounded System

- Grounded conductors of premises wiring systems are required to be electrically connected to the supply system grounded conductor
- This applied to **all premises wiring** (not just interior wiring)
- Previous word **"interior"** implied that a grounded conductor is only required in the supply system if the premises wiring is located inside a building or structure
- Replacing **"interior"** with **"premises wiring"** makes the language easier to understand and correlates with 250.24(C) (*Grounded Conductor Brought to Service Equipment*)

Copyright © J. AET, 2023

59



60

### 200.10(B) Identification of Terminals

- Means of identification of the **grounded conductor terminals or screws** for such things as receptacles can be achieved by a metal or metal coating that is not only substantially white in color, but **"substantially silver"** in color as well
- The words **"or silver"** have been added to second level subdivision (1)
- Receptacles, polarized attachment plugs, and cord connectors for plugs and polarized plugs typically include a terminal that is **silver or chrome** in color, as compared to **brass or gold** color
- The revision reflects the **common identification means** employed by product manufacturers

Copyright © IAEI 2020

61

### 200.10(B) Identification of Terminals for Receptacles, Plugs, and Connectors

Identification of the grounded conductor terminals or screws for receptacles, polarized attachment plugs, and cord connectors for plugs and polarized plugs required to be achieved by a metal or metal coating that is substantially "white or silver" in color or by the word "white" or the letter "W" located adjacent to the identified terminal

If terminal is not visible, conductor entrance hole for the grounded conductor connection required to be colored "white" or marked with the word "white" or the letter "W"

Grounded conductor terminal: Substantially white or silver

Ungrounded conductor terminal: Readily distinguishable different color (other than white or silver) (typically brass)

Equipment grounding conductor terminal: Green in finish

Photo courtesy of Leviton

62

### 210.8 Measurements for GFCI Protection

- When determining if GFCI protection is required and a measurement is involved, the distance from a receptacle is required to be measured as the "shortest path" the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without piercing a floor, wall, ceiling, or fixed barrier, or the shortest path without passing through a **door, doorway, or window**
- Revision removed **"door"** and **"doorway"** from the list of obstacles that should not be measured through for this Code cycle
- A receptacle under the kitchen sink behind cabinet door for the garbage disposer will once again require GFCI protection
- All 125-volt through 250-volt receptacles installed within 1.8 m (6 ft) from the top inside edge of the bowl of a sink requires GFCI protection (including bedroom receptacles, etc.)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

63

### 210.8 Measurements for GFCI Protection

All 125-volt through 250-volt receptacles installed within 1.8 m (6 ft) from the top inside edge of the bowl of the sink requires GFCI protection [210.8(A)(7)]

Less than 1.8 m (6 ft)

GFCI Required

When determining if GFCI protection for personnel is required and a measurement is involved, the distance from a receptacle is required to be measured as the shortest path the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without piercing a floor, wall, ceiling, or fixed barrier, or the shortest path without passing through a **door, doorway, or window** [210.8]

64

### 210.8(A) GFCI Protection for Personnel

- Dwelling Unit GFCI protection has been expanded to all **125-volt through 250-volt receptacles** supplied by single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground installed in the specified areas of 210.8(A)
  - *Previously was all 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in (10) specific locations (bathrooms, kitchens, laundry areas, etc.)*
- Addition of up to 250-volt receptacles and removing the amperage limitations of **15- and 20-amperes** will provide GFCI protection to most receptacles commonly used in the specified areas of 210.8(A) (Dryer receptacle, etc.)
- 250-volt rated receptacles present **similar shock hazards** and substantiation submitted for this change demonstrated the need for GFCI protection for greater the 125-volt rated receptacles
- Similar to 2017 NEC changes at 210.8(B)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

65



66

### 210.8(A)(5) GFCI in Dwelling Unit Basements

- GFCI protection now required for **ALL** dwelling unit basements (*not just unfinished portions of basements*)
- GFCI now required for all 125-volt through 250-volt receptacles in both an **unfinished basement** and a **finished basement** intended as a habitable space
- Includes basements that are finished out to be a habitable room or space such as a bedroom, exercise room, game room, etc.
- Conductive floor surfaces may exist in finished and unfinished basements and basements (*whether finished or unfinished*) are prone to moisture including flooding
- A prevalent moisture hazard exists with a person being in contact with a damp floor, independent of flooring type, and then interacting with the electrical system

Copyright © IAEI 2020

67

### 210.8(A)(5) GFCI Protection for Basements

All 125-volt through 250-volt receptacles supplied by a single-phase branch circuit rated 150 volts or less to ground installed in any and all dwelling unit basements will require ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for personnel

Unfinished Basement

Finished Basement

Copyright © IAEI 2020

68



### 210.8(A)(11) GFCI for Indoor Damp and Wet Locations

- GFCI protection is now required at **indoor damp and wet locations** of dwelling units.
- Covers areas considered a damp or wet location not within 1.8 m (6 ft) of a sink, bathtub, or shower area.
- Change will require GFCI protection for all **125-volt through 250-volt receptacles** supplied by a single-phase branch circuit rated 150 volts or less to ground installed in indoor damp or wet locations regardless of the room or areas of the dwelling unit.
- Includes areas such as **mud room with no sink** or an indoor area where animals like dogs are washed down.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

69

### 210.8(A)(11) GFCI Protection for Indoor Damp or Wet Locations



All **125-volt through 250-volt** receptacles supplied by a single-phase branch circuit rated 150 volts or less to ground installed in **indoor damp or wet locations** require ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for personnel.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

70

### 210.8(B) Other Than Dwelling Units

- New GFCI requirements at non-dwelling unit locations were added for:
  - Damp locations
  - Accessory buildings
  - Laundry areas
  - Areas around bathtubs and shower stalls.
- 210.8(B)(6)**: Indoor "**damp**" location was added to the existing GFCI requirement for indoor wet non-dwelling unit locations for clarity and consistency as shock hazard in a damp location is similar to a wet location.
- 210.8(B)(8)**: Non-dwelling unit **accessory buildings** added to existing GFCI provisions for garages, service bays, and similar areas (*other than vehicle exhibition halls and showrooms*).

Copyright © JAEI 2020

71

### 210.8(B) Other Than Dwelling Units (cont.)

- 210.8(B)(8) (cont.)**: Accessory buildings can have same degree of shock hazard as garages and vehicle service bays and deserved the same level of GFCI protection.
- 210.8(B)(11)**: GFCI protection added for receptacles installed in **non-dwelling unit laundry areas**
  - Laundry areas at non-dwelling units are similar to laundry areas of a dwelling unit and deserve the same GFCI protection.
- 210.8(B)(12)**: GFCI protection added for receptacles installed within 1.8 m (6 ft) of the outside edge of **non-dwelling unit bathtubs or shower stalls**
  - Shower stalls and bathtubs can exist in commercial and industrial locations outside of a locker room or bathroom for a variety of purposes such as decontamination, and safety applications.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

72

### 210.8(B) GFCI Protection for Other Than Dwelling Units

New provisions for GFCI protection were added for non-dwelling unit locations for receptacles:



- Indoor Damp and Wet Locations
- Garages, accessory buildings, and service bays
- Laundry areas
- Bathrooms and shower stalls

Copyright © JAEI 2020

73

### 210.8(B)(2) GFCI for Kitchens and More

- Additional language was added to clarify that **areas not defined as a kitchen** with a sink and permanent provisions for either food preparation **or** cooking have the same potential for shock hazards as a kitchen
- This would include areas such as:
  - Ice cream parlors
  - Coffee shops
  - Smoothie stores
- These areas typically have stainless steel countertop and/or stainless-steel appliances but no "permanent provisions for cooking"
- These facilities have at least the same potential for shock hazards as a kitchen

Copyright © JAEI 2020

74

### 210.8(B)(2) GFCI Protection for Kitchens and More

GFCI protection required for all 125-volt through 250-volt receptacles supplied by single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground, 50 amperes or less and all receptacles supplied by three-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground, 100 amperes or less installed in areas defined as a "kitchen" and areas with a sink and permanent provisions for **either** food preparation **or** cooking



Coffee Shop (no permanent provisions for cooking)

Ice Cream Parlor (no permanent provisions for cooking)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

75

### 210.8(D) GFCI Protection for Specific Appliances

- New List Item (D) correlates the requirements found in **422.5(B)** (Type of GFCI protection for appliances) and refers to the list of GFCI requirements for appliances in **422.5(A)**
- Provides continued consistency as the list of appliances requiring GFCI protection is modified in future Code editions
- Previous GFCI requirements for dwelling unit **dishwashers** were moved from 210.8(D) to 422.5(A)(7) (which now covers all dishwashers)
- New 210.8(D) attempts to build a bridge for GFCI requirements from 210.8 to 422.5
- Where the appliance is a **vending machine** and GFCI protection is not provided as an integral part of the attachment plug or located within the supply cord not more than 300 mm (12 in.) from the attachment plug, the branch circuit(s) supplying vending machines is required to have GFCI protection

Copyright © JAEI 2020

76

### 210.8(D) GFCI Protection for Specific Appliances

New text at new 210.8(D) titled, "Specific Appliances" and the move of the GFCI requirement for dishwashers correlates the requirements found in 422.5(B) (Type and Location for GFCI protection for appliances) and refers to the list of appliances requiring GFCI protection in 422.5(A)



Dishwashers GFCI protection was moved from 210.8(D) to 422.5(A)(7)

Vending machine GFCI protection cannot be factory installed within the appliance

77


### 210.8(E) GFCI for Equipment Requiring Servicing

- GFCI protection now required for all **receptacles required by 210.63** for:
  - 210.63(A) HVAC equipment
  - 210.63(B)(1): Indoor service equipment
  - 210.63(B)(2): Indoor equipment requiring dedicated equipment space
- 210.63 expanded for this Code cycle
- These receptacles can be located up to 7.5 m (25 ft) away from equipment, use of extension cord is not uncommon (*increasing the likelihood of a shock hazard*)


78

### 210.8(E) GFCI for Equipment Requiring Servicing

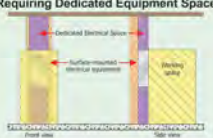
#### 210.63(A) HVAC and Refrigeration Equipment



#### 210.63(B)(1) Indoor Service Equipment



#### 210.63(B)(2) Indoor Equipment Requiring Dedicated Equipment Space



GFCI protection shall be provided for the receptacles required by 210.63

A 125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere-rated receptacle outlet shall be installed at an accessible location within 7.5 m (25 ft) of the equipment as specified in 210.63(A) and (B)

79

### 210.8(F) GFCI for Outdoor Outlets

- GFCI protection is now required on **dwelling unit outdoor outlets** supplied by single-phase branch circuit rated 150 volts or less to ground, and 50 amperes or less
- This would include 240-volt HVAC unit "outlets"
- Exemption** provided for branch circuit dedicated to **deicing and snow-melting equipment** and **outdoor lighting outlets** other than those covered in 210.8(C) (*crawl space lighting outlets*)
- Outdoor dwelling unit outlets typically serve loads that are comprised of 240-volt motor driven pumps or compressors that are in operation for many years without maintenance

80





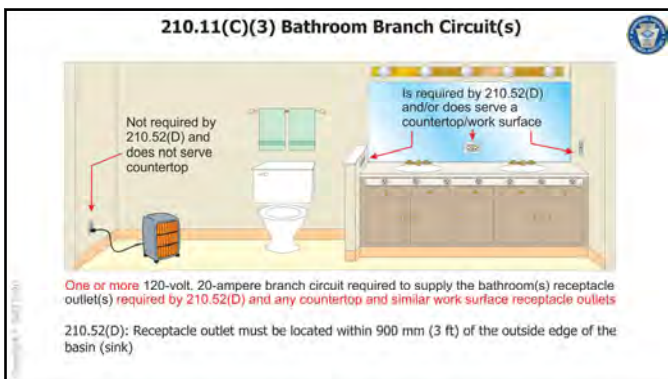
81

### 210.11(C)(3) Bathroom Branch Circuit(s)

- Additional text added clarifies that only **bathroom receptacles** required to be supplied by **20-ampere rated bathroom receptacle outlet branch circuits** are receptacle outlet(s) required by **210.52(D)** and any other receptacles installed in the bathroom that **serve a countertop or work surface**
- 210.52(D) requires at least one receptacle outlet installed within 900 mm (3 ft) of the outside edge of each basin in dwelling unit bathroom
- Previous provisions were being interpreted to mandate any receptacle(s) installed in a dwelling unit bathroom to be supplied by dedicated 20-ampere bathroom receptacle branch circuit *only [even receptacles not required by 210.52(D)]*

Copyright © IAEE 2020

82



83

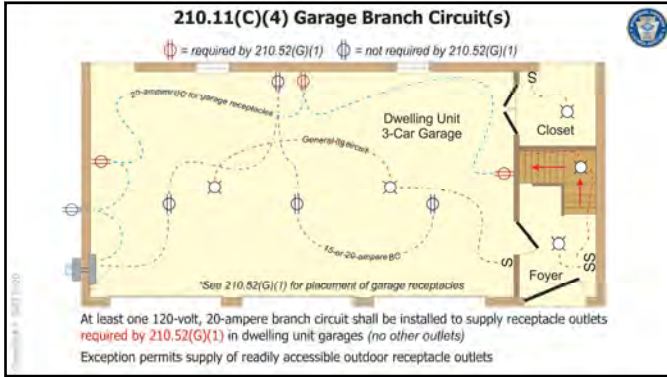
### 210.11(C)(4) Garage Branch Circuit(s)

- Garage receptacle outlet 120-volt, 20-ampere branch circuits are only required for the receptacles required by **210.52(G)(1)** for attached garages and in detached garages with electric power
- Section **210.52(G)(1)** requires at least one receptacle outlet to be installed in **each vehicle bay** of an attached garage and in each detached garage with electric power, with these required receptacle outlet(s) located not more than 1.7 m (5½ ft) above the floor
- Garage receptacle outlets **NOT** required by 210.52(G)(1) do not have to be supplied by this dedicated 120-volt, 20-ampere branch circuit(s) or even be supplied by a 20-ampere rated branch circuit (*could be a 15-ampere rated branch circuit*)

Copyright © IAEE 2020

84





85

### 210.12(C) AFCI for Patient Sleeping Rooms in Nursing Homes and Limited-Care Facilities

- AFCI protection has been expanded to patient sleeping rooms in **nursing homes** and **limited-care facilities**
- AFCI protection was expanded to include **guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels** during the 2017 NEC revision cycle as these areas are similar to dwelling units
- Similar rooms with comparable uses exist at patient sleeping rooms in nursing homes and limited-care facilities
- AFCI technology will provide same protection from arcing faults to the occupants of these rooms that is afforded occupants of conventional dwelling units and guest suites of hotels and motels

Copyright © IMET, 2020

86

### 210.12(C) AFCI Protection for Nursing Homes and Limited-Care Facilities

All 120-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere branch circuits supplying outlets and devices installed in guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels and **patient sleeping rooms in nursing homes and limited-care facilities** are required to AFCI protected

87



88

### 210.12(D) AFCI for Extensions or Modifications of Guest Rooms and Guest Suites

- Guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels have been added to the areas requiring AFCI protection for **extensions and modifications** of existing occupancies
- AFCI protection is now required at dwelling units, dormitory units, and guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels where branch-circuit wiring is **modified, replaced, or extended**
- All these areas are typically used and treated much like a dwelling unit
- By exception, AFCI protection not required for existing branch circuit conductors where extended **not more than 1.8 m (6 ft)** and does not include any additional outlets or devices (*other than splicing devices*)
- This measurement **does not include** the conductors inside an enclosure, cabinet, or junction box

Copyright © IAEI 2020

89

### 210.12(D) AFCI Protection for Extensions/Modifications of Guest Rooms and Guest Suites of Hotels and Motels

Extension of existing branch circuits [not more than 1.8 (6 ft)] does not include conductors inside enclosure, cabinet, or junction box

AFCI protection required at dwelling units, dormitory units, and guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels where branch-circuit wiring is modified, replaced, or extended

AFCI protection not required where extension of existing branch circuit conductors is not more than 1.8 m (6 ft) in length and does not include any additional outlets or devices (*other than splicing devices*)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

90

### 210.15 Reconditioned Equipment

- New section added prohibiting GFCI devices, AFCI devices, and ground-fault protection equipment from being reconditioned
- Several new sections were added throughout the Code with permission **for or against** equipment being reconditioned
- Marking requirements for reconditioned, refurbished or remanufactured electrical equipment located at 110.21(A) 2)
- Provisions of new 210.15 is the first of these new statements throughout the Code in reference to reconditioned equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2020

91

### 210.15 Reconditioned Equipment

**GFCI**      **GFCI/AFCI**      **GFPE**

The following shall not be reconditioned:

- (1) Equipment that provides ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for personnel
- (2) Equipment that provides arc-fault circuit-interrupter (AFCI) protection
- (3) Equipment that provides ground-fault protection (GFP) of equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2020

92

### Reconditioned Equipment Sections for the 2020 NEC

Code Section	CMP	Equipment	Yes/No	SR/PC
210.15	CMP-2	GFCI devices, AFCI devices, and GFI equipment	No	SR 7657
240.62	CMP-10	Low-voltage fuseholders and low-voltage nonrenewable fuses	No	SR 7974, PC 981
240.88(A)(1)	CMP-10	Molded-case circuit breakers	No	DSR 8011, PC 980
240.88(A)(2)	CMP-10	Low- and medium-voltage power circuit breakers	Yes	DSR 8011, PC 980
240.88(A)(3)	CMP-10	High-voltage circuit breakers	Yes	DSR 8011, PC 980
240.88(B)(1)	CMP-10	Low-voltage power circuit breaker electronic trip units	No	DSR 8011, PC 980
240.88(B)(2)	CMP-10	Electromechanical protective relays and current transformers	Yes	DSR 8011, PC 980
240.102	CMP-10	Medium-voltage fuseholders and medium-voltage nonrenewable fuses	No	SR 8048, PC 982
406.3(A)	CMP-18	Receptacles	No	SR 8187
406.7	CMP-18	Attachment plugs, cord connectors, and flanged surface devices	No	SR 8189

93

### Reconditioned Equipment Sections for the 2020 NEC

Code Section	CMP	Equipment	Yes/No	SR/PC
408.8(A)	CMP-9	Panelboards	No	SR 8172, PC 987
408.8(D)	CMP-9	Switchboards and switchgear, or sections of switchboards or switchgear	Yes	SR 8172, PC 987
410.7	CMP-18	Luminaires, lampholders, and retrofit kits	No	SR 8162
411.4	CMP-18	Listed low-voltage lighting systems or a lighting system assembled from listed parts	No	SR 8164
490.49	CMP-9	Switchgear, or sections of switchgear	Yes	SR 8222
695.10	CMP-13	Fire pump controllers and transfer switches	No	SR 7522, PC 983
700.5(C)	CMP-13	Automatic transfer switches (Emergency Systems)	No	SR 7584, PC 984
701.5(C)	CMP-13	Automatic transfer switches (Legally Required Standby Systems)	No	SR 7586, PC 985
702.5	CMP-13	Transfer switches (Optional Standby Systems)	No	SR 7588, PC 986
708.24	CMP-13	Transfer equipment (Critical Operations Power Systems)	No	SR 7517
800.3(G)	CMP-16	Communication equipment	Yes*	SR 7509

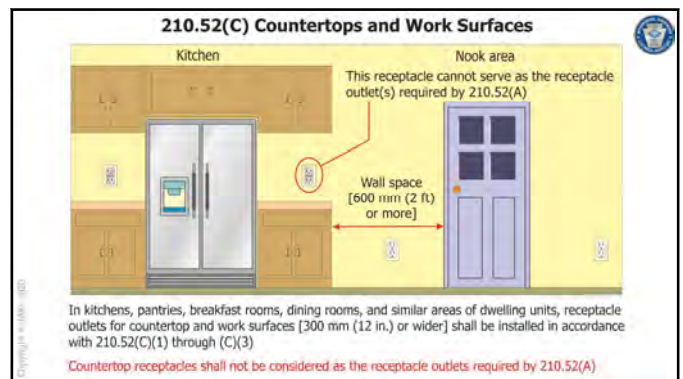
\*must comply with 110.21(A)(2)

94

### 210.52(C) Receptacles at Countertops and Work Surfaces

- Revision clarifies that the receptacle outlets installed for countertop or work surfaces [210.52(C)] are **not permitted** to satisfy the requirement for receptacle outlet placement (*wall spacing*) as provided in 210.52(A)
- Section 210.52(A) pertains to the "no point measured horizontally along the floor line of any wall space is more than 1.8 m (6 ft) from a receptacle outlet" wall spacing rule
- Receptacle outlets installed to serve the countertops and work surfaces in kitchens, pantries, breakfast rooms, dining rooms, and similar areas cannot be considered as the receptacle outlets required by 210.52(A)

95



96



### 210.52(C)(2) Receptacles at Island and Peninsular Countertops

- For island and peninsular countertop and work surfaces, the horizontal measurement was replaced with a **square foot calculation** to determine the number of receptacles required
- Previously, a measurement was required across the countertop with at least one receptacle required to be installed at each island countertop space or peninsular countertop space with a long dimension of **600 mm (24 in.)** or greater and a short dimension of **300 mm (12 in.)** or greater
- Historically, **only one receptacle outlet** has been required at an island and peninsular countertops regardless of the size of that island or peninsular
- Changes to this section will required **more than one receptacle outlet** at larger kitchen islands and peninsulas

Copyright © IAEE 2020

97

### 210.52(C)(2) Receptacles at Island and Peninsular Countertops (cont.)

- At least one receptacle is required to be provided for the **first 0.84 m<sup>2</sup> (9 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface
- An additional receptacle outlet is required for every **additional 1.7 m<sup>2</sup> (18 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface
- At least one receptacle outlet must be located **within 600 mm (2 ft)** of the outer end of a peninsular countertop or work surface
- A peninsular countertop measurements are taken from the **connected perpendicular wall** (see TIA Log No. 1442)

Copyright © IAEE 2020

98

### 210.52(C)(2) Island and Peninsulars

At least one receptacle outlet shall be provided for the **first 0.84 m<sup>2</sup> (9 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface  
 A receptacle outlet shall be provided for **every additional 1.7 m<sup>2</sup> (18 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface

7 ft by 4 ft = 28 ft<sup>2</sup>  
 28 ft<sup>2</sup> - 9 ft<sup>2</sup> = 19 ft<sup>2</sup>

At least one receptacle outlet shall be located within **600 mm (2 ft)** of the outer end of a peninsular countertop or work surface

Copyright © IAEE 2020

99

### 210.52(C)(2) Island and Peninsulars

At least one receptacle outlet shall be provided for the **first 0.84 m<sup>2</sup> (9 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface  
 A receptacle outlet shall be provided for **every additional 1.7 m<sup>2</sup> (18 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface

7 ft by 3 ft = 21 ft<sup>2</sup>  
 21 ft<sup>2</sup> - 9 ft<sup>2</sup> = 12 ft<sup>2</sup>

At least one receptacle outlet shall be located within **600 mm (2 ft)** of the outer end of a peninsular countertop or work surface

A peninsular countertop is to be measured from the **connected perpendicular wall**

Copyright © IAEE 2020

100

### 210.52(C)(2) Island and Peninsulas

Examples of Minimum Number of Receptacle Outlets Required

Total Square Footage of Countertop	Minimum No. of Receptacle Outlets
8 sq. ft.	1
9 sq. ft.	1
More than 9 sq. ft. up to 27 sq. ft. [9 sq. ft. + 18 sq. ft. = 27 sq. ft.]	2
28 sq. ft. [first 9 sq. ft. (one), additional 18 sq. ft. (one) and addition fraction there of (1 sq. ft.) (one)]	3
48 sq. ft. [48 sq. ft. - 9 sq. ft. = 39 sq. ft.] [39 sq. ft. ÷ 18 sq. ft. = 2.17 sq. ft.]	4

**210.52(C)(2)(a) Island and Peninsular Countertops and Work Surfaces**

At least one receptacle outlet shall be provided for the **first 0.84 m<sup>2</sup> (9 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface.

A receptacle outlet shall be provided for **every additional 1.7 m<sup>2</sup> (18 ft<sup>2</sup>), or fraction thereof**, of the countertop or work surface.


101

### 210.52(E)(3) Receptacles at Balconies, Decks, and Porches

- The required receptacle outlet for balconies, decks, and porches is also required at decks that are installed in a **freestanding manner** where connection to the actual dwelling is not made at any point
- At least one 125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere receptacle outlet is required to be installed at every dwelling unit balcony, deck, or porch
- Many decks are installed in a cantilevered manner where connection to the actual dwelling unit building is not made at any point (*leaving an air gap to promote drainage and prevent wood decay*)
- Previous text would suggest that a receptacle is not required at this type of deck as it is technically "unattached"
- At least one receptacle outlet (*accessible from the balcony, deck, or porch*) on any balcony, deck, or porch is now required for decks that are **within 102 mm (4 in.) horizontally** of the dwelling unit

102

### 210.52(E)(3) Balconies, Decks, and Porches



At least one 125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere receptacle outlet required to be provide for all balconies, decks, and porches that are constructed **within 102 mm (4 in.) horizontally of the dwelling unit**

Receptacle must be located in an accessible location from the balcony, deck, or porch and not more than 2.0 m (6½ ft) above the balcony, deck, or porch walking surface

103

### 210.65 Receptacles for Meeting Rooms

- Meeting room receptacle outlet rules received revisions and a new home at **210.65**, rather than its original location at 210.71
- 210.65 provides a **better location** with other requirements for receptacle outlets for usability and uniform numbering
- Previous language at 210.71(B)(2) for floor receptacle outlets could have been interpreted to only apply to a **square or rectangle-shaped meeting rooms**
- What about a **round-shaped meeting room**?
- Revisions to 210.65(B)(2) clarifies length versus width concerns while addressing **non-rectangular meeting rooms**, such as those that are round
- Floor outlets now applies to a meeting room **"with any floor dimension"** that is 3.7 m (12 ft) or greater **"in any direction"**

104





### 215.10, Ex. No. 3 GFP for Feeders

- New exception added to permit **temporary feeders** to be used during repair, maintenance or emergencies **without GFP of equipment**
- Time period permitted for these temporary feeders **not to exceed 90 days**
- GFP of equipment is required for each feeder disconnect rated 1000 amperes or more and installed on solidly grounded wye electrical systems of more than 150 volts to ground (*not exceeding 600 volts phase-to-phase*)
- Without this exception, the use of temporary feeders during repair, maintenance, or emergencies may present difficulties in achieving the required GFP protection
- Example:** Portable generator connected to a facility electrical system during a loss of power due to power failure or maintenance activity

Copyright © IAEI 2020

109

### 215.10 Ex. No. 3 GFP for Feeders

Ground-fault protection (GFP) for equipment **not required for temporary feeder conductors** that are used to connect a generator to a facility for repair, maintenance, or emergencies

Temporary feeders only permitted for the time period necessary but **cannot exceed 90 days**

GFPE is not required here because of service GFPE device

GFPE is required here for equipment supplied by transformer secondary

GFPE is not required here

Optional standby source (portable generator)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

110

### 220.12 Lighting Load for Specified Non-Dwelling Occupancies

- Section 220.12 and Table 220.12 has been **extensively revised**
- General lighting load values for specific occupancies at Table 220.12 have received very **minimal revisions since the 1971 edition of the NEC**
- Reduced lighting loads** in most occupancies was achieved
- Aligns Table 220.12 with those occupancies found in **ASHRAE 90.1-2016 (Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings)** and the International Energy Conservation Code
- Dwelling and multi-family dwelling units were moved out of Table 220.12 and referenced in revised **220.14(J)**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

111

### Table 220.12 General Lighting Loads by Non-Dwelling Occupancy

Section 220.12 and Table 220.12 has been extensively revised - Reduced lighting loads in most occupancies was achieved - Dwelling and multi-family dwelling units were moved out of Table 220.12 and referenced in revised 220.14(J)

112



**Table 220.12 General Lighting Loads by Non-Dwelling Occupancy (Part 1)**

Type of Occupancy	Unit Load	
	Volt-amperes/m <sup>2</sup>	Volt-amperes/ft <sup>2</sup>
Automotive facility	16	1.5
Convention Center	15	1.4
Courthouse (was Courtrooms)	15 22	1.4 2.0
Dormitory	16	1.5
Exercise center	15	1.4
Fire station	14	1.3
Gymnasium* (was Armories and auditoriums)	18 11	1.7 1.0
Health care clinic (was Hospitals)	17 22	1.6 2.0
Hospital	17	1.6
Hotels and motels, including apartment houses without provisions for cooking by tenants <sup>a</sup>	18 22	1.7 2.0
Library	16	1.5
Manufacturing facility <sup>c</sup> (was Industrial commercial (loft) blog)	24 22	2.2 2.0
Motion picture theater	17	1.6
Museum	17	1.6
Office <sup>d</sup> (was Office buildings)	14 39	1.3 3.5

113

**Table 220.12 General Lighting Loads by Non-Dwelling Occupancy (Part 2)**

Type of Occupancy	Unit Load	
	Volt-amperes/m <sup>2</sup>	Volt-amperes/ft <sup>2</sup>
Parking garage <sup>e</sup> (was Garages-commercial (storage)) <sup>f</sup>	3 6	0.3 0.5
Penitentiary	13	1.2
Performing arts theater	16	1.5
Police station	14	1.3
Post office	17	1.6
Religious facility (was Churches)	24 11	2.2 1.0
Restaurant <sup>g</sup> (was Restaurants and Clubs)	16 22	1.5 2.0
Retail <sup>h</sup> (was Barber shops and beauty parlors and Stores)	20 33	1.9 3.0
School/university (was Schools)	33	3.0
Sports arena	33	3.0
Town hall	15	1.4
Transportation	13	1.2
Warehouse	13 3	1.2 0.25
Workshop	18	1.7

114

**Table 220.12 General Lighting Loads by Non-Dwelling Occupancy (Part 3)**

Type of Occupancy	Unit Load	
	Volt-amperes/m <sup>2</sup>	Volt-amperes/ft <sup>2</sup>
(Note at bottom of table)		

Note: The 125 percent multiplier for a continuous load as specified in 210.20(A) is included when using the unit loads in this table for calculating the minimum lighting load for a specified occupancy.

\*Armories and auditoriums are considered gymnasium-type occupancies.  
<sup>a</sup>Lodge rooms are similar to hotels and motels.  
<sup>b</sup>Industrial commercial loft buildings are considered manufacturing-type occupancies.  
<sup>c</sup>Banks are office-type occupancies.  
<sup>d</sup>Garages — commercial (storage) are considered parking garage occupancies.  
<sup>e</sup>Clubs are considered restaurant occupancies.  
<sup>f</sup>Barber shops and beauty parlors are considered retail occupancies.  
<sup>g</sup>Stores are considered retail occupancies.

115

**220.14(J) and 220.11 Lighting Loads for Dwelling Units**

- NEC calculation of **3.0 watts per square foot** for dwelling units was moved from Table 220.12 to **220.14(J)** and reference to Table 220.12 was removed from 220.14(J)
- Table 220.12 revised to only addresses non-dwelling unit occupancies
- New sentence added to address **motors rated less than 1/8 HP** and connected to a lighting circuit (*small motor loads will now be included in the general lighting load*)
- References to **"guest rooms or guest suites of hotels and motels"** removed and relocated to new **220.14(M)**
- Long-standing requirement for calculating the floor area of a dwelling unit to not include **open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces** not adaptable for future use has been relocated from 220.12 to a new **220.11**

116

### 220.14(J) and 220.11 Lighting Loads for Dwellings

*Green shaded area included in lighting load calculation*

Calculation of general-purpose branch circuits is determined by using a unit load of 3 volt-amperes (watts) per square foot for dwelling units *(Moved from Table 220.12 to 220.14(J))*

For dwelling units, the calculated floor area shall not include open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces not adaptable for future use *(Relocated from 220.12 to new 220.11)*

117

### 220.14(J) and 220.11 Lighting Loads for Dwellings

*Green shaded area included in lighting load calculation*

$$\frac{\text{Floor Area} \times 3 \text{ VA}}{120 \text{ Volts}} = \text{Amperes (General Purpose Lighting)}$$

Amperes, Gen. Purpose Lighting = Min. Number of Circuits  
15 or 20 Amp Circuits

$$\frac{2800 \text{ sq. ft.} \times 3 \text{ VA (8400 VA)}}{120 \text{ Volts}} = 70.0 \text{ Amperes}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 70.0 \text{ Amperes} &= (4.66) \underline{5} - 15 \text{ Ampere Circuits or} \\ 15 \text{ or 20 Ampere Circuits} &= (3.50) \underline{4} - 20 \text{ Ampere Circuits} \end{aligned}$$

Calculation of general-purpose branch circuits is determined by using a unit load of 3 volt-amperes (watts) per square foot for dwelling units *(Moved from Table 220.12 to 220.14(J))*

For dwelling units, the calculated floor area shall not include open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces not adaptable for future use *(Relocated from 220.12 to new 220.11)*

118

### 220.42 General Lighting

- Demand factors for derating feeder and service conductors in **hospitals** were deleted.
  - Now required to include **100% of total VA** of the calculated lighting load
- Demand factors for feeder and service conductors in **hotels, motels and apartment houses** without provision for cooking, were increased to correlate with revisions in Table 220.12
- **Table 220.42** still applies a demand factor to lighting loads at dwelling units, hotels and motels, and warehouses with all other occupancies required to include **100% of the total volt-amperes (VA)** of the lighting load

119

### Table 220.42 Lighting Load Demand Factors

Type of Occupancy	Portion of Lighting Load to Which Demand Factor Applies (Volt-Amperes)	Demand Factor (%)
Dwelling Units	First 3000 at	100
	From 3001 to 120,000 at	35
	Remainder over 120,000 at	25
<b>Hospitals</b>	<b>First 50,000 at</b>	<b>40</b>
	<b>Remainder over 50,000 at</b>	<b>20</b>
Hotels and Motels, (including apartment houses without provisions for cooking by tenants)*	First 20,000 at	60 <del>50</del>
	From 20,001 to 100,000 at	50 <del>40</del>
	Remainder over 100,000 at	35 <del>30</del>
Warehouses (storage)	First 12,500 or less at	100
	Remainder over 12,500 at	50
All Others	Total volt-amperes	100

\*The demand factors of this table shall not apply to the calculated load of feeders or services supplying areas in **hospitals**, hotels and motels where the entire lighting is likely to be used at one time, as in **operating rooms**, ballrooms or dining rooms.

120

### 220.53 Appliance Load - Dwelling Unit(s)

- All fastened in place household electric cooking equipment (not just an electric range) added to the list of appliances that cannot be included in the four or more appliances eligible for 75% derating demand factor
- Previously permitted to apply demand factor of 75% to nameplate rating load of four or more appliances fastened in place (other than electric ranges, clothes dryers, space-heating equipment or air-conditioning equipment)
- Appliances rated ¼ hp or greater, or 500 watts or greater, that are fastened in place is now the benchmark for appliances that can be included in this 75% derating rule
- This will eliminate typical bathroom exhaust fan from this derating

Copyright © JAEI 2020

121

### 220.53 Appliance Load - Dwelling Unit(s)

STANDARD LOAD CALCULATION

Appliances	Quantity	VA Ungrnd	VA Neutral
Dishwasher	1	1,500	1,500
Disposal (½ hp motor)	1	1,176	1,176
Compactor	1	600	600
Exhaust Fans (120 VA each)	2	240	240
Water Heaters (4,500 VA each)	2	9,000	
<b>Totals</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>12,276</b>	<b>3,276</b>
4 or more Appliances Total at 75%		<b>9,207</b>	<b>2,457</b>

A demand factor of 75 percent can be applied to the nameplate rating load of four or more appliances rated ¼ hp or greater, or 500 watts or greater, that are fastened in place, and that are served by the same feeder or service in a one-family, two-family, or multifamily dwelling. This demand factor cannot be apply to:

- Household electric cooking equipment that are fastened in place (was electric ranges)
- Clothes dryers
- Space heating equipment
- Air-conditioning equipment

Copyright © JAEI 2020

122

### 225.30(B) Number of Supplies (Feeders) Common Supply Equipment

- New text added permitting more than one feeder (up to six feeders) under very limited circumstances
- Building or other structure served by an outside feeder previously permitted to be supplied by only one feeder (unless another feeder (or branch circuit) was permitted by "special conditions" of previous 225.30(A) through (E))
- 225.30 "special conditions" can include such equipment as fire pumps, emergency systems, legally required standby systems, optional standby systems, parallel power production system
- AHJ can grant "special permission" for additional feeders or branch circuits for multiple-occupancy buildings where there is no space available for supply equipment accessible to all occupants or a single building or other structure "sufficiently large" enough to make two or more supplies essential
- "Special conditions" can also exist where different voltages, frequencies, or phases are involved

Copyright © JAEI 2020

123

### 225.30(B) Number of Supplies (Feeders) Common Supply Equipment (cont.)

- New text added permitting more than one feeder (up to six feeders) under very limited circumstances (cont.)
- New 225.30(B) will permit up to six feeders to supply a building or structure under the following conditions:
  - Each feeder must originate in the same panelboard, switchboard or other distribution equipment
  - Each feeder must terminate in a single disconnecting means
  - Where more than one feeder is installed, all feeder disconnects supplied are required to be grouped in the same location
  - Each disconnect must be marked to indicate the load served
- Feeders have the added benefit of overcurrent and short circuit protection and should not be afforded the same requirements as service conductors

Copyright © JAEI 2020

124

### 225.30(B) Common Supply Equipment (Feeders)

Feeders are generally limited to one feeder on the load side of the service equipment per building or structure (see permissive conditions at 225.30(A) through (F))

225.33 (six disconnects per feeder) shall not apply

All feeder disconnects shall be grouped in the same location

New provisions added to allow up to **six feeders** originating in the same panelboard, switchboard, or other distribution equipment, with each feeder terminating in a single disconnecting means. Each disconnect to be marked to indicate the load served.

125

### 230.46 Splices and Tapped Conductors

- The requirement for **marking power distribution blocks** used on service conductors required to be marked **"suitable for use on the line side of the service equipment"** or equivalent was moved from 314.28(E)(1) to 230.46
- All power distribution blocks, pressure connectors, and devices for splices and taps of service conductors must be listed
- Effective **January 1, 2023**, pressure connectors and devices for splices and taps on service conductors must be marked as **suitable for use on the line side of service equipment**

126

### 230.46 Spliced and Tapped Conductors

Power distribution blocks listed and marked "suitable for use on the line side of the service equipment" or equivalent

Service-entrance conductors permitted to be spliced or tapped in accordance with 110.14, 300.5(E), 300.13, and 300.15 with power distribution blocks (PDB), pressure connectors, and devices for splices and taps required to be listed

PDBs installed on service conductors required to be marked "suitable for use on the line side of the service equipment" or equivalent with all devices used to splice service conductors required to be marked in this manner effective **January 1, 2023**

127

### 230.62(C) Barriers

- Previous provision for **barriers** at service panelboards, switchboards, and switchgear has been moved to Article 230 to apply to all service equipment
- Previous barrier requirements of **408.3(A)(2)** were relocated and expanded in new **230.62(C)**
- All service equipment** is now required to be provided with **barriers** to prevent line side inadvertent contact
- This includes but is not limited to panelboards, switchboards, switchgear, motor control centers, individual circuit breaker enclosures, SUSE rated transfer switches and fused disconnects

128





129

**230.67 Surge Protection**

- New requirement added for **surge protection** on all **services at dwelling units**
- The surge protection device (SPD) must be an **integral part of the service equipment** or **located immediately adjacent to the service equipment**
- Exception permits alternate location provided an SPD is located at **each next level distribution equipment** downstream toward the load
- This SPD required to be either a **Type 1** or **Type 2** SPD
- Applies to **replacement** of residential service equipment as well

130



131

**230.71 Maximum Number of Disconnects**

- Revision **eliminates** more than one service disconnecting means in the **same panelboard or other enclosure**
- Continues to retain the **six service disconnect rule** for services with the up to six service disconnects required to be installed in **separate enclosures only**
- Previous provisions permitted service disconnecting mean(s) to consist of **not more than six** switches or sets of circuit breakers mounted in a **single enclosure** or in a group of **separate enclosures**
- Revision takes into consideration the challenges created for electrical workers when encountering a panelboard with more than one service disconnecting means in the same enclosure

132

### 230.71 Maximum Number of Disconnects (cont.)

- A **single service disconnect** within service equipment provides additional protection from electric shock hazards where **barriers are in place** over the exposed energized conductors/terminals to **eliminate any live exposed parts**
- Barriers required to be provided to eliminate live exposed parts for switchboards, switchgear and panelboards in accordance with **230.62(C)** [was 408.3(A)(2)]

Copyright © JAEI 2020

133

### 230.71(A) and (B) Maximum Number of Disconnects

Service disconnecting means can be any of the following:

- A single "main" or...
- Up to six grouped in a **single enclosure** or...
- Up to six **separate enclosures** grouped in the same location or...
- In or on a **switchboard** or in **switchgear** (see conditions)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

134

### 230.85 Emergency Disconnects

- New requirement added requiring an **emergency disconnect** at a **readily accessible outdoor location** for dwelling units
- New outdoor emergency disconnecting requirement primarily based upon providing **first responders** an outdoor accessible emergency or service disconnecting means during an **emergency situation** such as a fire, gas leak, structural damage, flooding, etc.
- Access service disconnecting means for first responders is very challenging when the service disconnect is installed in an indoor location of a dwelling unit area such as a basement
- Requiring first responders to enter a potentially hazardous environment (such as a **burning building**) to find and then activate the service disconnect(s) is not a safe practice

Copyright © JAEI 2020

135

### 230.85 Exterior Emergency Disconnect(s) for Dwelling Units

All one- and two-family dwelling unit service conductors shall terminate in disconnecting means having a short-circuit current rating equal to or greater than the available fault current, installed in a **readily accessible outdoor location**

If more than one disconnect, required to be grouped

Copyright © JAEI 2020

136

### 230.85 Exterior Emergency Disconnect(s) for Dwelling Units

All one- and two-family dwelling unit service conductors shall terminate in disconnecting means installed in a **readily accessible outdoor location** (grouped if more than one disconnect)

Each disconnect shall be one of the following:

- 1 Service disconnects marked as follows: **EMERGENCY DISCONNECT, SERVICE DISCONNECT**
- 2 Meter disconnects installed per 230.82(3) and marked as follows: **EMERGENCY DISCONNECT, METER DISCONNECT, NOT SERVICE EQUIPMENT**
- 3 Other listed disconnect switches or circuit breakers on the supply side of each service disconnect that are suitable for use as service equipment and marked as follows: **EMERGENCY DISCONNECT, NOT SERVICE EQUIPMENT**

137

### 240.6(C) Restricted Access Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers

- New provision added to recognize **modern electronic trip units** provided with a **password** to keep unauthorized users from changing the settings on a restricted access adjustable-trip circuit breaker(s)
- Adjustable settings on an adjustable-trip circuit breaker needs to be protected from **inadvertent settings** out of the desired operational settings, such as **restricted access** to the adjusting means
- Previously, restricted access could be achieved by locating an adjustable-trip circuit breaker behind one of three methods:
  - Behind removable and sealable covers
  - Behind bolted equipment enclosure doors
  - Behind locked doors accessible only to qualified persons

138

### 240.6(C) Restricted Access Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers (cont.)

- New provision added to recognize **modern electronic trip units** provided with a **password** to keep unauthorized users from changing the settings on a restricted access adjustable-trip circuit breaker(s) (cont.)
- Fourth option added pertaining to **password protected** adjustable-trip circuit breaker with password **accessible only to qualified personnel**
- Fully programmable models offered that enable ultimate customization and flexibility
- Equipped with the latest microprocessor technology with advanced algorithms that notify maintenance personnel when the power distribution system needs to be maintained or replaced
- Has the ability to accurately measure energy consumption with no additional meters or equipment

139

### 240.6(C) Restricted Access Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers

Restricted access shall be achieved by one of the following methods:

- (1) Located behind removable and sealable covers over the adjusting means
- (2) Located behind bolted equipment enclosure doors
- (3) Located behind locked doors accessible only to qualified personnel
- (4) Password protected, with password accessible only to qualified personnel

140



## 240.87 Arc Energy Reduction

- An instantaneous trip setting that is less than the available arcing current is one of seven methods recognized to achieve **arc energy reduction**
- Revision to **240.87(B)(5)** clarifies that **temporary adjustment** of the instantaneous trip setting to achieve arc energy reduction **shall not be permitted**
- Arc energy reduction is designed to limit the arc-flash energy to which electrical workers or maintenance personnel could be exposed when working on the load side of an overcurrent device that is rated or can be adjusted to **1200 amperes or higher**
- The incident energy in an arcing event is directly proportional to the time frame a fault will be permitted to persist on the electrical system

Copyright © IAEI 2020

141

## 240.87 Arc Energy Reduction (cont.)


- The **final setting** of the instantaneous trip is what determines whether or not additional arc energy reduction techniques are required
- Not the intention of this requirement that the **minimum setting** of the instantaneous trip (*as is typically shipped from the factory*) be the determining factor on whether or not additional arc energy reduction is necessary
- Final setting** as determined by the electrical system requirements such as **inrush characteristics** or **selective coordination** is determining factor
- Arc energy reduction is **not achieved** with an instantaneous trip being **adjusted to a lower setting** while a worker is working on the equipment, and then adjusted back to the desired setting after the work is complete

Copyright © IAEI 2020

142

## 240.87 Arc Energy Reduction

An instantaneous trip setting that is less than the available arcing current is one of seven methods recognized to achieve arc energy reduction



Courtesy of Eaton Corporation

Temporary adjustment of the instantaneous trip setting to achieve arc energy reduction does not satisfy this requirement

Copyright © IAEI 2020

143

## 240.88 Reconditioned Equipment

- New section added dealing with reconditioned equipment to indicate that **molded-case circuit breakers** shall not be permitted to be reconditioned
- Each Code Making Panel (CMP) was asked to review the equipment they have purview over and determine what equipment they could be reconditioned and what equipment could not be reconditioned but rather replaced when necessary
- Molded-case circuit breakers and low-voltage power circuit breaker electronic trip units cannot be reconditioned
- Low- and medium-voltage power circuit breakers, high-voltage circuit breakers, electromechanical protective relays, and current transformers **can be reconditioned**
- Marking requirement for reconditioned equipment located at **110.21(A)(2)**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

144



145

### Article 242 Overvoltage Protection (New)

- New article added to provide the general, installation, and connection requirements for **overvoltage protection** and **overvoltage protective devices** for clarity and usability
- Relocates previous **Articles 280** (Surge Arresters, Over 1000 Volts) and **285** (Surge-Protective Devices, 1000 Volts or Less) into a new Article 242
- More appropriately located immediately following Article 240 for overcurrent protection
- Combining previous Articles 280 and 285 in a style similar to that of Article 240 significantly improve clarity and usability

Copyright © IAEI 2020

146

### Article 242 Overvoltage Protection

New Article 242 added to provide the general, installation, and connection requirements for overvoltage protection and overvoltage protective devices

Relocates previous Articles 280 and 285 into a new Article 242

Part II covers **surge-protective devices (SPDs)** permanently installed on premises wiring systems of not more than 1000 volts, nominal

Part III covers **surge arresters** permanently installed on premises wiring systems over 1000 volts, nominal

Copyright © IAEI 2020

147

### 250.25 Grounding Systems Permitted to Be Connected on the Supply Side Service Disconnect

- **New section** created to cover the requirements for grounding of supply-side disconnects permitted to be connected on the supply-side of a service
- Points user of the Code to **250.24** (*Grounding Service-Supplied Alternating-Current Systems*) for the grounding and bonding requirements for these supply-side disconnects
- **230.82** lists eleven specific items that the Code permits to be installed ahead of or on the line side of a service disconnecting means
- Grounding of systems such as solar, wind, fuel cells, and inter-connected power production systems were not covered in detail when connected on the line side of a service disconnect

Copyright © IAEI 2020

148

### 250.25 Grounding Systems Permitted to Be Connected on the Supply Side Service Disconnect

- As more and more renewable and interconnected power production sources are connected to the serving utility directly, the need for prescriptive grounding and bonding requirements for these alternative sources is even more critical
- When this equipment is installed in another enclosure and identified as not being "service equipment," requirements need to be provided on how to properly accomplish the grounding and bonding of these installations
- Since the idea is to generally treat the installation like a service (*but not call it a service*), pointing both the installer and enforcer to the same requirements as used for the service equipment, provides the direction and a consistent installation needed

Copyright © IAEI 2020

149



150

### 250.64(A) Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum GECs

- 250.64(A) Formatted into a **list format** for improved clarity and usability
- Clarifies that terminations for **aluminum or copper-clad aluminum** grounding electrode conductors (GEC) located in the **interior of equipment "listed and identified for the environment"** are separated from the earth and **can be terminated** within 450 mm (18 in.) of the earth
- Section was divided into **three distinctive parts** to better distinguish what type of bare, covered, or insulated aluminum or copper-clad aluminum GECs can or cannot be terminated **within 450 mm (18 in.) of the earth**, or be installed **where subject to corrosive conditions**, or be installed **in direct contact with concrete**
- Similar changes occurred at **250.120(B)** for terminating aluminum or copper-clad aluminum GECs within 450 mm (18 in.) of the earth

Copyright © IAEI 2020

151

### 250.64(A) Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum GECs

Grounding electrode conductors (GEC) of bare, covered, or insulated aluminum or copper-clad aluminum shall comply with the following:

- Bare or covered GECs **not permitted** to be installed where subject to corrosive conditions or be installed in direct contact with concrete (*without an extruded polymeric covering*)
- Terminations made within outdoor enclosures that are listed and identified for the environment are **permitted** within 450 mm (18 in.) of bottom of the enclosure
- Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum GECs installed external to buildings or equipment enclosures **not permitted** to be terminated within 450 mm (18 in.) of the earth

152

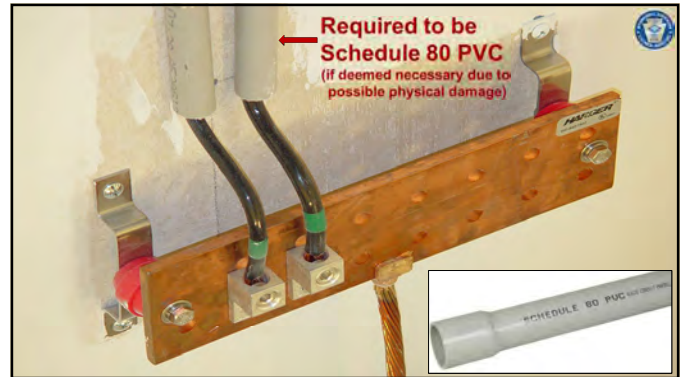


### 250.64(B)(2) and (B)(3) GEC Installations Exposed to Physical Damage

- Revision clarifies that **Schedule 80 PVC** is required when PVC conduit is used for **protection from physical damage** for a grounding electrode conductor (GEC).
- This is **consistent with other sections of the Code**, such as 230.50(B)(1) where Schedule 80 PVC is an option to provide protection from physical damage for service-entrance conductors.
- Schedule 40 PVC does not provide the **impact and crush resistant characteristics** required for providing the protection anticipated by the Code and cannot be used in any location where protection from physical damage is required.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

153



154

### 250.68(C)(3) GEC Connections to Rebar-Type Concrete-Encased Electrodes

- New provisions added to clarify that the rebar system in a footing or foundation is not suitable as the conductor to interconnect other grounding electrodes.
- 250.68(C)(3), which gives the permission to use a rebar extension for connection of GECs and bonding jumpers was reformatted into a **list format**.
- Installation requirements** for the use of a rebar "stub-up" as an extension connected to a concrete-encased electrode was added.
- Rebar extension must be continuous with the concrete-encased electrode rebar or it needs to be connected to the concrete-encased electrode rebar by the usual steel tie wires, exothermic welding, welding, or other effective means.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

155

### 250.68(C)(3) GEC Connections to Rebar-Type Concrete-Encased Electrodes (cont.)

- Additional language **prohibits** the rebar (*both the concrete-encased electrode rebar and the rebar extension*) from being used as a conductor to **interconnect the individual electrodes** of grounding electrode systems.
- The rebar extension:
  - Must be **connected to the rebar** in the foundation or footing.
  - Shall not be exposed to earth contact without **corrosion protection**.
  - Shall not be used to **interconnect electrodes** of the grounding electrode system.
- Same change added at **250.53(C)** for bonding jumper(s) used to connect the grounding electrodes together to form the grounding electrode system.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

156

### 250.68(C)(3) Concrete-Encased Electrode Extension

Concrete-encased electrode

Extension or "stub-up" from a concrete-encased electrode prohibited from being exposed to contact with the earth without corrosion protection

Connection shall be accessible

Rebar extension must be continuous with the concrete-encased electrode rebar or needs to be connected to the concrete-encased electrode rebar by the usual steel tie wires, exothermic welding, welding, or other effective means

Rebar (both the concrete-encased electrode rebar and the rebar extension) not permitted to be used as a conductor to interconnect the individual electrodes of grounding electrode systems

157

### 250.104(A)(1) Bonding of Metal Water Piping Systems

- Revision clarifies that **bonding jumper(s)** used to bond metal water piping system(s) together are not required to be larger than **3/0 copper** or **250 kcmil aluminum or copper-clad aluminum**
- Bonding jumper(s) used to bond metal water piping together still required to be sized based on **Table 250.102(C)(1)** but not required to be larger than 3/0 copper or 250 kcmil aluminum or copper-clad aluminum
- Changes made as a result of changing sizing reference from Table 250.66 to Table 250.102(C)(1) in the 2017 *NEC*, which resulted in an **inadvertent increase in the sizing** of bonding jumper(s) for metal water piping systems
- Same basic change occurred at **250.104(C)** for bonding of **structural metal**

158

### 250.104(A)(1) Bonding of Metal Water Piping Systems

Cold water piping

Hot water piping

Gas piping bonding

Gas meter

Other metal piping

Underground metal gas piping not permitted as grounding electrode per 250.52(B)(1)

Underground nonmetallic (PVC) water piping (not a grounding electrode)

Grounding Electrode

**Metal water piping system:** Bonding jumper to be sized per **Table 250.102(C)(1)** based on the cm area of the service-entrance conductors

**Other metal piping:** Bonding jumper to be sized based on **Table 250.122** for the circuit that is likely to energize the other metal piping system(s)

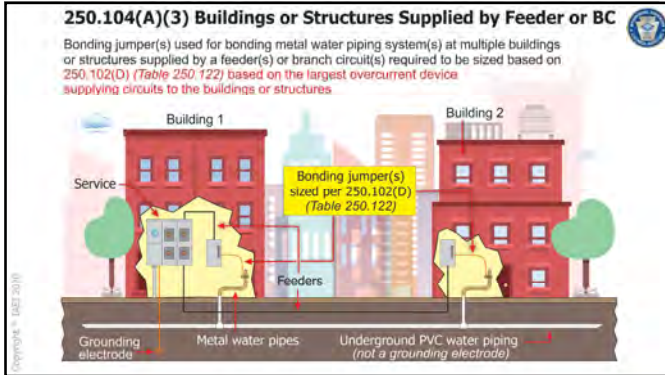
Bonding jumper(s) used to bond metal water piping together required to be sized based on Table 250.102(C)(1), but **not required to be larger than 3/0 copper or 250 kcmil aluminum or copper-clad aluminum**

159

### 250.104(A)(3) Buildings or Structures Supplied by Feeder(s) or Branch Circuit(s)

- Revision clarifies the **sizing requirements for bonding jumper(s)** used for bonding metal water piping systems when a building or structure is supplied by a feeder or branch circuit
- Reference changed from Table 250.102(C)(1) to **250.102(D)** (and **Table 250.122**) based on the largest overcurrent device supplying circuits the building or structure
- This bonding jumper sizing was changed in 2017 *NEC* to required sizing in accordance with Table 250.102(C)(1), based on the size of the feeder or branch-circuit conductors that supply the building or structure
- Feeders and branch circuits are protected by overcurrent protective devices and the size of these bonding jumpers should be based on 250.122

160



161

### 250.109 Metal Enclosures

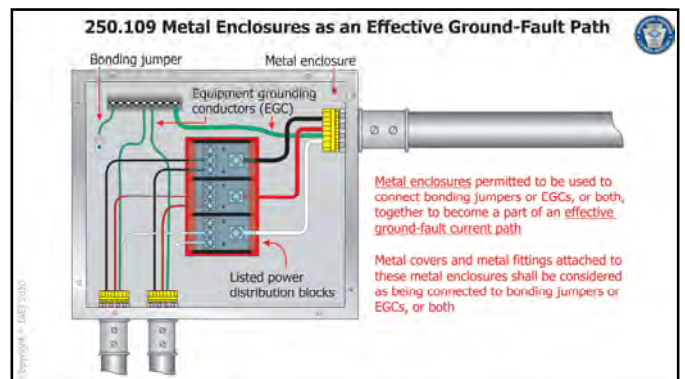
- New section added indicating **metal enclosures** can be used to connect bonding jumpers or equipment grounding conductors, or both, together to become a part of an **effective ground-fault current path**
- Metal covers and metal fittings attached to these metal enclosures are also considered to be connected to the enclosed bonding jumpers or equipment grounding conductors, or both
- If circuit conductors are spliced within a box or terminated on equipment within or supported by a box, all EGCs associated with any of those circuit conductors are **required to be connected within the box or to the box** [250.148]
- Exposed, normally non-current-carrying metal parts of fixed equipment supplied by or enclosing conductors or components that are likely to become energized are **required to be connected to an EGC** [250.110]

162

### 250.109 Metal Enclosures (cont.)

- New section added indicating **metal enclosures** can be used to connect bonding jumpers or equipment grounding conductors, or both, together to become a part of an **effective ground-fault current path** (cont.)
- These and other Code requirements call for a connection of EGCs to metal box or metal enclosure, yet there was **no Code allowances** for these metal enclosures to serve as any part of an effective ground-fault current path
- Needed change to clarify that metal boxes, cabinets and other metal enclosures are **permitted to be used for grounding and bonding** of metal raceways, metal cables, and other metal equipment that is connected to the metal box, cabinet or enclosure

163



164

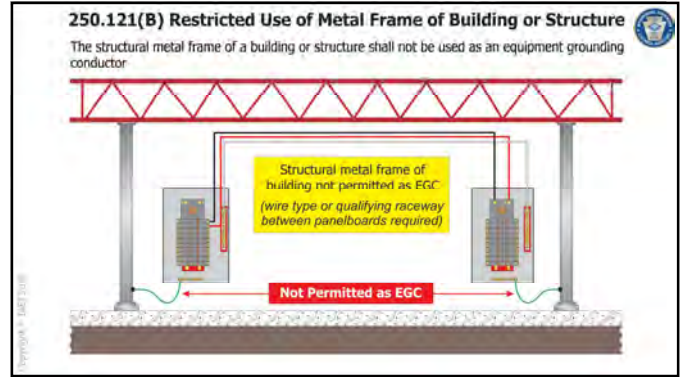


### 250.121(B) Restricted Use of Metal Frame of Building or Structure as EGC

- New sub-section added to prohibit the **structural metal frame of a building or structure** from being used as an **equipment grounding conductor (EGC)**
- These prohibitive EGC rules were previously found at 250.134(A) and only applied to electrical equipment secured to and in electrical contact with a metal rack or structure provided for the electrical equipment's support
- New rules apply to **all types** of equipment (*not just electrical equipment supported by a metal rack or structure*) and structural metal frames of a building or structure
- The structural metal frame of a building or structure need not serve as an EGC due to the uncertain path that ground-fault current must take in an effort to clear a fault

Copyright © IAEI 2020

165



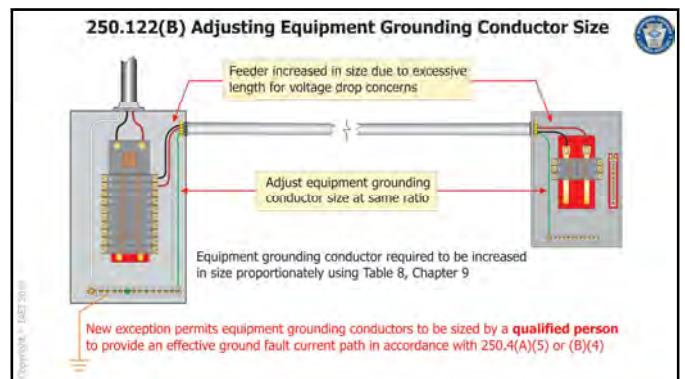
166

### 250.122(B) Adjustment of EGC Sizing

- Revisions clarify that **adjustment and/or correction factors** do not require an increase in the size of the equipment grounding conductor (EGC)
- If ungrounded conductors are increased in size for any reason **other than** as required in **310.15(B)** (*temperature adjustment factors*) or **310.15(C)** (*number of current-carrying conductors adjustment factors*), wire-type EGCs, if installed, are required to be increased in size proportionately (*same ratio*) to the increase in circular mil area of the ungrounded conductors
- **New exception** added to allow the EGC to be sized by a **qualified person**, provided an effective ground fault current path can be established
- New exception will allow equipment grounding conductors to be sized by a **"qualified person"** to provide an effective ground fault current path rather than the **"ratio" method**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

167



168

### 250.148 Continuity of EGCs and Attachment *in* Boxes

- Revision clarifies that all wire-type equipment grounding conductors (EGC) associated with any spliced circuit conductors must be connected **within** the box or to the box.
- Revision improve readability and clarify when EGCs within a box are intended to be connected together and bonded to a metal box or device.
- Title was changed from "Continuity and Attachment of Equipment Grounding Conductors to Boxes" to "**Continuity of Equipment Grounding Conductors and Attachment in Boxes**".
- Emphasis was placed on the fact that only the EGCs associated with the spliced conductors are to be connected within the box or to the box.
- Connecting all EGCs together, especially if of considerably different sizes, is impractical and unnecessary.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

169

### 250.148 Continuity of EGCs and Attachment *in* Boxes

If circuit conductors are spliced within a box or terminated on equipment within or supported by a box, all **wire-type** equipment grounding conductor(s) associated with any of those circuit conductors shall be connected within the box or to the box **with devices suitable for the use** in accordance with 250.8 and 250.148(A) through (D).

See exception for isolated ground receptacles at 250.146(D)

EGC not associated with any of those circuit conductors

EGC from branch circuit (all conductors not shown)

Bonding jumper for connection to metal box

Bonding jumper to receptacle

Metal box

A connection used for no other purpose shall be made between the metal box and the equipment grounding conductor(s) in accordance with 250.8

Copyright © JAEI 2020

170

### 250.184(C), Exception – Multigrounded Neutral Systems

- New exception** added to relieve bonding the neutral conductor to a grounding electrode in an **uninterrupted conductor exceeding 400 m (1300 ft)** if the only purpose for removing the cable jacket is for bonding the neutral conductor to a grounding electrode in a multigrounded neutral system.
- 250.184(C)(3) requires at least one grounding electrode to be installed and connected to the multigrounded neutral conductor every 400 m (1300 ft).
- National Electrical Safety Code (NESC) allows long cable runs such as those for wind farms and solar farms to still be considered multi-point grounded but not held to distances like the 400 m (1300 ft) maximum length between bonding of the neutral conductor to a grounding electrode.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

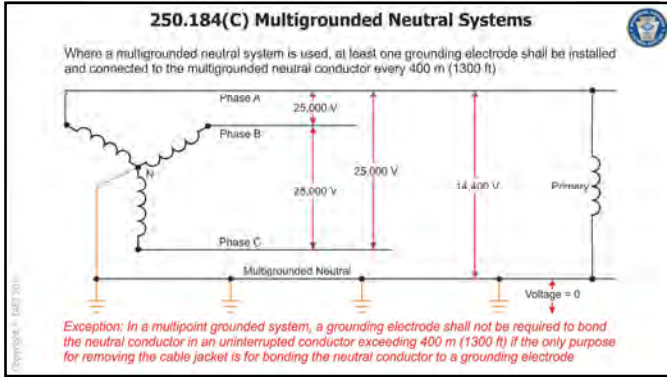
171

### 250.184(C), Exception – Multigrounded Neutral Systems (cont.)

- New exception** added to relieve bonding the neutral conductor to a grounding electrode in an **uninterrupted conductor exceeding 400 m (1300 ft)** if the only purpose for removing the cable jacket is for bonding the neutral conductor to a grounding electrode in a multigrounded neutral system (cont.).
- Removing the cable jacket only to create a point for connecting the multigrounded neutral conductor to a grounding electrode creates a **less desirable condition** than allowing further space between these connection points.
- Removing the outer sheathing of the multigrounded neutral conductor cable creates a **"weak link"** in the cable that could lead to premature cable failure.
- New exception in the *NEC* will align the NESC and *NEC* to avoid questions as to which standard has authority and brings consistency on this issue.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

172

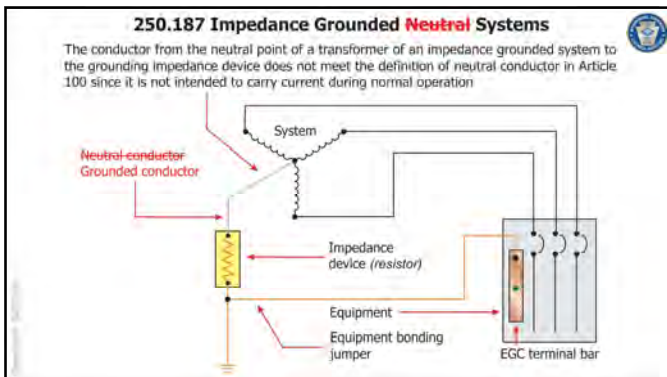


173

### 250.187 Impedance Grounded Neutral Systems

- Revisions clarify that the conductor from the neutral point of a transformer to the grounding impedance device **does not meet the definition of neutral conductor** in Article 100 since it is not intended to carry current during normal operation
- The conductor from the neutral point of a transformer in this system to the grounding impedance device is now identified as a **grounded conductor**
- Title of **250.187(B)** was changed from "Identified and Insulated" to simply **"Insulated"** as a grounded conductor is already required to be identified or marked as a grounded conductor at **200.6**

174



175

## Chapter Three Wiring Methods and Materials

176



### 300.4(G) Protection Against Physical Damage - Insulated Fittings

- Previous Code text required conductors to be protected by an **identified fitting providing a smoothly rounded insulating surface** where insulated circuit conductors of **4 AWG or larger** enter a raceway in a cabinet, pull box, junction box, or auxiliary gutter.
- Title of 300.4(G) was revised to remove the word "**Insulated**" to cover **alternative metal fittings** (such as a metal grounding bushing/locknut)
- Revised into a **list format** and text added to cover **listed metal fittings** that have **smoothly rounded edges** that will not damage the 4 AWG and larger conductors
- Previous exception for **threaded hubs or bosses** was rewritten into positive Code text

Copyright © IAEI 2020

177

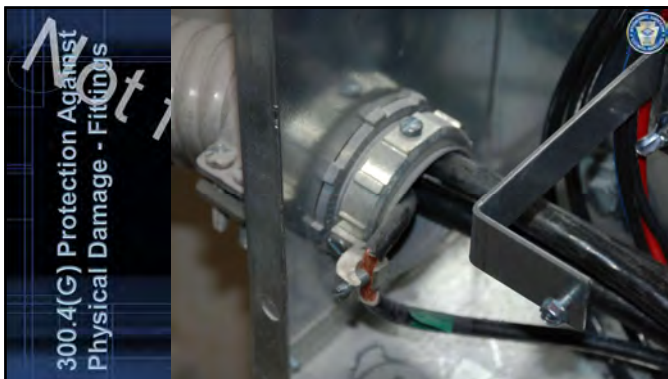
### 300.4(G) Protection Against Physical Damage - Insulated Fittings

Where raceways contain 4 AWG or larger insulated circuit conductors, and conductors enter a cabinet, a box, an enclosure, or a raceway, conductors shall be protected by any of the following:

 (1) Identified fitting providing a smoothly rounded insulating surface	 (2) A listed metal fitting that has smoothly rounded edges
 (3) Separation from the fitting or raceway by using an identified insulating material that is securely fastened in place	 (4) Threaded hubs or bosses (integral part of cabinet, box, enclosure, or raceway) with smoothly rounded or flared entry

Copyright © IAEI 2020

178



179

### 300.7(A) Raceways Exposed to Different Temperatures - Sealing

- Where raceways or sleeves are known to be subjected to different temperatures, and where condensation is known to be a problem, required to be **sealed with a sealant identified for use with cable insulation, conductor insulation** (rather than filled with an approved material)
- Previously required the raceway or sleeve to be filled with an **"approved material"**
- Revision brings consistency and **similar language** to 300.7(A) as other raceway sealing requirements such as **225.27** for sealing an outdoor raceway entering a building

Copyright © IAEI 2020

180

**300.7(A) Raceways Exposed to Different Temperatures - Sealing**

Where a raceway or sleeve are known to be subjected to different temperatures, and where condensation is known to be a problem, the raceway or sleeve is now required to be sealed with a sealant "identified for use with cable insulation, conductor insulation, a bare conductor, a shield, or other components"

Conduit passes from interior (38°F ambient temperature) to exterior (103°F ambient temperature)

Indoors: Walk-in Refrigerator, Fan coil units, 38°F

Outdoors: Refrigeration equipment installed outdoors, 103°F

Sealant identified for use with cable insulation, conductor insulation

181

**300.15(F) Boxes, Conduit Bodies, or Fittings - Where Required: Fitting**

- Revisions occurred to make it clear that listed transition fittings and listed interconnector devices are permitted to be installed in concealed locations behind drywall and similar locations
- At each conductor splice point, outlet point, switch point, junction point, etc., a fitting identified for the use is permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body where conductors are not spliced or terminated within the fitting and the fitting is accessible after installation, unless the fitting is listed for concealed installation
- Transition fitting (Type AC cable to EMT, etc.) not required to be accessible after installation as they are designed to be installed concealed
- No different than a coupling used to join consecutive pieces of the same raceway which are not required to be accessible

182

**300.15(F) Boxes, Conduit Bodies, or Fittings - Where Required: Fittings**

At each conductor splice point, outlet point, junction point, etc., a fitting identified for the use is permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body where conductors are not spliced or terminated within the fitting and the fitting is accessible after installation.

Transition fitting: Flexible metal conduit to EMT

Type NM cable interconnector

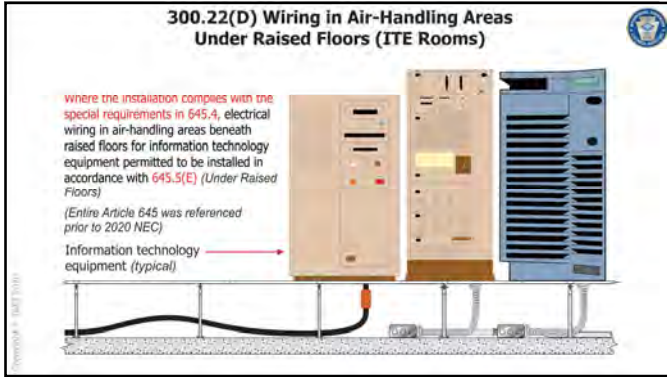
unless the fitting is listed for concealed installation

183

**300.22(D) Wiring in Air-Handling Areas Under Raised Floors (ITE Rooms)**

- Revision occurred to reference 645.5(E) (Supply Circuits and Interconnecting Cables - Under Raised Floors) rather than the entire Article 645 for electrical wiring in air-handling areas beneath raised floors for information technology equipment
- Installation must first meet the requirements of 645.4 (Special Requirements for Information Technology Equipment Rooms) so that 645.5(E) can permit the different requirements that normally would be required in 300.22(C) for wiring under raised floors

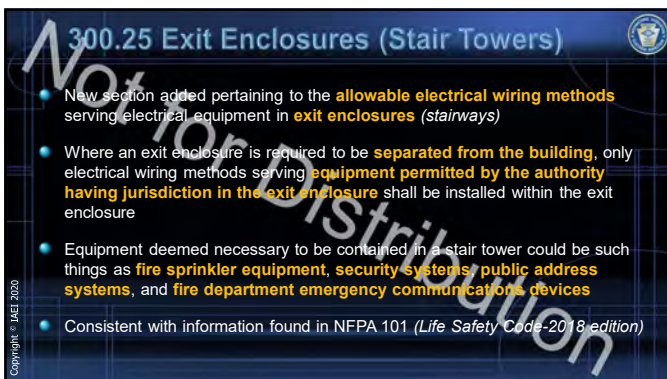
184



185



186



187



188



### 300.45 Warning Danger Signs

- **Editorial revisions** for signs required to be posted at points of access to conductors for raceway and cable systems of over 1000 volts replacing the word "Warning" with the word "**Danger**"
- Sign or label required to convey the following wording: **DANGER—HIGH VOLTAGE—KEEP OUT !**
- Previous title and Code requirement were inconsistent
- This sign is actually ANSI Z535 danger signs rather than warning signs
- Reference to **110.21(B)** (*Equipment Markings- Field-Applied Hazard Markings*) was also added to 300.45 triggering other important **marking requirements** for these signs

Copyright © JAEI 2020

189

### 300.45 Warning Danger Signs

For systems of over 1000 volts, nominal, **danger** signs are required to be conspicuously posted at points of access to conductors in all raceway systems and cable systems.

Sign(s) are required to **comply with 110.21(B)**, be readily visible, and state the following:

DANGER

HIGH VOLTAGE  
KEEP OUT



DANGER—HIGH VOLTAGE—KEEP OUT

Copyright © JAEI 2020

190



191

### Article 310 Reorganized

- Article 310 was **extensively reorganized** to increase the usability of the article
- The ampacity tables in Article 310 will simply be titled as **Table 310.16** through Table 310.21
- The scope of Article 310 is limited to **not more than 2000 volts**
- Requirements and ampacity tables for conductors **over 2000 volts** have been incorporated into **new Article 311**
- Copper-clad aluminum conductors must meet the material requirements of Section 310.3(B)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

192



193

**Article 310 Conductors for General Wiring  
Comparison Chart (2017 NEC to 2020 NEC)**

2020 NEC	Topic	2017 NEC
Part I	General	Part I
310.1	Scope	310.1
<del>310.2</del>	<b>Definitions</b>	310.2
310.3	Conductors	310.106
310.3(A)	Minimum Size of Conductors	310.106(A)
310.3(B)	Conductor Material	310.106(B)
310.3(C)	Stranded Conductors	310.106(C)
310.3(D)	Insulated	310.106(D)
Part II	Conductor Specifications	Part III
310.4	Conductor Constructions and Applications	310.104
Table 310.4(A)	Conductor Applications and Insulations Rated 600 Volts	Table 310.104(A)
Table 310.4(B)	Thickness of Insulation for Nonshielded Types RHH and RHW Solid Dielectric Insulated Conductors Rated 2000 Volts	Table 310.104(B)
310.6	Conductor Identification	310.110
310.6(A)	Grounded Conductors	310.110(A)
310.6(B)	Equipment Grounding Conductors	310.110(B)
310.6(C)	Ungrounded Conductors	310.110(C)

194

**Article 310 Conductors for General Wiring  
Comparison Chart (2017 NEC to 2020 NEC)**

2020 NEC	Topic	2017 NEC
310.8	Marking	310.120
310.8(A)	Required Information	310.120(A)
310.8(B)	Method of Marking	310.120(B)
310.8(B)(1)	Surface Marking	310.120(B)(1)
310.8(B)(2)	Marker Tape	310.120(B)(2)
310.8(B)(3)	Tag Marking	310.120(B)(3)
310.8(B)(4)	Optional Marking of Wire Size	310.120(B)(4)
310.8(C)	Suffixes to Designate Number of Conductors	310.120(C)
310.8(D)	Optional Markings	310.120(D)
Part III	Installation	Part II
310.10	Uses Permitted	310.10
310.10(A)	Dry Locations	310.10(A)
310.10(B)	Dry and Damp Locations	310.10(B)
310.10(C)	Wet Locations	310.10(C)
310.10(D)	Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight	310.10(D)
<del>310.10(E)</del>	<b>Shielding</b>	310.10(E)
310.10(E)	Direct-Burial Conductors	310.10(F)

195

**Article 310 Conductors for General Wiring  
Comparison Chart (2017 NEC to 2020 NEC)**

2020 NEC	Topic	2017 NEC
310.10(F)	Corrosive Conditions	310.10(G)
310.10(G)	Conductors in Parallel	310.10(H)
310.10(G)(1)	General	310.10(H)(1)
310.10(G)(2)	Conductor and Installation Characteristics	310.10(H)(2)
310.10(G)(3)	Separate Cables or Raceways	310.10(H)(3)
310.10(G)(4)	Ampacity Adjustment	310.10(H)(4)
310.10(G)(5)	Equipment Grounding Conductors	310.10(H)(5)
310.10(G)(6)	Bonding Jumpers	310.10(H)(6)
310.12	Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders	310.15(B)(7)
310.12(A)	Services	310.15(B)(7)(1)
310.12(B)	Feeders	310.15(B)(7)(2)
310.12(C)	Feeder Ampacities	310.15(B)(7)(3)
310.12(D)	Grounded Conductors	310.15(B)(7)(4)
Table 310.12	Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders	Table 310.15(B)(7) (2017 NEC)
310.14	Ampacities for Conductors Rated 0-2000 Volts	310.15
310.14(A)	General	310.15(A)

196

**Article 310 Conductors for General Wiring  
Comparison Chart (2017 NEC to 2020 NEC)**

2020 NEC	Topic	2017 NEC
310.14(A)(1)	Tables or Engineering Supervision	310.15(A)(1)
310.14(A)(2)	Selection of Ampacity	310.15(A)(2)
310.14(A)(3)	Temperature Limitation of Conductors	310.15(A)(3)
310.14(B)	Engineering Supervision	NEW
310.15	Ampacity Tables	310.15(B)
310.15(A)	General	310.15(B)(1)
310.15(B)	Ambient Temperature Correction Factors	310.15(B)(2)
310.15(B)(1)	General	310.15(B)(2)
310.15(B)(2)	Rooftop	310.15(B)(3)(c)
Table 310.15(B)(1)	Ambient Temperature Correction Factors Based on 30°C (86°F)	Table 310.15(B)(2)(a)
Table 310.15(B)(2)	Ambient Temperature Correction Factors Based on 40°C (104°F)	Table 310.15(B)(2)(b)
310.15(C)	Adjustment Factors	310.15(B)(3)
310.15(C)(1)	More than Three Current-Carrying Conductors	310.15(B)(3)(a)
Table 310.15(C)(1)	Adjustment Factors for More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors	Table 310.15(B)(3)(a)

197

**Article 310 Conductors for General Wiring  
Comparison Chart (2017 NEC to 2020 NEC)**

2020 NEC	Topic	2017 NEC
310.15(C)(2)	Raceway Spacing	310.15(B)(3)(b)
310.15(D)	Bare or Covered Conductors	310.15(B)(4)
310.15(E)	Neutral Conductor	310.15(B)(5)
310.15(F)	Grounding or Bonding Conductor	310.15(B)(6)
310.16	Ampacities of Insulated Conductors in Raceway, Cable, or Earth (Directly Buried) (86°F)	NEW
310.17	Ampacities of Single-Insulated Conductors in Free Air (86°F)	NEW
310.18	Ampacities of Insulated Conductors in Raceway or Cable (104°F)	NEW
310.19	Ampacities of Single-Insulated Conductors in Free Air (104°F)	NEW
310.20	Ampacities of Conductors Supported on a Messenger (104°F)	NEW
310.21	Ampacities of Bare or Covered Conductors in Free Air (104°F)	NEW
Table 310.16	Ampacities of Insulated Conductors Not More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway, Cable, or Earth (Directly Buried) (86°F)	Table 310.15(B)(16)
Table 310.17	Ampacities of Single-Insulated Conductors in Free Air (86°F)	Table 310.15(B)(17)
Table 310.18	Ampacities of Insulated Conductors Not More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway or Cable (104°F)	Table 310.15(B)(18)

198

**Article 310 Conductors for General Wiring  
Comparison Chart (2017 NEC to 2020 NEC)**

2020 NEC	Topic	2017 NEC
Table 310.19	Ampacities of Single-Insulated Conductors in Free Air (104°F)	Table 310.15(B)(19)
Table 310.20	Ampacities of Conductors Supported on a Messenger (104°F)	Table 310.15(B)(20)
Table 310.21	Ampacities of Bare or Covered Conductors in Free Air (104°F)	Table 310.15(B)(21)
310.60	Conductors Rated 2001 to 35,000 Volts	Moved to new Article 311

199

**Article 310 Ampacity Tables**

- The ampacity tables will simply be titled as Table 310.16 through Table 310.21 (Example: **Table 310.15(B)(16)** will now be simply **Table 310.16**)
- New sections were added at 310.16 through 310.21 that now refer to the ampacity tables and contain conditions of use previously found in the table headings
- The ampacity table headings were shortened and a note referring to the section language was added to each table
- All of the notes to the tables were retained at the bottom of the ampacity tables

Copyright © JAEI 2020

200

**Table 310.16 310.15(B)(16) (in part)**

Table 310.16 310.15(B)(16) Allowable Ampacities of Insulated Conductors Based Up-to-and-Including 3000 Volts, 60°C Through 90°C (140°F Through 194°F), Not More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway, Cable, or Earth (Directly Buried), Based on Ambient Temperature of 30°C (86°F)

Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.10(A))

Size AWG (or kcmil)	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.10(A))						Size AWG (or kcmil)
	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	90°C (194°F)	75°C (167°F)	60°C (140°F)	
	COPPER			ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM			
16*	—	—	18	—	—	—	—
14*	15	20	25	—	—	—	—
12*	20	25	30	15	20	25	12*
10*	30	35	40	25	30	35	10*
8	40	50	55	35	40	45	8
6	55	65	75	40	50	55	6
4	70	85	95	55	65	75	4
3	85	100	115	65	75	85	3
2	95	115	130	75	90	100	2
1	110	130	145	85	100	115	1
1/0	125	150	170	100	120	135	1/0
2/0	145	175	195	115	135	150	2/0
3/0	165	200	225	130	155	175	3/0
4/0	195	230	260	150	180	205	4/0

1. Section 310.16 shall be interpreted for conditions of use.  
 2. Section 310.15(B)(16) shall be interpreted for the ampacity correction factors where the ambient temperature is other than 30°C (86°F).  
 3. Section 310.15(B)(16) shall be interpreted for more than three current-carrying conductors.  
 \*Refer to Section 240.4(D) for conductor overcurrent protection limitations (except as modified elsewhere in the code).

201

### Article 310 Allowable Ampacity for Conductors

- Revision occurred throughout Article 310 removing the term **"allowable"** from **allowable ampacities for conductors**
- "Allowable" removed from Article 310 **thirteen** times throughout the article
- "Ampacity"** is defined in Article 100 as "the maximum current, in amperes, that a conductor can carry continuously under the conditions of use without exceeding its temperature rating"
- Proper term used throughout Article 310 should be **"ampacity"** and not **"allowable ampacity"** as it is the intent for this section to determine the ampacity of the conductor based upon its **condition of use**
- The use of the word "allowable" did not add any clarity and was deleted in several locations

202

### Article 310 Allowable Ampacity for Conductors

Revision occurred throughout Article 310 by removing the term "allowable" from **allowable ampacities for conductors**



**Ampacity:** The maximum current, in amperes, that a conductor can carry continuously under the conditions of use without exceeding its temperature rating.

203

### 310.10 and Ampacity Tables – Conductor Types Added

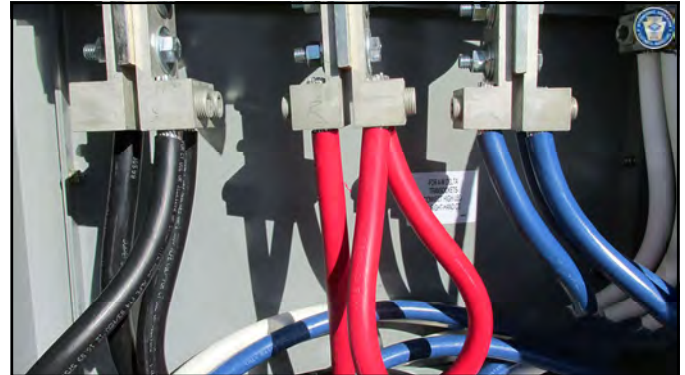
- Type **XHHN**, **XHWN**, and **XHWN-2** were added to the **"Uses Permitted"** locations and the ampacity tables based on appropriate temperature ratings
- These three types of conductor insulations were recognized by the 2017 **NEC** at Table 310.104(A) *(now Table 310.4(A))*
- Inadvertently left out of the Article 310 ampacity tables for 2017 **NEC**
- Type XHHN, XHWN, and XHWN-2 insulated conductors were added to the insulated conductors and cables that can be used in **dry and damp locations** at 310.10(B)
- Types XHWN and XHWN-2 conductors were added to the list of acceptable types of conductors for a **wet location**

204





205



206

### 310.12 Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders

- **New dwelling unit service ampacity table** from Informative Annex D, Example D7 added at **310.12** [formerly Table 310.15(B)(7)]
- Text added indicating Table 310.12 permitted to be used if there are **no temperature correction or adjustment factors needed**
- This dwelling unit table and/or information has been a part of the Code since the **1956 NEC** (until the 2014 NEC)
- These higher ampacity allowances permitted primarily due to the **diversity loads** associated with dwelling units
- Removed from the Code in the 2014 NEC and replaced with an ampacity reduction of not less than **83 percent** of the service or feeder rating of the ampacity values of then Table 310.15(B)(16)

207

### 310.12 Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders (cont.)

- **New dwelling unit service ampacity table** from Informative Annex D, Example D7 added at **310.12** [formerly Table 310.15(B)(7)] (cont.)
- Reintroduced to the Code for the 2017 NEC, but it was located in **Informational Annex D**, following Example D7
- For ease of use, putting this sixty-three-year-old table back in Article 310 makes sense and complements the reorganization of Article 310 for the 2020 NEC revision cycle

208

### 310.12 Permitted to be Used

**310.12 - 120/240-Volt, 3-Wire, Single-Phase Dwelling Unit Service or Feeder or a 208Y/120-Volt, Single-Phase Dwelling Unit Feeder - If no adjustment or correction factors required, Table 310.12 permitted to be applied**

Feeder or sub-panelboard that supplies the entire load of the dwelling

Feeder not required to be larger than SE conductors

AC unit

Service equipment

83% reduction of service or feeder rating applies to service or feeder conductors supplying the entire load associated with the dwelling unit

209

### Table 310.12 Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders

For one-family dwellings and the individual dwelling units of two-family and multifamily dwellings, service and feeder conductors supplied by a single-phase, 120/240-volt system shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with 310.12(A) through (D). [Single-phase feeder conductors consisting of two ungrounded conductors and the neutral conductor from a 208Y/120 volt system permitted to be sized in accordance with 310.12(A) through (C)]

Service or Feeder Rating (Amperes)	Conductor (AWG or kcmil)	
	Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum
100	4	2
110	3	1
125	2	1/0
150	1	2/0
175	1/0	3/0
200	2/0	4/0
225	3/0	250
250	4/0	300
300	250	350
350	350	500
400	400	600

Note: If no adjustment or correction factors are required, this table shall be permitted to be applied.

210

### Article 311 Medium Voltage Cable (New)

- In order to consolidate the **medium voltage requirements** previously found in **Article 310 (Conductors or General Use)** and **Article 328 (Medium Voltage Cable)**, and to improve the usability of the Code, the requirements are combined into a **new Article 311**.
- New article will cover the use, installation, construction specifications and ampacities for medium voltage conductors and cable (Type MV)
- Part of the **Article 310** reorganization included moving the Type MV cable requirements into new **Article 311** which also included moving the Type MV cable requirements out of **Article 328** and deleting that article entirely
- Prior to this new article, it was difficult to gather all necessary information pertaining to Type MV conductors and cables as they were scattered within the Article 310 ampacity tables for cables up to 2000 volts

211

### Article 311 Medium Voltage Cable

**Medium voltage cable:** A single of multiconductor solid dielectric insulated cable rated 2001 volts up to and including 35,000 volts, nominal.

Medium voltage requirements previously found in Articles 310 and Article 328 have been combined into **new Article 311** to improve the usability of the Code

212



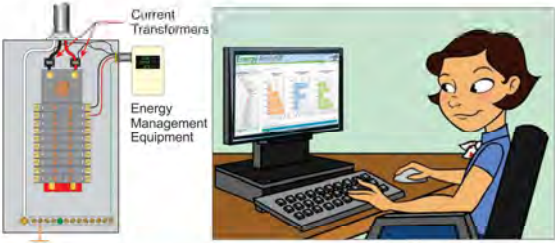
### 312.8(B) Power Monitoring or Energy Management Equipment

- The term **"Energy Management Equipment"** added to equipment permitted within the wiring space of enclosures for switches or overcurrent devices along with power monitoring equipment
- Wiring space within enclosures such as a panelboard cabinet for switches or overcurrent devices permitted to contain **"other wiring and equipment"** with limited percentage (40% and 75%) of the cross-sectional area of the space
- Listed energy management equipment's primary function is to monitor, measure and control circuits by automatic means within the wiring space of a cabinet, cutout box or a meter socket enclosure and is **similar in nature to that of power monitoring equipment**
- New list item (3) was added for conductors used exclusively for control or instrumentation circuits

Copyright © JAEI 2020

213

### 312.8(B) Power Monitoring or Energy Management Equipment



The term **"Energy Management Equipment"** added to equipment permitted within the wiring space of enclosures for switches or overcurrent devices along with power monitoring equipment

New list item (3) was added for **conductors used exclusively for control or instrumentation circuits**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

214

### 314.16(B)(5) EGC Box Fill Calculations

- Volume allowance for equipment grounding conductors (EGC) and equipment bonding jumpers was revised to add an **additional ¼ volume allowance** to the existing single volume allowance
- New ¼ volume allowance to be counted in installations with **more than four EGCs** or equipment bonding conductors
- All boxes (enclosures) must be large enough to provide for **sufficient free space** for all conductors and devices that will be enclosed within them to prevent overcrowding and possible physical damage when the devices or conductors are installed and completed
- Table 314.16(B) list the volume allowance as a function of conductor size

Copyright © JAEI 2020

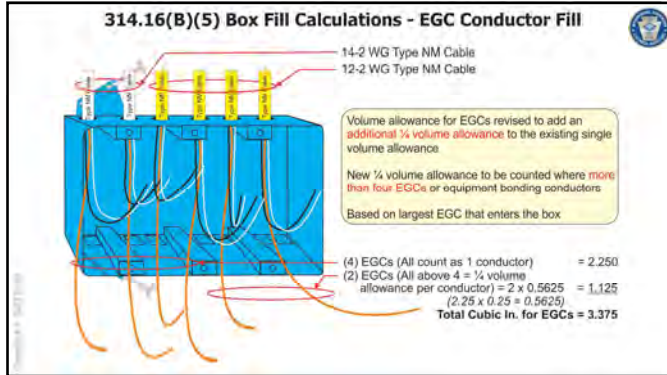
215

### 314.16(B)(5) EGC Box Fill Calculations (cont.)

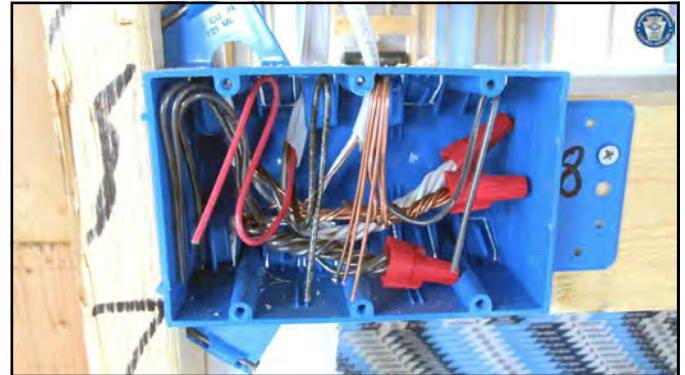
- A **single volume allowance** has been required for all equipment grounding conductors within a box since the 1971 *NEC*
- Single volume deduction based on the **largest equipment grounding conductor** or equipment bonding jumpers present in the box
- In multiple gang boxes, taking only one volume allowance based on the largest EGC is not always adequate resulting in **significant undue crowding** of conductors and not enough free space to allow heat to dissipate from the contained conductors
- Requiring all EGCs to meet **300.14 [at least 150 mm (6 in.) of free conductor for each conductor]** and applying only a single volume allowance was problematic in past editions of the *Code*

Copyright © JAEI 2020

216



217



218

### 314.27(C) Boxes at Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fan Outlets

- Revision will now generally require **all outlet boxes** mounted in a location acceptable for the installation of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan in the ceilings of habitable rooms of dwelling units to be **listed for the sole support of ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan**
- Previously, outlet boxes or outlet box systems were required to be listed for sole support of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan where a **"spare," separately switched, ungrounded conductor** was provided to a ceiling-mounted outlet box, in a location acceptable for a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan in dwellings
- An outlet box complying with the applicable requirements of 314.27 and providing access to structural framing capable of supporting of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan bracket or equivalent is permissible, as well

Copyright © JAEI 2020

219

### 314.27(C) Boxes at Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fan Outlets (cont.)

- Revision will now generally require **all outlet boxes** mounted in a location acceptable for the installation of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan in the ceilings of habitable rooms of dwelling units to be **listed for the sole support of ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan (cont.)**
- This new requirement will predicate the installation of an outlet box listed for the sole support of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan at most dwelling unit ceiling-mounted luminaire locations regardless of the existence of a "spare" separately switched ungrounded conductor or not
- Many ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans are now **remote-controlled** requiring only a two-wire installation

Copyright © JAEI 2020

220

### 314.27(C) Boxes at Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fan Outlets

All outlet boxes mounted in ceilings of habitable rooms of dwelling units required to be listed for the sole support of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan (or outlet box providing access to structural framing capable of supporting of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan bracket or equivalent)

300 mm (12 in.)

Applicable only in locations acceptable for the installation of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan

221

### 314.27(C) Boxes at Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fan Outlets

222

### 320.80(A) Type AC Cable Ampacity – Thermal Insulation

- Type AC cable is now required to comply with adjustment factors of **Table 310.15(C)(1)** (previously T. 310.15(B)(3)(a) (More Than Three-Current-Carrying Conductors)) when installed without maintaining spacing
- Similar to 334.80 for Type NM cable
- Where **more than two** Type AC, Type MC, Type NM, or Type SE cables containing **two or more current-carrying conductors** in each cable are installed in contact with thermal insulations, caulk, or sealing foam **without maintaining spacing** between cables, the ampacity of each conductor are required to be adjusted in accordance with Table 310.15(C)(1)
- Same cable installation restrictions implemented for metal-clad cable (**Type MC cable**) at **330.80(C)** and for service-entrance cable (**Type SE cable**) at **338.10(B)(4)(a)(2)**

223

### 320.80(A) Type AC Cable Ampacity-Thermal Insulation

Same change occurred at 330.80(C) for Type MC cable and at 338.10(B)(4)(a)(2) for Type SE cable

Where **more than two** Type AC cables containing **two or more current-carrying conductors** in each cable are installed in contact with thermal insulation, caulk, or sealing foam **without maintaining spacing** between cables, the ampacity of each conductor shall be adjusted in accordance with Table 310.15(C)(1)

Note: Table 310.15(C)(1) is previous Table 310.15(B)(3)(a) (Adjustment Factors for More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors)

224



### 330.130 Type MC-HL Cable in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

- New requirements added for Type MC cable with a designation of "MC-HL" installed in a hazardous (classified) location
- Type MC-HL cable shall be listed and shall have a gas/vapor tight continuous corrugated metallic sheath, an overall jacket of suitable polymeric material, and a separate equipment grounding conductor
- Prior to the 2020 *NEC*, there were no specific requirements for Type MC-HL cable in Article 330
- Type MC-HL cable with an interlocked metallic sheath provides a more flexible cable while still providing an overall jacket of suitable polymeric material
- Same change implemented for power and control tray cable (Type TC cable) with a designation of "TC-ER-HL" at **336.130**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

225

### 330.130 Type MC-HL in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

Type MC-HL cable required to be listed and have: (1) a gas/vapor tight continuous corrugated metallic sheath, (2) an overall jacket of suitable polymeric material, and (3) a separate EGC

Copyright © JAEI 2020

226

### 334.2 Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable – Type NMS Deleted

- All references to Type NMS cable has been **deleted** from Article 334 as this cable construction is no longer manufactured
- Type NMS was defined as "insulated power or control conductors with signaling, data, and communications conductors within an overall nonmetallic jacket"
- This cable was intended to be used with "smart house" circuits back in the late 1980's and 90's
- Type NMS cable was manufactured specifically to accommodate this type of new technology by combining power conductors with signal conductors all in one cable
- The 1990's short-lived "smart home" concept should not be confused with today's successful home automation, the Internet of Things (IoT), and the connected home concepts

Copyright © JAEI 2020

227

### 334.2 Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable - Type NMS Deleted

All references to Type NMS cable has been **deleted** from Article 334 as this cable construction is no longer manufactured

Copyright © JAEI 2020

228

### 334.30 Securing and Supporting of Type NM Cable

- Revision will clarify how Type NM cable should be measured from the enclosure to the securing method with the **cable length** between the cable entry and the closest cable support not exceeding **450 mm (18 in.)**
- Previously, support method (staple) could be installed within 300 mm (12 in.) of a box and have a 4 ft, 6 ft, or even a 30 ft, loop of nonmetallic-sheathed cable between the staple and the box
- The "intent" was to limit the amount of cable between the securing method (staple) and the box to no more than 300 mm (12 in.)
- Other places in the Code, such as **314.17(C), Exception** indicate that this measurement should be "**measured along the sheath**" of the cable in question
- The extra length [**450 mm (18 in.)**] was provided in consideration of conductor length for repair (*if needed*)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

229

### 334.30 Securing and Supporting of Type NM Cable

Staple

Cable length not to exceed 450 mm (18 in.)

Not to exceed 300 mm (12 in.)

Use Conduit where needed to cable where secured with staples (14-1000-23)

Nonmetallic-sheathed cable required to be supported and secured at intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft) and within 300 mm (12 in.) of every cable entry into enclosures such as outlet boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, or fittings

300 mm (12 in.) measurement is still measured from the box to the securing method (staples; cable ties, straps, hangers, etc.), but **cable length between the cable entry and the closest cable support must not exceed 450 mm (18 in.)**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

230

### Article 337 Type P Cable (New)

- A new article was added covering the use, installation, and construction specifications for **Type P cable**
- Based on cable performance and requirements for some land-based operations (drilling rigs), Type P cable was originally **proposed** to be added to the 2020 *NEC* for **hazardous area applications only**
- Final 2020 *NEC* language **does not restrict** the use of Type P cable to hazardous (classified) locations
- Type P cable is a flexible and rugged and highly suitable for petrochemical applications resistant to various chemicals, abrasives, and petroleum-based additives
- Has the ability to resist damage from vibration, shaking, and movement that occurs in many processes

Copyright © IAEI 2020

231

### Article 337 - Type P Cable

A new article was added covering the use, installation, and construction specifications for **Type P cable**

**Type P Cable:** A factory assembly of one or more insulated flexible tinned copper conductors, with associated equipment grounding conductor(s), with or without a braided metallic armor and with an overall nonmetallic jacket.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

232

### 338.2 Definitions - Service-Entrance Cables

- New definition for **"Service-Entrance Conductor Assembly"** added to differentiate between service-entrance cables and assemblies of single-insulated USE conductors
- Existing definition for **"Service-Entrance Cable"** was revised to reflect added definition for "Service-Entrance Conductor Assembly"
- Type SE cables (SER and SEU) and Type USE cables all have an overall polymeric covering of some type
- Assemblies of single-conductor insulated Type USE conductors do not have an overall covering and treated like direct-burial conductors and are not subject to any ampacity limitations beyond the normal Article 310 and other Code rules

Copyright © IAEI 2020

233

### 338.2 Definitions - Service-Entrance Cables

**Service-Entrance Cable.** A single conductor or multiconductor assembly cable provided with or without an overall covering, primarily used for services, and of the following types:

**Type SE.** Service-entrance cable having a flame-retardant, moisture-resistant covering.

**Type USE.** Service-entrance cable, identified for underground use, having a moisture-resistant covering, but not required to have a flame-retardant covering.

**Service-Entrance Conductor Assembly.** Multiple single-insulated conductors twisted together without an overall covering, other than an optional binder intended only to keep the conductors together.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

234

### 338.100 Construction of Service-Entrance Cables

- All conductors of a cabled assemblies of multiple single-conductors of a **Type USE cable** are now required to be **insulated**
- Type SE or USE cable with an **overall covering** containing two or more conductors are permitted to have one conductor uninsulated
- To coincide with the revision to the definition of "Service-Entrance Cable" and the new definition of "Service-Entrance Conductor Assembly," the phrase **"with an overall covering"** was added to **338.100(B)**
- Section divided into **two separate sub-sections** to aid the user of the Code in identifying the relevant requirements for each:
  - (A) Assemblies
  - (B) Uninsulated Conductors

Copyright © IAEI 2020

235

### 338.100 Construction of Service-Entrance Cables

All conductors of a **cabled assemblies of multiple single-conductors** of a direct buried Type USE cable are now required to be **insulated**

Type SE or USE cable **with an overall covering** containing two or more conductors permitted to have one conductor uninsulated

Copyright © IAEI 2020

236



### 342.10(E) IMC Subject to Severe Physical Damage

- New sub-section (E) clarifies that intermediate metal conduit (Type IMC) is permitted to be installed where **subject to severe physical damage**
- "Physical damage" or "severe physical damage" are **not defined** in the NEC (determined by AHJ)
- Confusion exist amongst installers and inspectors pertaining to which wiring methods are acceptable for areas subject to severe physical damage
- UL 1242 and 342.10(A) permit IMC to be used in all atmospheric conditions (including severe physical damage)
- Same change occurred for rigid metal conduit (Type RMC) at 344.10(E)
- Similar change occurred at 358.10(E) for electrical metallic tubing (EMT) where language was added to allow **steel and stainless steel EMT** to be installed where subject to **physical damage** (not severe physical damage, but physical damage)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

237

### 342.10(E) IMC Subject to Severe Physical Damage

New 342.10(E) clarifies that intermediate metal conduit (Type IMC) is permitted to be installed where subject to severe physical damage



Intermediate Metal Conduit



Severe Physical Damage (?)



Physical Damage (?)

\* Same change occurred at 344.10(E) for Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

238

### 342.14 Dissimilar Metals – Type IMC


- Revision added to make it clear that **stainless steel fittings**, and enclosures can be used with **galvanized steel IMC** but **galvanized fittings** should not be used with **stainless steel IMC**
- Dissimilar metals and alloys have different electrode potentials
- To address dissimilar metals with conduit and raceway systems, the 2017 NEC was revised to clarify the acceptable fittings that can be used with these different types of conduits or raceways, based on galvanic compatibility
- Further revision occurred for the 2020 NEC to provide additional clarity on what fittings are acceptable for use with stainless steel IMC, RMC and EMT
- Same revisions occurred at 344.14 for rigid metal conduit and at 358.14 for electrical metallic tubing (EMT)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

239

### 342.14 Dissimilar Metals: Type IMC

Where practicable, dissimilar metals in contact anywhere in the system shall be avoided to eliminate the possibility of galvanic action



Stainless steel and aluminum fittings and enclosures shall be permitted to be used with galvanized steel IMC where not subject to severe corrosive influences.

Stainless steel IMC shall only be used with the following:

- (1) Stainless steel fittings
- (2) Stainless steel outlet boxes and enclosures
- (3) Steel (galvanized, painted, powder or PVC coated, and so forth) boxes and enclosures when not subject to severe corrosive influences
- (4) Stainless steel, nonmetallic, or approved accessories

Note: Same requirements added at 344.14 for RMC and 358.14 for EMT

Copyright © IAEI 2020

240

### 344.10(A) Galvanized Steel, Stainless Steel, and Red Brass RMC

- Revision to clarify that **red brass RMC** is not restricted to just underground or swimming pool applications
- Previous **344.10(A)(2)** stating that red brass RMC is permitted to be installed for direct burial and swimming pool applications has been **deleted** (*not the only application for red brass RMC*)
- Red brass RMC is typically made up of approximately 85% copper, 5% tin, 5% lead, and 5% zinc
- Galvanized steel, stainless steel, and red brass RMC permitted under all atmospheric conditions and occupancies
- Red brass is one of four materials designated for rigid metal conduit at **344.100** and it meets all the requirements of RMC
- Red brass is **highly resistant to corrosion**, making it a viable wiring method for many applications, desired for visual appealing purposes in exposed applications

Copyright © IAEI 2020

241

### 344.10(A) Galvanized Steel, Stainless Steel, and Red Brass RMC

Galvanized steel, stainless steel, and **red brass RMC** permitted under all atmospheric conditions and occupancies

Red brass RMC is not restricted to just underground or swimming pool applications

The diagram illustrates a cross-section of a raceway containing red brass RMC. A callout shows a close-up of the red brass RMC, highlighting its smooth, corrosion-resistant surface. The raceway is shown installed in a wall, with a weatherproof box and a conduit connection.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

242

### 350.10(4) Uses Permitted for Type LFMC

- Conductors or cables with **higher temperature ratings** permitted to be used in LFMC as long as the conductors or cables are **not operated at a higher temperature than the LFMC temperature rating**
- Same provisions allowed for PVC and ENT related to allowing conductors or cables with a rated temperature higher than the listed temperature rating of the raceway to be installed in these type raceways
- Numerous conductors and multiconductor cables with higher temperature ratings than the LFMC listed temperature rating
- Same change occurred for liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit (**LFNC**) at **356.10(8)**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

243

### 350.10(4) Uses Permitted for LFMC

Conductors or cables with higher temperature ratings are permitted to be used in LFMC as long as the conductors or cables are not operated at a higher temperature than the LFMC temperature rating

The diagram shows a cross-section of a raceway containing Type THHW conductors. A callout shows a close-up of the conductors, highlighting their higher temperature rating. The raceway is shown installed in a wall, with a weatherproof box and a conduit connection.

Temperature Rating: 60°C (140°F) (Wet Location)

Type THHW Conductors 90°C (194°F)

Courtesy of AFC Cable Systems

Copyright © IAEI 2020

244

### 370.20 Conductor Size and Termination (Cablebus)

- Two new **informational notes** were added to 370.20 related to conductor sizing and terminations for cablebus
- Two new informational notes point to **110.14(C)** for conductors operating **up to 2000 volts** and **110.40** for medium voltage conductors operating **above 2000 volts to 35,000 volts**
- New I-Notes designed to provide direction regarding termination information for the full range of voltages, which can be encountered with cablebus
- Termination temperatures are an important safety concern for electrical installations
- Location of these I-Notes follow 370.20(B), which deals directly with terminations
- Users of Article 370 may not be aware that 110.14(C) and 110.40 apply when the conductors terminate on equipment with a **termination temperature limitation**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

245

### 370.20 I-NOTES ADDED TO CABLEBUS CONDUCTOR SIZING AND TERMINATIONS




Photo Courtesy of Power Bus Way

246

### 374.6 Listing Requirements - (Cellular Metal Floor Raceways)


- New provision added to require **cellular metal floor raceways** shall be **listed**
- Cellular metal floor raceways consist of the hollow spaces in cellular metal floors and associated fittings that serve as enclosures for wires and cables
- This requirement follows a pattern in recent *Code* cycles requiring electrical equipment to be listed
- Many AHJs rely heavily on labeling of equipment under the program of a qualified electrical products testing laboratory
- One of the primary roles of the inspector is to ensure that listed products are installed in accordance with the manner the product has been tested or evaluated and to ensure proper installation and use

Copyright © IAEI 2020

247

### 374.6 Listing Requirements for Cellular Metal Floor Raceways

A new 374.6 was added to Article 374 requiring all **cellular metal floor raceways** to be **listed**



Cellular Metal Floor Raceway

Copyright © IAEI 2020

248



### 380.12(7) Uses Not Permitted – Multioutlet Assemblies

- New text added **prohibiting a multioutlet assembly** from being **cord and plug connected**
- Multioutlet assemblies intended for **permanent connection only** with a branch circuits (*prohibited from employing a cord and plug connection*)
- A multioutlet assembly is "a type of surface, flush, or freestanding raceway designed to hold conductors and receptacles, assembled in the field or at the factory" (*see Article 100*)
- "Multioutlet assemblies" provided with a cord-and-plug connection are readily available, but these devices are not listed as a multioutlet assembly
- This new prohibition is an attempt to make users of the Code aware of the product standard "**permanently installed**" **wiring method** and draw attention to a multioutlet assemblies **listing requirements**


Copyright © JAEI 2020

249

### 380.12(7) Multioutlet Assembly - Uses Not Permitted

A new List Item (7) was added to 380.12 prohibiting a multioutlet assembly from being utilized with a cord-and-plug connection

Intended for permanent connection only (per its listing)



The illustration shows a white multioutlet assembly mounted on a wall above a light blue counter. A printer is plugged into one of the outlets. The assembly is intended for permanent connection only.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

250

### 380.12(7) Multioutlet Assembly – Uses Not Permitted



The photograph shows a kitchen sink area with a white countertop and a stainless steel sink. A white multioutlet assembly is mounted on the wall above the counter. A green plant is on the counter next to the sink.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

251

### 382.104(C) Flat Conductor EGC for Nonmetallic Extensions

- Revision replaces "grounding conductor" with appropriate term "**equipment grounding conductor**" for concealable nonmetallic extensions
- For a nonmetallic extension, the "equipment grounding conductor" must consist of two overall sectioned conductors that enclose the grounded conductor and ungrounded conductor(s)
- The "EGC" layers have to be identified by one of four methods
- The road to proper interpretation and application of Code rules is using proper terminology
- "Grounding conductor" and its related definition was removed from the 2008 edition of the NEC

Copyright © JAEI 2020

252

### 382.104(C) Flat Conductor EGC for Nonmetallic Extensions

Revision replaces "grounding conductor" with appropriate term "equipment grounding conductor" for concealable nonmetallic extensions.

Flatwire cable cross-section view (expanded view of layers)

- Equipment Grounding Conductor
- Grounded Conductor
- Ungrounded Conductor
- Grounded Conductor
- Equipment Grounding Conductor

253

### 392.10 Single Conductor Cables in Cable Trays

- Revision provides clarity relative to the limitations of **single conductor applications** in cable tray systems
- A reference to **392.10(B)(1)** was added to the parent text of 392.10
- Single-conductor cables are required to be sized at 1/0 AWG or larger and be of a type listed and marked on the surface for use in cable trays
- Where 1/0 AWG through 4/0 AWG single-conductor cables are installed in ladder cable tray, the maximum allowable rung spacing for the ladder cable tray can be no more than 225 mm (9 in.)
- Single conductors used as equipment grounding conductors are required to be insulated, covered, or bare, and they must be sized at 4 AWG or larger

254

### 392.10 Single-Conductor Cables in Cable Trays

Single insulated conductors shall be permitted in cable tray only when installed in accordance with 392.10(B)(1)

Combination of multiconductor cables and single-conductor cables installed in the same cable tray

Single-conductor cables are required to be:

- sized at 1/0 AWG or larger
- of a type listed and marked on the surface for use in cable trays

Where 1/0 AWG through 4/0 AWG single-conductor cables are installed in ladder cable tray, the maximum allowable rung spacing not more than 225 mm (9 in.)

Single conductors equipment grounding conductors required to be insulated, covered, or bare, and sized at 4 AWG or larger

255

### 392.30(B)(4) Cable Ties Used for Securement and Support in Cable Trays

- New provision added identifying **cable ties** used to secure and support conductors and cables in a cable tray as an **acceptable means of securement** when identified for securement and support in a cable tray
- Similar to existing requirements already in the Code for listing requirements for cable ties [see 300.22(C)(1), 300.24]
- If a cable tie is listed to **UL 1565 (Positioning Devices)** under UL Product Spec category ZODZ, the cable tie has been identified for **"limited support"**
- If a cable tie is listed to **UL 62275 (Cable management Systems Cable Ties for Electrical Installations)**, cable tie retains 100% of its declared loop tensile strength (cable ties) or declared mechanical strength (fixing devices)

256

**392.30(B)(4) Cable Ties For Securement and Support in Cable Trays**

Cable ties used to secure conductors and cables in cable trays required to "be listed and identified for the application and for securement and support"



257

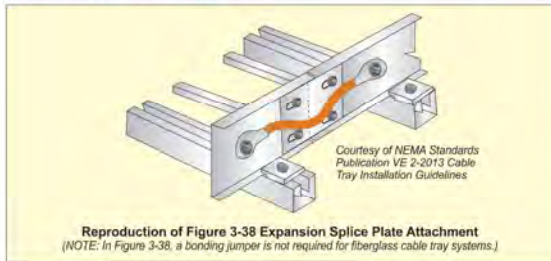
**392.44 Expansion Splice Plates for Cable Trays**

- New section added for **expansion splice plates** to address thermal expansion and contraction due to temperature variations for cable trays
- Important that cable tray installations incorporate features which provide adequate compensation for their **thermal contraction and expansion**
- The **length of a straight cable tray run** and the temperature differential will play a vital role in determining the number of expansion splice plates required
- Similar to existing requirements for **raceways** required to be provided with expansion, expansion-deflection, or deflection fittings where necessary to compensate for thermal expansion, deflection, and contraction [see **300.7(B)**]
- Expansion joint splice plates and bonding jumpers available from all major cable tray manufacturers

258

**392.44 Expansion Splice Plates For Cable Trays**

Expansion splice plates for cable trays required to be provided where necessary to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction



259

**392.46 Bushed Conduit and Tubing at Cable Trays**

- New Code language added giving permission for individual conductors or multi-conductor cables to enter enclosures through **bushed nonflexible conduits or tubing or opening associated with a flange** that is connecting the cable tray system directly to equipment
- Bringing cables and individual conductors into equipment from a cable tray through bushed conduit and tubing is a common practice with installers
- Without new Code text, there was some confusion in the industry as to whether this practice was Code compliant
- A companion change occurred at new **312.5(C), Exception** to clarify where cabinets are involved, the 450 mm (18 in) minimum length for short sections of raceways (nipples) does not apply to 392.46

260



### 392.46 Bushed Conduit and Tubing at Cable Trays (cont.)

- New Code language added giving permission for individual conductors or multi-conductor cables to enter enclosures through **bushed nonflexible conduits or tubing or opening associated with a flange** that is connecting the cable tray system directly to equipment (cont.)
- Limited to "individual conductors or multiconductor cables with entirely nonmetallic sheaths" as other wiring methods with metallic sheaths such as Type MC cable requires a listed connector to protect the internal conductors from abrasion where the cable is terminated or transitions to another wiring method
- Sealing requirements** are involved with both 392.46(A) and (B), which calls for require sealing of the conduit or tubing or sealing or covering the opening

Copyright © IAEI, 2020

261

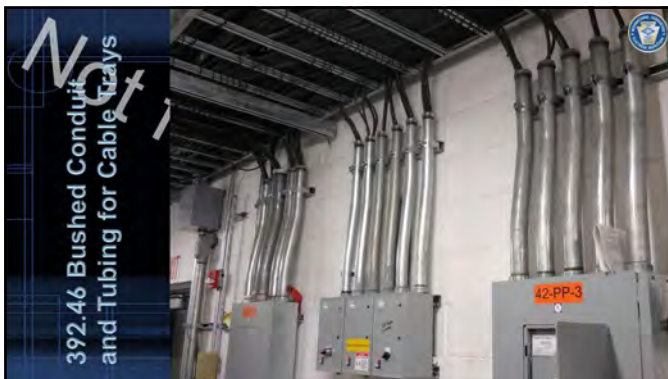
### 392.46 Bushed Conduit, Tubing, and Flanges at Cable Trays

Individual conductors or nonmetallic multi-conductor cables permitted to enter enclosures through **bushed nonflexible conduits or tubing** or opening associated with a **flange** that is connecting the cable tray system directly to equipment

Opening shall be **sealed** or covered to prevent debris from entering the enclosure through the opening

Note: See 312.5(C), Ex. No. 2 (cables not required to be secured to cabinet, etc.)

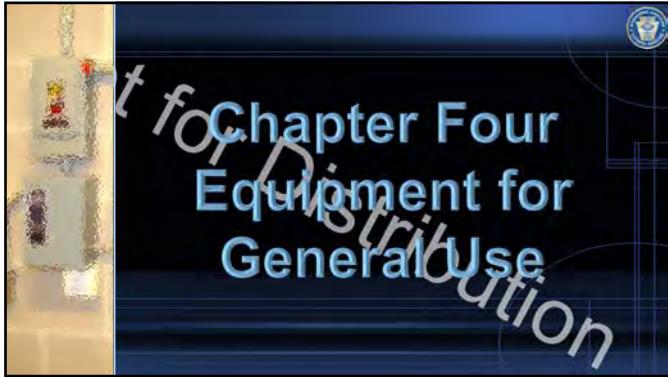
262



263



264



265

### 400.12 Uses Not Permitted (Flexible Cords and Flexible Cables)

- Revisions were made to include **flexible cords** in the "Uses Not Permitted" section along with flexible cables, cord sets, and power supply cords
- During the 2017 *NEC* revision cycle, the rules for "Uses Not Permitted" for flexible cords and cables was revised
- Title of the article was expanded to **Flexible Cords and Flexible Cables**
- Section revised to put emphases on both flexible cords and flexible cables
- For the 2017 *NEC* revision, the terms "flexible cables, flexible cord sets, and power supply cords" was used, with "flexible cords" inadvertently left out
- Revised language makes it clear that cord sets (any length) and power-supply cords are not permitted to be used in any of the manners specified at 400.12 (*run through holes in walls, structural ceilings, suspended ceilings, dropped ceilings or floors, run through doorways windows etc.*)

266


### 400.12 Uses Not Permitted (Flexible Cords and Flexible Cables) (cont.)

- A reference to **590.4** was added to **400.12(4), Exception to (4)**
- Section 590.4 (*Temporary Installations*) permits multiconductor cords or cables of a type identified in Table 400.4 for hard usage or extra-hard usage to be used as temporary feeders by 590.4(B) and as temporary branch circuits by 590.4(C)
- Part of their required conditions for use as a construction job site-type temporary branch circuit or feeder requires the cable assemblies, flexible cords, or flexible cables to **"not be installed on the floor or on the ground"**
- New reference added to the exception will allow temporary flexible cords and flexible cables to be used for temporary installation (*during construction*), indoors or outdoors, to prevent cord damages by being supported or attached to a building surface

267

### 400.12 Uses Not Permitted - Flexible Cords and Flexible Cables

Unless specifically permitted in 400.10, flexible cords, flexible cables, cord sets, and power supply cords shall not be used as specified by 400.12 (*substitute for the fixed wiring, run through holes in walls, run through doorways and windows, where subject to physical damage, etc.*)

	
Flexible Cords	Flexible Cables
	
Cord Sets	Power Supply Cords

268

### Table 402.3 Fixture Wires

- A new type of heat-resistant rubber-covered fixture wire (**FFHH-2**) was added to Table 402.3
- Fixture wire is covered by **Article 402, UL Product Spec Category ZIPR**, and investigated under **UL Product Standard 66**
- Type FFHH-2 fixture wire has a flexible stranding with a maximum operating temperature of **90°C (194°F)**
- Insulation consists of heat-resistant rubber or cross-linked synthetic polymer
- Type FFHH-2 fixture wire comes in sizes **18-16 AWG**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

269

### Table 402.3 Fixture Wires (in part)

Name	Type Letter	Insulation	AWG	Thickness of Insulation		Outer Covering	Max. Operating Temperature	Application Provisions
				mm	mil			
Heat-resistant rubber-covered fixture wire - flexible stranding	FFH-2	Heat-resistant rubber or cross-linked synthetic polymer	18-16	0.78	30	Nonmetallic covering	75°C (167°F) 90°C (194°F)	Fixture wiring
	FFHH-2	Heat-resistant rubber or cross-linked synthetic polymer	18-16	0.78	30			
ECTFE - solid or 7-strand	HF	Ethylene chlorotrifluoroethylene	18-14	0.38	15	None	150°C (302°F)	Fixture wiring
ECTFE - flexible stranding	HFF	Ethylene chlorotrifluoroethylene	18-14	0.38	15	None	150°C (302°F)	Fixture wiring
Tape insulated fixture wire - solid or 7-strand	KF-1	Aromatic polyimide tape	18-10	0.14	5.5	None	200°C (392°F)	Fixture wiring - limited to 300 volts
	KF-2	Aromatic polyimide tape	18-10	0.21	8.4	None	200°C (392°F)	Fixture wiring
Tape insulated fixture wire - flexible stranding	KFF-1	Aromatic polyimide tape	18-10	0.14	5.5	None	200°C (392°F)	Fixture wiring - limited to 300 volts
	KFF-2	Aromatic polyimide tape	18-10	0.21	8.4	None	200°C (392°F)	Fixture wiring

\*Insulations and outer coverings that meet the requirements of flame retardant, limited smoke, and are so listed, shall be permitted to be marked for limited smoke after the Code type designation.

Reproduction of NEC Table 402.3 (in part)

270

### 404.7 Indicating Requirements for Switches

- Revisions clarifies that switches and circuit breakers indication must be visible **without opening the enclosure** to see the open/closed indication
- General-use switches and motor-circuit switches, circuit breakers, and molded case switches now required to indicate whether they are in the open (off) or closed (on) position in a **location that is visible when accessing the external operating means**
- Indicating provisions can apply to a circuit breaker located **behind the operable lid** of a panelboard and still comply with this rule
- Indication only applies after the cover is opened or accessed, unless the enclosure is equipped with an external operator
- Revision clarifies that the indication must be visible **when and after accessing the operating means**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

271

### 404.7 Indicating Requirements for Switches

General-use switches and motor-circuit switches, circuit breakers, and molded case switches required to **clearly** indicate whether they are in the open (off) or closed (on) position in a **location that is visible when accessing the external operating means**

"Up" position of the handle generally required to be the closed (on) position

Copyright © IAEI 2020

272



### 404.9 General-Use Snap Switches, Dimmers, and Control Switches

- Revisions were made to include **other switches with comparable control functions** (not just snap switches) in requirements for faceplates, grounding, and construction
- Over the last decade or so, there has been numerous **"control devices"** that are replacing the typical "snap switch" for operating lighting loads
- These other switching control devices must meet and satisfy these faceplate requirements just like a snap switch
- Snap switches, dimmers and control switches required to be **connected to an "equipment grounding conductor"** and a means to connect metal faceplates to the EGC (*whether or not a metal faceplate is installed*) must be provided (*previous rule stated metal faceplate was required to be "grounded"*)
- Same basic changes also were implemented at **404.10** for "Mounting of General-Use Snap Switches, Dimmers, and Control Switches"

Copyright © IAEI 2020

273

### 404.9 General-Use Snap Switches, Dimmers, and Control Switches

Faceplates provided for snap switches, dimmers, and control switches mounted in boxes and other enclosures required to be installed so as to completely cover the opening and, where the switch is flush mounted, seat against the finished surface

Metal faceplates are required to be **bonded to an equipment grounding conductor (EGC)**

Listed kits or listed assemblies are not required to be connected to an EGC if (4) conditions are met, including if the device is provided with a nonmetallic faceplate **and the device is designed such that no metallic faceplate replaces the one provided**



Snap Switches      Dimmers      Control Switches

Copyright © IAEI 2020

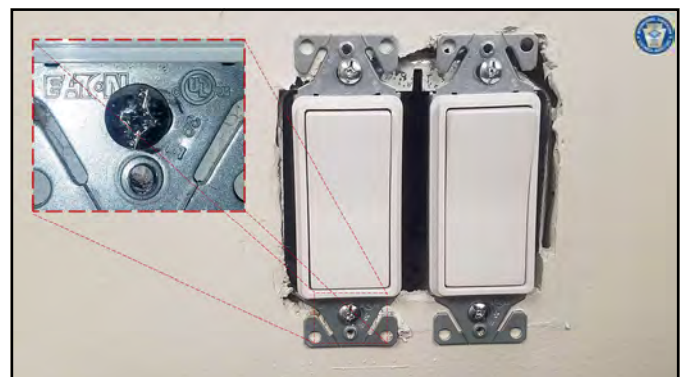
274

### 404.14 Rating and Use of Switches

- Switches will now be required to be **listed** and used within their ratings
- Switches of the types covered in **404.14(A) through (E)** are limited to the control of loads as specified accordingly
- Switches used to control **cord-and-plug-connected loads** are limited as covered in **404.14(F)**
- Equipment used in electrical installations should be listed or labeled by a qualified, third-party electrical products testing laboratory
- UL 20** (Standards for General-Use Snap Switches) and **UL 1572** (Solid-State Dimming Controls) are among the switching device standards that provide the identified construction, performance, and marking requirements for switching devices to be used in accordance with the *NEC*

Copyright © IAEI 2020

275



276

### 404.22 Electronic Lighting Control Switches

- Revision removes the word "lighting" from the phrase "electronic lighting control switches" as these switches may supply **non-lighting loads**
- Many electronic control switches are used in applications well beyond just simply lighting
- These electronic control devices may be used for fan speed control, receptacle control, appliance control, etc.
- The applicable product standards such as **UL 1472** (Solid-State Dimming Controls) describes these devices as simply "electronic control switches"

Copyright © IAEI 2020

277

### 404.22 Electronic Lighting Control Switches

Electronic lighting control switches are generally prohibited from introducing current on the equipment grounding conductor during normal operation (future effective date of January 1, 2020)

Electronic lighting control switches are required to be listed (not just lighting controls)

278

### 406.4(D)(4) Requirement Receptacles (AFCI)

- Previous Ex. No. 1 to AFCI replacements was **deleted** (no longer relevant)
- Commercially obtainable devices (such as a dual-function AFCI/GFCI receptacle outlet) are **readily available** that can satisfy the main rule rendering the exception irrelevant
- Previous Ex. No. 1 exempted AFCI protection where all the following applied:
  - (1) The replacement complies with 406.4(D)(2)(i)
  - (2) It is impracticable to provide an EGC as provided by 250.130(C)
  - (3) Listed combination type AFCI circuit breaker not commercially available
  - (4) GFCI/AFCI dual function receptacles are not commercially available

Copyright © IAEI 2020

279

### 406.4(D)(4) Replacement Receptacles (AFCI)

If a receptacle outlet is located and replaced in any areas specified in 210.12(A), (B), or (C), a replacement receptacle at this outlet must be AFCI protected

Dual-function AFCI/GFCI receptacle

**Ex. No. 1:** AFCI protection not required where all of the following apply: (1) Replacement complies with 406.4(D)(2)(i) (two-wire system-GFI); (2) Impracticable to provide an EGC as provided by 250.130(C); (3) Listed combination type AFCI circuit breaker not commercially available; (4) GFCI/AFCI dual function receptacles not commercially available

Previous Ex. No. 1 to AFCI replacements was deleted as it is no longer relevant and products that comply with the main requirement are readily available.

280

### 406.4(D)(7) Requirement of Automatically Controlled Receptacles

- Automatically controlled receptacles are now required to be replaced with **equivalently controlled receptacles**
- Section **406.3(E)** provides **identification marking requirements** of controlled receptacle (marked with the word "Controlled" on the controlled receptacle along with a controlled receptacle symbol)
- Receptacle(s) managed by an **energy management system** that are replaced will now be required to be replaced with equivalently controlled receptacles
- If a remodel or renovation results in the automatically controlled receptacle **no longer being required to be automatically controlled**, the receptacle and any associated receptacle markings would be required to be replaced with a receptacle and faceplate not marked in accordance with 406.3(E)


Copyright © IAEI 2020

281

### 406.4(D)(7) Replacement of Automatically Controlled Receptacles

Automatically controlled receptacles to be replaced with equivalently controlled receptacles  
 If automatic control is no longer required, receptacles and associated 406.3(E) receptacle markings to be replaced with a receptacle and faceplate not marked in accordance with 406.3(E)

ENERGY MANAGEMENT



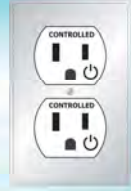



Figure 406.3(E)



All nonlocking-type, 125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles controlled by an automatic control device, energy management, or building automation shall be marked with the "Controlled Receptacle Marking Symbol" from Figure 406.3(E) and the word "CONTROLLED" [see 406.3(E)]

282

### 406.5(G)(2) Receptacle Mounting Under Sinks

- Receptacle outlets are now **prohibited** from being installed in the area **beneath a sink** in the **face-up position**
- Receptacle outlets have been prohibited for being installed in the face-up position in or on **countertop surfaces or work surfaces** since the **2002 NEC (dwelling units)** and all countertops and work surfaces since the **2014 NEC**
- Common sight to see plumbing pipes connecting to a sink (supply and drain) leaking from time-to-time under a sink area such as a kitchen sink
- Receptacle for such things as a garbage disposer installed in the face-up position under the sink is subject to water entering the **polarized slots of the receptacle** creating a hazardous condition
- New language will help mitigate a **potential hazard**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

283



284



### 406.9(C) Bathtub or Shower Stall Restricted "Zone" (Receptacles)

- Receptacle outlet(s) located in the area around a **bathtub or shower stall** have been revised to include a **restricted "zone"** similar to luminaires in said areas with an exception added for smaller space bathrooms
- Receptacles are now prohibited from being installed within a zone measured **900 mm (3 ft) horizontally** and **2.5 m (8 ft) vertically** from the top of the bathtub rim or shower stall
- In bathrooms with dimensions less than the required zone, receptacle(s) are permitted to be installed opposite the bathtub rim or shower stall threshold on the **farthest wall within the room**
- Previous language at 406.9(C) stated that receptacles were not be installed "within or directly over a bathtub or shower stall"
- This language was **vague** leading to **confusion** and **inconsistent interpretation** as to what defined the bathtub or shower stall "area"

Copyright © IAETI 2020

285

### 406.9(C) Bathtub and Shower Space

Receptacles shall not be installed within a zone measured 900 mm (3 ft) horizontally and 2.5 m (8 ft) vertically from the top of the bathtub rim or shower stall threshold.

*Exception:* In bathrooms with less than the required zone the receptacle(s) permitted to be installed opposite the bathtub rim or shower stall threshold on the farthest wall within the room.

Copyright © IAETI 2020

286

### 406.9(C) Bathtub and Shower Space

210.52(D) requires at least one receptacle outlet to be installed in bathrooms within 900 mm (3 ft) of the outside edge of each basin.

From the top of the bathtub rim to the wall/door 889 mm (2 ft, 10 in.)

Receptacle permitted here (per exception)

Receptacles shall not be installed within a zone measured 900 mm (3 ft) horizontally and 2.5 m (8 ft) vertically from the top of the bathtub rim or shower stall threshold.

*Exception:* In bathrooms with less than the required zone the receptacle(s) permitted to be installed opposite the bathtub rim or shower stall threshold on the farthest wall within the room.

Copyright © IAETI 2020

287

### 406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

- Requirements for **tamper-resistant (TR) receptacles** were **expanded**
- New areas include: **(1)** Attached and detached garages and accessory buildings of dwelling units, **(2)** Common areas of multifamily dwelling units, **(3)** Common areas of and hotels and motels, and **(4)** Assisted living facilities
- Attached and detached garages and accessory buildings to dwelling units are subject to the same TR receptacle requirements of the main dwelling unit
- At 406.12(4), the word **"elementary"** was **removed** leaving the term **"preschools and education facilities"** as places requiring TR receptacles
- Difficult for the AHJ to determine what age group of students will be utilizing the space

Copyright © IAETI 2020

288

### 406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles (cont.)

- The word "waiting" was changed to "awaiting" at 406.12(6) to match the wording used at 518.2 for examples of assembly occupancies where the term "Places of awaiting transportation" is used
- 406.12(6) now includes "places of awaiting transportation, gymnasiums, skating rinks, and auditoriums" that require TR receptacles
- The word "Dormitories" was changed to "Dormitory units" at 406.12(7) to match the newly defined term now found in Article 100
- Assisted living facilities are becoming commonplace around the country, which are essentially dwelling units but typically don't qualify as a dwelling unit as they typically cannot meet the definition of a dwelling unit as defined in Article 100 (no permanent provision for cooking)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

289

### 406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

TR receptacles requirements or clarification was expanded to the following areas:




- Attached and detached garages and accessory buildings to dwelling units
- Common areas of multifamily dwellings and common areas of guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels
- Assisted living facilities as small children can be present in these facilities as well

Copyright © JAEI 2020

290

### 406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

TR receptacles requirements or clarification was expanded to the following areas:



- Attached and detached garages and accessory buildings to dwelling units
- Common areas of multifamily dwellings and common areas of guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels
- Assisted living facilities as small children can be present in these facilities as well

Copyright © JAEI 2020

291

### 406.13 Single-Pole Separable-Connector Type

- New requirements were added to Article 406 pertaining to "single-pole separate connectors"
- Single-pole separable connector are addressed in Article 520 (Theaters, Audience Areas of Motion Picture and Television Studios, Performance Areas, and Similar Locations) and Article 530 (Motion Picture and Television Studios and Similar Locations)
- A "Single-Pole Separable Connector" is defined as "a device that is installed at the ends of portable, flexible, single-conductor cable that is used to establish connection or disconnection between two cables or one cable and a single-pole, panel-mounted separable connector."
- Common industry practice to provide paralleled inputs of single-pole separable connectors on equipment so that paralleled sets of single conductor feeders may be used for powering high amperage equipment

Copyright © JAEI 2020

292

### 406.13 Single-Pole Separable-Connector Type (cont.)

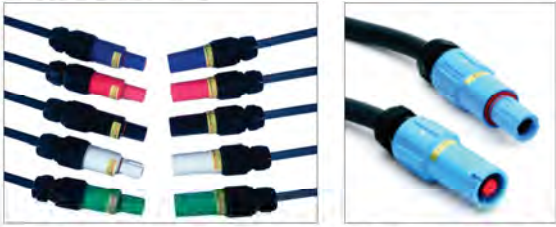
- New requirements were added to Article 406 pertaining to "single-pole separable connectors" (cont.)
- Article 406 contained requirements for a variety of different types of plugs and receptacles such as receptacle with USB charger, tamper-resistant receptacles and weather-resistant receptacles, but article did not address single pole separable connectors.
- New section covers listing and labeling, locking or latching type connectors, marking requirements, proper identification of the grounded circuit conductor (white-colored housing) and connectors designated for connection to the EGC (green-colored housing), interchangeability for ac or dc use or for different current ratings or voltages, and identification of the proper connection and disconnection sequence necessary for the safe use of these devices.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

293

### 406.13 Single-Pole Separable-Connectors

New section added to Article 406 at 406.13 titled, "Single-Pole Separable-Connector Type" covering the construction as well as the performance and marking requirements for listed single-pole separable-connectors



**Single-Pole Separable Connector.** A device that is installed at the ends of portable, flexible, single-conductor cable that is used to establish connection or disconnection between two cables or one cable and a single-pole, panel-mounted separable connector.

294

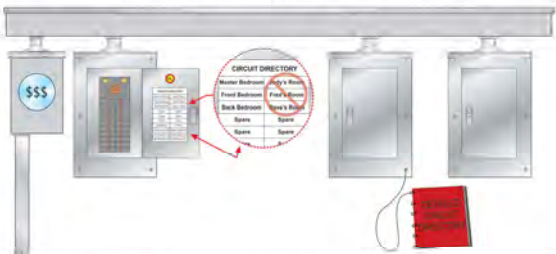
### 408.4(A) Circuit Directory or Circuit Identification

- Revisions were made to allow the circuit directory for a panelboard to be located in an "approved location adjacent" to the panelboard door
- Previous requirement only allowed circuit directory to be located **on the face or inside of the panel door** in the case of a panelboard
- All panelboard circuits and any circuit modifications are required to be legibly identified as to its clear, evident, and specific purpose or use with an approved degree of detail to distinguish each circuit from all others
- This adjacent location could include a **prominently labeled notebook** of circuit directories for adjacent panelboards that might even include graphics
- Only so much "real estate" inside of a panelboard lid or door
- New allowance of an adjacent location for the circuit directory supports the concept that the **more detail that is provided in a circuit directory file better** in terms of meeting the safety objectives of 408.4

Copyright © JAEI 2020

295

### 408.4(A) Circuit Directory or Circuit Identification



Every circuit and circuit modification required to be legibly identified as to its clear, evident, and specific purpose or use

Identification required to be included in a circuit directory that is located on the face, inside of, or in an approved location adjacent to the panel door in the case of a panelboard

CIRCUIT DIRECTORY	
Number Breakdown	Wiring Notes
Front Breakdown	Field Notes
Back Breakdown	Work & Job
Name	Name
Name	Name

296



### 408.6 Short-Circuit Current Rating for Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards

- New requirement added for **available fault current** and **date calculation performed** to be **field marked** on the enclosure at the point of supply for switchboards, switchgear, and panelboards (*other than dwelling units*)
- All switchboards, switchgear, and panelboards (*including panelboards at dwelling units*) are required to have a short-circuit current rating not less than the available fault current
- Enforcement community has a difficult time enforcing proper fault current ratings on such equipment as switchboards, switchgear, and panelboards without the knowledge of the available fault current
- Equipment is usually properly marked with the **short circuit current rating** by the manufacturer, but there is typically no information on the jobsite as to the **available fault current at the equipment**
- NEC* clearly addresses short-circuit current ratings for specialized equipment such as industrial control panels in **409.22**, elevators in **620.16** and industrial machinery in **670.5**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

297

### 408.6 Short-Circuit Current Rating for Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards

Switchboards, switchgear, and panelboards must have a **short-circuit current rating not less than the available fault current**

Technical specifications for the switchboard:

- 480Y/277-V 3-PH 4-W 60-HZ
- 2500-Ampere Horizontal Bus
- Short-Circuit Current Rating: 65,000 Amperes RMS SYM

Available Fault Current: **48,088 Amperes**  
Date Calculated: 06/01/19

**WARNING**  
ARC FLASH & SHOCK HAZARD  
APPROPRIATE PPE REQUIRED

**Maximum available fault current: 15,036 Amps**  
Date: 12/1/11

Sparky Electric 1-800-ISPARKY File#-1221  
Sample available fault-current label

\*Markings shall comply with 110.21(B)(3)

Available fault current and the date the calculation was performed to be field marked on the enclosure at the point of supply (*other than one- and two-family dwelling units*)

298

### 408.8 Reconditioning of Equipment (Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards)

- New section added to address **reconditioning** of panelboards (**No**) and switchboards and switchgear (**Yes**)
- Marking requirement for reconditioned equipment at **110.21(A)(2)**
- Panelboards are defined as encompassing the bus structure but not the enclosure, typically a cabinet (*fundamentally different from switchboards and switchgear*)
- Panelboard listings are available for bus structures that can be field mounted in enclosures, as is appropriate
- Buswork itself is unlikely to be fit for reconditioning, but replacement is generally an option with field inspection and without additional listing
- When the available fault current exceeds 10,000 amperes, the enclosure must be evaluated in conjunction with the panel bus

Copyright © JAEI 2020

299

### 408.8 Reconditioning of Equipment (Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards)


- New section added to address **reconditioning** of panelboards (**No**) and switchboards and switchgear (**Yes**) (*cont.*)
- Switchboards and switchgear can be reconditioned, and typically that work is **done in place** due to the inherent construction difficulties and expense in removing and reinstalling it (*involves a field evaluation*)
- In some cases an accident may damage a section but not warrant condemning an entire switchboard or switchgear line-up

Copyright © JAEI 2020


300

### 408.8 Reconditioning of Equipment for Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards

Panelboards **NOT Permitted** to be Reconditioned



Switchboards and Switchgear **Permitted** to be Reconditioned



\*See also 110.21(A)(2)

Panelboards shall not be permitted to be reconditioned  
Switchboards and switchgear, or sections of switchboards or switchgear, shall be permitted to be reconditioned

301

### 408.18(C) Switchboards and Switchgear Requiring Rear or Side Access

- New provision will require switchboards and switchgear requiring **rear or side access** to be marked (by manufacturer) on the front of said equipment indicating rear or side access is needed
- Existing 408.3(D) was moved to new 408.18(C) to emphasize the requirement that **grounded and grounding terminals** be installed such that it is not necessary to reach across ungrounded bus or terminal(s) to make connections
- Where a section of a switchboard or switchgear has an opening requiring rear or side access, that opening must provide proper working space as called for by 110.26
- This type of gear is often installed against a wall, precluding rear or side access, especially if it is not known that rear or side access is needed

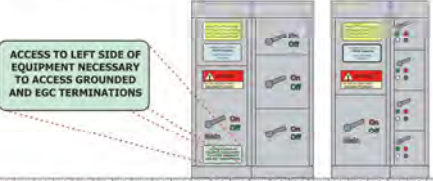
302

### 408.18(C) Switchboards and Switchgear Requiring Rear or Side Access (cont.)

- New provision will require switchboards and switchgear requiring **rear or side access** to be marked (by manufacturer) on the front of said equipment indicating rear or side access is needed (cont.)
- Without this new rule for manufacturers to provide a **label on the front of the equipment**, this is a problem that will only intensify as market pressures on scarce electrical room areas steadily limit the placement of switchgear in the middle of a floor

303

### 408.18(C) Switchboards and Switchgear - Rear or Side Access



For switchboards and switchgear, each section of equipment that requires rear or side access to make field connections shall be so marked by the manufacturer on the front of said equipment

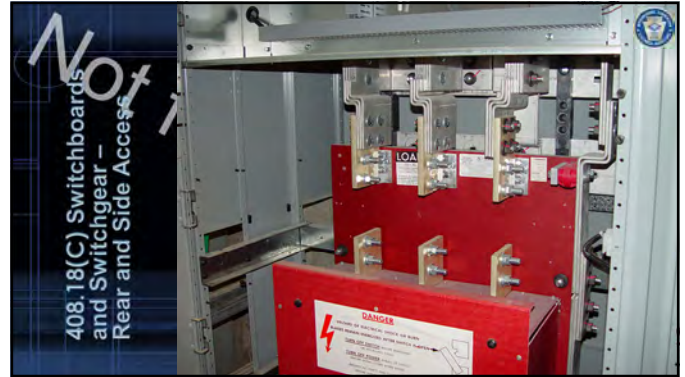
Section openings requiring rear or side access shall comply with 110.26 (working space)

Load terminals for field wiring shall comply with 408.18(C)(1), (C)(2), or (C)(3) (prohibits reaching across ungrounded uninsulated bus to make connections)

304



305



306

### 408.36 Overcurrent Protection for Panelboards

**Not for Distribution**

- Existing Ex. No. 1 was **deleted** due to revisions to **230.71(B)**, which eliminates more than one service disconnecting means in the **same panelboard or enclosure**
- 230.71(B) allows up to six means of disconnect for a service, but the multiple disconnecting means must now be located in **separate enclosures** (*no longer permitted to be located in the same enclosure*)
- Panelboards are generally required to be provided with individual overcurrent protection having a rating not greater than that of the panelboard with OCPD located within the panelboard itself or at any point on the supply side of the panelboard
- Previous Ex. No. 1 rule gave permission to exclude this individual overcurrent protection if the panelboard was being used as service equipment with up to six means of disconnect as previously permitted by 230.71

Copyright © JAEI 2020

307

### 408.36 Overcurrent Protection for Panelboards

Panelboards generally required to be provided with individual overcurrent protection having a rating not greater than that of the panelboard with this overcurrent protection located within the panelboard itself or at any point on the supply side of the panelboard.

Panelboard with main in same cabinet

"Main Lug Only" panelboard (with main at supply side of feeder) [408.36, Ex. No. 1]

Six means of disconnect in one enclosure [previous 408.36, Ex. No. 1]

**408.36 Ex. No. 1 was deleted** with revision of 230.71(B) which allows up to six means of disconnect for a service, but the multiple disconnecting means must now be located in separate enclosures (*no longer permitted to be located in the same enclosure*)

308



### 408.43 Panelboard Orientation

- Panelboards shall not be installed in the **face-up position**
- Installing panelboards in a face-up position increases the likelihood that **contaminants** accumulate on the circuit breakers and panelboard bussing, creating a hazard
- Additionally creates a challenge with applying **work space requirements**
- New text prevents the installation of panelboards in the face-up position and no overcurrent devices would be allowed on such a panelboard
- It should be noted that this new limitation does not prohibit the mounting of a panelboard in a horizontal face-down position

Copyright © JAEI 2020

309

### 408.43 Panelboard Orientation

Panelboard mounted in the face-up position

408.43 Panelboard Orientation: Panelboards shall not be installed in the face-up position.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

310



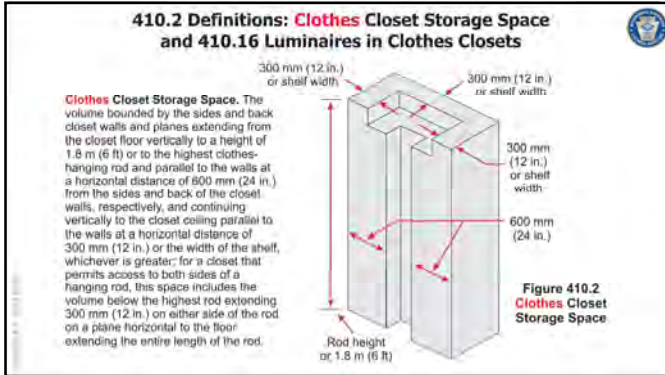
311

### 410.2 Definitions: Clothes Closet Storage Space and 410.16 Luminaires in Clothes Closets

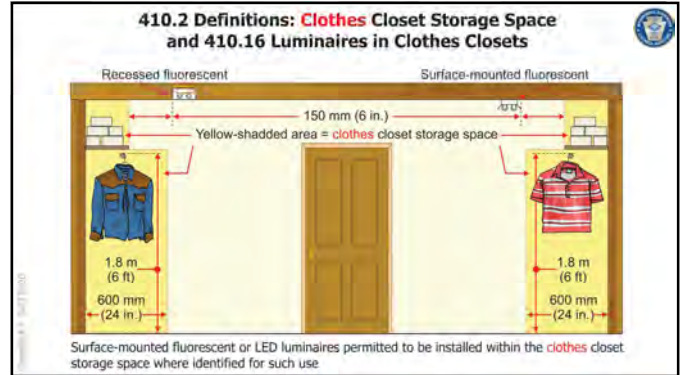
- The word "**Clothes**" was added at the definition, "Figure 410.2 and the requirements of 410.16 to limit these requirements to "**Clothes Closet Storage Spaces**"
- Previously throughout Article 410 storage spaces were often referred to as "closet storage space"
- 1990 *NEC* substantiation that brought about limitations for luminaires in storage closets was indeed based on **clothes closets**
- This revision could necessitate research into **other types of closet storage** (*bath towels, blankets, bed sheets, etc.*)
- Other types of storage closets perhaps need this same protection as a clothes closet

Copyright © JAEI 2020

312



313



314

**410.36(A) Luminaires Supported By Outlet Boxes**

- Revision illustrates that luminaires can be supported in accordance with **separable attachment fittings** and these outlet boxes are considered lighting outlets
- Outlet boxes or fittings installed as required by the support methods of 314.23 and complying with the provisions of **314.27(A)(1)** (vertical surface outlets) and **314.27(A)(2)** (ceiling outlets) permitted to support luminaires
- Luminaires are now also permitted to be supported in accordance with **314.27(E)** (*Separable Attachment Fittings*) and outlet boxes complying with 314.27(E) are considered lighting outlets
- Revised text clarifies that there is no requirement to add yet another lighting outlet with these 314.27(E) compatible devices

Copyright © IAEE 2020

315

**410.36(A) Luminaires Supported By Outlet Boxes (cont.)**

- Revision illustrates that luminaires can be supported in accordance with **separable attachment fittings** and these outlet boxes are considered lighting outlets (cont.)
- Separable attachment fittings** incorporate listed power supply devices and listed locking support and mounting receptacles and supporting means as an option for mounting and supporting luminaires, lampholders, and ceiling suspended (paddle) fans
- Same basic change at **new 422.22** for appliances and installing a ceiling suspended (paddle) fan

Copyright © IAEE 2020

316

### 410.36(A) Luminaires Supported By Outlet Boxes

Outlet boxes or fittings installed as required by the support methods of 314.23 and complying with provisions of 314.27(A)(1) (vertical surface outlets) and 314.27(A)(2) (ceiling outlets) permitted to support luminaires:

Boxes at **ceiling-mounted** luminaire or lampholder outlets must comply with 314.27(A)(2)

Boxes at **vertical surface-mounted** luminaire or lampholder outlets must comply with 314.27(A)(1)

Luminaires also permitted to be supported per 314.27(E) (Separable Attachment Fittings) and outlet boxes complying with 314.27(E) are considered lighting outlets

Courtesy of SQL Technologies

317

### 410.44 Methods of Grounding Luminaires

- **Previous Ex. No. 1 to 410.44 was deleted** since there is no requirement for a luminaire with no accessible conductive parts, or a luminaire made of insulating material to be grounded
- Luminaires and equipment are generally required to be mechanically connected (grounded) to an equipment grounding conductor
- There are no *NEC* requirements for a luminaire with "no exposed conductive parts," or a luminaire "made of insulating material" to be grounded (*connected to an equipment grounding conductor*) (**no need to "exempt" such a luminaire from the grounding requirements for a luminaire**)
- The term "**made of insulating material**" in the deleted exception was felt to be too broad of a term

318

### 410.44 Methods of Grounding Luminaires

Luminaires are generally required to be mechanically connected (grounded) to an equipment grounding conductor (EGC)

Type NM cable with no EGC

(Plastic) — Not required to be grounded (*nothing to ground*)

Nonconductive luminaire (glass)

**Exception** for luminaires made of insulating material, directly wired or attached to outlets supplied by a wiring method that does not provide a ready means for attachment to an EGC with no exposed conductive parts **has been deleted**

319

### 410.69 Identification of Control Conductors

- New section added to prevent **lighting control conductors** from being installed, using the **same color schemes** as the branch circuit grounded conductors and the equipment grounding conductor
- Future effective date of **January 1, 2022**
- Becoming more and more commonplace to control lighting with **low voltage** lighting control conductors and devices
- **Lighting control conductors** are used to communicate commands and other information between control devices in lighting system and the luminaire, etc.
- In today's modern social media society, for a more advanced functionality and flexible lighting system, **dedicated control wiring** may be needed

320



### 410.69 Identification of Control Conductors (cont.)

- New section added to prevent **lighting control conductors** from being installed using the **same color schemes** as the branch circuit grounded conductors and the equipment grounding conductor (cont.)
- This wiring is typically low voltage (Class 2, 12–24-volt dc), providing a pathway for communication of analog or digital signals, such as incoming sensor input data (lighting levels, occupancy sensing conditions, etc.)
- Multiple **shock incidents** that have occurred and been reported involving the low voltage lighting control conductors being inadvertently spliced or connected to the grounded (neutral) conductor for the nominal voltage wiring system
- One very common lighting control conductor scheme is to use **purple and gray** colored lighting control conductors ("continuous white or gray outer finish" reserved for identification of grounded conductor systems)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

321

### 410.69 Identification of Control Conductor

Field-connected control conductor **not permitted** to utilize the **same color identification scheme** as reserved for the grounded branch-circuit conductor (**white or gray**) or the EGC (**green**) where control conductors are spliced, terminated, or connected in the same luminaires or enclosure as the branch-circuit conductors (Future effective date of January 1, 2022)

The diagram illustrates a luminaire enclosure with a blue field-connected control cable and a branch circuit wiring method. Labels include 'Field-connected control cable', 'Branch circuit wiring methods', and 'Super 100 Enclosure'.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

322

### 410.116(C) Recessed Luminaires Installed in Fire-Resistant Construction

- The requirements for **recessed luminaires** installed in **fire-resistance construction** revised to be consistent with current listing options and relocated to 410.116(C)
- Recessed luminaires installed in fire-resistant construction must be **listed for use in a fire resistance-rated construction** and the recessed luminaire is required to be installed in or used with a **luminaire enclosure that is listed for use in a fire resistance-rated construction**
- Must also be installed in accordance with a tested **fire resistance-rated assembly**
- New text at 410.116(C) also recognizes the use of recessed **LED luminaires** of comparable construction for recessed installations in a building of fire resistant construction

Copyright © IAEI 2020

323

### 410.116(C) Recessed Luminaires Installed in Fire-Resistant Construction

Recessed luminaires installed in fire-resistant construction must be **listed for use in a fire-rated construction** and required to be installed in or used with a **luminaire enclosure that is listed for use in a fire-rated construction**

Must also be installed in accordance with a tested **fire resistance-rated assembly**

**Recessed LED luminaires** of comparable construction permitted for recessed installations in a building of fire-resistant construction

The images show two different styles of recessed luminaire enclosures. The left one is red and the right one is silver. A caption below reads 'Courtesy of dmf Lighting'.

Luminaires marked **"FOR USE IN NON-FIRE-RATED INSTALLATIONS"** prohibited in fire-rated installations

Copyright © IAEI 2020

324

### 410.118 Access to Other Boxes

- New section added to clarify that a luminaire cannot be used to access outlet, pull, or junction boxes or conduit bodies that are **not associated with** wiring for that luminaire
- Luminaires recessed in ceilings, floors, or walls are now prohibited from being used to access outlet, pull, or junction boxes or conduit bodies unless the box or conduit body is an **integral part of the listed luminaire**
- Previously selected installations involved recessed luminaires that were fastened to structural components of a dropped ceiling and designed and intended to be used to access junction boxes for wiring that was not associated with these recessed luminaires
- These installations involved fixed ceilings (*no removable ceiling tiles*), with junction boxes **not visible or accessible** without the removal of the luminaire

Copyright © JAEI 2020

325

### 410.118 Access to Other Boxes

Luminaires recessed in ceilings, floors, or walls shall not be used to access outlet, pull, or junction boxes or conduit bodies, unless the box or conduit body is an integral part of the listed luminaire.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

326

### 410.118 Access to Other Boxes (thru Luminaires)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

327

### Article 410, Part XVI Special Provisions for Horticultural Lighting Equipment

- A new **Part XVI** was added to **Article 410** with special provisions for **Horticultural Lighting Equipment**
- These new requirements respond to rapidly increasing industry of indoor plant growing facilities
- Luminaires used for growing plants are very specialized
- Equipment installed in a horticultural environment is commonly exposed to dust, water spray, high humidity levels, and high ambient temperatures
- To maximize plant growth, horticultural lighting equipment can be designed with **flexible cord and plug supply connections** in lieu of a permanent connection to make the equipment adjustable
- Horticultural lighting equipment also produces **light wavelengths and intensities** different than that needed for general illumination and requires additional protection for users against light exposure

Copyright © JAEI 2020

328

### Article 410, Part XVI Special Provisions for Horticultural Lighting Equipment (cont.)

- A new **Part XVI** was added to **Article 410** with special provisions for **Horticultural Lighting Equipment (cont.)**
- New Part XVI will cover such things as listing requirements, installation and use, locations not permitted, general lighting requirements, flexible cord provisions, fittings and connectors, grounding requirements, GFCI protection provisions, supporting requirements and requirements for installations in hazardous (classified) locations
- While **Article 547** has requirements for **agricultural buildings**, horticultural lighting installations have **special considerations** not previously addressed by the *Code*
- These new *Code* requirements were needed to ensure safe installations and to facilitate inspection procedures

Copyright © JAEI 2020

329

### Article 410, Part XVI Special Provisions for Horticultural Lighting Equipment

New Part XVI of Article 410 will cover such things as listing requirements, installation and use, locations not permitted, general lighting requirements, flexible cord provisions, fittings and connectors, grounding requirements, GFCI protection provisions, supporting requirements and requirements for installations in hazardous (classified) locations



Copyright © JAEI 2020

330

### 422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances

- The "**provided for public use**" condition has been removed from GFCI requirements for both **automotive vacuum machines** and **tire inflation machines**
  - With this phrase in place, GFCI protection for automotive vacuum machines and tire inflation machines that were NOT "provided for public use" was eliminated
- **Sump pumps** has been added to the list of appliances requiring GFCI protection
  - Previously, a sump pump might have been required to be GFCI protected, but only because of its location (*in an unfinished basement, etc.*), not because it was a "sump pump"

Copyright © JAEI 2020

331

### 422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances (cont.)

- **Bottle fill stations** was added to GFCI requirements for drinking water coolers
  - Bottle fill stations are often integral with or installed adjacent to a drinking water cooler and present similar risk of electric shock hazard
- GFCI requirements for **dishwashers** moved from 210.8(D) to 422.5(A)(7)
  - Article 210 is dedicated to the requirements for branch circuits (*better served by having the all the GFCI requirements for appliances located in Article 422*)
  - This GFCI rule would now encompass **dishwashers** rated at 150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase, located at a **non-dwelling unit location**, such as a restaurant, school cafeteria, etc. (*previously limited to dwelling unit dishwashers*)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

332



**422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances**

GFCI requirements for Appliances (150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase) shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection for personnel (Multiple GFCI devices permitted but not be required)

(1) Automotive vacuum machines *provided-for-the-public*; (2) Drinking water coolers and bottle fill stations; (3) Cord-and-plug-connected high-pressure spray washing machines; (4) Tire inflation machines *provided-for-the-public*; (5) Vending machines; (6) Sump pumps; (7) Dishwashers

333

**422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances**

GFCI requirements for Appliances (150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase) shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection for personnel (Multiple GFCI devices permitted but not be required)

Automotive vacuum machines      Tire inflation machines

(1) Automotive vacuum machines *provided-for-the-public*; (2) Drinking water coolers and bottle fill stations; (3) Cord-and-plug-connected high-pressure spray washing machines; (4) Tire inflation machines *provided-for-the-public*; (5) Vending machines; (6) Sump pumps; (7) Dishwashers

334

**422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances**

GFCI requirements for Appliances (150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase) shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection for personnel (Multiple GFCI devices permitted but not be required)

Drinking water coolers      Bottle fill stations

(1) Automotive vacuum machines *provided-for-the-public*; (2) Drinking water coolers and bottle fill stations; (3) Cord-and-plug-connected high-pressure spray washing machines; (4) Tire inflation machines *provided-for-the-public*; (5) Vending machines; (6) Sump pumps; (7) Dishwashers

335

**422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances**

GFCI requirements for Appliances (150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase) shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection for personnel (Multiple GFCI devices permitted but not be required)

Sump pumps      Sump pumps

(1) Automotive vacuum machines *provided-for-the-public*; (2) Drinking water coolers and bottle fill stations; (3) Cord-and-plug-connected high-pressure spray washing machines; (4) Tire inflation machines *provided-for-the-public*; (5) Vending machines; (6) Sump pumps; (7) Dishwashers

336

### 422.5(A) GFCI Protection for Appliances

GFCI requirements for Appliances (150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase) shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection for personnel (Multiple GFCI devices permitted but not be required)



Dishwashers (Dwelling units)      Dishwashers (Non-dwelling unit)

(1) Automotive vacuum machines provided-for-the-public; (2) Drinking water coolers and bottle fill stations; (3) Cord-and-plug-connected high-pressure spray washing machines; (4) Tire inflation machines provided-for-the-public; (5) Vending machines; (6) Sump pumps; (7) Dishwashers


337

### 422.16(B)(2) Flexible Cords for Built-in Dishwashers

- A flexible cord to an adjacent space for a dishwasher passing through an opening is now required to be protected in the form of a bushing, grommet or other approved means
- Dishwashers permitted to be cord-and-plug connected (not required)
- If cord-and-plug connected, receptacle outlet is required to be located in the space adjacent to the space occupied by the dishwasher with a maximum length of a cord for a built-in dishwasher of 2.0 m (6.5 ft)
- When the flexible cord passes through a drilled or rough opening, such as in a base-cabinet, these openings can sometimes cause damage to the flexible cord during installation or servicing potentially requiring additional protection

338

### 422.16(B)(2) Built-In Dishwashers



Receptacle outlet for cord-and-plug connected built-in dishwasher required to be located in the space adjacent to the dishwasher with the max. length of the cord 2.0 m (6½ ft)  
Flexible cord passing through an opening shall be protected against damage by a bushing, grommet, or other approved means

339



340

### 422.16(B)(4) Range Hoods and Microwave Oven/Range Hood Combinations

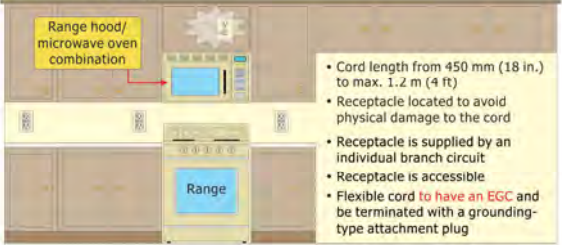
- Revision clarifies that the same conditions of **422.16(B)(4)** are applicable to cord-and-plug-connected, **over-the-range microwave ovens** incorporating range-hood as a range hood
- Previously, some would argue that 422.16(B)(4) did **NOT** apply because there was no mention of "**microwave ovens**" in the list item of 422.16(B)
- To remedy that incorrect interpretation of the *Code*, the title of 422.16(B)(4) was changed from simply "Range Hoods" to "**Range Hoods and Microwave Oven/Range Hood Combinations**" (*Code text changed as well*)
- The requirement for an **individual branch circuit** was originally incorporated to account for an ordinary range hood being replaced with a range hood/microwave oven combination [see 422.16(B)(4)(3)]

Copyright © JAEI 2020

341

### 422.16(B)(4) Range Hoods and Microwave Oven/Range Hood Combinations

Range hoods and over-the-range microwave ovens with integral range hoods permitted to be cord-and-plug connected where identified on installation instructions by manufacturer and meets the following:



- Cord length from 450 mm (18 in.) to max. 1.2 m (4 ft)
- Receptacle located to avoid physical damage to the cord
- Receptacle is supplied by an individual branch circuit
- Receptacle is accessible
- Flexible cord to have an EGC and be terminated with a grounding-type attachment plug

Copyright © JAEI 2020

342



343

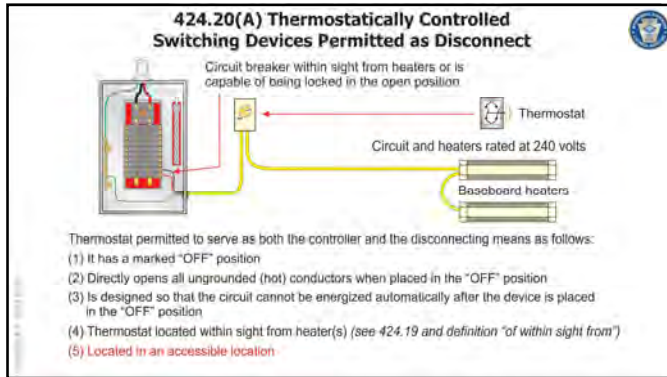
### 424.20(A) Thermostatically Controlled Switching Devices Permitted as Disconnecting Means

- Revision requires thermostatically controlled switching devices and combination thermostats and manually controlled switches for fixed electric space-heating equipment (FESHE) to be located in an **accessible location**
- Thermostatically controlled switching devices and combination thermostats and manually controlled switches are **permitted to serve as both controllers and disconnecting means**, provided they meet five specific conditions of 424.20(A) (*including located in an accessible location*)
- Conditions include; provided with a marked "off" (open) position, they directly open all ungrounded (hot) conductors when manually placed in the "off" (open) position, designed so the circuit cannot be energized automatically after the device has been manually placed in the "off" (open) position, and located within sight of the heater(s) they control (see 424.19)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

344





345

**425.22(B) Resistance Elements (Fixed Resistance and Electrode Industrial Process Heating Equipment)**

- **Resistance-type heating elements** in fixed industrial process heating equipment are now permitted to be **subdivided** into circuits **not exceeding 120 amperes** and protected at **not more than 150 amperes** under certain conditions
- One of the following conditions for the elements must be met:
  - (1) integral with and enclosed within a process heating surface
  - (2) completely contained within enclosure identified as suitable for this use
  - (3) contained within an ASME-rated and stamped vessel
- Previously were required to be protected at not more than **60 amperes**
- Equipment rated **more than 48 amperes** and employing such elements were previously required to have the heating elements **subdivided** with each subdivided load **not exceed 48 amperes**

346

**425.22(B) Resistance Elements (Fixed Resistance and Electrode Industrial Process Heating Equipment) (cont.)**

- **Resistance-type heating elements** in fixed industrial process heating equipment are now permitted to be **subdivided** into circuits **not exceeding 120 amperes** and protected at **not more than 150 amperes** under certain conditions (cont.)
- Revisions are consistent with **422.11(F)(2)**, which deals with **electric heating appliances** employing resistance-type heating elements rated **more than 48 amperes**
- Large industrial facilities frequently have heating applications for hundreds of kilowatts or even megawatts of heat power into their process at low voltages
- Previous restriction of **48 amperes maximum** for subdivided loads in the industrial applications simply was **not practical**
- Adding significantly to the end user's capital equipment, operating, and maintenance costs during project execution and the lifetime of the equipment

347



348



**430.122(B) Output Conductors-Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems**

Branch circuit or feeder conductors supplying power conversion equipment included as part of an adjustable-speed drive system shall have an ampacity not less than 125 percent of the rated input current to the power conversion equipment [430.122(A)].

The output conductors between the power conversion equipment and the motor must have an ampacity equal to or larger than 125 percent of the motor full-load current [430.122(B)].

Conductor between power conversion equipment and the motor permitted to have an ampacity equal to or greater than the larger of 125 percent of the motor full load current or the ampacity of the minimum conductor size marked on the power conversion equipment for power conversion equipment that is listed and marked as "Suitable for Output Motor Conductor Protection"

353

**430.122(D) Several Motors or a Motor and Other Loads**

- New requirement clarifies sizing of conductors for **several motors or motor(s) and other load(s)** that include **adjustable-speed drive systems and power conversion equipment** needs to be based on the **rated input current** to the power conversion equipment in the calculations (*not HP rating of the motor on the output of the power conversion equipment*)
- Requirements for sizing motor circuit conductors for several motors or motor(s) and other load(s) are still found at 430.24
- Sizing of motor circuit conductors for several motors or motor(s) and other load(s) involving **adjustable-speed drive systems and power conversion equipment** is now addressed at new **430.122(D)**
- This material is appropriately located at **430.122**, which covers conductor sizing for adjustable-speed drive systems and power conversion equipment

354

**430.122(D) Several Motors or Motor(s) and Other Load(s)-Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems With Power Conversion Equipment**

Conductors supplying several motors or motor(s) and other load(s), including power conversion equipment, required to have calculated ampacity in accordance with 430.24, using the rated input current of the power conversion equipment

Output conductors between power conversion equipment and the motor must have an ampacity equal to or larger than 125 percent of the motor full-load current (w/ exception) [430.122(B)]

355



356



### 440.9 Grounding and Bonding – Rooftop HACR Equipment

- Outdoor metallic raceway systems that use “**compression-type fittings**” required to contain a **wire-type equipment grounding conductor (EGC)** when installed outdoors on a roof to supply heating, air-conditioning, and refrigeration (HACR) equipment.
- Previously, outdoor portions of metallic raceway systems that use **non-threaded fittings** were required to contain a wire-type EGC when installed outdoors on a roof to supply multimotor and combination-load equipment.
- 2017 NEC rule was intended to **not apply** to metallic raceway systems that utilize **threaded connections** at couplings and conduits, such as **RMC** and **IMC** as these fittings are unlikely to separate even under slight abuse or movement.
- Intended for metallic wiring systems such as **electrical metallic tubing (EMT)** that utilize “**non-threaded fittings**”.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

357

### 440.9 Grounding and Bonding – Rooftop HACR Equipment (cont.)

- Outdoor metallic raceway systems that use “**compression-type fittings**” required to contain a **wire-type equipment grounding conductor (EGC)** when installed outdoors on a roof to supply heating, air-conditioning, and refrigeration (HACR) equipment. (cont.)
- Problems arose as EMT compression-type fitting has threads (*not the type of threads that CMP-11 was referring to at 440.9*), but threads none the less.
- More appropriate term was needed here.
- For the 2020 NEC, the term “**non-threaded fittings**” was replaced with “**compression-type fittings**” to give a **more appropriate description** of the type of fitting that is being targeted at 440.9 for a companion wire-type EGC to be installed in outdoor portions of metallic raceway systems.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

358

### 440.9 Grounding and Bonding-Rooftop HACR Equipment

Where **multimotor and combination-load equipment** is installed outdoors on a roof, a wire type equipment grounding conductor is required to be installed in outdoor portions of metallic raceway systems that utilize **non-threaded compression-type fittings**.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

359

### 440.32 Single Motor-Compressor – Minimum Circuit Ampacity

- Revision clarifies that **125 percent** is to be applied to **either** the branch-circuit selection current **or** the rated load current, **whichever is greater** for the branch-circuit conductors supplying a single motor-compressor.
- Incorrect assumption to assume that the 125 percent for sizing of the branch-circuit conductors supplying a single motor-compressor was only to apply to the full load compressor rated current, and not the branch-circuit selection current.
- Section was reformatted into a **list format** to help with the clarity.
- This is a **clarification more than a revision** as this has been true since the **1971 NEC** when Article 440 (*Air-Conditioning and Refrigerating Equipment*) became part of the *NEC*.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

360

### 440.32 Single Motor-Compressor - Minimum Circuit Ampacity

Branch-circuit conductors supplying a single motor-compressor to have an ampacity not less than the greater of 125 percent of the motor-compressor rated-load current or 125 percent of the branch-circuit selection current.

361

### 440.32 Single Motor-Compressor - Minimum Circuit Ampacity

Breezy Cool Air-Conditioning Equipment	
Model Number RAKA-36JAZ	MFD 03/99
Serial Number 5340 F0994 8995	Outdoor Use
Volts - 208/230 Phase 1	Hertz 60
Compressor RLA - 18.0/18.0	LRA 96
Outdoor Fan Motor FLA - 1.3	HP 1/5
Minimum supply circuit ampacity	24/24 amp
Max. fuse or circuit breaker size*	40/40 amp
Min. fuse or circuit breaker size*	30/30 amp
Design pressure high	300 PSIG
Design pressure low	150 PSIG
Outdoor units factor charge	77 OZ. R22
Total system charge	OZ. R22

\*HACR type breaker for USA  
See instructions inside access panel

Minimum Supply Circuit Ampacity -  $18 A \times 1.25 = 22.5 A + 1.3 A = 23.8$  Amperes

362

### 445.6 Listing (Generators)

- New provisions added to require **stationary generators** of 600 volts and less to be **listed**
- Exception for **one-of-a-kind** or **custom manufactured generators** permitted to be field labeled by a field evaluation body
- Intentional efforts have been instituted for the last few *Code* cycles to put into place **listing requirements** for specific equipment, wiring methods, etc. throughout the *NEC*
- Addition of listing requirements for stationary generators will address **safety concerns** for both the electric and fuel control for stationary generators that are rated 600 volts and below
- The *International Building Code* requires all emergency and legally required standby generators to be listed

363

### 445.6 Listing Requirements for Stationary Generators

364

### 445.18(D) Emergency Shutdown at One- and Two-Family Dwelling Units

- New requirements added to require a readily accessible **outdoor emergency generator shutdown device** for generators (other than cord-and-plug-connected generators) installed at one- and two-family dwelling units
- This new requirement primarily based upon providing **first responders** an outdoor emergency generator shutdown device in an **emergency situation** such as a fire, gas leak, structural damage, or flooding
- Very challenging when the emergency generator shutdown device was installed in an **indoor location** of a dwelling unit area such as a basement
- New requirement will further enhance the safety of emergency responders
- New requirement for an outdoor emergency generator shutdown device is a **companion requirement** for an **emergency disconnecting means** for a one- or two-family dwelling be installed and located on the outside of the structure (see 230.85)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

365

### 445.18(D) Emergency Shutdown Device at Dwelling Units

Can be (but not required to be) this

An outdoor emergency generator shutdown device is required for generators installed at one- and two-family dwelling units (other than cord-and-plug-connected generators)

366

### 450.9 Horizontal Transformer Top Prohibited as Storage

- New sentence added to **prohibit** horizontal top surfaces of transformers from being used as a **storage area**
- A **marking requirement** was added prohibiting such actions
- The top of a floor-mounted transformer seems to be a **"catch-all" storage shelf** and a convenient spot to store janitor supplies, rags, replacement parts, tools, etc. commonly found to electrical equipment rooms or closets
- Transformers are not designed, intended, identified, or listed for that type of an application
- Common problem encountered by both fire and electrical inspectors
- This new Code language will assist the enforcement community in requiring the tops of these transformers be kept clear of stored items and debris

Copyright © IAEI 2020

367

### 450.9 Horizontal Transformer Tops Prohibited as Storage

Horizontal top surfaces of transformers are prohibited from being used as a storage area and a marking requirement was added prohibiting such actions

368



### 480.7(G) Identification of Power Sources (Storage Batteries)

- New requirements were added for **directory** and **identification of power sources** for storage batteries
- A disconnecting means is required to be provided for all ungrounded conductors derived from a stationary battery system with a **voltage over 60 volts dc**, installed readily accessible and located within sight of the battery system
- Similar to directories and identification of power sources required for such systems as **interconnected electric power production sources** [see 705.10], **stand-alone systems** [see 710.10], and **direct current microgrids** [see 712.10]
- These new directory provisions will address ongoing concerns expressed by fire service personnel and other **first responders**


Copyright © IAEE 2020

369

### 480.7(G) Identification of Power Sources

**CAUTION: MULTIPLE SOURCES OF POWER**

**BATTERY STORAGE DISCONNECT LOCATED AT NE CORNER OF BUILDING**



Facilities with **utility services and battery systems** required to display **plaques or directories** in accordance with 705.10 (*Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources*) and 712.10 (*Direct Current Microgrids*)

Facilities with **stand-alone systems** require a permanent **plaque or directory** to be installed in accordance with 710.10 (*Stand-Alone Systems*)

Copyright © IAEE 2020

370


### 490.21(A)(5) Retrofit Trip Units - Interrupting Devices for Equipment Over 1000 Volts, Nominal

- **Retrofit trip units** are now required to be **listed for use** with the specific circuit breaker with which it is installed
- For circuit breakers and equipment rated over 1000 volts, nominal, retrofit trip units have become more commonplace over the past decade
- Retrofit trip units are designed to replace conventional electromechanical series overload trip devices, thermal magnetic overcurrent releases, and older style electronic trip devices to provide **greater accuracy, reliability, and functionality**
- Provides **life extension** of older circuit breakers at a fraction of the cost of a new circuit breaker without modifying the switchboard, switchgear, etc.
- Retrofit trip units are typically listed and evaluated for one manufacturer's particular circuit breaker

Copyright © IAEE 2020

371

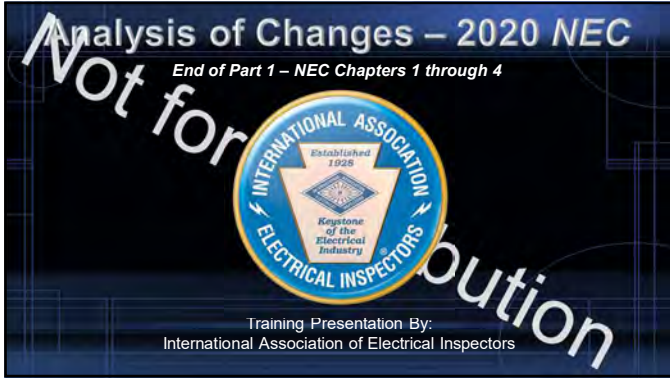
### 490.21(A)(5) Retrofit Trip Units Circuit Breakers for Equipment Over 1000 Volts, Nominal



Retrofit trip units required to be **listed for use** with the specific circuit breaker with which they are installed

Copyright © IAEE 2020


372



373

# Analysis of Changes – 2020 NEC

Part 2 – NEC Chapters 5 through 9



Training Presentation By:  
International Association of Electrical Inspectors

1

# Licensing Agreement

- This program is licensed solely for the purpose of in-person electrical education and training by the licensee.
- Analysis of Changes-NEC-2020* training presentation is prohibited from being further copied, broadcast, posted online, sublicensed, used for on-line training or in any way further distributed or displayed for any other purpose by the licensee.




Copyright © IAEI 2020

2

# National Electrical Code® (NEC)

- Portions of this material are reprinted with permission from the 2020 edition of the National Electrical Code® copyright © 2019 National Fire Protection Association. This material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the reference subject which is represented solely by the standard in its entirety which can be obtained from the NFPA at [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org) and can be viewed at [www.nfpa.org/70](http://www.nfpa.org/70). Also available from IAEI at [www.iaei.org/NEC20](http://www.iaei.org/NEC20).
- National Electrical Code®, NFPA 70®, NEC®, and the NEC Logo™ are trademarks of the National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02169



Copyright © IAEI 2020

3

# Analysis of Change-2020 NEC



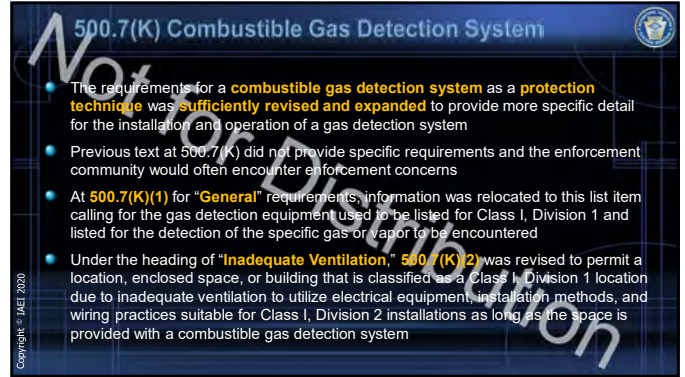

Copyright © IAEI 2020

4

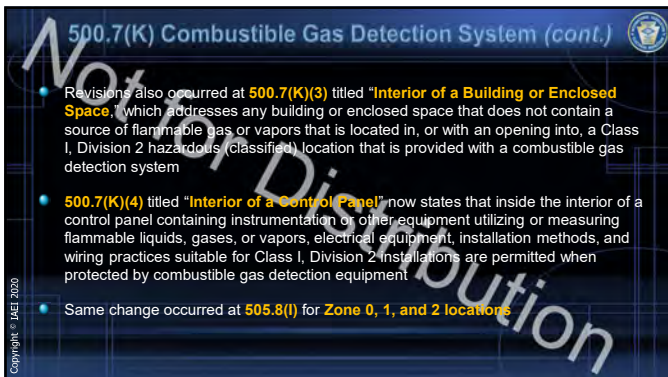




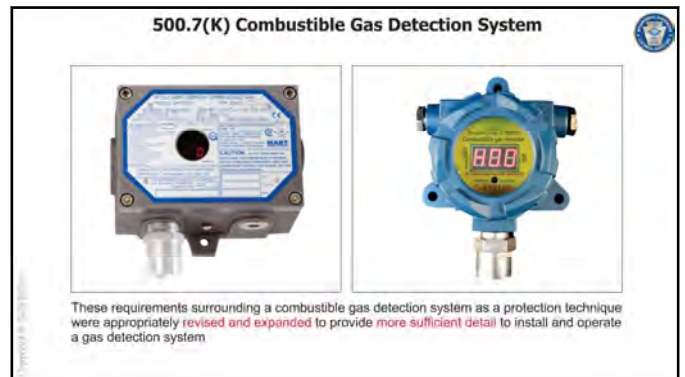
5



6



7



8

### 500.7 Protections Techniques for Hazardous (Classified) Locations

- Four new **protection techniques** were added for protection of electrical and electronic equipment in hazardous (classified) locations
- The requirements of 500.7 now contained **(16) protection techniques** for electrical and electronic equipment in hazardous (classified) locations
- New protection techniques include:
  - 500.7(L) Inherently Safe Optical Radiation "op is"
  - 500.7(M) Protected Optical Radiation "op pr"
  - 500.7(N) Optical System With Interlock "op sh"
  - 500.7(O) Protection by Skin Effect Trace Heating "IEEE 844.1"

Copyright © IAEE, 2020

9

### 500.7 Protections Techniques for Hazardous (Classified) Locations (cont.)

- Four new **protection techniques** were added for protection of electrical and electronic equipment in hazardous (classified) locations (cont.)
- Three of these new protection techniques involves **optical radiation**
- Optical radiation** is absorbed by surfaces or particles, causing them to heat up, and under certain circumstances this may allow them to attain a temperature which will ignite a surrounding explosive atmosphere
- These types of protection for **optical radiation** have been added based on UL Product Standard **UL 60079-28 (Standard for Explosive Atmospheres - Part 28: Protection of Equipment and Transmission Systems Using Optical Radiation)**

Copyright © IAEE, 2020

10

### 500.7 Protections Techniques for Hazardous (Classified) Locations (cont.)

- Four new **protection techniques** were added for protection of electrical and electronic equipment in hazardous (classified) locations (cont.)
- The fourth new protection technique added at 500.7(O) pertains to protection by **skin effect trace heating**
- Skin effect heating is used specifically for providing indirect heat to longer runs of piping from a single electrical supply source
- Same **optical radiation protection techniques** were added at 505.9(G) for Zone 0, 1, and 2 locations and 506.9(G) for Zone 20, 21, and 22 locations
- Same **skin effect trace heating protection techniques** were added at 505.8(N) for Zone 1 or Zone 2 Locations and at 506.8(N) for Zone 2 or Zone 22 Locations

Copyright © IAEE, 2020

11

### 500.7 Protections Techniques for Hazardous (Classified) Locations

Technique	Location
(A) Explosionproof Apparatus	Class I, Division 1 or 2 locations
(B) Dust Ignitionproof	Class II, Division 1 or 2 locations
(C) Dusttight	Class II, Div 2 or Class III Div 1 or 2 locations
(D) Purged and Pressurized	Any classified location for which it is identified
(E) Intrinsic Safety	Class I, II, or III, Division 1 or 2 locations
(F) Nonincendive Circuit	Class I or II, Div 2 or Class III, Div 1 or 2 locations
(G) Nonincendive Equipment	Class I or II, Div 2 or Class III, Div 1 or 2 locations
(H) Nonincendive Component	Class I or II, Div 2 or Class III, Div 1 or 2 locations
(I) Oil Immersion	Class I, Division 2
(J) Hermetically Sealed	Class I or II, Div 2 or Class III, Div 1 or 2 locations
(K) Combustible Gas Detection System	Class I, Division 1 or 2 (industrial restricted)
(L) Inherently Safe Optical Radiation	Class I or II, Division 1 or 2 locations
(M) Protected Optical Radiation	Class I or II, Division 2 locations
(N) Optical System With Interlock	Class I or II, Division 1 or 2 locations
(O) Protection by Skin Effect Trace Heating	Class I, II, or III, Division 2 (for which it is listed)
(P) Other Protection Techniques	Other protection techniques (identified for use)

Copyright © IAEE, 2020

12

### 501.10(A)(1) Wiring Methods – Class I, Division 1 Locations

- Type TC-ER-HL cable and Type P cable were added as two new wiring methods for Class I, Division 1 locations
- Wiring methods in a Class I, Division 1 location are now open to (7) types of wiring methods
- Type TC-ER-HL cable permitted where not subject to physical damage and terminated with fittings listed for the location
- Type P cable permitted with metal braid armor, with an overall jacket, terminated with fittings listed for the location
- Both Type TC-ER-HL cable and Type P cable are limited to industrial establishments with restricted public access, where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation

Copyright © JAEI 2020

13

### 501.10(A)(1) Wiring Methods – Class I, Division 1 Locations (cont.)

- Type TC-ER-HL cable and Type P cable were added as two new wiring methods for Class I, Division 1 locations (cont.)
- These wiring methods will allow new and innovative designs and materials technologies to be employed in these hazardous (classified) location applications, providing new solutions to existing, long standing, hazardous conditions
- Same wiring methods were accepted as identified wiring methods for a Class I, Division 2 location at 502.10(A)(1)(6) and (7); for a Class II, Division 1 location at 502.10(A)(2)(7) and (8); and for a Class II, Division 2 location at 502.10(B)(1)(1)
- Type TC-ER-HL cable and Type P cable were also recognized as identified wiring methods for Zone 1 and 2 locations at 505.15(B)(1), 505.15(C)(2), and 505.15(B)(2)

Copyright © JAEI 2020


14

### 501.10(A)(1) Wiring Methods - Class I, Division 1 Locations

Two additional wiring methods have been incorporated into 501.10(A)(1) as acceptable wiring methods in Class I, Division 1 locations



Type TC-ER-HL cable where not subject to physical damage and terminated with fittings listed for the location



Type P cable with metal braid armor, with an overall jacket, terminated with fittings listed for the location

Both limited to industrial establishments with restricted public access, where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation

Copyright © JAEI 2020

15

### Table 505.9(C)(2)(4) Equipment Suitability

- Table 505.9(C)(2)(4) Types of Protection Designation was replaced with an updated applicability table and is now Table 505.9(C)(2)(4) Equipment Suitability
- The headings are now (L to R), "Type of Protection," "Marking," and "Permitted Location"
- Equipment Protection Levels (EPL) were added to align with the introduction of this concept in the UL 60079 product standards
- EPL is rigidly aligned with the Zone and the varying of this relationship based on a risk assessment per the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) reference standard IEC 60079-14 is NOT included
- Same change occurred at Table 506.9(C)(2)(3) for Zone 20, 21, and 22 Locations

Copyright © JAEI 2020

16



**Table 505.9(C)(2)(4) Equipment Suitability (in Part)**

Type of Protection	Marking	Permitted Location
Associated Apparatus for Zone 0	(ia)	Unclassified <sup>a</sup>
Associated Apparatus for Zone 1	(ib)	Unclassified <sup>a</sup>
Associated Apparatus for Zone 2	(ic)	Unclassified <sup>a</sup>
Associated Pressurization Equipment <sup>b</sup>	(id)	Unclassified <sup>a</sup>
Equipment Suitable for Use in Zone 0		
Equipment Suitable for Use in Class I, Division 1		
Flameproof Enclosure	d; db	
Intrinsic Safety	ib	
Increased Safety	e; eb	
Pressurized Enclosure	p; px, pxb, py, pyb	
Encapsulation	m; mb	
Powder Filling	q; qb	Zone 1
Liquid Immersion	o; ob	
Electrical Resistance Trace Heating	60079-30-1, with EPL Gb <sup>c</sup>	
Skin Effect Trace Heating	IEEE B44.1, with EPL Gb <sup>c</sup>	
Optical Radiation, Inherently Safe	op ls, with EPL Gb <sup>c</sup>	
Optical Radiation, with Interlock	op sh, with EPL Gb <sup>c</sup>	
Optical Radiation, Protected	op px, with EPL Gb <sup>c</sup>	
EPL Gb, with Suitable Type of Protection <sup>d</sup>		

17

### 511.12 GFCI Protection at Commercial Garages, Repair and Storage

- Revision to 511.12 now points and aligns GFCI requirements for commercial garages to GFCI requirements of **210.8(B)**
- 210.8(B)(8) calls for **all** 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in garages, service bays, and similar areas (*other than vehicle exhibition halls and showrooms*) to have GFCI protection for personnel (*not just those receptacles where electrical diagnostic equipment, electrical hand tools, or portable lighting equipment are to be used*)
- Previous 511.12 required all 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in **areas where electrical diagnostic equipment, electrical hand tools, or portable lighting equipment** are to be used to shall have GFCI protection for personnel

18

### 511.12 GFCI Protection at Commercial Garages, Repair and Storage (cont.)

- Revision to 511.12 now points and aligns GFCI requirements for commercial garages to GFCI requirements of **210.8(B)** (cont.)
- By simply pointing 511.12 back to 210.8(B), these two sections will be in alignment
- Same alignment of GFCI protection for **all** 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles for aircraft hangers occurred at **513.12** with a reference to 210.8(B)(8)

19

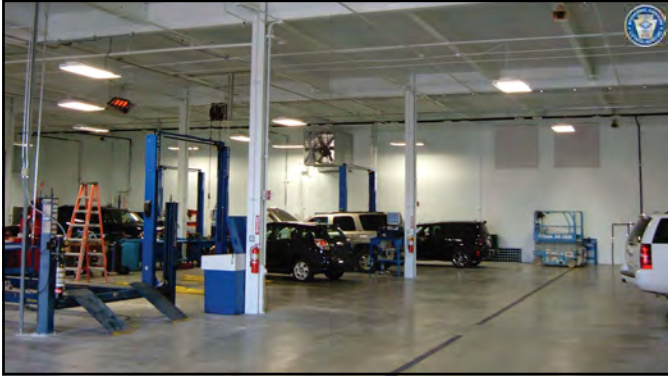
### 511.12 GFCI Protection at Commercial Repair and Storage Garages

GFCI protection for personnel to be provided as required in 210.8(B)

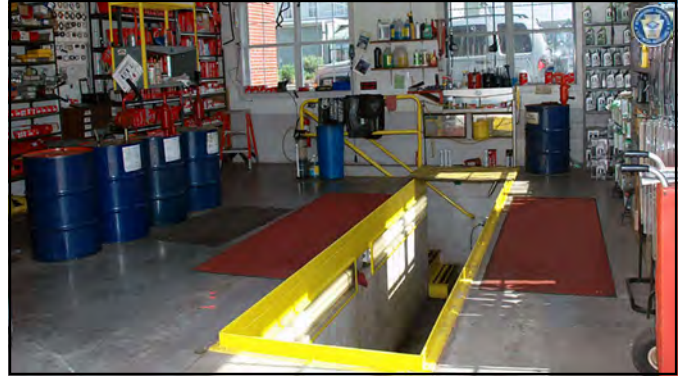
Not limited to just areas where electrical equipment, hand tools, or portable lighting equipment are used

GFCI protection for personnel required for **ALL** 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in non-dwelling unit garages, service bays, and similar areas (*other than vehicle exhibition halls and showrooms*)

20



21



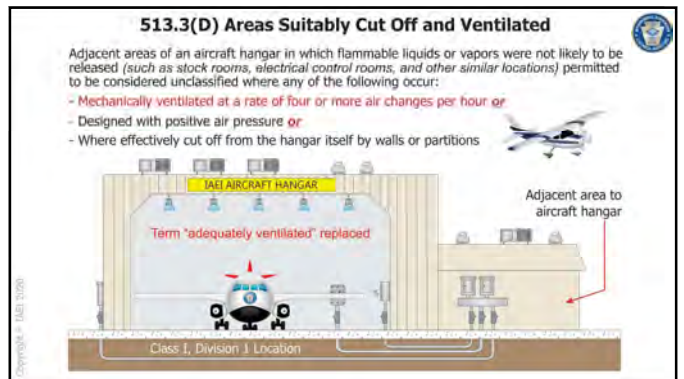
22

**513.3(D) Areas Suitably Cut Off and Ventilated**

- Revision clarifies what **"adequately ventilated"** means for an adjacent area of an aircraft hangar by replacing "adequately ventilated" with **"mechanically ventilated at a rate of four or more air changes per hour"**
- Previous language stated that "adjacent areas" in which flammable liquids or vapors are not likely to be released were permitted to be considered unclassified where the space was "adequately ventilated" *and* where effectively cut off from the hangar itself by walls or partitions
- Adjacent areas could include areas such as stock rooms, electrical control rooms, and other similar locations
- New Code language for **513.3(D)** was crafted and inspired by the existing Code language at **511.3(E)(1)** for adjacent areas at a commercial repair garage

Copyright © IAET 2023

23



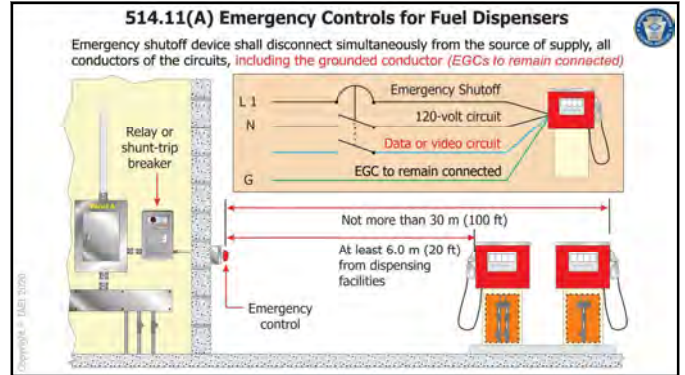
24

### 514.11(A) Emergency Electrical Disconnects for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities

- Revisions also make it clear that the **equipment grounding conductors (EGC)** should not be disconnected by the emergency disconnect
- Grounded conductor** should be disconnected simultaneously with the all the other conductors when the emergency disconnect is activated
- Previously, some jurisdictions were requiring the EGC to be included as one of the required conductors that needed to be disconnected in order to fulfil the requirement of 514.11(A)
- New *Code* language added after NFPA 30A extracted text to say that the **"equipment grounding conductors shall remain connected"**
- Additional *Code* language will provide AHJ the clear *Code* language needed to enforce this emergency disconnect rule and allow installers to comply with this requirement

Copyright © IAEI 2020

25



26

### 517.10(B) Applicability (Health Care Facilities)

- New areas **not covered** by the wiring and protection methods of **Part II of Article 517** [*intramuscular injections (immunizations), etc.*] have been added to 517.10(B)
- Areas used exclusively for intramuscular injections (immunizations), psychiatry and psychotherapy, alternative medicine, and optometry are areas **not applicable** to Part II of Article 517
- Part II of Article 517 means that the wiring methods in a **patient care space** must consist of a **metal raceway system** or a cable having a metallic armor or sheath assembly that qualifies as an EGC in accordance with 250.118 [517.13(A)] **and** an have **insulated copper EGC** installed with the metallic raceway [517.13(B)] (*sometimes referred to as a "redundant" grounding*)
- Shock hazards are greatly reduced with **no invasive procedures** performed and **no electro-medical equipment** connected to the body or patient

Copyright © IAEI 2020

27



28



### 517.16 Use of Isolated Ground Receptacles for Health Care Facilities

- Further revision to 517.16 provides better explanation of use of **isolated receptacles outside the patient care vicinity**
- Where installed, an isolated ground receptacle **cannot eliminate the two equipment grounding paths** required by 517.13
- 517.16(B)(1)** revised for clarity to state that the equipment grounding terminals of isolated ground receptacles installed in a patient care space shall be connected to an isolated EGC **AND** this isolated EGC must be **"installed in a wiring method described in 517.13(A)"**
- Both grounding methods required in **517.13(A) (metal wiring method)** and **517.13(B) (wire-type insulated EGC)** must be present in wiring methods used for isolated grounding receptacles in addition to a separate EGC using a **green insulation with a yellow stripe** connected to the equipment grounding terminal of the isolated grounding receptacle terminal

Copyright © IAEI 2020

29

### 517.16 Use of Isolated Ground Receptacles

An isolated ground receptacle (if installed) shall not defeat the purposes of the equipment grounding systems detailed in 517.13 (two paths for equipment grounding in a patient care space)

- 1 Metal raceway that qualifies as EGC [517.13(A)]
- 2 Additional insulated EGC [517.13(B)(1)]
- 3 Isolated ground EGC [517.16(B)(1) and 250.146(D)]

Note: Isolated grounding type receptacles are not permitted in a patient care vicinity but are permitted in a patient care space

Isolated EGC installed in a wiring method described in 517.13(A)

Equipment grounding terminals of isolated ground receptacles installed in a patient care space shall be connected to an isolated equipment grounding conductor AND this isolated equipment grounding conductor must be "installed in a wiring method described in 517.13(A)"

Copyright © IAEI 2020

30

### 517.17(D) Performance Testing of GFP Equipment at Health Care Facilities

- Revision were made to provide clarity by requiring a **qualified person (written record)** to perform a **test process of GFP** primary current injection
- Previously, GFP systems were required to be performance tested when the equipment ground-fault protection was first installed with little detail
- This performance testing is now required to be conducted by a **qualified person(s)** using a test process in accordance with the **instruction** provided with the equipment and a **written record** of this testing must be kept and made available to the authority having jurisdiction
- Same *Code* language found at **230.95(C)** was inserted at 517.17(D) for performance testing of ground-fault protection systems of health care facilities

Copyright © IAEI 2020

31

### 517.17(D) Performance Testing of GFP Systems at Health Care Facilities

When ground-fault protection of equipment is first installed, each level required to be performance tested to ensure compliance with 517.17(C) (*selectively coordinated*)

Testing to be conducted by a qualified person(s) using a test process in accordance with the instruction provided with the equipment

Written record of this testing to be kept and made available to the authority having jurisdiction

Copyright © IAEI 2020

32

### 517.26 Application of Other Articles (Health Care Facilities)

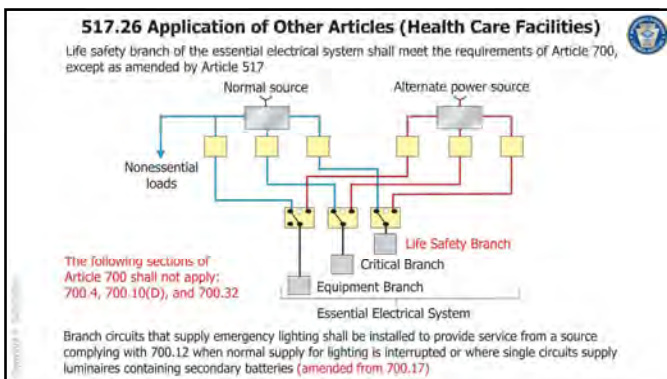
- New text was added to give needed guidance to what parts of Article 700 that Article 517 amends
- Revision added **four specific amendments** to Article 517 from requirements of Article 700 that does not apply to the **life safety branch of the essential electrical system** of a health care facility
  - 700.4** (emergency system equipment required to be suitable for the available fault current) does not apply
  - 700.10(D)** (fire protection) does not apply
  - 700.17** (Branch Circuits for Emergency Lighting) has been **replaced** with a provision that states that branch circuits that supply emergency lighting is required to be installed to provide service from a source complying with 700.12 (Sources of Power) when normal supply for lighting is interrupted or where single circuits supply luminaires containing secondary batteries
  - 700.32** (selective coordination) is also "amended" from Article 517

33

### 517.26 Application of Other Articles (Health Care Facilities) (cont.)

- New text was added to give needed guidance to what parts of Article 700 that Article 517 amends (cont.)
- Revisions brought about as a result of the work of the **NFPA 99 Electrical Systems Technical Committee**
- Changes meant to improve the **correlation** between NFPA 99 (Health Care Facilities Code) and the NEC
- NFPA 99 has jurisdiction over **performance requirements** for electrical systems in health care facilities while the NEC has jurisdiction over the **installation requirements**
- Life safety branch of the essential electrical system of a health care facility is required to conform to Article 700 with the exception of the performance requirements as described earlier

34



35

### 517.30(B)(3) Sources of Power – Battery Systems

- Battery systems** are now permitted to serve as the **alternate source** for all or part of an **essential electrical system** of a health care facility
- Two independent sources of power** required with one being the normal power source (typically a utility supplied source of power) and one or more alternate power sources for use when the normal power source is interrupted
- Battery systems are a recognized essential electrical system source by **NFPA 99 (Health Care Facilities Code)**
- 2014 NEC recognized a battery system located on the premises as an acceptable alternate source of power for an essential electrical system
- Battery systems can supply power to critical life-support equipment until the main power can be restored

36



37

### 517.31(C)(1)(a) Identification of Essential Electrical Systems

- **Identification and marking requirements** for the life safety branch and critical branch of **essential electrical systems** was added to 517.31(C)(1)(a)
- Raceways and cables required to be **field- or factory-marked** as components of the essential electrical system at intervals **not to exceed 7.6 m (25 ft)**
- Raceways, cables, or enclosures of the life safety and critical branch of the essential electrical systems of a health care facility required be **"readily identified"** as a component of the essential electrical system (EES)
- **No specific color-coding, etc.** specified for "readily identifying" the EES
- This added identification marking requirement correlates 517.31 with the identification requirements for emergency systems in **700.10**

Copyright © IAETI 2020

38

### 517.31(C)(1)(a) Identification of Essential Electrical Systems

Raceways, cables, or enclosures of the **life safety** and **critical branch** shall be **readily identified** as a component of the **essential electrical system (EES)**

Boxes and enclosures (including transfer switches, generators, and power panels) shall be **field- or factory-marked** and identified as a component of the EES

Raceways and cables shall be field- or factory-marked as a component of the EES at intervals **not to exceed 7.6 m (25 ft)**

Copyright © IAETI 2020

39

### 518.6 Outdoor Illumination (Assembly Occupancies)

- New section added to require the working space pertaining to **outdoor fixed service equipment** at **assembly occupancies** to be provided with **proper illumination**
- Includes all working spaces about fixed service equipment, switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, or motor control centers installed outdoors that serve assembly occupancies
- Similar to the requirements of 110.26(D) and 110.34(D), this illumination **cannot be controlled by an automatic means** only (*most have manual override*)
- Lighting specifically for the illumination of this outdoor equipment is not required where the outdoor workspace is illuminated by an **adjacent light source** such as outdoor parking lot lighting
- Assembly occupancies can include, but not be is not limited to places like auditoriums, conference centers, exhibition halls, gymnasiums, churches, restaurants, etc. (*see 518.2*)

Copyright © IAETI 2020

40



### 518.6 Outdoor Illumination - Assembly Occupancies

Illumination required for working spaces about fixed service equipment, switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, or motor control centers installed outdoors that serve assembly occupancies

Control by automatic means only, not permitted

Additional lighting outlets not required where workspace is illuminated by adjacent light source

Outdoor service equipment at assembly occupancy

Javhone's Bacon Emporium  
ALL YOU CAN EAT

Copyright © IAEI 2020

41



42

### 520.25 Dimmers - Theaters, Television Studios, Etc.

Resistance- and reactor-type dimmers for theatrical use have been deleted as a recognized dimmer option

Two types of dimmers for theatrical use; autotransformer-type dimmers and solid-state dimmers

According to industry experts, resistance- and reactor-type dimmers for theatrical use have not been manufactured or produced, much less installed for at least 50 years

A dimmer switch for theatrical use allows technicians and stagehands to have more control over the lighting on stage than just a simple on/off

Copyright © IAEI 2020

43

### 520.25 Dimmers - Theaters, Television Studios, Etc.

Resistance- and reactor-type dimmers for theatrical use have been deleted from 520.25

Welcome to the Retirement Home!

Resistance- or reactor-type dimmer

Resistance- and reactor-type dimmers for theatrical use have not been manufactured or installed for at least 50 years

Copyright © IAEI 2020

44

### 520.68(A)(2) Listed Hard Usage Cords in Protected Applications

- Listed **hard usage cords or cables** (rather than extra-hard usage cords or cables) permitted for use with portable stage equipment in **protected applications**
- Listed, hard usage (junior hard service) cord or cable is permitted where (1) **protected from physical damage**, (2) protected by an overcurrent protective device rated at **not over 20 amperes**, and (3) does not exceed **30 m (100 ft) in length**
- As far back as the **1996 NEC**, listed hard usage cord has been allowed in limited applications in Article 520 theatrical-type occupancies
- Listed hard usage cord has a **proven track record** and performs safely in limited applications where not subject to physical damage
- No longer a reason to require extra-hard usage cord only in these protected applications

Copyright © IAEI 2020

45

### 520.68(A)(2) Listed Hard Usage Cord in Protected Applications

Listed hard usage (junior hard service) cords or cables (rather than extra-hard usage cords or cables) permitted for use with portable stage equipment in protected applications



The cord or cable must be protected from physical damage, protected by an overcurrent protective device rated at not over 20 amperes, and the cord or cable does not exceed 30 m (100 ft) in length

Copyright © IAEI 2020

46

### 525.20(G) Protection of Flexible Cords or Cables at Carnivals, Circuses, Fairs, and Similar Events

- Non-conductive matting** for flexible cords or cables accessible at carnivals, etc. must be **secured to in place to the walkway surface** to minimize tripping hazard
- This section now allows either **secured matting** or an **approved alternate protection method**
- Previously, the nonconductive matting could create a **greater tripping hazard** than the uncovered cables
- Burying a cable to prevent a tripping hazard is also an option (*cable does not have to comply with the burial depth requirements of 300.5*)
- Wiring methods at carnivals, circuses, and county fairs should not be given the same latitude given temporary construction sites because they are **open to the public** unlike a construction jobsite

Copyright © IAEI 2020

47

### 525.20(G) Protection of Flexible Cords or Cables

Flexible cords or cables accessible to the public shall be arranged to minimize tripping hazards



Flexible cords or cables permitted to be covered with nonconductive matting **secured to the walkway surface or protected with another approved cable protection method**

The matting or other protection method cannot constitute a greater tripping hazard than the uncovered cables

Copyright © IAEI 2020

48

### Article 545 Manufactured Buildings and Relocatable Structures

- A new Part II was added to Article 545 for "**Relocatable Structures**" with a definition of same added at 545.2
- **Relocatable Structures:** A factory-assembled structure or structures transportable in one or more sections that are built on a permanent chassis and designed to be used as other than a dwelling unit without a permanent foundation.
- Mobile office units, mobile classrooms, etc. are typically a factory-assembled structure and are not constructed and assembled on site, they are mobile and towed to the site much like a mobile home (*but they are not a "home"*)
- There was a need for a **new approach** to properly install and maintain electrical supply and equipment to these mobile structures that **did not properly fit into any of the existing articles** in Chapter 5 of the *NEC*

Copyright © IAEE, 2020

49

### Article 545 Manufactured Buildings and Relocatable Structures (cont.)

- A new Part II was added to Article 545 for "**Relocatable Structures**" with a definition of same added at 545.2 (*cont.*)
- In previous editions of the *Code*, any attempt to fit these relocatable structures under Article 550 was **difficult and ill-fitting at best**
- Quite often there were Article 550 requirements that were **impracticable or unnecessary** but not excluded while trying to apply Article 550 to these mobile units
- The previous requirements for "mobile homes used as other than dwelling units," formally covered at 550.4 in Article 550, have been incorporated into **new Part II of Article 545**
- The term "**relocatable structures**" was chosen as it is already a **commonly used industry term** that still identifies the portable nature of these units

Copyright © IAEE, 2020

50



51



52



### 547.5(G) GFCI Protection at Agricultural Buildings

- Revision eliminates GFCI protection for receptacles rated **above 125-volt, single-phase, 20-ampere** (240-volt and 3-phase receptacles) at agricultural buildings
- GFCI protection is now required to be provided as required in 210.8(B), which would cover areas like bathrooms, rooftops, sink areas, etc.
- GFCI protection is only required for **125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles** installed in areas having an equipotential plane, outdoors, damp or wet locations, and dirt confinement areas for livestock
- Equipment such as portable air compressors, welders, milk pumps, feed augers and conveyors often cause **unintended or unwanted tripping of GFCI protective devices**, which can create a hazard or cause property damage

Copyright © IAEI 2020

53

### 547.5(G) GFCI Protection at Agricultural Buildings

Ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection at agricultural buildings shall be provided as required in 210.8(B)

GFCI protection not required for single-phase 240-volt receptacles and three-phase receptacles

GFCI protection shall not be required for other than 125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles

Copyright © IAEI 2020

54

### 547.9 Electrical Supply from a Distribution Point (Agricultural Buildings)

- Revision provides clarity that a **distribution point** is required for livestock agricultural buildings and structures
- A "**Distribution Point**" by Article 547 standards is defined as "an electrical supply point from which service drops, service conductors, feeders, or branch circuits to buildings or structures utilized under single management are supplied"
- Branch circuits and feeders to agricultural buildings required to be supplied through a **distribution point** and **overcurrent protection required** for all underground feeder and branch circuit installations
- More than one distribution point on the same premises permitted

Copyright © IAEI 2020

55

### 547.9 Electrical Supply from a Distribution Point (Agricultural Buildings) (cont.)

- Revision provides clarity that a **distribution point** is required for livestock agricultural buildings and structures (cont.)
- Service disconnecting means and overcurrent protection for each set of feeders or branch circuits required to be located at the distribution point
- Service disconnecting means required to be installed in accordance with **Part VI of Article 230**
- Feeders or branch circuits supplied to buildings or structures to comply with the provisions of **250.32** and **Article 225, Parts I and II**
- In previous editions of the *Code*, any building or structure located on the same premises was "**permitted**" to be supplied by a distribution point (not required)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

56

### 547.9 Electrical Supply from a Distribution Point

Any agricultural building or structure for livestock located on the same premises is **required to be supplied from a distribution point** (previously "permitted" to be supplied from a distribution point)

Existing agricultural building or structure (for other than livestock) and any existing non-Article 547 buildings or structures is permitted to be supplied in accordance with 250.32(B)(1) Ex. No. 1

57

### 550.13(B) GFCI Protection for Mobile and Manufactured Homes

- Language was revised to include **210.8(A)**, which will provide GFCI protection to those additional locations at a dwelling covered in 210.8(A) for a mobile or manufactured home such as a **detached garage**
- 210.8(A)** revision will allow CMP-7 (purview over Article 550) to stop "chasing the tail" of CMP-2 (purview over Article 210) every time CMP-2 makes a change to the GFCI protection requirements for conventional dwelling units at 210.8(A)
- Revision also **eliminates GFCI protection** for receptacles rated above 125-volt, single-phase, 20-ampere (**240-volt and 3-phase receptacles**)
- These revisions are a step in the right direction in equaling GFCI protection for mobile or manufactured homes with GFCI protection at a conventional dwelling unit

58

### 550.13(B) GFCI Required for Mobile and Manufactured Homes

Ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection shall be provided as required in 210.8(A)

GFCI protection **not required** for other than 125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed within a mobile or manufactured home in the following areas:

- (1) Compartments accessible from outside the unit
- (2) Bathrooms (including receptacles in luminaires)
- (3) Kitchens, where receptacles are installed to serve countertop surfaces
- (4) Sinks, where receptacle(s) are installed within 1.8 m (6 ft) of the outer edge of a sink
- (5) Dishwashers

Overhead cut-away view of mobile or manufactured home

Compartment accessible from outside the unit

⬆ = Required GFCI protected receptacles

59

### 550.32(E) Supply Receptacles for Mobile or Manufactured Homes

- Revisions clarify that a **supply receptacle providing power** to a mobile or manufactured home in accordance with 550.10 **need not be provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection (GFCI) protection**
- Receptacles located **outside** a mobile or manufactured home are required to be provided with **GFCI protection as specified by 210.8(A)**
- Revision in the 2017 *NEC* at **210.8(B)** resulted in the expansion of GFCI protection for non-dwelling unit receptacles to include all **single-phase receptacles rated 150 volts to ground or less, 50 amperes or less**; and **three-phase receptacles rated 150 volts to ground or less, 100 amperes or less**
- 210.8(A)** for the 2020 *NEC* will now encompass GFCI protection requirements for receptacle outlets rated at **125-volt through 250-volt** supplied by **single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground**

60

### 550.32(E) Supply Receptacles for Mobile or Manufactured Homes (cont.)

- Part of the argument against GFCI protection for supply outlets and supply cords to a mobile or manufactured home pertains to a **branch circuit** versus a **feeder**
- The definition of a **feeder assembly** at 550.2 and 550.10 clarifies that the power supply cord to a mobile home is **considered a feeder**
- GFCI protection typically associated with a branch circuit rather than a feeder
- The supply cord to a mobile home is the **main power to the unit**
- The argument is rarely if ever made for the need for GFCI protection on the **main power feeder** to a **conventional dwelling unit**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

61

### 550.32(E) Supply Receptacles for Mobile or Manufactured Homes

Receptacles located outside mobile or manufactured homes required to be provided with GFCI protection as specified by 210.8(A)



Receptacles providing power to mobile or manufactured homes in accordance with 550.10, are not required to be provided with GFCI protection

Copyright © JAEI 2020

62

### 551.40(D) Reverse Polarity Devices for RVs

- New requirements added for a **reverse polarity indicating device** (providing a **continuous visible or audible signal**) to be installed in newly manufactured recreational vehicles (RV)
- Required to respond to the **reversal of the ungrounded and the grounded conductors** in a 120-volt ac system
- Reverse polarity** at a recreational vehicle (RV) is a **known cause** of many incidents of people receiving an **electrical shock** from the RV itself
- Chance of having reverse polarity to an RV is increased as RVs are often plugged in at locations other than an RV campground
- Reverse polarity incidents are also more prevalent due to customers using adaptors to turn a 30-ampere receptacle into a 15-ampere receptacle that can be inserted backwards at the pedestal receptacle

Copyright © JAEI 2020

63

### 551.40(D) Reverse Polarity Devices for RVs (cont.)

- New requirements added for a **reverse polarity indicating device** (providing a **continuous visible or audible signal**) to be installed in newly manufactured recreational vehicles (RV) (cont.)
- Reverse polarity indicating devices are **readily available** as they are currently required for 30-ampere power supplies on **marine vessels**
- Requiring these devices could significantly **reduce shock incidents**, all of which are technically a potential electrocution in the RV world

Copyright © JAEI 2020

64



### 551.40(D) Reverse Polarity Device for RVs

A reverse polarity indicating device providing a continuous visible or audible signal is now required to be installed in recreational vehicles in accordance with the installation instructions.

The reverse polarity indicating device shall respond to the reversal of the ungrounded and the grounded conductors in a 120-volt ac system.

65

### 555.2 Definitions: (Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities)

- New definitions were added to Article 555 for clarity as these terms were previously not defined
- Several new definitions were extracted from NFPA 303-2016 (Fire Protection Standard for Marinas and Boatyards)
- Section 555.2 of Article 555 now contains fourteen definitions
- One of the new definitions (Floating Building) was relocated from previous Article 553 for floating buildings
- This previous article was deleted from the 2020 NEC and information relocated to Article 555, Part III

66

### 555.2 Definitions: (Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities)

- Section 555.2 of Article 555 now contains fourteen definitions

Berth	Marine Marina Power Outlet
Boatyard	Monorail
Bulkhead	Mooring(s)
Crane	Shore Power
Docking Facility	Slip
Floating Building	Storage, Dry Stack
Marina	Wharf

**Electrical Datum Plane** (Previous definition at 555.2 moved to 682.2) (New definition for Electrical Datum Plane added to Article 100 and assigned to CMP-7)

67

### 555.2 Definitions - Marinas, Boatyards, Etc.

New definitions were added to Article 555 for clarity as these terms were previously not defined

Several new definitions were extracted from NFPA 303-2016 (Fire Protection Standard for Marinas and Boatyards)

68

### 555.13 Bonding of Non-Current-Carrying Metal Parts (Marinas, Boatyards, Etc.)

- All metal parts in contact with the water, all metal piping, and all non-current-carrying metal parts that are **likely to become energized** shall be connected to the grounding bus in the panelboard using solid copper conductors, insulated, covered, or bare; not smaller than 8 AWG
- Connections to bonded parts shall be made in accordance with **250.8**
- Comparable with equipotential bonding grid of **680.26**
- Same issues with **voltage gradients** (differences) is present at marinas, boatyards, floating buildings, and commercial and noncommercial docking facilities
- The marine environment associated with marinas, floating buildings, docking facilities, etc. is **harsh and less compatible** with electrical equipment than most conditions presented to electrical installations

Copyright © JAEI 2020

69

### 555.13 Bonding of Non-Current-Carrying Metal Parts (Marinas, Boatyards, Etc.) (cont.)

- All metal parts in contact with the water, all metal piping, and all non-current-carrying metal parts that are **likely to become energized** shall be connected to the grounding bus in the panelboard using solid copper conductors, insulated, covered, or bare; not smaller than 8 AWG (*cont.*)
- Electrical equipment and metal parts in these marine environments are exposed to wet conditions, lightning, unusual movement, rough use by the public, extreme temperature changes, and significant UV exposure
- Combination of this environment and the normal use of these marine facilities result in conditions where equipment **failure is significant** and bonding for equipment and metal parts is critically important
- This bonding provision was located at **553.11 (Floating Building)** in the 2017 NEC

Copyright © JAEI 2020

70

### 555.13 Bonding of Non-Current-Carrying Metal Parts at Marinas, Etc.

All metal parts in contact with the water, all metal piping, and all non-current-carrying metal parts that are **likely to become energized** shall be connected to the grounding bus in the panelboard



Solid copper conductors; insulated, covered, or bare; not smaller than 8 AWG required to be used with connections to bonded parts made in accordance with 250.8

Copyright © JAEI 2020

71

### 555.35 GFP of Equipment and GFCI Protection (Marinas, Boatyards, Etc.)

- Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment (GFPE) and Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Protection divided into three parts:
  - 555.35(A)** addresses **shore power receptacles (not to exceed 30 mA)**
  - 555.35(B)** addresses **15- and 10-ampere receptacles** for other than shore power [*GFCI protection (4 to 6 mA)*]
  - 555.35(C)** addresses **feeder and branch-circuit conductors** that are installed on docking facilities (*not to exceed 100 mA*)
- Previous Code language required the overcurrent protective devices that supplied marinas, boatyards, and commercial and noncommercial docking facilities to have GFP **not exceeding 30 mA** (see 555.3 for the 2017 NEC)
- This **30 mA** maximum GFP requirement proved to be **unreliable** and **impracticable**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

72

### 555.35 GFP of Equipment and GFCI Protection (Marinas, Boatyards, Etc.) (cont.)

- Through a cumulative effect, it did not take but a few boats leaking current into the water around a marina before the 30 mA level was exceeded
- Exception** added which would exempt **transformer secondary conductors** of a separately derived system *[not exceed 3 m (10 ft)]* installed in a raceway from this GFPE protection
- Code language added to require **leakage current measurement devices**
- Where **more than three receptacles** supply shore power to boats, a **leakage current measurement device** required to be available and be used to determine leakage current **from each boat** that will utilize shore power
- Test data has shown that a great deal of the **stray current in the water** around marinas comes from the boats (vessels) themselves

Copyright © IAEI, 2020

73

### 555.35 GFPE and GFCI Protection at Marinas, Boatyards, Etc.

Shore power receptacles shall have individual GFPE not exceeding 30 milliamperes [555.35(A)(1)]

All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles (other than shore power) shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection [555.35(A)(2)]

Feeder and branch-circuit conductors installed on docking facilities shall be provided with GFPE set to open at currents not exceeding 100 milliamperes with downstream GFPE coordination permitted at the feeder overcurrent protective device [555.35(A)(3)]

74



75



76



### 555.35(B) Leakage Current Measurement Device at Marinas, Etc.

Where more than three receptacles supply shore power to boats, a leakage current measurement device shall be available and be used to determine leakage current from each boat that will utilize shore power



Leakage current measurement will provide the capability to determine when an individual boat has defective wiring or other problems contributing to hazardous voltage and current

The use of a test device will allow the facility operator to identify a boat that is creating problems

The use of a test device will also help the facility operator prevent a particular boat from contributing to hazardous voltage and current in the marina area

77

### Article 555 Part III – Floating Buildings

- Previous **Article 553 (Floating Buildings)** was deleted and requirements incorporated into **new Part III of Article 555**
- Incorporating the requirements for floating buildings into Article 555 is a **natural fit** as the two articles (*previous Article 553 and Article 555*) were **similar in nature**
- Previously, Article 555 had no parts (*it now has 3 parts*)
- Title and scope of Article 555 updated to reference **floating buildings**
- Addition of floating buildings to Article 555 will **enhance electrical safety** and usability of the NEC
- Significant change occurred at **555.4 (Location of Service Equipment)** (*formerly 555.7*) requiring the service equipment for a floating building, dock, or marina to be located **on land adjacent to the structure served** (*not on or in the structure itself or any other floating structure*)

78



79

### 590.4(G), Ex. No. 2 – Splices at Temporary Installations

- On construction sites, a **new exception** to 590.4(G) permits branch-circuits that are **permanently installed** in framed walls and ceilings to be used for **temporary power or lighting** (*with GFCI protection*)
- Previously, no provisions existed in Article 590 to allow a permanent wiring method (*branch circuits*) to be used as temporary construction lighting circuits without covers on boxes, etc.
- On a typical construction jobsite, temporary lighting becomes an issue in individual rooms leaving these rooms in the dark after drywall finishes applied
- Very common method employed to get temporary lighting in those individual rooms and areas is to string **Type NM cable** through doorways and through each room in each unit (*unsafe and unreliable*)
- These permanent wiring methods (*branch circuits*) used as temporary construction lighting circuits to be **GFCI protected** through the duration of the temporary installation

80

### 590.4(G), Ex. No. 2 – Splices at Temporary Installations (cont.)

- On construction sites, a **new exception** to 590.4(G) permits branch-circuits that are **permanently installed** in framed walls and ceilings to be used for **temporary power or lighting** (with GFCI protection) (cont.)
- Viable solution is to **temporarily energize** one or more of the **permanently installed branch circuit(s)** to provide temporary lighting in each room, bathroom, etc.
- This method requires splices in junction boxes typically located above the suspended drop-in ceiling tile (installed at a later date) without covers to energize temporary listed lighting pig tails
- New exception** stipulates that a **cover is not required** for splices installed completely inside of junction boxes with plaster rings and that **listed pigtail-type lampholders are permitted** to be installed in these ceiling-mounted junction boxes with plaster rings

Copyright © JAEI 2020

81

### 590.4(G), Ex. No. 2 Splices at Temporary Installations

A box, conduit body, or other enclosure (with a cover installed) generally required at all splice points

By exception, permanent wiring in framed walls and ceilings permitted to be used to supply temporary power or lighting with no cover for splices installed completely inside of junction boxes with plaster rings

Permanent wiring methods (branch circuits) used as temporary construction lighting circuits to be GFCI protected through the duration of the temporary installation

Copyright © JAEI 2020

82

### 590.8 Overcurrent Protective Devices (Temporary Installations)

- New section added to provide guidance in the **reuse of overcurrent protective devices** in temporary installations and the use of **current limiting overcurrent protective devices** required for solidly grounded wye electrical services of more than 150 volts to ground but not exceeding 1000 volts phase-to-phase in temporary installations
- When equipment is re-used, and that equipment has previously been subjected to environments, uses, and conditions that may not be visibly obvious, approval of that equipment is difficult in many cases
- The re-used equipment, such as overcurrent protective devices is more than likely listed equipment but could very well have been **previously used or exposed to conditions outside the scope of its listing certification**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

83

### 590.8 Overcurrent Protective Devices (Temporary Installations) (cont.)

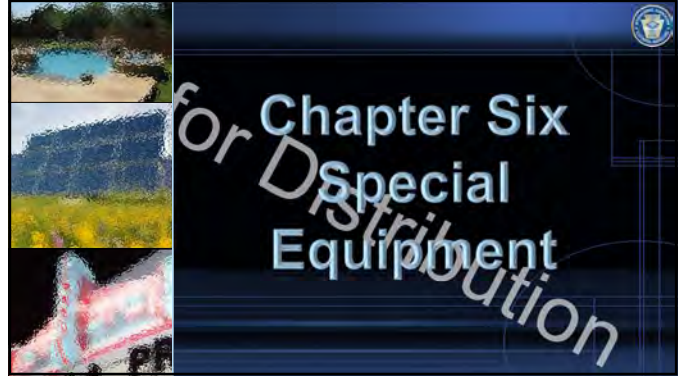
- New **590.8(A)** mandates that overcurrent protective devices be examined to ensure that these devices have been **"properly installed," "properly maintained,"** and there is **"no evidence of impending failure"** whenever these overcurrent protective devices have been previously used are installed in a temporary installation
- New **590.8(B)** addresses overcurrent protective devices used as part of the service equipment in temporary installations, calling for overcurrent protective devices for **solidly grounded wye electrical services of more than 150 volts to ground but not exceeding 1000 volts phase-to-phase** to be of the **"current limiting"** type
- Current-Limiting Overcurrent Protective Device:** "A device that, when interrupting currents in its current-limiting range, reduces the current flowing in the faulted circuit to a magnitude substantially less than that obtainable in the same circuit if the device were replaced with a solid conductor having comparable impedance."

Copyright © JAEI 2020

84



85



86

### 600.2 Definitions – Electric Signs and Outline Lighting

- Four new definitions were added to 600.2 pertaining to **retrofit kits for signs** (1) Host Sign, (2) Retrofit Kit, General Use, (3) Retrofit Kit, Sign Specific, (4) Subassembly
- Luminaires are typically standardized and are typically mass produced, whereas **signs** are typically **custom made** and have **distinctly different structural and illumination characteristics**, including multi-location corporate signage programs which are dissimilar in size
- A retrofit kit for a sign typically has **more "moving parts"** to deal with than a retrofit kit for a luminaire
- Concentrated efforts has been pursued in the sign industry to upgrade signs to achieve **greater energy efficiency** by replacing in-place illumination systems such as florescent with light emitting diodes (LED) technology

Copyright © IAEE 2020

87

### 600.2 Definitions – Electric Signs and Outline Lighting (cont.)

- Four new definitions were added to 600.2 pertaining to **retrofit kits for signs** (1) Host Sign, (2) Retrofit Kit, General Use, (3) Retrofit Kit, Sign Specific, (4) Subassembly (cont.)
- An upgrade of the sign typically involves **field modifications** of the sign
- Proper adherence to **developed protocols** for these field conversions, such that when done within the testing laboratory parameters, ensures these field conversion "retrofit kits" do not compromise the safety profile of the listed sign
- These **added definitions** will aid the installer and the inspector in assuring the right retrofit kit is used with the correct host sign

Copyright © IAEE 2020

88



### 600.2 Definitions. (Electric Signs and Outline Lighting)

Four new definitions were added to 600.2 pertaining to retrofit kits for signs



**Host Sign.** A sign or outline lighting system already installed in the field that is designated for field conversion of the illumination system with a retrofit kit

**Retrofit Kit, General Use.** A kit consisting of primary parts, which does not include all the parts for a complete subassembly but includes a list of required parts and installation instructions to complete the subassembly in the field.

**Retrofit Kit, Sign Specific.** A kit consisting of the necessary parts and hardware to allow for field installation in a host sign, based on the included installation instructions.

**Subassembly.** Component parts or a segment of a sign, retrofit kit, or outline lighting system that, when assembled, forms a complete unit or product.

89

### 600.4(D) Visibility of Markings for Electric Signs and Outline Lighting

- Revisions now require **visibility of markings** at the time of installation, inspection, and prior to servicing, but can be installed in a location **not viewed by the public**
- Previously, 600.4(A) markings and listing labels were not required to be visible after installation, but were required to be permanently applied in a location **visible during servicing (rather than prior to servicing)**
- This marking would include such things as manufacturer's name, trademark, maximum allowable lamp wattage, input voltage, and current rating
- New Code text was added to clarify that "**visible after installation**" does not necessarily mean visible in a location viewed by the public
- When an installer or inspector first approaches a sign, they should be able to identify **input voltage** and **current rating** prior to opening the sign

90

### 600.4(D) Visibility of Markings - Electric Signs and Outline Lighting

Signs and outline lighting systems required to be marked with such things as manufacturer's name, trademark, input voltage and current rating, maximum allowable lamp wattage per lampholder, and other means of identification [600.4(A) and (C)]



**IAEI Sign Company**

SERIAL NO. AB1234-CD5678-EF

MFG NO. 123456789

SUPPLY VOLTAGE TO GROUND 120 INPUT CIRCUIT VOLTAGE

2 CIRCUITS

7.5 INITIAL AMPERES

06/23/08 DATE OF MFG

Markings and listing labels are required to be **visible after installation** and must be permanently applied in a location **visible prior to servicing**

Marking permitted to be installed in a location **not viewed by the public**

91

### 600.5(A) Required Branch Circuit for Electric Signs and Outline Lighting

- Revision clarifies that **entrances not accessible to customers**, such as delivery doors, **do not require a sign outlet**
- At each commercial building and each commercial occupancy accessible to pedestrians, at least one outlet (*located in an accessible location*) is required to be installed at each entrance to each tenant space for a sign or outline lighting system
- A sign or outline lighting outlet **not required** at entrances for deliveries, service corridors, or service hallways that are intended to be used only by service personnel or employees
- Clarification was needed to distinguish what entry doors did and did not require this required sign outlet

92

### 600.5(A) Required Branch Circuit for Electric Signs/Outline Lighting

At each commercial building and each commercial occupancy accessible to pedestrians, at least one outlet is required to be provided at an accessible location for each entrance to each tenant space for a sign or outline lighting system (required to be supplied by a 20-ampere branch circuit with no other loads)

Sign outlet not required at entrances for deliveries, service corridors, or service hallways that are intended to be used only by service personnel or employees

Sign outlet required

Copyright © IAEE 2020

93

### 600.5(B) Marking Requirements at Sign Disconnects

- Disconnecting means for a sign, outline lighting system, or controller now required to be **marked to identify** sign, outline lighting system, or controller it controls
- Exception** for external disconnect mounted on the sign, etc.
- If **located remote**, disconnect required to be mounted at an **accessible location** available to first responders and service personnel
- Previous provisions required a permanent field-applied marking identifying the location of the disconnecting means applied to a sign in a location visible during servicing identifying the location of the disconnecting means [see 600.6(A)(2)]
- No provisions existed (*until now*) in Article 600 requiring a marking or label at the disconnection means for a sign, outline lighting system, or controller identify the sign, outline lighting system, or controller it controls

Copyright © IAEE 2020

94

### 600.5(B) Marking Requirements at Sign Disconnects (cont.)

- Disconnecting means for a sign, outline lighting system, or controller now required to be **marked to identify** sign, outline lighting system, or controller it controls (*cont.*)
- Without a marking or label identifying the sign it controls, a remote disconnecting means might not be recognized or identified as controlling the sign, outline lighting system or controller by anyone other than the service technician
- Sign service employees and maintenance personnel, and in particular **emergency responders** have a **need to know** what utilization equipment the disconnect(s) is designated for where it is not mounted on the sign, outline lighting system or controller
- This new marking requirement at **600.5(B)** can be tied to **new remote location provision at 600.6(A)(4)**, which calls for the sign disconnecting means (*if located remote from the sign, sign body, or pole*) to be mounted at an **accessible location available to first responders and service personnel**

Copyright © IAEE 2020

95

### 600.5(B) Marking Requirements at Disconnect

Disconnecting means for a sign, outline lighting system, or controller is now required to be **marked to identify the sign, outline lighting system, or controller it controls**

**Exception** for external disconnect mounted on the sign body, sign enclosure, sign pole, or controller

Outdoor sign disconnecting means located remote from the sign

The disconnecting means (*if located remote from the sign, sign body, or pole*) shall be mounted at an **accessible location available to first responders and service personnel** [See 600.6(A)(4)]

Copyright © IAEE 2020

96

### 600.35 Retrofit Kits for Electric Signs and Outline Lighting

- New section added pertaining to **"Retrofit Kits"** for signs and outline lighting systems
- New **600.35** gives **specific and needed installation instructions** for **retrofit kits** for signs and outline lighting systems
- Retrofit Kit:** "A general term for a complete subassembly of parts and devices for field conversion of utilization equipment."
- To some in the electrical industry (*particularly the sign industry*) the term **"complete"** in the definition of **"Retrofit Kit"** was deemed **subjective** and felt more information was needed to install and enforce requirements for a **sign retrofit kit**

Copyright © IAETI 2020

97

### 600.35 Retrofit Kits for Electric Signs and Outline Lighting (cont.)

- New **Code** rules will provide the impetus for implementation of retrofit kits and its **"complete subassembly"** intended to applied to signs and outline lighting retrofit kits, with each listed retrofit kit mandated to include **"all the necessary parts"** for field conversion of a **"host sign"** (see *new definitions at 600.2*)
- Retrofit kits are now required to be **"listed and labeled,"** which will bring some consistency to these retrofit kits
- Installation instructions for **field conversions** are **distinguishable** for use in the host sign
- New **Code** requirements for sign retrofit kits harmonize with **UL 879A (Standard for LED Sign and Sign Retrofit Kits)**, enabling the installer to identify the correct replacement parts and devices needed for a **safe conversion** and facilitates the AHJ's approval process

Copyright © IAETI 2020

98

### 600.35 Retrofit Kits

New 600.35 gives specific installation instructions for retrofit kits for signs and outline lighting systems



General-use or sign-specific retrofit kits for sign or outline lighting systems to include installation instructions and requirements for field conversion of a host sign  
Retrofit kits shall be listed and labeled  
All parts that are not replaced by a retrofit kit shall be inspected for damage

Copyright © IAETI 2020

99

### 605.1(A) and (B) Covered and Not Covered (Office Furnishings)

- The scope of Article 605 was clarified to specify items that are **not covered** by Article 605
- Previously, the scope of Article 605 only told the user of the **Code** what was **covered** by the article
- New **Code** text at **605.1(B)** states that Article 605 **does not apply to** "individual office furnishings not connected to a system, such as chairs, freestanding desks, tables, storage units, and shelving units"
- Some jurisdictions have improperly applied Article 605 to **individual free-standing furnishings**, such as **motorized adjustable workstations**, which are not intended to be covered by this article
- New provisions should clarify the products intended to be **covered and not covered** by Article 605

Copyright © IAETI 2020

100



### 605.1(A) and (B) Covered and Not Covered (Office Furnishings)

**605.1(A) Covered.** This article covers electrical equipment, lighting accessories, and wiring systems used to connect, contained within, or installed on office furnishings.

**605.1(B) Not Covered.** This article does not apply to individual office furnishings not connected to a system, such as chairs, freestanding desks, tables, storage units, and shelving units.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

101

### 620.6 GFCI Protection in Elevator Pits, Etc.

- Revision clarifies that any receptacle in a pit must be **GFCI protected**
- GFCI protection **no** required for a **hard-wired** sump pump
- Permanently installed sump pump is now required to be **either** permanently wired **or** must be supplied by a **single receptacle** that is **GFCI protected** (no GFCI protection required in previous Code)
- Complete reversal** for the GFCI provisions for a single receptacle supplying a permanently installed sump pump in something like an elevator pit since the 1996 NEC
- These GFCI rules were moved to **Part I** of Article 620 as these GFCI rules were more appropriately located in Part I (General Requirements) (was 620.85)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

102

### 620.6 GFCI Protection in Elevator Pits, Etc. (cont.)

- This is one of the few places in the entire Code where the **GFCI protection** is required to be delivered in the form of a **receptacle outlet-type GFCI protection** (at the outlet) rather than GFCI overcurrent protection in the form of a circuit breaker or a GFCI receptacle located remote
- In an elevator pit or similar pit, **GFCI protection** is called upon to be **located at the receptacle outlet** in the pit so that GFCI device can be reset if tripped without service personnel having to climb out of the pit to reset the GFCI device (see first sentence at 620.6)
- This revision is similar to revision that occurred at **422.5(A)(6)** (GFCI protection now required on **all 150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase sump pumps** (hard wired or cord-and-plug connected)
- For the sump pump in an elevator pit, one would have to rely on **90.3** to take precedence and indicate that rules in Chapter 6 [620.6] would **"supplement or modify"** the rules in Chapter 4 [422.5(A)(6)]

Copyright © IAEI 2020

103

### 620.6 GFCI Protection in Elevator Pits, Etc.

All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacle installed in pits, for hoistways, elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, etc. are required to be of the GFCI receptacle type

Permanently installed sump pumps required to be either **permanently wired** or must be supplied by a **single receptacle that is GFCI protected**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

104

### 620.65 Signage for Selective Coordination

(Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, Moving Walks, Platform Lifts, and Stairway Chairlifts)

- New section added to require **equipment enclosures** for elevators, etc. containing **selectively coordinated** overcurrent devices to **be legibly marked in the field**
- More than one driving machine disconnecting means for elevators, escalators, etc. were **required to be selectively coordinated** with any other supply side overcurrent protective devices when supplied by a single **feeder (but no marking was required)**
- Field marking will alert those who are authorized to maintain, inspect or work on the system that the overcurrent devices are selectively coordinated and provide a **higher level of safety**
- Change will also aid in enforcement by making information readily available to the AHJ

Copyright © IAEE 2020

105

### 620.65 Signage for Selective Coordination

(Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, Moving Walks, Platform Lifts, and Stairway Chairlifts)

Equipment enclosures containing selectively coordinated overcurrent devices required to be legibly marked in the field to indicate that the overcurrent devices are selectively coordinated

The diagram shows a grey metal enclosure with a yellow warning sign that reads: "CAUTION: OVERCURRENT DEVICES IN THIS ENCLOSURE ARE SELECTIVELY COORDINATED. EQUIVALENT REPLACEMENTS AND TRIP SETTINGS ARE REQUIRED." To the right, a power distribution tree shows a "Service equipment" box at the top, connected to a "Feeder panelboard". This panelboard feeds several "Feeder" units, which in turn feed a "Selectively Coordinated Equipment" enclosure. This enclosure contains a "Branch circuit panelboard" which feeds a "Branch circuit". A fault is shown at the "Load" end of the branch circuit, with a red lightning bolt symbol. A legend indicates that a red square symbol means "Opens".

Copyright © IAEE 2020

106

### Article 625 and 625.1 Electric Vehicle Charging Power Transfer Systems

- With the addition of **power export equipment** and **bidirectional current flow equipment**, a change to the title and scope of Article 625 was needed for clarity
- Previous scope of Article 625 covered "the electrical conductors and equipment external to an electric vehicle that connect an electric vehicle to a supply of electricity by conductive, inductive, or wireless power transfer (*contactless inductive charging*) means, and the installation of equipment and devices related to electric vehicle charging"
- Scope now covers "the electrical conductors and equipment connecting an electric vehicle **to premises wiring** for the purposes of **charging, power export, or bidirectional current flow**"
- Significant changes to Article 625 occurred last Code cycle when the **wireless power transfer technology** was introduced to the article

Copyright © IAEE 2020

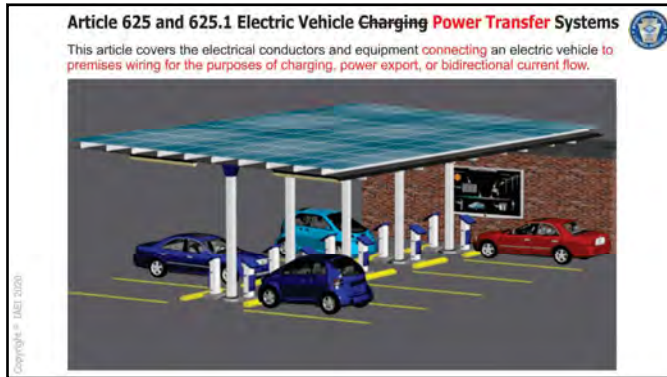
107

### Article 625 and 625.1 Electric Vehicle Charging Power Transfer Systems (cont.)

- Another significant change is being incorporated into Article 625 this Code cycle with the introduction of rules pertaining to **power export equipment** and **bidirectional current flow equipment**
- Power export equipment** and **bidirectional current flow equipment** provisions are being added to a couple of definitions [**Electric Vehicle Power Export Equipment (EVPE)** and **Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE)**]
- These terms are also being added at **625.41** (Overcurrent Protection), **625.43** (Disconnection Means), and **625.48** (Interactive Systems)
- Power export equipment** and **bidirectional current flow equipment** can cover a wide range of devices, **including but not limited to**: an inverter regardless of off-board or on-board, an EVSE that works for reverse power flow from a vehicle, an AC outlet regardless of off-board or on-board, a dc 12 volt outlet, and a USB socket as a 5 volt power outlet

Copyright © IAEE 2020

108



109



110

**Article 625, Part II – EV Equipment Construction**

- Product construction requirements in Part II of Article 625 were deleted from Article 625
- Previously, Part II of Article 625 contained several product construction requirements that are better suited in one of the product standards for EV equipment
- All product construction requirements in Part II of Article 625 addressing product features that are an integral part of the listing requirements (required by 625.5) for the product were removed from Article 625
- Equipment construction requirements were developed and added to the 1999 NEC at a time when there were no existing published product safety standards specifically covering electric vehicle charging or supply equipment

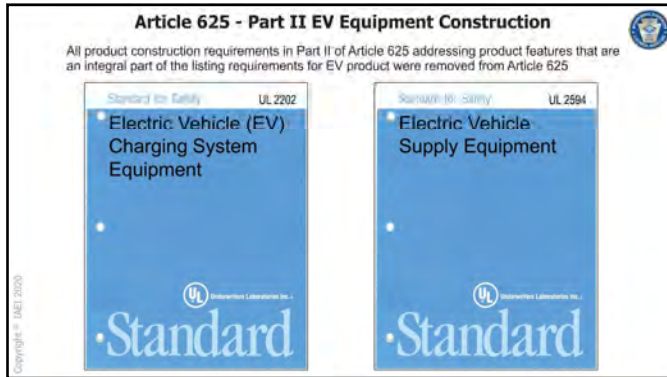
111

**Article 625, Part II – EV Equipment Construction (cont.)**

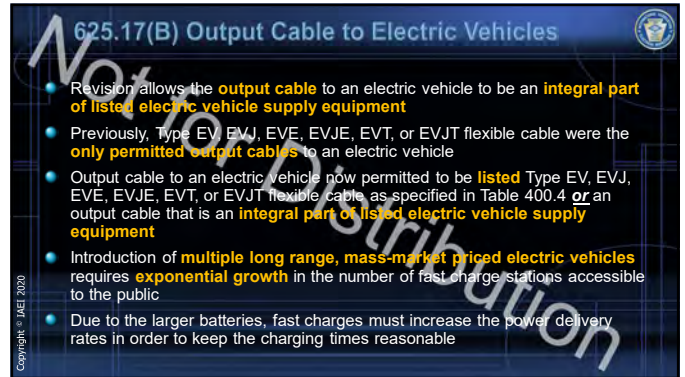
- Product construction requirements in Part II of Article 625 were deleted from Article 625 (cont.)
- Since that time, several product safety standards covering electric vehicles and electric vehicle supply equipment with associated product listing programs available from several of the nationally recognized testing laboratories (NRTL) have been developed and implemented in the electric vehicle world
- All of these product standards are included in Informative Annex A (see 90.7, Informational Note No. 3)
- With the elimination of these sections, two definitions that are not used elsewhere in the Article are also removed (*Electric Vehicle Coupler* and *Electric Vehicle Inlet*)

112

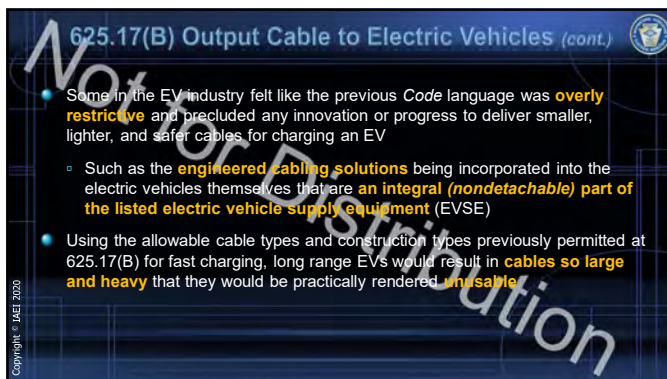




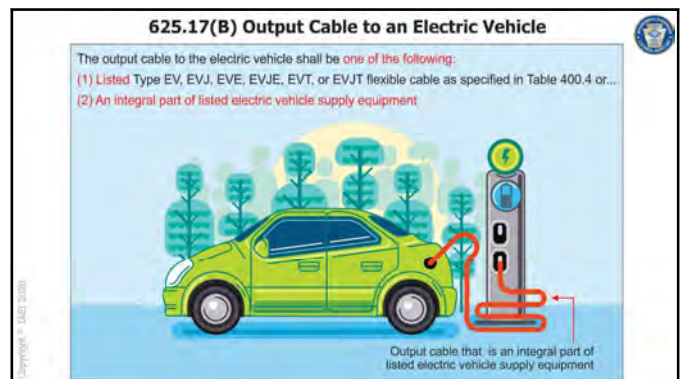
113



114



115



116

### 625.44 EV Portable Equipment Connection

- The connection methods for connection of **portable EV charging equipment** to the premises wiring system has been **expanded** to include certain **250-volt rated receptacle outlets**
- Previously, **portable EV charging equipment** for connection to the premises wiring system was limited to **(1)** a nonlocking, 2-pole, 3-wire grounding-type receptacle outlet rated at 125 volt, single phase, 15 or 20 amperes or **(2)** a nonlocking, 2-pole, 3-wire grounding-type receptacle outlet rated 60 volt dc maximum, 15 or 20 amperes
- Expanded to the use of a nonlocking, 2-pole, 3-wire, **200-volt single phase, 15 or 20 amperes** grounding-type receptacle outlet or a nonlocking, 2-pole, 3-wire or 3-pole, 4-wire grounding-type receptacle outlet rated at **250 volts, single phase, 30 or 50 amperes**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

117

### 625.44 EV Portable Equipment Connection (cont.)

- The connection methods for connection of **portable EV charging equipment** to the premises wiring system has been **expanded** to include certain **250-volt rated receptacle outlets (cont.)**
- Electric vehicle (EV) manufacturers continue to **extend the range** or distance an EV can travel **between charges**
- Demand exist for having the ability to charge upon reaching that extended range destination in order to make **longer range EV travel plausible**
- Multiple EV manufacturers insist that **250-volt portable charging** is a must in order to support the sale and deployment of longer range EVs
- Title of **625.44(B)** changed from "Stationary Equipment" to "Fastened-in-Place Equipment" (*wiring method suitable for portable equipment is suitable for fastened in place equipment as well*)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

118



119

### 625.54 GFCI Protection for EV Charging Equipment

- Revision clarifies that all receptacle outlets used for electric vehicle (EV) charging be provided with **GFCI protection** for personnel for all **cord and plug connected** electric vehicle power transfer equipment
- In the past, receptacle outlet(s) used for EV charging equipment may or may not have been required to be GFCI protected, depending on the location of the receptacle outlet and the rating of said outlet
- All receptacle outlets installed for the connection of EV charging will be required to be provide with **GFCI protection** for personnel *regardless of the receptacle outlet's location*
- Electrical safety concerns were expressed concerning personnel plugging and unplugging something like a 250-volt cord cap into a receptacle outlet in a wet or damp environment
- GFCI protection for receptacle outlets used for EV charging is "**in addition to the requirements in 210.8**"

Copyright © IAEI 2020

120

### 625.54 GFCI Protection for EV Charging Equipment

In addition to the requirements in 210.8, **ALL** receptacles installed for the connection of electric vehicle charging equipment is required to provide GFCI protection for personnel

GFCI protection required (regardless of voltage/ampere rating)

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

121

### 625.56 Weatherproof Enclosure for EV Charging Receptacle Outlets

- New requirement added requiring **all** receptacles installed in **wet locations** for **electric vehicle (EV) charging** to be installed in an enclosure that provides **weatherproof protection** with or without an attachment plug cap inserted
- Similar to weatherproof enclosure requirements of **406.9(B)**, but this Chapter 4 requirement only applies to 15 and 20 amperes rated receptacles
- No voltage or amperage rating limitation to this new Article 625 rule
- Outlet box hood installed for this purpose required to be **listed** and be identified as "**extra duty**," while allowing other listed products, enclosures, or assemblies providing weatherproof protection that do not utilize an outlet box hood to not be required to be marked "extra duty"
- New receptacle enclosure requirement at 625.56 will bring some consistency between Article 406 and Article 625

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

122

### 625.56 WP Enclosure for EV Charging Receptacle Outlets

All receptacles installed in a wet location for electric vehicle charging require an enclosure that is weatherproof with the attachment plug cap inserted or removed

Listed "Extra Duty" Outlet Box Hood

Other Listed Enclosure Not Marked "Extra Duty"

An outlet box hood installed for this purpose required to be listed and identified as "extra duty" Other listed products, enclosures, or assemblies providing weatherproof protection (not utilizing an outlet box hood) shall not be required to be marked "extra duty"

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

123

### 625.60 AC Receptacle Outlets Used for EVPE

- New section added to require **all on-board receptacle outlets** on or in an electric vehicle to be **GFCI protected**
- The ground-fault circuit interrupter indication and reset to be installed in a **readily accessible location**
- Common occurrence to see **120 volt alternating current (ac) receptacle outlets** installed on-board in vehicles (not just electric vehicles)
- These on-board ac receptacle outlets will be required to be **listed** and rated at **250 volts maximum**, single phase **50 amperes maximum** with overcurrent protection integral to the power export system
- Should a person be less protected in their electric vehicle at the beach that they would be at home in their garage?

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

124





125



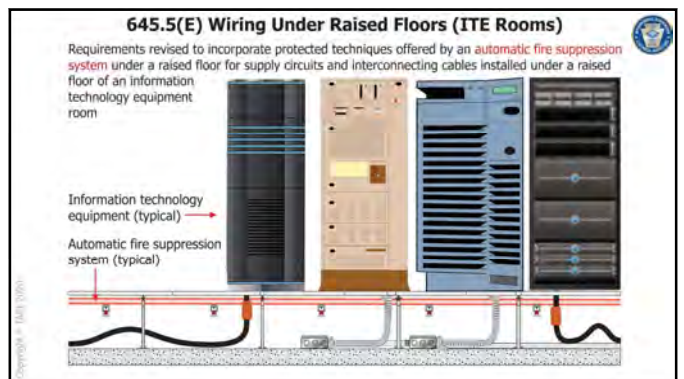
126

**645.5(E) Wiring Under Raised Floors (IT Equipment Rooms)**

- Revisions distinguish between air space under a raised floor in an information technology (IT) equipment room when protected by an **automatic fire suppression system** and those that are not
- This information is a condition that is needed to help determine the **appropriate wiring method** under a raised floor
- Protection by an automatic fire suppression system (or lack thereof) is a condition spelled out in detail in **NFPA 71** (Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment)
- This revision removes any conflict between *NEC* and *NFPA 75*, which permits non-plenum wiring under a raised floor when an automatic fire suppression system is present, otherwise plenum wiring is required

Copyright © JAEI 2023

127



128



129

### 680.2 and 680.14 Corrosive Environment

- The definition of "**Corrosive Environment**" was revised and moved from 680.14 to 680.2
- Title of **680.14** was revised to "**Wiring Methods in Corrosive Environment**" and now only address the **wiring methods identified for use in a corrosive environment** in and around swimming pools, fountains, and similar installations
- 2017 *NEC* added section at 680.14 with a "**prescription**" of what a corrosive environment could be
- This "description" was very close to a "definition" of a corrosive environment and needed to be relocated to 680.2

Copyright © IAEI 2020

130

### 680.2 and 680.14 Corrosive Environments

**Corrosive Environment.** Areas where pool sanitation chemicals are stored, handled, or dispensed, and confined areas under decks adjacent to such areas, as well as areas with circulation pumps, automatic chlorinators, filters, open areas under decks adjacent to or abutting the pool structure, and similar locations.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

131

### 680.2, 680.35, and 680.45 Immersion Pools

- Two new sections covering **immersion pools** were added to Article 680 providing installation requirements for a newly added definition at 680.2 for "**Immersion Pools**"
- "Immersion pools" were previously covered by Article 680 with these terms included in the **three definitions** but their unique characteristics were not specifically addressed in previous Code language
- New requirements at 680.35 and 680.45 and definition at 680.2 will provide needed clarity to applications where listed pre-packaged units are not used
- New definition added to 680.2 indicates that an immersion pool is "a pool for ceremonial or ritual immersion of users, which is designed and intended to have its contents drained or discharged"

Copyright © IAEI 2020

132

680.2, 680.35, and 680.45 Immersion Pools (cont.)

- Two new sections covering **immersion pools** were added to Article 680 providing installation requirements for a newly added definition at 680.2 for "**Immersion Pools**" (cont.)
- Immersion pools are typically installed in a building such as a church and are generally installed indoors but may be installed outdoors, on the ground or supporting structure, or in the ground or supporting structure
- Typically contain integral interior steps and may be equipped with a heater and/or pump and can employ an underwater luminaire
- New **680.35** will deal with requirements for "**Storable and Portable Immersion Pools**" and new **680.45** was added for "**Permanently Installed Immersion Pools**"

Copyright © JAEI 2020

133



134

680.2 and 680.50 Splash Pads

- A **new definition** for "**Splash Pads**" was added and provisions added at **680.50** to allow for future revisions to more accurately target installation requirements for these units
- Splash Pad.** A fountain with a pool depth **25 mm (1 in.) or less**, intended for recreational use by pedestrians. This definition does not include showers intended for hygienic rinsing prior to use of a pool, spa, or other water feature.
- Splash pads now required to comply with **Part II** (*permanently installed pools*) and equipotential bonding requirements
- Splash pads and similar installations present the **same potential risk of electric shock** as do the areas around swimming pools
- Similar **equipotential bonding** should therefore be required

Copyright © JAEI 2020

135



136





137



138



139

**680.4 Inspections After Installation (Swimming Pools, Fountains, and Similar Installations)**

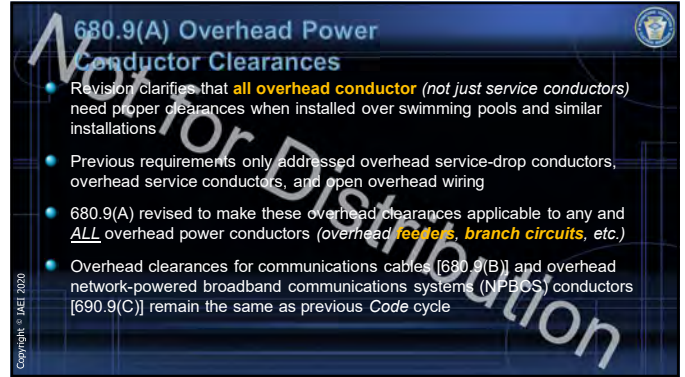
- New section (*Inspections After Installation*) added to provide the AHJ with the opportunity to address hazards associated with **aging pool installations**
- Grants AHJ permission to require **periodic inspection and testing** of pool related equipment
- After final inspection of a new installation, AHJ rarely sees that installation again during the lifespan of that particular installation (*unless a remodel or renovation occurs*)
- Due to corrosive conditions beyond what normal electrical equipment has to endure, pool-related electrical equipment is **subject to failure** and typically has a **shorter lifespan** than most electrical equipment
- Leaving the nature and frequency of inspection or maintenance to the AHJ allows jurisdictions to decide whether to apply this to all pools, commercial pools, etc.

Copyright © JAEI 2020

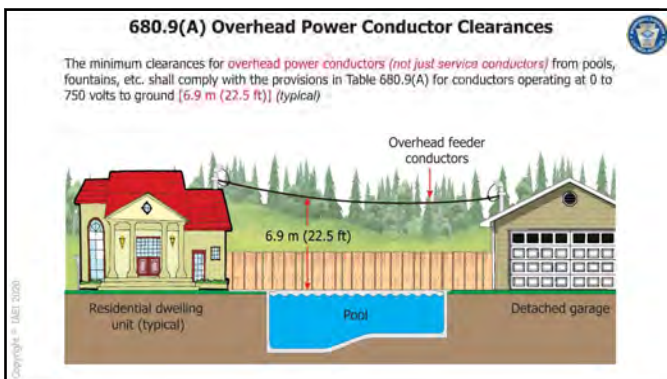
140



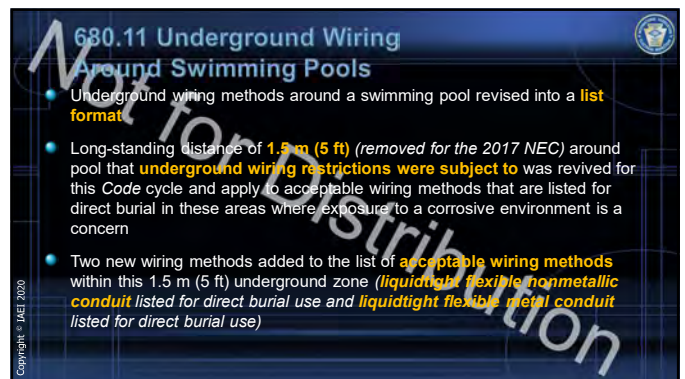
141



142

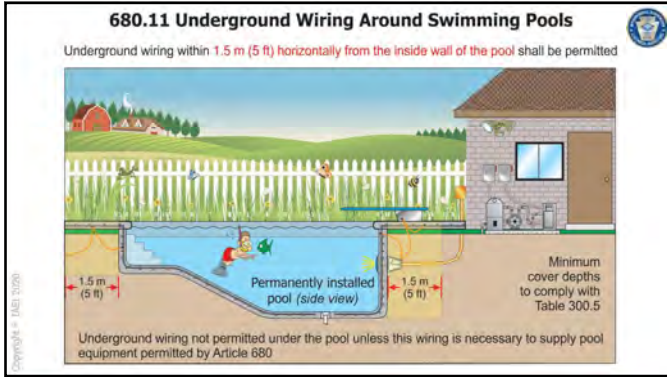


143



144





145



146

**680.21(C) GFCI Protection for Motors**

- GFCI protection generally applicable to all motors used in pool applications
- Exception added for listed low-voltage motors not requiring grounding (with ratings not exceeding the low-voltage contact limit)
  - A GFCI device cannot detect a loss of current on the low-voltage side of a listed transformer or power supply, so it offers no protection on the low-voltage side
- Outlets supplying all pool motors (not just pool pump motors) on branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase, shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection
- Prior to this revision, GFCI protection was only called upon for "single-phase, 120-volt through 240-volt" rated pool pump motors
- Revision incorporates single-phase and 3-phase motors, which would include single-phase 120/240 volt, single-phase 208Y/120 volt, and 3-phase 208Y/120 volt motors

147

**680.21(C) GFCI Protection for Motors**

Outlets supplying all pool motors on branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase, shall be provided with Class A GFCI protection

Exception permits listed low-voltage motors not requiring grounding (with ratings not exceeding the low-voltage contact limit) supplied by listed transformers or power supplies to be installed without GFCI protection

148

### 680.21(D) Pool Pump Motor Replacement

- A new requirement was added to facilitate **GFCI protection** implantation on older pools for **replacement motors**
- New rule will demand **GFCI protection** for a new pool pump motor replacing an existing pool pump motor being **replaced** for maintenance or repair
- Substantiated **injuries** and **fatalities** have occurred in the past by a non-GFCI protected pool pump motor being replaced with a non-GFCI protected motor
- This new GFCI requirement is intended to facilitate **GFCI protection** at **older existing swimming pools** that might not have been required to provide GFCI protection at pool pump motors installed under previous Code cycles

Copyright © IAETI 2020

149

### 680.21(D) Pool Pump Motor Replacement

Where an existing pool pump motor described at 680.21(C) is replaced for maintenance or repair, the replacement pump motor shall be provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection

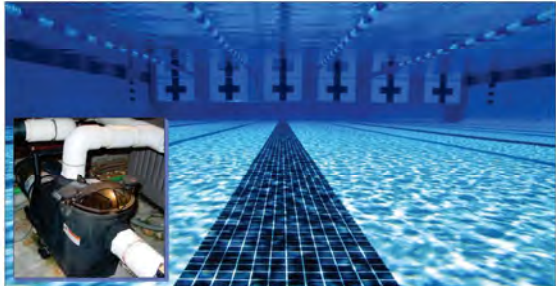


Copyright © IAETI 2020

150

### 680.21(D) Pool Pump Motor Replacement

Where an existing pool pump motor described at 680.21(C) is replaced for maintenance or repair, the replacement pump motor shall be provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection



Copyright © IAETI 2020

151

### 680.22(A)(5) Pool Equipment Room Receptacle

- New provisions were added to require **at least one GFCI-protected receptacle** within a **pool equipment room**
- At least one **GFCI-protected 125-volt, 15- or 20- ampere** receptacle on a **general-purpose circuit** to be located within a pool equipment room
- All other receptacles (supplied by branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground) in a pool equipment room now require **GFCI protection** as well
- Requiring at least one GFCI protected receptacle within a pool equipment room will lessen the **potential hazard of employing an extension cord** run from a receptacle outlet elsewhere that is not GFCI protected
- Water is typically present on the floor during normal operation or maintenance of pool equipment rooms

Copyright © IAETI 2020

152

### 680.22(A)(5) Pool Equipment Room Receptacle

At least one GFCI-protected 125-volt, 15- or 20- ampere receptacle on a general-purpose circuit required to be located within a pool equipment room



All other receptacles supplied by branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground within a pool equipment room required to be GFCI protected

Copyright © IAEI 2020

153

### 680.22(E) Other Equipment in Close Proximity to a Pool


- **Other equipment** (other than traditional pool pump motors and controllers) are now required to generally be located **at least 1.5 m (5 ft) horizontally** from the inside walls of a pool
- **Other equipment** (with ratings exceeding the low-voltage contact limit) required to be located at least **1.5 m (5 ft)** horizontally from the inside walls of a pool **unless separated** from the pool by a **solid fence, wall, or other permanent barrier**
- Of particular concern is **electric power production equipment** such as generators, solar photovoltaic (PV) systems, fuel cell systems, wind systems, and energy storage systems being **installed in close proximity to a pool**
  - With this type of equipment, concern about **metal parts being at different voltage potentials**, and a real concern is a **shock hazard** associated with this type of equipment located too close to a pool

Copyright © IAEI 2020

154

### 680.22(E) Other Equipment in Close Proximity to a Pool

Electrical equipment with ratings exceeding the low-voltage contact limit must be located at least **1.5 m (5 ft) horizontally** from the **inside walls** of a pool unless separated from the pool by a **solid fence, wall, or other permanent barrier**



Copyright © IAEI 2020

155

### 680.23(B)(6) Servicing Wet-Niche Luminaires

- **"Servicing"** requirement for a wet-niche luminaire was revised for clarity
- Provisions added for **spas** that can be drained so luminaire can be placed on the **spa bench** for servicing
- For servicing wet-niche luminaires in **spa locations** with luminaire installed low in the foot well of the spa, the luminaire is only required to reach the **bench location**, where the spa can be drained to make the bench location dry
- Wet-niche luminaires installed in permanently installed swimming pools are typically required to be installed in such a manner where they were **removable from the water** for inspection, relamping, or other maintenance
- Bench of a spa that can be drained below the bench area **serves the same function as the deck of a pool** with no need to take the spa luminaire all the way to the deck in order to change a light bulb when a dry bench can serve the same purpose

Copyright © IAEI 2020

156





157

### 680.26(B)(2)(c) Copper Grid for Perimeter Surfaces Equipotential Bonding

- A **new option** was added to allow a **copper grid system** as **alternative method** for **equipotential bonding** at the **perimeter surface** when structural steel is not available.
- Copper grid system would consist of **8 AWG solid bare copper** arranged in a **300-mm (12-in.) by 300-mm (12-in.) network** of conductors in a **uniformly spaced perpendicular grid pattern** with a tolerance of **100 mm (4 in.)**.
- Copper grid must follow the **contour of the perimeter surface** extending **1 m (3 ft) horizontally** beyond the inside walls of the pool.
- Splices are permitted, but only with **listed splicing devices** or the **exothermic welding process**.
- Copper grid is required to be secured within or under the deck or unpaved surfaces between **100 mm to 150 mm (4 in. to 6 in.)** below the subgrade.

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

158

### 680.26(B)(2)(c) Copper Grid for Perimeter Surfaces Equipotential Bonding (cont.)

- Copper grid system is an **extremely effective means of bonding** when the structural reinforcing steel is encapsulated in a nonconductive compound or where unencapsulated structural reinforcing steel is not available or utilized.
- Previous **copper ring system** of at least one minimum **8 AWG bare solid copper conductor** described at **680.26(B)(2)(b)** is still a **viable option** for bonding around a pool when the structural reinforcing steel is encapsulated in a nonconductive compound or where unencapsulated structural reinforcing steel is not available or utilized.
- Bonding requirements are an **important and unique protective method** employed to increase the safety of the users of bodies of water such as pools, spas and hot tubs.
- Bonding is required to **eliminate voltage gradients** (rises) in the pool area.

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

159

### 680.26(B)(2)(c) Copper Grid for Perimeter Surfaces

Where structural reinforcing steel is not available or encapsulated, an 8 AWG copper grid system is permitted to be utilized arranged in a 300-mm (12-in.) by 300-mm (12-in.) network of conductors in a uniformly spaced perpendicular grid pattern with a tolerance of 100 mm (4 in.).

Required to be secured within or under the deck or unpaved surfaces between 100 mm to 150 mm (4 in. to 6 in.) below the subgrade.

A single 8 AWG solid copper conductor or structural reinforcing steel (rebar or wire mesh) in the concrete is also permitted as the bonding grid for the perimeter surface.

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

160

### 680.26(B)(5) Metallic Pool Cover Anchors

- Bonding of **metal anchors** used for pool safety covers were added to items that are **not required to be bonded** to the equipotential bonding grid
- This would include metallic pool cover anchors that are intended for insertion in a concrete or masonry deck surface **25 mm (1 in.) or less** in any dimension and **51 mm (2 in.) or less** in length
- If they are intended for insertion in a **wood or composite deck surface**, they would have to be **51 mm (2 in.) or less** in any flange dimension and **51 mm (2 in.) or less** in length
- Impractical to bond **small metal parts** commonly used in pools as these small conductive parts are **not likely to become energized** and are not considered to create a hazard for users of the pool
- Small isolated parts **[not over 100 mm (4 in.) in any dimension]** that do not penetrate into the pool structure more than **25 mm (1 in.)**, are not required to be bonded [see 680.26(B)(5)]

Copyright © IAEI 2020

161

### 680.26(B)(5) Metallic Pool Cover Anchors

Generally, all metal fittings within or attached to a pool structure are required to be bonded to the equipotential bonding grid of a pool (*small isolated parts shall not require bonding*)



Copyright © IAEI 2020

**Metallic pool cover anchors intended for insertion in a concrete or masonry deck surface or wood or composite deck surface shall not require bonding**

162

### 680.59 GFCI Protection for Permanently Installed Nonsubmersible Pumps

- New section added to specifically address **GFCI protection for nonsubmersible fountain pumps**
- Previous requirements called for GFCI protection for submersible fountain pumps only (*but not nonsubmersible fountain pumps*) [see 680.51(A)]
- This new section states that **outlets** supplying all permanently installed nonsubmersible pump motors rated **250 volts or less** and **60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase**, shall be provided with GFCI protection
- Even though they are not submerged in the water, nonsubmersible pumps still move every drop of water contained in a fountain and **deserve GFCI protection** as much as their submersible counterparts
- Nonsubmersible pumps, sometimes referred to as "**centrifugal pumps**"

Copyright © IAEI 2020

163

### 680.59 GFCI Protection for Nonsubmersible Fountain Pumps

Outlets supplying all permanently installed nonsubmersible pump motors rated 250 volts or less and 60 amperes or less, single- or 3-phase, required to be provided with GFCI protection



Copyright © IAEI 2020

164



### 680.80 Electrically Powered Pool Lifts

- Revision removes text indicating that **electrically powered pool lifts** do not have to comply with **other parts of Article 680**
- Previously, electrically powered pool lifts were to comply with **Part VIII of Article 680** but did not have to comply with other parts of Article 680
- Electrically powered pool lifts now must comply with **Part VIII** of Article 680, with Part VIII is not subject to the requirements of other parts of Article 680 **"except where the requirements are specifically referenced"**
- References to other parts of Article 680 were added throughout Part VIII

Copyright © IAEI 2020

165

### 680.84 Receptacles for Electrically Powered Pool Lifts

- Provisions for **receptacles** for electrically powered pool lifts were added to 680.84 stating that these receptacle operating above the low-voltage contact limit must comply with **680.22(A)(3) and (A)(4)**
- The above *Code* references call for receptacles to be located not less than **1.83 m (6 ft)** from the inside walls of a pool and requires GFCI protection for all 15- and 20-ampere, single-phase 125-volt receptacles located **within 6.0 m (20 ft)** of the inside walls of a pool
- 680.84 also calls for switches and switching devices that are operated above the low-voltage contact limit to comply with 680.22(C)
- 680.22(C) generally requires switches to be located at least **1.5 m (5 ft)** **horizontally** from the inside walls of a pool

Copyright © IAEI 2020

166



167

### 682.15 GFP for Natural and Artificially Made Bodies of Water

- Revision incorporates **ground-fault protection (GFP)** of equipment and **ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI)** protection for personnel to **one location** in Article 682
- Previously, there were no ground-fault protection (GFP) of equipment requirements in Article 682
- New provisions added for GFP (**not exceeding 30 mA**) for feeder and branch circuit conductors installed on piers
- Similar to the revised provisions at **555.35(A)(3)** for marinas, boatyards, floating buildings, and commercial and noncommercial docking facilities
- The revised provisions of **555.35(A)(3)** calls for GFP of equipment set to open at currents **not exceeding 100 mA** for feeder and branch-circuit conductors that are installed on docking facilities

Copyright © IAEI 2020

168

### 682.15 GFP for Natural and Artificially Made Bodies of Water (cont.)

- Revision incorporates **ground-fault protection (GFP)** of equipment and **ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI)** protection for personnel to **one location** in Article 682 (cont.)
- Previous **GFCI protection requirements** at 682.15 pertained to 15- and 20-ampere single-phase, 125-volt through 250-volt **receptacle outlets only**
- Revised GFCI provisions at **682.15(A)** pertain to direct connected or "**hard-wired**" equipment **as well as receptacle outlets** for cord-and-plug connected equipment

Copyright © JAEI 2020

169

### 682.15 GFP for Natural and Artificially Made Bodies of Water

Outlets supplied by branch circuits not exceeding 150 volts to ground and 60 amperes, single-phase, shall be provided with **ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI)** protection for personnel



Feeder and branch-circuit conductors installed on piers shall be provided with **ground-fault protection (GFP)** not exceeding 30 mA (Coordination with downstream GFP permitted)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

170

### 682.33(C) Bonding of Equipotential Planes

- Revision were made to more clearly define what needs to be **bonded together** and **how to bond each part** in order to properly construct an **equipotential plane** at natural and artificially made bodies of water
- The parts specified in **682.33(C)(1) (Bonded Parts)**, **682.33(C)(2) (Outdoor Service Equipment and Disconnects)**, and **682.33(C)(3) (Walking Surfaces)** are now required to be bonded together and to the electrical grounding system (*grounding electrode system*)
- Bonding conductors (*there can be more than one*) are required to be solid copper, insulated, covered or bare, and not smaller than 6 AWG
- Connections from the equipotential plane to the grounding electrode system are required to be made by exothermic welding or by listed pressure connectors or clamps that are labeled as being suitable for the purpose and are of stainless steel, brass, copper, or copper alloy
- Equipotential Plane.** Accessible conductive parts bonded together to reduce voltage gradients in a designated area. (see Article 100)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

171

### 682.33(C) Bonding of Equipotential Planes (cont.)

- 682.33(C)** detailing bonding provisions was **extensively revised** this Code cycle and was broken into **three list items**
- 682.33(C)(2)** is new text and calls for **metallic enclosures of outdoor service equipment or disconnecting means** that control equipment in or on water to be bonded to the equipotential plane
- 680.33(C)(3)** will now require surfaces directly below the service equipment to be bonded to the equipotential plane as well
- This surface requiring bonding is considered to be the surface area **not less than 900 mm (36 in.) in all directions** from the equipment from which a person would be able to stand and come in contact with the equipment
- Surface in question can be bonding by employing **wire mesh or other conductive elements** on, embedded in, or placed under the walk surface **within 75 mm (3 in.) from grade**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

172

### 682.33(C) Bonding of Equipotential Planes

Revision made to 682.33(C) more clearly explains in more details as to what needs to be bonded together and how to bond each part in order to properly construct an equipotential plane

Outdoor service equipment or disconnecting means that control equipment in or on water

900 mm (36 in.)

Wire mesh embedded within 75 mm (3 in.) of grade in walking surface 900 mm (36 in.) in all directions from equipment.

173

### 690.2 Definitions: Functional Grounded, Functionally PV System

- The previous definition for **"Functional Grounded PV System"** was revised to **"Grounded, Functionally"**
- Informational Note** also revised to clarify the operational purposes for a functionally grounded system, and to indicate that ground faults are only one reason to employ a functionally grounded system
- Changed to **"Grounded, Functionally"** to follow the format in Article 100 as this definition is used in multiple articles such as Article 705, 706, and 712
- Text in the previous definition was **vague and misleading** since functionally grounded PV systems (*without a point of direct connection to a grounding electrode system*) is only permitted through the use of a **listed ground-fault protection system** that will open all of the ungrounded conductors of a system when a fault is detected in accordance with **690.41(A) or (B)**
- To accomplish this detection, an **equipment grounding connection** is necessary as a reference to a grounding system since the functionally grounded system is effectively isolated from a ground reference until a ground fault is sensed

174

### 690.2 Definitions: Functional Grounded, Functionally PV System (cont.)

- The previous definition for **"Functional Grounded PV System"** was revised to **"Grounded, Functionally"** (*cont.*)
- Most PV systems installed in the past decade or so are actually functionally grounded systems rather than solidly grounded systems as defined in Article 100
- For functionally grounded PV systems with an interactive inverter output, the ac equipment grounding conductor is connected to associated grounded ac distribution equipment
- This connection is often the connection to ground for ground-fault protection and equipment grounding of the PV array

175

### 690.2 Definition: Grounded, Functionally

**Functional Grounded, Functionally PV System.** A system that has an electrical ground reference for operational purposes that is not solidly grounded.

**Informational Note:** A functionally grounded system is often connected to ground through an electronic means internal to an inverter or charge controller that provides ground-fault protection. Examples of operational purposes for functionally grounded systems include ground-fault detection and performance-related issues for some power sources.

176



### 690.4(B) PV Equipment Listing and Evaluation

- Revision clarifies that if the **listed PV equipment** is not **listed for the application** then it must be **field evaluated** by a NRTL or Field Evaluation Body (FEB) and have a field label applied if it passes the evaluation
- Inverters, motor generators, PV modules, ac modules and ac module systems, dc combiners, dc-to-dc converters, **rapid shutdown equipment**, **dc circuit controllers**, and charge controllers **intended for use in PV systems** are now required to be listed or be **evaluated for the application** and have a **field label applied** (function of the "field evaluation" process)
- New Code language added to not just require this equipment to be "**field labeled**" but be "**evaluated**" for the intended application
- Equipment that is listed for the application means that it is intended for use in that application


Copyright © JAEI 2020

177

### 690.4(B) PV Equipment Listing and Evaluation

Equipment intended for use in PV systems required to be **listed** or be **evaluated** for the application and have a **field label applied**

- Equipment required to be listed or evaluated:
  - Inverters
  - Motor generators
  - PV modules
  - ac modules **and ac module systems**
  - dc combiners
  - dc-to-dc converters
  - Rapid shutdown equipment**
  - dc circuit controllers**
  - Charge controllers



Copyright © JAEI 2020


178

### 690.8(A) PV Circuit Sizing and Calculation of Maximum Circuit Current

- 690.8(A) was reorganized to provide improvement to the understanding of the requirements for PV circuit sizing and current
- Maximum current for specific PV circuits are now calculated in accordance with **690.8(A)(1) through (A)(2)**, with previous 690.8(A)(2), (A)(3), (A)(5), and (A)(6) incorporated into **revised 690.8(A)(1)**
- Language was added to clarify that calculations for these circuits have **options**, however, the **secondary options** in 690.8(A)(1)(b) and 690.8(A)(1)(a)(2) contain **restrictions**
- New **690.8(A)(2)** titled, "**Circuits Connected to the Input of Electronic Power Converters**" added to provide provision pertaining to the case in stand-alone inverter input circuit currents (previous 690.8(A)(4))
  - This section includes clarifying language to require an overcurrent device in accordance with **240.4(B)** to address the allowance to **round up to the next standard size**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

179



Copyright © JAEI 2020

180

### 690.9(A) Overcurrent Protection for PV Circuits and Equipment

- Revision reorganizes **690.9(A)** for **overcurrent protection** to eliminate previous exception with three List Items created for unique and different protection scenarios
- The previous exception was written in positive *Code* language and transformed into **new 690.9(A)(1)** (*Circuits Where Overcurrent Protection Not Required*) with two conditions that must be met in order to not have to provide overcurrent protection
- New **690.9(A)(2)** addresses circuits connected to current limited sources
- New **690.9(A)(3)** titled "**Other Circuits**" captures all remaining options covered under this section with four protection options

Copyright © JAEI 2020

181



182

### 690.12 Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings

- The requirements for a **Rapid Shutdown** of PV systems received extensive revision again this *Code* cycle
- The **2014 NEC** genesis of the rapid shutdown requirements of 690.12 were launched with the United States Department of Homeland Security (DHS) Assistance to Firefighter grant program
- For the **2017 NEC**, the rapid shutdown requirements of 690.12 was revised to emphasize the primary existence of the rapid shutdown requirements is to **reduced shock hazard for emergency responders** and to answer questions regarding the functionality of the PV rapid shutdown device itself
- This pattern of revision continued for the **2020 NEC**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

183

### 690.12 Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings (cont.)

- The requirements for a **Rapid Shutdown** of PV systems received extensive revision again this *Code* cycle (*cont.*)
- A **new product standard** has been developed by UL so that hazardous energy levels within a PV array can be reduced when firefighters or other emergency response personnel are required to enter the array area to mitigate emergency conditions
- See **UL 3741** (*Standard for Safety Photovoltaic Hazard Control*)
- Parent text of 690.12 "**emergency responders**" replaced with "**fire fighter**" to narrow down exactly who the rapid shutdown function is intended for which harmonizes this *Code* text with **UL 3741**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

184



### 690.12 Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings (cont.)

- The requirements for a **Rapid Shutdown** of PV systems received extensive revision again this Code cycle (cont.)
- Revision to **690.12(A) (Controlled Conductors)** define what conductors are to be controlled; (1) PV system dc circuits and (2) Inverter output circuits
- 690.12(B) (Controlled Limits)** revised to indicate that controlled conductors **outside** the array boundary comply with **690.12(B)(1)** and **inside** the array boundary comply with **690.12(B)(2)**
- New Code text added at **690.12(C)** to address cases where more than one initiation device is used on a single PV system
- Previous **informational note** following **690.12(D)**, (inverter input circuit conductors often remain energized for up to 5 minutes with inverters not listed for rapid shutdown) **deleted** as informational note no longer needed

Copyright © IAEI 2020

185

### 690.12 Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings

Rapid shutdown requirements revised **extensive revision** to emphasize the primary existence of rapid shutdown requirements is to reduced shock hazard for **fire fighters**

Courtesy of ABB Electrification Products Division (Thomas & Betts)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

186

### 690.13(A) PV System Disconnecting Means

- New requirement calling for the PV disconnecting means to be **lockable or require a tool to open** under certain conditions
- New requirement calls for any PV disconnect enclosure with a door or hinged cover that exposes live parts when open to be **locked or require a tool to open** where a disconnecting means of systems **above 30 volts are readily accessible to unqualified persons**
- Similar format to **110.31(D) (Enclosed Equipment Accessible to Unqualified Persons)** which addresses equipment accessible to unqualified persons
- Installation of PV systems has created numerous opportunities for PV disconnect switches to be located in positions that are **accessible by other than qualified personnel (children in some instances)**
- Same basic change occurred at **690.15(A)** for the isolating devices or disconnecting means for PV equipment and **705.20(5)** for the disconnecting means for interconnected electric power production sources

Copyright © IAEI 2020

187

### 690.13(A) Photovoltaic System Disconnecting Means

PV system disconnecting means are required to be installed at a readily accessible location

Where PV disconnecting means (above 30 volts) are readily accessible to unqualified persons, any enclosure door or hinged cover that exposes live parts when open is now required to be **locked or require a tool to open**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

188

### 690.13(E) Type of PV System Disconnecting Means

- Previous (3) List Items under **"Type of Disconnect"** removed and the revision summarizes the type of disconnects that may be used as a PV system disconnect with **lockability requirements** of **110.25** included
- Previous provisions at 690.13(F)(1), (F)(2) and (F)(3) pertaining to **"backfeed"** operations has been **removed** and referenced in a **new Informational Note** following 690.13(E)
- Revision clarifies that all **non-solidly grounded conductors** must be disconnected, but the **ac grounded (neutral) conductors** (which are *solidly grounded*), are not required to be disconnected
- Type PV system disconnecting means allowed was put into a **list format** [similar to the list that was found at previous 690.15(D)]

Copyright © IAEI 2020

189



190

### 690.15 Disconnecting Means for Photovoltaic Equipment

- Requirements for **disconnecting means** for **isolating PV equipment** of PV systems received **extensive revision** to emphasis isolation of equipment from energized conductors
- The original 1984 *NEC* title was changed from **"Disconnection of Photovoltaic Equipment"** to **"Disconnecting Means for Photovoltaic Equipment"**
  - Previous title was misleading and could be interpreted to refer to disconnecting means that is discussed at **680.10**
  - Section is intended to address isolation of equipment from energized conductors (isolated)
  - Does not necessarily have to be accomplished by an equipment disconnecting means

Copyright © IAEI 2020

191

### 690.15 Disconnecting Means for Photovoltaic Equipment (cont.)

- Requirements for **disconnecting means** for **isolating PV equipment** of PV systems received **extensive revision** to emphasis isolation of equipment from energized conductors (*cont.*)
- Revision occurred at the parent text of **690.15** to point directly to 690.15(D) to clarify the types of disconnecting means allowed for isolation of PV equipment
- A provision was added at the end of **690.15(A)** requiring the disconnecting means of equipment operating above 30 volts and readily accessible to unqualified persons to be lockable and locked or require a tool to open
- **Previous 690.15(B)** titled, "Interrupting Rating" was **deleted** as this information is covered and better suited for the disconnecting means requirements of **690.13(D)** [previously 690.13(E)]

Copyright © IAEI 2020

192

### 690.15 Disconnecting Means for Photovoltaic Equipment (cont.)

- Requirements for **disconnecting means** for **isolating PV equipment** of PV systems received **extensive revision** to emphasis isolation of equipment from energized conductors (cont.)
- New 690.15(B)** [previously 690.15(C)] titled, "**Isolating Device**" had new language added to point out the fact that an isolating device is **not required** to have an **interrupting rating** (can have an interrupting rating, but not required)
- A new first sentence was added to **690.15(C)** to address the language removed from previous 690.15(B) on **interrupting ratings** and added fault current
- The lockability requirement of **690.15(C)** changed so that this would only be applicable to cases where the disconnecting means is **more than 3 m (10 ft)** from the equipment or not within site of the equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2020

193

### 690.15 Disconnecting Means for Photovoltaic Equipment (cont.)


- Requirements for **disconnecting means** for **isolating PV equipment** of PV systems received **extensive revision** to emphasis isolation of equipment from energized conductors (cont.)
- A new **690.15(D)** added titled, "**Type of Disconnecting Means**," which is intended to clarify the requirements related to disconnection of equipment
- Two different requirements for these devices:
  - Circuits with a **maximum circuit current over 30 amperes** must have devices that comply with **new 690.15(D)** as these conversion devices can present a load to the fault current limited circuit.
  - Circuits **under 30 amperes** where isolation is required for servicing equipment, *Code* language was added to make it clear that isolating devices are permitted

Copyright © IAEI 2020

194

### 690.15 Disconnecting Means for Photovoltaic Equipment

Requirements for disconnecting means for isolating PV equipment of PV systems received extensive revision to emphasis isolation of equipment from energized conductors



Copyright © IAEI 2020

195

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section
- Wiring methods for PV installations were previously located in various areas
- New sentence added to **690.31(A)** to introducing a revised table [Table **690.31(A)(a)**] and a **new Table 690.31(A)(b)**
  - Revision cleans up **Table 690.31(A)(a)** [formerly Table 690.31(A)] by only including correction factors for 105°C (221°F) and 125°C (257°F) as all other correction factors are in Article 310
  - The temperature ranges above 30°C are given in 5°C increments
  - New ampacity table for 105°C (221°F) and 125°C (257°F) has been added as **new Table 690.31(A)(b)**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

196



### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems (cont.)

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section (cont.)
- Additional clarity was needed at **690.31(B)** to address the most common application of this requirement for enforcers; installation of inverter dc input conductors and ac output conductors in the **same wireway** below an inverter
- 690.31(B)(2)** permitted the installation of those same conductors (even if from different PV systems) within the same raceway or junction box with a removable cover without a barrier or partition
- Exception to 690.31(B)(2)** even deleted the grouping requirement where the conductors enter the enclosure through separate means
- 690.31(B)** revised to provide needed **lines of demarcation** for conductors of dc and ac PV systems

Copyright © JAEI 2020

197

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems (cont.)

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section (cont.)
- Several of the items in 690.31 are directly related to cables and those **able requirements** were consolidated in the new and revised **690.31(C)**
- Code language added to the parent text of **690.31(C)** pertaining to the listing requirement for **Photovoltaic (Type PV) wire or cable** and **Distributed Generation (Type DG) cable** with a new informational note added to direct users of the Code to **UL 4703 (Standard for Photovoltaic Wire)** and **UL 3003 (Distributed Generation Cables)**
- Requirements of **690.31(C)(1)** for **"Single-Conductor Cable"** simplified to now call for single-conductor cable in exposed outdoor locations in PV system dc circuits within the PV array to be either PV wire or cable or single-conductor cable marked sunlight resistant and Type USE-2 and Type RHW-2

Copyright © JAEI 2020

198

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems (cont.)

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section (cont.)
- 690.31(C)(2)** deals with single-conductor PV wire or cable installed in a cable tray with revision to this list item adding single-conductor **distributed generation (Type DG) cable** of all sizes to be permitted to be installed in a cable tray installed in outdoor locations (with conditions)
- 690.31(C)(3)** for multiconductor jacketed cables added new provisions for distributed generation (Type DG) cables
- Type DG cable is closely related to Type TC-ER, but it is better suited for the renewable energy and other distributed generation applications allowing for different variations in conductor combinations within a single jacket

Copyright © JAEI 2020

199

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems (cont.)

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section (cont.)
- 690.31(C)(4), (5), and (6)** were existing requirements moved from previous 690.31(E),(H), and (F) respectively with no technical change to group all single-conductor cables requirements together at **690.31(C)**
- 690.31(D)** title was shortened to be more descriptive of what it covers (*Direct-Current Circuits on or in a Buildings*) [was 690.31(G)] and extensively revised
- 690.31(D)** generally requires PV system dc circuits run inside a building to be contained in a metallic wiring system
- Purpose of revision was to acknowledge that the **physical protection requirements** of **690.31(D)** are related to the ability to detect ground faults and to protect from contact with higher voltage cables

Copyright © JAEI 2020

200

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems (cont.)

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section (cont.)
- New **exception** was added for **690.31(D)** which addresses PV hazard control systems
- Previous requirement at 690.31(G)(1)** that called for PV circuits that were embedded in built-up, laminate, or membrane roofing materials in roof areas (not covered by PV modules and associated equipment) to be clearly marked for its location has been **deleted** as these marking requirement referred to a wiring method that is no longer used (embedded in building surfaces)
- Revision also occurred at **690.31(D)(2) (Marking and Labeling Required)** by adding language to clarify that wiring methods need not be marked where their purpose is evident

Copyright © JAEI 2020

201

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems (cont.)

- Revisions to **690.31** organized **PV wiring methods** into one section (cont.)
- 690.31(E)** titled "**Bipolar Photovoltaic Systems**," [was 690.31(I)] received slight revision by replacing the term "monopole subarray" with the term "monopole circuit" as the reference is to the circuits to these monopole subarrays so the term "circuit" was added in all five locations where monopole subarray was previously used
- New **690.31(F)** added pertaining to roof-mounted PV array mounting systems and their wiring methods
  - Permits the roof-mounted PV array to be held in place with an **approved means** other than those required by 110.13 (*Mounting and Cooling of Equipment*)


Copyright © JAEI 2020

202

### 690.31 Wiring Methods for Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems

690.31 was revised and re-organized for clarity and to bring PV wiring methods for PV source and output circuits to one location

- (A) Wiring Systems
- (B) Identification and Grouping
  - Identification
  - Grouping
- (C) Cables
  - Single-Conductor Cables
  - Cable Tray
  - Multiconductor Jacketed Cables
  - Flexible Cords and Cables
  - Connected to Tracking PV Arrays
  - Flexible, Fine Stranded Cables
  - Small-Conductor Cables
- (D) Direct-Current on or in Buildings
  - Flexible Wiring Methods
  - Marking and Labeling Required
- (E) Bipolar Photovoltaic Systems



Copyright © JAEI 2020

203

### 690.33 Mating Connectors Types for PV Systems

- New allowances added for mixing and matching brands of **PV mating connectors**
- Mating connectors **not of the identical type and brand** required to be "**listed and identified for intermatibility**," as described in the manufacturer's instructions
- "Intermatibility" is a term used in **UL 6703 (Standard for Connectors for Use in Photovoltaic Systems)**
- Mating connectors required to be of the **latching or locking type** (not new)
- Mating connectors that are readily accessible and used in circuits operating at **over 30 volts dc or 15 volts ac** require a tool for opening (not new)
- Type of connector being described at 690.33 is clearly a mating connector, so the title of 690.33 was changed from "Connectors" to "**Mating Connectors**."
- Failures of connections made between mating connectors from different brands are well documented and represent a source of **electrical and fire hazard**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

204



### 690.33(C) Mating Connector Types for PV Systems

Mating connectors shall be of the latching or locking type and where readily accessible and used in circuits operating at over 30 volts dc or 15 volts ac shall require a tool for opening



Mating connectors not of the identical type and brand are required to be "listed and identified for intermatibility," as described in the manufacturer's instructions

205

### 690.41(B) Ground-Fault Protection for PV Systems

- PV system dc circuits (*not just the arrays*) that exceed **30 volts** or **8 amperes** are now required to be provided with dc ground-fault protection (GFP)
- This section now consists of three subsections
  - (1) Ground-Fault Detection
  - (2) Faulted Circuits
  - (3) Indication of Faults (New)
- PV dc AFCI and GFP requirements in both **UL 1741-3** (*Standard for Photovoltaic (PV) DC Arc-Fault Circuit Protection*) and **IEC 62109-2** (*Safety of Power Converters for use in Photovoltaic Power Systems - Part 2*) acknowledge that only energy values above these levels pose an arcing or other fire risk

206

### 690.41(B) Ground-Fault Protection for PV Systems (cont.)

- PV system dc circuits (*not just the arrays*) that exceed **30 volts** or **8 amperes** are now required to be provided with dc ground-fault protection (GFP) (*cont.*)
- PV system circuits operating at lower voltage and power levels do not pose an arcing or other fire risk, therefore permitted to be installed **without GFP**
- Previous **exception to 690.41(B)** permitted PV arrays with not more than two PV source circuits to be installed without GFP (where solidly grounded) as long as all PV system dc circuits were not on or in buildings has been reworded into positive language suitable for inclusion into the charging paragraph without changing the existing requirements
- New **informational note** has been added after the parent text of **690.41(B)** indicating that not all inverters, charge controllers, or dc-to-dc converters include GFP

207

### 690.41(B) Ground-Fault Protection for PV Systems (cont.)

- PV system dc circuits (*not just the arrays*) that exceed **30 volts** or **8 amperes** are now required to be provided with dc ground-fault protection (GFP) (*cont.*)
- Provisions for ground-fault detection at **690.41(B)(1)** have been revised to better align with the definitions in 690.2 and in particular, with the revised definition of "**Functionally Grounded**"
  - New language clarifies that either **GFP must be included in the converter**, or the converter and the equipment providing GFP must be **identified as being compatible** such that GFP of the circuit is maintained on either side of the converter
- Revised text at **690.41(B)(2)** concerning faulted circuits improves the application of these requirements to **any device providing GFP** (*not just inverters or charge controllers*) and clarifies the circuits to be controlled

208

### 690.41(B) Ground-Fault Protection for PV Systems (cont.)

- PV system dc circuits (*not just the arrays*) that exceed **30 volts** or **8 amperes** are now required to be provided with dc ground-fault protection (GFP) (*cont.*)
- Changes at **690.41(B)(2)** also better align *NEC* requirements with those found in PV GFP equipment safety standards such as **UL 1741** (*Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment for Use with Distributed Energy Resources*)
- New **690.41(B)(3)** added titled, "**Indication of Faults**" states that any GFP equipment must provide an "**indication of ground faults at a readily accessible location**"
- **UL 1741** requires inverters to "identify, interrupt, and provide an indication of ground faults"
- New **690.41(B)(3)** giving examples of **indication devices** such as remote indicator light, display, monitor, signal to a monitored alarm system, or receipt of notification by web-based services

Copyright © JAEI 2020

209

Photo Courtesy of SolarEdge

210

211

### 690.51, 690.52, and 690.53 Marking Requirements of PV Modules and dc PV Circuits

- Information outlined at previous **690.51**, **690.52**, and **690.53** that is required as part of the listing requirement of this equipment has been deleted as it is being provided on the device by the manufacturer
- **690.51** revised to simply require modules and ac modules to be marked in accordance with their listing
- **Previous 690.52** was deleted entirely
- **690.53** was revised to require a permanent readily visible label indicating the highest maximum dc voltage in a PV system
- Desirable to remove these values from the required label in order to not inadvertently create conflict or confusion with any other required safety labeling such as may be required in Article 110

Copyright © JAEI 2020

212

### Marking Requirements for PV Modules and DC PV Circuits

Information outlined at previous 690.51, 690.52, and 690.53 that is required as part of the listing of this equipment has been deleted as it is being provided on the device by the manufacturer

A permanent readily visible label indicating the highest maximum dc voltage in a PV system is required by 690.53

213

### 690.56(C) Identification of Power Sources for Buildings with Rapid Shutdown

- Several changes were made to **690.56(C)** to address the updated requirements in **690.12** (*Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings*)
- Previous 690.56(C) contained **two figures** at 690.56(C)(1) illustrating labels required for the then two different types of rapid shutdown systems for a PV installation
- Remaining text of previous **690.56(C)(1)** has been changed to **remove** the option for the label and **previous Figure 690.56(C)(1)(b)**, previously listed under **690.56(C)(1)(b)**, since this label now describes a shutdown method that is no longer *Code* compliant
- The title of the remaining figure has been changed to identify this figure as an **informational note figure** to clarify that the label as shown is merely an **example** of a rapid shutdown system label

214

### 690.56(C) ID of Power Sources for Buildings with Rapid Shutdown

Buildings with PV systems shall have a permanent label located at each service equipment location to which the PV systems are connected or at an approved readily visible location and shall indicate the location of rapid shutdown initiation devices

**Information Note Figure 690.56(C): Label for Roof-Mounted PV Systems with Rapid Shutdown**

Label required by 690.56(C)(2)

Title of remaining figure has been changed to identify this figure as an informational note figure to clarify that the label as shown is merely an **example** of a rapid shutdown system label

215

### 691.1 Scope and I-Note Figure 691.1

- New **Informational Note No. 3** and **Informational Note Figure 691.1** were added to Article 691 as an aid in interpretation
- Title of **Article 691** was changed to "**Large-Scale Photovoltaic (PV) Electric Power Supply Stations**" with the **scope changed** to indicate that the article is intended to cover "the installation of large-scale PV electric supply stations with an inverter generating capacity of no less than 5000 kW, and not under exclusive utility control"
- Term "**supply station**" which was used 12 times throughout Article 691 in the 2017 *NEC* and 17 times in the 2020 *NEC*
- Utilizing the term "**supply station**" better aligns the *NEC* and **National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)** on this term, which is describing the same equipment set in both Codes

216



### 691.1 Scope and I-Note Figure 691.1 (cont.)

- New **Informational Note No. 3** and **Informational Note Figure 691.1** were added to Article 691 as an aid in interpretation (cont.)
- Scope of Article 691 was **updated** to align with the definition of **"Generating Capacity, Inverter"** located in Article 100
- This definitions states that inverter Generating Capacity is defined as "the sum of parallel-connected inverter maximum continuous output power at 40°C in watts or kilowatts"
- New informational note** was added after the scope of Article 691 directing users of the Code to a **new informational figure** intended to help in identification of unique system components related to large scale PV electrical supply stations

Copyright © IAEI 2020

217

### 691.1 Scope and Informational Note Figure 691.1

This article covers the installation of large-scale PV electric power production facilities with a supply stations with an inverter generating capacity of no less than 5000 kW, and not under exclusive utility control.

**Informational Note Figure 691.1: Large-Scale PV Electric Supply Station Components.**

Notes:  
 (1) Custom designs occur in each configuration, and some components are optional.  
 (2) The drawing is for informational purposes only and is not representative of all potential configurations.

218

### 691.9 Disconnection Means for Isolating PV Equipment

- Title revised** to be consistent with usage in Article 690, particularly 690.15
- First sentence allowing isolating devices to be located remotely from equipment was revised to align more closely with the defined term **"In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)"** in Article 100
- Provisions requiring **written safety procedures** and conditions of maintenance and supervision ensuring that only **qualified persons** service the equipment was **deleted**
- New text added requiring **documentation** of the disconnection procedures and means of isolating equipment required by the engineered design of 691.6

Copyright © IAEI 2020

219

### 691.9 Disconnection Means for Isolating Photovoltaic Equipment

Isolating devices not required within sight of equipment and permitted to be located remotely from equipment

Engineered design required by 691.6 shall document disconnection procedures and means of isolating equipment.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

220

### 692.4(B) Identification of Power Sources (Fuel Cell System)

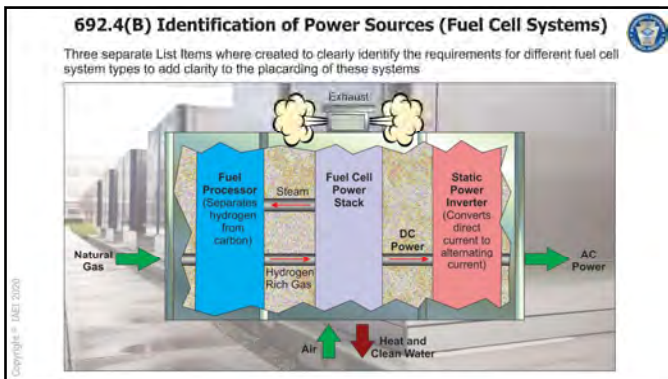
- Three separate **List Items** where **created** to clearly identify the requirements for different fuel cell system types to add clarity to the **placarding** of these systems
- Where these alternative energy systems are present, fuel cell systems are required to be **identified** depending upon the type of system involved;
  - (1) **Interconnected ac System** plaques or directories are required to be installed in accordance with **705.10**
  - (2) **dc Microgrid System** plaques or directories are required to be installed in accordance with **712.10**
  - (3) **Stand-Alone System** plaques or directories are required to be installed in accordance with **710.10**

221

### 692.4(B) Identification of Power Sources (Fuel Cell System) (cont.)

- Three separate **List Items** where **created** to clearly identify the requirements for different fuel cell system types to add clarity to the **placarding** of these systems (*cont.*)
- Ongoing concerns have been expressed by the **fire service** and other **first responders** on the need to secure on-site power sources during emergencies and ready awareness of where those alternative sources are located
- There has been a **lack of uniform procedures** from an **NEC** standpoint on how to effectively secure on-site power sources that may be at a premises due to the variety of different source types
- Changes implemented at 692.4(B) will correlate various sections of the **NEC** and consistently require this important marking be located at each service equipment location, or at an approved readily visible location
- Same basic change occurred at **694.54** for **Wind Electric Systems**

222



223



224



### 695.3(C)(3) Selective Coordination (Fire Pumps)

- New provisions were added providing guidance for **selective coordination** of OCPD for fire pumps
- For fire pumps in multibuilding campus-style complexes, all overcurrent protective device(s) must be selectively coordinated with all supply-side overcurrent protective device(s)
- This selective coordination is required to be selected by a **licensed professional engineer or other qualified persons** engaged primarily in the design, installation, or maintenance of electrical systems with the selection documented and made available to those authorized to design, install, maintain, and operate the system
- Selective coordination is not required between two overcurrent devices located in series if no loads are connected in parallel with the downstream device

Copyright © IAEI 2020

225

### 695.3(C)(3) Selective Coordination (Fire Pumps)

Fire pumps in multibuilding campus-style complexes require **all** overcurrent protective device(s) to be selectively coordinated with all supply-side overcurrent protective device(s)



Selective coordination required to be selected by a licensed professional engineer or other qualified persons engaged primarily in the design, installation, or maintenance of electrical systems

Copyright © IAEI 2020

226

### 695.6(J) Raceway Terminations (Fire Pumps)

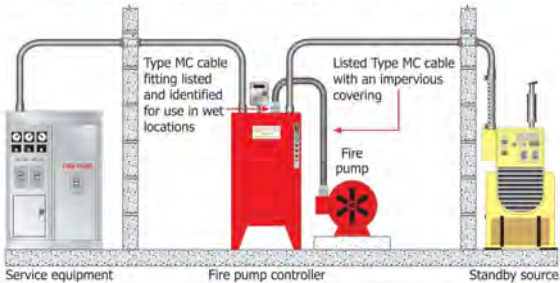
- Revisions were made to align the **allowable wiring methods** in 695.6(D) with the required **terminations fittings** at a fire pump controller
- Cable fittings that are listed for the wiring method used and with a type rating at least equal to that of the fire pump controller are appropriate for these installations
- The installation instructions of the manufacturer of the fire pump controller must be followed
- Alterations to the fire pump controller (*other than raceway or cable terminations*) are required to be approved by the authority having jurisdiction

Copyright © IAEI 2020

227

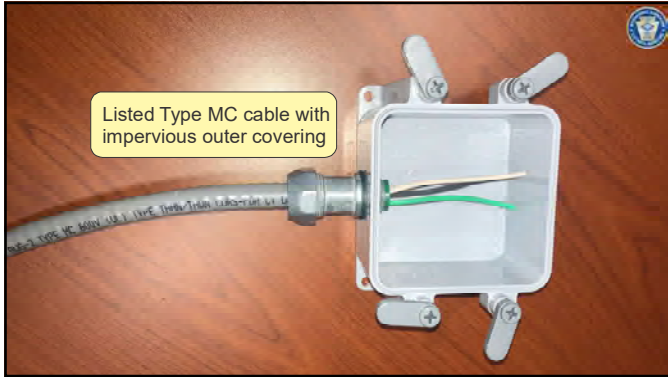
### 695.6(J) Raceway Terminations

Where raceways or cable are terminated at a fire pump controller, terminations must be a **raceway or cable fittings listed and identified for use in wet locations** with the type rating of the raceway or cable fittings being at least equal to that of the fire pump controller.

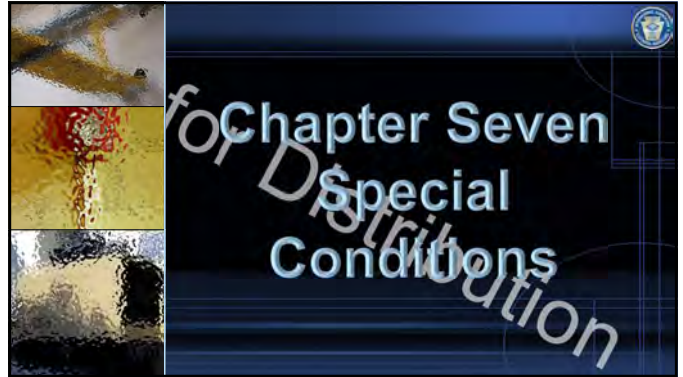


Copyright © IAEI 2020

228



229



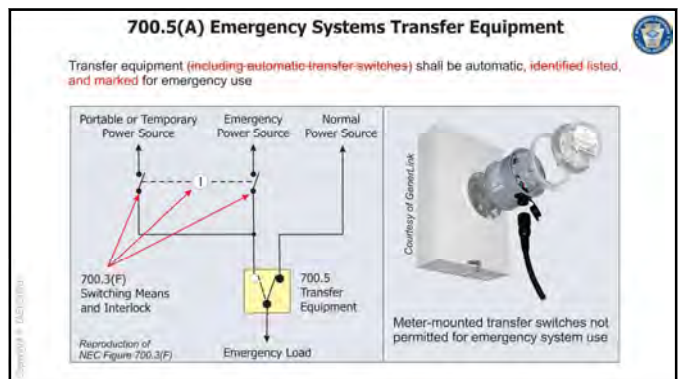
230

### 700.5(A) Transfer Equipment (Emergency Systems)

- A new last sentence is added to clarify that **meter mounted transfer switches** are not permitted for use in emergency systems
- Where emergency system is required, means must be provided to switch critical loads from normal utility source to standby emergency power source
- Several types of device are available for this operation
- A meter-mounted transfer switch is installed in the meterbase between the glass plug-in meter and the base unit
- Meter mounted transfer switch allows a typical homeowner to connect a portable generator to their home with relative ease via the electric meter located on the outside of the building
- Same basic change** pertaining to listing and marking requirement and prohibiting meter-mounted transfer equipment occurred at **701.5(A) (Legally Required Systems)**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

231



232

### 700.12(B) Emergency Systems Equipment Design and Location

- Reference to "spaces with a **1-hour fire rating**" revised to **2-hour**, to correlate with the requirements of **700.10(D)** and **NFPA 110**
- NFPA 110 (Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems)** indicates this same 2-hour fire rating
- Emergency system equipment for sources of power now required to be installed either in spaces **fully protected by approved automatic fire protection systems** or in spaces with a **2-hour fire rating** where located within:
  - (1) Assembly occupancies for more than 1000 persons
  - (2) Buildings above 23 m (75 ft) in height with any of the following occupancy classes; assembly, educational, residential, detention and correctional, business, and mercantile
  - (3) Educational occupancies with more than 300 occupants

233

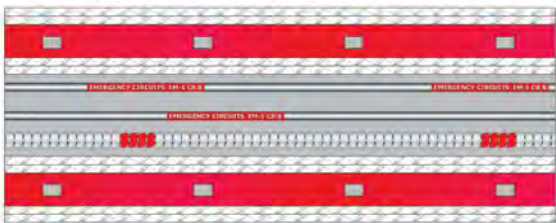
### 700.12(B) Emergency Systems Equipment Design and Location (cont.)

- Previous editions of the Code called for this 1-hour fire rating (now 2-hour) to be applied to four specific locations
- One of these locations was previous List item (3) addressing "**health care occupancies where persons are not capable of self-preservation**"
- This list item was **deleted** to resolve conflicts between 700.12(B) and **NFPA 99 (Health Care Facilities Code)**
- Conflict between NFPA documents [700.12(B) (3) and NFPA 99] could have resulted in AHJ being unable to determine which of the standards takes precedence

234

### 700.12(B) Emergency System Equipment Design and Location

Equipment for sources of power required to be installed either in spaces fully protected by approved automatic fire protection systems or in spaces with a 2-hour fire rating where located within:



(1) Assembly occupancies for more than 1000 persons, (2) Buildings above 23 m (75 ft) in height with any of the following occupancy classes; assembly, educational, residential, detention and correctional, business, and mercantile, (3) **Health care occupancies where persons are not capable of self-preservation**; and (3) Educational occupancies with more than 300 occupants

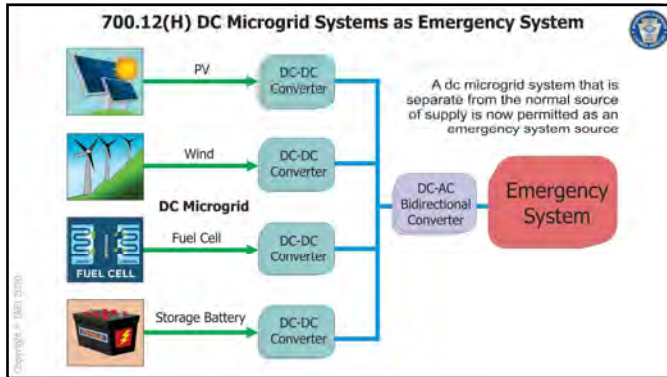
235

### 700.12(H) DC Microgrid Systems as Emergency System

- New List Item (H) added to clarify that a **dc microgrid system** that is separate from the normal source of supply is permitted as an emergency system source
- Several systems are identified at **700.12** that can serve as an emergency system source such as storage batteries, generator sets, uninterruptible power supplies (UPS), additional separate services, fuel cell systems, and unit equipment
- In order for a **dc microgrid system** to qualify as an emergency system, it must be capable of being **isolated from all non-emergency sources** and must also have a suitable rating and capacity to supply and maintain the total emergency load for not less than **2 hours of full-demand operation**
- Where a dc microgrid system source serves as the **normal supply** for the building or group of buildings concerned, it **cannot serve as the sole source of power** for the emergency standby system

236



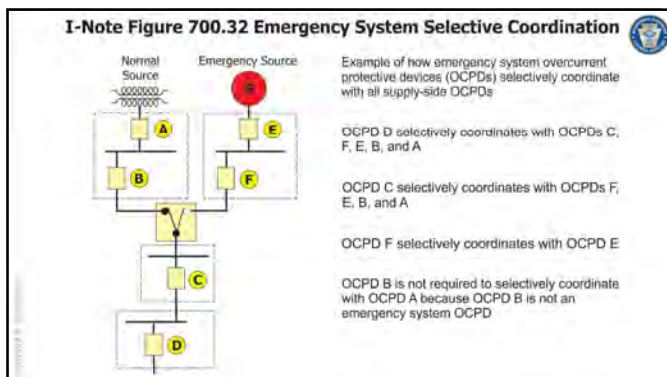


237

### Informational Note Figure 700.32 Emergency System Selective Coordination

- A **new informational note** was added at 700.32 giving reference to a **new Informational Note Figure 700.32**, which gives an **example** of how emergency system overcurrent protective devices (OCPDs) selectively coordinate with all supply-side OCPDs
- Emergency system(s) overcurrent devices are required to be selectively coordinated with all supply-side overcurrent protective devices
- Selective coordination is the ability of a system to isolate a fault or overload to a branch circuit or feeder panelboard without effecting the service equipment
- Addition of new figure provides **significant clarity** the determination of how emergency system OCPDs selectively coordinate comes together to protect upstream loads
- Very same change occurred at **708.54** for Critical Operations Power Systems (COPS)

238

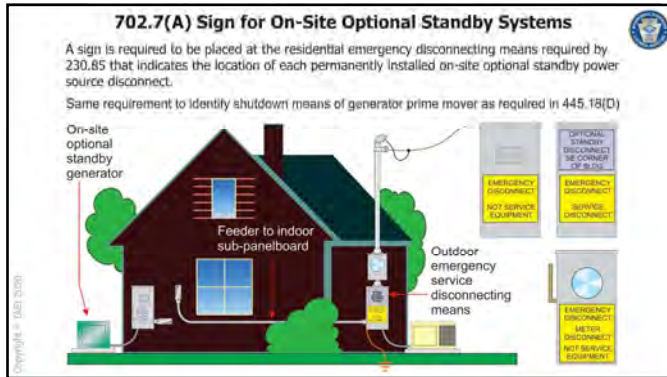


239

### 702.7(A) Signs for Optional Standby Systems

- A sign is required to be placed at the **residential emergency disconnecting means** required by **230.85** that indicates the location of each permanently installed **on-site optional standby power source disconnect**
- An emergency disconnecting means (which could include the service disconnecting means) for a one- or two-family dwelling is now required to be installed and located on the outside of the structure (see 230.85)
- If the outdoor first responder 230.85 emergency disconnect is **not the service disconnect**, then the **on-site optional standby system signage** would be located at this equipment rather than the service equipment
- Same requirement would apply to an **on-site optional generator** to identify the shutdown means of the prime mover as required in **445.18(B)**

240



241

**Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources**

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised**
- Article 705 covers installation of one or more electric power production sources operating in parallel with a primary source(s) of electricity
- Article has been revised and now contains (2) Parts
  - Part I-General
  - Part II-Microgrid Systems
- Previous Part II and Part III have been deleted as part of the restructuring of Article 705 for the 2020 *NEC* (deleted or incorporated into other sections of Article 705)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

242

**Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources (cont.)**

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised (cont.)**
- Title of **705.10** was changed from "Directory" to "**Identification of Power Sources**" to align with related changes to identification of power sources in other articles in a continued effort to harmonize all directory requirements for onsite sources under a variety of applications
- New **705.11** was added to address connections made by electric power production sources on the **supply side of the service disconnecting means** as permitted by **230.82(6)**
- New requirements of **705.11(B)** sets a minimum conductor size of **6 AWG copper** and **4 AWG aluminum** for connections on the supply side of the service disconnecting means

Copyright © JAEI 2020

243

**Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources (cont.)**

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised (cont.)**
- New requirements of **705.11(C)** sets forth the requirements for overcurrent protection of the power source output conductors
  - Overcurrent protection be located in a readily accessible location either outside of a building or at the first point of entry
  - If the service is inside a building, two options are available for the location of overcurrent protection:
    - within **3 m (10 ft)** of conductor length in dwelling units
    - within **5 m (16.5 ft)** at other than dwelling units [within **20 m (71 ft)** with current limiters at other than a dwelling unit]

Copyright © JAEI 2020

244



### Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources (cont.)

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised** (cont.)
- New **705.11(D)** deals with the grounding and bonding of metal equipment associated with conductors connected on the supply side of the service disconnect (**This subdivision was removed from the 2020 NEC by CAM 70-45**)
- Type of connections that are permitted for conductors are addressed by new **705.11(E)** (**This subdivision is now 705.11(D) in the 2020 NEC**)
- 705.11(F)** clarifies that a power source disconnecting means shall not be considered as one of the service disconnecting means as required by 230.70 (**This subdivision was removed from the 2020 NEC by CAM 70-46**)
- New requirements of **705.11(G)** (*Ground-Fault Protection*), gives a reference to 230.95 (**This subdivision is now 705.11(E) in the 2020 NEC**)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

245

### Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources (cont.)

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised** (cont.)
- New **705.13** titled, "**Power Control Systems**" was added calling for **power control system (PCS)** to be listed and evaluated to control the output of one or more power production sources, energy storage systems (ESS), and other equipment
- New **705.13(E)** titled, "**Access to Settings**" calls for access to settings of the PCS to be restricted to qualified personnel in accordance with the requirements of 240.6(C) (Restricted Access Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers), which achieves this restricted access by location behind bolted equipment enclosure doors, location behind locked doors accessible only to qualified personnel, etc.

Copyright © IAEI 2020

246

### Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources (cont.)

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised** (cont.)
- Existing Code language at **705.20** was revised and expanded upon for clarity and usability to use proper terminology as this section discusses a singular means of disconnection (*Disconnecting Means, Source*)
- A new section titled, "**Wiring Methods**" was added at **705.25** indicating that all raceway and cable wiring methods included in Chapter 3 of the NEC and other wiring systems and fittings specifically listed, intended, and identified for use with power production systems and equipment are permitted to be used
- New **705.28** titled, "**Circuit Sizing and Current**" has been added, which is previous 705.60 revised, consolidated, and relocated into 705.28 to be consistent with Article 690

Copyright © IAEI 2020

247

### Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources (cont.)

- Article 705 was **extensively reorganized and revised** (cont.)
- New **705.30** titled, "**Overcurrent Protection**" is previous language from 705.65 and combined into this new section
- Previous Part II and Part III have been deleted as part of the restructuring of Article 705 (*sections of these previous parts have been deleted or incorporated into other sections of Article 705*)
- New provisions of **705.45 (Unbalanced Interconnections)**, which was previous 705.100 have been restored and relocated at the end of Part I of Article 705

Copyright © IAEI 2020

248

### Article 705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources

Article 705 covers installation of one or more electric power production sources operating in parallel with a primary source(s) of electricity

Article 705 was extensively reorganized and revised for the 2020 NEC Code cycle

249

### 706.1 Scope (Energy Storage Systems)

- Scope of Article 706 has been revised to provide clarity and to better express what is covered by the article
- Previously, an energy storage system may have been confused with an **uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system** or a **large battery system** that is used only when power is lost to the building
- Revised scope and definition of an **Energy Storage System** provides additional clarity that an ESS can store and provide energy during normal operating conditions
- Previous scope identified an ESS as one "operating at over 50 volts ac or 60 volts dc," which has been revised to "**having a capacity greater than 3.6 MJ (1 kWh)**" [MJ = megajoule, kWh = kilowatt hour]
- Scope was also revised to make it clear that Article 706 will not only apply to a **permanently installed ESS**, but those used in **temporary applications** also

250

### 706.1 Scope of Article 706 (Energy Storage Systems)

This article applies to all energy storage systems (ESS) having a capacity greater than 3.6 MJ (1 kWh) that may be stand-alone or interactive with other electric power production sources. These systems are primarily intended to store and provide energy during normal operating conditions.

The scope of Article 706 has been revised to provide clarity and to better express what is covered by the article

251

### 706.2 Definitions:


#### Energy Storage System (ESS)

- Revision occurred to the previous definition of an **Energy Storage System (ESS)** to better define what an ESS is and is not
- **Energy Storage System (ESS)**. One or more components assembled together capable of storing energy and providing electrical energy into the premises wiring system or an electric power production and distribution network.
- The **different classifications** of ESS that were in the 2017 NEC were **deleted** as these terms are no longer used in the ESS industry
- **UL 9540 (Standard for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment)** does not specify or define any specific system classification terminology
- Improvements to the definition of an energy storage system will help users of the Code better apply Article 706 to electrical installations

252

### 706.2 Definition: Energy Storage System (ESS)

One or more components assembled together capable of storing energy and providing electrical energy into the premises wiring system or an electric power production and distribution network.



ESS(s) can include but is not limited to batteries, capacitors, and kinetic energy devices (e.g., flywheels and compressed air) and can include inverters or converters to change voltage levels or to make a change between an ac or a dc system

253

### 706.4 System Requirements (Energy Storage Systems)

- New marking requirements (*nameplate information*) added for energy storage systems (ESS)
- Marking requirement in this revision correlates with the marking requirements found in **UL 9540** (*Standard for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment*)
- ESS to be provided with a **nameplate plainly visible after installation** and marked with **(8) specific pieces of information** provided on the nameplate
- The classifications of an ESS have been **deleted** (*no longer used in the ESS industry*)
- During the development of **NFPA 855** (*Standard for the Installation of Energy Storage Systems*) the ESS classifications that were included at 706.4 were initially used but are no longer used in NFPA 855

254

### 706.4 System Requirements (Energy Storage System)

Each ESS shall be provided with a **nameplate plainly visible after installation** and marked with **(8) specific pieces of information** provided on the nameplate



IAEI ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM	
KVA	630
RATED FREQUENCY	50 Hz ; 60 Hz
MAXIMUM OUTPUT/INPUT CURRENT	1040 A
MAXIMUM OUTPUT/INPUT VOLTAGE	850 V
AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT	23.2 kA
UTILITY INTERACTIVE CAPABILITY	N/A
NORMAL PHASE-TO-PHASE VAC	380 V
MAX. DC OPERATING CURRENT	
EFFICIENCY (@ 50 Hz)	98.7%
OUTPUT POWER (S)	630 kVA

(1) Manufacturer's name, trademark, or other descriptive marking (2) Rated frequency (3) Number of phases, if ac (4) Rating (kW or kVA) (5) Available fault current derived by the ESS at the output terminals (6) Maximum output and input current of the ESS at the output terminals (7) Maximum output and input voltage of the ESS at the output terminals (8) Utility-interactive capability, if applicable

255

### 706.7 Maintenance of Energy Storage Systems (ESS)

- New provisions added calling for **maintenance** of energy storage systems (ESS)
- Energy storage systems (ESS) are required to be maintained in proper and safe operating condition
- This required maintenance is to be performed in accordance with the **manufacturer's requirements** and industry standards
- A **written record** of the system maintenance is required to be kept and shall include records of repairs and replacements necessary to maintain the system in proper and safe operating condition
- New informational note gives reference to **NFPA 70B-2011** (*Recommended Practice for Electrical Equipment Maintenance*) and **ANSI/NETA ATS-2017** (*Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems*)

256



### 706.7 Maintenance of Energy Storage Systems (ESS)

ESS required to be maintained in proper and safe operating condition with required maintenance performed in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and industry standards.

Maintenance Personnel

Energy Storage System (ESS)

A written record of the system maintenance is required to be kept including records of repairs and replacements necessary to maintain the system in proper and safe operating condition.

257

### 706.9 Maximum Voltage (Energy Storage Systems)

- New section added to provide prescriptive requirements for the determination of **maximum voltage** of an energy storage system (ESS)
- Maximum voltage of an ESS is determined by the rated ESS input and output voltage(s) indicated on the **ESS nameplate(s)** or system listing
- This requirement is in alignment with the new requirements of **706.4**, which calls for an ESS to be provided with a nameplate plainly visible after installation and marked with (8) specific pieces of information provided on the nameplate
- One of the pieces of information now required on the **ESS nameplate** is the "maximum output and input voltage of the ESS at the output terminals"
- New requirements of 706.9 provides clear guidance on how to determine maximum voltage of an ESS

258

### 706.9 Maximum Voltage (Energy Storage Systems)

The maximum voltage of an ESS shall be the rated ESS input and output voltage(s) indicated on the ESS nameplate(s) or system listing

IAEI ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM			
KVA	60 kVA	% IMP.	4.2
NO. OF PHASES	3		
RATED FREQUENCY	50 Hz / 60 Hz	Hz	60
MAXIMUM OUTPUT/INPUT CURRENT	1040 A		
MAXIMUM OUTPUT/INPUT VOLTAGE	850 V		
AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT	23.2 kA		
UTILITY INTERACTIVE CAPABILITY	N/A		
NORMAL PHASE-TO-PHASE VAC	380 V		
MAX. DC OPERATING CURRENT	N/A		
EFFICIENCY (@ 50 Hz)	98.7%		
OUTPUT POWER (S)	630 kVA		

Energy Storage System (ESS)

New section added to provide prescriptive requirements for the determination of maximum voltage of an ESS

259

### 706.30(A)(1) Nameplate-Rated Circuit Current for ESS

- Revision occurred to clarify that an energy storage system (ESS) may have **two nameplates**, each respectively indicating input or output circuit rating, or one nameplate showing input and output circuit ratings
- Previous Code text at 706.20(A)(1) [now **706.30(A)(1)**] stated that the nameplate(s) rated circuit current was to be the rated current indicated on the ESS nameplate(s) or system listing for pre-engineered or self-contained systems of "**matched components**" intended for field assembly as a system
- Neither the *NEC* or *UL 9540 (Standard for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment)* contain a definition for "**matched components**"
- The term "**matched components**" was removed from 706.30(A)(1) to align with revised definitions used in conjunction with Article 706

260

### 706.30(A)(1) Nameplate-Rated Circuit Current for ESS (cont.)


- Not uncommon to see an ESS with **two separate nameplates**, each respectively indicating input or output circuit rating, or one nameplate showing input and output circuit ratings
- 706.30(A)(1)** was revised for clarity and to recognize the fact that an ESS can indeed have **two separate nameplates**
- Where an ESS has separate input (charge) and output (discharge) circuits or ratings, these ratings are to be considered individually
- Where the same terminals on the ESS are used for charging and discharging, the rated current would be considered the greater of the two

Copyright © IAEE 2020

261

### 706.30(A)(1) Nameplate-Rated Circuit Current (ESS)

Circuit current is the rated current indicated on an energy storage systems (ESS) nameplate(s) or system listing for pre-engineered or self-contained systems of matched components intended for field assembly as a system



Courtesy of ABB Electrification Products Division (Thomas & Betts)

- Where an ESS has separate input (charge) and output (discharge) circuits or ratings, these ratings are to be **considered individually** (possibly two nameplates)
- Where the same terminals on the ESS are used for charging and discharging, the rated current would be considered the **greater of the two**

Copyright © IAEE 2020

262

### 708.24(D) Bypass Isolation Automatic Transfer Switches (COPS)

- New List Item (D) added to address **bypass isolation automatic transfer switches** where necessary for a designated **Critical Operations Power Systems (COPS)** buildings
- Transfer equipment (including automatic transfer switches (ATS)) used in conjunction with a COPS system is required to be automatic and identified for emergency use
- COPS transfer equipment is required to be designed and installed to prevent the inadvertent interconnection of normal and critical operations sources of supply in any operation of the transfer equipment
- In some cases, design criteria call for a means to put an **automatic transfer switch** in an **electrically safe work condition** so that **maintenance** can be performed safely on the automatic transfer switch without losing power to the critical loads associated with a COPS designated building

Copyright © IAEE 2020

263

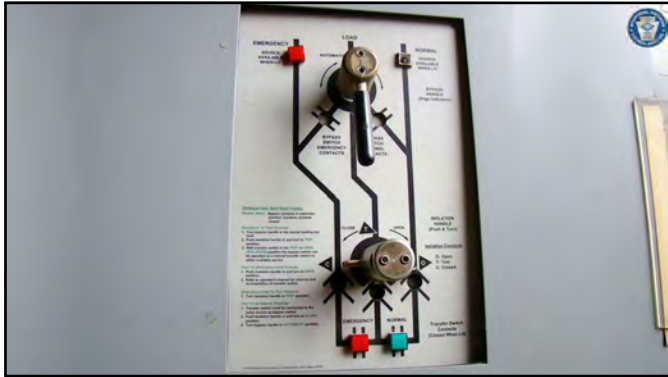
### 708.24(D) Bypass Isolation Automatic Transfer Switches (COPS) (cont.)

- New List Item (D) added to address **bypass isolation automatic transfer switches** where necessary for a designated **Critical Operations Power Systems (COPS)** buildings (cont.)
- If a COPS design has loads that can only be supplied via one automatic transfer switch, the **maintenance may not get done** or if it is done, it is performed in an **unsafe non-compliant NFPA 70E (Electrical Safety in the Workplace) manner**
- Bypass isolation switches** provide redundancy and **continuous powering of the loads** while the automatic transfer switch is de-energized so that proper maintenance can be performed under safe compliant NFPA 70E work conditions
- However, while in the bypass mode, if the connected power source fails, it would be necessary to quickly transfer between power sources (this can be achieved by an **automatic bypass isolation switch**)

Copyright © IAEE 2020

264





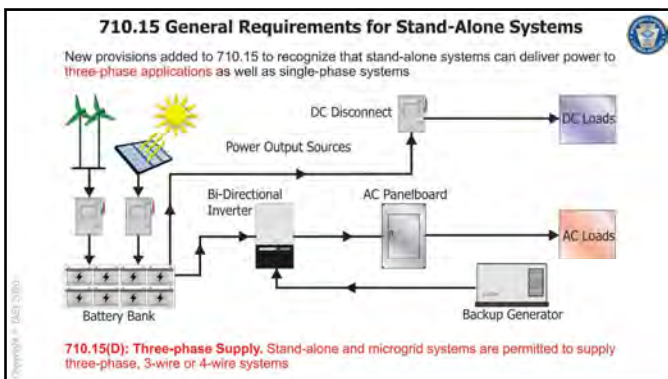
265

### 710.15 General Requirements for Stand-Alone Systems

- New Code language has been added at 710.15 to recognize that stand-alone systems can deliver power to **three-phase applications** as well as single-phase systems
- 2017 NEC seemed to have indicated that a stand-alone system was reserved for a single-phase system only
- Several manufacturers design and sell products such as inverters, dc disconnects, battery banks, and generators that are capable of delivering and receiving a **three-phase application** as well as a single-phase system
- Existing systems can meet the definition of a stand-alone or islanded system that deliver power to **three-phase applications** such as mid-size server rooms, networks, telecommunication systems, and industrial processes

Copyright © IAEI 2020

266



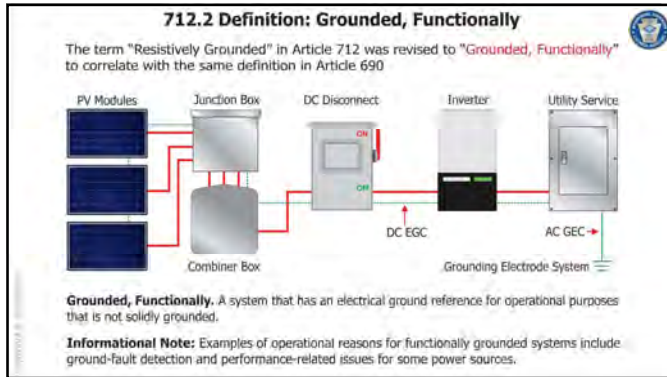
267

### 712.2 Definitions: Resistively Grounded, Functionally

- The term "Resistively Grounded" in Article 712 was revised to "**Grounded, Functionally**" to correlate with the same definition in Article 690
- The term "**Grounded, Functionally**" is defined at both 712.2 and 690.2 as "a system that has an electrical ground reference for operational purposes that is not solidly grounded"
- Some users of the Code would argue that only one definition is need and that definition needs to be located in Article 100, especially since these definitions mirror each other
- That is a battle for another day and perhaps that is the direction this issue will be heading toward in the 2023 NEC revision cycle

Copyright © IAEI 2020

268



269

### 712.10(B) Building Directory (Direct Current Microgrids)

- New **outdoor plaque or directory** requirement added to denote **all sources of dc power** to a building installed at each outside service equipment location or at an **approved readily visible location**
- This outdoor plaque or directory must denote the location of each power source disconnecting means on or in the building or be grouped with other plaques or directories for other on-site sources
- This provision brought on by ongoing concern expressed by the **fire service** and other **first responders** concerning the need to secure all on-site power sources during emergencies and awareness of where those sources are installed and utilized
- Provide warnings to first responders about the **presence and location of on-site power sources** prior to entering a building
- This new outdoor plaque or directory requirement for dc microgrids aligns with similar Code language at **705.10 (Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources)** and **710.10 (Stand-Alone Systems)**, with the goal to harmonize these similar requirements

270



271

### 725.3(O) Temperature Limitation of Class 2 and Class 3 Cables

- New text clarifies that the **temperature limitations for conductors** of 310.14(A)(3) apply to Class 2 and Class 3 cables as well (*not just conductors*)
- New **725.3(O) (Temperature Limitation of Class 2 and Class 3 Cables)** states that requirements of **310.14(A)(3) [previous 310.15(A)(3)] (temperature limitation of conductors)** shall apply to Class 2 and Class 3 cables
- Because Class 2 and Class 3 circuits are typically installed in a cable rather than individual conductors, some argued that the temperature limitations of conductors of **310.14(A)(3)** did not apply to Class 2 and Class 3 cables
- To put this argument to rest, a new subsection was added to Article 725 at 725.3(O)
- Same change occurred at **760.3(N) for fire alarm system Class 2 and Class 3 cables**

272

### 725.3(O) Temperature Limitation of Class 2 and Class 3 Cables

The requirements of 310.14(A)(3) on the temperature limitation of conductors shall apply to Class 2 and Class 3 **cables** (not just conductors)

18 AWG TYPE CL2R

Copyright © JAEI 2020

273

### 725.48(B)(1) Class 1 Circuits with Power-Supply Circuits

- Revision permits **Class 1 circuits** to share enclosure space with conductors of electric light, power, non-power-limited fire alarm and medium power network-powered broadband communications circuits as long as separated by a **barrier**
- Previously, Class 1 circuits and power-supply circuits were only permitted to occupy the same cable, enclosure, or raceway **without a barrier** only where the equipment powered was **functionally associated** (still applies)
- The "barrier" requirement for Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 circuits is not specific as to the type of material required

Copyright © JAEI 2020

274

### 725.48(B)(1) Class 1 Circuits with Power-Supply Circuits

Class 1 circuits and power-supply circuits permitted to occupy the same cable, enclosure, or raceway **without a barrier** only where the equipment powered is functionally associated

Class 1 Control Circuit Conductors

Disconnect

Magnetic Motor Starter

Branch Circuit Power Wiring

Pushbutton Starter

Motor

Class 1 circuits permitted to be installed with conductors of electric light, power, non-power-limited fire alarm, etc. **where separated by a barrier**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

275

### 725.144 and Table 725.144

#### Transmission of Power and Data

- Extensive revision occurred for 725.144, Table 725.144, 725.144(A), and 725.144(B) dealing with **transmission of power and data** on Class 2, Class 3, Class 2-LP, or Class 3-LP cables
- Requirements of parent text of 725.144 did not change, just revised for clarity
- New **Informational Note No. 3** and **no. 4** were added to identify the unique nature of the type of conductors and cables specified at Table 725.144 and to provide the appropriate reference standards that address the cables covered in the Table
- New **Informational Note No. 5** was added since Power over Ethernet (PoE) lighting is a very important application covered by 725.144

Copyright © JAEI 2020

276



725.144 and Table 725.144  
Transmission of Power and Data (cont.)

- Extensive revision occurred for 725.144, Table 725.144, 725.144(A), and 725.144(B) dealing with **transmission of power and data** on Class 2, Class 3, Class 2-LP, or Class 3-LP cables (cont.)
- New **Informational Note No. 6** was added to clarify that the rated current for power sources covered in 725.144 is the output current per conductor the power source is designed to deliver to an operational load at normal operating conditions, as declared by the manufacturer.
- At Table 725.144, the undefined term "Data Cables" has been replaced with **"Balanced Twisted-Pair Cables,"** which is language that is consistent with relevant industry standards (such as **ANSI/TIA-568-C.2-3000**, *Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards*) and is also consistent with language in other parts of Article 725

Copyright © IAEI 2020

277

725.144 and Table 725.144  
Transmission of Power and Data (cont.)

- Extensive revision occurred for 725.144, Table 725.144, 725.144(A), and 725.144(B) dealing with **transmission of power and data** on Class 2, Class 3, Class 2-LP, or Class 3-LP cables (cont.)
- All the ampacity adjustment factors in **previous Table 725.144** were expressed to **one tenth values** (i.e., 1.4, 1.7, 0.6, etc.) except for the ampacity adjustment factors of whole numbers, such as "1, 2 and 3" amperes
- Based on **Note 2 to the table**, an ampacity of 1 ampere could be interpreted to be 1.4 amperes as this note states that where only half of the conductors in each cable are carrying current, the values in the table are permitted to be increased by a factor of 1.4
- The table ampacity adjustment factors of "1, 2 and 3" needed to be revised to "1.00, 2.00 and 3.00" respectively to avoid incorrectly interpreting these numbers

Copyright © IAEI 2020

278

725.144 and Table 725.144  
Transmission of Power and Data (cont.)

- Extensive revision occurred for 725.144, Table 725.144, 725.144(A), and 725.144(B) dealing with **transmission of power and data** on Class 2, Class 3, Class 2-LP, or Class 3-LP cables (cont.)
- Table 725.144** ampacity adjustment factors are now expressed in double digit values
- Some of the ampacity values have been updated in **Table 725.144** to reflect new ampacity values for 23 AWG cables after recreating and reaffirming the data from the substantiation that generated this table in the 2017 *NEC*
- 725.144(A)**, covering the use of Class 2 or Class 3 cables to transmit power and data was **revised** to enhance the usability of this subsection by identifying applications where Table 725.144 need not be consulted

Copyright © IAEI 2020

279

725.144 and Table 725.144  
Transmission of Power and Data (cont.)

- Extensive revision occurred for 725.144, Table 725.144, 725.144(A), and 725.144(B) dealing with **transmission of power and data** on Class 2, Class 3, Class 2-LP, or Class 3-LP cables (cont.)
- The requirements of **725.144(B)**, titled **"Use of Class 2-LP or Class 3-LP Cables to Transmit Power and Data"** was revised with a new sentence added pertaining to **bundled LP cables**
- 725.144(B)** now states that where bundled LP cables number **192 or less** and the selected ampacity of the cables in accordance with Table 725.144 exceeds the marked current limit of the cable, the ampacity determined from the table is permitted to be used

Copyright © IAEI 2020

280

**Table 725.144**

**Table 725.144 Capacities of Each Conductor in Amperes in 4-Pair Class 2 or Class 3 *Unbalanced Twisted-Pair* Cables Based on Copper Conductors at an Ambient Temperature of 30°C (86° F) with All Conductors in All Cables Carrying Current, 60°C (140°F), 75°C (167°F), and 90°C (194°F) Rated Cables**

AWG	Number of 4-Pair Cables in a Bundle																	
	1-7			8-19			20-37			38-61			62-91			92-192		
	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	Temperature Rating	
	60°C	75°C	90°C	60°C	75°C	90°C	60°C	75°C	90°C	60°C	75°C	90°C	60°C	75°C	90°C	60°C	75°C	90°C
26	1.00	1.23	1.42	0.71	0.87	1.02	0.55	0.68	0.78	0.46	0.57	0.67	0.45	0.55	0.64	N/A	N/A	N/A
24	1.19	1.46	1.69	0.81	1.01	1.17	0.63	0.78	0.91	0.55	0.67	0.78	0.46	0.56	0.65	0.40	0.48	0.55
23	1.24	1.53	1.78	0.89	1.11	1.28	0.77	0.95	1.10	0.66	0.80	0.93	0.58	0.71	0.82	0.45	0.55	0.63
22	1.50	1.86	2.16	1.04	1.28	1.49	0.77	0.95	1.11	0.66	0.82	0.96	0.62	0.77	0.89	0.53	0.63	0.72

**Note 1:** For bundle sizes over 192 cables, or for conductor sizes smaller than 26 AWG, capacities shall be permitted to be determined by qualified personnel under engineering supervision.

**Note 2:** Where only half of the conductors in each cable are carrying current, the values in the table shall be permitted to be increased by a factor of 1.4.

**Informational Note No. 1:** Elevated cable temperatures can reduce a cable's data transmission performance. For information on practices for 4-pair balanced twisted pair cabling, see TIA-568-104-A and 6.4.7, 6.8.3, and Annex G of ANSI/TIA-568-C-2, which provide guidance on adjustments for operating temperatures between 30°C and 60°C.

**Informational Note No. 2:** The per-conductor current rating of connectors can limit the maximum allowable current below the ampacity shown in Table 725.144.

281

### 760.121(B) Power Sources for PLFA Circuits (Fire Alarm Systems)

- New sentence added to permit the fire alarm branch-circuit disconnecting means for power limited fire alarm (PLFA) circuits to be **secured in the "on" position**
- The fire alarm circuit disconnect for non-power-limited fire alarm (NPLFA) circuits was already permitted to be secured in the "on" position [see 760.41(A)]
- Change provides consistency with NPLFA circuits and PLFA circuits
- While this practice was not prohibited by 760.121, it was not specifically permitted either
- Installing **breaker locks** is already a common industry practice on fire alarm circuits

282



283



284



### 770.24 Mechanical Execution of Work (Optical Fiber Cable)

- Revision will require optical fiber cable to conform to **all of 300.4 and 300.11** [not just 300.4(D) through (G)]
- Previously, optical fiber cables were to be installed and protected from physical damage in accordance with 300.4(D) through (G) and 300.11
- Optical fiber cables not limited to communications installations and need protection against physical damage regardless if they can be a shock hazard or not
- Even if optical fiber cable is not carrying any current, the equipment being supplied by this cable in several situations are critical to **life and safety**
- The installation of these optical fiber cables should conform to **all of 300.4**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

285

### 770.24 Mechanical Execution of Work for Optical Fiber Cable

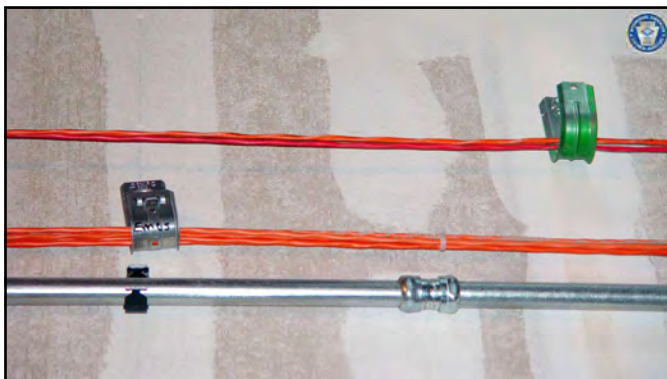
Optical fiber cables are now required to be installed and protected from physical damage in accordance with **all of 300.4 and 300.11** [not just 300.4(D) through (G)]

Labels in diagram: Plastic bushings or grommets, Metal framing members, Optical fiber cable, Nail plate listed and marked, Type NM cable, Wood framing, Nail plates, Optical fiber cable.

Where driven nails or screws can penetrate optical fiber cable installed through wood or metal studs, a steel sleeve, steel nail plate or steel clip not less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) in thickness is required to be installed (Thinner steel plates permitted if listed and marked)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

286



287

### 770.110(D) Cable Trays for Optical Fiber Cables

- New section added permitting **optical fiber cables** to be installed in metal or listed nonmetallic **cable tray systems**
- Previously, permission to install optical fiber cable in a cable tray was given in several locations across Article 770
- This revision will make it easier to find this cable tray rule with it located in the same section that permits optical fiber cables to be installed in raceways and cable routing assemblies
- New requirement limits the allowance for optical fiber cables to be installed in a cable tray to **metal and listed nonmetallic cable trays** in order to address flame spread concerns
- Same change occurred for **communications cables and raceways** at **800.110(D)**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

288



289



290

### 770.133 Installation of Optical Fibers and Electrical Conductors

- Previous requirements of **770.133(A)** has been reorganized and relocated throughout **770.133(A)** and new **770.133(B)**
- Previous exceptions rewritten into positive *Code* language
- Previous 770.133(A) permitted optical fiber cables to occupy the same cable tray and raceway as conductors for electric light, power, Class 1, non-power-limited fire alarm, etc. (*with five exceptions*)
- Almost all of the 2017 *NEC* requirements of 770.133 are still there for the 2020 *NEC* but **relocated for a better flow of the information**
- Permission to allow nonconductive optical fiber cables to occupy the same cable tray as conductors for electric light, power, Class 1, non-power-limited fire alarm, etc. operating at 1000 volts or less was moved to the second paragraph of new 770.133(B)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

291

### 770.133 Installation of Optical Fibers and Electrical Conductors (cont.)

- Previous requirements of **770.133(A)** has been reorganized and relocated throughout **770.133(A)** and new **770.133(B)** (*cont.*)
- First paragraph of **770.133(A)** was updated to permit **conductive optical fiber cables** contained in an armored or metal-clad-type sheath and **nonconductive optical fiber cables** to occupy the same cable tray with conductors for electric light, power, Class 1, non-power-limited fire alarm, etc. operating at 1000 volts or less
- **Conductive optical fiber cables without an armored or metal-clad-type sheath** not permitted to occupy the same cable tray as power conductors, etc. unless separated by a **permanent barrier** or listed divider

Copyright © JAEI 2020

292

**770.133 Installation of Optical Fibers and Electrical Conductors**

Optical fiber cables permitted to occupy the same cable tray and raceway (with conditions) as conductors for electric light, power, Class 1, non-power-limited fire alarm, etc. *(information reorganized for 2020 NEC)*

Combination of multiconductor cables, single-conductor cables, and optical fiber cables installed in the same cable tray

Conductive optical fiber cables contained in an armored or metal-clad-type sheath

Multiconductor power cables

Single-conductor power cables

Nonconductive optical fiber cables

EGC

Conductive optical fiber cables contained in an armored or metal-clad-type sheath and non-conductive optical fiber cables shall be permitted to occupy the same cable tray or raceway with conductors for electric light, power, Class 1, non-power-limited fire alarm, etc.

293

for Chapter Eight Communications Systems

Stopped Here

294

**Article 800 General Requirements for Communications Systems**

- **New Article 800** (*General Requirements for Communications Systems*) combines **common requirements** previously found in Articles 800, 820, 830 and 840 into a **new "general" article** that applies to all of these articles
- **Previous Article 800** (*Communications Circuits*) was moved to **Article 805** to make room for this new Chapter 8 article
- **Common requirements** would include such things as mechanical execution of work, abandoned cables, spread of fire or products of combustion, and temperature limitations of wires and cables
- In previous editions of the *Code*, if a change in one of the Chapter 8 articles occurred, it was a good bet that the same change would be occurring in the other Chapter 8 articles as well
- New article for communication circuits significantly improves clarity and usability while removing redundant requirements from each of the articles throughout Chapter 8

295

**Article 800 General Requirements for Communications Systems**

**800.1 Scope.** This article covers general requirements for communications systems. These general requirements apply to communication circuits, and equipment community antenna television and radio distribution systems, network-powered broadband communication systems, and premises-powered broadband communication systems unless modified by Articles 805, 820, 830, or 840.

296



### 800.2 Definitions: Communications Circuit

- **Communications Circuit.** The circuit that extends service from the communications utility or service provider to and including the customer's communications equipment.
- The definition of a "**Communications Circuit**" was revised to remove the "list" of service types offered by a communications circuit
- List was problematic as it did not allow for new technologies to be included in this definition without a *Code* change, which only happens every three years

Copyright © IAEI 2020

297



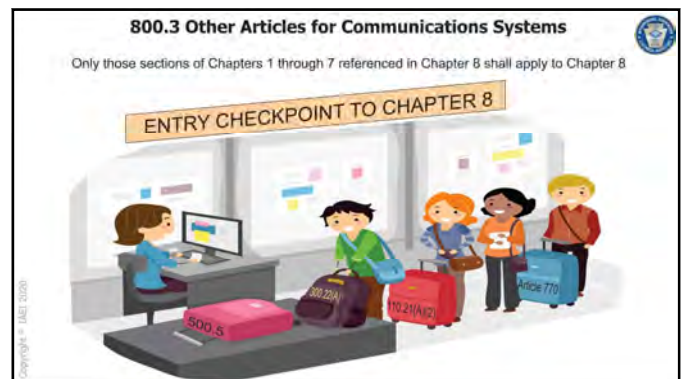
298

### 800.3 Other Articles for Communications Systems

- New text was added to reinforce the **independence of Article 800 and Chapter 8** which stipulates that only those sections of Chapters 1 through 7 referenced in Article 800 shall apply to communications systems
- Opening sentence of 800.3 now reads, "**Only those sections of Chapters 1 through 7 referenced in Chapter 8 shall apply to Chapter 8.**"
- Requirements of **90.3** state that Chapter 8 of the *NEC* is a "**stand-alone**" article and "is not subject to the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 except where the requirements are specifically referenced in Chapter 8"
- In order for a requirement from Chapters 1 through 7 to apply to Chapter 8, there must be a clear reference or "**road map**" in Chapter 8 to a specific requirement in Chapters 1 through 7

Copyright © IAEI 2020

299



300

### 800.27 Temperature Limitation of Wire and Cables (Communications Systems)


- New section added to specify that no communication wire or cable be used in such a manner that its **operating temperature** exceeds that of its rating
- When the previous requirements of 800.3 were moved to new Article 800, it was felt that this **temperature limitation requirement** deserved its own section in Article 800
- Previous temperature limitations of 800.3(H) were moved to a **new 800.27** and titled "**Temperature Limitation of Wires and Cables**"
- New text at 800.27 makes it clear that this temperature limitations in Chapter 8 **apply to cables** (not just conductors)
- New text simplifies the Code by including the temperature limitation requirement **directly in Article 800**, rather than have a cross-reference in Article 800 to the temperature limitation requirements of **Article 310**

Copyright © IAEI 2020

301

### 800.27 Temperature Limitation of Wire and Cables (Communications Systems)

No communications wire or cable is permitted to be used in such a manner that its operating temperature exceeds that of its rating



Plenum, riser, general-purpose, and limited-use communications cables required to have a temperature rating of not less than 60°C (140°F) (see 800.179)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

302

### 800.44 Overhead (Aerial) Communications Wires and Cables


- Requirements were added for **all** communications circuits pertaining attachment to **above-the-roof raceway mast** and cables extending between buildings or structures
- Previously, **Article 820** contained provisions for attaching coaxial cables to an **above-the-roof raceway mast** that did not enclose or support conductors of electric light or power circuits (none of the other Chapter 8 article contained this mast rule)
- Previously, **Articles 820 and 830** contained requirements pertaining to coaxial cables and network-powered broadband communications **cables extending between buildings** or structures (other Chapter 8 articles did not have such rules)
- These two rules were perfect candidates to be placed in **new Article 800** to prevent repeating these rules in four different articles (needed consistency)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

303

### 800.44 Overhead (Aerial) Communications Wires and Cables

Overhead (aerial) communications and CATV type coaxial cables permitted to be attached to **above-the-roof raceway mast** that does not enclose or support conductors of electric light or power circuits



Overhead (aerial) communications cable (CATV, NPBCC, PPBCC, Etc.)

Communications and CATV type coaxial cables extending between buildings or structures (along with the supports or attachment fixtures) shall be identified and shall have sufficient strength to withstand the loads to which they might be subjected (Ex. for supporting messenger cable)

Copyright © IAEI 2020

304



### 805.179(D) Limited Power (LP) Cables

- Provisions were added to permit **limited power (LP) cables** to act as a **substitute** for Class 2 and Class 3 cables
- Previously, communications cables were permitted as substitutes for Class 2 and Class 3 cables, but the *Code* **did not specifically address** limited power (LP) cables as a substitute for Class 2 and Class 3 cables
- 725.144** and **Table 725.144** gives designers, installers and AHJs the assurance that 4-pair data cables can safely carry power as well as data when bundled together in cable trays or cable routing assemblies
- This revision recognizes the fact that an **LP cable** is a specific type of Class 2, Class 3, and communications cable and explicitly permits these cable types as **substitutes** for Class 2 and Class 3 LP cables (*vast majority of LP cables are listed as communications cables*)
- LP cables are listed under the UL product categories of Communications Cable (**DUZX**) and Power Limited Circuit Cable (**QPTZ**)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

305

### 805.179(D) Limited Power (LP) Cables

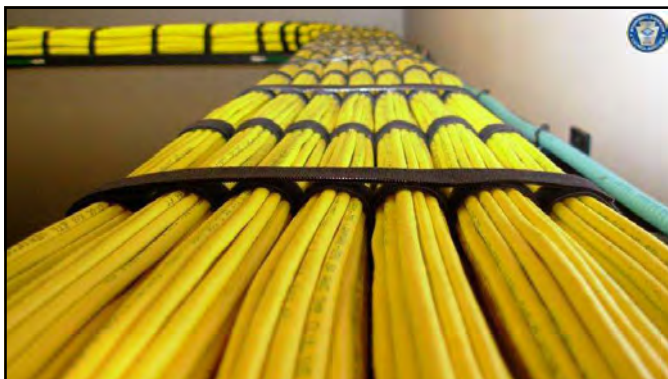
Provisions added at to permit limited power (LP) cables to act as a substitute for Class 2 and Class 3 cables as well as the previous provisions allowing communications cables as substitutes for Class 2 and Class 3 cables

**CMR-LP (0-6A) (75C) 23 AWG 4 pair**

Cable Sample Courtesy of Belden

Copyright © JAEI 2020

306



307

### 840.2 Definitions for Premises-Powered Broadband Communications Systems

- Two new definitions were added to 840.2 to define the terms **"Broadband"** and **"Premises-Powered"**
- Broadband.** Wide bandwidth data transmission that transports multiple signals, protocols, and traffic types over various media types.
- Premises-Powered.** Using power provided locally from the premises.
- Previously, neither **"Broadband"** or **"Premises-Powered"** were defined in Article 840 (*Premises-powered Broadband Communications Systems*) or the *NEC*
- Definition for **"Broadband"** was added to provide an appropriate description of the circuits covered under Article 840
- Term **"Premises-Powered"** had to be defined as it now applies to more than one type of system

Copyright © JAEI 2020

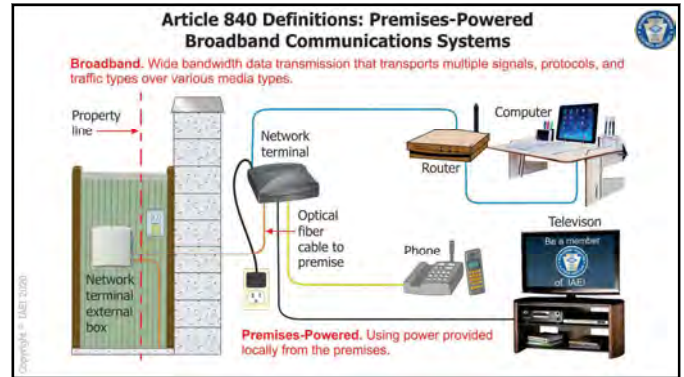
308

### 840.2 Definitions for Premises-Powered Broadband Communications Systems (cont.)

- Two new definitions were added to 840.2 to define the terms "**Broadband**" and "**Premises-Powered**" (cont.)
- Premises powered basically means that the power used by the communications system is **derived from the local premises power**, and this power source has **no limits on the power crossing a premises property line** or boundary
- Example:** Network terminal being powered from a 125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere ac wall receptacle outlet or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS)/battery backup unit where the network terminal is a few feet from a structure
- This location is not necessarily "**on the premises**," based on prescribed property lines, legal boundaries, and/or utility definitions
- New definition of "**Premises-Powered**" would cover such an installation even though the network terminal might not be technically on the premise and keep this type of installation under the scope of Article 840

Copyright © JAEI 2020

309



310

### 840.94 and 840.102 Premises Circuits Leaving the Building

- Two new sections (840.94 and 840.102) added to provide requirements for **premises-powered broadband communication system (PPBCS) circuits** when they **leave the building** to power equipment **remote to that building**
- Previously, 840.101 contained provisions for PPBCS circuits where they **did not leave the building**, but no provisions existed for when PPBCS circuits **did leave the building**
- PPBCS circuits are being installed by utilities or service providers that provide power to exterior equipment such as an asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL), which is a type of digital subscriber line (DSL) technology
- The circuits are equipment on the network being powered from the premises which ultimately would power circuits going to **other premises**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

311

### 840.94 and 840.102 Premises Circuits Leaving the Building (cont.)

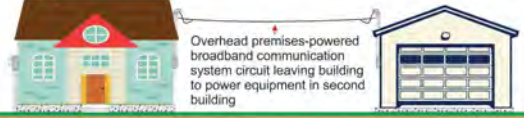
- Two new sections (840.94 and 840.102) added to provide requirements for **premises-powered broadband communication system (PPBCS) circuits** when they **leave the building** to power equipment **remote to that building**
- These circuits are derived from the premises power to avoid having to run copper cable to the exterior location, avoid establishing a meter point, and/or avoid providing backup batteries [*sometimes referred to as "reverse powering (RP)"*]
- These added circuits are potentially exposed to lightning events and/or electric power ground faults
- They deserve and require the same protection and grounding and bonding means as other aerial, buried, or underground communications cables entering a building

Copyright © JAEI 2020

312

### 840.94 and 840.102 Premises Circuits Leaving the Building

**840.94:** Requires circuits leaving a building to power equipment remote to that building or outside the exterior zone of protection defined by a 46 m (150 ft) radius rolling sphere, to comply with 805.90 (Protective Devices) and 805.93 (Grounding, Bonding, or Interruption of Non-Current-Carrying Metallic Sheath Members of Communications Cables)



Overhead premises-powered broadband communication system circuit leaving building to power equipment in second building

If coaxial cables are present, required to comply with 820.100 (Cable Bonding and Grounding) (which references 800.100) and 800.106

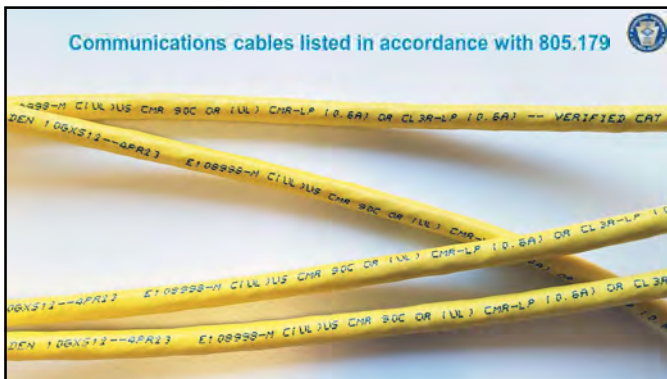
**840.102:** Requires communications wires and cables circuits leaving the building to power equipment remote to the building or outside the exterior zone of protection defined by a 46 m (150 ft) radius rolling sphere to comply with 800.100 (Cable and Primary Protector Bonding and Grounding) and 800.106 (Primary Protector Grounding and Bonding at Mobile Homes)

313

### 840.160 Powering Circuits (Premises-Powered Broadband Communication Systems)

- Revised text identifies **listing provisions** for communications cables, powered communications equipment, and the power source
- Communications cables that are listed in accordance with **805.179** are permitted to carry circuits for powering communications equipment (*in addition to carrying the communications circuit*)
- Communications equipment has to be listed in accordance with **805.170**
- Power source required to be listed in accordance with **840.170(G)**
- Installation of listed 4-pair communications cables for a communications circuit or installation where 4-pair communications cables are substituted for Class 2 and Class 3 cables in accordance with **725.154(A)** is required to comply with **725.144** with an exception *where the rated current of the power source does not exceed 0.3 amperes in any conductor 24 AWG or larger*

314



315



316



### Chapter 9, Notes to Tables, Note (2)

- Revision to Note (2) now indicates that **Table 1** does not apply to exposed wiring **and cable** when used in incomplete sections of conduit or tubing to protect from physical damage
- Previously, Note (2) to the Chapter 9 tables only referenced **"exposed wiring" (and not cable)**
- Revision to make it clear that protection from physical damage is for **"exposed wiring" includes cables** as well
- Should have been fairly evident with the title of Table 1 of Chapter 9 being **"Percent of Cross Section of Conduit and Tubing for Conductors and Cables"** with a subheading of **"Number of Conductors and/or Cables"**
- Proper conductor fill will avoid conductor overheating and possible insulation damage due to excessive heat

Copyright © JAEI 2020

317

### Chapter 9, Notes to Tables, Note (2)

Number of Conductors and/or Cables	Cross Sectional Area (%)
1	53%
2	31%
Over 2	40%

**Note (2):** Table 1 applies only to complete conduit or tubing systems and is not intended to apply to sections of conduit or tubing used to protect exposed wiring and cable from physical damage.

318

### Informative Annexes

Copyright © JAEI 2020

319

### Informative Annex A- Product Safety Standards

- Informative Annex A was reformatted to provide and add **NEC article numbers** and **appropriate product standards were added and updated**
- Previously, Informative Annex A had **two columns** of information; **(1)** the name of the product standard and **(2)** the product standard number
- Informative Annex A now has **three columns** of information; **(1)** the **NEC article number** where the referenced product standard can be found, **(2)** the product standard number, and **(3)** the name of the product standard
- 2017 NEC:** Informative Annex A references **431 product standards**
- 2020 NEC:** Informative Annex A references **352 product standards**
- Previous tabular format of Informative Annex A did not provide **correlation with various Code Articles** (where can these product standard references be found throughout the NEC?)

Copyright © JAEI 2020

320

### Informative Annex A - Product Safety Standards

Informative Annex A was reformatted to provide NEC article numbers and appropriate product standards were added

2017 NEC Informative Annex A (in part)		2020 NEC Informative Annex A (in part)	
Product Standard Name	Product Standard Number	Article Number	Standard Title
Antenna-Discharge Units	UL 452	110	UL 943 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters
Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupters	UL 1699	210	UL 1699 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupters
Armored Cable	UL 4	230	UL 1053 Ground-Fault Sensing and Relaying Equipment
Attachment Plugs and Receptacles	UL 498	240	UL 2735 Electric Utility Meters
Audio, Video and Similar Electronic Apparatus — Safety Requirements	UL 60065	UL 198M	Mine-Duty Fuses
Audio/Video, Information and Communication Technology Equipment — Part 1: Safety Requirements	UL 62368-1	UL 248-1	Low-Voltage Fuses — Part 1: General Requirements
Automatic Electrical Controls	UL 60730-1	UL 248-2	Low-Voltage Fuses — Part 2: Class C Fuses
		250	UL 467 Grounding and Bonding Equipment

321

### Informative Annex C - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Tray Fill Tables for Conductors and Fixture Wires of the Same Size

- Informative Annex C revised to include conductor fill tables for **cable trays** as well as for conduits and tubing
- Previous Informative Annex C contained **26 tables** for determining the maximum number of conductors or fixture wires permitted in various conduits and tubings
- New Informative Annex C is now contains **33 tables** for determining the maximum number of conductors or fixture wires permitted in various conduits, tubings **and cable trays**
- Rules and tables provided in Article 392 (*Cable Trays*) for determining the sizing of various cable tray types and sizes can be intimidating and complicated to some users of the Code
- New tables** in Informative Annex C allows for **simplified determination** of the maximum number of cables or conductors allowed in a particular cable tray width and serve to **enhance safety** due to reductions of errors pertaining to incorrect cable selection and erroneous cable tray sizing calculations

322

### Informative Annex C - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Tray Fill Tables for Conductors and Fixture Wires of the Same Size

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>C.1 - Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)</li> <li>C.1(A)* - Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)</li> <li>C.2 - Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT)</li> <li>C.2(A)* - Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT)</li> <li>C.3 - Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC)</li> <li>C.3(A)* - Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC)</li> <li>C.4 - Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)</li> <li>C.4(A)* - Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)</li> <li>C.5 - Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (Type LFNC-A)</li> <li>C.5(A)* - Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (Type LFNC-A)</li> <li>C.6 - Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (Type LFNC-B)</li> <li>C.6(A)* - Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (Type LFNC-B)</li> <li>C.7 - Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (Type LFNC-C)</li> <li>C.7(A)* - Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (Type LFNC-C)</li> <li>C.8 - Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC)</li> <li>C.8(A)* - Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>C.9 - Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC)</li> <li>C.9(A)* - Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC)</li> <li>C.10 - Rigid PVC Conduit, Schedule 80</li> <li>C.10(A)* - Rigid PVC Conduit, Schedule 80</li> <li>C.11 - Rigid PVC Conduit, Schedule 40 and HDPE Conduit</li> <li>C.11(A)* - Rigid PVC Conduit, Schedule 40 and HDPE Conduit</li> <li>C.12 - Type A, Rigid PVC Conduit</li> <li>C.12(A)* - Type A, Rigid PVC Conduit</li> <li>C.13 - Type EB, PVC Conduit</li> <li>C.13(A)* - Type EB, PVC Conduit</li> <li>C.14 - Type MC Cables Allowed in Cable Tray</li> <li>C.15 - Type MC Cables (4C Multiconductor)</li> <li>C.16 - Type TC Cables (3C Multiconductor)</li> <li>C.17 - Type TC Cables (4C Multiconductor)</li> <li>C.18 - Single Conductor Cables Allowed in Cable Tray</li> <li>C.19 - Single Conductor Cables Allowed in Cable Tray</li> <li>C.20 - Single Conductor Cables Allowed in Cable Tray</li> </ul>
--	--

323



324





325

Informative Annex D Example D5(b) Optional Calculation for Multifamily Dwelling Served at 208Y/120 Volts, Three Phase

- Example D5(b) has been revised to accurately reflect the **neutral load calculation** for a three-phase system
- Previously, the **neutral load calculation** was based on a **single-phase system**
- The neutral load used in Example D5(b) was extracted from Example D4(a)
- The problem is that **Example D4(b)** is a **single-phase example** and calculations and **Example D5(b)** is a **three-phase example**

Copyright © JAEI 2020

326



327

Informative Annex D Example D8 Motor Circuit Conductors, Overload Protection, and Short-Circuit and Ground Fault Protection

- Example D8 was revised to include the **30 hp motor as the largest motor** and the **example was expanded**
- Previous example was based on a 25 hp motor, which was not the largest motor in the circuit
- This mishap has been corrected and the calculations are now based on one of the 30 hp motors for the largest motor
- Text was also added to distinguish between the type motors considered in the calculations (*squirrel-cage vs. wound-rotor*)
- There is a difference in calculations between squirrel cage and wound rotor motors

Copyright © JAEI 2020

328



329

### Informative Annex H – Administration and Enforcement

- Revision to the opening paragraph of **Article 80** informs users of the Code that **Informative Annex H** is intended to provide a **template and sample language** for local jurisdictions adopting the *NEC*
- The opening paragraph of Article 80 now states that "Informative Annex H is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document and is included for informational purposes only. **Informative Annex H is intended to provide a template and sample language for local jurisdictions adopting the National Electrical Code®.**"
- This revision provides **additional clarity** and **removes redundant language** and is intended to help in the process of local jurisdictions adopting the latest edition of the *NEC* in a timely manner

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

330

### Informative Annex H - Administration and Enforcement

Informative Annex H is not a part of the requirements of the *NEC* (informational purposes only) and is intended to provide a **template and sample language** for local jurisdictions adopting the *NEC*

Copyright © IAEEI 2020

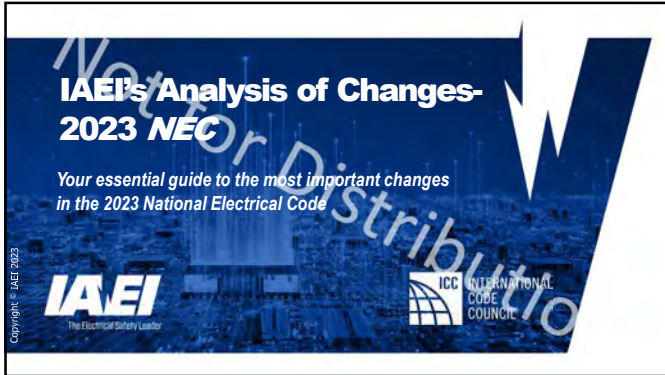
331

## Analysis of Changes – 2020 NEC

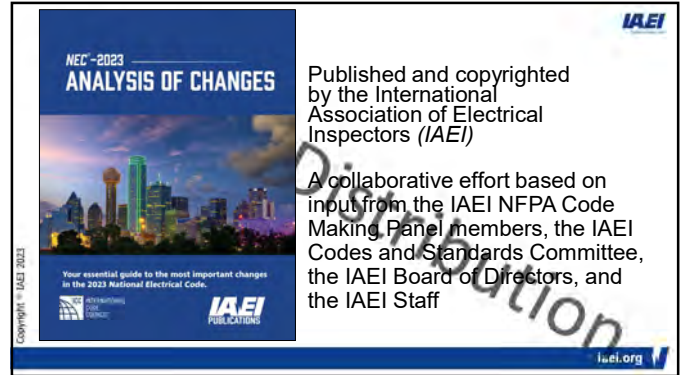
End of Part 2 – NEC Chapters 5 through 9

Training Presentation By:  
International Association of Electrical Inspectors

332



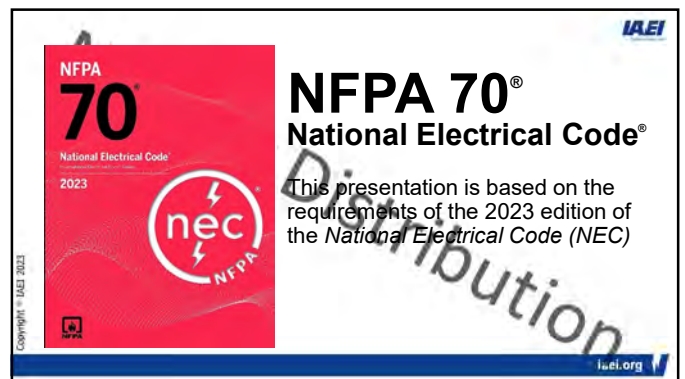
1



2

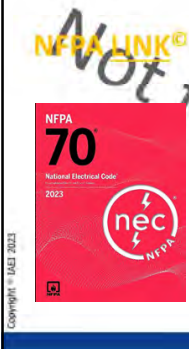


3



4





**NFPA LINK®** The IAEI appreciates the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) for allowing us to insert code language links for the 2023 NEC into the text slides of this presentation

The links were provided by the NFPA, and they control the accuracy of the link address


The presenter of this material must have a subscription to NFPA LINK® if the presenter chooses to show the 2023 NEC language during a presentation

Look for the NFPA LINK® icon in the lower right corner of the text slide and click on it to take you to the 2023 NEC language

**Note:** it is sometimes helpful to have NFPA LINK® open and minimized during the presentation as it helps get to the information more quickly

IAEI  
iaei.org

5

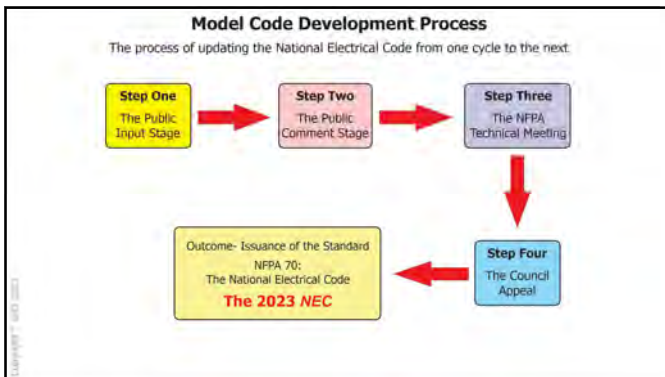


## General Information 2023 National Electric Code

- Model Code Development
- IAEI Involvement
- IAEI Codes and Standards
- NFPA NEC 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Draft Meeting
- Public Input and Public Comments
- General Terms and IAEI Characters

IAEI  
iaei.org

6



7

### The Development of the 2023 NEC

Interesting information about this revised document

- ▲ IAEI provided 36 members as CMP representatives to the NEC revision process
- ▲ IAEI Codes and Standards Committee vetted and submitted IAEI endorsed Public Inputs and Public Comments to NFPA for consideration
- ▲ NFPA NEC First and Second Draft meetings were conducted virtually instead of in person
- ▲ Code Making Panel Task Group meetings were also conducted virtually
- ▲ There following were submitted to NFPA for this edition of the Code:
  - ✦ [4006 Public Inputs](#)
  - ✦ [1805 First Revisions](#)
  - ✦ [1956 Public Comments](#)
  - ✦ [900 Second Revisions](#)
  - ✦ [441 Correlating Notes](#)
  - ✦ [55 Certified Amending Motions](#)
- ▲ Several IAEI members served on NFPA Correlating Committee Task Groups to work on issues needing to be resolved

IAEI  
iaei.org

8

### IAEI Code Making Panel Representatives

<b>CMP-1</b>	<b>CMP-2</b>	<b>CMP-3</b>	<b>CMP-4</b>
• Paul Sood	• <b>David Humphrey*</b>	• Timothy Mikloiche	• <b>Jim Rogers*</b>
• Greg Chontow	• Joseph Wages, Jr.	• Rhonda Parkhurst	• Pete Jackson
<b>CMP-5</b>	<b>CMP-6</b>	<b>CMP-7</b>	<b>CMP-8</b>
• William Pancake	• <b>Susan Newman Scearce*</b>	• <b>Keith Lofland*</b>	• <b>Tom Moore*</b>
• Richard O'Brien	• Borgia Noel	• Dean Hunter	• Scott Higgins
<b>CMP-9</b>	<b>CMP-10</b>	<b>CMP-11</b>	<b>CMP-12</b>
• Rick Hollander	• David Williams	• Charles Littlefield	• Phil Clark
• Dean Fortney	• Doug Smith	• Jack Jamison, Jr.	• Thomas Couch

\* Denotes Chair Position of CMP

9

### IAEI Code Making Panel Representatives

<b>CMP-13</b>	<b>CMP-14</b>	<b>CMP-15</b>	<b>CMP-16</b>
• Steve Froemming	• Halwood C Kines	• Mark Hilbert	• Jeff Fitzloff
• Larry Wildermuth	• Mark Chrysler	• Bret Stoddard	• Gerald O'Connor
<b>CMP-17</b>	<b>CMP-18</b>	<b>NEC Correlating Committee</b>	
• Donny Cook	• <b>Robert Fahey*</b>	• David Williams	
• Chris Faucette	• James Hathorn	• Donny Cook	

\* Denotes Chair Position of CMP

10

### IAEI Codes and Standards Committee (IAEI CSC)

▲ **David Humphrey, Chair**

- ▾ Donny Cook
- ▾ Thomas Domitrovich
- ▾ Pete Jackson
- ▾ Tim McClintock
- ▾ Jim Rogers
- ▾ Mike Savage
- ▾ Joseph Wages, Jr.
- ▾ David Williams

11

### IAEI Subject Matter Experts

A special thank you to electrical industry experts who provided input or conducted reviews of this material

▲ Paul Dobrowsky	▲ Don Iverson	▲ Chris Faucette
▲ Fred Hartwell	▲ Peter Graser	▲ Donny Cook
▲ Mark Hilbert	▲ Tim McClintock	▲ Jim Rogers
▲ Christel Hunter	▲ Dean Hunter	▲ Pete Jackson
▲ Chad Kennedy	▲ David Williams	▲ Rob Bowman
▲ Chuck Mello	▲ Thomas Domitrovich	▲ Scott Humphrey
▲ Thomas Lichtenstein	▲ David Humphrey	▲ Steve Thomas
▲ Bryan Holland	▲ Cliff Norton	

12



## Terms Used During the Presentation

IAEI

- AHJ- Authority Having Jurisdiction
- CMP- Code Making Panel
- CPSC- Consumer Products Safety Commission
- IAEI- International Association of Electrical Inspectors
- ICSC- IAEI Codes and Standards Committee
- NEC- National Electrical Code
- NECA- National Electrical Contractors Association
- NEMA- National Equipment Manufacturers Association
- NFPA- National Fire Protection Association
- UL- Underwriters Laboratories

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

13

## IAEI Industry Partnerships

THANK YOU for your continued partnership with the IAEI in the promotion of electrical safety

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

14

## Code Wide Changes

IAEI

- NEC Style Manual Changes
- Definition Location
- Reconditioned Equipment
- Medium Voltage Requirements
- Copper Clad Aluminum
- New Articles for 2023 NEC

Copyright © IAEI 2023

15

## The NEC Style Manual

IAEI

Revised in 2020 and used for the 2023 NEC and 2024 version of NFPA 70E

- ▲ Purpose of the Style Manual is to make the code usable and clear and to provide formatting provisions
- ▲ Deletion of redundant language (*prohibits repeating language from Chapters 1-4 in other chapters of the NEC*)
- ▲ Significant Changes for the 2020 edition include actions involving:
  - ✦ Parts
  - ✦ Multiple Definitions
  - ✦ Definitions
  - ✦ Similar and Alternate Terms
  - ✦ Searchability
  - ✦ Informational Notes
  - ✦ Article Numbers
  - ✦ Acronyms
  - ✦ CMP References

David Williams, NEC Correlating Committee

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

16

## Definitions

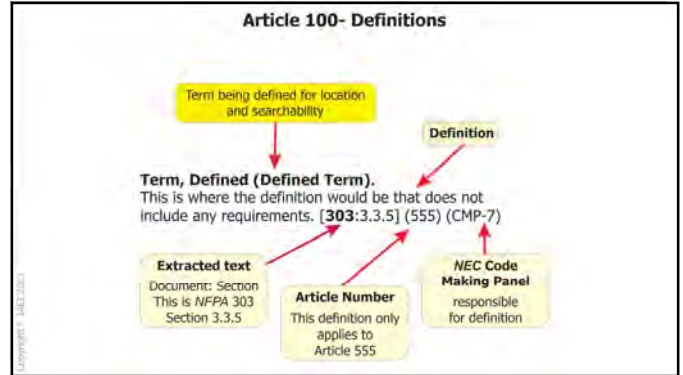
Definitions were relocated to Article 100 and arranged in alphabetical order with no parts

- ▲ Article 100 now contains approximately 800 definitions
- ▲ Additional definition structure requirements were also added to this Code cycle
- ▲ This allows the NEC to follow the same layout as other NFPA documents that have all definitions in one chapter
- ▲ Similar terms and acronyms may be used along with provisions for electronic searching
- ▲ Relocation revealed multiple terms defined differently in the code, which were also addressed with the NEC Style Manual revision
- ▲ All definitions apply throughout the Code (An article number appearing after the defined term indicates the definition only applies to that article)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

David Williams, NEC Correlating Committee and CMP- 1, Greg Chontow iaei.org

17



18

## Reconditioned Equipment

The xxx.2 sections in many chapters have become "placeholders" for requirements for reconditioned equipment

- ▲ This placeholder location (xxx.2) was made possible by the movement of all definitions that used to reside in these sections to Article 100
- ▲ This will allow code-making panels the opportunity to place requirements for reconditioned equipment in sections of the NEC that they have purview over
- ▲ These changes will make the NEC a more user-friendly document

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI CMP and IAEI CSC Input iaei.org

19

## Reconditioned Equipment

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>110.20 Reconditioned</li> <li>110.21 Marking</li>   <li>210.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>240.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>242.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>245.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li>   <li>362.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>348.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>350.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>369.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>404.16 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>406.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>408.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>410.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>411.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>430.2 Reconditioned Motors</li> <li>470.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>495.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>495.49 Reconditioned Switchgear</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>517.6 Patient Care-Related Electrical Equipment</li>   <li>660.10 Equipment Installations</li> <li>695.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li>   <li>700.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>701.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>702.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>708.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> <li>800.2 Reconditioned Equipment</li> </ul>
--	---	---

Note: Not all Code Making Panels (CMPs) used xxx.2 for reconditioned equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI CMP and IAEI CSC Input iaei.org

20

## Medium Voltage Requirements

Several new articles appeared in the 2023 *NEC* regarding the inspection and installation requirements for medium voltage conductors and equipment

- ▲ **Article 235** Branch Circuits, Feeders and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
- ▲ **Article 245** Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts AC, 1500 Volts DC
- ▲ **Article 305** Wiring Methods and Materials for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
- ▲ **Article 315** Medium Voltage Conductors, Cable, Cable Joints, and Cable Terminations
- ▲ **Article 495** Equipment Over 1000 Volts AC, 1500 Volts DC, Nominal

IAEI CMP and IAEI CSC Input

21

## Copper-Clad Aluminum (CCA)

- ▲ Copper-clad aluminum (CCA) underwent extensive review and testing overseen by the NFPA Bimetallics Task Group formed at the direction of the Standard's Council after the 2020 *NEC* cycle
- ▲ The Task Group represented industry stakeholders, and the testing data provided a direct comparison of the performance of 14 AWG CCA to 14 AWG copper at their respective 60 degree C ampacities, demonstrating the safety of CCA
- ▲ A new table was added to 210.24, identified as 210.24(2), which summarizes the branch circuit applications for aluminum and CCA as had been permitted for over 50 years, where only copper conductors had this summary information provided in previous code editions

Peter Grazer and Chuck Mello

22

## Copper-Clad Aluminum (CCA)(cont.)

- ▲ In addition to the listings for finished insulated conductors and cable assemblies, **conductors made with CCA must carry a listing for the bimetal itself [310.3(B)(4)]**
- ▲ The core of the CCA must be AA-8000 series aluminum [310.3(B)(3)]
- ▲ The copper of CCA must be a minimum of 10 percent of the cross-sectional area of a solid conductor or each strand of a stranded conductor [310.3(B)(3)]
- ▲ The marriage between copper and aluminum in CCA is such that a metallurgical bond exists between the aluminum core and the copper outer layer

Peter Grazer and Chuck Mello

23

## Copper-Clad Aluminum (CCA)(cont.)

- ▲ Listing will prove that it meets ASTM product design requirements
- ▲ The smallest standard size of overcurrent protection is 10 amperes due to more energy-efficient products such as LED lighting and in anticipation of 14 AWG CCA being added to the ampacity tables in Article 310
- ▲ Code-Making Panel 1 reconfirmed in Section 110.14, Electrical Connections, that CCA and copper are only dissimilar to single metal aluminum when intermixed but not to each other for the application of the requirement
- ▲ Parenthetical text "such as copper and aluminum, copper and copper-clad aluminum, or aluminum and copper-clad aluminum" was removed

Peter Grazer and Chuck Mello

24



Photo courtesy of COPPERWELD Bimetallics, LLC.

25

### New Articles for the 2023 NEC

Thirteen (13) new articles have been added to the 2023 NEC:

- ▲ **Article 235**
  - ✎ Branch Circuits, Feeders and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
- ▲ **Article 245**
  - ✎ Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc
- ▲ **Article 305**
  - ✎ Wiring Methods and Materials for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

IAEI Code Making Panel Members

26

### New Articles for the 2023 NEC (cont.)

Thirteen (13) new articles have been added to the 2023 NEC:

- ▲ **Article 315**
  - ✎ Medium Voltage Conductors, Cable, Cable Joints, and Cable Terminations
- ▲ **Article 335**
  - ✎ Instrumentation Tray Cable
- ▲ **Article 369**
  - ✎ Insulated Bus Pipe/Tubular Covered Conductors
- ▲ **Article 371**
  - ✎ Flexible Bus Systems

IAEI Code Making Panel Members

27

### New Articles for the 2023 NEC (cont.)

Thirteen (13) new articles have been added to the 2023 NEC:

- ▲ **Article 395**
  - ✎ Outdoor Overhead Conductors Over 1000 Volts
- ▲ **Article 495**
  - ✎ Equipment Over 1000 Volts AC, 1500 Volts DC, Nominal
- ▲ **Article 512**
  - ✎ Cannabis Oil Equipment

IAEI Code Making Panel Members

28

## New Articles for the 2023 NEC (cont.)

Thirteen (13) new articles have been added to the 2023 NEC:

- ▲ **Article 722**
  - ✎ Cables for Power-Limited Circuits, Fault-Managed Power (Class 4) Circuits
- ▲ **Article 724**
  - ✎ Class 1 Power-Limited Circuits and Class 1 Power-Limited Remote-Control and Signaling Circuits
- ▲ **Article 726**
  - ✎ Class 4 (CL4) Power Systems

IAEI Code Making Panel Members

29

## Deleted Articles for the 2023 NEC

- ▲ **Article 311** Medium Voltage Conductors and Cables
  - ✎ (contents moved to new Article 315)
- ▲ **Article 510** Hazardous (Classified) Locations - Specific
- ▲ **Article 490** Equipment Over 1000 Volts, Nominal
  - ✎ (contents moved to new Article 495)
- ▲ **Article 712** Direct Current Microgrids
- ▲ **Article 720** Circuits and Equipment Operating at Less Than 50 Volts

IAEI Code Making Panel Members

30

## Article 90: Introduction

- Use and application, arrangement, and enforcement of this Code
- Mandatory, permissive, and nonmandatory text

IAEI

31

## 90.5 Mandatory Rules, Permissive Rules, and Explanatory Material

### (C) Explanatory Material

Revised to state that unless a standard referenced in the NEC contains a date, that reference is to be considered the latest edition of the standard

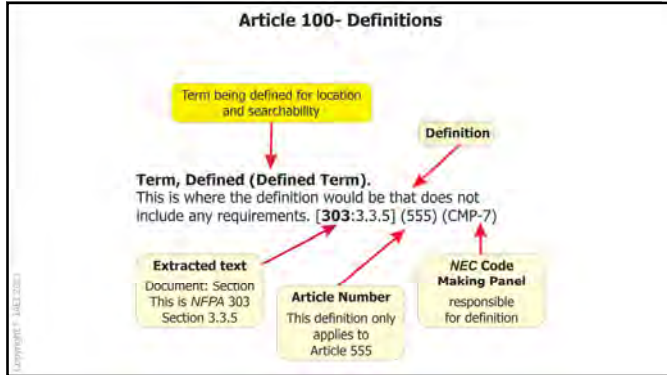
- ▲ CMP members spend a lot of time and effort making date changes to referenced standards that appear in the NEC
- ▲ In instances where a date is not included with the referenced standard, the user of the Code should understand this to mean the latest standard available
- ▲ Will reduce the number of public inputs and public comments submitted to modify a date for a standard referenced in the NEC

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee

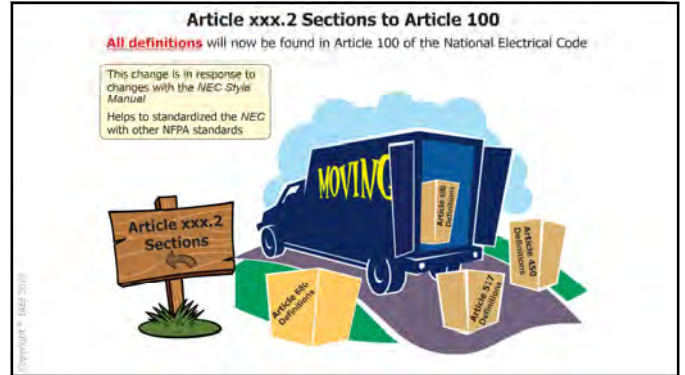
32







37



38

## Reconditioned Equipment

110.20 Reconditioned	404.16 Reconditioned Equipment	517.6 Patient Care-Related Electrical Equipment
110.21 Marking	406.2 Reconditioned Equipment	
	408.2 Reconditioned Equipment	
210.2 Reconditioned Equipment	410.2 Reconditioned Equipment	660.10 Equipment Installations
240.2 Reconditioned Equipment	411.2 Reconditioned Equipment	695.2 Reconditioned Equipment
242.2 Reconditioned Equipment	430.2 Reconditioned Motors	
245.2 Reconditioned Equipment	470.2 Reconditioned Equipment	700.2 Reconditioned Equipment
	495.2 Reconditioned Equipment	701.2 Reconditioned Equipment
362.2 Reconditioned Equipment	495.49 Reconditioned Switchgear	702.2 Reconditioned Equipment
348.2 Reconditioned Equipment		708.2 Reconditioned Equipment
350.2 Reconditioned Equipment		800.2 Reconditioned Equipment
369.2 Reconditioned Equipment		

**Note:** Not all Code Making Panels (CMPs) used xxx.2 for reconditioned equipment

39

## Article 100 Definitions- Searchability

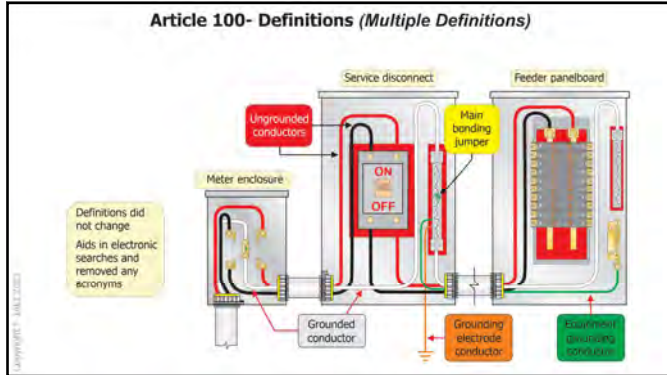
Revised these definition titles to aid in electronic searches

- ▲ Bonding Conductor. (*Bonding Jumper*)
- ▲ Bonding Jumper, Equipment. (*Equipment Bonding Jumper*)
- ▲ Bonding Jumper, Main. (*Main Bonding Jumper*)
- ▲ Bonding Jumper, Supply-Side. (*Supply-Side Bonding Jumper*)
- ▲ Bonding Jumper, System. (*System Bonding Jumper*)
- ▲ Grounded, Solidly. (*Solidly Grounded*)
- ▲ Grounding Conductor, Equipment (EGC). (*Equipment Grounding Conductor*)

**Note:** Language for the above definitions has not changed

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake

40



41

### Article 100- Accessible (applied to wiring methods)

Revision clarifies that wiring and electrical equipment made inaccessible by piping, ductwork, drains, raceways, or other mechanical systems **is not considered as accessible** as applied to wiring methods

- ⚠️ Access to the wiring contained within this equipment is sometimes made very difficult
- ⚠️ This can require removal or disassembling of piping, raceways, or other equipment, which, where present, tended to defeat the purpose of using the term "accessible" in Code requirements that use the term
- ⚠️ Building-related items such as electrical raceways, plumbing pipes, and mechanical systems were considered accessible because they are not part of the structure or finish of the building, and the definition did not cover anything else

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

42

### Article 100- Accessible (applied to wiring methods)

Modifications were made to the definition of "Accessible" as it applies to wiring methods

Clarifies that wiring and electrical equipment **cannot be made Inaccessible** by piping, ductwork, drains, raceways, or other mechanical systems

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

43

### Article 100- Accessible (applied to wiring methods)

This helps to clarify that wiring and electrical equipment **cannot be made Inaccessible** by piping, ductwork, drains, raceways, or other mechanical systems

**Water piping** in front of electrical equipment making it **inaccessible for maintenance**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

44

### Article 100- Class 4 Circuit

A new definition for a Class 4 Circuit has been added as it applies to equipment and installations located in Article 726

- ▲ This was the result of the **Packet Energy Transfer (PET)** Systems Task Group tasked to provide guidance towards this new technology
- ▲ This emerging technology has been referred to in the past as Packet Energy Transfer (PET), Digital Electricity (DE), Pulsed Power, Smart Transfer Systems and Fault Managed Power (FMP)
- ▲ Involves a fault-managed system that verifies the powered device is present and operating correctly prior to a greater than Class 2 power being applied (*a fault would cause a termination of the output power*)
- ▲ Must ensure safety in the design, implementation, installation, and use of this technology
- ▲ There are now a total of six (6) definitions associated with this Class 4 technology

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® i.ei.org

45

### Article 100- Class 4 Circuit (cont.)

Flowchart describing how this process works (courtesy of Voltserver)

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® i.ei.org

46

### Article 100- Class 4 Circuit (cont.)

Equipment associated with Class 4 Circuit distribution (courtesy of Voltserver)

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® i.ei.org

47

### Article 100 Definitions- Counter (Countertop)

A new definition was added to help users of the Code understand what constitutes a **“Counter (Countertop)”** location

- ▲ There appears to be installer and enforcement **confusion**, as well as **frequent product misapplications** resulting from electrical equipment being installed incorrectly on these surfaces
- ▲ The key distinction between a work surface and a countertop is the **quantity of spillage** that the surfaces may be subjected (*Generally, a counter application assumes a greater volume of spillage*)
- ▲ The electrical professional will be directed to the industry standards that aid in the proper application of receptacles in these locations
- ▲ See **Informational Note No. 1** for a reference to *UL 498, Receptacles and Attachment Plugs*, and *UL 943, Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters*
- ▲ See **Informational Note No. 2** for information on receptacles for counters and countertops distinguished from receptacles for work surfaces

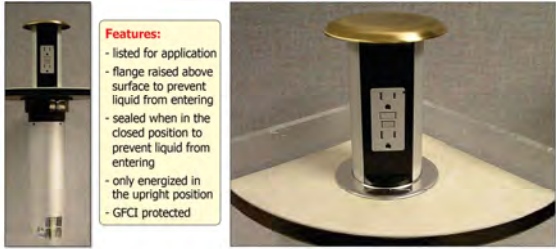
CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® i.ei.org

48



### Article 100 Definitions- Counter (Countertop)

The key distinction between a **work surface** or a **countertop** is the quantity of spillage that the surfaces may be subjected (*see Work Surface definition in upcoming slide*)



**Features:**

- listed for application
- flange raised above surface to prevent liquid from entering
- sealed when in the closed position to prevent liquid from entering
- only energized in the upright position
- GFCI protected

Courtesy of ABB, Thomas and Betts

49

### Article 100 Definitions- Work Surface

**Work Surface**

- A container with **8 oz of saline solution**, with 8 g of table salt per liter of distilled water
- Container is placed on the counter surface 12 inches from the sample
- Container is tipped over all at once with an effort to direct the spill toward the most disadvantageous area of the assembly

**Countertop**

- A container with **1/2 gallon of saline solution** with 0.28 ounce of table salt per liter of distilled water
- Container is placed on the counter surface 12 inches from the sample
- Container is tipped over all at once with an effort to direct the spill toward the most disadvantageous area of the assembly

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr.
NFPA LINK® iaei.org

50

### Article 100 Definitions- Work Surface

- ▲ Reference 406.5(E), 406.5(G)(1), and 406.5(H) for information on receptacles for counters and countertops distinguished from receptacles for work surfaces
- ▲ 2020 *NEC* introduced work surface and countertop recognizing the differences are important but there were no definitions for these terms (210.11 & 210.52)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr.
iaei.org

51

### Article 100 Definitions- Energy Management System

A new definition for Energy Management System has been created and added to the 2023 *NEC*

- ▲ The Energy Management Task group was asked to review all current and proposed definitions and requirements
- ▲ Items reviewed were load management, load management system, power control system, energy management system, and related terms
- ▲ Need to promote a coordinated approach and understanding throughout the Code
- ▲ An energy management system will contain a monitor, a form of communication equipment, some type of controller and timer, and other devices responsible for monitoring or controlling an electrical load, a form of power production, or a type of storage source

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee
NFPA LINK® iaei.org

52





### Article 100 Definitions- Energy Management System

A new definition for **Energy Management System** has been created and added to the 2023 NEC

An energy management system will contain a monitor, a form of communication equipment, some type of controller and timer, and other devices responsible for monitoring or controlling an electrical load, form of power production, or a type of storage source

Photos courtesy of Schneider Electric

53

### Article 100 Definitions- Feeder Assembly

This new definition will provide consistency when referencing the factory cord or cable assembly between the electrical equipment and the mobile home, recreational vehicle, or park trailer panelboard

- ▲ In previous editions of the Code, there were different definitions in the NEC articles under CMP-7 purview that basically covered the power cord assembly
- ▲ Adding the term "feeder assembly" consistently throughout Articles 550, 551, and 552 clarifies that these conductors, although connected to a receptacle, are considered feeders in order to forgo the GFCI protection
- ▲ This alleviates concerns about "unwanted tripping" that could be caused by the accumulation (*multiple portable appliances*) of leakage current at the source

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

54

### Article 100 Definitions- Feeder Assembly





Photo's courtesy of RV Upgrades, and IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

55

### Article 100 Definitions- Fibers/Flyings, Combustible

A new definition for "Fibers/Flyings, Combustible" includes 3 informational notes that identify particle size and types of fibers/flyings

- ▲ Part of a Standards Council directive to CMP committees to resolve conflicts among the documents
- ▲ This change is a result of members from several technical committees as part of a Task Group on Combustible Dusts
- ▲ Informational notes following the new definition to include specific information pertaining to combustible metal fibers/flyings

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

56

### Article 100 Definitions- Ground Fault

Changed the words from "metallic" to "metal" in the definition of *Ground Fault* in Article 100

- ▲ Change was made from "metallic" to "metal" to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*
- ▲ Helps to add clarity and useability by updating the words of the definition
- ▲ This received considerable debate at the *NEC* Correlating Committee meeting

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake NFPA LINK® iaei.org

57

### Article 100 Definitions- Ground Fault

An unintentional, electrically conductive connection between an **ungrounded conductor** of an electrical circuit and the normally non-current-carrying conductors, **metal enclosures, metal raceways, metal equipment, or earth.**

The diagram shows a transformer source with two ungrounded conductors and one grounded conductor. The ungrounded conductors are connected to equipment. One of these ungrounded conductors has made an unintended connection to the equipment's metal enclosure, which is labeled as a 'Ground Fault'. The equipment is also connected to an equipment grounding conductor (EGC) which is grounded to earth.

Copyright © IAEI 2023

58

### Article 100- Impedance Grounding Conductor

A new term was added for *Grounding Conductor, Impedance*

- ▲ There was no definition until the 2023 *NEC* for a conductor that made a connection between the neutral point for an impedance grounded system and the grounding impedance device
- ▲ The impedance grounding conductor will carry fault current that has been reduced by a designated impedance
- ▲ This conductor did not meet the definition of a neutral conductor as it is not intended to carry current under normal conditions
- ▲ It also did not meet the definition of a *grounding electrode conductor*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Contributor- Paul Dobrowsky NFPA LINK® iaei.org

59

### Article 100- Impedance Grounding Conductor

New definition for "**impedance grounding conductor**" was created to replace the phrase "grounded system conductor"

There was no definition until the 2023 *NEC*. This conductor makes a connection between the neutral point for an impedance grounded system and the grounding impedance device. The impedance grounding conductor will carry fault current that has been reduced by a designated impedance

The diagram shows a service equipment panel with a neutral point. An impedance grounding conductor connects this neutral point to a grounding impedance device. Other components shown include ground detectors, an impedance bonding conductor, an equipment grounding conductor, a main bonding jumper, and a grounding electrode conductor.

Copyright © IAEI 2023

60

## Article 100- Grounded System, Impedance (Impedance Grounded System)

A new term was added for *Grounded System, Impedance*

- There was no definition for an *impedance grounded system* before the 2023 *NEC* code cycle
- An electrical system that is grounded by intentionally connecting the system neutral point to ground through an impedance device (CMP-5)
- This resulted in an inconsistent use and understanding of these systems as they applied with high impedance grounded neutral systems and impedance grounded neutral systems
- Electrical professionals will have a new definition that is accurate and consistently defines elements that make up this system

IAEI Contributor- Paul Dobrowsky    NFPA LINK®    iaei.org

61

## Article 100- Impedance Grounded System

Substantiation was submitted for the creation of a new definition for Grounded System, Impedance

No definition for an impedance grounded system before the 2023 *NEC*  
 This resulted in an **inconsistent use** and understanding of these systems as it applied with high impedance grounded neutral systems and impedance grounded neutral systems

Photos courtesy of Rob Bowman

62

## Article 100- Impedance Grounded System

Photo shows the typical ground detection and alarm system associated with an impedance grounded system

Has visual as well as audible alarm features

These systems help maintain continuity of power, and are recognized in NFPA 70E as a method of reducing arc flash severity

Manufactured by Post Grover

Photo courtesy of Rob Bowman

IAEI Contributor- Paul Dobrowsky    iaei.org

63

## Article 100 Definitions- In Sight From

The definition of "In Sight From (Within Sight From), (Within Sight)" has been modified per requirements of the *NEC Style Manual*


- The *NEC Style Manual* states that definitions shall not contain requirements or recommendations
- See the new section for "In Sight From (Within Sight From), (Within Sight)" in 110.29 for requirements
- Definition revised for clarity and uniform enforcement
- Equipment that is visible and not more than 15 m (50 ft) distant from other equipment is considered to be in sight from that other equipment

CMP- 1, Paul Sood    NFPA LINK®    iaei.org

64

**Article 100- In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)**  
 Distance is to be **visible** and not more than 15 m (50 ft) from the other equipment.  
 [Note: see 110.29 for requirements for In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)]

Transformer disconnecting means is located in the electrical panel and is labeled  
 Transformer is labeled as to the panel and branch circuit it is controlled from  
 Always test for the presence of electricity before beginning the troubleshooting of electrical issues



Copyright © IAEI 2023

65

**Article 100- Likely to Become Energized**

A new term is now defined explaining the phrase *Energized, Likely to Become*

- There was no definition of this phrase that appears 25 times within the *NEC*
- Annex B of the *NEC Style Manual* defines "likely to become energized" as a "failure of insulation on" (*Annex B is units of measure*)
- There is a very important distinction between what can become energized compared to what is likely to become energized
- Likely to become energized was up to interpretation with opinions that differed from jurisdiction to jurisdiction
- This caused frustration among electrical professionals when applying requirements from the *NEC*

IAEI Contributor- Paul Dobrowsky      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

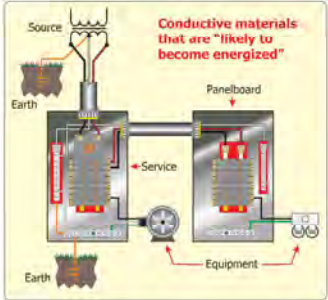
66

**Article 100- Energized, Likely to Become**  
 Likely to become energized was up to interpretation with opinions that differ between jurisdictions

Annex B of the *NEC Style Manual* defines "likely to become energized" as a "failure of insulation on"  
 Many people have never heard of an *NEC Style Manual*

**Definition factors:**

- a conductive material
- this conductive material could become energized
- could be due to failure of electrical insulation or electrical spacing



Copyright © IAEI 2023

67

**Article 100- Load Management**

A new term is now defined for *Load Management*

- The result of the Energy Management Task Group who was asked to review current as well as proposed definitions and requirements
- Review topics included load management, load management system, power control system, energy management system, and related terms
- This will result in a coordinated approach and understanding throughout the *NEC*
- Task group proposed several public comments for energy management items located throughout the *NEC*
- Load management is considered a function of a listed energy management system
- The definition will now correlate with Article 750, *Energy Management Systems*

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org


68



### Article 100- Load Management

A new definition for Load Management has been added to the NEC  
 Review topics included load management, load management system, power control system, energy management system and related terms

This will result in a coordinated approach and understanding throughout the NEC  
 The definition will now correlate with Article 750 *Energy Management Systems*



Square D Load Management Systems




Photo from IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

69

### Article 100 Definitions- Normal High-Water Level

This new definition will help the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) determine the elevation for the electrical datum plane distances used in Articles 551, 555, and 682

- ▲ Previously, there was no consistent way to determine the elevation next to a body of water to validate or confirm where electrical equipment could be placed and where the electrical datum plane is located
- ▲ This will provide an easier and more consistent way to determine the elevation for the electrical datum planes
- ▲ See this definition for further definitions of the following:
  - Natural or Artificially Made Shorelines
  - Rivers and Streams
  - Flood Control Bodies of Water
  - Nonflood Control Bodies of Water

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter


NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

70

### What is an Electrical Datum Plane?

- ▲ The electrical datum plane is a horizontal plane, a specified distance above the normal high-water level
- ▲ It governs, by applicable Code rules, the lowest level that specified electrical equipment can be installed, and the electrical connections can be made
- ▲ One good example is 556.3(A) for floating piers
- ▲ The electrical datum plane for floating piers and landing stages is installed to permit located to accommodate the rise and fall of the pier or stage in response to water level, without lateral movement
- ▲ In these cases, the datum plane above the floating pier or landing stage is specified as being 30 inches above the water level at the floating pier or landing stage and a minimum of 12 inches above the level of the deck



CMP- 7, Dean Hunter

iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

71



72





Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

73

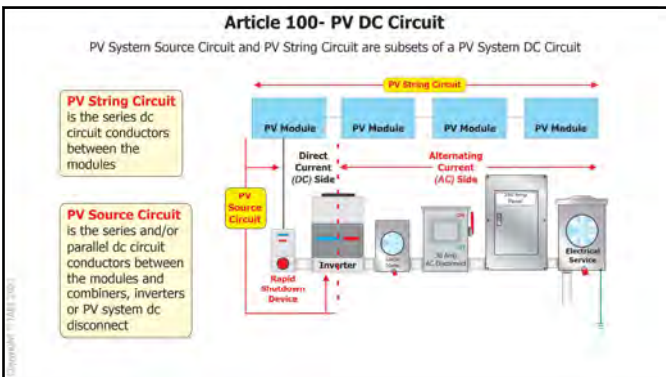
### Article 100 Definitions- PV DC Circuit

New terms and revised definitions for PV System DC elements

- ▲ PV System Source Circuit and PV String Circuit subsets of a PV System DC Circuit
- ▲ **PV Source Circuit** is inclusive of the series and/or parallel dc circuit conductors between the modules and combiners, inverters or PV system dc disconnect
- ▲ **PV String Circuit** is inclusive of the series dc circuit conductors between the modules
- ▲ Previous terms and definitions were difficult to apply to current designs
- ▲ Decided to clarify these definitions as well as relocate all definitions to Article 100
- ▲ The definitions relocated to comply with the *NEC* Style manual requirements

CMP- 4, Pete Jackson      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

74



75

### Article 100 Definitions- Restricted Industrial Establishment

New definition in Article 100 created to align with requirements for installations specifically found within hazardous (*classified*) locations

- ▲ Resulted in more concise wording in the definition and deleted unnecessary/redundant text for defining an industrial facility
- ▲ Removed the phrase "*In industrial establishments with restricted public access, where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation*"
- ▲ Now states it is an **establishment** with restricted public access where there are conditions of maintenance where supervision ensures only qualified persons service the installation
- ▲ The above text was repeated in over 40 subdivisions for wiring methods permitted in hazardous (*classified*) locations
- ▲ This addressed an NFPA Correlating Committee request for all code panels to reduce redundant text that would not impact the Code requirements

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

76

### Article 100- Definitions- Restricted Industrial Establishment

New definition in Article 100 created to align with requirements for installations specifically found within hazardous (classified) locations

Resulted in more concise wording in the definition and deleted unnecessary/redundant text for defining an industrial facility

Addressed NFPA Correlating Committee request to reduce redundant text but not impact code language



Photo courtesy of Brian Rock- Hubbs

Copyright © IAEI 2023

77

### Article 100 Definitions- Servicing

A new definition for servicing of electrical equipment to assist in maintenance and repair activities

- There has been confusion between what is considered reconditioning versus normal servicing, maintenance, and repair of electrical equipment
- This definition distinguishes the act of servicing and maintenance of electrical equipment from reconditioning of electrical equipment
- It will help assure the operational performance of the electrical equipment during the life of the equipment
- See NEMA CS 100-2020, NEMA Technical Position on Reconditioned Electrical Equipment, for additional information on the proper application of rules related to reconditioning

CMP- 1, Paul Sood

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

78

### Article 100- Servicing

Reconditioning and servicing of equipment is not the same

Switchboards and Switchgear Permitted to be reconditioned

Definition of "Servicing" helps to explain difference

To service equipment means to perform maintenance and repair of electrical equipment

Label shown that has been applied to the switchgear denoting it has also been reconditioned




Copyright © IAEI 2023

79

### Article 100 Definitions- Short Circuit

A new definition for "short circuit" has been added to the Code by CMP-10

- Short circuit is used several times throughout the NEC
- The definition is added to improve the usability of the code
- Previously, the user of the Code had to rely on other industry standards to determine the definition of this term, such as the IEEE 100-1992, The New IEEE Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronic Terms, 5th Edition

CMP- 10, David Williams

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

80

### Definition: Short Circuit

**Characteristics of a Short Circuit:**

- It is a conducting connection
- can exist between any of the conductors of an electrical system
- either from line-to-line or from line to the grounded conductor
- can be accidental or intentional

Copyright © IAEI 2023

81

### Article 100 Definitions- Storable Swimming, Wading, or Immersion Pools and Storable/Portable Spas and Hot Tubs

The definition was modified **removing the 42 in. depth language** thus aligning with current product manufacturing standards

- ▲ This new definition covers:
  - ↳ Storable Swimming, Wading, or Immersion Pools and
  - ↳ Storable/Portable Spa and Hot Tub
- ▲ The previous water depth limitations were based on typical storable pool construction at that time and not related to any electrical hazards associated with water depth
- ▲ AHJs were placed in a position of identifying a code violation when the 42-in depth was in the previous definitions *(even though there was not an electrical hazard)*
- ▲ This should eliminate the confusion and unnecessary requirements that an equipotential bonding system be installed

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP-17, Donny Cook NFPA LINK® iaei.org

82

### Article 100 Definitions- Storable Swimming, Wading, or Immersion Pools and Storable/Portable Spas and Hot Tubs

Photo courtesy of Bestway

Photo courtesy of Summer Waves

The **42 in. depth** language has been removed  
This now aligns with product manufacturing standards

Copyright © IAEI 2023

83

### Article 100 Definitions- Transformer

A new definition for a transformer has been created and added to the 2023 NEC

- ▲ The word "transformer" occurs approximately 1500 times in the NEC
- ▲ This new definition covers both single and polyphase equipment operating by electromagnetic induction
- ▲ The definition was careful not to state "changing voltage or current" because isolating transformers filter noise without changing nominal voltages

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

84



85

### Article 100 Definitions- Work Surface

A new definition was added to help users of the Code understand what constitutes a "Work Surface" location

- There appears to be installer and enforcement **confusion** as well as **frequent product misapplications** resulting from electrical equipment being installed incorrectly on these surfaces (*Work surfaces involve lower volumes of spillage than countertops*)
- The key distinction between a work surface and a countertop is the **quantity of spillage** that the surfaces may be subjected
- The electrical professional will be directed to the industry standards that aid in the proper application of receptacles in these locations
- See **Informational Note No. 1** for UL 111, *Outline of Investigation for Multioutlet Assemblies*, and UL 962A, *Furniture Power Distribution Units*
- See **Informational Note No. 2** for information on receptacles for work surfaces distinguished from receptacles for counters and countertops

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

86

### Article 100 Definitions- Work Surface

<b>Work Surface</b>	<b>Countertop</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A container with <b>8 oz of saline solution</b>, with 8 g of table salt per liter of distilled water</li> <li>Container is placed on the counter surface 12 inches from the sample</li> <li>Container is tipped over all at once with an effort to direct the spill toward the most disadvantageous area of the assembly</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A container with <b>1/2 gallon of saline solution</b> with 0.28 ounce of table salt per liter of distilled water</li> <li>Container is placed on the counter surface 12 inches from the sample</li> <li>Container is tipped over all at once with an effort to direct the spill toward the most disadvantageous area of the assembly</li> </ul>

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

87

### Article 100 Definitions- Work Surface

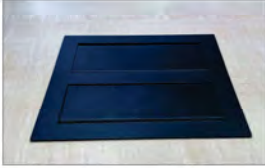

- Reference 406.5(E), 406.5(G)(1), and 406.5(H) for information on receptacles for counters and countertops distinguished from receptacles for work surfaces
- 2020 NEC Introduced work surface and countertop recognizing the differences are important but there were no definitions for these terms (210.11 & 210.52)

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

88

**Work Surface Locations**

Listing of **receptacle assemblies for work surfaces** is based on the amount of liquid spillage verses that of a counter top location

Work surface photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

**Note:** Need to know what type surface you are dealing with in order to install the correct receptacle assembly

See UL 111, Outline of Investigation for Multioutlet Assemblies, and UL 962A, Furniture Power Distribution Units

89



# Not for Distribution

## Article 110 General Requirements for Electrical Installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

90



### 110.3 Examination, Identification, Installation, Use, and Listing (Product Certification) of Equipment.

#### (A) Examination

**List Item 8:** Changes addresses cybersecurity for network-connected life safety equipment

- ⚠ Cybersecurity is a technology hazard that can cause many disturbances to electronic equipment
- ⚠ Cybersecurity must be considered when evaluating equipment for safety
- ⚠ Does not mandate that the electrical professional conduct a cybersecurity evaluation but to remember and recognize that it is a hazard

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee
NFPA LINK® iaei.org

91



### 110.3 Examination, Identification, Installation, Use, and Listing (Product Certification) of Equipment.

#### (A) Examination

⚠ **Informational Note No. 3** introduces the following valuable standards for consideration towards cybersecurity concerns for electrical equipment:

- 🔗 IEC 62443 series of standards for Industrial Automation and Control Systems
- 🔗 UL 2900 series of standards for Software Cybersecurity for Network-Connectable Products
- 🔗 UL 5500, the Standard for Remote Software Updates

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee
NFPA LINK® iaei.org

92



### 110.3 Examination, Identification, Installation, Use, and Listing (Product Certification) of Equipment

Addresses cybersecurity for network-connected life safety equipment in (A) Examination (list item B)

Does not mandate the electrical professional to conduct a cybersecurity evaluation but remember and recognize that it is a hazard

Copyright © IAEI 2023

93

### 110.3 Examination, Identification, Installation, Use, and Listing (Product Certification) of Equipment

(B) Installation and Use

A new informational note was added allowing the use of a QR code to access installation instructions

- ▲ QR codes are appearing on many different items
- ▲ These allow the user to access vast amounts of information about a product
- ▲ **An example:** Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupters (AFCIs) allow the use of printed materials, QR codes, and internet addresses as avenues to find product information
- ▲ New Informational Note assures the electrical professional that a QR code (if available) is allowable for use in finding this important information

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

94

### 110.3 Examination, Identification, Installation, Use, and Listing (Product Certification) of Equipment

Use of QR codes are now addressed in the New I-Note following (B) Installation of Use

Assures the electrical professional that a QR code (if available) is allowable for use in finding this important information

QR Code provided on these circuit breakers

In case you are wondering, QR stands for "quick response"

Photos courtesy of Eaton

Copyright © IAEI 2023

95

### 110.14 Electrical Connections

- ▲ Parent text removed parenthetical content: "(such as copper and aluminum or aluminum and copper-clad aluminum)"
- ▲ Copper and copper-clad aluminum are considered similar metals and not dissimilar metals as a CCA conductor
- ▲ Terminals are suitable for use with copper-clad aluminum conductors when evaluated for both copper and aluminum

CMP- 1, Greg Chontow NFPA LINK® iaei.org

96

**110.14 Electrical Connections**

**(A) Terminals**

"Thoroughly good" was replaced with "**mechanically secured**" for clarity and the word "electrical" was added for accuracy

- ▲ Adds clarity as to what kind of connection (*mechanically secure electrical connection*) is being discussed as it applies to terminations found with various types of electrical equipment
- ▲ The listing of the product will also determine the acceptability of the connection

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP-1, Greg Chontow NFPA LINK® iaei.org

97

**110.16 Arc-Flash Hazard Warning**

**(B) Service Equipment/Feeder Supplied Equipment**

This adds "Feeder Supplied Equipment" to the title, adds the phrase "arc flash" for the type of permanent label required, and reduces 1200 to 1000 amperes for equipment rating amperes

- ▲ Clarifies that the requirements apply to both service equipment and feeder-supplied equipment
- ▲ It was necessary to add the phrase "arc flash" to clarify the type of permanent label required for this equipment
- ▲ The revision from 1200 to 1000 amperes will protect worker safety
- ▲ The four previous list items and exception were deleted, and now references label to meet applicable industry practice

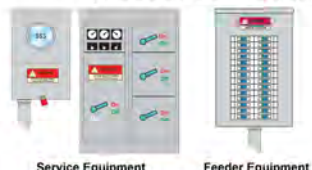
Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP-1, Greg Chontow NFPA LINK® iaei.org

98

**110.16(B) Service Equipment/Feeder Supplied Equipment**

"Feeder Supplied Equipment" added to the title, "arc flash" added for the type of permanent label required, and reduced 1200 to 1000 amperes




Service Equipment Feeder Equipment

Clarifies that the requirements apply to both service equipment and feeder-supplied equipment

Made sure that the electrical professional understood the label was for an "arc flash"

Revised **1200 amperes down to 1000 amperes** to provide greater safety to the worker



Not all required warning labels shown

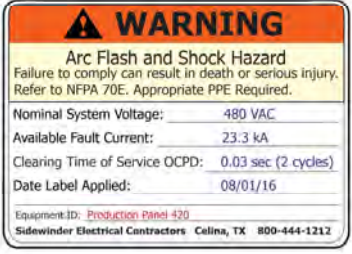
Copyright © IAEI 2023

99

**110.16(B) Service Equipment/Feeder Supplied Equipment**

"Feeder Supplied Equipment" added to the title, "arc flash" added for the type of permanent label required, and reduced 1200 to 1000 amperes

Arc flash label is required to contain the following information



**WARNING**

**Arc Flash and Shock Hazard**  
Failure to comply can result in death or serious injury. Refer to NFPA 70E. Appropriate PPE Required.

Nominal System Voltage:	480 VAC
Available Fault Current:	23.3 kA
Clearing Time of Service OCPD:	0.03 sec (2 cycles)
Date Label Applied:	08/01/16

Equipment ID: Production Panel 470  
Sidewinder Electrical Contractors Celina, TX 800-444-1212

100

**110.17 Servicing and Maintenance of Equipment**

A new section addresses servicing and maintenance of electrical equipment and restricts this work to qualified persons trained to perform the work

- Requires the use of identified replacement parts that have been verified per applicable product standards
- A list of these options is provided for approval of these replacement parts
- Parts are to be provided by either the original equipment manufacturer (OEM), designed by an engineer with applicable experience, or as approved by the AHJ
- Manufacturer's instructions and any additional information included in the listing must be utilized
- The applicable industry standards should also be consulted for additional information
- See *NFPA 70B, The Recommended Practice for Electrical Equipment Maintenance*

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

101

**110.17 Servicing and Maintenance of Equipment**

New section addresses servicing and maintenance of electrical equipment and **restricts this work to qualified persons trained to perform the work**

Requires the use of identified replacement parts that have been verified per applicable product standards

Parts are to be provided by either the:

- original equipment manufacturer (OEM)
- designed by an engineer with applicable experience or
- as approved by the AHJ

See *NFPA 70B, The Recommended Practice for Electrical Equipment Maintenance*

Various Types of Electrical Equipment

102

**Working safely is important!**  
Please disconnect electricity to equipment you are working on.

Refer to NFPA 70E for further information

Wear your Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) when necessary

Photo courtesy of Bill McGovern

103

Photo courtesy of Scott Humphrey

104

### 110.20 Reconditioned Equipment

A new section for the establishment of general requirements that will apply to all equipment that is reconditioned

- Requires the use of identified replacement parts verified under applicable standards, provided by the original equipment manufacturer (OEM) or designed by an engineer with applicable experience
- When equipment is to be listed**, reconditioned equipment must be listed, or a field label applied stating it has been reconditioned using information from the OEM
- When equipment is not required to be listed**, two options exist:
  - The first states that the equipment can be listed or field labeled as reconditioned
  - The second states that the equipment can be reconditioned per the instructions provided by the OEM

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee    NFPA LINK<sup>®</sup>    iaei.org

105

### 110.20 Reconditioned Equipment (cont.)

A new section for the establishment of general requirements that will apply to all equipment that is reconditioned

- A third option (C) is permitted when either option (A) or (B) will not work:
  - The authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) is permitted to approve reconditioned equipment when listing, field labeling, and OEM guidance are not available
- This grants the AHJ the ability to review the documentation regarding the changes that have been made to the equipment
- Based on this review, the AHJ may be able to approve the equipment

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee    iaei.org

106

### 110.20 Reconditioned Equipment

New section for the establishment of general requirements that will apply to all equipment that is reconditioned

**When equipment is not required to be listed**, three options exist:

**Option A**  
- it can be listed, or field labeled as reconditioned

**Option B**  
- the equipment can be reconditioned per the instructions provided by the OEM

**Option C** is permitted when either option (A) or (B) will not work:  
- The AHJ is **permitted to approve** reconditioned equipment when listing, field labeling, and OEM guidance is not available

**When equipment is to be listed:**

- reconditioned equipment must be listed or
- a field label applied stating it has been reconditioned using information from the OEM

Motor      Transformer

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee

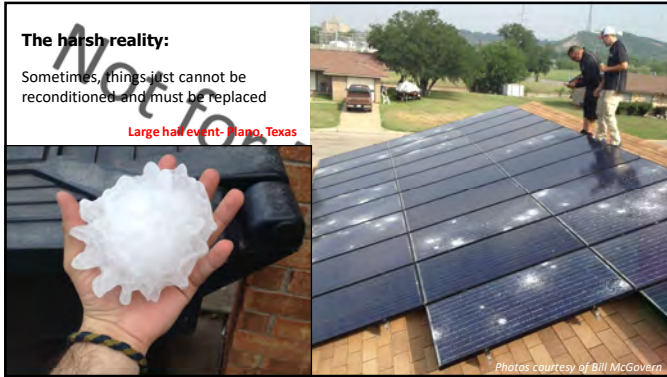
107

Major flooding resulted in damage to these circuit breakers. Not all circuit breakers can be reconditioned. (P.S.- the use of WD-40 is not the solution either!)

Photo courtesy of Danny King, City of Fort Smith Arkansas

108





109

**110.21 Marking**  
**(A) Marking- (1) General**

Changes to requirements for equipment marking to clarify how to apply or affix labels on all electrical equipment

- ▲ Clarifies how to apply labels on electrical equipment for the safety of the equipment
- ▲ There is a need to apply or affix labels onto the equipment instead of using the term "placed on the equipment"
- ▲ This will make sure the label stays there permanently, and does not fall off with the passage of time
- ▲ Must be evaluated as to the longevity of these labels in the various environment in which the equipment is placed into service

CMP- 1, Paul Sood

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

110

**110.21(A)(1) General (Equipment Labels)**

Clarified requirements for equipment marking for affixing labels on all electrical equipment

Labels need to be **affixed** to electrical equipment

Label needs to remain with the equipment for the life of the installation

The **environment of the equipment** (rain, ice, snow, corrosion, etc) must be considered

Items such as rivets or bolts with nuts may be needed

Copyright © IAEI 2023

111

**110.21 Marking**  
**(A) Marking- (2) Reconditioned Equipment**

Has reorganized information into a list format and clarifies that the original listing mark is to be removed or made permanently illegible

- ▲ The information previously found in a sentence format has been placed into a list format making it easier to follow and understand
- ▲ Clarification that the original listing mark is to be removed or made permanently illegible
- ▲ Clarifies the misunderstanding by some that the nameplate should be removed
- ▲ This assures that important information stays with the equipment for future use
- ▲ Further clarifies that the approval of this equipment should not be based on the original listing mark

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

112



### 110.21(A)(2) Reconditioned Equipment

Reorganized information into a list format and clarifies that the **original listing mark is to be removed or made permanently illegible**.

Original listing mark scratched out on the equipment nameplate. This assures that important information stays with the equipment for future use.

Original listing marks made permanently illegible.

Original listing marks: UL LISTED, IEC, etc.

113

### 110.21 Marking (B) Field-Applied Hazard Marking

**List Item 1:** Language added regarding durability for hazard marking labels and signs for electrical equipment installed in various environments.

- ▲ A field-applied hazard marking is an important sign or label.
- ▲ It is important this **marking is durable** to remain with the electrical equipment in environments that are wet, damp, dry, or even corrosive.
- ▲ This applies to signs and labels attached to items such as ingress and egress doors to areas that contain electrical equipment.
- ▲ In some environments this might include the use of rivets to ensure these hazard markings (**caution, warning, or danger**) are securely attached.
- ▲ See Informational Note No. 1 ANSI Z535.2-2011 (R2017), *Environmental and Facility Safety Signs*.
- ▲ **Note:** Be sure screws or rivets comply with the new rules in 312.10 and 314.5.

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

114

### 110.21(B)(1) Field-Applied Hazard Marking

Language added regarding durability for hazard marking labels and signs for electrical equipment installed in various environments.

It is important that this marking is durable to remain with the electrical equipment. In some environments this might include the use of screws, bolts and nuts, or rivets.

- DANGER** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result** in death or serious injury.
- WARNING** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result** in death or serious injury.
- CAUTION** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **may result** in minor or moderate injury.

See ANSI Z535.2-2011 (R2017), *Environmental and Facility Safety Signs* for additional information.

115

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

116



117

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives



118

A couple of caution signs meaning that this may result in minor or moderate injury

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives



119

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives



120

Some colors and signage can deteriorate over time and in harsh environments. Consult industry standards for assistance with installing labels and signs.

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

### 110.22 Identification of Disconnecting Means

**(A) General**

This change helps determine when the identification of a disconnecting means is required or not required

- Clarifies that identification of disconnecting is not required when the location of the circuit source is evident
- Marking is to include the identification and location of the circuit source that supplies the disconnecting means
  - unless** the equipment is located and arranged so that the identification and location of the circuit source is evident
- An example could be the disconnecting means for a water heater or furnace installed close to an electrical panel enclosing the disconnecting means

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 1, Paul Sood      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

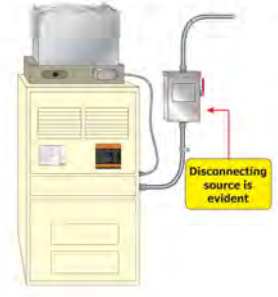
121

### 110.22(A) General (Disconnecting Means)

This helps determine when the identification of a disconnecting means is required or not required

At a single family dwelling the disconnect source is evident from the unit being serviced

Testing for the absence of electricity before troubleshooting the unit



In other than one- and two-family dwelling, marking shall include the identification and location of the source circuit supplying the disconnecting means

Copyright © IAEI 2023

122

### 110.26 Spaces About Electrical Equipment

This change concerns equipment doors and their interference with egress and access from the working space moved from 110.26(C)(2)

- Many instances of electrical equipment installations violate the previous Code language involving this working space (*entrapment when doors are open*)
- Worker entrapment by equipment doors can cause serious injury or death
- This change recognizes open equipment doors can impede egress from electrical equipment when dangerous situations arise (*arc blast, etc.*)
- Access and egress **are impeded** if an equipment door(s) is opened and **restricts** the working space access to **less than 610 mm (24 in.) wide and 2.0 m (6 1/2 ft) high**
- This rule also applies to the space between two simultaneously opened doors on opposite sides of the aisleway

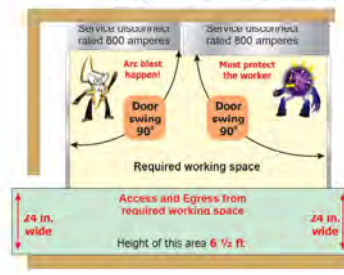
Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 1, Greg Chontow      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

123

### 110.26 Spaces About Electrical Equipment

This change recognizes open equipment doors can impede egress from electrical equipment when dangerous situations arise (*arc blast, etc.*)



Open equipment doors **not to impede** the access or egress from the working space

Access and egress **is impeded** if an equipment door(s) is opened and restricts the working space access to **less than 610 mm (24 in.) wide and 2.0 m (6 1/2 ft) high**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

124

**110.26 Spaces About Electrical Equipment**  
**(A) Working Space- (6) Grade, Floor, or Working Platform**

Addresses the working space conditions of the floor at electrical equipment locations

- ▲ Floor conditions were not addressed by the previous editions of the Code
- ▲ This could be slope of grade or other impediments
- ▲ These conditions are safety issues for workers that must perform work on electrical equipment
- ▲ AHJ needed this guidance so that the initial installation is installed in a compliant manner

CMP- 1, Greg Chontow NFPA LINK® iaei.org

125

**110.26(A)(6) Grade, Floor, or Working Platform**

Floor conditions can present safety issues for workers that must perform work on electrical equipment

This photo is a parking garage

Notice wheel stop in front of electrical equipment

Could pose a tripping hazard injuring the worker




Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023 iaei.org

126

**110.26(A)(6) Grade, Floor, or Working Platform**

Floor conditions can present safety issues for workers that must perform work on electrical equipment

Exterior location with electrical service equipment

Surface grade appears to be in good shape to assure worker safety



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023 iaei.org

127

**110.29 In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)**

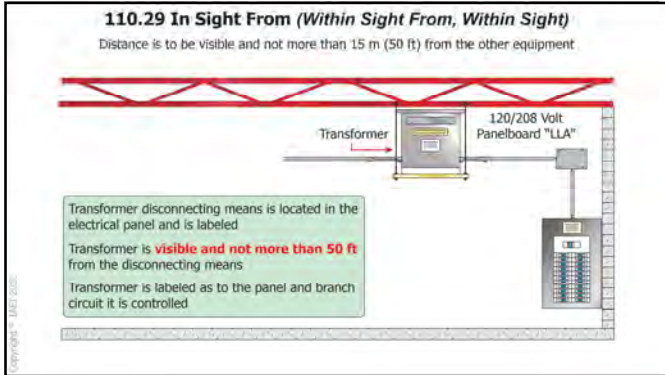
New Section 110.29 has been added to address electrical equipment and the term "In Sight From"

- ▲ "In sight from," "Within Sight From," and "Within Sight" appears several times throughout the NEC
- ▲ This sections adds applicability and useability of these phrases
- ▲ Addresses NEC Style Manual issues that state definitions shall not contain requirements or recommendations
- ▲ Distance is to be **visible** and **not more than 15 m (50 ft)** from the other equipment
- ▲ Reference defined term in Article 100: "In Sight From (Within Sight From), (Within Sight)"

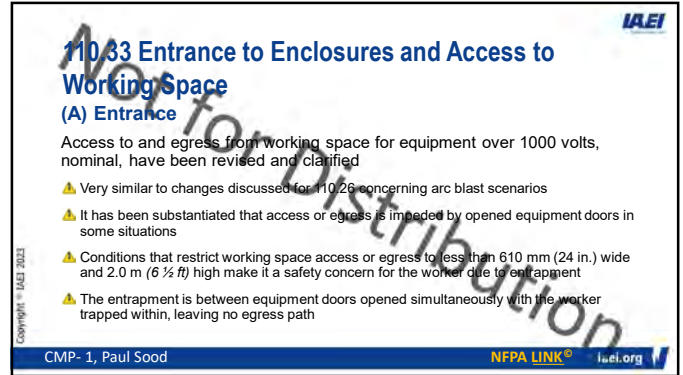
CMP- 1, Greg Chontow NFPA LINK® iaei.org

128





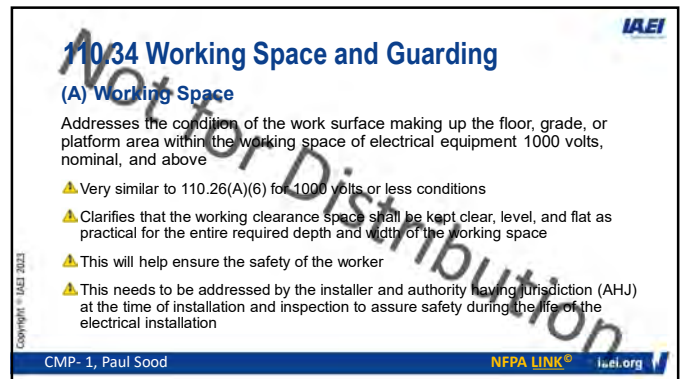
129



130



131



132





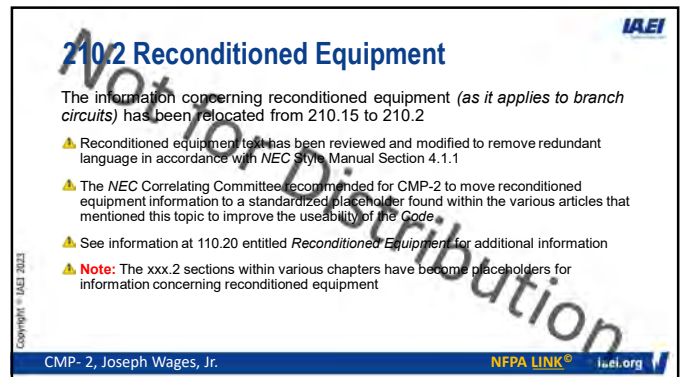
133



134



135



136

### 210.2 Reconditioned Equipment

The information concerning reconditioned equipment has been relocated from 210.15 to 210.2

**GFCI**

**GFCI/AFCI**

The following **shall not be reconditioned**:

- (1) Equipment that provides ground-fault circuit-interrupter (**GFCI**) protection for personnel
- (2) Equipment that provides arc-fault circuit-interrupter (**AFCI**) protection

137

### 210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel

The GFCI is now required to be listed

- ▲ Measurements clarified the cord is a power supply cord
- ▲ *NEC Style Manual* influenced: Informational notes pointing to 422.5(A), 555.35(F) and the additional GFCI requirements found in Chapters 4, 5, and 6
- ▲ Informational note pointing to 215.9 GFCI permissions for locating GFCI in the feeder remained

138

### 210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel

**(A) Dwelling Units**

**(3) Outdoors**

- ▲ Exception to (3) was moved to the end of (A) expanding the exception beyond just those receptacles found outdoors.
- ▲ It doesn't matter if the receptacle is located outside or not, if they are not readily accessible and on a branch circuit dedicated for electric snow-melting, deicing, or pipeline and vessel heating equipment
- ▲ The reference to 426.28 or 427.22 are still included as a permission

139

### 210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel

**(A) Dwelling Units**

**(5) Basements**

- ▲ Exception to (5) was moved to the end of 210.8(A) as Exception No. 2
- ▲ This move recognizes that a receptacle supplying only a permanently installed premises security system is not required to be protected by GFCI regardless of its location
- ▲ The reference to the fire alarm system and the informational notes were removed to align with the *NEC Style Manual* as 760.41(B) and 760.121(B) prohibit the branch circuit supplying this receptacle and equipment from being supplied through a GFCI or AFCI

140

**210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel** IAEI

**(A) Dwelling Units- (6) Kitchens**

Ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection has been expanded to include any cord-and-plug equipment in the kitchen, regardless of whether the outlet serves the countertop.

- ▲ There have been 104 electrocutions that have taken place from 2011 to 2022 based on the Consumer Products Safety Commission (CPSC) database
- ▲ Eighty-one percent of these accidents were from working on an appliance or other equipment
- ▲ GFCI protection is required within a kitchen for receptacles that are
  - ↳ 125-volt through 250-volt and
  - ↳ supplied by single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

141

**210.8(A)(6) Dwelling Unit Kitchens**

Ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection required for receptacles in a kitchen  
 - All 125-volt through 250-volt receptacles  
 - single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground

Copyright © IAEI 2023

142

**210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel** IAEI

**(A) Dwelling Units**

**(7) Areas with sinks and permanent provisions for food preparation, beverage preparation, or cooking**

- ▲ Added as an alignment with similar requirement found in 210.8(B)
- ▲ **Example of impact:** A dry bar in the living room or dining room would require that area to have all receptacles be protected by GFCI

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. iaei.org

143



144

**210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel (cont.)** IAEI

**(A) Dwelling Units (cont.)**

**Exception 4:** A new Exception No. 4 will help the electrical professional address ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection requirements for factory-installed exhaust fans and their receptacles

- ⚠️ There was confusion as to if a receptacle found within an exhaust fan installed in the bathroom required GFCI protection
- ⚠️ This receptacle is typically installed within a fan unit and is not accessible or interactable with people
- ⚠️ This will help reduce arguments and misunderstandings in the field
- ⚠️ Language specifies that exhaust fans are not readily accessible and that the receptacles be installed integral to the fan assembly

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

145

**210.8(A) Ex. No. 4- GFCI Protection of Bathroom Receptacles**

A receptacle outlet internal to a bathroom exhaust fan that is not readily accessible does not require GFCI protection (unless required by the manufacturer or listing)

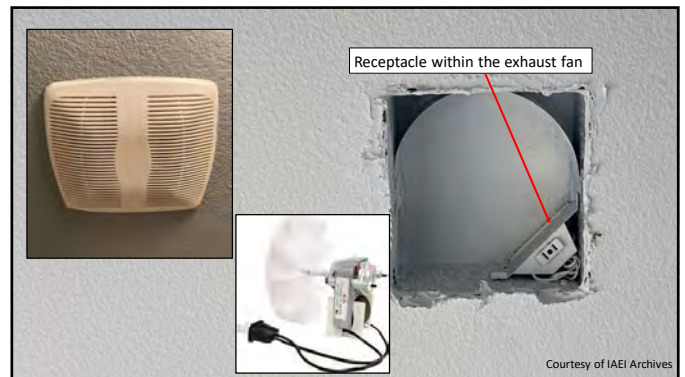
**Inspector Knowledge:** See Article 100 for the definition of readily accessible

Copyright © IAEI 2023

146



147



148



### 210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel

**(A) Dwelling Units. Exception No. 3**  
**(B) Other Than Dwelling Units. Exception No. 6**

New terms and acronyms introduced for **“Weight Supporting Ceiling Receptacle (WSCR)”** and **“Weight Supporting Attachment Fitting (WSAF)”** - Consistency throughout the Code

- ▲ These two exceptions were relocated to the end of 210.8(A) and 210.8(B) as part of the reorganization of 210.8
- ▲ Exception text was revised to apply the new defined terms “Weight Supporting Ceiling Receptacle (WSCR)” and “Weight Supporting Attachment Fitting (WSAF)”
- ▲ WSCR has a new definition in Article 100, and the WSAF had its term and definition modified with the acronym added
- ▲ Similar nomenclature changes were made in 314.27 for Outlet Boxes and 422.18 for Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans

IAEI Contributor- Chuck Mello

149


### 210.8(A) Ex. 3 and 210.8(B) Ex. 6 (GFCI Protection)

Weight Supporting Ceiling Receptacle (WSCR) and Weight Supporting Attachment Fitting (WSAF) have been introduced as terms and acronyms for consistency throughout the code

These exceptions permit for the omission of GFCI protection when supporting a ceiling luminaire or ceiling-suspended fan

Similar changes were made at:

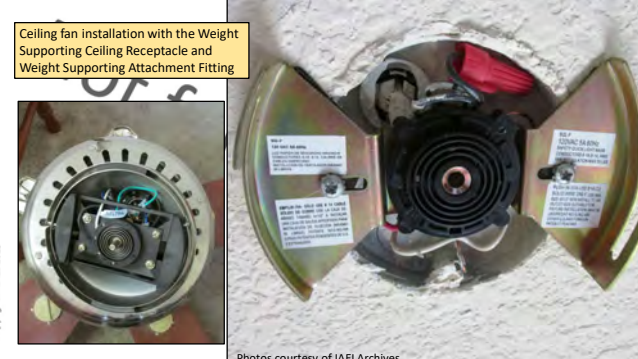
- 314.27 for Outlet Boxes and
- 422.18 for Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans



Photos courtesy of Chuck Mello

150

Ceiling fan installation with the Weight Supporting Ceiling Receptacle and Weight Supporting Attachment Fitting



Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

151

### 210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel- (B) Other Than Dwelling Units

A new list item (4) has been added for the addition of buffet serving areas to the list of locations requiring ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection

▲ All receptacles are to be GFCI protected if they are:

- Single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground, 50 amperes or less, 125-volt through 250-volt
- Three-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground, 100 amperes or less

▲ The buffet serving area typically contains various food wells which hold hot water

▲ Customers or staff members touching the stainless steel are subject to electric shock in the event of an accident

▲ It was demonstrated that these locations are similar in safety concerns to those surfaces which are in kitchens

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr.

152





Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

153



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

154



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

155

**210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel- (B) Other Than Dwelling Units** IAEI

List item (7): Modified to address cord-and-plug-connected **fixed and stationary appliances** within 6 feet of a sink.

- ⚠ The electrical hazard is typically not with the 125-volt through 250-volt receptacle supplying a fixed or stationary piece of equipment but from the equipment itself
- ⚠ Equipment such as a refrigerator or range is typically constructed of metal and located within 6 feet of a sink
- ⚠ A person at the sink making contact with these metal appliances has been injured or killed as a result
- ⚠ This action was necessary to prevent needless electrocutions or shocks to people from occurring

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

156

**210.8(B) Other Than Dwelling Locations (GFCI Protection for Personnel)**  
 Language at list item (7) has been modified addressing cord-and-plug-connected **fixed and stationary appliances at sinks locations in other than dwelling units**

Sinks where **fixed or stationary appliances** are installed within 6 ft from the **top inside edge of the bowl of the sink**

**Note:** fixed or stationary appliances are connected to receptacles or cord connected

Receptacle connected stationary refrigerator

**Note:** This is not a kitchen area which is already covered in 210.8(B)(2)

Contact between the metal sink and the metal appliances have resulted in shocks and electrocutions

Garage Wood Working Counter

GFCI Protected

157

**210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel- (B) Other Than Dwelling Units**

List item (13): Added for **aquariums and bait wells** in locations other than dwelling units

- ▲ Receptacles installed within 1.8 m (6 ft.) of aquariums, bait wells, and similar open aquatic vessels or containers need to be provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection
  - Single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground, 50 amperes or less, 125-volt through 250-volt
  - Supplied by three-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground, 100 amperes or less
- ▲ The areas around bait wells, aquariums, and the like tend to be wet-conductive locations where various types of electrical equipment are used
- ▲ Examples are aerators, luminaires, and pump motors

CMP- 2, David Humphrey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

158

**210.8(B) Other Than Dwelling Units (Aquariums and Bait Wells)**

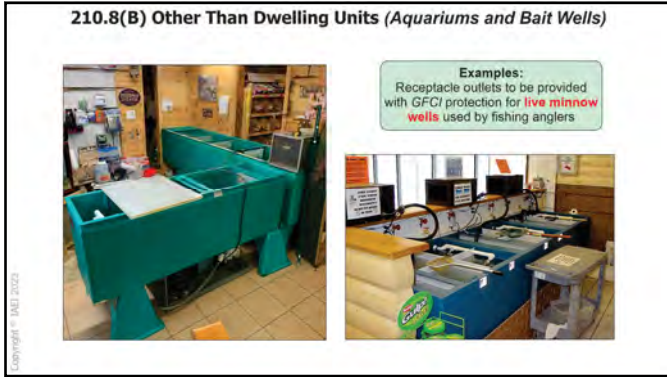
Receptacle outlets to be provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for **aquariums and bait wells**

159

Challenge with this type of installation is presence during inspection (Typically installed after occupying building)

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

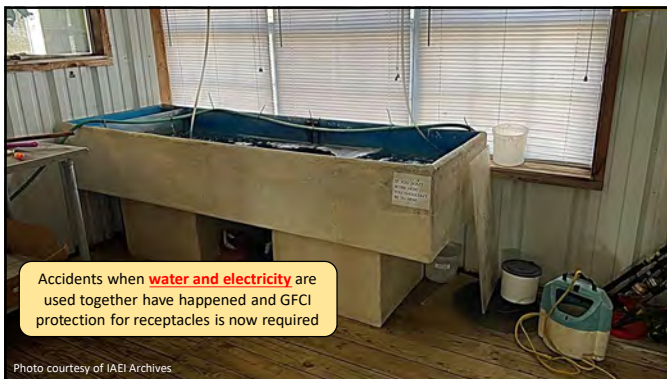
160



161



162



163

**210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interruption Protection for Personnel- (D) Specific Appliances** IAEI

The appliances (cord-and-plug and hard-wired) requiring ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection were placed into a list format for easier use

▲ GFCI protection will apply to outlets supplied by a branch circuit of 150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less in a single-phase system

▲ New appliances appear in red text:

- ✘ Automotive vacuum machines
- ✘ Tire inflation machines
- ✘ Vending machines
- ✘ Drinking water coolers and bottle fill stations
- ✘ Sump pumps
- ✘ Dishwashers
- ✘ High-pressure spray washing machines
- ✘ Wall-mounted ovens
- ✘ Counter-mounted cooking units
- ✘ Clothes dryers
- ✘ Microwave ovens

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

164



### 210.8(D) Specific Appliances (GFCI Protection)

The appliances (cord-and-plug and hard-wired) requiring ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection were placed into a list format for easier use (dwelling and other than dwelling unit locations).



GFCI protection applies to outlets supplied by a branch circuit of 150 volts or less to ground and 60 amperes or less in a single-phase system

**New list items include:**

- electric ranges
- wall-mounted ovens
- counter-mounted cooking units
- clothes dryers
- microwave ovens

165



**New appliances include:**

- electric ranges
- wall-mounted ovens
- counter-mounted cooking units
- clothes dryers
- microwave ovens

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

166

### 210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Personnel- (F) Outdoor Outlets

Ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection is to be installed when the equipment supplied by an outlet covered under the requirements of this section is replaced.

- ⚠ This addresses issues of older existing outlets that are not GFCI protected
- ⚠ Will require GFCI protection for dwelling outdoor outlets when the electrical equipment is replaced that receives power from that older existing outlet
- ⚠ This change will increase the overall level of safety by providing the same level of protection

**Notice:** TIA 23-3 (TIA Log #1664) created Exception No. 2 stating that GFCI protection not required for listed HVAC equipment

**This exception will expire September 1, 2026**

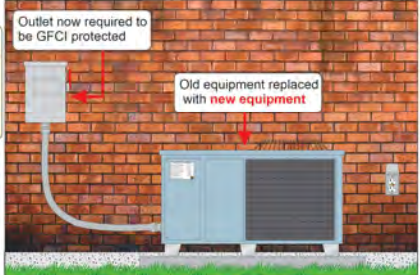
CMP- 2, David Humphrey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

167

### 210.8(F) Outdoor Outlets (GFCI)

When new electrical equipment is installed, ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection method is required for the outlet serving the new equipment

**Note from the Electrical Inspector:**  
NFPA has assigned a task group to look at interoperability issues between equipment and GFCI protection



Outlet now required to be GFCI protected

Old equipment replaced with new equipment

168



169



170

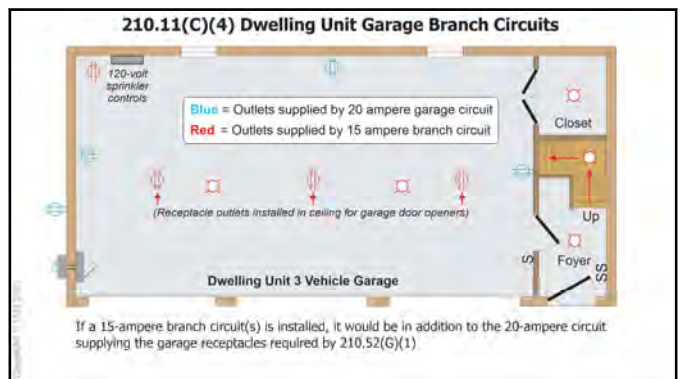
**210.11 Branch Circuits Required**  
**(C) Dwelling Units- (4) Garage Branch Circuits**

The text was clarified so that 15-ampere branch circuits are permitted to serve receptacle outlets installed in a dwelling unit garage

- ▲ If a 15-ampere branch circuit(s) is installed, it would be in addition to the 20-ampere circuit supplying the required garage receptacles
- ▲ This would not diminish the required 20-ampere circuit requirement found at 210.52(G)(1)
- ▲ Applies to garages of any size (1,2,3,4, etc., vehicle bays)
- ▲ Equipment such as a central vacuum unit or garage door opener is allowed to be supplied by a branch circuit that limits ampacity to 15 amperes
- ▲ This change will alleviate any confusion about garage branch circuit requirements

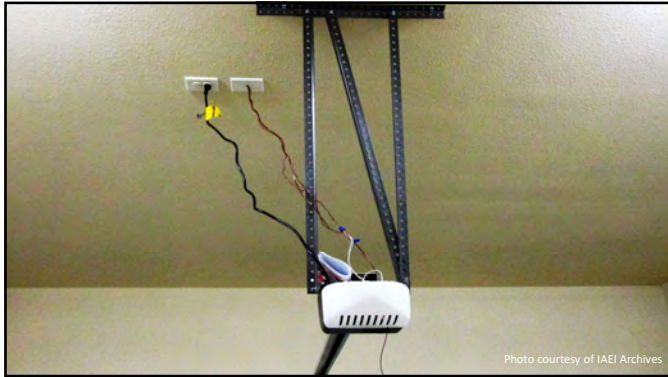
Copyright © IAEI 2023  
 CMP- 2, David Humphrey  
 NFPA LINK® iaei.org

171



172





173

### 210.11 Branch Circuits Required

**(C) Dwelling Units- (4) Garage Branch Circuits**

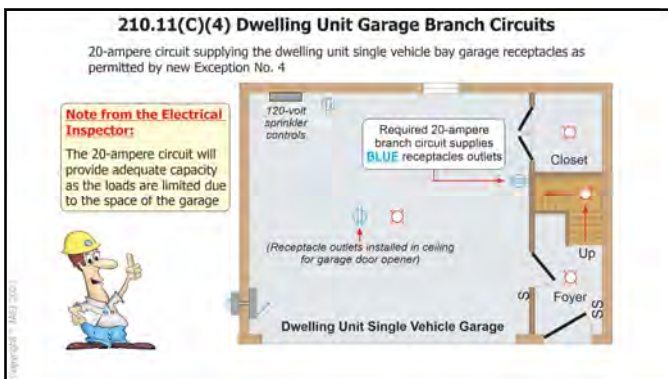
**New Exception No. (2):** Added to permit the 20-ampere branch circuit supplying a single vehicle bay garage to supply other equipment in accordance with requirements in 210.23(A)(1) and (A)(2)

- ⚠️ A single-bay garage is only mandated to be provided with one receptacle outlet on the 20-ampere branch circuit
- ⚠️ The branch circuit will provide adequate circuit capacity to supply other loads
- ⚠️ These loads are likely to be limited in number due to the reduced space availability in the garage

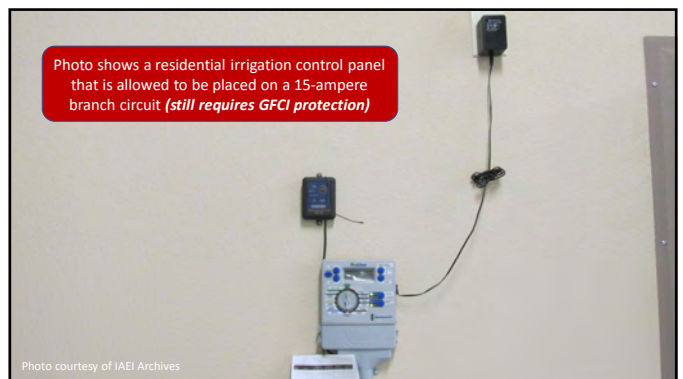
Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, David Humphrey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

174



175



176

**210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection (AFCI)**

Reformatted for clarity making it easier to understand requirements

⚠️ The **10-ampere branch circuit** was added to the branch circuit sizes allowed for these locations, and subdivisions were renamed

- ✎ (A) **Means of Protection:** Now lists the protection methods available
- ✎ (B) **Dwelling Units:** Includes the list of areas of the dwelling unit
- ✎ (C) **Dormitory Units:** Specific requirements for dormitory units
- ✎ (D) **Other Occupancies:** Includes expanded areas for AFCI protection
- ✎ (E) **Branch Circuit Wiring Extensions, Modifications, or Replacements:** Clarity changes included this cycle

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

177

**210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection (AFCI)**

This section was **reformatted** making it easier to reference and utilize the requirements and a **10-ampere branch circuit added** to allowable branch circuit sizes

**Section was reformatted for easier use:**

- Subdivision (A), Means of Protection
- Subdivision (B), Dwelling Units
- Subdivision (C), Dormitory Units
- Subdivision (D), Other Occupancies
- Subdivision (E), Branch Circuit Wiring Extensions/Modifications/Replacements

**Cut Away AFCI Circuit Breaker**  
Photo courtesy of Eaton

**AFCI System Combination Rated Device**  
Photo courtesy of Eaton

**Dual function AFCI/GFCI Device**  
Photo courtesy of Legrand

178

**210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection (AFCI)**

**(D) Other Occupancies**

**New List Item (3):** Rooms designed exclusively as sleeping rooms in places such as firehouses, rescue squads, police departments, and similar locations are to be protected by one of the methods in 210.12(A)(1) through (A)(6)

- ⚠️ All 120-volt single-phase, 10, 15, and 20-ampere branch circuits supplying devices or outlets for these rooms are now required to be provided with arc-fault circuit-interrupter (AFCI) protection
- ⚠️ These rooms are occupied in much the same way as bedrooms of dwellings or as guest rooms of hotels and motels and should be provided with the same level of safety
- ⚠️ **Note:** Two new subsections were added in 210.12, and many existing subsections were modified for clarity and useability
  - ✎ In some cases, list items replaced long lines of text that detailed locations requiring AFCI protection

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, David Humphrey      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

179

**210.12(D)(3) Other Occupancies (AFCI Protection)**

All 120-volt single-phase, 10, 15, and 20-ampere branch circuits supplying devices or outlets for the following locations required to be provided with arc-fault circuit-interrupter (AFCI) protection

**In sleeping quarters in places such as:**

- firehouses
- ambulance stations
- rescue squads
- police departments
- ranger stations
- and similar locations

Photo courtesy of Bentonville Arkansas Fire Department

180

### 210.17 Guest Rooms and Guest Suites

**Assisted living facilities** were added to the existing list of locations requiring their branch circuits to be installed per the requirements for dwelling units if a permanent means for cooking exists.

- Assisted living facilities were seen as having the same characteristics as a guest room and guest suite, which were addressed in the 2020 NEC
- If it was felt that they should observe the same branch circuit requirements as dwelling units
- The previous locations in this section were placed into a list format for added clarity
- Informational notes were also included for guidance with
  - laundry branch circuits and
  - direction towards the **Life Safety Code** for the definition of an assisted living facility

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

181

### 210.17 Guest Rooms and Guest Suites

**Assisted living facilities** were added to the existing list of locations requiring their branch circuits to be installed per the requirements for dwelling units **if a permanent means for cooking exists**.

Assisted living facilities were seen as having the same characteristics as a guest room and guest suite which were addressed in the 2020 NEC

These locations should observe the **same branch circuit requirements as dwelling units**.

**Assisted Living Center (added in 2023 NEC)**

**Guest Room or Guest Suite (added in 2020 NEC)**

IAEI

182

### 210.17 Guest Rooms and Guest Suites

Some assisted living facilities are very similar to a dwelling unit. When provided with permanent means for cooking, **the branch circuits at these locations are required to be installed the same as for dwelling units**.

IAEI

183

### 210.19 Conductors- Minimum Ampacity and Size

Revised to clarify that the voltage limitation should apply to the circuit, not the conductor insulation rating, and to specify this section applies to branch circuits not exceeding 1000 volts ac or 1500 volts dc

- There was confusion as to if the voltage limitation applied to the circuit or if it applied to the insulation rating of the conductor
- This has been clarified by the action of the code making panel
- Due to the creation of new Article 235, language was added at 210.19 stating that this section applies to **"not more than 1000 volts ac or 1500 volts dc"**
- Article 235 entitled **Branch Circuits, Feeders and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal** is intended to apply to **voltages over 1000 volts ac and 1500-volt dc**

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr.      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

184

### 210.19 Conductors- Minimum Ampacity and Size

Clarifies that **the voltage limitation should apply to the circuit**, not the conductor insulation rating and specifies this applies to branch circuits "not exceeding 1000 volts ac or 1500 volts dc"

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

These conductors in the photos are rated not over 1000 volts ac and would be covered by Article 210

Article 235 will cover voltages that exceed 1000 volts ac or 1500 volts dc.

**Article 235 is entitled**  
**Branch Circuits,**  
**Feeders and Services**  
**Over 1000 Volts ac,**  
**1500 Volts dc, Nominal**

185

### 210.23 Permissible Loads

Permissible Loads, Multiple-Outlet Branch Circuits **10 Ampere Branch Circuits**

- ▲ This change covers permitted and non-permitted use of a 10-ampere branch circuit
- ▲ Installation requirements were necessary for the use of a 10-ampere branch circuit if the installer chose to do so
- ▲ Advantages include lower cost due to smaller conductors with loads such as increased LED lighting installations
- ▲ A **10-ampere branch circuit can supply loads for** lighting outlets, lighting circuits for bathroom and laundry area exhaust fans within dwelling units, and a gas fireplace unit served by an individual branch circuit
- ▲ A **10-ampere branch circuit cannot supply loads for** receptacle outlets, fixed appliances (except as permitted for individual branch circuits), garage door openers, or laundry equipment

IAEI

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

186

### 210.23 Permissible Loads

**10 ampere branch circuits** are now addressed in the NEC

**A 10-ampere branch circuit can supply loads for:**

- lighting outlets
- lighting circuits for bathroom and laundry area exhaust fans within dwelling units
- gas fireplace unit served by an individual branch circuit.

**A 10-ampere branch circuit cannot supply loads for:**

- receptacle outlets
- fixed appliances (except as permitted for individual branch circuits)
- garage door openers
- laundry equipment

Installation requirements were necessary for the use of 10-ampere branch circuits if the installer chose to do so

**Note:** A 10-ampere receptacle configuration does not currently exist

187

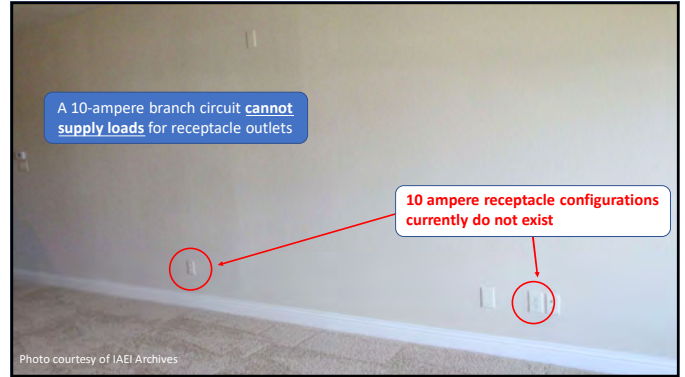
Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

188

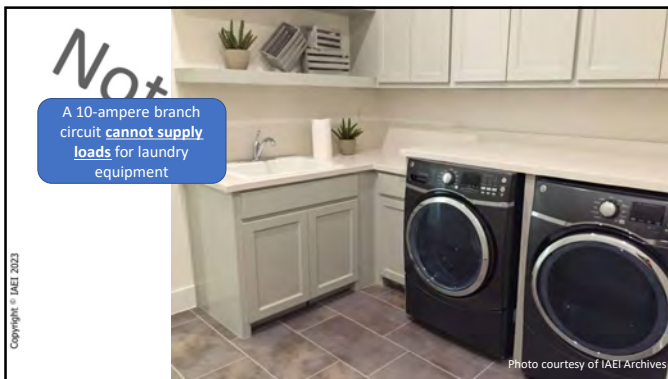




189



190



191



192



**210.52 Dwelling Unit Receptacle Outlets**  
 (C) Countertops and Work Surfaces  
 (2) Island and Peninsular Countertops and Work Surfaces

The requirement for receptacles serving the countertop or work surface of an island or peninsula has been **made optional**, but guidance for their location has been maintained when they are provided.

- ▲ Data compiled by the Consumer Products Safety Commission (CPSC) document 45 reports of burns or other injuries between January 1991 and 2020
- ▲ An estimated 9,700 burns or other injuries were treated in U.S. hospital emergency rooms
- ▲ Most injuries were the result of hot contents being spilled from countertop cooking appliances on children who pulled the appliance cord

CMP-2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

193

**210.52 Dwelling Unit Receptacle Outlets**  
 (C) Countertops and Work Surfaces  
 (2) Island and Peninsular Countertops and Work Surfaces

- ▲ In the event a receptacle outlet is not provided, the electrical contractor must provide a method to the island or peninsula for the future addition of a receptacle outlet
- ▲ Some examples may include:
  - ↳ NM or UF cable in a box with cover
  - ↳ Unfinished basement access to below the island or peninsula

CMP-2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

194

**210.52(C) Islands and Peninsular Receptacles- Dwelling Units**

Receptacle outlets shall be installed **on or above** the countertops

Not permitted face-up in work surface or countertop [405.5(G)(1)]

Receptacle outlet assemblies **listed for the application** shall be permitted to be installed in countertops and work surface

Receptacle outlet **no longer allowed** to be installed below the countertop

Copyright © IAEI 2023

195

**NEC History of Countertop Receptacle Placement**

Before 1990 there was **no guidance or requirement** for receptacle placement for kitchen island and peninsular locations

This proposal to NFPA shows **IAEI was opposed to the receptacles being installed below countertops** due to possible accidents that are now well documented.

**Note:** Jim Carpenter was a previous IAEI International Office CEO serving on CMP-2

2-222-(210-52(c)): Reject  
 SUBMITTER: Marlene Avigliano, IAEI  
 RECOMMENDATION: (Add) Receptacles required to service peninsular and island countertops shall not be located below the level of the countertop.  
 SUBSTANTIATION: Electrical cords from kitchen appliances extending over the end of a countertop expose children to a hazardous condition. Children pulling on a cord can pull hot coffee pots, skillets, etc., over the counter edge and onto themselves.  
 PANEL ACTION: Reject.  
 PANEL STATEMENT: Too restrictive. Incomplete technical substantiation to support the proposed change.  
 VOTE ON PANEL ACTION:  
 AFFIRMATIVE: 11  
 NEGATIVE: Carpenter  
 EXPLANATION OF VOTE:  
 CARPENTER: Many manufacturers of kitchen appliances have included warnings on their products or in their literature concerning the hazards of placing an appliance too close to the counter edge letting the cord extend over the counter edge because of the hazard described in this proposal. Permitting receptacles below the level of the countertop promotes the misuse of these appliances.

Copyright © IAEI 2023

196



197



198



199

**210.52(C) Island and Peninsular Countertops and Work Surfaces**

Receptacles serving the countertop or work surface of an island or peninsula are **optional**, but guidance for their location has been maintained when they are provided

An estimated 9,700 burns or other injuries were treated in U.S. hospital emergency rooms from Jan. 1991-2020

Children pull cords and appliances fall from kitchen countertops

Copyright © IAEI 2023

200

### 210.52(C) Island and Peninsular Countertops and Work Surfaces

Receptacles serving the countertop or work surface of an island or peninsula are **optional**, but guidance for their location has been maintained when they are provided

**If a receptacle outlet is not provided, a method must be made available for future addition**

**Note:** Below are two options to meet this requirement (other options may be acceptable to the AHJ)

201

### 210.52(C) Island and Peninsular Countertops and Work Surfaces

Receptacles serving the countertop or work surface of an island or peninsula are **optional**, but guidance for their location has been maintained when they are provided

**If a receptacle outlet is not provided, a method must be made available for future addition**

**Note:** Below are two options to meet this requirement (other options may be acceptable to the AHJ)

202

### 210.52 Dwelling Unit Receptacle Outlets

#### (G) Basements, Garages, and Accessory Buildings

It has been clarified that the receptacle provided for premises security systems does not meet the receptacle requirements of 210.52(G)

- ⚠ This will ensure that the required receptacle(s) for the basement, garage, or accessory building is provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection
- ⚠ Confusion has arisen in the field concerning a receptacle that serves the premises security system that is not required to have GFCI protection also being used to meet the receptacle outlet required by 210.52(G)
- ⚠ This should reduce misunderstanding between installers and the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) about the requirements for a GFCI receptacle outlet in the above locations that might also contain a premises security system

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

203

### 210.52(G) Basements, Garages, and Accessory Buildings

GFCI protected if receptacle is:

- 125-volt through 250-volt
- supplied by a single-phase branch circuit
- branch circuit rated 150 volts or less to ground

Goal: Reduce arguments between the inspector and the installer

204

### 210.62 Show Windows

This change clarified the intent of the receptacle outlets is for **each show window location**.

- There had been confusion by electrical professionals as to how the previous Code language was to be applied during electrical installations.
- New language makes this requirement easier to understand for both the installer and the inspection authority (AHJ).

This change **was not included** in the IAEI Analysis of Changes Book.

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

205

### 210.62 Show Windows

Requires receptacle outlets rated 15- or 20-amperes (125-volt, single phase)

Installed within 18 inches of the top of each window. No point along top of window farther than 6 feet from receptacle outlet.

Helps with installation and enforcement by clarifying requirements.

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

206

### 210.70 Lighting Outlets Required

**Laundry areas** have been added to the existing list of locations in 210.70(A)(1), requiring a listed wall-mounted control device to be installed for the lighting outlet.

- Prohibits the switch or wall-mounted control device from **relying solely on a battery** unless provided with a **means to energize lighting outlets upon failure**.
- This requirement only applies to dwelling unit locations in the following locations:
  - every habitable room
  - kitchen
  - laundry area and
  - bathroom
- It should be noted that a wall-mounted control device controlling a receptacle(s) cannot be installed instead of a lighting outlet(s) in kitchens, laundry areas, and bathrooms.

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

207

### 210.70 Lighting Outlets Required

**Laundry areas** have been added to the existing list of locations in 210.70(A)(1), requiring a **listed wall-mounted control device** to be installed for the lighting outlet.

Only applies to **dwelling unit** locations in the following locations:

- every habitable room
- kitchen
- laundry area and
- bathroom

Note: A wall-mounted control device controlling a receptacle(s) cannot be installed instead of a lighting outlet(s) in kitchens, laundry areas, and bathrooms.

Note: Laundry circuit to serve laundry area receptacles only.

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

208





209



210

### 215.15 Barriers

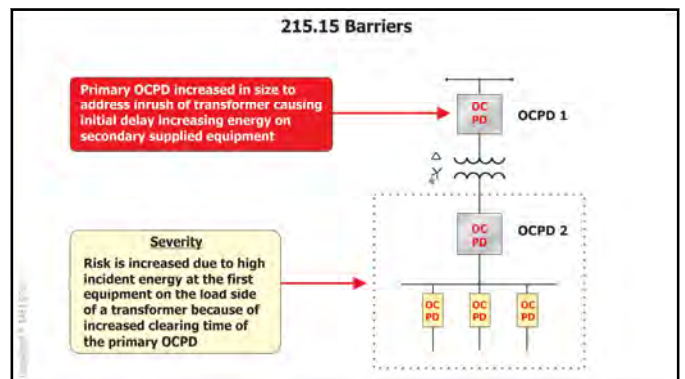
When feeder taps or transformer secondary conductors supply panelboards, switchboards, switchgear, or motor control centers, there must be barriers installed at load terminations when such terminations remain energized when the disconnect for the taps (or transformer secondary conductors) is in the off (open) position

- ⚠ When feeder taps or transformer secondary wiring feed a panelboard, for example, the line terminal lugs to a main breaker for the panelboard would remain energized even when the main breaker is turned off
- ⚠ Would add safety to the installation by requiring covers or barriers over the line terminals to the main breaker
- ⚠ Will provide additional safety for electrical workers

CMP- 10, Doug Smith NFPA LINK iaei.org

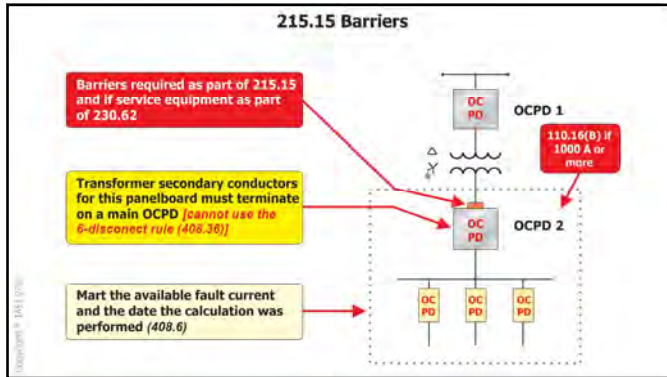
Copyright © IAEI 2023

211

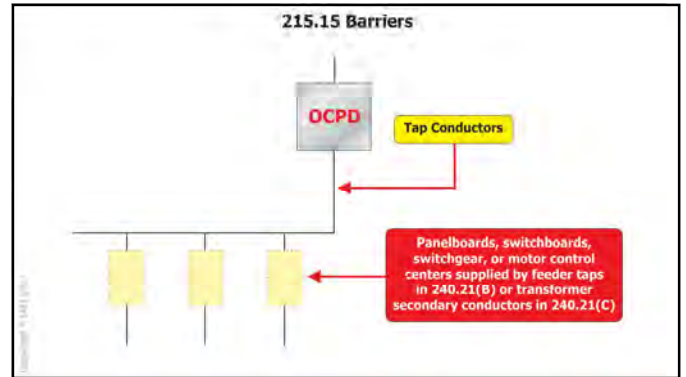


212

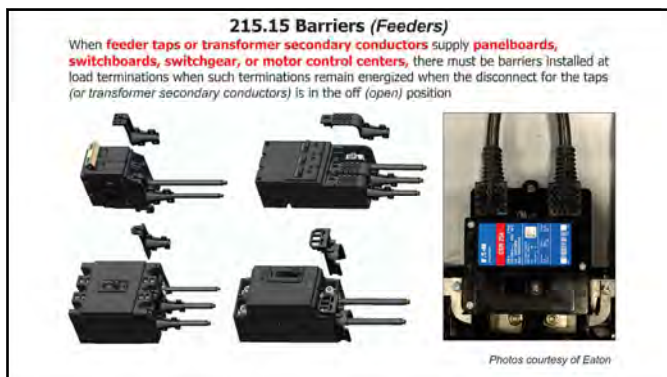




213



214



215

### 215.18 Surge Protection

**IAEI**

New Section requires **Type 1 or 2 SPDs** when a service or feeder supplies a dwelling unit, dormitory unit, guest rooms of hotels and motels, and sleeping rooms/areas of nursing homes and limited-care facilities

- ⚠ Voltage surges can damage important sensitive equipment, such as smoke alarms, AFCIs, and GFCIs
- ⚠ These devices are very important in areas where people sleep
- ⚠ Rules have been expanded to ensure that SPDs are also required for feeders supplying other occupancies or areas used for sleeping purposes
- ⚠ Requirements specify SPD's must have a nominal discharge rating not less than 10kA
- ⚠ Note new requirements located for SPDs at 225.42 and 230.67

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, Doug Smith NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

216



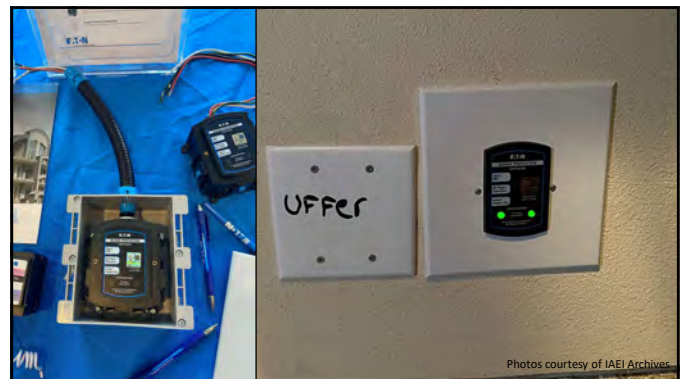
217



218



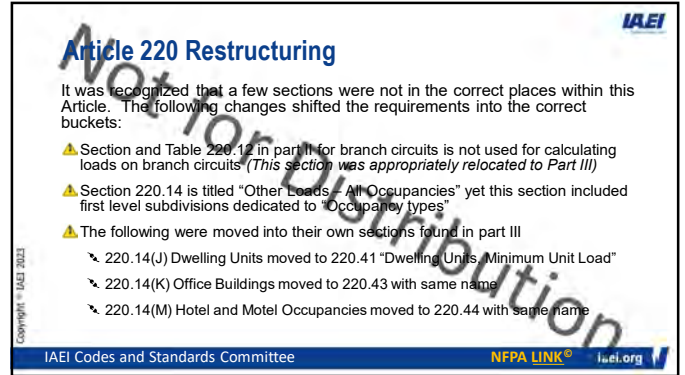
219



220



221



222



223



224

**220.5 Calculations**

**(C) Floor Areas**

Areas such as **garages, or unfinished areas that can be adaptable for future use as a habitable room or occupiable space** are no longer excluded from the calculated floor area of the building, dwelling unit or other area

- ▲ A new subsection (C) was added to Section 220.5(C) entitled "Floor Areas"
- ▲ The previous text **"not adaptable for future use"** was considered subjective and reworded for clarity
- ▲ Garages and other spaces often are used as ancillary space to the habitable portions of the dwelling
- ▲ These spaces will now be included in dwelling, building, or other space square foot calculation

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, David Humphrey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

225

**220.5(C) Floor Areas (Calculations)**

Areas such as **garages, or unused or unfinished areas that can be adaptable for use as a habitable room or occupiable space** are no longer excluded from the calculated floor area of the building, dwelling unit or other area

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Orange shaded area now included with green shaded area in electrical load calculation

226



227

**220.57 Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE) Load**

New Section 220.57 has been added to specify load calculations for Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE)

- ▲ Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE) is becoming more and more prevalent
- ▲ Charging infrastructure is necessary and there was a need for the NEC to offer some direction as to load calculation requirements
- ▲ This language specifies the use of **7200 volt-amperes or the VA rating from the nameplate of the equipment**, whichever is the larger of the two
- ▲ A 7200 volt-ampere (VA) minimum requirement was chosen and is based on a 30 ampere, 240-volt, single-phase circuit

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

228







## 220.110 Receptacle Loads

**IAEI**

New demand factors for receptacles added to Part VI, Health Care Facilities, for Category 1, 2, 3, and 4 patient care spaces

- ▲ **Table 220.110(1)** Demand Factors for Receptacles Supplied by General-Purpose Branch Circuits in **Category 1 and Category 2** Patient Care Spaces
- ▲ **Table 220.110(2)** Demand Factors for Receptacles Supplied by General-Purpose Branch Circuits in **Category 3 and Category 4** Patient Care Spaces
- ▲ The Correlating Committee and the Standards Council determined that CMP-2 has responsibility for occupancy-based load calculations and demand factors (*Note: CC gave purview of this requirement to CMP-15 at CC Meeting*)
- ▲ The focus was concerning the large number of receptacles required in Category 1 and Category 2 patient care spaces
- ▲ New tables were developed, which included demand factor values to apply to receptacles used in a health care facility

Copyright © IAEI 2013

CMP-2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

233



Change driven by increased number of required receptacles in a hospital. Section 6.2 of NFPA 99 was revised increasing the number of receptacles required in operating rooms. NFPA 70 517.19(C) requires operating rooms to be provided with a minimum of 36 receptacles.

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

234



235



236



237

**IAEI**

## 220.120 Receptacle Loads

Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities

- ⚠ Requirements of Section 555.6 have been **relocated** to Part VII 220.120
- ⚠ This will not change the requirements for load calculations or demand factors
- ⚠ Article 220 entitled *Branch Circuit, Feeder, and Service Load Calculations*, is the logical place for users of the Code to find information concerning these calculations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, David Humphrey NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

238



239

Article 225  
Outside Branch-Circuits and  
Feeders

Copyright © IAEI 2023

240

**Sections 225.5 and 225.7**

Sections 225.5, *Size of Conductors 1000 Volts, Nominal, or Less*, and 225.7, *Lighting Equipment Installed Outdoors*, were deleted

- Section 225.5 was redundant since such requirements can be found in Articles 215 and 220
- Section 225.7 was also redundant since such requirements can be found in Articles 210 and 220

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, Doug Smith      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

241

**225.41 Emergency Disconnects**

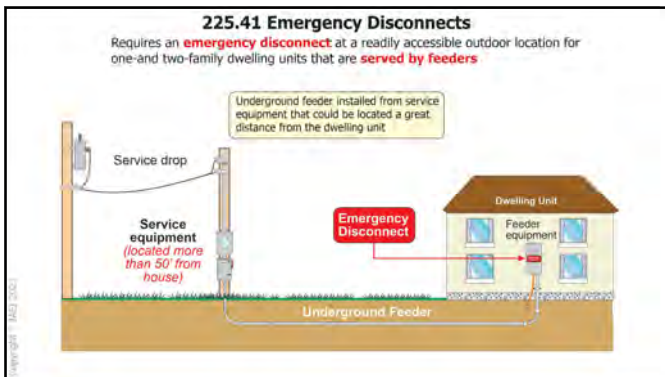
New requirements for an emergency disconnect at a readily accessible outdoor location for one-and two-family dwelling units that are served by feeders

- One-and two-family dwelling unit are not always fed by a service but instead by an outdoor feeder
- This ensures that all new one-and two-family dwelling units are provided with an emergency disconnect located at a **readily accessible outdoor location** on or **within sight of the dwelling unit** (see definition of *Within Sight* in Article 100)
- This disconnect to be marked as **"EMERGENCY DISCONNECT"**
- Plaque, or directory must also be provided adjacent to the emergency disconnect identifying the location(s) of any other energy source disconnect on the premises
- The disconnect must be on or within sight of the dwelling unit

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, Doug Smith      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

242



243

**Article 230 Services**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

244

**230.62 Service Equipment- Enclosed or Guarded (C) Barriers**

Clarifies the requirements for barrier installation in service equipment **when the service disconnect is in the open position**

- ▲ Installed in such a way that no uninsulated, ungrounded busbars or terminals are exposed to inadvertent contact while load terminations are being serviced when the service disconnect is in the open position.
- ▲ Main point of the barrier requirement is to provide insulation to busbars or terminals while load terminations are being serviced.
- ▲ Barriers have proven to increase safety for electrical professionals working on service equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
CMP- 10, Doug Smith NFPA LINK® iaei.org


245

**230.62(C) Barriers**

Clarifies the requirements for barrier installation in service equipment.

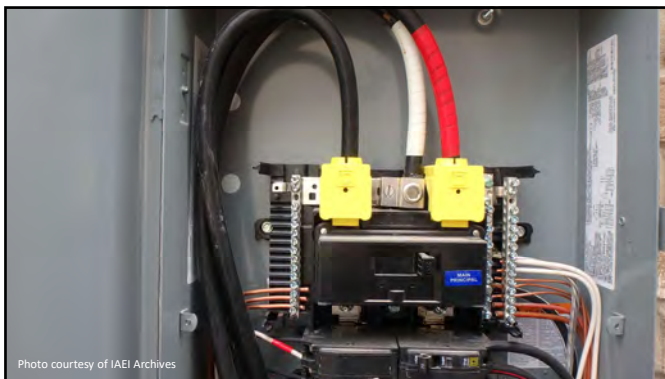
**Ensure no** uninsulated, ungrounded busbars or terminals are exposed to **inadvertent contact** while load terminations are being serviced when the service disconnect is in the open position

**Barrier requirement** is to provide insulation to busbars or terminals while load terminations are being serviced



Copyright © IAEI 2023

246



247

**230.67 Surge Protection (A) Surge-Protective Device**

Existing term “dwelling units” changed to “the following occupancies” and added a list of additional locations that now require protection by a surge-protective device (SPD)

- ▲ Service equipment can, at times, be subjected to surges that inflict damage on systems designed to provide life safety
- ▲ Recognized industry authorities such as NEMA, IEEE, and UL, have collected data showing surges cause significant damage
- ▲ Electronic life-saving equipment, such as fire alarm systems, GFCIs, AFCIs, and smoke alarms, could be rendered inoperable when a surge occurs. *(Many times, this damage is undetected by the owner)*

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

248



## 230.67 Surge Protection (cont.)

### (A) Surge-Protective Device (cont.)

Existing term "dwelling units" changed to "the following occupancies" and added a list of additional locations that now require protection by a surge-protective device (SPD)

Additional occupancies added include:

- dormitory units,
- guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels, and
- areas of nursing homes and limited-care facilities used exclusively as patient sleeping rooms

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK iaei.org

249

## 230.67(A) Surge-Protective Devices

Changed the existing term "dwelling units" to "the following occupancies" and added a list of additional locations that now require protection by a surge-protective device (SPD)

**Additional occupancies now include:**

- dormitory units
- guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels
- areas of nursing homes and limited-care facilities used exclusively as patient sleeping rooms

Electronic life-saving equipment such as fire alarm systems, GFCIs, AFCIs, and smoke alarms, could be rendered inoperable when a surge occurs  
*(Many times, this damage is undetected by the owner)*



Photo courtesy of Eaton



Photo courtesy of Siemens

250

## 230.71 Maximum Number of Disconnects

### (B) Two to Six Service Disconnecting Means

Transfer switches were added to clarify that they must be listed for and used as service equipment

Sections 230.71(B)(4) and (6) increase the ease of usability for the Code by adding these requirements to the existing list items

Motor control centers used as service equipment were also added with requirements limiting a maximum of two service disconnects per single motor control center and barriers required between each unit or compartment containing a service disconnect

Barrier provisions were added for additional types of service equipment to improve safety by reducing the likelihood of a person or maintenance equipment coming in contact with energized parts while servicing load terminations

Each service disconnect is to be provided in a separate compartment

CMP- 10, Doug Smith NFPA LINK iaei.org

251

## 230.71(B) Two to Six Service Disconnecting Means

Transfer switches were added to clarify that they must be listed for and used as service equipment

Transfer switch where each disconnect located in a separate compartment

Motor control centers used as service equipment limiting to a maximum of two service disconnects per single motor control center  
**Barriers required** between each unit or compartment containing a service disconnect

Provides additional safety for electrical professionals



Photo courtesy of Eaton



Barriers required

252



**230.71 Maximum Number of Disconnects**  
**(B) Two to Six Service Disconnecting Means**

An exception was added to clarify that existing service equipment is not required to comply with the provisions of 230.71(B) when existing equipment was installed in compliance with previous editions of the NEC, allowing for up to six service disconnects in a single enclosure or compartment

- ▲ Will aid in the enforcement of service equipment disconnecting means installed before this edition of the Code
- ▲ Concern was expressed when an installer wanted to add a disconnect to existing service equipment that allowed for more than one disconnect means
- ▲ Could be interpreted that the entire service equipment was required to be replaced
- ▲ New exception clarifies that existing service equipment in compliance with previous editions of the NEC is not required to be upgraded

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
 CMP-10, Doug Smith      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

253

**230.71(B) Two to Six Service Disconnecting Means**  
 Existing service equipment is **not required to comply** with the provisions of 230.71(B)

When **existing equipment was installed in compliance with previous editions of the NEC** allowing for up to six service disconnects in a single enclosure or compartment

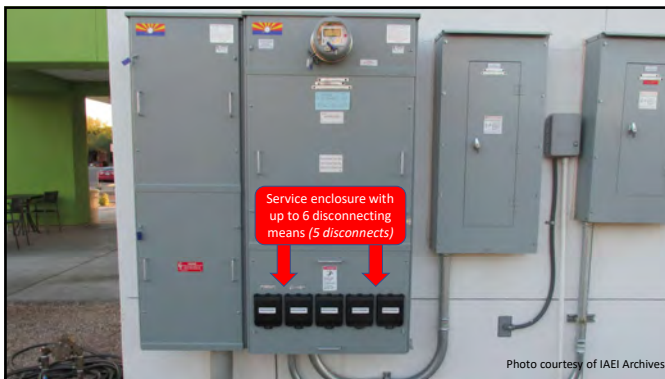
Existing service equipment with additional disconnecting means available (**no need to upgrade equipment**)

Will aid in the enforcement of service equipment disconnecting means

Adding one more disconnect keeps me within six movements of the hand to disconnect service

Copyright © IAEI 2023

254



255

**230.85 Emergency Disconnects**

Section 230.85 was reorganized into sub-sections with titles to better align with the formatting requirements of the NEC Style Manual

- ▲ Clarifies that meter disconnects integral to meter mounting equipment or other listed disconnects used as the emergency disconnect cannot be marked as "suitable ONLY for use as service equipment"
- ▲ This requirement does not apply to the regular service disconnect(s) for the one- and two-family dwelling (see 230.85(B))
- ▲ Section 230.85(C) was added to clarify that all of 230.85 applies to new (or replaced) service equipment
- ▲ An exception was added to clarify that when only meter sockets, service conductors, service raceways, and/or fittings are replaced, 230.85 does not apply
- ▲ Section 230.85(D) specifies that a plaque or directory be provided adjacent to the emergency disconnect identifying the location(s) of any other energy source disconnect on the premises

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
 CMP-10, Doug Smith      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

256

**230.85 Emergency Disconnects (1 and 2 Family Dwelling Units)**

Section was **reorganized into subdivisions with titles** to better align with the formatting requirements of the *NEC Style Manual*

Applies to **new (or replaced) service equipment**  
**Does not apply** when only meter sockets, service conductors, service raceways, and/or fittings are replaced

Requires a **plaque or directory** adjacent to the emergency disconnect identifying the location(s) of any **other energy source disconnect** on the premises

**The layout of 230.85:**

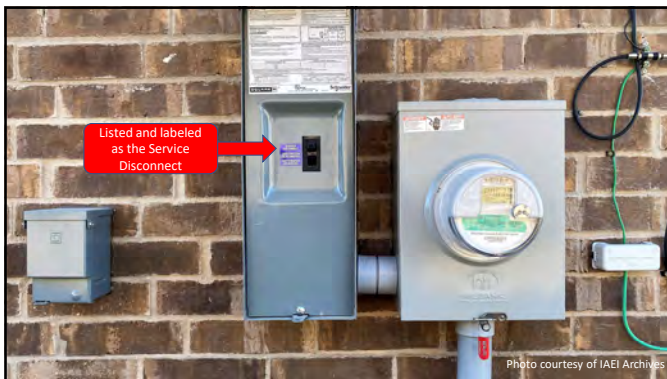
- General
- Location
- Rating
- Grouping
- Disconnects
- Replacement
- Location of Other Isolation Disconnects
- Marking

Outdoor emergency service disconnecting means

257



258



259

Article 235  
 Branch Circuits, Feeders, and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

Not for Distribution

Copyright © IAEI 2023

260

**Article 235 Branch Circuits, Feeders and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal** IAEI

New Article 235, entitled *Branch Circuits, Feeders and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal* has been created to govern **medium voltage branch circuits**

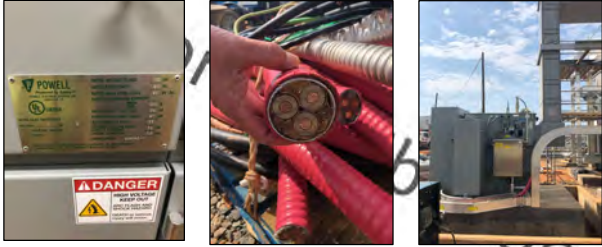
- ⚠ This new article will become the **placeholder** for information pertaining to medium voltage branch circuits, feeders and services
- ⚠ Previously, information for medium voltage branch circuits was located throughout the *NEC*
- ⚠ Requirements from Article 210 were reviewed for applicability to medium voltage branch circuits
- ⚠ Information from Article 210 that was applicable to these circuits have been copied and moved to this article
- ⚠ Some requirements were modified as necessary without making technical changes or modifying the existing requirement
- ⚠ **Note:** This was originally under the purview of CMP-2 but may be assigned to CMP-10 at the August 2022 Correlating Committee meeting

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 2, Joseph Wages, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

261

**Article 235 Branch Circuits Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc** IAEI



Copyright © IAEI 2023

Photos courtesy of Chris Faucette, CMP-17

i.ei.org

262



263

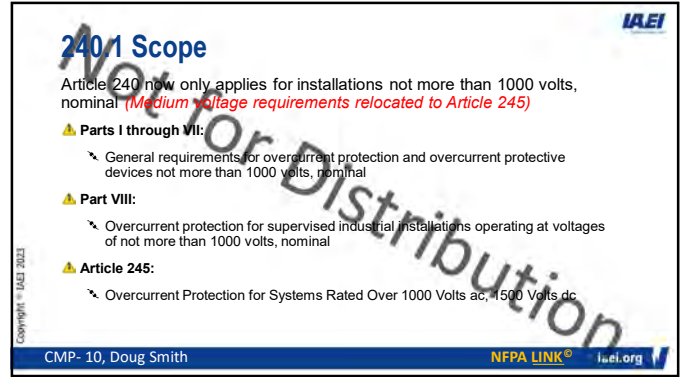


264

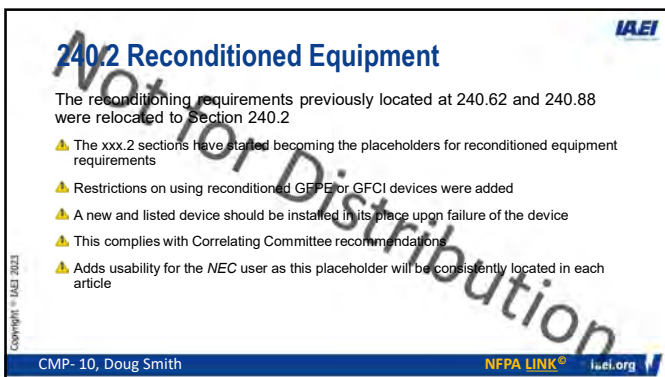




265



266



267



268

**240.4 Protection of Conductors**

**(B) Overcurrent Devices Rated 800 Amperes or Less**

Adjustable trip overcurrent protective devices are permitted to have an ampacity value set that does not exceed the next higher standard overcurrent protection device ampacity value [per Table 240.6(A)] above the ampacity of the conductors being protected.

- Adjustable trip overcurrent devices are being used increasingly throughout the country
- Requirements of 240.4(B)(1), 240.4(B)(2), and 240.4(B)(3) still apply
- Adjustable trip overcurrent protective device must be provided with restricted access per 240.6(C)
- Adds flexibility for designers and electrical professionals when choosing overcurrent protection devices for electrical systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, Doug Smith      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org


269

**240.4(B) Overcurrent Devices Rated 800 Amperes or Less**

Adjustable trip overcurrent protective devices (OCPD) are **permitted to have an ampacity value** set that **does not exceed** the next higher standard OCPD device ampacity value [per Table 240.6(A)] above the ampacity of the conductors being protected.

Devices are **permitted to be adjusted** according to **240.4(B)**

Adjustable trip overcurrent protective device must be provided with **restricted access** per **240.6(C)**



Circuit breaker photos courtesy of Chad Kennedy, Schneider Electric

Photo courtesy of Jim Lefevre, Multi Craft Contracting

Copyright © IAEI 2023

270

**240.4 Protection of Conductors**

**(D) Small Conductors**

**(3) 14 AWG Copper-Clad Aluminum**

New added list item to the list of permitted small conductors

- Has been added to align with other small conductors permitted per 240.4(D)
- Overcurrent protection** device rating for the conductors **cannot exceed 10 amperes**, and the **maximum continuous load** on the circuit **cannot exceed 8 amperes**
- Branch-circuit-rated breakers or fuses that the conductors connect to **must be listed and marked for use** with such conductors
- Offers the electrical industry more flexibility when choosing types of conductors to install for certain circuits

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, David Williams      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

271

**240.4(D)(3) 14 AWG Copper-Clad Aluminum**

14 AWG copper-clad aluminum was added to the list of permitted small conductors

Branch-circuit-rated breakers or fuses that the conductors connect to **must be listed and marked** for use with such conductors



Photos courtesy of COPPERWELD Bimetals, LLC.

Overcurrent protection device rating for the conductors **cannot exceed 10 amperes**, and the maximum continuous load on the circuit **cannot exceed 8 amperes**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

272



## 240.6 Standard Ampere Ratings

### (A) Fuses and Fixed-Trip Circuit Breakers

Table 240.6(A) Standard Ampere Ratings, **10 ampere was added** to the list of standard ratings of overcurrent protection devices

- ▲ 10 ampere rated fuses and circuit breakers are available and being used in the field
- ▲ Clarifies that such devices are permitted to be used
- ▲ Table listing of ampere ratings is more user friendly than the lines of text that appeared in previous editions of the *NEC*
- ▲ Offers more flexibility to the electrical industry when choosing overcurrent protection devices for certain circuits

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, David Williams NFPA LINK® iaei.org

273

### Table 240.6(A) Standard Ampere Rating

10 ampere was added to the list of standard ratings of overcurrent protection devices.

Table type format showing the ampere ratings for fuses and circuit breakers (10 ampere has been added)

<b>10</b>	15	20	25	30
35	40	45	50	70
60	80	90	100	125
110	150	175	200	250
225	300	350	400	500
450	600	700	800	1200
1000	1600	2000	2500	4000
3000	5000	6000		

These 10- ampere fuses and circuit breakers are available and being used in the field

Table listing is more user friendly

Copyright © IAEI 2023

274

## 240.6 Standard Ampere Ratings

### (D) Remotely Accessible Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers

Allows for remote access to adjustable-trip circuit breakers through a direct local nonnetworked interface or a networked interface connection

- ▲ Due to SMART devices, provisions were needed to reduce likelihood of impact from cybersecurity attached for safety concerns
- ▲ When the connection is through a networked interface:
  - ✦ the circuit breaker and associated software must be evaluated for cybersecurity
  - ✦ **OR** a cybersecurity assessment of the network is required to be completed, and documentation of such assessment must be provided to those authorized to inspect, operate, and maintain the system

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, David Williams NFPA LINK® iaei.org



275

### 240.6(D) Remotely Accessible Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers

Allows for remote access to adjustable-trip circuit breakers through a direct local nonnetworked interface or a networked interface connection

**Enhances protection** of remotely accessible adjustable-trip circuit breakers **from cyberattacks**

Can remotely access circuit breakers via wifi allowing user to access valuable information without making a trip to the electrical room or panelboard location

Photos courtesy of Eaton

Copyright © IAEI 2023

276

## 240.7 Listing Requirements

**New listing requirement** requires branch-circuit overcurrent protective devices, relays, and circuit breakers that provide ground-fault protection of equipment (GFPE) and ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) devices **must be listed**

- Added to eliminate any confusion about whether or not such devices need to be listed
- Provides jurisdictions a tool to require the listing of equipment as a basis to approve such devices
- Only applies to overcurrent protective devices no more than 1000 Volts

CMP- 10, David Williams | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

277

Branch-circuit **overcurrent protective devices, relays, and circuit breakers** that provide ground-fault protection of equipment (GFPE) and ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) devices **must be listed**

Type GHCGFEP cable-in/cable-out 30 mA industrial ground-fault circuit protector

Device equipped with Ground Fault Protection

Photos courtesy of Eaton

278

## 240.11 Selective Coordination

Clarifies that whenever the NEC requires a feeder overcurrent protective device to be selectively coordinated with a service overcurrent protective device, then **ALL feeder overcurrent devices** connected to such service **must be selectively coordinated** with the service overcurrent device

- Closes any loopholes or gaps in the Code
- Previously it could be interpreted that only certain feeder overcurrent protective devices needed to be included in the coordination study
- All feeder overcurrent protective devices need to be included when such devices are fed by the same service overcurrent protective device in order to obtain proper selectivity
- Ensures the service overcurrent protective device is less likely to open since all feeder overcurrent protective devices are included in the coordination study

CMP- 10, David Williams | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

279

## 240.11 Selective Coordination

When a feeder overcurrent protective device to be selectively coordinated with a service overcurrent protective device, **ALL feeder overcurrent devices connected to the service** must be selectively coordinated with the service overcurrent device

All feeder overcurrent protective devices need to be included when such devices are fed by the same service overcurrent protective device in order to obtain **proper selectivity**

Localization of overcurrent conditions to **restrict outages to the equipment affected**

Service equipment

Feeder(s)

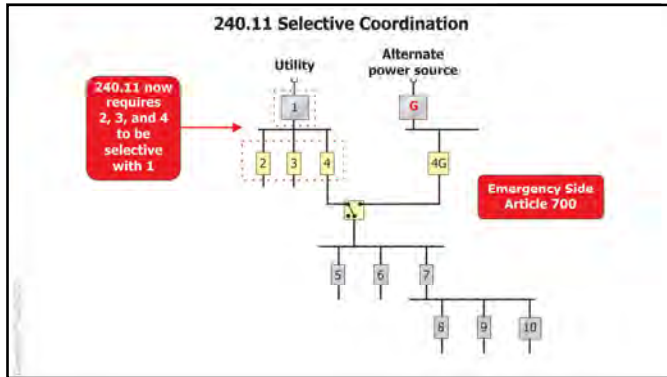
Feeder

Feeder(s)

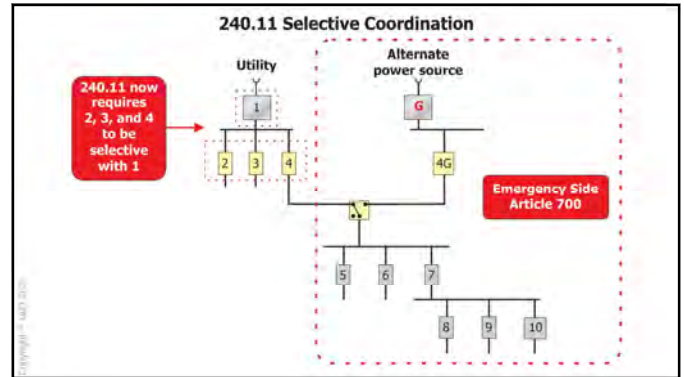
Branch circuit panelboards

Equipment

280



281



282

### 240.11 Selective Coordination (cont.)

Whenever the NEC requires a feeder overcurrent protective device to be selectively coordinated with a service overcurrent protective device, the following sections apply:

NEC Section	System
620.62	Elevators ( <i>multiple elevators on single feeder</i> )
645.27	Critical operations data systems
695.3(C)(3)	Multi-building campus-style complexes ( <i>fire pumps</i> )
700.32	Emergency systems
701.27	Legally required standby systems
708.54	Critical operations power systems

Thomas Domitrovich, Contributor

283

### 240.16 Interrupting Ratings

Now specifies that the minimum interrupting rating of a branch-circuit overcurrent protective device is 5,000 amperes


- Previously found in the definition of Overcurrent Protective Device (*Branch-Circuit Overcurrent Protective Device*)
- NEC Style Manual specifies that definitions are not permitted to contain requirements or recommendations
- The 5,000-ampere interrupting rating requirement was moved from the definition to this section

CMP- 10, David Williams

284

### 240.16 Interrupting Rating

Specifies that the **minimum interrupting rating** of a branch-circuit overcurrent protective device is **5,000 amperes**



Square D circuit breaker rated at 10,000 amperes

**Note:** Always review the manufacturers instructions!

Overcurrent devices not marked with and interrupting rating have a minimum interrupting rating of 5000 amperes

Copyright © IAEI 2023

285

### 240.24 Location in or on Premises

**(A) Accessibility**

Revision replaces the words "similar enclosures" in the existing exception due to it being vague and not addressing many legitimate applications

- ▲ Addresses a couple of issues that have caused enforcement problems due to the words "similar enclosures"
- ▲ Consider the NEMA 4X stainless steel panel with bolted covers are designed with a series of bolts around the perimeter
- ▲ This is not an industrial control panel, nor is it a "similar enclosure"
- ▲ Revised exception clarifies that any readily accessible requirements that would normally apply to the overcurrent devices must still be applied to the enclosure itself
- ▲ This includes any enclosed device(s) with the door or cover in the open position

Fred Hartwell, IAEI Contributor

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

286

### 240.24(A) Accessibility- Exception

Replaced the words "similar enclosures" in the existing exception due to the words being vague and in some cases causing issues for the enforcement community

This includes any enclosed device(s) with the door or cover in the open position



Stainless steel NEMA 4X panelboard, screwdriver required to open.

1. Specifically recognizes "enclosures designed for hazardous (classified) locations or ... adverse environmental conditions."
2. Clarifies that both the door and the enclosed OCPDs (judged with the door open) must conform to all accessibility provisions in 240.24(A). Example: 6 ft 7 in. usual max. height to CB

Above drawing is courtesy of Fred Hartwell

Copyright © IAEI 2023

287

### 240.24 Location in or on Premises

**(E) Not Located in Bathrooms**

Overcurrent protective devices (other than supplementary overcurrent devices) are no longer allowed in ANY bathroom or in showering facilities or locker rooms having showering facilities

- ▲ Addresses the difficulty of accessing a bathroom when such bathroom is occupied
- ▲ No practical reason to continue with the permissive requirement of having overcurrent protective devices in bathrooms of any occupancy
- ▲ Overcurrent protective devices are also no longer allowed in showering facilities or locker rooms having showering facilities since such areas present similar hazards as a bathroom
- ▲ This will likely have the largest effect on facilities or occupancies having limited square footage
- ▲ Office buildings are occupancies where electrical panels can be found in bathrooms

CMP- 10, David Williams

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

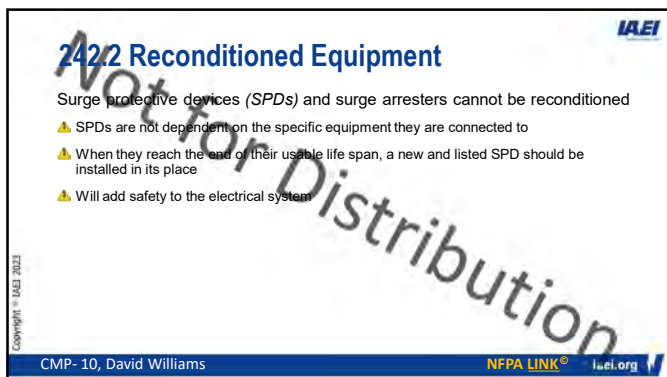
288



289



290



291




292



### 242.9 Indicating

New requirement added requiring all **surge-protective devices (SPD)** to be provided with an **indication notification** to the occupant that the SPD is in working order

- ⚠ Occupants of offices and other occupancies spend a lot of time trying to figure out why equipment is not working that is plugged into an SPD
- ⚠ An indication of some type is needed for the end user to determine if the SPD is working properly
- ⚠ Now addressed by the Code so that building occupants can identify whether an SPD is functioning properly or if such device needs to be replaced




Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, David Williams NFPA LINK® iaei.org

293

### 242.9 Indicating

Surge protective devices (SPDs) to have an indication that the **device is functioning properly**  
(Replace when they have reached the end of their life)



Protection status indication features

Photo courtesy of Eaton Photo courtesy of Siemens

Copyright © IAEI 2023

294

## Article 245

### Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc



Copyright © IAEI 2023

295

## Article 245 Overcurrent Protection

Portions of Articles 215, 225, 230, and 240 dealing with conductors or systems operating at over 1,000 volts relocated to Article 245, Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts AC, 1500 Volts DC

- ⚠ Help to increase the usability of the *NEC* by having requirements for systems operating over 1,000 volts be located in their own articles
- ⚠ Enforcement community has expressed concerns regarding the lack of needed requirements in the *Code*
- ⚠ Industry is experiencing an increasing installation of medium voltage systems by designers and installers

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 10, David Williams NFPA LINK® iaei.org

296

### Article 245- Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts AC, 1500 Volts DC

Portions of Articles 215, 225, 230, and 240 dealing with conductors or systems operating at over 1,000 volts relocated to this article

Help to increase the usability of the NEC  
There is an increase with installation of medium voltage systems by designers and installers



Medium voltage 6" rated fuses  
courtesy of Eaton Business

Helps the enforcement community and other electrical professionals



Photo courtesy of Rob Bowman, Denver Wastewater

Copyright © IAEI 2023

297

## Article 250 Grounding and Bonding

### Not for Distribution



Copyright © IAEI 2023

298

### 250.24 Grounding of Service-Supplied AC Systems

The panel added the word "shall" where necessary to clarify electrical professionals' understanding of installing conductors connected in parallel

- ⚠ Several changes were made to meet the requirements of the *NEC Style Manual*
- ⚠ In the Exception to 250.24(2), "**The system**" was replaced with "**Impedance grounded system**" to clarify the exception helping to correlate with 250.36 and the changes made for that section
- ⚠ Section 250.24(D)(2), *Connected in Parallel*, was relocated after "Conductors" and has been revised to a list format for additional clarity and useability

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake

NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

299

### 250.24 Grounding of Service-Supplied AC Systems



Photo courtesy of Scott Humphrey

Copyright © IAEI 2023

300

**250.24 Grounding of Service-Supplied AC Systems**

**(D) Grounded Conductor Brought to Service Equipment**

**(2) Conductors in Two or More Raceways or Cables Connected in Parallel**

- Clarifies the requirements concerning grounded parallel conductors for service equipment found at:
  - 250.24 Grounding of Service-Supplied AC Systems
  - (D) Grounded Conductor Brought to Service Equipment
- When **paralleled grounded service conductors** in raceways and cables are connected in parallel, the size of the grounded conductor should be based upon the size of the ungrounded conductor in the raceway or cable
- Previous language used the word "installed," which was grammatically incorrect
- The word "connected" has replaced the word "installed" adding clarity and usability to the Code

IAEI Contributor- Paul Dobrowsky      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

301

**250.24 Grounding of Service-Supplied AC Systems**

Clarifies the requirements concerning grounded parallel conductors for service equipment found at:

- (D) Grounded Conductor Brought to Service Equipment**
- (2) Conductors in Two or More Raceways or Cables Connected in Parallel**

When paralleled grounded service conductors in both raceways and cables are **connected in parallel**, the size of the grounded conductor should be based upon the size of the ungrounded conductor in the raceway or cable

The word "connected" has replaced the word "installed" adding clarity and usability to the Code

Copyright © IAEI 2023

302

**250.30 Outdoor Source**

**(C) Outdoor Source**

Remove the word "neutral" from 250.30(C) to be consistent with other locations within the NEC and be consistent with language found at 250.36 and 250.187

- "Neutral" was removed from impedance grounded **neutral** systems because it was removed elsewhere in the code to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*
- Correlates with the new definition found in Article 100 for **Impedance Grounded System**
- When consistency in terminology can be achieved, the Code becomes more user-friendly

CMP- S, Bill Pancake      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

303

**250.30(C) Outdoor Source, Exception (Impedance Grounded System)**

"Neutral" was removed from **impedance grounded neutral** systems and elsewhere in the Code to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*

Correlates with the new definition found in Article 100 for Impedance Grounded System

Grounded **intentionally** from the neutral point **through an impedance device**

Is now **consistent with language** found at 250.36 and 250.187

Copyright © IAEI 2023

304

### 250.36 Impedance Grounded Systems - 480 Volts to 1000 Volts

Removed the words "High" and "Neutral" from the title of Section 250.36, renaming the section to be **Impedance Grounded Systems** - 480 Volts to 1000 Volts

- ▲ New definition for "**impedance grounding conductor**" was also created to replace the phrase "grounded system conductor"
- ▲ Clarifies that the conductor that connects the neutral point to the impedance of an impedance grounded system does not meet the definition of a "grounded conductor" in Article 100
- ▲ Another change was made by deleting the word "Equipment" and replacing it with "Impedance" for the definition of "Impedance Bonding Jumper"

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake NFPA LINK® iaei.org

305

### 250.36 Impedance Grounded System

New definition for "impedance grounding conductor" was created to replace the phrase "grounded system conductor"

Applies to 480 through 1000 volts  
 Impedance grounding conductor to be **fully insulated**  
 Ground detection alarm installed on the system  
 Not smaller than current rating of impedance device (minimum 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum)

Ground detectors  
 Service equipment  
 Grounding electrode conductor  
 Impedance grounding conductor  
 Impedance bonding conductor  
 Equipment grounding conductor  
 Main bonding jumper

306

### 250.36 Impedance Grounded Systems- 480 Volts to 1000 Volts

Photo shows the typical ground detection and alarm system associated with an impedance grounded system

Has visual as well as audible alarm features

Manufactured by Post Grover

Photo courtesy of Rob Bowman

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake NFPA LINK® iaei.org

307

### 250.50 Grounding Electrode System, 250.52(A)(3)(1) Concrete- Encased Electrode, 250.52(B)(3) Not Permitted for Use as Grounding Electrodes

The term "reinforcing steel or rods" was replaced with "rebar"

- ▲ Revision was done in all three sections of the Code for consistency
  - ↳ 250.50 Grounding Electrode System
  - ↳ 250.52(A)(3)(1) Concrete- Encased Electrode
  - ↳ 250.52(B)(3) Not Permitted for Use as Grounding Electrodes
- ▲ Makes it easy to understand and adds consistency in the field and the construction industry (*many use the term "rebar"*)
- ▲ Harmonizes the term to be consistent with the language preferred in 250.68(C)

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake NFPA LINK® iaei.org

308



**Section 250.50, 250.52(A)(3)(1), and 250.52(B)(3)**  
 The term "reinforcing steel or rods" has been replaced with "rebar"  
 Easy to understand and adds consistency with the trades in the construction industry

**Applies to:**  
 250.50 Grounding Electrode System  
 250.52(A)(3)(1) Concrete- Encased Electrode  
 250.52(B)(3) Not Permitted for Use as Grounding Electrodes)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

309

**250.64 Grounding Electrode Conductor Installation (G) Enclosures with Ventilation Openings**

A new requirement now prohibits openings in enclosures intended for ventilation to be used to install the grounding electrode conductor

- ⚠️ Ventilation openings are provided to ensure that adequate cooling air is provided for safe operation of the equipment under normal and abnormal conditions
- ⚠️ Listing of the equipment is predicated on these openings not being obstructed, such as by the installation of raceways or conductors through the opening
- ⚠️ Using one or more of these opening to install conductors such as a grounding electrode conductor block adequate ventilation
- ⚠️ A similar requirement was made for Transformers at 450.10 *Grounding and Bonding* in the 2020 NEC

IAEI Contributor- Chuck Mello      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

310

**250.64(G) Enclosures with Ventilation Openings**  
 Prohibits openings in enclosures intended for ventilation to be used to install the grounding electrode conductor

Ventilation openings are provided to ensure that adequate cooling air is provided for safe operation of the equipment under normal and abnormal conditions

Now **applies to all electrical enclosures** and not just transformers (2020 NEC added 450.10 *Grounding and Bonding*)

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

311

1/2 in. PVC raceway enclosing the grounding electrode conductor (GEC)

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

312



**250.70 Methods of Grounding and Bonding Conductor Connection to Electrodes**

The section has been divided into two new first level subdivisions (A) and (B)

- ▲ The list of methods for connection to grounding electrodes has been eliminated
  - ▶ (A) General
  - ▶ (B) Indoor Communications Systems

IAEI Contributor- Chuck Mello

313

**250.70 Methods of Grounding and Bonding Conductor Connection to Electrodes**

- ▲ It was identified that there are no pipe fittings, pipe plugs or other device that screws into pipe that are suitable or identified for attaching a grounding electrode conductor and the list item has been removed
- ▲ The list item for communications system has been moved to the new list item (B) as a permitted method
- ▲ A new informational note was added to clarify to users that a connector or fitting that is listed as suitable for direct burial is also listed and suitable for concrete encasement
- ▲ See UL 467, *Standard for Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment*, for additional information



IAEI Contributor- Chuck Mello

314

**250.70 Methods of Grounding and Bonding Conductor Connection to Electrodes**

The section has been divided into new subparts (A) and (B) and the **list of methods for connection to grounding electrodes has been eliminated**

New informational note was added to clarify that a connector or fitting that is listed as suitable for direct burial is also listed and suitable for concrete encasement

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

315

**250.94 Bonding for Communications Systems**

**(A) Intersystem Bonding Termination Device**

This now recognizes the Intersystem Bonding Termination Device (IBT) as the location "for" the grounding electrode conductor

- ▲ The words "or to" were removed and replaced with "for" which clarifies that the IBT is the location "for" the grounding electrode conductor
- ▲ Updated language at 250.94(A)(4) a and b helps to clarify this section for the electrical professional
- ▲ Informational Note 1 was returned to the panel by the Correlating Committee to be addressed so it would comply with *NEC Style Manual*
- ▲ The Informational Note was removed as the panel could not find a way to meet the requirements of the *NEC Style Manual*

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake

316

**250.94(A) Intersystem Bonding Termination Device**  
 Recognizes the Intersystem Bonding Termination Device (IBT) is **to be securely mounted** and acts as a location "for" the grounding electrode conductor to terminate

Clarifies this section for the electrical professional  
 Informational Note was removed due to *NEC Style Manual* issues



Copyright © IAEI 2023

317

**250.106 Lightning Protection Systems**

The edition date of the NFPA 780 standard was removed for Informational Note No.1 and updated for Informational Note No. 2

- ⚠ Revisions to 90.5(C) states that the reference is to be the **latest edition of the standard** unless the standard reference includes a date
- ⚠ Edits to the Informational Notes were made for clarity and compliance with the *NEC Style Manual*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

318



319

**250.118 Types of Equipment Grounding Conductors**

This section was reorganized into two first level subdivisions

- ⚠ (A) Permitted:
  - ✎ 250.118(A)(5)(f) and 250.118(A)(6)(f) were added to **require a wire-type equipment grounding conductor or a bonding jumper** in accordance 250.102(E)(2) when flexible metal conduit or liquidtight flexible metal conduit with a stainless-steel core
- ⚠ (B) Not Permitted:
  - ✎ Relocated from 250.121 which prohibits the use of grounding electrode conductors or structural metal frames of building or structures as an equipment grounding conductors

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

320

**IAEI**

### 250.118 Types of Equipment Grounding Conductors (cont.)

(A) Permitted

Recognition of stainless-steel flexible and liquidtight metal conduit and requires a wire-type equipment grounding conductor (EGC)

- ▲ Acceptable wiring method for locations where high resistance to corrosion is encountered
- ▲ The stainless-steel core provides higher resistivity than other metal types used with flexible conduits
- ▲ A separate internal EGC or external bonding jumper is required to be installed to provide an effective ground-fault current path
- ▲ Provides the electrical professional additional options where high resistance to a corrosive environment is required

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

321

**IAEI**

### 250.118(A) Types of Equipment Grounding Conductors

**Stainless-steel flexible conduit** and **liquidtight metal conduit** is a recognized wiring method but require for a wire-type equipment grounding conductor (EGC)

Acceptable wiring method for locations where high resistance to **corrosion** is required

An **internal EGC** or **external bonding jumper** is required to be installed to provide an effective ground-fault current path



Stainless-steel flexible conduit

Photo courtesy of FlexGloxy

Copyright © IAEI 2023

322

**IAEI**

### 250.130 Equipment Grounding Conductor Connections

Replacement of snap switches without an equipment grounding terminal with snap switches with an equipment grounding terminal when the branch circuit does not have an equipment grounding conductor

- ▲ See 250.130(C) for the locations for a snap switch or receptacle to be connected to for their EGC requirements
- ▲ An added informational note provides a link to the 404.9(B) requirements regarding the grounding of snap switches

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

323

**IAEI**

### 250.130 Equipment Grounding Conductor Connections

Snap switches were added to the item (previously only receptacle) that must conform with requirements found at 250.130(C) for their equipment grounding conductor (EGC) connection

Replacement of snap switches **without an equipment grounding terminal** with snap switches with an equipment grounding terminal has been added at 250.130



Single-pole, nongrounding switch

Photo courtesy of Leviton

Equipment grounding conductor (EGC) connection

Equipment grounding conductor (EGC)

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

324

### 250.140 Frames of Ranges and Clothes Dryers

Section 250.140 was revised to include two first level subdivision

- ▲ 250.140(A) is existing text that was relocated from the parent text
- ▲ 250.140(B) was the existing exception that was written into positive text
- ▲ 250.140(B)(5) adds a new list item to address the hazard of having neutral current on the metal normally non-current carrying parts (*objectional current*)
- ▲ Adds copper-clad aluminum as a permitted conductor type

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 5, Bill Pancake NFPA LINK® iaei.org

325

### 250.140(B)(5) Frames of Ranges and Clothes Dryers

Grounded connector is to be **insulated or field covered** within the **supply enclosure** with a listed insulating material to prevent contact of an uninsulated conductor with any normally non-current carrying metal part of the equipment

Provides a safe alternative from having to replace existing 3-wire service entrance cables

**Keeps current from getting on metal parts of equipment**

In this scenario the bare conductor in the panelboard is wrapped with insulating tape

Reference 200.6(A) for marking options such as the use of white tape

Feeder Panelboard 120/240 Volt 1-Phase 3-Wire or 208Y/120 Volt 3-phase 4-wire

3-wire receptacle and cord cap

Range

Bare conductor to be insulated or field covered in the supply enclosure

3-wire branch circuit cable with non-insulated neutral conductor

Copyright © IAEI 2023

326

### 250.148 Continuity of EGCs and Attachment in Boxes

Modified subdivision (A) to specify that all equipment grounding conductors that are spliced or terminated within a box are required to be connected together regardless if they are for different circuits

- ▲ Clarification was needed regarding wire-type equipment grounding conductors (EGCs) within boxes
- ▲ There was spirited debate between installers and inspectors as to if all the EGCs within an electrical box were required to be connected together
- ▲ Also, list item (C) was revised providing the sizing requirements for the bonding connection to the metal box by the EGC or the equipment bonding jumper
- ▲ Size is based on Table 250.122 for the largest overcurrent device for any of the circuits entering the box

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Chuck Mello, IAEI Contributor NFPA LINK® iaei.org

327

### 250.148 Continuity of EGCs and Attachment in Boxes

Modified subdivision (A) to specify that **ALL equipment grounding conductors (EGCs) spliced or terminated within a box** to be connected together **REGARDLESS** if they are for different circuits

Revised the **sizing requirements** for the bonding connection to the metal box by the EGC or the equipment bonding jumper:

Size **based on Table 250.122** for the largest overcurrent device for any of the circuits entering the box [250.148(C)]

14-2 Type NM Cable

12-2 Type NM Cable

All EGCs spliced together in the box (multiple circuits)

Bonding jumper for connection to metal box

EGC from branch circuit (all conductors not shown)

Electrical box

Bonding Jumper to device

Copyright © IAEI 2023

328



**Chapter 3**  
**Wiring Methods and Material**

- Article 300
- Article 305
- Article 310
- Article 312
- Article 314
- Article 315
- Article 320
- Article 322
- Article 330
- Article 337
- Article 342
- Article 344
- Article 352
- Article 353
- Article 354
- Article 355
- Article 356
- Article 358
- Article 360
- Article 369
- Article 371
- Article 398

Copyright © IAEI 2023

329

**Various Chapter 3 Raceway Titles**

Revised Articles 342, 344, 348, 350, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 358, 360, and 362 by removing the word "Types" from their titles

- ▲ The word "Type" has been removed from the new definitions found in Article 100 for conduit and tubings
- ▲ This editorial deletion correlates with the definition and clarifies the acronym for usability
- ▲ This change was related to multiple public inputs that relocated all the xxx.2 definitions in the NEC to Article 100 to comply with the 2020 NEC Style Manual
- ▲ The Correlating Committee established a Task Group to review the format of the wiring method articles regarding the use of acronyms and the use of the word "type" used with some acronyms

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

330

**Chapter 3 Raceway Titles- Multiple Articles**

Articles 342, 344, 348, 350, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 358, 360, and 362 were revised by removing the word "Types" from their titles

**Raceway types involved in this change include:**

<b>Article 342-</b> Intermediate Metal Conduit	<b>Article 354-</b> Nonmetallic Underground Conduit
<b>Article 344-</b> Rigid Metal Conduit	<b>Article 355-</b> Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit
<b>Article 348-</b> Flexible Metal Conduit	<b>Article 356-</b> Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit
<b>Article 350-</b> Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit	<b>Article 358-</b> Electrical Metallic Tubing
<b>Article 352-</b> Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride Conduit	<b>Article 360-</b> Flexible Metallic Tubing
<b>Article 353-</b> High Density Polyethylene Conduit	<b>Article 362-</b> Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing

← Rigid metal conduit

← Intermediate metal conduit

← Stainless steel conduit

← Red brass conduit

← Aluminum conduit

Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit

Copyright © IAEI 2023

331

**Article 300**  
**General Requirements for Wiring Methods and Materials**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

332



**300.2 Limitations**

**(A) Voltage**

Section was modified to add 1500 volts dc requirements in 2 locations

- ▲ This allows for wiring methods located within Chapter 3 to be used for 1000 volts ac, 1500 volts dc, nominal, or less installations if not limited in other locations of the NEC
- ▲ Medium voltage (MV) requirements have been relocated to new Article 305 to enhance usability

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

333

**300.2 Voltage**

This allows for wiring methods found within in Chapter 3 to be used for **1000 volts ac, 1500 volts dc, nominal**, or less installations (*if not limited in other locations of the NEC*)

Medium voltage (MV) requirements are being **reorganized**. MV is being installed by more and more electrical contractors. Installation of a motor control for over 1000 volts at the Denver Wastewater Facility




Photo courtesy of Rob Bowerman

Copyright © IAEI 2023

334

**300.4 Protection Against Physical Damage**

**(E) Cables, Raceways, or Boxes Installed in or Under Metal-Corrugated Roof Decking**

A new **Exception No. 2** has been added which **recognizes poured concrete** on top of the metal roof decking as a means of physical protection for cables, raceways, or boxes installed in or under metal-corrugated roof decking

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

335

**300.4 Protection Against Physical Damage (cont.)**

**(E) Cables, Raceways, or Boxes Installed in or Under Metal-Corrugated Roof Decking (cont.)**

- ▲ Concrete limits screws from penetrating into the raceway system causing damage to the raceway and wiring
- ▲ When the metal-corrugated sheet roof decking is covered with a **minimum thickness 50 mm (2 in.) concrete slab**, the 38 mm (1 1/2 in.) spacing is not necessary
- ▲ The concrete slab is measured from the top portion of the corrugated roofing
- ▲ This also recognizes the addition of "**listed steel or malleable iron fittings and boxes**" for Exception No. 1 which are used with rigid metal conduit (RMC) and intermediate metal conduit (IMC)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

336

### 300.4(E) Cables, Raceways, or Boxes Installed in or Under Metal-Corrugated Roof Decking- Ex. No. 1 and 2

Concrete slab limits screws from penetrating into the raceway system  
 The 38 mm (1½ in.) spacing required in the main rule is not necessary with a **minimum thickness 50 mm (2 in.)** concrete slab  
 Concrete slab is measured from the top portion of the corrugated roofing  
 Recognizes "**listed steel or malleable iron fittings and boxes**" used with rigid metal conduit (RMC) and intermediate metal conduit (IMC)

**Note:** without Exception No. 2, main rule required 38 mm (1½ in.) spacing needed to prevent damage to raceways and boxes

337

### 300.4 Protection Against Physical Damage (G) Fittings

New language has been added requiring that protective fittings be installed to fittings "prior to the installation of conductors"

- ▲ The protective fitting needs to be in place before the installation of the conductors in order to provide protections to these conductors
- ▲ Installing this fitting after the conductors have been installed allows possible damage to occur to conductors being pulled into the raceway
- ▲ Determining if this fitting was installed before the installation of conductors may be hard for an AHJ to determine during an inspection (*sometimes there is no visible conductor damage*)
- ▲ There are fittings available on the market that are designed to be installed after the conductors have been installed

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

338

### 300.4(G) Fittings

Protective fittings to be installed to raceways "**prior to the installation of conductors**"

Where raceways will **contain 4 AWG or larger** insulated circuit conductors, **prior to the installation of conductors**, the conductors are to be protected in one of the following ways:

- a fitting that has been identified and provides a smooth rounded insulating surface
- a metal fitting that's listed and has smoothly rounded edges
- use of an identified insulating material that is securely fastened in place to separate the fitting or raceway
- threaded hubs or bosses that are an integral part of a raceway providing a smoothly rounded entry for conductors

**These fittings can no longer be installed after the conductors have been installed**

339

### 300.5 Underground Installations (A) Minimum Cover Requirements

#### Table 300.5(A) Minimum Cover Requirements

Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT) has been added to Column 3 of the table to clearly indicate that it can be installed in an underground location

- ▲ EMT is permitted to be used in underground locations
- ▲ Supplementary corrosion protection is generally required for EMT in direct contact with earth, but not required in all cases (*Example: Stainless tubing*)
- ▲ UL 797, *Standard for Safety Electrical Metallic Tubing- Steel*, also indicates that EMT is permitted in underground installations
- ▲ A new note #6 was added to the bottom of the table to direct the Code user to 350.10 for additional information requirements for directly buried EMT


CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

340

**Table 300.5(A) Column 3 (EMT)**

Electrical metallic tubing (EMT) has been added to Table 300.5(A), Column 3 to indicate it can be installed in underground locations

Not a new change for the use of EMT  
It has always been allowed with the use of supplementary corrosion protection  
Some EMT such as stainless does not require the use of supplementary corrosion protection



Supplementary corrosion protection

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

341

**300.5 Underground Installations**

**(D) Protection from Damage**

The words "direct buried" were removed from the heading leaving behind "conductors and cables"

- ⚠️ The text reading as "direct buried conductors and cables," did not apply to buried raceways containing conductors
- ⚠️ Only conductors that were directly buried were included in the 2020 NEC edition
- ⚠️ This revision will provide both the installers and inspectors clarity as to requirements for underground conductor and cable installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

342

**300.5 (D) Protection From Damage**

The words "direct buried" were removed from the heading leaving behind "conductors and cables"

Buried raceways containing electrical conductors require the same protection as buried cables

Utilize **Table 300.5** for the correct burial depths in order to pass an electrical inspection



Photo courtesy of Scott Humphrey

343



344

**IAEI**

## 300.6 Protection Against Corrosion and Deterioration

### (A) Ferrous Metal Equipment

The informational note referencing field-cut threads has been removed and added into positive language

- ▲ Adding "anywhere other than at the factory where the product is listed" adds clarity
- ▲ Threads cut in the field are to be coated with an electrically conductive, corrosion-resistant compound that has been approved for that purpose
- ▲ If the threads are cut at the factory, the field installation of this protective coating does not apply
- ▲ Informational notes are not enforceable (*these are informative to the user of the Code*)
- ▲ Moving the requirements into the section language allows for enforcement


Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

345

### 300.6(A) Ferrous Metal Equipment

Electrical pipe **threads cut in the field** are to be coated with an electrically conductive, corrosion-resistant compound that has been approved for that purpose.



If threads are **cut at the factory**, the field installation of a protective coating does not apply

Photos courtesy of Milwaukee Tools

346

**IAEI**

## 300.11 Securing and Supporting

### (C) Raceways Used as Means of Support

Class 3 circuit conductors are permitted to be supported by the raceway containing power supply conductors that supplies the equipment

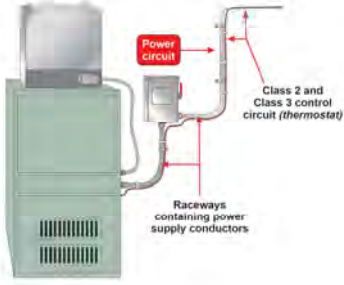
- ▲ Class 2 and Class 3 cables are now able to be supported by raceway
- ▲ Support to be provided by the raceway containing power supply conductors that supplies the equipment
- ▲ These cables are typically the same in size and weight so there should not be an issue
- ▲ This also aligns with 725.143, which recognizes Class 2 and Class 3 circuit conductors and points back to 310.11(C) for their installation

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

347

### 300.11(C) Raceways Used as Means of Support



Only raceways containing power supply conductors for electrically controlled equipment are allowed to support Class 2 and Class 3 circuit conductors or cables. Class 2 and 3 wiring must be used to control equipment powered by conductors running within the supporting raceway

348



**IAEI**

### 300.14 Length of Free Conductors at Outlets, Junctions, and Switch Points

Language has been added permitting free conductors to be spliced at outlet, junction, and switch point locations

- ▲ This clarifies that the conductor is permitted to be spliced with a shorter conductor to add length to it and meet the 6 inches required by this section
- ▲ Previously left up to interpretation as to if the free conductor had to be continuous or was permitted to be spliced and extended at the box
- ▲ When the drywall installer router damages the conductors within the box, some inspectors would not allow for the conductor to be spliced *(in some cases, the installer would be required to replace the NM cable to the box)*
- ▲ This caused misunderstanding and confusion between the installer and the inspector
- ▲ Additional issues could also arise where wall surfacing has been installed leaving the length of the free conductor less than the 6-inch requirement

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

349

### 300.14 Length of Free Conductors at Outlets, Junctions, and Switch Points

Clarifies that the conductor **is permitted to be spliced** with a shorter conductor to add length to it and meet the 6 inches required by this section

**Photo below** shows a router being used to expose the device box that was covered with drywall

**Photo on right** shows a device box with numerous conductors that could be damaged by a careless router

Careless router operator could cause a lot of damage to these conductors






Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

350

**IAEI**

### 300.17 Number and Size of Conductors and Cables in Raceway

Conductors are installed **(as well as cables)** in raceways and requirements were needed so they are not damaged during and after their installation

- ▲ The number and size of **conductors and cables** in a raceway is limited
- ▲ Limited due to a need to dissipate heat generated by conductors
- ▲ Conductors **and cables** are not to be damaged due to installation or removal
- ▲ Insulation integrity of **conductors and cables** must be protected
- ▲ The updated Informational Note offers direction to the location of the various wiring methods and their requirements

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Timothy Mikloiche NFPA LINK® iaei.org

351

### 300.17 Number and Size of Conductors and Cables in Raceways



**Conductors** are installed **(as well as cables)** in raceways and requirements were needed so they are not damaged during and after their installation

Conductors and cables are limited in raceways

Must be able to dissipate heat

Must not damage conductors or cables during installation or removal

Insulation integrity to be protected

Copyright © IAEI 2023

352



**300.25 Exit Enclosures (Stair Towers)**

An exception was added addressing egress lighting on outside exterior doorways

- Eliminated the term "be separated from the building" and added the words "have a fire resistance rating"
- "Fire resistance rating" is a defined term in the building code and, therefore, will clarify this requirement
- Outside exterior doorways are part of the means of egress and frequently require egress lighting to extend to the public way
- Without the addition of the exception, it was a Code violation to provide power to the required exterior egress lighting from the lighting circuit inside the exit enclosure

CMP-3, Timothy Mikloiche | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

353

**300.25 Exit Enclosures (Stair Towers)**

Exception added addressing egress lighting on outside exterior doorways for stair towers

Without the addition of the exception, it was a Code violation to provide power to the required exterior egress lighting from the lighting circuit inside the exit enclosure

Egress lighting and exterior doorway

IAEI Training Facility

Exit Enclosure (Stair Tower)

CMP-3, Timothy Mikloiche | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

354

**300.26 Remote-Control and Signaling Circuits Classification**

A new Section 300.26 has been created for remote-control and signaling circuits

- This should help to clarify that remote-control and signaling circuits can be either power-limited or non-power-limited
- Class 1 circuits have been relocated from Art 725 to a new Article 724
- Class 2 and 3 circuitry shall comply with Article 725
- Power-limited Class 2, and Class 3 circuitry to comply with Section 725.3(E)
- Sections 300.2 through 300.25 to govern remote-control and signaling circuits that are non-power-limited

CMP-3, Timothy Mikloiche | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

355

**300.26 Remote-Control and Signaling Circuits Classification**

Section 300.26 was created by CMP-3 for remote-control and signaling circuits

- Class 1 circuitry has been relocated from Article 725 to Article 724
- Power-limited Class 2, and Class 3 circuitry to comply with Article 725
- Sections 300.2 through 300.25 for non-power-limited remote control and signaling circuits

One switch controls multiple lights

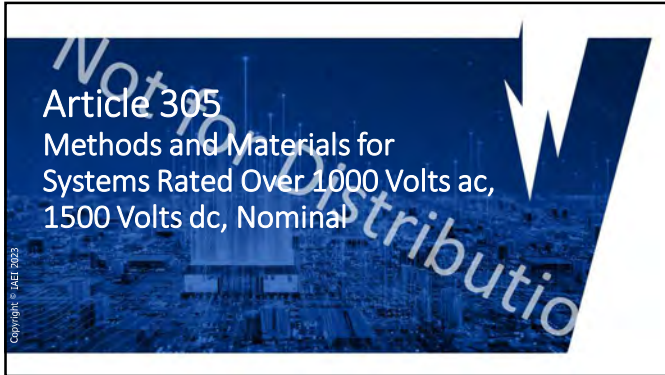
One switch controls a single light

Multiple switches control a single light

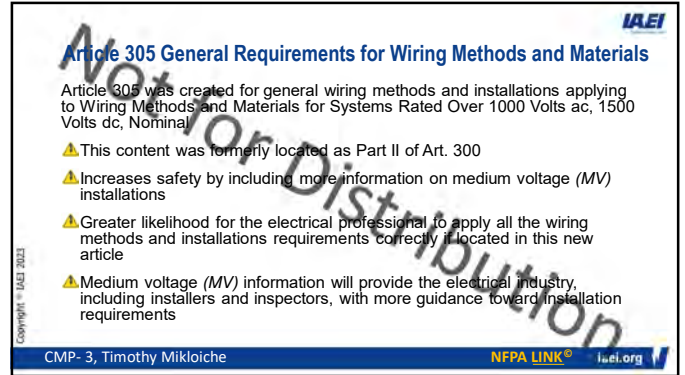
Photo courtesy of Supertink

CMP-3, Timothy Mikloiche | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

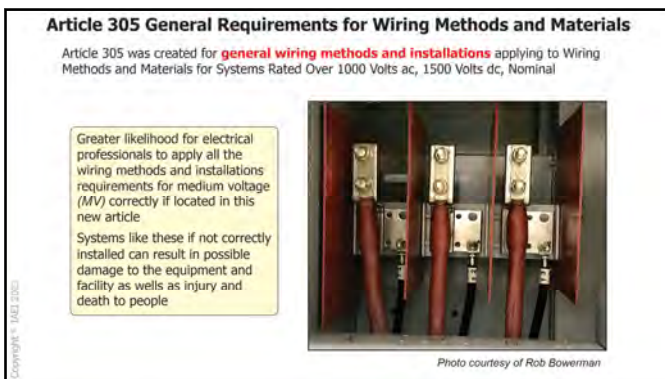
356



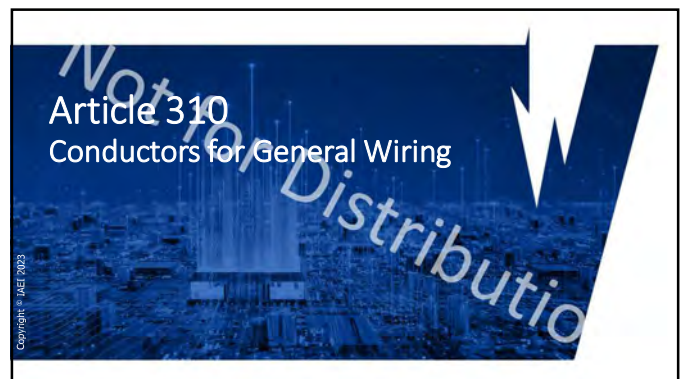
357



358



359



360

**Tables 310.16, 310.17, and 310.20**

Deleted "XHWN" from the 90-degree Celsius columns of Tables 310.16, 310.17, and 310.20

- Due to action from the correlating committee requesting CMP-6 to determine if Type XHWN is allowable for use at 90 degrees Celsius
- CMP-6 decided that Type XHWN insulation was not rated for this temperature and deleted it from the above table columns
- "XHWN" is an insulation that can be used in dry and wet locations and is of a flame-retardant, moisture-resistant thermoset type
- It is listed at Table 310.4(1) as being rated for 75 degrees Celsius

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 6, Susan Newman Scearce

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

361

**Tables 310.16, 310.17, and 310.20**

Deleted "XHWN" from the 90-degree Celsius columns

Type XHWN insulation is not rated for this temperature and was deleted from the above table columns  
It is also not longer available on the market for purchase and installation



250 MCM (UL) XHWN FOR CT USE SR 600V XL

XHWN is listed in Table 310.4(1) as being rated for 75 degrees Celsius

XHWN can be used in dry and wet locations and is of a flame-retardant, moisture-resistant thermoset type

Copyright © IAEI 2023

362

**Article 312**  
Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures

Copyright © IAEI 2023

363

**312.10 Screws and Other Fasteners**

New section added to address **field installed screws or other fasteners** entering a cabinet, cutout box, or meter socket

- Damage to the conductors has been an issue for some time creating a shock or fire hazard
- Injuries to electrical professionals have been reported due to accidental insulation or conductor damage as the result of inappropriate screw use
- Greater attention will be required by the installer as to the type of fastener they use and how far it protrudes into the wiring space
- The AHJ will need to be mindful and examine these enclosures to make sure this new requirement is being adhered to be the installer

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 9, Dean Fortney

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

364

**312.10 Screws and Other Fasteners (cont.)**

New section added to address **field installed screws or other fasteners** entering a cabinet, cutout box, or meter socket (cont.)


- ▲ Screws are to be of a machine type with blunt ends
- ▲ Other fasteners being installed are to be of the type with blunt ends
- ▲ Screws or other fasteners **cannot extend** into the enclosure further than **6 mm (1/4 in.) unless the end** is protected with an approved means
  - ↳ **Exception to above requirement:** Screws or other fasteners are permitted to extend into the enclosure not more than **11 mm (7/16 in.)** if located within 10 mm (3/8 in.) of an enclosure wall
- ▲ **Note:** The 7/16-in. dimension accounts for the customary 1/2-in. screw passing through a 1/16-in. thick enclosure wall along the edges and at the corners of enclosures (The natural curves in conductors at these locations allow for greater screw lengths)

CMP- 9, Dean Fortney

365

**312.10 Screws and Other Fasteners**

Example of a conductor damaged by a screw



Installer and inspector should verify conductors are installed away of locations where screws will fasten covers to cabinet

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

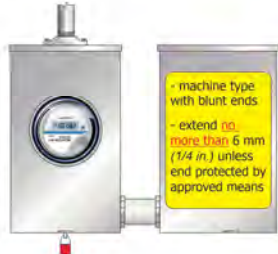
366

**312.10 Screws and Fasteners**

Damage to the conductors has been an issue for some time creating a shock or fire hazard

The possibilities of an abundance of arcs and sparks are greater with meter enclosures due to limited overcurrent protection upstream by the utility

Greater attention will be required by the installer and the AHJ as to the type of fastener they use and how far it intrudes into the wiring space



367

**Article 314**  
**Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes, Conduit Bodies, Fittings, and Handhole Enclosures**

368



## 314.5 Screws and Other Fasteners

New section added to address **screws and fasteners** entering the wiring space of boxes and conduit bodies

- ⚠ This addresses the installation of fasteners which are field installed into the wiring space of these boxes/conduit bodies
- ⚠ These fasteners and screws have been responsible for **damage to the conductor(s)** causing electrical shock and fire hazards
- ⚠ A new set of list items include 7 requirements concerning screw and fastener use
- ⚠ These fastener requirements apply during installation of boxes and conduit bodies
- ⚠ Fasteners such as drywall screws will not be acceptable for these installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP-9, Dean Fortney NFPA LINK® iaei.org

369

## 314.5 Screws and Other Fasteners (cont.)

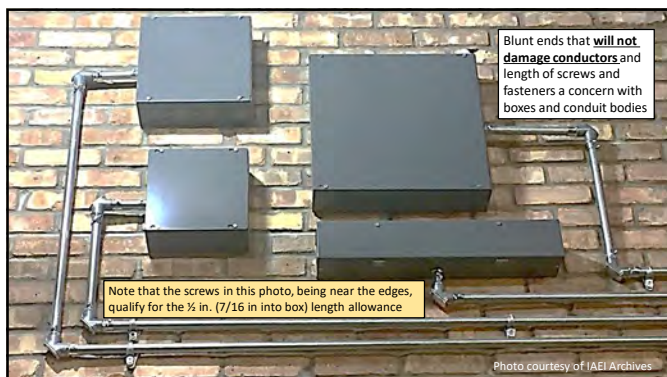
Review of the Notes:

- ⚠ Applies to field wiring exclusively, not to screws provided by the manufacturer (*An example would be screws for ganging multiple outlet boxes*)
- ⚠ Outlet boxes are treated more conservatively due to greater congestion, which makes damage from screw or fastener wall penetrations very difficult to avoid
- ⚠ The 5/16-in. screw dimension refers to the common 3/8-in. screws that attach device yokes to raised covers, and wall plates to device yokes
- ⚠ The 7/16-in. screw dimension refers to the common 1/2-in. screw inserted into a 1/16-in. thick enclosure wall along the edges and at the corners of enclosures (*This is the standard length and positioning for pull box cover screws*)
- ⚠ Natural curves in conductors at these locations allow for greater screw lengths

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP-9, Dean Fortney NFPA LINK® iaei.org

370



371

## 314.16 Number of Conductors in Outlet, Device, and Junction Boxes, and Conduit Bodies

### (B) Box Fill Calculations

**(6) Terminal Block Fill:** A new section added to address volume allowance concerns when terminal blocks are installed in boxes

- ⚠ A single volume allowance based on the largest conductor size terminated on the assembly will be required based on Table 314.16(B)(1)
- ⚠ This **does not apply** to every conductor terminated to a pole of a terminal block assembly

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP-9, Dean Fortney NFPA LINK® iaei.org

372




### 314.16(B)(6) Terminal Block Fill

Utilize **Table 314.16(B)(1)** to find single volume allowance for the **largest conductor terminated** on the terminal block assembly

This will not be encountered by many electrical installers

See 680.23(F)(2)(b) where requirements **disallow normal twist-on wire connectors** in the equipment grounding return path for in-pool line-voltage lights, but permits grounding terminals



Terminal Block Assembly




Photo courtesy of Steel City

373

### 314.24 Dimensions of Boxes

Substantiation was presented to CMP-9 to adjust the existing language by broadening the reach of this section to address side entries for outlet and device boxes

- ▲ These changes will help to ensure that conductor damage is not caused by the installation of devices into outlet and device boxes
- ▲ Adjusted the wording to ensure that the depth of boxes accommodates wiring method entries where those entry points line up with the backs of installed devices or equipment
- ▲ CMP became aware of damage to conductors from installed devices or other equipment of sufficient size to create a conflict with conductors entering these boxes
- ▲ A fire investigation concerning a GFCI receptacle installed on the outside of a house was also considered as substantiation for this change

Fred Hartwell, IAEI Contributor

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

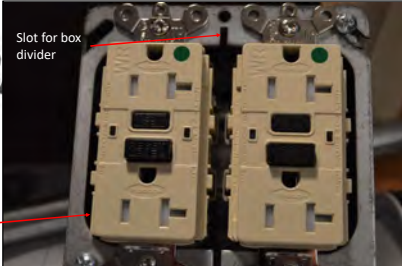
374

### 314.24 Dimensions of Boxes (cont.)

Note two NEMA device envelopes in full use (next slide), with 1/16-in. slot allowance for box divider in center, and radius (7/16-in.) corners, device corners are beveled to fit perfectly.

These two GFCI devices project 1-in. into the box below the ring.

Device depths vary and must be measured in the field.



Slot for box divider

Fred Hartwell, IAEI Contributor

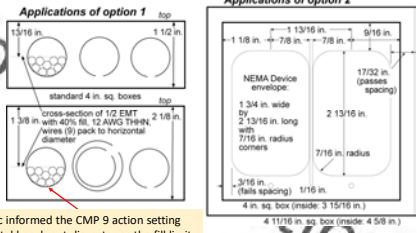
375

### 314.24 Dimensions of Boxes (cont.)

The GFCI receptacles (prior slide) would require a plaster ring or a raised cover to fit in this box safely, or wiring entries from top or bottom, or a 4 11/16-inch box, or the deeper box (below).

Many devices do not use the full NEMA envelope, such as snap switches.

This graphic informed the CMP 9 action setting the horizontal knock-out diameter as the fill limit for a side entry within 1/2 in. of a device body.

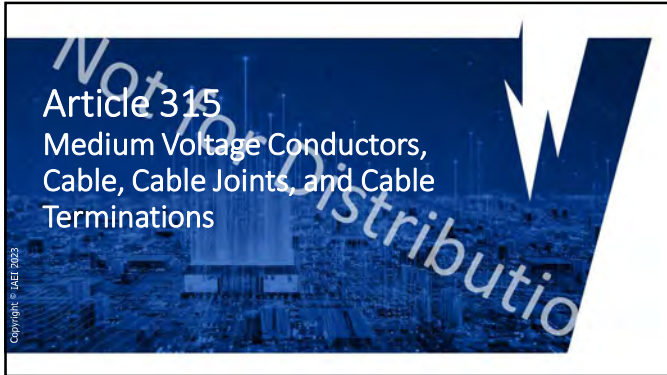


Applications of option 1

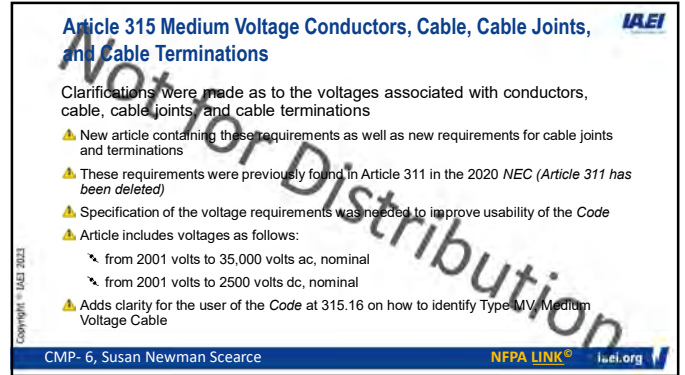
Applications of option 2

Fred Hartwell, IAEI Contributor

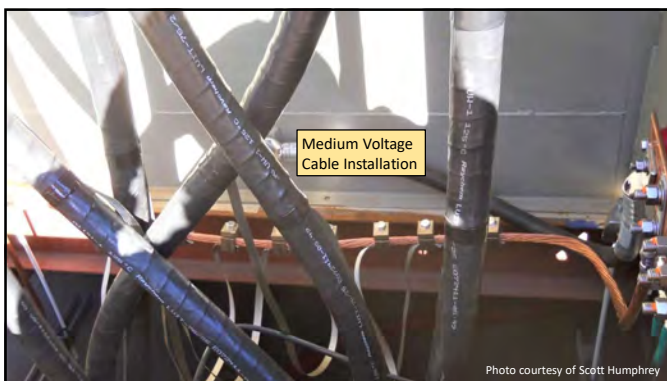
376



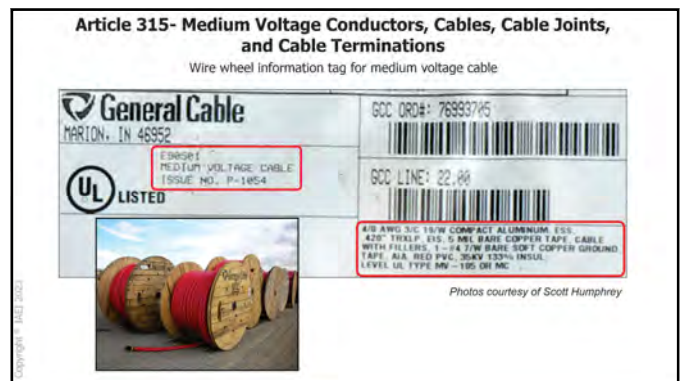
377



378



379



380



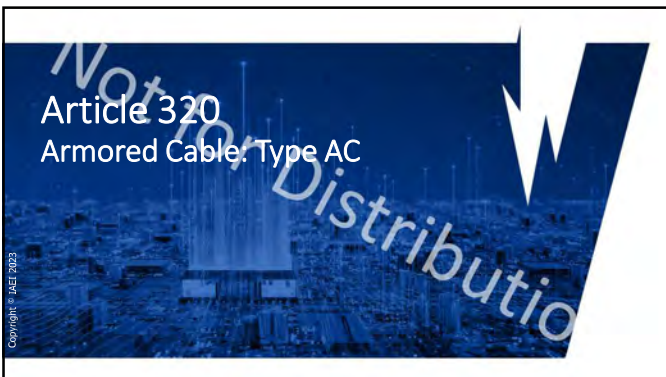
Photo courtesy of Scott Humphrey

381



Photo courtesy of Scott Humphrey

382



383

**320.23 In Accessible Attics**

**(A) Cables Run Across the Top of Framing Members**

For **accessible attics**, the term **"Framing Members"** has replaced "Joists" when considering the installations of Armored Cable (Type AC)

- ▲ Most attic locations do not contain floor joists; they have ceiling joists
- ▲ Change made to eliminate confusion for ceiling or floor locations where cables are installed
- ▲ When cables are installed across the face of framing members, the reference to joists has been changed to the term **"equivalent horizontal surface"** to be more inclusive of any walking or crawling surface
- ▲ The word "equivalent" removed by the Correlating Committee as a vague and unenforceable term (SCR-45)

CMP- 6, Susan Newman Scarce NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

384

**320.23(A) Cables Run Across the Top of Framing Members**  
 For accessible attics, the term **"Framing Members"** has replaced "Joists" as it pertains to the installation of Armored Cable (Type AC)

When AC cables are installed **across the face** of framing members, the reference to joists has been changed to the term **"equivalent horizontal surface"** to be more inclusive of any walking or crawling surface

Thermal insulation

Thermal insulation

"Framing Member" has replaced the term "Joist"

Copyright © IAEI 2023

385

Article 322  
 Flat Cable Assemblies: Type FC

Not for Distribution

Copyright © IAEI 2023

386

**322.56 Splices and Taps**

**(B) Taps**

Changes were made to flat cable assembly requirements by removing "color-coded" and replacing it with "marked"

- ▲ The term "color-coded" was changed to "marked" to correlate with the terminology found at 322.120 entitled "Marking"
- ▲ Does not change the meanings of the requirements found at this location
- ▲ Will provide clarity and unison with other code sections

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 6, Susan Newman Scarce

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

387

Article 330  
 Metal-Clad Cable: Type MC

Not for Distribution

Copyright © IAEI 2023

388



**330.112 Insulation**

**(A) 1000 Volts or Less**

Editorial changes made to correlate with the addition of 16 AWG copper conductors for general use wiring methods

- ▲ The recognition of 16 AWG copper conductors for use as ungrounded, grounded and equipment grounding conductors in 330.104 was necessary for useability of the Code
- ▲ Conductors to be of a type that is listed at **Table 310.4(1)** for conductor applications and installations rated for 600 Volts

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 6, Susan Newman Scarce

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

389

**330.112 Insulation (cont.)**

**(A) 1000 Volts or Less**

Editorial changes made to correlate with the addition of 16 AWG copper conductors for general use wiring methods (cont.)

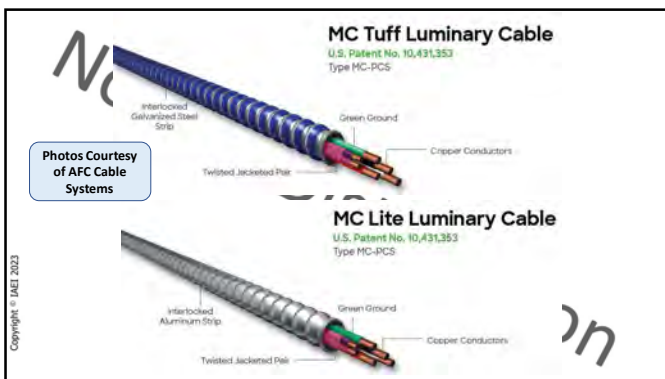
- ▲ There was some confusion with the use of 16 AWG conductors for control and signal applications
- ▲ Identification of the conductor types in 330.112(A) was necessary to identify the requirements for each conductor type
- ▲ These conductors are to be of the type listed at **Table 402.2** for fixture wires

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 6, Susan Newman Scarce

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

390



391



392



## Article 337 ~~Type P~~ Type IM Type P Cable

Changes all references of the former Type P cable to Type IM cable

- ▲ The purpose for including Type IM cable was to recognize a suitable wiring method for oil field drilling rig locations that are land-based
- ▲ Installation requirements in this article include:
  - ✎ Bending radius
  - ✎ Ampacity
  - ✎ Listing and
  - ✎ Uses permitted or not permitted
- ▲ Off-shore marine-type installations would not be found in the scope of the NEC
- ▲ Type P cables used for offshore drilling rigs are not under the purview of the NEC

**Note: No Change**  
This reverted back to Type P Cable during a vote at the NFPA Meeting

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 6, Susan Newman Searce NFPA LINK® iaei.org

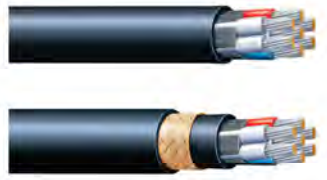
393

## Article 337 Type P Industrial Mobile Cable (Type IM)

Will change all references of Type P cable to Type IM cable (no change)

Installation requirements for this product include:

- Bending radius
- Ampacity
- Listing
- Uses permitted
- Uses not permitted



Recognize as a suitable wiring method for oil field drilling rig locations that are land-based

Photo courtesy of ICC Cable Corporation

Copyright © IAEI 2023

394

## Article 342 Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)



Copyright © IAEI 2023

395

## 342.20 Size (B) Maximum

A change was made for Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC) by specifying that 6-inch trade size is the largest that can be installed

- ▲ Now to include trade sizes 5 and 6-inch IMC
- ▲ Maintains consistency in the rigid metal raceway articles
- ▲ UL Standard 1242, *Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit – Steel*, does not currently include IMC trade sizes 5 and 6
- ▲ Could be a concern for AHJs, installers, and designers regarding listing requirements
- ▲ **Note: 342.30 (also 344.30) Securing and Supporting Exception:** For congested work in finished buildings or prefabricated wall panels where securing is impracticable, unbroken lengths (without coupling) of IMC are permitted to be fished
- ▲ New exception extends provisions for this practice now in place (since the 1996 edition) for EMT to IMC (Same change occurs in 344.30 for RMC)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Scott Higgins NFPA LINK® iaei.org

396

**342.20(B) Maximum (Intermediate Metal Conduit)**

A change was made for Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC) by specifying that **6-inch trade size is the largest** that can be installed



**Note:**  
Installing 6 in. IMC is not for the faint of heart

Copyright © IAEI 2023

397

**Article 344**  
**Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC)**

Not for Distribution

Copyright © IAEI 2023

398

**344.28 Reaming and Threading (Rigid Metal Conduit)**

Clarifies that manufacturer's requirements for reaming and threading of PVC-coated rigid metal conduit (RMC) should be followed

- ⚠ This change was brought about by NEMA due to the installer accidentally damaging PVC rigid metal conduit when they were reaming and adding threads to the conduit
- ⚠ The use of proper threading and clamping tools specifically designed for PVC-coated conduit should be used so that the exterior PVC coating is not damaged
- ⚠ Standard threading and clamping tools that are used with non-PVC coated RMC will damage the outside PVC coating and should not be used
- ⚠ A new informational note was added to assist installers with this procedure
- ⚠ Reference NECA 101-2013, *Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT)*

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

399

**344.28 Reaming and Threading (Rigid Metal Conduit)**

Clarifies that **manufacturer's requirements** for reaming and threading of PVC-coated rigid metal conduit (RMC) **should be followed**

**Proper threading and clamping tools** specifically designed for PVC-coated conduit should be used so that the exterior PVC coating is not damaged when being field cut, reamed, or threaded



Photo courtesy of Plastibond

**See NECA 101-2013, Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT)**

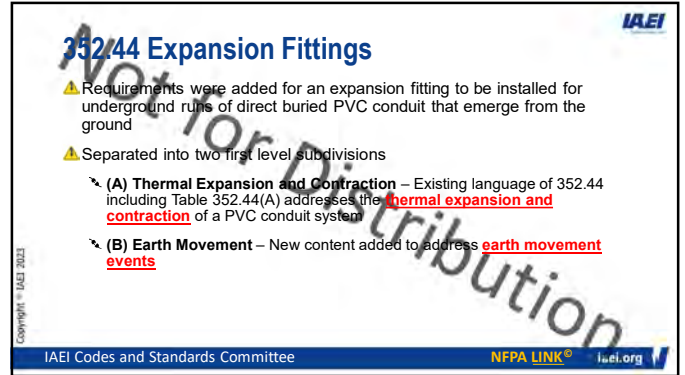
PVC Rigid Metal Conduit vise for cutting, reaming, and threading

Copyright © IAEI 2023

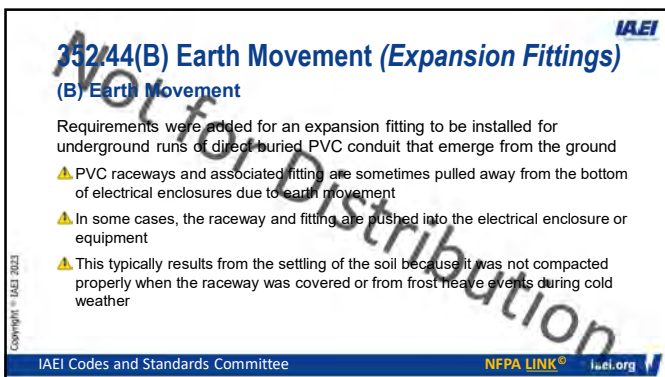
400



401



402



403



404

Article 353  
High Density Polyethylene Conduit  
(HDPE Conduit)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

405

**353.48 Joints**

Revised to specify that the joining methods of High-Density Polyethylene Conduit (HDPE) are to be made by a method identified by the manufacturer

- ▲ Heat fusion or butt fusion joints are not to be permitted
- ▲ Heat and butt fusion may "burn" or damage the cabling when it is subsequently pulled over the lip
- ▲ The lip will also reduce the potential wire pull surface area and conduit fill calculations
- ▲ UL Standard 651A, Schedule 40 and 80 High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit is performance-based
- ▲ Including a list format may inadvertently omit a joining method that could meet the performance requirements of the standard

CMP- 8, Scott Higgins

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

406

**353.48 Joints [High Density Polyethylene Conduit (HDPE)]**

Joining methods of High Density Polyethylene Conduit (HDPE) for electrical installations are to be made by a method **identified by the manufacturer**

Heat fusion or butt fusion joints **not permitted** for High Density Polyethylene Conduit (HDPE)

May damage the cabling or conductors when it is pulled over the lip  
The lip will also reduce the potential wire pull surface area and conduit fill calculations

Butt Fusion

Heat Fusion

Lip

Photos courtesy of HDPE Supply

407

Article 358  
Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

408



**358.20 Size (B) Maximum**

This change increases the maximum size of Electrical Metallic Conduit (EMT) to metric designator 155 (trade size 6)

- ▲ 5- and 6-inch EMT is not addressed in previous editions of the Code
- ▲ Both are similar to materials used to create 5- and 6-inch rigid metal conduit (RMC), which have a proven result in the industry
- ▲ The outer diameter will be the same as 5- and 6-inch RMC but will have a thinner wall
- ▲ Both EMT sizes conform to the minimum bend radii shown in Chapter 9, Table 2 of the NEC
- ▲ Chapter 9 Table 4 and Appendix C.1 and C.1(A) have been updated to include these new trade sizes

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Scott Higgins

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

409

**358.20(B) Maximum (EMT Raceways)**

Increases the **maximum size** of Electrical Metallic Conduit (EMT) to **6 inches**

Better be young and in good shape to install 5 and 6 inch EMT all day 5 and 6 in. EMT sizes conform to the minimum bend radii shown in Chapter 9 Table 2

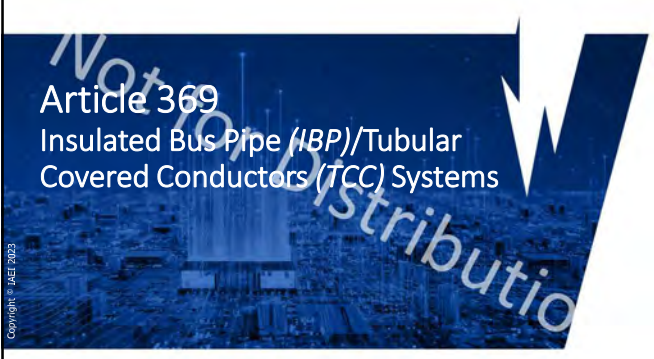
Chapter 9 Table 4 and Appendix C.1 and C.1(A) have been updated to include these new trade sizes



Copyright © IAEI 2023

410

**Article 369 Insulated Bus Pipe (IBP)/Tubular Covered Conductors (TCC) Systems**



Copyright © IAEI 2023

411

**Article 369 Insulated Bus Pipe/Tubular Covered Conductors**

New Article 369 covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for insulated bus pipe (IBP) systems

- ▲ Insulated bus pipe (IBP), also known as Tubular Covered Conductor (TCC), has been used for many years in shipboard and utility applications in Europe and utility applications in the United States
- ▲ The system incorporates cable systems, bus bars, metal-enclosed bus, resin-impregnated bushings, and tap boxes
- ▲ These systems are lighter, consume less volume, and take less time to install than a traditional system
- ▲ Has been proven as a practical alternative to using medium voltage cables, bare busbars, or bare conductors
- ▲ See the new definition in Article 100 for Insulated Bus Pipe (IBP)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Tom Moore



NFPA LINK® iaei.org

412



**Article 369 Insulated Bus Pipe/Tubular Covered Conductors**  
 Cover the use, installation, and construction specifications for insulated bus pipe (IBP) systems

Used for many years in **shipboard and utility** applications in Europe and utility applications in the United States  
 Has been proven as a practical alternative to using medium voltage cables, bare busbars, or bare conductors  
 See the new definition in Article 100 for Insulated Bus Pipe (IBP)

Photos courtesy of NSRP  
 National Shipbuilding  
 Research Program

Copyright © IAEI 2023

413

**Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems**

Not for Distribution



Copyright © IAEI 2023

414

**Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems**

This new article covers the use and installation requirements of flexible bus systems and their associated fittings

- ▲ Addresses a new product (*Flexible Bus Systems*) that provides many of the benefits of both bus duct and cable
- ▲ Its flexibility reduces installation time by making it easier to make connections in the field without the need for special tools
- ▲ It is light in weight compared to an equivalent bus duct or conductors in a conduit

IAEI

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

415

**Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)**

This new article covers the use and installation requirements of flexible bus systems and their associated fittings (*cont.*)

- ▲ Inspectors, installers, and designers need to be aware that flexible bus systems should be listed
- ▲ Currently, there is not a specific standard available for listing this product, but two outlines of investigations have been developed
- ▲ See the new definition in Article 100 for *Flexible Bus Systems*

IAEI

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

416

**Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems**  
Covers the use and installation requirements of flexible bus systems and their associated fittings

Flexibility reduces installation time by making it easier to make connections in the field without the need for special tools  
It is light in weight compared to an equivalent bus duct or conductors in a conduit



Inspectors, installers, and designers need to be aware that **flexible bus systems should be listed**

Photos courtesy of nVent

417

**Flexible Bus**



Flexibility reduces installation time making it easier for connections in the field without the need for special tools

Photo courtesy of Chuck Mello

418

**Flexible Bus**




Flexibility reduces installation time making it easier for connections in the field without the need for special tools

Photo courtesy of Chuck Mello

419

**Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)**

- ⚠ Flexible
- ⚠ Rectangular
- ⚠ Overall insulation



1  
UL 1387  
Outline of Investigation for Flexible Insulated Bus  
Issue Number: 1  
August 9, 2022

Copyright © JAEI 2023

420

**Flexible Bus Systems**

- ▲ An assembly
- ▲ Flexible insulated bus
- ▲ Associated fittings used to secure, support, and terminate the bus
- ▲ Engineered systems for specific site location
- ▲ Assembled at the point of installation

UL 1386

Outline of Investigation for Flexible Bus Systems

Issue Number: 1

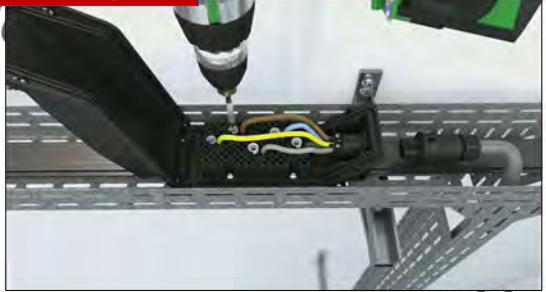
August 30, 2022

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI  
iaei.org

421

**Flexible Bus System**




Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI  
iaei.org

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

422

**Flexible Bus System**



Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI  
iaei.org

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

423

**Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)**

**Part I General**

- ▲ 371.1 General
- ▲ 371.6 Listing Requirements

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI  
iaei.org

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

424

Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)

Part II Installation

- ▲ 371.10 Uses Permitted
- ▲ 371.12 Uses Not Permitted
- ▲ 371.14 Installation Design
- ▲ 371.17 Overcurrent Protection
- ▲ 371.18 Flexible Bus Systems Installation
- ▲ 371.20 Terminations
- ▲ 371.30 Securing and Supporting
- ▲ 371.40 Short Circuit Current Rating
- ▲ 371.60 Grounding

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

iaei.org

425

Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)

Part III Construction Specifications

- ▲ 371.120 Marking
  - ✎ (A) System Nameplate
  - ✎ (B) Associated Fittings
  - ✎ (C) Flexible Insulated Bus

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

iaei.org

426

Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)

371.6 Listing Requirements

Flexible bus systems are **required to be listed**

- ▲ Must be included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
- ▲ UL 1387, Outline of Investigation for Flexible Insulated Bus (August 9, 2022)
- ▲ UL 1386, Outline of Investigation for Flexible Bus Systems (August 30, 2022)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 8, Tom Moore

iaei.org

427

Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems (cont.)

371.17 Overcurrent Protection

Flexible bus systems are **required to be listed**

- ▲ (A) When used for services (NEC 230.90)
- ▲ (B) When used as feeders (NEC 215.3)
- ▲ (C) When used as a branch circuits (NEC 210.20)
- ▲ (D) Protection of flexible bus systems used on transformer secondary (NEC 240.21(C))
- ▲ (E) Flexible bus systems connected to generator terminals (NEC 445.12 and 445.13)
- ▲ (F) Flexible bus systems connected to battery terminals (NEC 240.21(H))
- ▲ (G) Addresses when flexible bus systems are reduced in size requiring OOPD

Copyright © IAEI 2023

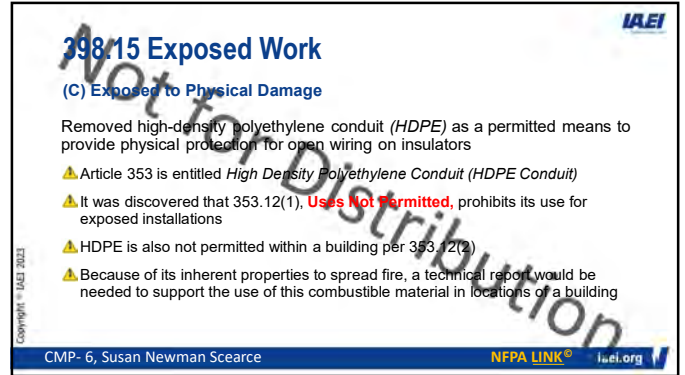
CMP- 8, Tom Moore

iaei.org

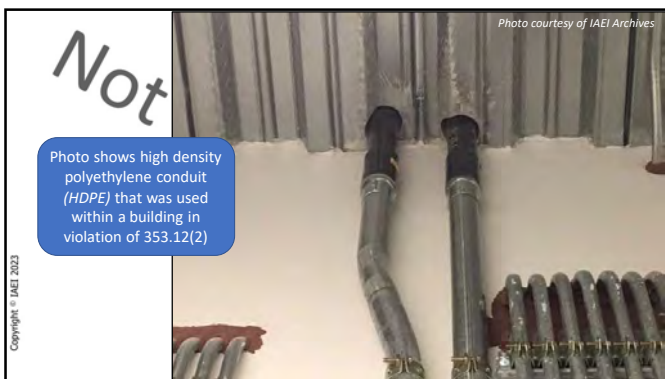
428



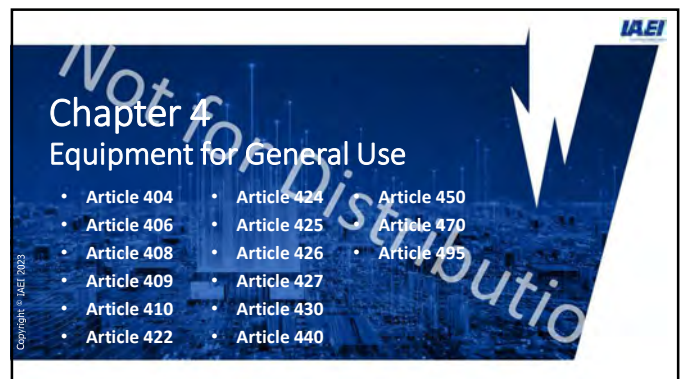
429



430



431

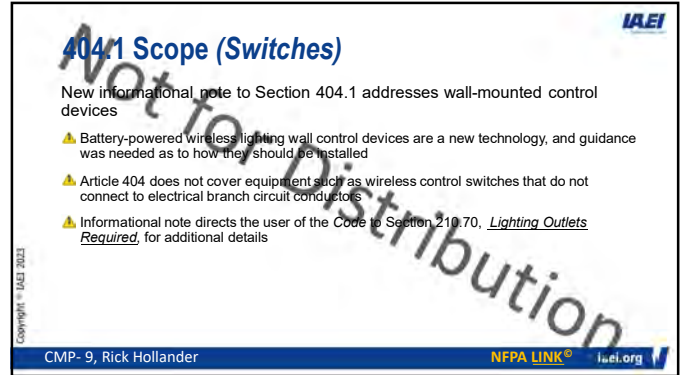


432





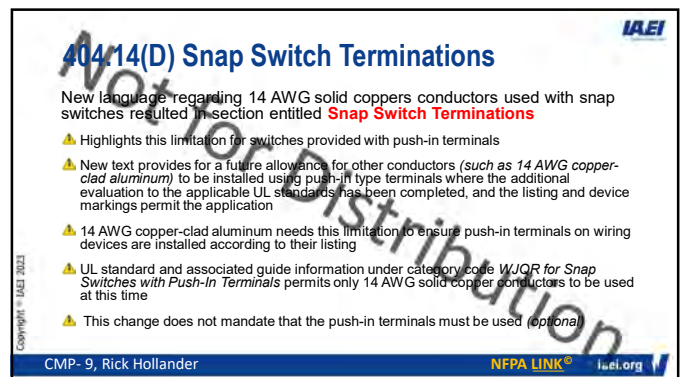
433



434



435




436

### 404.14(D) Snap Switch Terminations

New requirements for 14 AWG solid copper conductors used with snap switches

UL standard and associated guide information under category code **WJQR for Snap Switches with Push-In Terminals** permits only **14 AWG solid copper conductors** to be used at this time



Highlights this limitation for switches provided with push-in terminals  
**Does not mandate** that the push-in terminals must be used (*optional*)

Photos courtesy of Legrand

437

### 404.16 Reconditioned Equipment

New section was added to address reconditioned electrical equipment

- Addresses control devices that can and can not be reconditioned after being damaged
- This damage might occur to this equipment after being subjected to water, fire, or products of combustion
- Safety, reliability or function of this equipment may be compromised if reconditioning of the items is attempted
- An inspector will have to be keen and alert to determine if the electrical equipment was damaged and if the affected items can be reconditioned

CMP- 9, Dean Fortney

438

### 404.16 Reconditioned Equipment

Switches covered in Article 404 **cannot be reconditioned** and must be replaced



Photos courtesy of Pass and Seymour/Legrand

Photo courtesy of IAEI Achieve

CMP- 9, Dean Fortney

439

### 404.30 Switch Enclosures with Doors

Clarifies the requirement for doors with switch mechanisms

- Switches of this type may allow access to live parts with the door open
- Access could allow unqualified persons to come in contact with energized equipment
- Injuries to children and other individuals who open these enclosures have resulted
- Access to the interior of a switch in the closed position now **will require the use of a tool**
- An **approved design providing equivalent protection** is also allowed
- Approval is issued by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) per Article 100
- Note: An example of a product that might be approved:** An Eaton brand switch that requires the simultaneous movement of two hands placed in different positions and acting against resistance in order to open (*Fred Hartwell comment*)

CMP- 9, Rick Hollander

440

### 404.30 Switch Enclosures with Doors

Access to the interior of a switch **in the closed position** now will require the **use of a tool**.

Switches of this type **may allow access** to live parts with the door open. Access could allow **unqualified persons to come in contact** with energized equipment. **Injuries to children** and other individuals who open these enclosures has resulted.

Photo courtesy of Siemens      Photo courtesy of Eaton

441

## Article 406

### Receptacles, Cord Connectors, and Attachment Plugs (Caps)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

442

### 406.2 Reconditioned Equipment

Relocated limitations for **reconditioned equipment** from 406.3(A) and 406.7 into new Section 406.2

- ▲ Add clarity for the user as to what can and cannot be reconditioned
- ▲ Provides one location concerning reconditioning requirements for receptacles, attachment plugs, cord connectors, and flanged surface devices
- ▲ Follows the code-wide xxx.2 "placeholder" location within the various articles
- ▲ Improves the useability of the Code for the electrical professional

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

443

### 406.2 Reconditioned Equipment

Relocated reconditioned equipment requirements from 406.3(A) and 406.7

*(Note: Follows the code wide xxx.2 "placeholder" location within the various articles)*

Photo courtesy of Leisure RV      Photos courtesy of Hubbell      Photo courtesy of Leviton

444

### 406.3(D) Receptacle Terminations

Is intended to emphasize the limitations for receptacles installed on 15-ampere branch circuits

- Task Group was formed with the direction of the NFPA Standards Council to review new requirements covering the use of copper-clad aluminum conductors
- Only **14 AWG copper conductors** used with **"push-in" type terminals** for receptacles are permitted
- Push-in type terminals are **not intended for use with** aluminum or copper-clad aluminum wire, 14 AWG-stranded copper wire, or 12 AWG solid or stranded copper wire
- This requirement is necessary to make sure receptacles are being installed according to their listing

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

445

### 406.3(D) Receptacle Terminations

Only 14 AWG copper conductors used with "push-in" type terminals for receptacles are permitted.

Push-in type terminals are not intended for use with aluminum or copper-clad aluminum wire, 14 AWG-stranded copper wire, or 12 AWG solid or stranded copper wire

**Push-in terminals**

This requirement is necessary to make sure receptacles are being installed according to their listing

Photos courtesy of Leviton

446

### 406.4(D)(3) Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection

Ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) receptacles are now required to be listed

- There was no such requirement in the NEC for GFCI devices to be listed
- Assures GFCI devices are listed and manufactured according to the minimum standards set forth in *UL 943, Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters*
- Removed the term "outlet," which improves and clarifies the intent of the current Code language

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

447

### 406.4(D)(3) Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter Protection

New requirement the ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) receptacles to be listed

**Assures GFCI devices are listed and manufactured according to the minimum standards set forth in UL 943, Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters**

**Remember..... test monthly**

Photo courtesy of Eaton article on Ground Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection Installation Tips and NEC 2020 Updates

448



**IAEI**

### 406.4(D)(8) Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment

Requires ground-fault protection of equipment (GFPE) to be provided for replacement receptacles that require GFPE protection by requirements found elsewhere in the NEC

- ⚠️ Needed to provide the ground-fault protection of equipment (GFPE) protection when modifications are made in areas such as marinas
- ⚠️ Will protect the people who use this electrical equipment and provide a safer electrical system
- ⚠️ Similar to existing requirements for receptacles being replaced such as tamper-resistant type receptacles, ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protected receptacles, AFCI protection, and other similar safety improvements

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

449

**IAEI**

### 406.4(D)(8) Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment

Requires **ground-fault protection of equipment (GFPE)** to be provided for **replacement receptacles** that require GFPE protection by requirements found elsewhere in the NEC.

(Photo shows GFPE and ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection at marina)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

450



451

**IAEI**

### 406.6(D) Receptacle Faceplate with Integral Night Light /USB Charger

Limits the faceplates load to **one watt or less** and specifically requires the screws on the receptacles to be made only of brass or copper alloy

- ⚠️ No substantiation has been received reporting instances where these faceplates have caused any issues
- ⚠️ Spring-tensioned contacts have an excellent safety record based upon over 4 million of these installed in the field
- ⚠️ The screws are to be constructed of brass or copper alloy
- ⚠️ Concerns with steel screws and the uncertainty of their reliability over the long term
- ⚠️ An exception was added to have an effective date of January 1, 2025, allowing spring tension contacts if the receptacle faceplate is specifically listed and identified for connecting to steel screws on receptacles

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

452



**406.6(D) Receptacle Faceplates with Integral Night Light/USB Charger**

Limits the faceplate's load to **one watt or less** and specifically requires the **screws on the receptacles** to be made only of **brass or copper alloy**



Photos courtesy of SnapPower

453

**406.9(C) Bathtub and Shower Space**

This clarifies receptacle restrictions in and around bathtubs and showers

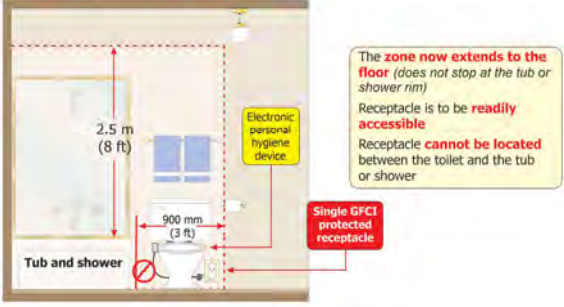
- ⚠️ The area below the bathtub rim was not included in the previous Code language
- ⚠️ Exception No. 4 was added to allow single receptacles within 36 inches of the tub or shower with limitations (*for dwelling units*)
- ⚠️ Allows toilets with electronic seats or personal hygiene devices for people with physical limitations, which require 120-volt receptacles installed within the 36-inch zone
- ⚠️ Receptacle is required to be a single receptacle and not be located in the space between the bathtub or shower and the toilet or bidet
- ⚠️ The single receptacle in this location would need to be ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protected

CMP-18, Bob Fahey | NFPA LINK | iaei.org

454

**406.9(C) Bathtub and Shower Space**

A **single, GFCI protected, receptacle** is allowed for electric personal hygiene devices.



The zone now extends to the floor (does not stop at the tub or shower rim)  
 Receptacle is to be **readily accessible**  
 Receptacle **cannot be located** between the toilet and the tub or shower

455

**406.9(C) Bathtub and Shower Space**

The single receptacle in this location would need to be ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protected



Photo courtesy of Washlet Plus- Toto

456

### 406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

Allows for an easier understanding of where tamper-resistant receptacles are required

- Additional areas and occupancies were added where tamper-resistant receptacles will now be required to help protect children
- Required for public transportation facilities such as bus stations, airports, and other areas such as gymnasiums, skating rinks, and fitness centers
- Required for agricultural buildings accessible to the general public, such as pumpkin patches, petting farms, Christmas tree farms, and similar venues
- Text for clinics, medical, dental offices, and outpatient facilities was revised to clarify the areas where these receptacles are to be installed

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey NFPA LINK® iaei.org

457

### 406.12 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

Additional areas and occupancies were added where tamper-resistant receptacles will now be required to help protect children

**Required for public transportation facilities**


- bus stations
- airports

**Required for agricultural buildings (accessible to the general public)**

- pumpkin patches
- petting farms
- Christmas tree farms
- similar venues

**Other areas**

- gymnasiums
- skating rinks
- fitness centers



Tamper-resistant (TR) receptacle courtesy of Legrand Pass and Seymour

Clinics, medical, dental offices, and outpatient facilities was revised to clarify the areas where these receptacles are to be installed

Copyright © IAEI 2023

458

### Article 408 Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards

Copyright © IAEI 2023

459

### 408.4 Descriptions Required

Requirements for circuit directories and descriptions were placed into a list format for clarity

- There was confusion with the previous text as written in paragraph form
- Information in a list format is easier to reference and understand
- Location of where power originates is critical information for inspectors, service persons, and other individuals that may need to locate the supply source
- It is not always readily apparent where the source is located
- Will clarify labeling and description for panelboards and panels for the electrical professional as well as the end user

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 9, Rick Hollander NFPA LINK® iaei.org

460

### 408.4 Descriptions Required

Requirements for circuit directories and descriptions were placed into a list format for clarity

**408.4(A) Circuit Directory or Circuit Description**  
 - 6 list conditions

**408.4(B) Source of Supply**  
 - 3 list conditions

Circuit and circuit modification required to be legibly identified as to its specific purpose or use. Identification should appear in a **circuit directory**.

461

### 408.9 Replacement Panelboards

Clarifies the replacement requirements for panelboards

- ▲ There are now two list items for the replacement of existing panelboards in an enclosure or cabinet
- ▲ (A)- If a panelboard is listed for the specific enclosure type, the replacement panelboard shall be allowed to retain its short-circuit current rating
  - ✎ This can be determined by the catalog number or other dimensional information
- ▲ (B)- If the replacement panelboard is not listed for the enclosure and the available fault current is greater than 10,000 amperes, the installation is to be field labeled
  - ✎ The replacement panelboard is to be identified for the application if the available fault current is 10,000 amperes or less
  - ✎ If the cabinet has any previous listing mark pertaining to the previous panelboard, the listing marks are to be removed

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

462

### 408.9 Replacement Panelboards

Two new list items clarify the replacement requirements for panelboards

- If a panelboard is listed for the specific enclosure type, the replacement panelboard shall be allowed to retain its short-circuit current rating **[408.9(A)]**
- If the replacement panelboard is not listed for the enclosure and the available fault current is greater than 10,000 amperes, the installation is to be field labeled **[408.9(B)]**
- The panelboard is to be identified for the application if the available fault current is 10,000 amperes or less
- If the cabinet has any **previous listing mark** pertaining to the previous panelboard, the listing marks **is to be removed**

The **yellow tag** is for the listed cabinet or enclosure and the **white tag** is for the listed panelboard

463

### 408.38 Enclosure (Panelboards)

The panelboard and enclosure combination shall be evaluated for the application when a panelboard is installed in a cabinet, cutout box, or identified enclosure and has an available fault current greater than 10,000 amperes

- ▲ Cabinets are the common enclosure for panelboards, but they are being installed in other types of enclosures
- ▲ When an existing panelboard needs to be replaced and the cabinet or other enclosure is installed in a block wall, this can be problematic
- ▲ The new requirement for the application to be evaluated where the available fault current is greater than 10,000 amperes will provide guidance and a workable solution for these instances
- ▲ An exception exists for equipment without a deadfront and maintained by a qualified person

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

464

### 408.38 Enclosure (Panelboards)

These shall be evaluated for the application when a panelboard is installed in a cabinet, cutout box, or identified enclosure and having an available fault current **greater than 10,000 amperes**

Cabinets are the common enclosure for panelboards, **but they are being installed** in other types of enclosures

When an existing panelboard needs to be replaced and the cabinet or other enclosure is **installed in a block wall**, this can be problematic

The new requirement for the application to be evaluated where the available fault current is **greater than 10,000 amperes** will provide guidance and a workable solution for these instances

Copyright © IAEI 2023

465

### 408.43 Panelboard Orientation

Panelboards **cannot be installed** in the **face-down position**

- Added due to working space concerns
- Even with acceptable working space, it would be very difficult for a qualified worker to safely work due to the installer lying, kneeling, or standing on a floor surface looking up
- Movement from an arc blast or arc fault event might only be to the left or right from the equipment
- In some cases, the panelboard overcurrent protective devices would only be accessible utilizing a step ladder
- Some *NEC* articles, such as Article 518, may allow for face-up applications as it has been deemed necessary to comply with the manufacturer's installation requirements

CMP-9, Rick Hollander

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

466

### 408.43 Panelboard Orientation

Panelboards cannot be installed in the **face-down position**

It would be **very difficult** for a qualified worker **to safely work** when lying, kneeling, or standing on a floor surface looking up at the components of the panelboard

Make sure to abide by **NFPA 70E** requirements

Copyright © IAEI 2023

467

### 408.43 Panelboard Orientation (cont.)

Panelboards cannot be installed in the **face-down position**

CMP-9, Rick Hollander

Photo courtesy of Lowell Reith

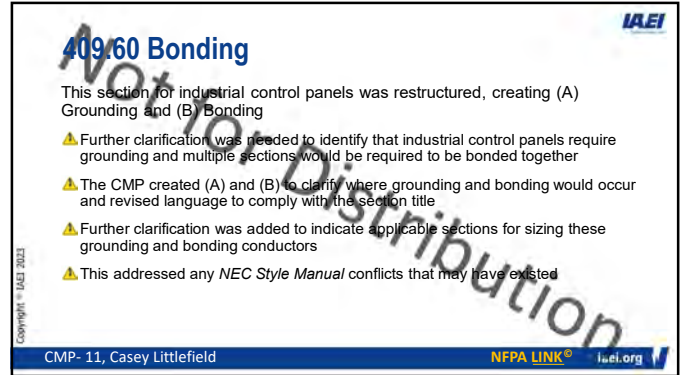
iaei.org

468

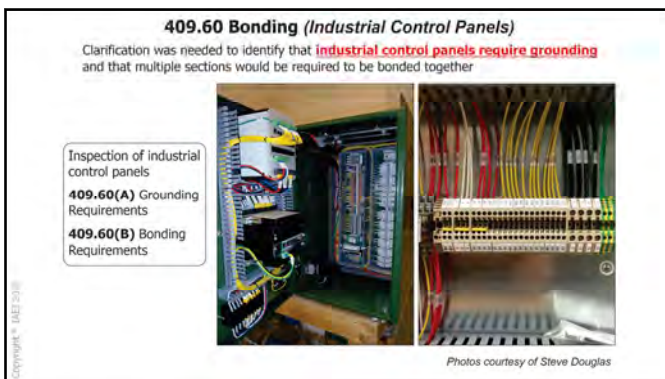




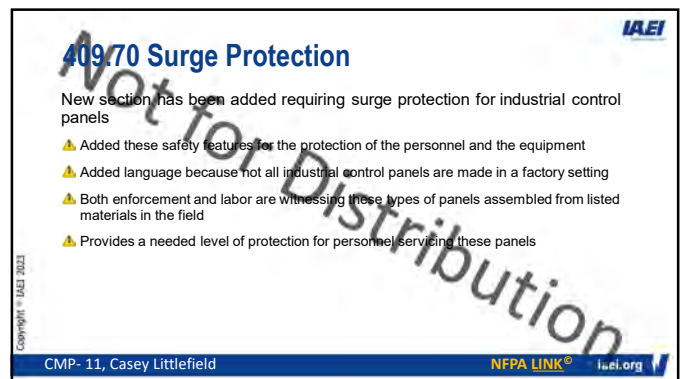
469



470



471



472



**409.70 Surge Protection (Industrial Control Panel)**  
 New section has been added requiring **surge protection** for industrial control panel

Added for the protection of personnel and equipment



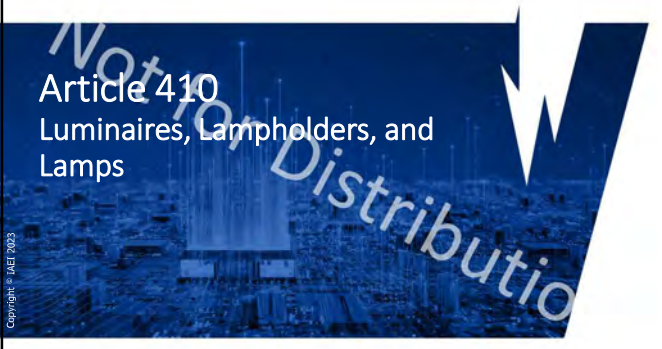
Example of surge protective device



Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

473

Article 410  
 Luminaires, Lampholders, and Lamps



Copyright © IAEI 2023

474

**410.2 Reconditioned Equipment**

Ballasts, LED drivers, and lamps added to the list of items not allowed to be reconditioned

- ⚠ This information was relocated from 410.7 where it previously prohibited luminaires, lampholders, and retrofit kits from being reconditioned
- ⚠ Placed into 410.2 as the xxx.2 location is becoming the placeholder location throughout the NEC for reconditioned equipment requirements
- ⚠ Electrical components within luminaires contain specialized materials, parts, and techniques specified by the original equipment manufacturer
- ⚠ If these items are not properly reconditioned, important safety features may not function properly with safety and reliability being compromised

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

475

**410.2 Reconditioned Equipment**  
 Ballasts, LED drivers, and lamps added to list of **items not allowed** to be reconditioned

Electrical components within luminaires contain specialized materials, parts, and techniques specified by the original equipment manufacturer



Improper reconditioning may result in important safety features not functioning properly leaving safety and reliability compromised



Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

476

**410.10(F) Luminaires Installed in or Under Roof Decking**

Requires a minimum of 38 mm (1 1/2 in.) to luminaires under any roof system where physical damage can occur to the luminaire

- ⚠️ Roofers installing screws and other fasteners occasionally miss trusses or rafters and could inadvertently damage luminaires
- ⚠️ This previously only applied to metal corrugated style roof systems
- ⚠️ An exception was added where installations of 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete covering metal-corrugated sheet roof decking
- ⚠️ This exception utilizing concrete does not require 38 mm (1 1/2 in.) spacing between the deck and the luminaire

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

477

**410.10(F) Luminaires Installed in or Under Roof Decking**

Requires a minimum of 1 1/2 in. of distance to luminaires under any roof system when physical damage can occur to the luminaire

**Note:** luminaire appears to be fastened to roof decking

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

478

**410.10(F) Luminaires Installed in or Under Roof Decking**

Appears to have the 1 1/2 in. of clearance between the luminaire and the roof deck

**Note:** see length of screws commonly used to install roof decking components

**Note:** see length of screws commonly used to install roof decking components

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

479

**410.71 Disconnecting Means for Fluorescent or LED Luminaires**

Relocated the requirement for disconnects for luminaires to this location because LED drivers were added to this section

- ⚠️ Originally added to the Code in response to an accident involving a double-ended lamp fluorescent ballast replacement
- ⚠️ Many fluorescent lamps are being discontinued and replaced with LED lamps
- ⚠️ Many are being upgraded to incorporate LED lamps to meet energy conservation requirements
- ⚠️ Addresses a hazard that would exist with either style of luminaire
- ⚠️ Only addresses LED-type luminaires that are the equivalent to fluorescent luminaires that utilize double-ended lamps


Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

480

**410.71 Disconnecting Means for Fluorescent or LED Luminaires**  
 Relocated the requirement for disconnects for luminaires to this location because LED drivers were added to this section



Many fluorescent luminaires are being upgraded by electrical professionals like me to incorporate LED lamps to meet energy conservation requirements

Photos courtesy of Ideal Industries

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

481

**Article 410 Part XVII- Germicidal Irradiation**

Part XVII of Article 410 has been added to address the increasing use of germicidal luminaires for disinfecting purposes

- ▲ Germicidal irradiation has been used to disinfect air, water, and surfaces for many years
- ▲ There has been an increased interest in the application and installation of these luminaires due to the COVID-19 pandemic
- ▲ Possible eye and skin damage can occur to personnel if not installed as intended
- ▲ Germicidal irradiation luminaires are required to be listed
- ▲ Are typically not permitted for general lighting or to be installed within dwelling units unless specifically listed
- ▲ Luminaires have minimum mounting heights, among other limitations

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023


482

**Article 410 Part XVII- Germicidal Irradiation**  
 New Part to article addressing the increasing use of germicidal luminaires for disinfecting purposes

Germicidal irradiation uses ultraviolet light to kill microorganisms  
 Used in environments such as:

- food production
- air purification
- water purification

Also an alternative to pesticide use



Copyright © IAEI 2023

483



484





485

**IAEI**

### 410.184 GFCI Protection and SPGFCI Protection

Revised to clarify when GFCI protection is required for horticultural lighting, with an exception added concerning Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter (SPGFCI) requirements

- ▲ The revisions will clarify that GFCI or SPGFCI protection is required for lighting equipment employing flexible cords that are hard-wired
- ▲ Although not specifically specified in this section, cord-connected installations would also have to be in accordance with 410.62(C)(1)(b) or (c)
- ▲ A new exception was added to require SPGFCI protection on circuits exceeding 150 volts to ground
- ▲ An Informational Note was also added directing users of the Code to UL 943C, *Outline of Investigation for Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters*, for further information on SPGFCI devices

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Contributor, Mark Hilbert

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

486



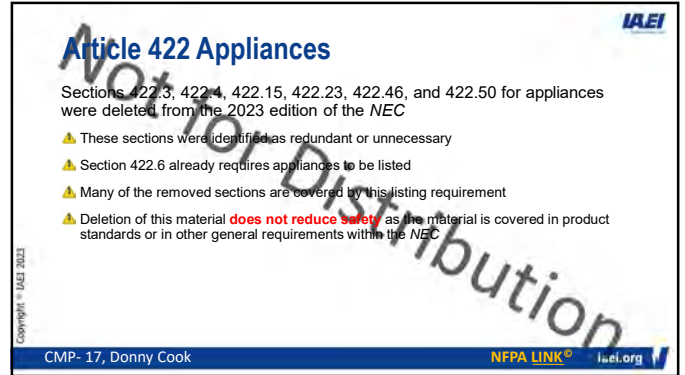
487



488



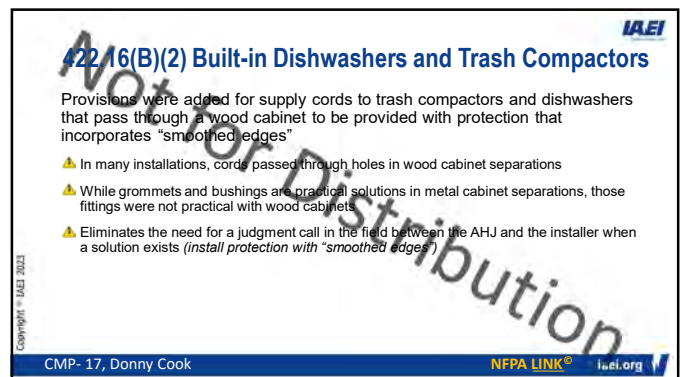
489



490



491



492



### 422.16(B)(2) Built-In Dishwashers and Trash Compactors

Supply cords to **trash compactors and dishwashers** that pass through a wood cabinet to be provided with protection that incorporates "smoothed edges"

Cord opening can be a grommet or an opening with smoothed edges

Cabinet barrier between sink area and DW compartment

Dishwasher

Disposer

Copyright © IAEI 2023

493

### 422.18 Ceiling-Suspended (*Paddle*) Fans

Has been subdivided and includes a new first level subdivision (B) that prohibits metal parts of ceiling fans from areas over tub and shower spaces

- ▲ Prohibited "zone" correlates with the prohibited zone described in 410.10(D) for luminaires
- ▲ Recognized an elevated risk where an individual could touch the luminaire while standing in the water
- ▲ Correlates the ceiling fan requirement with the luminaire requirement since the risk is similar
- ▲ Electrical professionals were already likely applying the requirement in 410.10(D) to ceiling fans
- ▲ Improves usability and enforcement by including text specific to installations of ceiling-suspended (*paddle*) fans

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

494

### 422.18 Ceiling-Suspended (*Paddle*) Fans

Prohibits metal parts of ceiling fans from areas over tub and shower spaces

No metal parts of ceiling fans in bathrooms and shower spaces  
Not within the zone shown in the illustration  
Includes the space directly over the tub or shower stall

2.5 m (8 ft)

900 mm (3 ft)

Zone correlates with the prohibited zone described in 410.10(D) for luminaires  
Individual could touch the luminaire while standing in the water (*shock hazard*)  
Most electrical professionals have already been installing in this fashion

Copyright © IAEI 2023

495

### Article 424 Fixed Electric Space Heating Equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2023

496

### 424.10 Special Permission

Special Permission was deleted, and requirements previously found at 424.9 were relocated to 424.10 for Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment

- 2020 NEC included a provision in 424.10 to permit the installation of heating equipment by methods other than those included in Article 424 with special permission
- 424.10 is now entitled "General" and is in Part II of Article 424
- This provision was determined to be redundant as 90.4(C) permits the use of special permission
- AHJs can utilize 90.4(C) where an equivalent installation is provided and the option for special permission is needed for approval
- Removes redundancy and adds clarity and usability to the Code

CMP- 17, Donny Cook      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

497

### 424.10 General (Special Permission)

Special permission has been deleted, and requirements found at 424.9 were relocated to 424.10

424.10 is entitled "General" and is in Part II of Article 424  
 This provision was redundant as 90.4(C) permits the use of special permission  
 Removed redundant text at this location

The AHJ, can allow special permission for installations involving this equipment

Factory installed Receptacle Permitted

Factory installed receptacle is in lieu of requirement found in 210.52

498

### 424.48 Installation of Cables in Walls

New section will allow heating cables to be installed in walls with specific protection and limitations

- Concerns existed for heating cable installed in walls, and the need for installation with proper protection was evident
- Provision includes a **January 1, 2026 future effective date**
- This change allows equipment manufacturers, standards developers, and certification agencies an opportunity to develop products and address interoperability issues before the future effective date

CMP- 17, Donny Cook      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

499

### 424.48 Installation of Cables in Walls

Will allow heating cable to be installed **in walls** with specific protection and limitations

Current installation of heating cables in floors

Allows for the installation of heating cables in walls  
 The need for installation information with proper protection was evident  
 Includes a **January 1, 2026, future effective date**

Allows the equipment manufacturers, standards developers, and certification agencies opportunities to develop products and address interoperability issues **before the future effective date**

500

**424.93(C) Installation of Heating Panels in Walls**

New first level subdivision was created, allowing heating panels and heating panel sets to be installed in walls with specific protection and limitations

- ▲ Concerns existed for heating cable installed in walls, and the need for installation with proper protection was evident
- ▲ Provision includes a **January 1, 2026 future effective date**
- ▲ This change allows equipment manufacturers, standards developers, and certification agencies an opportunity to develop products and address interoperability issues before the future effective date
- ▲ This revision correlates with requirements in 424.48 for heating cables

Copyright © IAEI 2023


CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

501

**424.93(C) Installation of Heating Panels in Walls**

Requirements for **heating cable installed in walls** and the need for proper installation also correlates with requirements in 424.48 for heating cables



Provision has a **future effective date of January 1, 2026** allows equipment manufacturers, standards developers, and certification agencies an opportunity to develop products and address interoperability issues

Photos courtesy of Dreamstime

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

502

**Article 425  
Fixed Resistance and Electrode  
Industrial Process Heating  
Equipment**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

503

**425.10 Special Permission**

Special Permission was deleted, and requirements previously found at 425.8 were relocated to 425.10

- ▲ 2020 NEC included a provision in 425.10 to permit the installation of industrial process heating equipment by methods other than those included in Article 425 with special permission
- ▲ 425.10 is now entitled "General" and is in Part II of Article 424
- ▲ This provision was determined to be redundant as 90.4(C) permits the use of special permission
- ▲ AHJs can utilize 90.4(C) where an equivalent installation is provided and the option for special permission is needed for approval
- ▲ Removes redundancy and adds clarity and usability to the Code

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

504

**425.10 Industrial Process Heating Equipment (Special Permission)**  
 Deleted special permission language as it was redundant with 90.4(C) which permits the use of special permission within the Code and requirements found at 425.8 were relocated to 425.10

The authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) grants special permission and it is advisable to get this permission in writing

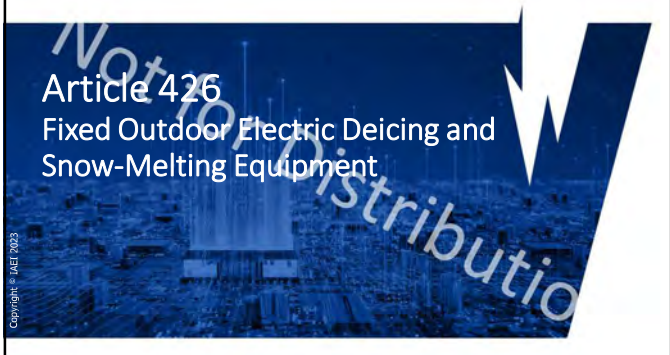


Photo courtesy of Donny Cook and IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

505

**Article 426**  
 Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment



Copyright © IAEI 2023

506

**426.14 Special Permission**

Section 426.14 pertaining to special permission for Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment was deleted

- ▲ 2020 NEC included a provision in 426.14 to permit the installation of fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow melting equipment by methods other than those included in Article 426 with special permission
- ▲ This provision was determined to be redundant as 90.4(C) permits the use of special permission
- ▲ AHJs can utilize 90.4(C) where an equivalent installation is provided and the option for special permission is needed for approval
- ▲ Removes redundancy and adds clarity and usability to the Code

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

507

**426.14 Special Permission (Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing/Snow-Melting Equipment)**  
 Special permission for Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment has been deleted

An AHJ can utilize 90.4(C) where an equivalent installation is provided and the option for special permission is needed for approval

Special permission is the written consent of the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) (see Article 100)



Copyright © IAEI 2023

508



**426.28 Ground-Fault Protection**

Recognizes that manufacturers of **fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow melting equipment** have an option to require ground-fault protection with reduced current and time threshold values providing a higher degree of protection than previously required

- Helps address the possible conflict that may arise between the requirements of 426.28 and the requirements of 110.3(B)
- This conflict may arise when a higher degree of protection is included in the manufacturer instructions of the fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow melting equipment than that required by 426.28
- This emphasizes the importance of following the manufacturers' installation instructions provided with the equipment, especially when they exceed what the *NEC* requires
- Designers, installers, and AHJs must review installation instructions prior to installation to ensure compliance

CMP- 17, Donny Cook      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

509

**426.28 Ground-Fault Protection**  
Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow Melting Equipment

Address the possible conflict that may arise between the requirements of 426.28 and those of 110.3(B)

Manufacturers of **fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow melting equipment** have an option to require ground-fault protection with reduced current and time threshold values providing a higher degree of protection than previously required

510

**Article 427**  
Fixed Electric Heating Equipment  
for Pipelines and Vessels

CMP- 17, Donny Cook      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

511

**427.35 Scope**

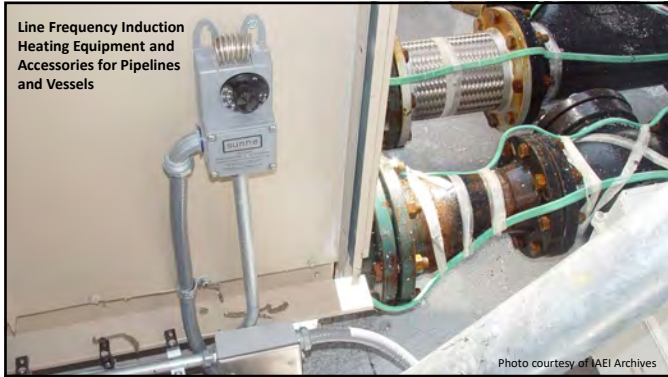
This section, which covered the installation of **line frequency induction heating equipment** and accessories for pipelines and vessels, has been deleted

- This section was determined to be redundant as 427.1 already covers the scope of the article
- This specialized heating equipment will continue to be covered in this article
- The removal of the scope requirements at 427.35 will increase usability and reduce confusion for the electrical professional

CMP- 17, Donny Cook      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

512





513



514

**430.1 Scope (Figure 430.1)**

The previous figure has been deleted, and an expanded figure has been added to include all relevant parts of the motor circuit and parts of Article 430

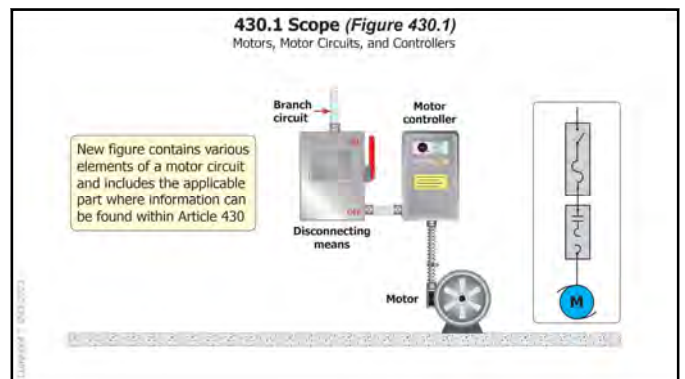
- ▲ The revised figure provides a pictogram of the various elements of a motor circuit and includes the applicable part where information can be found within Article 430
- ▲ This provides a more comprehensive detail for motors and their control devices
- ▲ Will provide additional clarity and application to the various requirements that apply to this equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 11, Casey Littlefield

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

515



516

**430.2 Reconditioned Motors**

New guidance along with a new informational note has been added towards the reconditioning of electric motors

- Reconditioning of motors has been successfully occurring for many years
- This procedure has ensured that facilities are able to operate without experiencing downtimes
- Nameplate information supplied on a motor is critical to the process of reconditioning and should never be removed unless the original ratings or characteristics of the motor are altered
- Motors used in hazardous (*classified*) locations can be reconditioned and should be listed as reconditioned when installed in a Class I, Division 1 (or Zone 0 or 1) location(s)
- ANSI/EASA AR100-2020, Recommended Practice for the Repair of Rotating Electrical Apparatus**, contains valuable information about the rewinding and repair of electrical motors

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee

517

**430.2 Reconditioned Motors**

New guidance along with a new informational note has been added towards the reconditioning of electric motors

Reconditioning of motors have been successfully occurring for many years  
This procedure has assured that facilities are able to operate without experiencing downtimes

See ANSI/EASA AR100-2020, Recommended Practice for the Repair of Rotating Electrical Apparatus

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Photo courtesy of Rob Bowman, Denver Wastewater

518

**Article 440**  
**Air-Conditioning and Refrigerating Equipment**

519

**440.8 Single Machine and Location**

New language has been added indicating that **air-conditioning and refrigeration equipment such as** mini-split unit heating and cooling systems are not to be installed in a tub or shower zone

- This equipment is being installed in bathtub and shower spaces due to a lack of wall space
- Occurs in older homes with smaller bathrooms
- Creates a clear danger to the occupants
- Now **prohibits the installation** of these units in the zone around bathtub and shower spaces
- The dimensions of the zone are consistent with Code requirements for other electrical equipment or devices (3 feet horizontally and 8 feet vertically from the top of a bathtub rim or shower stall threshold)

CMP- 11, Casey Littlefield

520

### 440.8 Single Machine and Location

Mini-split heating and cooling systems are **not to be installed** in a tub or shower zone.

Photo courtesy of Casey Littlefield

If you don't have room for this item to be installed, the *NEC* does not allow it and the inspector will not accept it.

Copyright © IAEI 2023

521

### 440.11 General

Added additional language requiring disconnects with covers exposing live parts to **require a tool to open or be capable of being locked** (if readily accessible to unqualified persons)

- ▲ Requires air-conditioning and refrigerating equipment disconnects that have hinged covers, and, when open, have exposed live parts, be locked to prevent children and unqualified people from accidental contact
- ▲ CMP generally agreed that knife blade type disconnects pose the biggest hazard even if properly maintained
- ▲ CMP also made it clear that a lock would be anything that required a tool to open
- ▲ "Zip-ties" would require the use of a tool to remove the cover
- ▲ This practice (*zip-ties*) is already used by many electrical and mechanical contractors
- ▲ Talk to the local AHJ and make sure he/she is on board with the use of zip ties for this purpose

CMP- 11, Casey Littlefield      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

522

### 440.11 General (Air-Conditioning and Refrigerating Equipment)

Disconnect with "live parts" accessible to unqualified persons by lifting the cover

Cover of disconnect required to be locked by anything requiring a tool to open (*tie wrap may be acceptable*)

Tie Wrap (ask AHJ)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

523

### 440.14 Location

Adds a reference to 110.26(A), which makes it clear that working space clearances are required for air-conditioning and refrigerating equipment

- ▲ HVAC contractors install their equipment per the manufacturer's specifications
- ▲ Some are not aware of the minimum required clearances in 110.26 for disconnects that require servicing
- ▲ Adds clarity for the inspector and installer that minimum clearances must be maintained at air-conditioning and refrigerating disconnects

CMP- 11, Casey Littlefield      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

524



525



526



527



528



### 445.18(A) Disconnecting Means

New guidance has been added permitting the disconnecting means to be located **within the generator** behind a hinged cover, door, or enclosure panel.

- When the generator disconnecting means is located in the generator enclosure, a **field-applied label to be provided** indicating the location of the disconnecting means.
- Field labeling requirements provide clarity for the purpose of the disconnecting means **to aid first responders**.
- Field-applied labels are to meet requirements found at 110.21(B) (*Field-Applied Hazard Markings*).

CMP-13, Steve Froemming | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

529


### 445.18(A) Disconnecting Means

New guidance has been added permitting the disconnecting means to be located within the generator behind a hinged cover, door, or enclosure panel.

When the **generator disconnecting means** is located in the generator enclosure, a **field-applied label** to be provided indicating the location of the disconnecting means.

Field-applied labels are to meet requirements found at 110.21(B) (*Field-Applied Hazard Markings*).

**Note:** Generator disconnecting means located inside generator enclosure.



CMP-13, Steve Froemming | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

530

### 445.19 Emergency Shutdown of Prime Mover

A new Section 445.19 will separate the generator emergency shutdown requirements from the generator disconnect requirements.

- Generators with **greater than 15 kW rating** located at other than one- and two-family dwelling units are to be equipped with a remote emergency stop switch that will shut down the prime mover.
- Switch is to be located outside the equipment room or generator enclosure at a readily accessible location and meet the requirements found at 445.19(A)(1) and (A)(2).
- New language at (C) clarifies that the emergency shutdown device located at one- and two-family dwelling units installed on the exterior of the generator enclosure meets the requirements of this section.
- This emergency shutdown device is to be marked as the **"Generator Emergency Shutdown"** and meet the requirements of 110.21(B) (*Field-Applied Hazard Markings*).

CMP-13, Steve Froemming | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

531


### 445.19 Emergency Shutdown of Prime Mover

Separates the generator **emergency shutdown requirements** from the **generator disconnect requirements**.

Switch is to be located outside equipment room or generator enclosure at a readily accessible location and meet requirements at 445.19(A)(1) and (A)(2).

The emergency shutdown device located at one- and two-family dwelling units installed on the exterior of the generator enclosure meets the requirements of this section **[445.19(C)]**.

**At other than one- and two-family dwelling units**, generators with greater than 15 kW rating are to be equipped with a remote emergency stop switch that will shut down the prime mover. This emergency shutdown device is to be marked as the **"Generator Emergency Shutdown"** and meet the requirements of 110.21(B) (*Field-Applied Hazard Markings*).



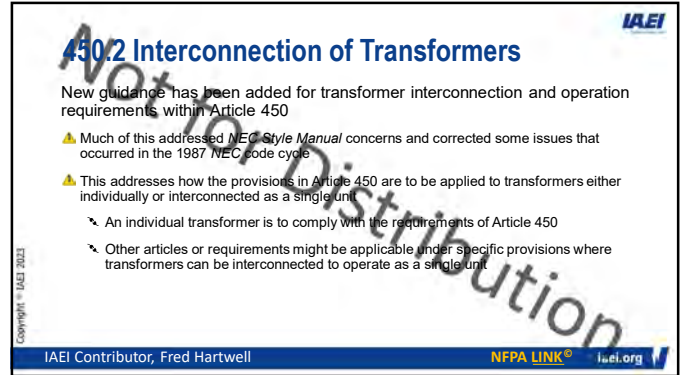
CMP-13, Steve Froemming | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

532

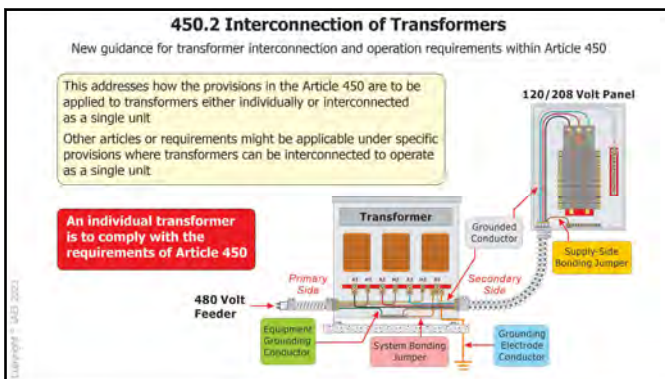




533



534



535



536

## 470.2 Reconditioned Equipment

Is now the placeholder for reconditioned equipment and indicating that reconditioning of a resistor is not permitted and that reactors follow manufacturers' guidelines

- ⚠️ *NEC* did not provide clear directions for the reconditioning of both resistors and reactors
- ⚠️ Resistor manufacturers have made it clear that resistors are not to be reconditioned
- ⚠️ Reactor manufacturers provide guidelines in their installation instructions and also provide standards for their reconditioning
- ⚠️ Should now be clear to all electrical professionals regarding the reconditioning allowances for resistors and reactors

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 11, Casey Littlefield      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

537

## 470.2 Reconditioned Equipment

The placeholder in Article 470 for reconditioned equipment permissions for resistors and reactors

**Resistor** manufacturers state that resistors are **not to be reconditioned**

Reactor manufacturers provide guidelines in their installation instructions and provide standards for their reconditioning

Previously the *NEC* had no clear requirements



Example of a Reactor



Example of Various Resistors

Photo courtesy of Casey Littlefield

Copyright © IAEI 2023

538

## Article 495 Equipment Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

Copyright © IAEI 2023

539

## Article 495 Equipment Over 1000 Volts AC, 1500 Volts DC, Nominal

All the requirements previously found in Article 490 (*Equipment Over 1000 Volts, Nominal*) have been **moved to Article 495**

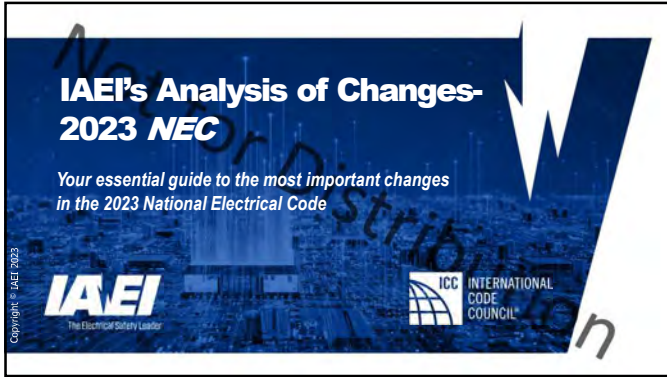
- ⚠️ This action will provide an article that, in future additions, will contain all installation requirements pertaining to equipment over 1000 volts AC and 1500 volts DC
- ⚠️ The creation of a "starting point" for other code-making panels to consider relocating their requirements that pertain to equipment of this nature
- ⚠️ This new article will result in easier use of the Code when searching for requirements on this topic

Copyright © IAEI 2023

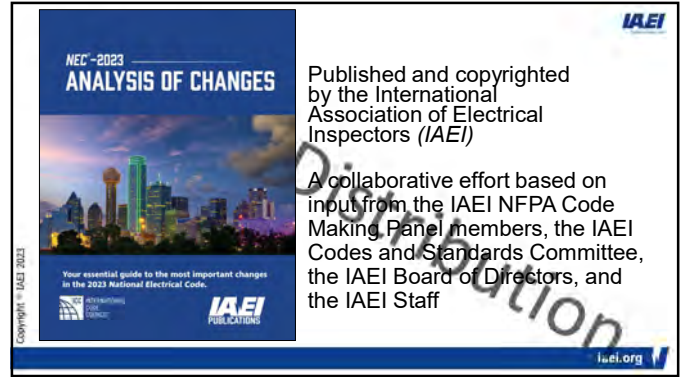
CMP- 9, Dean Fortney      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

540





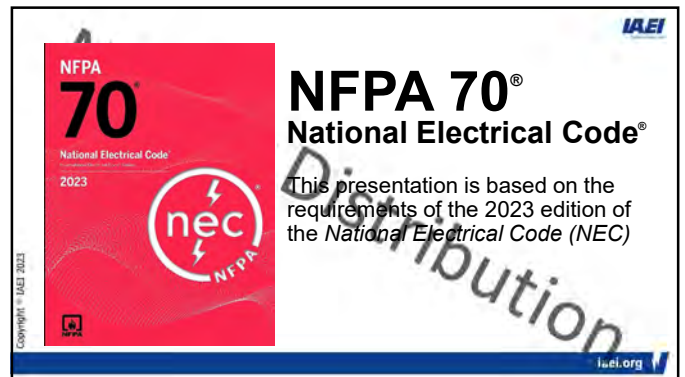
1



2



3



4



**NFPA LINK** The IAEI appreciates the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) for allowing us to insert code language links for the 2023 NEC into the text slides of this presentation

The links were provided by the NFPA, and they control the accuracy of the link address

The presenter of this material must have a subscription to NFPA LINK if the presenter chooses to show the 2023 NEC language during a presentation

Look for the NFPA LINK icon in the lower right corner of the text slide and click on it to take you to the 2023 NEC language

**Note:** it is sometimes helpful to have NFPA LINK open and minimized during the presentation as it helps get to the information more quickly

IAEI  
Copyright © IAEI 2023  
iaei.org

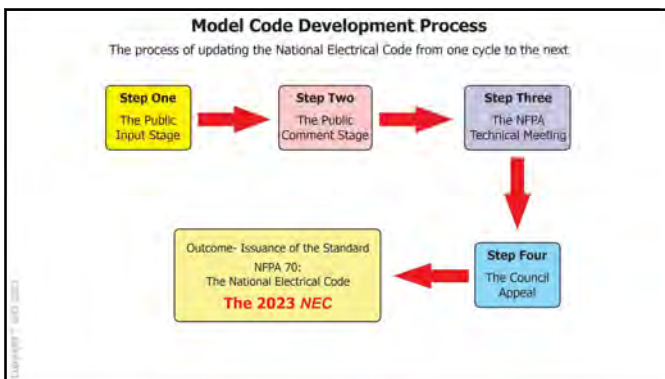
5

## General Information 2023 National Electric Code

- Model Code Development
- IAEI Involvement
- IAEI Codes and Standards
- NFPA NEC 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Draft Meeting
- Public Input and Public Comments
- General Terms and IAEI Characters

IAEI  
Copyright © IAEI 2023  
iaei.org

6



7

## The Development of the 2023 NEC

Interesting information about this revised document

- ▲ IAEI provided 36 members as CMP representatives to the NEC revision process
- ▲ IAEI Codes and Standards Committee vetted and submitted IAEI endorsed Public Inputs and Public Comments to NFPA for consideration
- ▲ NFPA NEC First and Second Draft meetings were conducted virtually instead of in person
- ▲ Code Making Panel Task Group meetings were also conducted virtually
- ▲ There following were submitted to NFPA for this edition of the Code:
  - ✦ [4006 Public Inputs](#)
  - ✦ [1805 First Revisions](#)
  - ✦ [1956 Public Comments](#)
  - ✦ [900 Second Revisions](#)
  - ✦ [441 Correlating Notes](#)
  - ✦ [55 Certified Amending Motions](#)
- ▲ Several IAEI members served on NFPA Correlating Committee Task Groups to work on issues needing to be resolved

IAEI  
Copyright © IAEI 2023  
iaei.org

8



### IAEI Code Making Panel Representatives

<b>CMP-1</b>	<b>CMP-2</b>	<b>CMP-3</b>	<b>CMP-4</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Paul Sood</li> <li>Greg Chontow</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>David Humphrey*</b></li> <li>Joseph Wages, Jr.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Timothy Mikloiche</li> <li>Rhonda Parkhurst</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Jim Rogers*</b></li> <li>Pete Jackson</li> </ul>
<b>CMP-5</b>	<b>CMP-6</b>	<b>CMP-7</b>	<b>CMP-8</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>William Pancake</li> <li>Richard O'Brien</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Susan Scarce*</b></li> <li>Borgia Noel</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Keith Lofland*</b></li> <li>Dean Hunter</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Tom Moore*</b></li> <li>Scott Higgins</li> </ul>
<b>CMP-9</b>	<b>CMP-10</b>	<b>CMP-11</b>	<b>CMP-12</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rick Hollander</li> <li>Dean Fortney</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>David Williams</li> <li>Doug Smith</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Charles Littlefield</li> <li>Jack Jamison, Jr.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phil Clark</li> <li>Thomas Couch</li> </ul>

\* Denotes Chair Position of CMP

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

9

### IAEI Code Making Panel Representatives

<b>CMP-13</b>	<b>CMP-14</b>	<b>CMP-15</b>	<b>CMP-16</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Steve Froemming</li> <li>Larry Wildermuth</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Halwood C Kines</li> <li>Mark Chrysler</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mark Hilbert</li> <li>Bret Stoddard</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jeff Fitzloff</li> <li>Gerald O'Connor</li> </ul>
<b>CMP-17</b>	<b>CMP-18</b>	<b>NEC Correlating Committee</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Donny Cook</li> <li>Chris Faucette</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Robert Fahey*</b></li> <li>James Hathorn</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>David Williams</li> <li>Donny Cook</li> </ul>	

\* Denotes Chair Position of CMP

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

10

### IAEI Codes and Standards Committee (IAEI CSC)

**▲ David Humphrey, Chair**

- Donny Cook
- Thomas Domitrovich
- Pete Jackson
- Tim McClintock
- Jim Rogers
- Mike Savage
- Joseph Wages, Jr.
- David Williams

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

11

### IAEI Subject Matter Experts

A special thank you to electrical industry experts who provided input or conducted reviews of this material

▲ Paul Dobrowsky	▲ Don Iverson	▲ Chris Faucette
▲ Fred Hartwell	▲ Peter Graser	▲ Donny Cook
▲ Mark Hilbert	▲ Tim McClintock	▲ Jim Rogers
▲ Christel Hunter	▲ Dean Hunter	▲ Pete Jackson
▲ Chad Kennedy	▲ David Williams	▲ Rob Bowman
▲ Chuck Mello	▲ Thomas Domitrovich	▲ Scott Humphrey
▲ Thomas Lichtenstein	▲ David Humphrey	▲ Steve Thomas
▲ Bryan Holland	▲ Cliff Norton	

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

12

## Terms Used During the Presentation

**IAEI**

AHJ- Authority Having Jurisdiction  
 CMP- Code Making Panel  
 CPSC- Consumer Products Safety Commission  
 IAEI- International Association of Electrical Inspectors  
 ICSC- IAEI Codes and Standards Committee  
 NEC- National Electrical Code  
 NECA- National Electrical Contractors Association  
 NEMA- National Equipment Manufacturers Association  
 NFPA- National Fire Protection Association  
 UL- Underwriters Laboratories

Copyright © IAEI 2023

iaei.org

13

### IAEI Industry Partnerships

**THANK YOU** for your continued partnership with the IAEI in the promotion of electrical safety

14

## Chapter 5 Equipment for General Use

- Chapter 500      • Chapter 550
- Chapter 505      • Chapter 551
- Chapter 515      • Chapter 555
- Chapter 517      • Chapter 590
- Chapter 530
- Chapter 547

Copyright © IAEI 2023

15

## Article 500 Hazardous (*Classified*) Locations Classes I, II, and III, Divisions 1 and 2

Copyright © IAEI 2023

16

**500.4 Documentation**

Added additional language to assist the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) for requirements on documentation for hazardous (*classified*) locations

- ▲ Revised to require that the documentation provided includes an **area classification drawing**
- ▲ Will **create a consistent method** of documenting hazardous (*classified*) locations
- ▲ Documentation will clearly indicate the boundaries between the classified areas and unclassified areas
- ▲ New language will assist the electrical plans examiner, inspector, and installer verify the installation meets *NEC* requirements for all hazardous (*classified*) locations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

17



18

**500.5 Classification of Locations**

(D) Class III Locations  
 (1) Class III, Division 1  
 (a) Combustible Fibers/Flyings

Previous language has been completely reworded to align with the new definition for combustible fibers/flyings and the edits for combustible dust

- ▲ Change involving Class III locations resulted from members of several technical committees as part of a Task Group
- ▲ Members from *NFPA 70*, *NFPA 499*, *NFPA 652*, and *NFPA 654* worked to develop new definitions that would provide consistency in all the documents
- ▲ Necessary for correlation with changes to *NEC Articles 502, 503, and 506* and with other *NFPA* dust-related standards
- ▲ Will help the industry determine the type of hazardous (*classified*) locations that exist

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

19

**500.5(D)(1)(a) Combustible Fibers/Flyings**

For information on Class III, Division 1 locations see 500.5(D)(1)(a) and (D)(1)(b)

500.5(D)(1)(a) for **combustible fibers/flyings**

500.5(D)(1)(b) for **ignitable fibers/flyings**

**NFPA 499**-Recommended Practice for the Classification of Combustible Dusts and of Hazardous (*Classified*) Locations for Electrical Installations in Chemical Process Areas

**NFPA 652**- Standard on the Fundamentals of Combustible Dust

**NFPA 654**- Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing, and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

20

**500.8 Equipment**  
**(D) Temperature**  
**(2) Class II Temperature / (3) Class III Temperature**

Previous language for Class II and Class III temperature has been edited and revised to align with the new definition for combustible fibers/flyings

- ▲ *NFPA Standards Committee* directed committees to resolve conflicts among the documents
- ▲ Revisions are based on the revised definitions for combustible fibers/flyings and ignitable fibers/flyings
- ▲ Now includes requirements concerning metal fibers/flyings in 500.8(D)(2)
- ▲ Was necessary for correlation with changes to Articles 502, 503, and 506 and other *NFPA* dust-related standards
- ▲ Will help the industry to determine the type of equipment permitted in these locations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org


21

**500.8(D)(2) and (3) Class II and III Temperature**  
 Language for Class II and Class III temperature has been edited and revised to align with the new definition for combustible fibers/flyings

This was necessary for correlation with changes to Articles 502, 503, and 506 as well as other *NFPA* dust-related standards

**Definition factors:**

- 500 µm in nominal size
- can form an explosible mixture
- needs suspended in air
- can occur at standard atmospheric pressure and temperature



**Examples of various equipment suitable for these locations**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

22

**Article 505**  
**Zone 0, 1, and 2 Locations**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

23

**505.9 Equipment**  
**(C) Equipment Suitable for Hazardous (Classified) Locations**

The text was deleted at 505.9(C)(2)(4) referencing Table 505.9(C)(2)(4) with new text added to reference the new Chapter 9 Table 13

- ▲ The requirements at 505.9(C)(2)(4) discuss zone equipment marking requirements
- ▲ The new Table 13 in Chapter 9 provides a complete list of the types of protection for hazardous (*classified*) locations
- ▲ The table also improves the readability of 505.9(C)(2)(4)
- ▲ This new table was determined by the CMP to be a vast improvement over the previous Table 505.9(C)(2)(4)
- ▲ This table will assist the designer, contractors, and the AHJ in verifying compliance with the Code and the manufacturer's listing of the equipment installed in a hazardous (*classified*) location

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

24



### 505.9(C) Equipment Suitable for Hazardous (Classified) Locations Chapter 9 Table 13

Created a new Table 13 in Chapter 9 entitled Equipment Suitable for Hazardous (Classified) Locations

The requirements at **505.9(C)(2)(4)** discussing zone equipment marking requirements were deleted

**Table 13 in Chapter 9** provides a complete list of the types of protection for hazardous (classified) locations and improves the readability of 505.9(C)(2)(4) [Zone Equipment- Protection]

Table 13 will assist the electrical industry by providing an improved list of equipment suitable for various locations

Area Classification	Type (Level) of Protection
Pressurized Enclosures	Type X <sub>1</sub> for Class I
Encapsulation (Group III)	ma
Optical system with interlock	op sh, with EPL Ga'
Special protection (Group II)	sa

**Class I, Division 1**

25

## Article 512 Cannabis Oil Equipment

IAEI

Copyright © IAEI 2023

26

## Article 512 Cannabis Oil Equipment

Created a new article, which covers cannabis oil extraction equipment, booths, post processing equipment, and systems using flammable materials in commercial and industrial facilities

- ▲ The authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ) and other industry members have expressed concerns about safety
- ▲ Several fire and explosion hazards are associated with equipment used to process and extract plant oils from cannabis
- ▲ Flammable solvents such as butane, pentane, hexane, propane, and ethanol can be released during the processing and extraction of plant oils
- ▲ This includes high temperatures and high pressures, which increase the risk of fire and explosion
- ▲ This information is intended to address the hazards associated with the extraction of cannabis oil

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

27

## Article 512 Cannabis Oil Equipment

IAEI

<p><b>Part I General</b></p> <p>512.1 Scope</p> <p>512.2 Other Articles</p> <p>512.3 Classified Locations</p>	<p><b>Part II Wiring</b></p> <p>512.10 Wiring Installation and Operation</p> <p>512.13 Wiring Installed Above Hazardous (Classified) Locations</p>	<p><b>Part III Equipment</b></p> <p>512.20 Equipment and Systems</p> <p>512.22 Equipment Installed in Hazardous (Classified) Locations</p> <p>512.32 Marking</p>
---	--	--

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

28





29



30

**515.10 Special Equipment- Motor Fuel Dispensers** IAEI

Changed the title from "Gasoline Dispensers" to "Motor Fuel Dispensers" for bulk storage plant locations

- ▲ To assist the industry regarding code enforcement for all types of fuel dispensers, regardless of fuel type
- ▲ The former reference to Article 514 has been replaced by the term "**motor fuel dispensing facilities**," with the further condition that any modifications in Article 515 would still apply
- ▲ The word "Gasoline" has been deleted and replaced with "Motor Fuel" as the subsequent text covers dispensers for all fuel types
- ▲ Clarifies this requirement applies to all flammable liquids and liquefied flammable gases

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

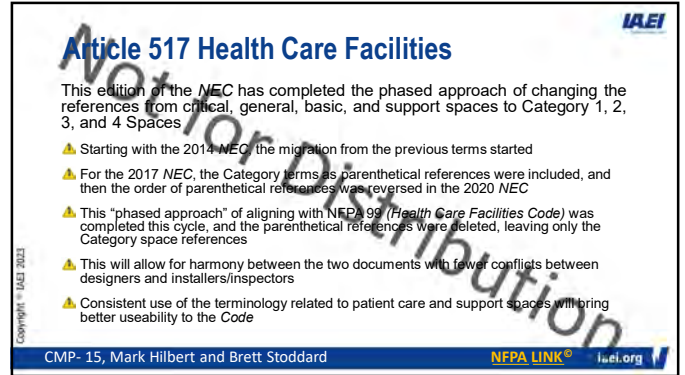
31



32



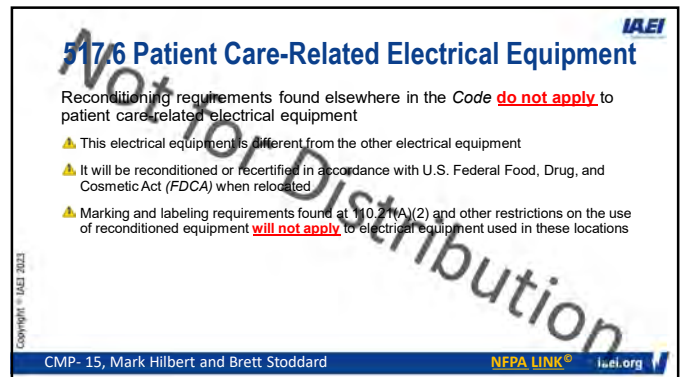
33



34



35



36

### 517.6 Patient Care-Related Electrical Equipment

Reconditioning requirements for electrical equipment located in health care facilities



Reconditioning requirements found elsewhere in the NEC do not apply to patient care-related electrical equipment within a health care facility

**Note:** For the 2023 NEC the xxx.2 sections will become placeholders in the various article that contain requirements for reconditioning of electrical equipment

37

### 517.13 Equipment Grounding Conductor

Equipment Grounding Conductor for Receptacles and Fixed Electrical Equipment in Patient Care Spaces

- Revised for clarity by relocating former Exception No. 2 to follow the opening paragraph and by stating **wiring "serving" patient care spaces**
- It will be clear the wiring methods must comply with 517.13(A) and (B) unless the conditions of the exception are met
- As previously worded, the requirements literally only applied to the part of the branch circuit that was "in" the patient care vicinity
- For the safety of staff and patients, it must be clear the equipment grounding requirements of 517.13(A) and (B) are enforced for the entire circuit

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard

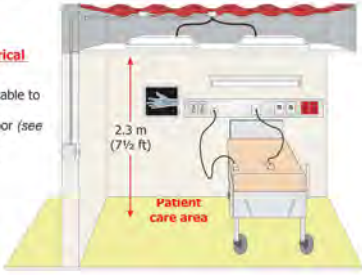
NFPA LINK® iaei.org

38

### 517.13 Equipment Grounding Conductor

Wiring that serves a patient care area to comply with 517.13(A) and 517.13(B) unless the conditions of the exception are met

**Note from the Electrical Inspector:**  
The exception is applicable to luminaires more than 2.3 m (7½ ft) above floor (see additional language of exception in the NEC)



39

### 517.22 Demand Factors

The use of demand factors for Health Care Facilities is acceptable and permitted for general-purpose receptacle loads in Category 1, 2, 3, and 4 patient care spaces

- Without the ability to apply demand factors to the receptacle load calculations required by Article 220, unnecessarily large feeders to branch circuit panelboards supplying patient care areas resulted
- The task group's work resulted in Table 220.110(1)
  - Demand Factors for Receptacles Supplied by General-Purpose Branch Circuits in **Category 1 and Category 2** Patient Care Spaces
- The Task Group also created Table 220.110(2)
  - Demand Factors for Receptacles Supplied by General-Purpose Branch Circuits in **Category 3 and Category 4** Patient Care Spaces
- Both of these tables apply to branch circuits not exceeding 150 volts to ground

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

40

### 517.22 Demand Factors (Health Care Facilities)

**2 New Tables**

**Table 220.110(1)** - Demand Factors for Receptacles Supplied by General-Purpose Branch Circuits in Category 1 and Category 2 Patient Care Spaces

**Table 220.110(2)** - Demand Factors for Receptacles Supplied by General-Purpose Branch Circuits in Category 3 and Category 4 Patient Care Spaces

Feeder to branch circuit panelboard

For Patient Care Spaces in:

- Category 1 Space
- Category 2 Space
- Category 3 Space
- Category 4 Space

41

### 517.30 Sources of Power

This change will result in consistent use of terminology, clarify the types of sources of power, and also recognize energy storage systems and health care microgrids

- ▲ Under the direction of the NEC Correlating Committee, a task group harmonized the terminology across the NEC
  - ↳ (Example- "alternate power source" and "power sources")
- ▲ Revisions were also made to clarify that the essential electrical system (ESS) must have two independent sources
  - ↳ One on-site and one off-site
- ▲ Two new list items, 517.30(B)(4) and (5), were added to recognize:
  - ↳ Energy Storage Systems
  - ↳ Health Care Microgrids

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

42

### 517.30 Sources of Power (Health Care Facilities)

Revisions were also made to clarify that the Essential Electrical System (ESS) must have two independent sources

- one on-site
- one off-site

Two new list items added at 517.30(B)(4) and (5) for:

- Energy Storage Systems
- Health Care Microgrids

Normal source

Alternate power source

Nonessential loads

Essential Electrical System

- Life Safety Branch
- Critical Branch
- Equipment Branch

Automatic switching equipment

Delayed automatic switching equipment

43

### 517 Part V- Diagnostic Imaging and Treatment

The title and other applicable text have been changed from "X-Ray Installations," to "Diagnostic Imaging and Treatment Equipment"

- ▲ The previous language did not adequately distinguish between x-ray equipment and other modalities for diagnostic imaging.
- ▲ Non X-ray diagnostic equipment is becoming the industry norm
- ▲ The NEC needed to better define these items
- ▲ These changes will make the NEC more user friendly for the electrical professional

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard | NFPA LINK® | iaei.org

44



**Article 517 Part V- Diagnostic Imaging and Treatment Equipment**



Prior to the 2023 NEC this was titled "X-Ray Installations" and did not adequately distinguish between x-ray equipment and other modalities for diagnostic imaging

Copyright © IAEI 2023

45

**Article 518  
Assembly Occupancies**

*Not for Distribution*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

46

**518.2 General Classification**

**(A) Examples**

Casinos and gaming facilities are now included in the list of **assembly occupancy** examples.

- ▲ Substantiation shows that casinos and gaming facilities are more prevalent than some of the assembly occupancies already included in the list of current examples
- ▲ Electrical equipment that is suitable for use in exhibition halls is also installed in casinos and similar gaming facilities
- ▲ Including these items in the list format will ensure that there is no confusion or misapplications of NEC requirements for these locations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

47



Casinos and gaming facilities are now included in the list of assembly occupancy examples

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

48



## 518.4 Wiring Methods

IAEI

Section 518.4(A) and the Exception were revised and placed into a list format with two titled subdivisions

- ▲ Editorially revised by converting the main text of (A) into a list format with four items and converting the exception into positive text as a new (B) covering power-limited wiring
- ▲ The section now has four first-level subdivisions and no exceptions
- ▲ Content has been added to clarify that Power over Ethernet (PoE) is included
- ▲ Previously, the reference to Class 2 and 3 circuits in Article 725 was specific to remote control and signaling circuits
- ▲ Class 2 circuits that transmit power, data, or both to a powered device, have been added
- ▲ This change was to make it clear that Power over Ethernet (PoE) is permitted as a fixed wiring method for that specific application [see Section 518.4(B)(4)]

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

49

## Power over Ethernet (PoE) Devices

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives      City of Houston TX-Permitting Building      Town of Prosper TX-IT Service

50

## 518.5 Supply

IAEI

The section was reorganized for clarity and revised which included new requirements for commercial appliance outlet centers and panelboard orientation

- ▲ Revisions to specifically reference commercial outlet appliance centers
- ▲ Outlet appliance centers have unique features, such as panelboards in a face-up position
- ▲ Section 408.43 no longer permits the mounting of panelboards in a face-up position
- ▲ It was necessary to permit the orientation for listed commercial appliance outlet centers designed for in-floor mounting
- ▲ Marking requirements for use by qualified persons, identifying the disconnecting means location, and a shock hazard warning requiring disconnection before servicing were all included to provide additional safety to the worker

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

51

## 518.5 Supply (Assembly Occupancies)

**Outlet appliance centers** have unique features such as panelboards in a face-up position. It was necessary to permit the orientation for **listed commercial appliance outlet centers** designed for in-floor mounting.

**90.3 Code Arrangement**

CHAPTER 3 - General  
CHAPTER 3 - Wiring and Protection  
CHAPTER 3 - Wiring Methods and Materials  
CHAPTER 4 - Equipment for General Use

**Applies generally to all electrical installations**

---

CHAPTER 5 - Special Occupancies  
CHAPTER 6 - Special Equipment  
CHAPTER 7 - Special Conditions

**Supplements or modifies Chapters 1 through 7**

(Interior View)

Photos courtesy of Hubbell Incorporated

52

**518.5 Supply (Assembly Occupancies)**

Outlet appliance centers have unique features such as panelboards in a face face-up position. It was necessary to permit the orientation for listed commercial appliance outlet centers designed for in-floor mounting.

**90.3 Code Arrangement**

CHAPTER 1 - General  
CHAPTER 2 - Wiring and Protection  
CHAPTER 3 - Wiring Methods and Materials  
CHAPTER 4 - Equipment for General Use

Applies generally to all electrical installations

CHAPTER 5 - Special Occupancies  
CHAPTER 6 - Special Equipment  
CHAPTER 7 - Special Conditions

Supplements or modifies Chapters 1 through 7

Panelboards not be installed in the **face-up position**

53

**IAEI**

# Article 530

## Motion Picture and Television Studios and Remote Locations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

54

**IAEI**

# Article 530 Motion Picture and Television Studios

The full title of this article is Motion Picture and Television Studios and Remote Locations and was completely reorganized clarity and rewritten

- ▲ The past five years have seen an onslaught of new technology for the entertainment industry
- ▲ A task group with a broad representation of motion picture producers, labor, supply chain, and users reviewed Article 530
- ▲ This also resulted in the removal of old technologies to include new dominant and emerging technologies
- ▲ The scope was revised to acknowledge current safe work practices and to state the requirements of the article apply to motion picture and television studios in facilities and locations staffed by qualified persons

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 15, Mark Hilbert and Brett Stoddard NFPA LINK® [iae.org](http://iae.org)

55

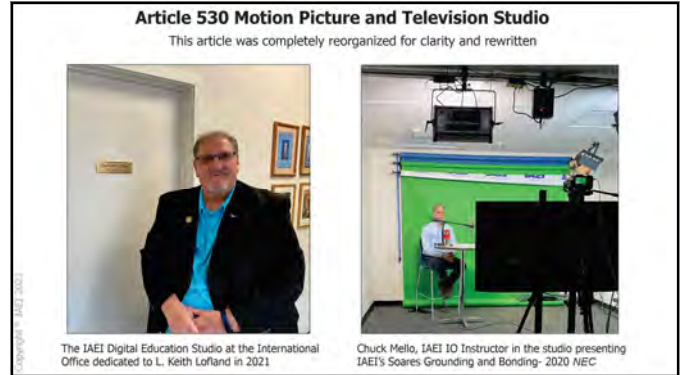
Studio set for outdoor resort matched a location in Bora Bora

Courtesy of IATSE Local 728

56



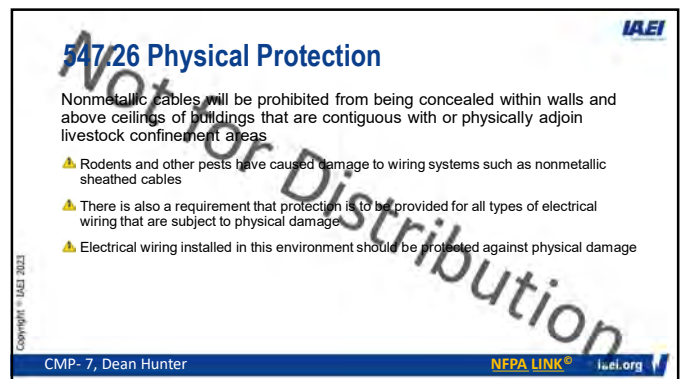
57



58



59



60

**547.26 Physical Protection (Agricultural Buildings)**

Nonmetallic cables will be prohibited from being concealed within walls and above ceilings of buildings that are **contiguous with or physically adjoin** livestock confinement areas

Physical Protection Required

All types of electrical wiring requires protection from physical damage

Rodents and other pest damage wiring systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023

61

**547.44 Equipotential Planes and Bonding of Equipotential Planes**

Clarifies the indoor and outdoor locations requiring equipotential planes and specifies the bonding locations for these planes at **agricultural buildings**

▲ Text provides clarification on where the equipotential plane can be connected in agricultural environments

▲ Bonding should take place to the following items:

- ✎ a circuit equipment grounding conductor (EGC)
- ✎ any metal part connected to a circuit equipment grounding conductor
- ✎ the grounding electrode conductor (GEC)
- ✎ any grounding electrode of the grounding electrode system (GEC) or
- ✎ the equipment-grounding terminal in a panelboard

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

62

**547.44 Equipotential Planes and Bonding of Equipotential Planes**

Clarifies the indoor and outdoor locations requiring equipotential planes and specifies the bonding locations for these planes at **agricultural buildings**

**Bonding** should take place to the following items:

- a circuit equipment grounding conductor (EGC)
- any metal part connected to a circuit equipment grounding conductor
- the grounding electrode conductor (GEC)
- any grounding electrode of the grounding electrode system (GEC) or
- the equipment-grounding terminal in a panelboard

**Livestock are very susceptible to currents in the agricultural environment**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

63

**547.44 Equipotential Planes and Bonding of Equipotential Planes**

Livestock in contact with metal and connected to energized equipment could cause milk production issues if voltages are not equalized through bonding

Copyright © IAEI 2023

64



**Article 550**  
**Mobile Homes, Manufactured Homes, and Mobile Home Parks**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI

65

**550.32 Service Equipment**  
**(A) Mobile Home Service Equipment**

The electrical service disconnect can now be located **"within sight from"** the mobile home as opposed to the previously required 30 feet

- ▲ Service equipment cannot be installed in or on mobile homes
- ▲ The service disconnect can also serve as the emergency disconnect (230.85)
- ▲ "Within sight from" is a defined term in Article 100 [see *In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)* (purview of CMP-1)]
  - ↳ Visible and not more than 15 m (50 feet)
- ▲ Reference 250.32 in the NEC for requirements concerning grounding
- ▲ **Note:** Manufactured homes (with permanent foundation) are not required to have remote service equipment

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter

IAEI

NEPA LINK® iaei.org

66

**550.32(A) Service Equipment (Mobile Homes)**

Service drop

"Within sight from"

**Note from the Electrical Inspector:**

- Service equipment cannot be installed in or on the mobile home
- Can serve as the emergency disconnect per 230.85
- Must be "within sight from" the mobile home (see Article 100)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

67

**Article 551**  
**Recreational Vehicles and Recreational Vehicle Parks**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI

68



**551.3 Electrical Datum Plane Distances**

Changes address recreational vehicle sites located next to natural bodies of water

- ▲ This change was necessary to clarify some of the inconsistencies related to all electrical equipment installations around bodies of water
- ▲ With the changes to the definitions for "Electrical Datum Plane" and "Normal High-Water Level," the inclusion of these requirements in Article 551 for recreational vehicles and recreational vehicle parks made sense
- ▲ This will clarify the requirements for the AHJ when applying electrical elevation requirements in an RV park located next to a body of water
- ▲ The installer and AHJ will need to determine if the area will be subject to tidal fluctuations or not

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® iaei.org

69

**551.3 Electrical Datum Plane Distances**

The water level is a determining factor as to the distance(s) of the electrical datum plane from the RV (extremes caused by natural or manmade disaster should not be considered)



Where **tidal fluctuations** may occur, the electrical datum plane should be 606 mm (2 ft) above the **highest high tide level** for normal conditions (distance on a horizontal plane).

Where **tidal fluctuations** do not occur, the electrical datum plane should be 606 mm (2 ft) above the **normal high water level** for normal conditions (distance on a horizontal plane).

70

**551.40 120-volt or 120/240-Volt, Nominal Systems**

**(D) Loss of Ground Device**

Substantiation was submitted to eliminate the need for a "reverse polarity device" in a recreational vehicle and, in its place, a **"grounding monitor interrupter"**


- ▲ A grounding monitor interrupter would prohibit power if grounding is not present when the recreational vehicle (RV) is connected to power and interrupts power to the RV when grounding is lost during operation
- ▲ If the power to the RV is interrupted when grounding is not present, it will prevent a hazardous condition known as "hot skin" (electrical current off the frame of the RV)
- ▲ Previously, CMP-7 has not required GFCI protection on the feeder assembly connected to the RV; however, panel members agree that this level of protection (grounding monitor interrupter) is very important to ensure electrical safety
- ▲ Ultimately, the RV manufacturers would be required to factory install a grounding monitor interrupter device between the feeder assembly connection to the vehicle and the transfer switch (if installed) or panelboard with an **effective date of January 1, 2026**

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® iaei.org

71

**551.40(D) Loss of Ground Device**

A **grounding monitor interrupter** would prohibit power if grounding is not present when the recreational vehicle (RV) is connected to power and interrupts power to the RV when grounding is lost during operation



72

### 551.40(D) Loss of Ground Device

A possible solution to notify recreational vehicle (RV) user of the loss of ground condition  
**(see E2- Open Ground Code)**

**Error Codes**

- E 0 - Normal
- E 1 - Reverse Polarity
- E 2 - Open Ground
- E 3 - High Voltage (Line 1)
- E 4 - Low Voltage (Line 1)
- E 7 - High Frequency
- E 8 - Low Frequency
- E 9 - Data Line Open
- E10 - Replace Surge
- PE - Denotes Previous Error

**DO NOT OPEN COVER  
HIGH VOLTAGE PRESENT**

Photo courtesy of Progressive Industries

73

## Article 555

### Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities

Copyright © IAEI 2023

74

### 555.4 Location of Service Equipment

Modified to state that services for a marina or docking facility must be located on land and **no closer than 1.5 m (5 ft) horizontally** from the structure served and elevated to a distance of **12 in. above** the electrical datum plane

- ▲ Previous language stated that the electrical service for a marina or docking facility must be located on land adjacent to the structure served
- ▲ This is vague with regards to the minimum distance horizontally, and for the height, the service should be located above the electrical datum plane
- ▲ Adding the distance for the service location and height above the electrical datum plane promotes electrical safety and enforceability
- ▲ This new language will provide a correlation between similar requirements in Articles 682 and 555

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

75

### 555.4 Location of Service Equipment

Electrical services for a marina or docking facility must be on land and no closer than 1.5 m (5 ft) horizontally from the structure served and elevated to a distance of 12 in. above the electrical datum plane.

Adding the **distance** for the service location and **the height** above the electrical datum plane **promotes electrical safety** and enforceability

Electrical service be located **on land and no closer than 5 ft horizontally** from and adjacent to the structure being served

Service equipment to be minimum of 12 in. above the electrical datum plane

76

**IAEI**

### 555.6 Load Calculations for Service and Feeder Conductors

Relocated text concerning demand factors for marinas and boatyards from Section 555.6 to 220.120 to better align with the "calculations" for services and feeders

- ▲ This was to correlate and standardize articles and chapters according to 90.3 of the *NEC*
- ▲ Recognized that articles in Chapter 5 contained various demand factor calculations
- ▲ There was hesitation on CMP-7 to move this section to Chapter 2 due to concerns of purview over the section and retaining the technical expertise when considering these calculations
- ▲ These specific measurements being added to this section will promote usability and consistency for both the AHJ enforcing the Code and the installer

Copyright © IAEI 2023


CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® iaei.org

77

### 555.6 Load Calculations for Service and Feeder Conductors

Relocated text and table concerning demand factors for marinas and boatyards from Section 555.6 to 220.120 to better align with the "calculations" for services and feeders

This will promote usability and consistency for both the AHJ enforcing the Code and the electrical professionals



CMP-7 retains purview over this material even though it appears in an article under the purview of CMP-2

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

78

**IAEI**

### 555.14 Equipotential Planes and Bonding

Substantiation was submitted that enhanced safety could result from requiring an equipotential plane to equalize or eliminate step and touch voltages for electrical equipment located at or on docks

- ▲ Equipotential planes were added in marina environments to correlate with Article 682 (*Natural and Artificial Bodies of Water*)
- ▲ This will help to mitigate step and touch voltage where electrical equipment is located within **10 feet** of the water's edge and exceeding **250 volts** to ground
- ▲ The installer and AHJ will need to verify the presence of the equipotential plane or develop plans for the installation of one

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® iaei.org

79

### 555.14 Equipotential Planes and Bonding of Equipotential Planes

To reduce or mitigate step and touch potential at electrical equipment, equipotential planes may need to be installed



They should be installed adjacent to outdoor service equipment or disconnecting means that control equipment where:

- a system voltage is in excess of 250 volts to ground
- if the equipment is within 3 m (10 ft) of the body of water

**Note:** Not required for docks and floating building with service equipment or disconnect means for controlled utilization equipment

Copyright © IAEI 2023

80

**555.15 Replacement of Equipment**

Equipment at Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities

- ⚠️ The **"replacement"** of electrical equipment at docking facilities to be installed to the current edition of the *NEC*
- ⚠️ The new language will allow the authority having jurisdiction (*AHJ*) to inspect the existing electrical equipment for any damage
- ⚠️ The damage found for existing equipment needs only to be repaired to the *NEC* edition for which it was originally installed
- ⚠️ Determining which edition of the *NEC* that damaged electrical equipment was installed could also be problematic

Copyright © IAEI 2023


CMP- 7, Dean Hunter

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

81

**555.15 Replacement of Equipment (Marinas, Boatyards, etc.)**

The **"replacement"** of electrical equipment at marinas, boatyards, floating buildings, and commercial and noncommercial docking facilities to be installed to the **current edition of the *NEC***



**Note:** New language allows the *AHJ* to inspect the existing electrical equipment for damage  
 Damaged electrical equipment needs only be repaired to the *NEC* edition it was originally installed (*good luck figuring that out!*)

82



83



84



**555.35 Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment (GFPE) and Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Protection Interrupter (D) Leakage Current Measurement Device** IAEI

Language was added recognizing that the leakage current device is required to be listed by **January 1, 2026** (future effective date)

- ▲ The required leakage current testing device had no specific standard in place to build, test, or construct this metering equipment specific for a marina environment
- ▲ Requiring a "listed" Leakage Current Measurement Device for use in Marina Applications by January 1, 2026, will ensure that the device complies with specific safety and performance requirements
- ▲ The listed test device will allow the marina or facility operators to identify vessels that are leaking current and help mitigate electrical hazards that could lead to potential electric shock drowning (ESD) events
- ▲ UL 1379, *The Outline of Investigation for Leakage Currently Measurement Devices for use in Marina Applications*, is under development to help the industry certify these devices

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® iaei.org

85

**555.35(D) Leakage Current Measurement Device**

Language was added recognizing that the leakage current device is **required to be listed by January 1, 2026** (future effective date)

Will allow the marina or facility operators to **identify vessels** that are leaking current and **help mitigate electrical hazards** that could lead to potential electric shock drowning (ESD) events

If you encounter stray current while swimming around boatyards and marinas **swim away** from the boat and dock locations



Copyright © IAEI 2023


86

**Remember Lucas Ritz**

Lucas died when he swam into energized water  
This is known as **electric shock drowning (ESD)**

He was only 6 years old  
Never swim or allow your family and friends to swim at marinas and boatyards





See Lucas and his families story at:  
TLC Video-Lucas Story  
SafeElectricity.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

87

**555.36 Disconnecting Means for Shore Power Connection(s)** IAEI

**(C) Emergency Electrical Disconnect**

Language has been added at a new subsection 555.36(C) to mandate that an emergency disconnect be located **within sight of a marina power outlet or enclosure** that provides shore power to boats

- ▲ The location of the emergency disconnect is critical
- ▲ A circuit breaker handle is expressly prohibited from being used for this purpose
- ▲ Time is critical, and disconnecting the boat nearest the swimmer is very important
- ▲ This will help to save the lives of electric shock drowning (ESD) victims and responders
- ▲ The installer and the AHJ will need to make sure that this requirement is adhered to for these locations
- ▲ **Note:** The source of voltage threatening a swimmer may not be the nearest boat

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter NFPA LINK® iaei.org

88





Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

89



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

90

**555.38 Luminaires**

This new section should help both installers and AHJs address electrically safe installations of luminaires at docking facilities to help reduce the incidents of electric shock drowning (ESD)

- ▲ Luminaires and retrofit kits need to be identified and listed for the environment
- ▲ These items should be secured to the structure of the marina
- ▲ If a luminaire is installed underwater in this environment:
  - ✎ it should be identified as a submersible type
  - ✎ conform to the low-voltage contact limit and
  - ✎ receive power from an isolating transformer or power supply

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 7, Dean Hunter

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

91



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

92



Photo courtesy of Bellingham Marine

93



94

**590.4 General**  
**(F) Lamp Protection**

Eliminated some existing text concerning various socket styles, and the words "metal guarded sockets" and "metal guard" were added

- ⚠ This change requires the installation and use of an **equipment grounding conductor** to the metal guard when metal-guarded lamp protection sockets are used
- ⚠ Changing the terminology from "grounded" to "equipment grounding conductor" in the 2020 NEC caused confusion
- ⚠ Some installations did not have an equipment grounding conductor as it was not needed
- ⚠ In several instances, the only two conductors available were the "hot" and the "neutral" conductors

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 3, Tim Mikloiche NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

95

**590.4(F) Lamp Protection (Temporary Power)**

Eliminated some of the existing text concerning various socket styles at and the words "metal guarded sockets" and "metal guard" were added

Requires the installation and use of an **equipment grounding conductor (EGC)** to the metal guard when metal guarded lamp protection sockets used

Photos courtesy of Lind Equipment Photos courtesy of Southwire

96

**Chapter 6**  
**Special Equipment**

- Article 600
- Article 620
- Article 625
- Article 630
- Article 646
- Article 670
- Article 680
- Article 690

Copyright © IAEI 2023

97

**Article 600**  
**Electric Signs and Outline Lighting**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

98

**600.5 Branch Circuits**

**(A) Required Branch Circuits**

Two exceptions have been created for **sign branch circuits**

- ▲ Exception No. 1 moved text that was originally in the last sentence of the main body of the requirement
- ▲ No change in language - just moved as it is an exception to the main rule
- ▲ Exception No. 2 permits time clocks and similar devices to be on the sign circuit
- ▲ Signs are sometimes controlled by time switches or photo controls, both of which would be considered "loads"
- ▲ These controls use a small amount of power, although it is typically less than 1 volt-amp
- ▲ This small usage will not burden the branch circuit providing power to the sign

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

99

**600.5(A) Exceptions (Electric Signs and Outline Lighting )**  
Two exceptions have been created for sign branch circuits

The NEC will now allow time clocks and similar devices to be installed on the branch circuit for the sign. These could be time switches or photocells as both typically utilize less than 1 volt-amp to operate

Time clock and Photocell photos courtesy of Torx

Copyright © IAEI 2023

100

**600.35 Retrofit Kits**

Redundant requirements already covered in Chapters 1-4 of the *NEC* have been removed

- ▲ Retrofit kits used in signs are uniquely different from other retrofit kits in other articles of the *Code*
  - ✎ The kits must include instructions and requirements "for field conversion of a host sign"
- ▲ Sections 600.3, 110.3(B), 110.8, 110.12, and 600.4(B) already address requirements that were being addressed at 600.35
- ▲ Sign installers and other electrical professionals will need to become familiar with the other areas of the *NEC* that apply to electric signs and outline lighting installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 18, Bob Fahey

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

101

**600.35 Retrofit Kits (Electric Signs and Outline Lighting)**

Retrofit kits used in signs are uniquely different from other retrofit kits in other articles of the *Code*

Sign installers and other electrical professionals will need to become familiar with the other areas of the *NEC* that apply to electric signs and outline lighting installations



**Redundant requirements were removed**  
(see Chapter 1-4 for these requirements)

Photos courtesy of Wes Wilkins, ISA

102

**Article 620**  
Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators,  
Moving Walks, Platform Lifts, and  
Stairway Chairlifts

Copyright © IAEI 2023

103

**620.12 Minimum Size of Conductors**

**(A) Traveling Cables**

New requirements allow a Class 2 communication conductor(s) for use with elevator traveling cables

- ▲ Allows elevator communications conductors to be compatible with standard building wiring infrastructure and hardware
- ▲ Cables used for elevators as traveling cables for Class 2 or communications circuits to have a current limit equal to or greater than the current required to power the powered Class 2 or communications device
- ▲ The smallest size for the communication circuit is specified as a 24 AWG conductor
- ▲ The communication cable(s) are also required to comply with 800.179, *Wires and Cables for Communication Systems*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

104



### 620.12(A) Traveling Cables (Elevators)

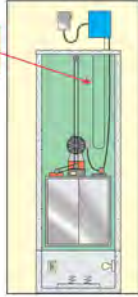

Allow for Class 2 communication conductor(s) for use with elevator travelling cables:

Travelling cables used for Class 2 or communications circuits to have **current limit equal to or greater than** the current required to power the powered Class 2 or communications device

Elevator traveling cable

Communication cable(s) are also required to comply with 800.179

**Wires and Cables for Communication Systems**

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

105

### 620.22 Branch Circuits for Car Lighting, Receptacle(s), Ventilation, Heating, and Air-Conditioning

#### (A) Car Light Receptacles, Auxiliary Lighting and Ventilation

Revised the requirements to specify permissible loads on the car light circuit

- ▲ Article 620 covers elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, platform lifts, and stairway chairlifts
- ▲ Clearly limits which loads may be powered by the car light circuit
- ▲ Equipment now includes:
  - ✎ emergency responder radio coverage
  - ✎ air purification equipment
  - ✎ car emergency signing
  - ✎ communication devices
- ▲ Amperage for these additional items is very small, with the risk of tripping the overcurrent protective device minimal

CMP- 12, Phil Clark

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

106

### 620.22(A) Car Light Receptacles, Auxiliary Lighting and Ventilation


Revised the requirements to specify **permissible loads** on the elevator car light circuit

This revision **limits** which loads may be powered by the **car light circuit**

Equipment now includes:

- emergency responder radio coverage
- air purification equipment
- car emergency signing
- communication devices

Elevator Equipment Room



107

### 620.26 Different Systems in One Raceway or Traveling Cable

Specifies which cable types may be installed in elevator raceway or traveling cable

- ▲ The following cables are now specifically permitted:
  - ✎ shielded pair
  - ✎ coaxial and
  - ✎ other communication circuits
- ▲ **CMP-LP or CMR-LP cables** that comply with 800.179 are permitted **in raceways**
- ▲ The addition of coaxial and shielded pair cables will allow for greater design flexibility
- ▲ Will allow for **maximum flexibility** while maintaining electrical safety

CMP- 12, Phil Clark

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

108




**620.36 Different Systems in One Raceway or Traveling Cable**  
 Specifies which cable types may be installed in elevator raceway or traveling cable

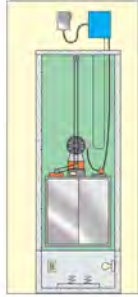
The following cables are now specifically permitted:

- shielded pair
- coaxial
- other communication circuits

Will allow **maximum flexibility** while maintaining electrical safety



Elevator Traveling Cable



Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives

109

**620.51 Disconnecting Means**  
 (A) Type  
 Exception No. 2

Clarification for situations where cord-and-plug connection of a stairway chair lift utilizing batteries is permitted

- ▲ Revised existing exception concerning cord-and-plug connections
- ▲ Some modern chairlifts are supplied by batteries as their primary power source
- ▲ Recognizes this type of stairway chair lift as being suitable for plug-and-cord connection
- ▲ This is in lieu of the previous requirement for a fused motor switch/lockable circuit breaker
- ▲ Must comply with 422.16(A), and the cord cannot exceed 6 feet in length

CMP- 12, Phil Clark

IAEI

NEPA LINK® iaei.org

110

Not

Recognizes a **stairway chair lift with batteries** as **primary source** as being suitable for plug-and-cord connection




Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

111

**Article 625**  
 Electric Vehicle Power Transfer System

Not for Distribution

IAEI

112

**625.6 Listed**

Clarifies equipment for electric vehicle power transfer (*charging, power export, or bi-directional current flow*) that is required to be listed

- ⚠ The xxx.6 section has become the location associated with listing requirements in many articles of the *NEC*
- ⚠ This change removes confusion by stating plainly *NEC* listing requirements involved in this type of equipment
- ⚠ It will aid in achieving safety and simplify decisions for electrical professionals

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 12, Phil Clark

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

113

**625.6 Listed (Electric Vehicle Power Transfer)**

Equipment for electric vehicle power transfer is required to be listed

Clarifies that EV equipment for **charging, power export, or bi-directional current flow** is required to be listed

The xxx.6 section has become the location associated with listing requirements in many articles of the *NEC*



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

114

**625.44 Equipment Connection**

(A) Portable Equipment

Adds 14-60R type receptacles to the list of permitted receptacles for portable Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE)

- ⚠ This was added in an attempt to help **reduce charging time** for electric vehicles
- ⚠ EV manufacturers have specified larger capacity circuits for charging their vehicles
- ⚠ Applies to a nonlocking, 2-pole, 3-wire or 3-pole, 4-wire grounding-type receptacle
- ⚠ Permits charging receptacles **up to 125/250 volts, 60 amperes** (for portable equipment)
- ⚠ See additional change for **fastened-in-place equipment** utilizing nonlocking, 3-pole, 4-wire grounding-type receptacle outlet
  - rated at 125/250 volts, single phase
  - 30, 50, or **60 amperes**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 12, Phil Clark

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

115



Electric vehicle charging is available at numerous commercial locations around the country

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

116

**625.49 Island Mode**

Creates a new section stating that **electric vehicle power export equipment (EVPE)** and **bidirectional electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)** are permitted to be a part of interconnected power systems operating in an island mode condition

- ⚠ This change was brought forth by the PV Industry Forum (PVIF)
- ⚠ This addresses the continued expansion of EVPE and EVSE equipment operated within interconnected power systems
- ⚠ Island mode allows energy to be supplied to loads that have been disconnected from an electric power production and distribution network or other primary power sources
- ⚠ The section further clarifies that this EVPE and EVSE equipment can be a source for these types of systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

117

**625.49 Island Mode (Electric Vehicles)**

States that **electric vehicle power export equipment (EVPE)** and **bidirectional electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)** are permitted to be a part of interconnected power systems operating in an island mode condition



Copyright © IAEI 2023

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

118

**Article 630  
Electric Welders**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

119

**630.8 GFCI Protection for Personnel (Electric Welders)**

Creates a new section requiring ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for personnel involved with electric welder applications

- ⚠ This change is **not for the welder receptacle** but rather for **other receptacles** within the area where the welder is being used and other tools might be connected
  - ✎ These other receptacles are the 125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles supplied by single-phase branch circuits rated 150 volts or less to ground
- ⚠ It was observed that secondary, trade schools, and community colleges provide welding equipment for their students
- ⚠ The use of this equipment and associated equipment exposes these users to electrical risk
- ⚠ GFCI protection has been expanded for students using hand tools in these learning environments
- ⚠ **Note:** There was also concern expressed that CMP-2 had purview over GFCI protection requirements and should be involved in this new requirement

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI Codes and Standards Committee NFPA LINK® iaei.org

120

### 630.8 GFCI Protection for Personnel (Electric Welders)

Requires ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for personnel involved with electric welder applications

This requirement is **not for the welder receptacle**

Welder receptacle does not require GFCI protection

125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere GFCI protected receptacle for a grinder or drill motor

Rather than other 125-volt, 15- or 20 ampere rated receptacles within the area where the welder is being used, and other tools might be connected and used

Copyright © IAEI 2023

121

### Article 646 Modular Data Centers

Not for Distribution

Copyright © IAEI 2023

122

### 646.19 Entrance to and Egress from Working Space

Specifies requirements for egress doors in modular data centers

- ⚠ The Code did not clearly specify egress door opening requirements when the door was not of a "swing-type"
- ⚠ Now will include requirements for situations where the egress opening may be a sliding or "barn-door" style
- ⚠ Removes a gap in the Code requirements concerning egress from modular data centers
- ⚠ For equipment over 1.8 m (6 ft) wide or in depth the working space is required to be:
  - one entrance for egress to and from the working space
  - 610 mm (24 in.) in width
  - 2.0 m (6½ ft) high at both ends of the working space

CMP- 12, Phil Clark NFPA LINK® iaei.org

123

### 646.19 Entrance to and Egress from Working Space

Specifies requirements for egress doors in modular data centers

Helps personnel escape arcing events if they occur!

For equipment **over 1.8 m (6 ft) wide** or in depth the working space is required to be:

- one entrance for egress to and from
- 610 mm (24 in.) in width
- 2.0 m (6½ ft) high at both ends

Entrance and egress doors for modular data center

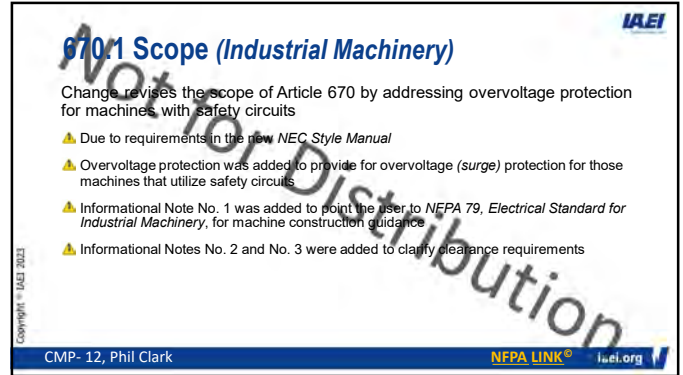
Copyright © IAEI 2023

124

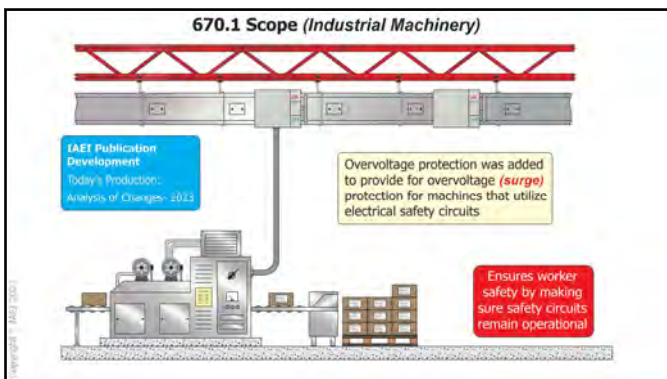




125



126

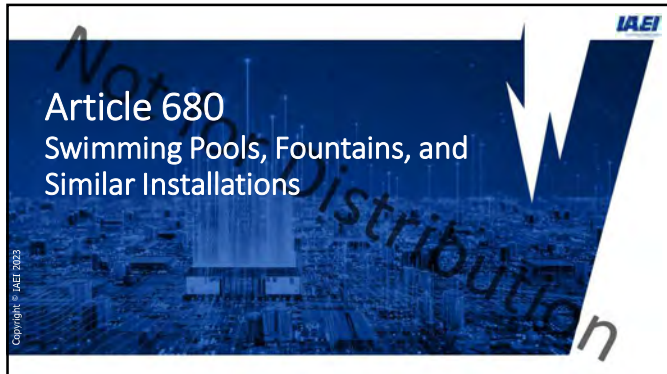


127



128





129

130



131

132

### 680.5 GFCI and SPGFCI Protection

Revised and subdivided to address ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection and introduce Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) protection

Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) protection

Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) protection

GFCI photos courtesy of Leviton and Legrand

SPGFCI photos courtesy of Littelfuse

133

### 680.9 Overhead Conductor Clearances

(A) Power

Clarifies that **overhead wiring in raceways** are not subject to the clearance requirements in Table 680.9(A) and Figure 680.9(A)

- ⚠️ Literal reading of previous text had the potential to be a problem for overhead wiring in raceways in ceilings of indoor pool installations
- ⚠️ This change clarifies the clearance requirements were focused on outdoor open wiring- type installations
- ⚠️ Will help bring clarity and useability to the Code and eliminate misunderstandings between the AHJ and the installer

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

134

### 680.9(A) Power (Swimming Pools)

This change clarifies the clearance requirements were focused on **outdoor open wiring** type installations

Table 680.9(A) is **not intended** to be applied to overhead wiring **within raceway systems** installed on the surface of or within ceilings that are within the 6.9 m (22.5 ft) distance from the pool

135

### 680.9(A) Power (Swimming Pools)

This change clarifies the clearance requirements were focused on **outdoor open wiring** type installations

Overhead feeder conductors

6.9 m (22.5 ft)

Pool

Table 680.9(A) not intended to be applied to overhead wiring within raceway systems installed on the surface of or within ceilings

136



137

### 680.10 Electric Pool Water Heaters

Text has been revised by and subdivided to include provisions for pool water temperature conditioning equipment that incorporates technology other than resistance heating

- ▲ The full title of this section is **Electric Pool Water Heaters Incorporating Resistive Heating Elements and Electrically Powered Swimming Pool Heat Pumps and Chillers**
- ▲ Has traditionally addressed installation of electric resistance heating equipment to improve water temperature in pools
- ▲ More recently, the installation of heat pumps and chiller equipment has been used to heat or cool water temperature
- ▲ Recognizes that this type of installation and provides requirements to size circuits and protective devices

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

138

### Section now entitled "Electric Pool Water Heaters Incorporating Resistive Heating Elements and Electrically Powered Swimming Pool Heat Pumps and Chillers"

Traditionally addressed electric resistance heating equipment.

Now applies to heat pump and chiller equipment used to heat or cool water temperature.

Photo courtesy of Jim Sankey

Copyright © IAEI 2023

139

### 680.12 Equipment Rooms, Vaults, and Pits

Revised and subdivided to require equipment rooms, vaults, or pits with equipment to have drainage or be suitable for submersion and a receptacle for maintenance

- ▲ Addresses concerns related to the risk of water rising over electrical equipment
- ▲ Mandates a general-purpose receptacle for maintenance
  - ✦ requires a 125-volt, 15-or 20-ampere receptacle
- ▲ Provide shock protection for personnel for any receptacle installed
  - ✦ require any receptacle in the space rated 150 volts or less to be ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protected

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 17, Donny Cook

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

140

**680.12 Equipment Rooms, Vaults, and Pits (Swimming Pools)**  
 Requires equipment rooms, vaults, or pits with equipment to have drainage or be suitable for submersion and a receptacle for maintenance

Addresses concern for water damage to equipment if pit floods.  
 Requires a **GFCI protected receptacle** for this location

125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere GFCI receptacle

Filter Pump motor Pool heater Drain

Copyright © IAEI 2023

141

**680.21 Motors**

**(A) Pool Pump Motor Replacement**

Expands the requirement to provide ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for replaced pool pump motors and now includes those that are repaired

- ▲ GFCI protection enhances safety for pool users and workers maintaining pool equipment
- ▲ Previous edition only required GFCI protection for installations where the pump motor was replaced
- ▲ Now adds an additional condition where GFCI protection must be provided (*motor repair*)
- ▲ Includes repair of motors that operate on systems that exceed Class A GFCI limitations
- ▲ These motors must be addressed by Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCI) Protection
- ▲ The electrical professional, facility owner, and pool maintenance personnel will need to be aware of these important safety requirements.

CMP- 17, Donny Cook NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

142

**680.21(D) Pool Pump Motor Replacement**  
 Requires ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) protection for **repaired pool pump motors**

Repairing pool pump motors just got safer for the customer

This applies to motors requiring **Class A GFCI** protection

Also includes motors **exceeding** Class A GFCI limitations (**SPGFCI protection**)

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

143

**680.23 Underwater Luminaires**

**(B) Wet Niche Luminaires**

**(2) Wiring Extending Directly to the Forming Shell**

**(a) Metal Conduit**

Rigid metal conduit extending directly to wet niche luminaires in forming shells of pools **must be listed**, red brass or listed stainless steel

- ▲ Previous text required metal conduit for this application to be listed and identified
- ▲ It did not clearly describe the purpose of the identification
- ▲ Clarifies the requirement and limits the materials permitted for this application
- ▲ *UL 6A Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit- Aluminum, Red Brass and Stainless Steel* includes the certification requirements for the permitted metal conduit products
- ▲ Benefits the electrical professional and brings clarity to this requirement

CMP- 17, Donny Cook NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

144



**680.23(B)(2)(a) Forming Shell (Metal Conduit)**  
 Rigid metal conduit extending directly to wet niche luminaires in forming shells of pools must be **listed red brass or listed stainless steel**

Conduit identification is no longer required. Stainless steel and red brass conduit **must be listed**.

Wet-niche luminaire

Forming shell for wet-niche luminaire

Red brass conduit

450 mm (18 in.) below normal water level unless listed for lesser depth

Copyright © IAEI 2023

145

**680.32 GFCI and SPGFCI Protection**

Revision to the title and text indicating **both ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) and special-purpose ground-fault circuit interrupter (SPGFCI)** requirements are covered in this section and adding a reference back to 680.5(B) and (C)

- Part of a correlating committee request to review the term "GFCI" and other terminology associated with ground-fault protective equipment throughout the *NEC*
- The task group was to ensure consistency with how these are defined in Article 100
- Revision includes both GFCI and SPGFCI protection, which more accurately depicts the requirements covered in this section
- This addition aligns with the new definition "SPGFCI" in Article 100

CMP- 17, Christopher Faucette

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023

146

**680.32 GFCI and SPGFCI Protection**

Revision to the title and text indicating both **ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI)** and **special-purpose ground-fault circuit interrupter (SPGFCI)** requirements are covered in this section

Revision includes both GFCI and SPGFCI protection, which more accurately depicts the requirements covered in this section

This addition aligns with the new definition "SPGFCI" in Article 100

Grounding check safety feature

- Current travels through the body
- Current transformer picks up current imbalance
- Sensor detects current imbalance and opens circuit. Fault is cleared and personnel are protected.
- Loss of grounding will de-energize load (if ground wire is high resistance, a ground fault can create a hazardous voltage)

Photo and illustration courtesy of Litzfuse

Copyright © IAEI 2023

147

**680.41 Location of Other Equipment**

**(A) Emergency Switch for Spas and Hot Tubs**

Clarifies the emergency switch requirement at one-family dwellings for hot tub and spa installations

- There was confusion about emergency switch requirements for hot tubs and spas at single-family dwellings
- Previously, some AHJs have interpreted the *NEC* to require emergency shutoff devices at single-family dwelling locations
- CMP-17 reviewed and stated that emergency switch requirements **do not apply** for indoor or outdoor hot tub or spa installations **at single-family dwellings**
- This change should alleviate misunderstanding in the electrical professional community

CMP- 17, Christopher Faucette

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

Copyright © IAEI 2023


148



**680.41(A) Emergency Switch for Spas and Hot Tubs**  
Clarifies the emergency switch requirement at one-family dwellings for hot tub and spa installations  
(The emergency switch *is not required* for single-family dwelling locations)

There was confusion about emergency switch requirements for hot tubs and spas at single-family dwellings  
Some AHJs have interpreted the NEC to require emergency shutoff devices at single-family dwelling locations

**Note:** For safety purposes, follow all electrical requirements found in Article 680



Indoor or outdoor spa or hot tub at a single family dwelling

Photo courtesy of Poolweb

149



150



151



152

**IAEI**

## 680.44 GFCI and SPGFCE Protection

Revised to indicate that both Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) and Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCE) requirements are addressed for spa and hot tub installations

- ▲ The Correlating Committee established a task group to review the term "GFCI" and other terminology associated with ground-fault protective equipment throughout the NEC
- ▲ It was to help with consistency as to how these are defined in Article 100
- ▲ This change will more accurately depict the requirements covered in this section as it applies to GFCI and SPGFCE requirements
- ▲ It also aligns with the new definition of "SPGFCE" in Article 100
- ▲ The wording "listed, labeled, and identified" in 680.44(B) was changed to "listed" for clarity of the requirement

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 17, Christopher Faucette [NFPA LINK](#) [iaei.org](#)

153

**IAEI**

## 680.44 GFCI and SPGFCE Protection

Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) and Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (SPGFCE) requirements are now addressed for **spa and hot tub installations**



Not too sure SPGFCE protection is currently available for this application  
Check manufacturers for details

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

Copyright © IAEI 2023

154

**IAEI**

## 680.54 Grounding and Bonding

### (C) Equipment Bonding of Splash Pads

Creation of 680.54(C) to address **bonding requirements** for splash pads

- ▲ Provides additional information to assist with the identification of the splash pad boundary
- ▲ Many splash pads are constructed such that the area outside the splash pad perimeter is also concrete
- ▲ This change is an effort to identify the termination point(s)
- ▲ This will help to assure the electrical safety of the user of this equipment
- ▲ The electrical professional should seek information and understanding of the splash pad structure from the splash pad (pool) designer
- ▲ Communication will have a significant impact on the installation and inspection approval of these bonding provisions

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 17, Donny Cook [NFPA LINK](#) [iaei.org](#)

155



156



Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

157



158

**Article 690 Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems**

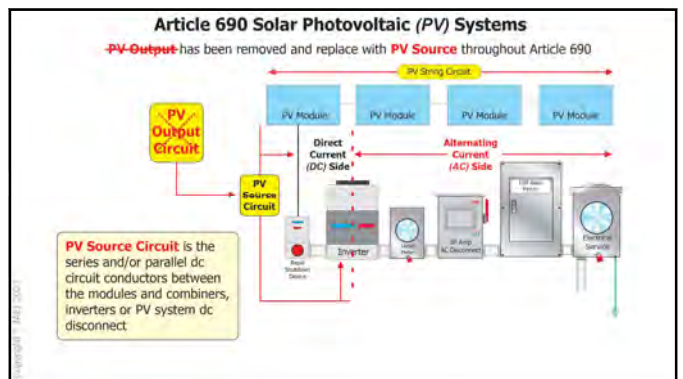
The use of the term PV Output has been removed throughout Article 690

- ⚠️ Circuits and conductors will be considered **PV Source** whether individual or combined
- ⚠️ The definitions of PV circuits also changed to properly align with these changes
- ⚠️ "PV Source Circuit" and "PV String Circuit" are both subsets of "PV System DC Circuit"
- ⚠️ It was stated that the existing language at times created confusion in the field
- ⚠️ There was an opinion expressed by enforcement representatives that the term PV output circuit assisted enforcers in applying a clear line of demarcation between power sources that were combined with others to establish output currents and voltages

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

159



160





161

**690.1 Figure Informational Note**

New simplified illustrations using new and revised definitions were added identifying typical photovoltaic (PV) system dc components and conductors

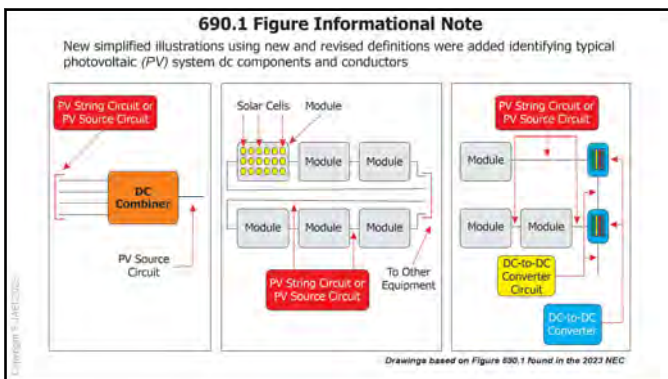
- ⚠ The result of substantiation provided by the PV Industry Forum (PVIF)
- ⚠ Previous illustrations included non-PV elements and did not reflect current usage
- ⚠ Panel combined the previous three figures into one figure for simplicity
- ⚠ These changes also addressed NEC Style Manual issues

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Pete Jackson

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

162



163

**690.4 General Requirements**

(G) PV Equipment Floating on Bodies of Water

Recognizes the installation of **floating PV arrays over a body of water** and the additional product identification requirements

- ⚠ This change was submitted by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) as they recognize that installations like this are becoming more plentiful
- ⚠ UL states that there is no additional product standard, but that designers and installers should consider items such as humidity, corrosion and mechanical stress due to movement
- ⚠ This will add another layer of consideration when evaluating these PV installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

164



165



166



167

**IAEI**

## 690.9 Overcurrent Protection

**(D) Transformers**

New language provides a pointer to 705.30(F), where specific requirements applicable to interconnected systems are addressed

- ▲ This language has been in place since the 1984 *NEC* edition prior to the inclusion of Article 705 (***Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources***)
- ▲ Text was not correlated with Article 240 or the current product safety standard
- ▲ 705.30(F) addresses interconnected electric power production sources, where there may be sources of supply connected to both the primary and secondary windings of the transformer
- ▲ Ensures proper overcurrent protection is provided for transformers where sources of supply are connected to both sides
- ▲ Clarifies and adds consistency for the identification of transformer primary and secondary circuits
- ▲ Overcurrent protection rules are simplified for electrical professionals

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Pete Jackson NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

168





169



170



171

**690.12 Exception No.2 and Informational Note**

New language to **eliminate rapid shutdown requirements** for structures where firefighters will not need to access the roof

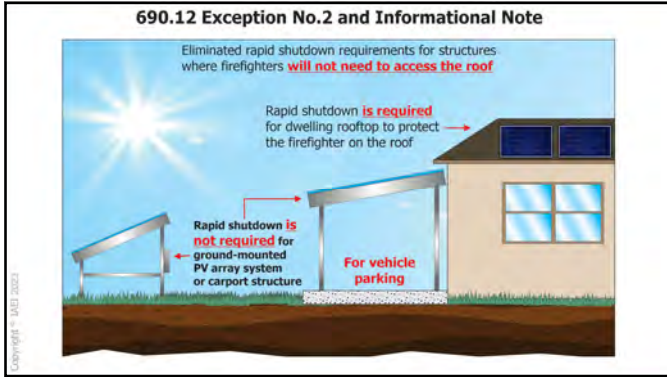
- ▲ The PV Industry Forum (PVIF) helped provide substantiations for these changes
- ▲ **Rapid shutdown** requirements were created to provide a greater degree of **safety for rooftop firefighting operations**.
- ▲ Previous language did not clearly delineate any exceptions for rapid shutdown requirements
- ▲ **Ground-mounted PV system and carport structures do not present similar hazards** as a roof-mounted system on buildings for first responders
- ▲ Rapid shutdown equipment is not as critical for a ground-mounted PV system because it is not installed on the roof of a structure

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Pete Jackson

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

172



173



174



175



176

**IAEI**

## 690.12 Rapid Shutdown of PV Systems on Buildings

(B) Controlled Limits  
(2) Inside the Array Boundary

Two options were revised for rapid shutdown compliance inside the PV array and previous option three was eliminated

- ⚠ The first option available is PV shock hazard control which is listed and labeled per installation instructions
- ⚠ The second is to reduce shock hazards for first responders to a maximum of 80 volts dc within the array boundary and inside the PV equipment within 30 seconds
- ⚠ A new UL 3741, *PV Hazard Control*, standard provides the necessary degree of safety for firefighters
- ⚠ These revisions, along with the new UL standard, will help clarify understanding and compliance for these important safety requirement

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Pete Jackson NFPA LINK® iaei.org

177

**690.12(B)(2) Inside the Array Boundary**

Two options were revised for rapid shutdown compliance inside the PV array

**1st option**

PV shock hazard control listed and labeled per installation instructions

**2nd Option**

Reduce shock hazards to a maximum of 80 volts dc within the array boundary and inside the PV equipment within 30 seconds

Copyright © IAEI 2023

178



179

**IAEI**

## 690.15 Disconnecting Means for Isolating PV Equipment

A requirement for an equipment disconnecting means to be within 10 feet of the equipment and also be within sight was modified

- ⚠ The change goes toward the reorganization of 690.15(C) and (D) in the 2020 NEC
- ⚠ 690.15(A) now refers to 690.15(C) or an equipment disconnect
  - ✎ Requires the disconnecting means to be within sight and within 10 feet of the equipment or
  - ✎ capable of being lockable in accordance with 110.25
- ⚠ Changes in the reorganizing of 690.15(C) does not mandate the 10-foot requirements provided the disconnect complies with 110.25
- ⚠ This only applies to disconnecting means and not isolating devices
- ⚠ Also, a few grammatical changes were made to the existing text

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers NFPA LINK® iaei.org

180





181



182



183

**IAEI**

### 690.31 Wiring Methods

#### (B) Identification and Grouping- Different Systems

Provides conditions where PV DC circuits and inverter output circuits can now be installed in the same junction box, pull box, or wireway


- ▲ Change aligns with similar requirements in 300.3(C) for conductors of different systems of 1000 volts nominal or less
- ▲ Must be identified, grouped, and separated in accordance with 690.31(B)(2) and (B)(3)
- ▲ Change was made to provide relief where inverters are installed in conjunction with a wireway or box
  - ✦ Where the inverter has 2 raceways extending from the inverter to the wireway or box
  - ✦ When the AC and DC conductors can be sufficiently grouped, supported and separated from each other
- ▲ Conductors of **different systems** are still **not permitted** to share a common raceway

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers NFPA LINK® iaei.org

184

**690.31(B) Identification and Grouping- Different Systems**  
 Provides conditions where PV DC circuits and inverter output circuits can now be installed in the same junction box, pull box or wireway



Must be **identified, grouped and separated** in accordance with 690.31(B)(2) and (B)(3)  
 Change was made to **provide relief** where inverters are installed in conjunction with a wireway or box

- Where the inverter has 2 raceways extending from the inverter to the wireway or box
- When the AC and DC conductors can be **sufficiently grouped, supported, and separated from each other**

Photo courtesy of Pete Jackson

185

**690.31 Wiring Methods**  
 (B) Identification and Grouping- Different Systems

Exception permits the dc and ac conductors of a PV system to be **located within the same enclosure** where all the conductors are insulated for the highest voltage present and grouped appropriately

- ⚠ Previous language prohibited an inverter's dc and ac conductors from being located within the same field-installed enclosure without a divider
- ⚠ Because the dc and ac conductors will all terminate within the inverter, there is a **benefit from a workmanship perspective** to permit these conductors within the associated wireway enclosure
- ⚠ Conductors of different systems are permitted within listed PV equipment, such as inverters, in accordance with the product safety standard
- ⚠ New language will align with similar requirements in 300.3(C) for conductors of different systems of 1000 volts nominal or less

Copyright © IAEI 2023  
 CMP- 4, Pete Jackson      NFPA LINK®      iaei.org

186



Conductors of different systems are still **not permitted** to share a common raceway

Photo courtesy of Pete Jackson

187

**Chapter 7**  
**Special Conditions**

- Article 700
- Article 701
- Article 705
- Article 706
- Article 722
- Article 725
- Article 726
- Article 760

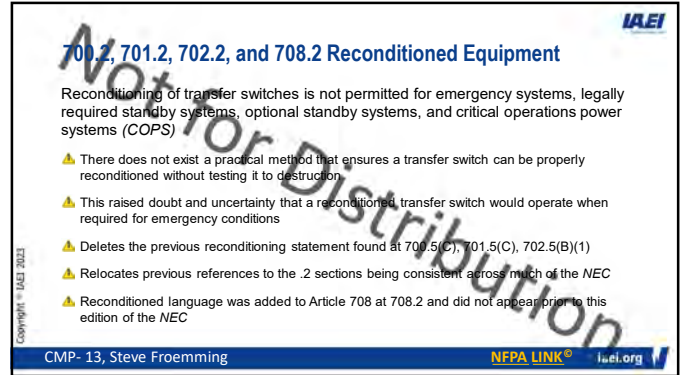
Copyright © IAEI 2023

188





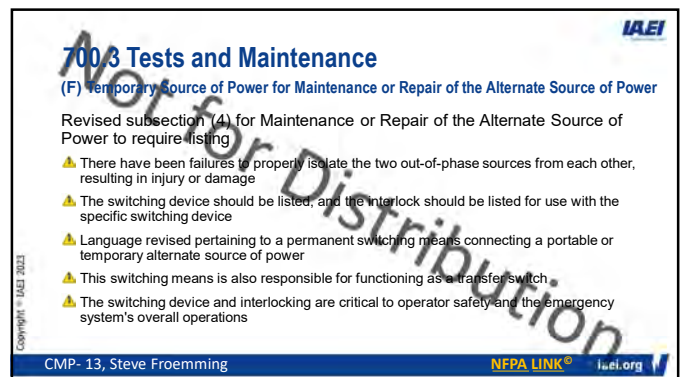
189



190



191



192

### 700.3(F) Temporary Source of Power- List Item (4)

Language was revised pertaining to a permanent switching means to a portable or temporary alternate source of power

This switching means is also responsible for functioning as a **transfer switch**

The switching device and interlocking are critical to operator safety and the emergency system's overall operations

**Failure to properly isolate the two out-of-phase sources have resulted in injury or damage**

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives.

193

### 700.3 Tests and Maintenance (cont.)

(F) Temporary Source of Power for Maintenance or Repair of the Alternate Source of Power

Added subsection (6) for Maintenance or Repair of the Alternate Source of Power for the permanent connection point and routing requirements for cables

- ▲ List item (6) is new and directs that the permanent connection point must be accessible at an exterior location for the temporary power source.
- ▲ Cables cannot be routed through exterior windows, doors, or similar openings
- ▲ This helps to assure that building egress pathways remain unimpeded by these cables and that the cables are not subject to being pinched and damaged by door or window operation

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming NFPA LINK® iaei.org

194

### 700.3(F) Temporary Source of Power- List Item (6)

Permanent connection point to be accessible at an exterior location for the temporary power source

Cables cannot be routed through exterior windows, doors, or similar openings  
Helps assure that building **egress pathways remain clear** and cables are **not being pinched and damaged**

Photos courtesy of IAEI Archives.

195

### 700.3 Tests and Maintenance

(F) Temporary Source of Power for Maintenance or Repair of the Alternate Source of Power

Added subsection (7) for Maintenance or Repair of the Alternate Source of Power requiring a label to be field applied at the permanent connection point

- ▲ This is necessary to prevent incorrect connection to the source resulting in the misuse of the temporary power source
- ▲ **Permanent label** to be field applied at the permanent connection point identifying:
  - ✦ system voltage
  - ✦ maximum amperage
  - ✦ short-circuit current rating of the load side of equipment supplied and
  - ✦ ungrounded conductor identification in accordance with 210.6
- ▲ The installer and inspector must work together to ensure a safe system is in place during the repair or maintenance of alternate power sources

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming NFPA LINK® iaei.org

196

### 700.3(F) Temporary Source of Power- List Item (7)

The permanent switching means for **maintenance or repair of the alternate source of power** now requires a label to be **field applied** at the permanent connection point

Necessary to prevent incorrect connection to the source resulting in the misuse of the temporary power source  
Label must be **permanent** and applied to the equipment after it has been installed at the project

**Voltage 277/480 V**  
**Amperage 800 A**  
**SCSR 42,000 A**  
Ungrounded conductor identified with gray tape  
Leslie's Electric Services  
"Happy to Help!"

Reproduction of NEC Figure 700.3(F)

197

### 700.5 Transfer Equipment

#### (D) Redundant Transfer Equipment

The structure of 700.5 concerning transfer equipment now mirrors the subsections for transfer equipment found in Article 708.24

- ▲ This pertains to emergency loads supplied by a single feeder
- ▲ Includes redundant transfer equipment or a bypass isolation transfer switch allowing for repair and maintenance as required in 700.3(C)
- ▲ New subsection (D) describes the functionality needed when a single feeder supplies emergency loads
- ▲ Previously, the language described how to do this based on a single product available on the market
- ▲ There are multiple ways to meet the requirements safely and reliably and ensure continuity of power when a single feeder supplies an emergency load
- ▲ The term for **Bypass Isolation Transfer Switches** has been revised to correlate with the defined definition found in Article 100

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming

NFPA LINK® i.e.t.org

198

### 700.5(D) Redundant Transfer Equipment

The structure of 700.5 concerning transfer equipment now mirrors the subdivisions for transfer equipment found in Article 708.24

Reproduction of drawings from Acopower

199

### 700.11 Wiring Class-2-Powered Emergency Lighting Systems

#### (C) Wiring, Class 2 Powered Emergency Lighting Systems

New requirements for the separation of Class 2 circuits that are designated as emergency or nonemergency circuits used with **Emergency Systems**

- ▲ New technologies such as **Power over Ethernet** and **low-power consumption LED luminaires**, have resulted in a new type of emergency lighting system
- ▲ When an emergency system receives power from Class 2 circuits, alternative methods are required to ensure the performance and safety of these systems using line-voltage conductors
- ▲ Class 2 emergency lighting circuits are not permitted to be mixed with other wiring
- ▲ Circuits to be separated by **bundling** when installed with nonemergency Class 2 circuits
- ▲ **If not bundled** and installed with nonemergency Class 2 circuits, the Class 2 emergency circuits are to be **separated by a sleeve or barrier that is nonconductive**
- ▲ Protection is to be provided in accordance with a 300.4 wiring method
- ▲ (Note: Separation from other classes of circuits must adhere to the system separation rules in 725.136)

CMP- 13, Larry Wildermuth

NFPA LINK® i.e.t.org

200

### 700.11(C) Wiring, Class 2 Powered Emergency Lighting Systems

New requirements for the separation of **Class 2 circuits** that are designated as emergency or nonemergency circuits used with **emergency systems**

New technologies such as **Power over Ethernet** and low-power consumption **LED luminaires**, have resulted in a new type of emergency lighting system

Circuits to be **separated by bundling** when installed with nonemergency Class 2 circuits

If **not bundled** and installed with nonemergency Class 2 circuits, the Class 2 emergency circuits are to be **separated by a sleeve or barrier that is nonconductive**

**Class 2 Powered Circuits**

**Low-power consumption LED Lighting**

201

### 700.12 General Requirements

#### (C) Separation of Circuits

A new informational note has been added referencing classification information for emergency power supply systems (EPSS) used with **Emergency Systems**

- ▲ A task group was formed to harmonize terminology across the *NEC*, *NFPA 99*, *NFPA 110*, and *NFPA 111* that concern emergency and standby power and energy storage
- ▲ Clarifies that all EPSS require a minimum of **not less than 2 hours of fuel** for operation (previously 1 ½ hours of fuel)
- ▲ Ensures all EPSS have the same required rating and capacity to supply and maintain the total load for a **minimum period of 2 hours** without being **refueled or recharged**
- ▲ The note references *NFPA 110-2022, Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*

CMP- 13, Larry Wildermuth

NFPA LINK® [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

202

### 700.12(C) Supply Duration (Emergency Systems)

New informational note has been added referencing classification information for **emergency power supply systems (EPSS)** used with Emergency Systems

Ensures all EPSS have the same required rating and capacity

Can supply and maintain the total load for a minimum period of **2 hours** without being refueled or recharged

See *NFPA 110-2022, Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*

**Transfer Equipment**

**Emergency Power Supply System**

203



204



### 700.12 & 701.12 General Requirements

#### (E) Stored-Energy Power Supply Systems (SESS)

The title of Sections **700.12(E)** and **701.12(E)** have been changed from "Uninterruptible Power Supplies" to "Stored-Energy Power Supply Systems (SESS)"

- ▲ These revisions expand items that meet the newly defined SESS
- ▲ This includes items such as a(n):
  - ✦ uninterruptible power supply (UPS)
  - ✦ fuel cell systems
  - ✦ energy storage systems (ESS)
  - ✦ storage batteries for DC loads and
  - ✦ any "other" stored energy source complying with 700.12
- ▲ New informational note references *NFPA 853-2020, Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems*, and *NFPA 855-2020, Standard for the Installation of Stationary Energy Storage Systems*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming NFPA LINK® iaei.org

205

### 700.12(E) and 701.12(E) Stored-Energy Power Supply Systems

The title have been changed from Uninterruptible Power Supplies to **Stored-Energy Power Supply Systems (SESS)**

See NFPA 853-2020, Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems, and NFPA 855-2020, Standard for the Installation of Stationary Energy Storage Systems for more information.

**Examples of Stored-Energy Power Supply Systems (SESS)**

- Uninterruptible Power Supply
- Fuel Cell Systems
- Energy Storage System
- Storage Batteries for DC Loads
- Other Stored Energy Sources complying with 700.12

**All forms of electricity are dangerous and should be addressed by a qualified person** (see Article 100 for definition)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

206

### 700.12 General Requirements

#### (G) Microgrid Systems

Modified text to recognize there are different types of microgrids, in addition to any that might be categorized as dc only

- ▲ On-site sources designated as emergency sources are allowed to be connected to microgrid systems
- ▲ When this is done, the **non-emergency loads to be isolated** from the emergency sources during emergency operations
- ▲ Failures with emergency sources require a **malfunction signal** as required by 700.6
- ▲ These conditions should be evaluated during the installation of such a system
- ▲ Where a stored-energy emergency source is used as part of the emergency power system, the source is allowed to be charged by other sources (*not only from an emergency source*)
- ▲ An assessment is needed to ensure that the lack of any of these sources will not impact the ability of the emergency system to supply the emergency loads

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming NFPA LINK® iaei.org

207

### 700.12(G) Microgrid Systems

Modified text to recognize there are different types of microgrids used as emergency sources

On-site sources designated as emergency sources are allowed to be connected to microgrid systems

When this is done, **non-emergency loads to be isolated from emergency sources** during emergency operations

**Failures with emergency sources require a malfunction signal** as required by 700.6

**These conditions should be evaluated during the installation of the system**

EXAMPLES

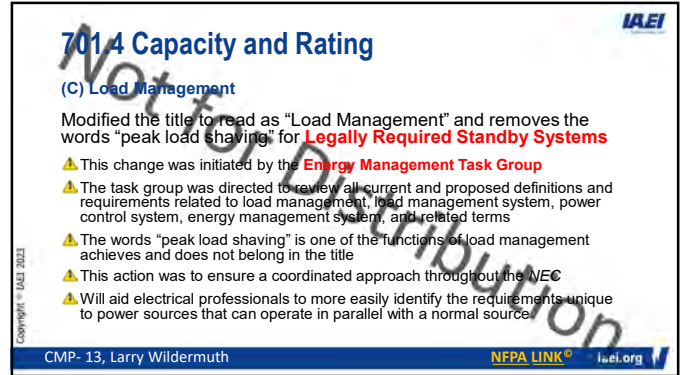
Copyright © IAEI 2023

208

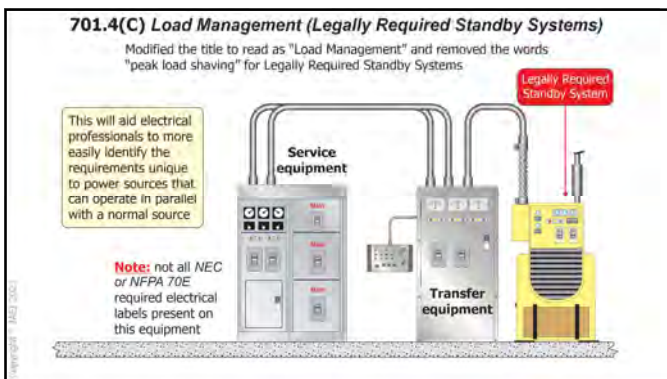




209



210



211



212

### 701.4 Capacity and Rating

**(D) Parallel Operation**

Added language that identifies two different types of parallel operation, **normal and alternate sources**, of legally required standby systems

- ▲ **Normal Source** was added at 701.4(D)(1) to provide the requirements of interconnected electric power production sources found in Article 705
- ▲ **Alternate Source** was added at 701.4(D)(2) for paralleling alternate sources of power that are within the requirements of legally required standby systems
- ▲ The alternate source is capable of maintaining source capacity while the normal source is being refueled, recharged, or operating at the same time in some application
- ▲ These are to be maintained at all times and also comply with Part I and II of Article 705
- ▲ Signaling of system malfunction per 701.6(A) now notifies the user of the operating system(s) distress

CMP- 13, Larry Wildermuth, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

213

### 701.4(D) Parallel Operation

Added language that identifies two different types of parallel operation, normal and alternate sources, of legally required systems

The **alternate source** is capable of maintaining source capacity while the **normal source** is being refueled, recharged, or operating at the same time in some application

Signaling of system malfunction per 701.6(A) now **notifies the user** of the operating system distress

Transfer equipment

Normal Source

Alternate Source

CMP- 13, Larry Wildermuth, Jr. NFPA LINK® iaei.org

214

### 701.10 Wiring Legally Required Standby Systems

A new first-level subdivision (B) and new figure informational notes were added concerning wiring requirements for **legally required standby systems**

- ▲ This addition provides a correlation with 700.10(B)(5)(b)
- ▲ These systems are installed to supply legally required loads such as:
  - heating and refrigeration systems
  - communications systems
  - ventilation
  - smoke removal systems
  - sewage disposal
  - lighting systems
  - industrial processes
- ▲ Interruption due to a failure could create hazards or hamper first responder operations
- ▲ Two new figure informational notes are now included for an understanding of these requirements

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming NFPA LINK® iaei.org

215

### 701.10 Wiring Legally Required Standby Systems

A new first-level subdivision (B) and new figure informational notes were added concerning wiring requirements for legally required standby systems

Supplying **legally required standby system** loads such as:

- heating and refrigeration systems
- communications systems
- ventilation
- smoke removal systems
- sewage disposal
- lighting systems
- industrial processes

Common Bus

Common OCPD

Single or multiple feeders without overcurrent protections

Single or multiple feeders with overcurrent protections

Legally Required Standby

Optional Standby (other loads)

Legally Required Standby

Optional Standby (other loads)

**Note:** Interruption due to a failure could create hazards or hamper first responder operations

Based on NEC International Note Figure 701.10(B)(1) and 701.10(B)(2)

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming NFPA LINK® iaei.org

216

## 701.12 General Requirements

**IAEI**

**(C) Supply Chain**

A new informational note has been added referencing classification information for **emergency power supply systems (EPSS)** used with **Legally Required Standby Systems**.

- ▲ A task group was formed to harmonize terminology across the *NEC*, *NFPA 99*, *NFPA 110*, and *NFPA 111* that concern emergency and standby power and energy storage
- ▲ Clarifies that all EPSS require a minimum of **not less than 2 hours of fuel** for operation (previously 1 ½ hours of fuel)
- ▲ Ensures all EPSS have the same required rating and capacity to supply and maintain the total load for a **minimum period of 2 hours** without being **refueled or recharged**
- ▲ The note references *NFPA 110-2022, Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 13, Larry Wildermuth NFPA LINK® iaei.org

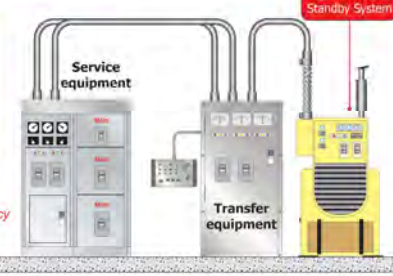
217

## 701.12(C) Supply Duration (Legally Required Standby Systems)

New informational note has been added referencing classification information for **legally required standby system** used with Emergency Systems

Ensures all EPSS have the **same required** rating and capacity

Can supply and maintain the total load for a minimum period of **2 hours** without being refueled or recharged



Legally Required Standby System

See *NFPA 110-2022, Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*

Copyright © IAEI 2023

218

# Article 705

## Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources

**IAEI**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

219

## 705.11 Source Connections to a Service

**IAEI**

This section was rewritten due to numerous public inputs and public comments

- ▲ NFPA Correlating Committee (CC) established a multi-panel task group to review the requirements in 705.11
- ▲ Asked to determine how these requirements will either work with or conflict with the requirements located in Articles 230 and 250
- ▲ Grounding and bonding requirements were added at 705.11(E) with a reference to Parts II through V and Part VIII of Article 250 for these requirements
- ▲ Without these revisions, the possibility existed for inspectors to improperly enforce some requirements such as what disconnects having to be grouped and what disconnects can be remote from one another

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers and Pete Jackson NFPA LINK® iaei.org

220



221

### 705.13 Energy Management Systems (EMS)

Most of the requirements that were located in 705.13 have been deleted

- ⚠ Requirements that were previously located in 705.13 were relocated to **Article 750** entitled **Energy Management Systems** which is under the purview of CMP-13
- ⚠ Should have a positive impact on the electrical industry as the requirements are all now in one location
- ⚠ Will aid in usability and greater understanding by the electrical professional concerning these requirements

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

222

### 705.13 Energy Management Systems (EMS)

Components of a listed energy management system

Photo courtesy of Eaton

Copyright © IAEI 2023

223

### 705.20 Source Disconnecting Means

The requirement for enclosure covers requiring a tool to open or a be locked have been deleted from Article 705

- ⚠ Action was taken due to the language that exists at 404.30
- ⚠ The information located at 404.30 entitled **Switch Enclosures with Doors** will provide the necessary information for these installations, in the sense that when switches are installed, 404.30 will govern
- ⚠ This information located at 404.30 is applicable throughout the NEC
- ⚠ This will continue to protect unqualified people from accessing the equipment and becoming injured

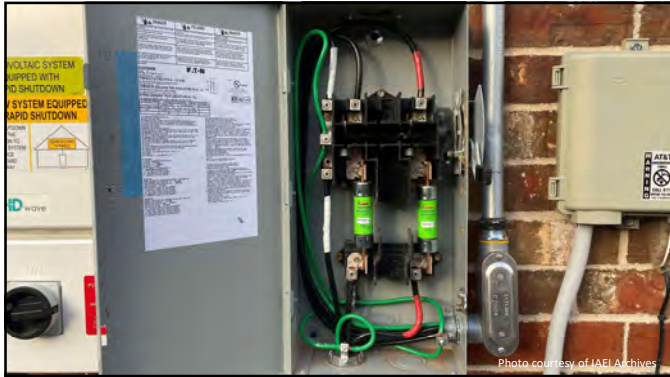
Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

224





225

### 705.30 Overcurrent Protection

**(F) Transformers**

New language has been added addressing transformer requirements for interconnected systems

- ⚠ Language correlates with the transformer installation rules of Articles 240, 450, and the transformer product safety standard
- ⚠ The new language defines the primary of a transformer as the side connected to the largest source of available fault-current in alignment with the product safety standard
- ⚠ Ensure that proper overcurrent protection is provided for transformers where sources of supply are connected to both sides
- ⚠ Clarifies and adds consistency for the identification of transformer primary and secondary circuits and the overcurrent protection rules
- ⚠ Simplifies *NEC* text for the electrical professional

Copyright © IAEI 2023

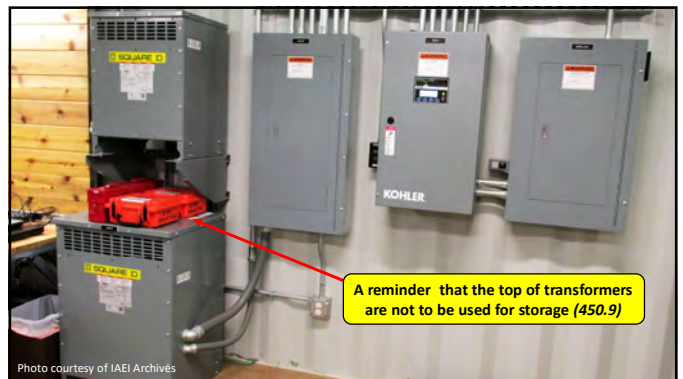
CMP-4, Pete Jackson

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

226



227



228



## 705.50 System Operation

Language describing the **operational modes of a microgrid** were rewritten and clearly state that a microgrid can operate in parallel with other systems or in island mode

- ⚠️ Clarification was achieved by rewriting the requirement to make sure the language is consistent with other *NEC* sections
- ⚠️ New Informational Note has been added to address health care facilities that have plans for microgrid installations
- ⚠️ Electrical professionals and health care governing bodies should consult the following documents for additional information
  - *NFPA 70 NEC- Article 517 Health Care Facilities*
  - *NFPA 99 Health Care Facilities Code*

CMP- 4, Jim Rogers IAEI.org

229

A Faith Technologies and Schneider Electric renewable energies project in Wisconsin

### Many microgrids in ONE

Microgrid consisting of:

- Solar (PV)
- Natural gas generator
- Microturbine
- Fuel Cells
- Batteries

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

230

### The Microgrid | GORDON BUBOLZ NATURE PRESERVE

Photo courtesy of IAEI Archives

231

## Article 706 Energy Storage Systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023

232

**706.7 Commissioning and Maintenance**

Added commissioning requirements for ESS in a new subsection (A) with the existing requirements for maintenance of these systems moved into the new (B)

- Commissioning requirements have been added and aligned with Chapter 6 of *NFPA 855-2020, Standard for the Installation of Stationary Energy Storage Systems*
- An energy storage system requires the manufacturer or qualified individual to set up the system and equipment to operate properly and in a safe manner
- Examples of items typically covered during commissioning activities include
  - operational controls
  - system sequence of operation and
  - fire safety systems
- These requirements **do not apply to one- and two-family dwellings installations**
- Informational Note to (B) has been revised to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming

IAEI NFPA LINK® i.eei.org

233

**706.7 Commissioning and Maintenance (Energy Storage Systems)**

Commissioning requirements were added for energy storage systems (ESS) in a new subsection (A) with the existing requirements for maintenance of these systems moved into the new (B)

An energy storage system requires the manufacturer or qualified individual to set up the system and equipment to operate properly and in a safe manner

**Does not apply** to one- and two-family dwellings installations

Examples of commissioning activities include:

- operational controls
- system sequence of operation
- fire safety systems




Photo courtesy of Doug Smith

CMP- 13, Steve Froemming

IAEI NFPA LINK® i.eei.org

234

**Article 722**

**Cables for Power-Limited Circuits and Fault-Managed Power Circuits**

CMP- 3, Tim Mikloiche

IAEI NFPA LINK® i.eei.org

235

**Article 722**

Cables for Power-Limited Circuits, Fault-Managed Power (Class 4) Circuits

- New Article 722 was created for the **general requirements** for these cables
- There are concerns that installations and inspections of Chapter 7 work are not conducted to the level that you would find for installations covered by Chapters 1-4
- In some jurisdictions, an electrical permit is not required for installations of this nature
- Combines common cabling requirements found in Articles 725, 760, and 770 and also relocates other cabling requirements from those articles into a single article
- This change is intended to make it easier for the electrical professional to find requirements, which will aid with installation and enforcement

CMP- 3, Tim Mikloiche

IAEI NFPA LINK® i.eei.org

236



237



238

**725.144 Bundling of Cables Transmitting Power and Data**

Removed the words "4-Pair" from the title and added to the title subsection (A) where it was applicable to the types of cables discussed

- ▲ This makes it clear that 725.144 applies to any pair cables
- ▲ Only subsection (A) and Table 725.144 apply to 4 pair cables
- ▲ Subsection (B) covers cables of any pair count and requires an "LP" listing
- ▲ See UL 13, *Standard for Safety Power-Limited Circuit Cables* that does not limit rating to 4-pair cables
- ▲ This helps both installers and inspectors by providing much-needed clarity with the requirements for 4-pair cables and other cables
- ▲ This change also provides a possible placeholder for future requirements concerning single-pair ethernet cables

CMP- 3, Tim Mikloiche

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

239

**725.144 Bundling of Cables Transmitting Power and Data**

Removed the words "4- Pair" from the title and added to the title of subdivision (A) where it was applicable to the types of cables discussed

Makes it clear that 725.144 applies to any pair cables  
Subdivision (A), and Table 725.144 apply to 4 pair cables  
Subdivision (B) covers cables of any pair count and requires an "LP" listing

**UL 13, UL Standard for Safety Power-Limited Circuit Cables**

These requirements cover 60-250°C (140-482°F) single- and multiple-conductor power-limited circuit cables for use as fixed wiring within buildings (some are also marked for direct burial) principally for Class 3 and Class 2 circuits as described in Article 725 and other applicable parts of the NEC.

Cables covered by these requirements are:

- a) Types CL3P and CL2P (plenum cables),
- b) Types CL3R and CL2R (riser cables),

**Note: See UL 13 for remaining information**

**UL 13**

**STANDARD FOR SAFETY**  
Power-Limited Circuit Cables

240

**Article 726**  
**Class 4 Fault-Managed Power Systems**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

241

**Article 726 Class 4 (CL4) Power Systems**

A new Article 726 was created for wiring systems and equipment (including utilization equipment) for Class 4 fault-managed power (FMP) systems

- ▲ There have been over 1,000 installations of "Digital Electricity" in the United States
- ▲ These are mostly at stadiums where large numbers of people gather
- ▲ These systems are **not permitted in dwelling units** (see 726.12)
- ▲ Class 4 systems have ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) equivalent protection (line to ground) while also introducing similar protection line to line
- ▲ This allows for installations that do not require raceway systems
- ▲ The higher voltage associated with this technology leads to lower current allowing the electrical professional to install smaller conductors when compared to 120 volt AC systems

CMP- 3, Tim Mikloiche

NFPA LINK® iaei.org

242

**Article 726 Class 4 (CL4) Power Systems (cont.)**

Photos courtesy of Voltserver

Transmitters

Structured Cable

Receivers

CMP- 3, Tim Mikloiche

iaei.org

243

**Article 726 Class 4 (CL4) Power Systems**

A new Article 726 was created for wiring systems and equipment (including utilization equipment) for Class 4 fault-managed power (FMP) systems

Covers installations of wiring systems as well as equipment

Only sections of Article 300 that are referenced by this article shall apply

Circuits are characterized by monitoring and control systems and are different than electric circuits for light and power

**Article 726 contains three parts:**

- Part I.** General
- Part II.** Class 4 Circuits
- Part III.** Listing Requirements

The "active" component of this type of system **to be listed** as a Type 4 device

**A dependent active device example would be a transmitter which relies on a particular receiver as part of a monitoring or control system**

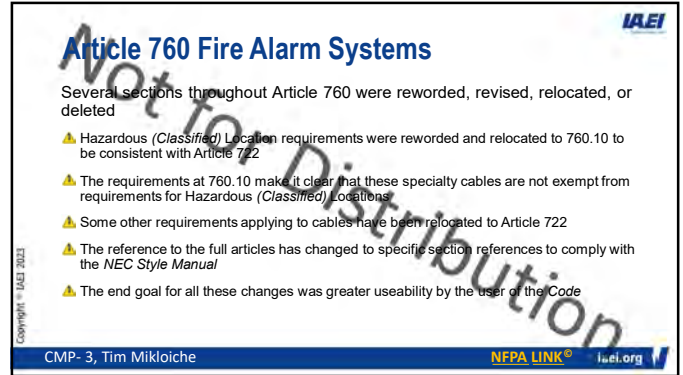
**These systems are not permitted in dwelling units.**

244

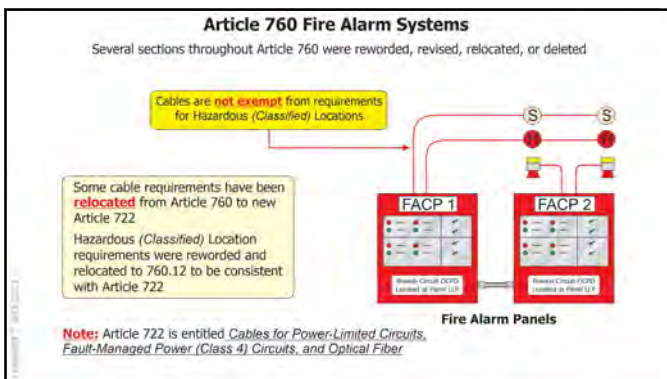




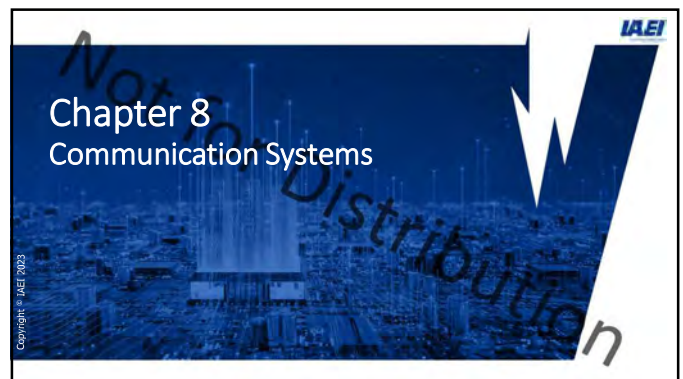
245



246



247

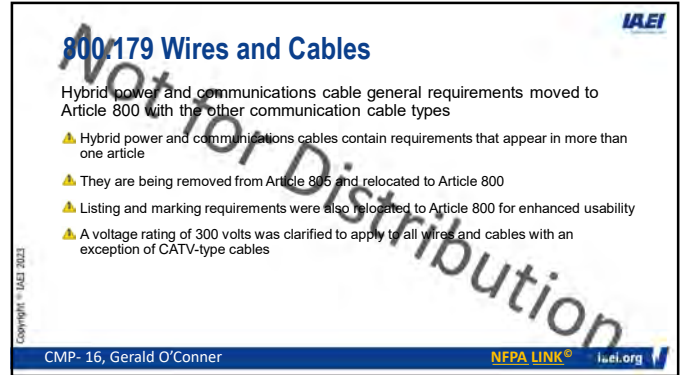


248

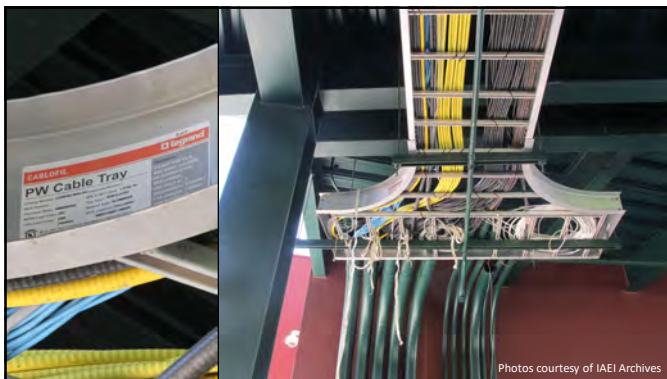




249



250



251



252

## 805.170 Protectors

Equipment listing requirements were moved to Article 800, leaving two subdivisions (A) and (B) for **primary and secondary** protectors

- ▲ Requires listing of primary and secondary protectors
- ▲ They are to be listed in accordance with
  - 805.170(A) Primary Protectors
  - 805.170(B) Secondary Protectors
- ▲ Primary and secondary protectors provide protection to sensitive communication equipment by limiting the current below the current-carrying capacity
- ▲ Listing is an important part of assuring these items can provide this protection

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 16, Gerald O'Conner NFPA LINK® iaei.org

253

## 805.170 Protectors (Communication Circuits)

Primary and secondary protectors provide protection to sensitive communication equipment by **limiting the current** below the current-carrying capacity

Protectors **are to be listed** in accordance with:

- 805.170(A) Primary Protectors
- 805.170(B) Secondary Protectors

Photo courtesy of Busch      Photo courtesy of ETV Life

Photo courtesy of Cinc      Photo courtesy of TDI      Photo courtesy of Opower

254

## Article 840 Premises-Powered Broadband Communications Systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023

255

## 840.160 Powering Circuits

Changed the reference for premises powering of communication equipment over communication cable from Article 725.154(A) to Article 722.135(E)

- ▲ Cable substitution and installation requirements are now in Article 722
- ▲ Listing requirements for communications cables moved to Article 800 (*previously found in Article 805*)
- ▲ This relocation resulted in the previous reference to 805.179 for listed communications cables to be incorrect (**Note: 800.179 for information on Types CMP, CMR, CM, and CMX**)
- ▲ Changes the incorrect reference of 725.154(A) and provides the new reference at 722.135(E)
- ▲ This was done to make Chapter 8 more user-friendly and helps avoid confusion

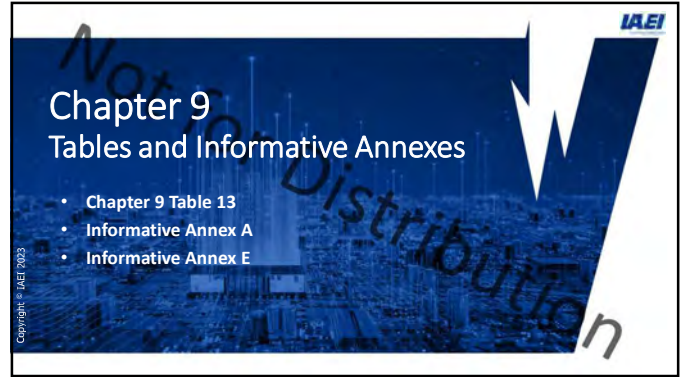
Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 16, Gerald O'Conner NFPA LINK® iaei.org

256



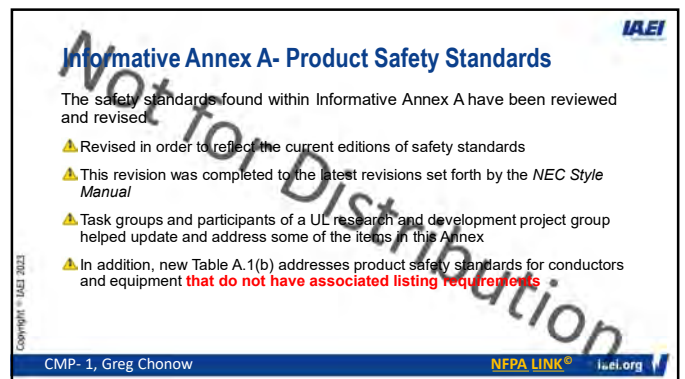
257



258



259



260

### Informative Annex A- Product Safety Standards

The safety standards found within Informative Annex A have been reviewed and revised.

Revised in order to reflect the current editions of safety standards  
This revision was completed to the latest revisions set forth by the *NEC Style Manual*  
Task groups and participants of a UL research and development project group helped update and address some of the items in this Annex

**Table A.1(b)** addresses product safety standards for conductors and equipment that do not have associated listing requirements

Article 110	Standards Number	Standard Title
	UL 10C	Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
	UL 305	Panic Hardware
	UL 486D	Sealed Wire Connector Systems
	UL 62275	Cable Management Systems- Cable Ties for Electrical Installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

261

### Table 13 Equipment Suitable for Hazardous (Classified) Locations

Created new Table 13 in Chapter 9 entitled Equipment Suitable for Hazardous (Classified) Locations

- ▲ Text has been deleted at 505.9(C)(2)(4) referencing Table 505.9(C)(2)(4) and new text has been added to reference Chapter 9 Table 13
- ▲ Requirements at 505.9(C)(2)(4) discuss zone equipment marking requirements
- ▲ Table 13 in Chapter 9 provides a complete list of the types of protection for hazardous (classified) locations
- ▲ Improves the readability of 505.9(C)(2)(4)
- ▲ Will assist the electrical professional in verifying compliance with the Code and the manufacturer's listing of the equipment installed in a hazardous (classified) location for both zone and other classified locations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

CMP- 14, Haywood Kines NFPA LINK® iaei.org

262



263

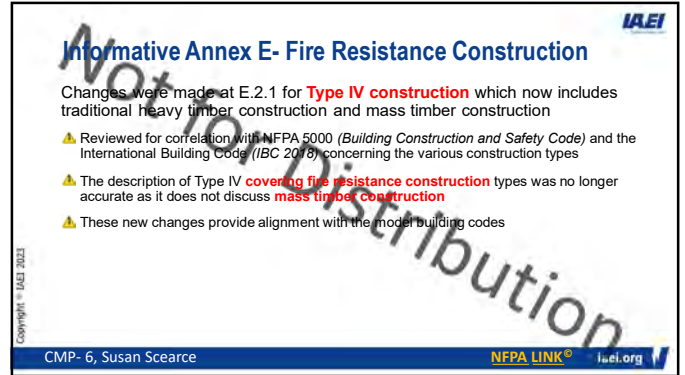


264

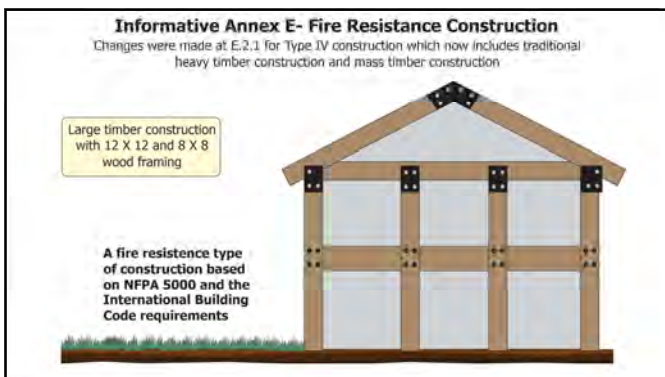




265



266



267



268



**IAEI**

## Thank You to the IAEI Membership

The IAEI would like to thank the membership for their dedication and commitment to electrical safety

- ▲ Since 1928, IAEI members have promoted and advanced electrical safety
- ▲ We are known throughout the electrical trade as "The Electrical Safety Leaders" for a reason
- ▲ Thousands of past IAEI members are depending on you to carry on their legacy and move forward the daunting task of ensuring electrical safety
- ▲ The IAEI is the **electrical line of defense** keeping families electrically safe
- ▲ You, **the electrical professional**, make a difference in the electrical safety of the world
- ▲ If you are not a member of the IAEI, please consider joining us in our endeavor of **"Keeping You and Your Families Electrically Safe"**

Copyright © IAEI 2023

From the IAEI Board of Directors [iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

269

**IAEI**

Developed and presented by the International Association of Electrical Inspectors




The Electrical Safety Leader

Visit us at [www.iaei.org](http://www.iaei.org)

Copyright © IAEI 2023

[iaei.org](http://iaei.org)

270

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-2 Analysis of 2023 NEC Code Changes Part 1 (Central Electric Inspection Bureau)

All certifications (5 hours)



### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: John Grivensky  
 Organization: Electrical League of Eastern Ohio DBA Central Electric Inspection Bureau  
 Address: 201 E. Commerce St. Ste 160 Youngstown OH 44503  
 E-mail: office@centralinspections.org Telephone: 330-744-5238  
 Website: Centralinspections.org  
 Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
 Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
 Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Analysis of 2023 Code Changes - Part 1  
 Course instructor: John Grivensky  
 Course description: To introduce the student to the new code changes and how it affects electrical system installations. This course was written using the reference material of the IAEE's Analysis of Changes 2023, the 2023 NEC & IAEE Analysis of 2023 Code Changes Powerpoint.  
 Instructional hours per session: 5 Number of Sessions: 1  
 Course Date(s) and Location: 12/9/23 - 201 E. Commerce St. Ste 160 Youngstown Ohio 44503

**Special Content:**

Code Administration: \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Existing Buildings: \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Electrical Instruction:  Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Plumbing Instruction: \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online? \_\_\_\_\_ On Demand \_\_\_\_\_ Webinar \_\_\_\_\_

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation): \_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only: \_\_\_\_\_ Commercial Certifications: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Administrative Course, All Certifications: \_\_\_\_\_

**Application materials included:**

- Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives
- Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)
- Assessment Materials (for online courses)
- Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: michael.lane@com.ohio.gov or BBS@com.ohio.gov

# Analysis of 2023 Code Changes – Part I

5 Hour Course to be offered December 9, 2023

## Timetable:

7:00am – 8:00am

## Introduction:

- 1) General Information 2023 National Electric Code
- 2) Code-Wide changes
  - New Articles for 2023 NEC
  - Deleted Articles for the 2023 NEC
- 3) Article 90 Introduction

## Chapter I: General

- 1) Article 100 – Definitions
- 2) Article 110 – General Requirements for Electrical Installations

**BREAK: 8:00 to 8:15 AM**

## Chapter II: Wiring & Protection

- 1) Article 210 – Branch Circuits Not Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
- 2) Article 215 – Feeders
- 3) Article 220 – Branch-Circuit, Feeder and Service Load Calculations
- 4) Article 225 – Outside Branch-Circuits and Feeders
- 5) Article 230 – Services
- 6) Article 235 -- Branch Circuits, Feeders, and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500Volts dc, Nominal
- 7) Article 240 – Overcurrent Protection
- 8) Article 242 – Overvoltage Protection
- 9) Article 245 -- Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc
- 10) Article 250 – Grounding and Bonding

**BREAK: 9:15 to 9:30 AM**

### **Chapter III: Wiring Methods and Material**

- 1) Article 300 – General Requirements for Wiring Methods & Materials
- 2) Article 305 – Methods & Materials for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
- 3) Article 310 – Conductors for General Wiring
- 4) Article 312 – Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, & Meter Socket Enclosures
- 5) Article 314 – Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes, Conduit Bodies, Fittings & Handhole Enclosures
- 6) Article 315 – Medium Voltage Conductors, Cable, Cable Joints, and Cable Terminations
- 7) Article 320 – Armored Cable: Type AC
- 8) Article 322 – Flat Cable Assemblies: Type FC
- 9) Article 330 – Metal-Clad Cable: Type MC
- 10) Article 337 – Type P Cable

**BREAK: 10:30 to 10:45 AM**

### **Chapter III: Wiring Methods and Material cont'**

- 11) Article 342 – Intermediate Metal Conduit (*IMC*)
- 12) Article 344 – Rigid Metal Conduit (*RMC*)
- 13) Article 352 – Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride Conduit (*PVC*)
- 14) Article 353 – High Density Polyethylene Conduit (*HDPE Conduit*)
- 15) Article 358 – Electrical Metallic Tubing (*EMT*)
- 16) Article 369 – Insulated Bus Pipe (*IBP*) /  
Tubular Covered Conductors (*TCC*) Systems
- 17) Article 371 – Flexible Bus Systems
- 18) Article 398 – Open Wiring on Insulators

### **Chapter IV: Equipment for General Use**

- 1) Article 404 -- Switches
- 2) Article 406 – Receptacles, Cord Connectors and Attachment Plugs (*Caps*)
- 3) Article 408 – Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards
- 4) Article 409 – Industrial Control Panels
- 5) Article 410 – Luminaires, Lampholders, and Lamps
- 6) Article 422 – Appliances

**BREAK: 11:45 AM to 12:00 PM**



- 7) Article 424 – Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment
- 8) Article 425 – Fixed Resistance & Electrode Industrial Process Heating Equipment
- 9) Article 426 – Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment
- 10) Article 427 – Fixed Electric Heating Equipment for Pipelines & Vessels
- 11) Article 430 – Motors, Motor Controls, and Controllers
- 12) Article 440 – Air Conditioning and Refrigerating Equipment
- 13) Article 445 – Generators
- 14) Article 450 – Transformers & Transformer Vaults  
(Including Secondary Ties)
- 15) Article 470 – Resistors and Reactors
- 16) Article 495 – Equipment Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

**Class Ends: 1:00 PM**

**Analysis of 2023 Code Changes – Part I**  
**(5) Hours “Code”**

References:

- I.A.E.I's Analysis of Changes NEC - 2023
- NFPA 70 National Electrical Code

Powerpoint

- I.A.E.I's Analysis of Changes – 2023 NEC

# IAEI's Analysis of Changes 2023 NEC

Your essential guide to the most important changes  
in the 2023 National Electrical Code



The Electrical Industry Leader



Copyright © IAEI 2023

## General Information 2023 National Electric Code

- Model Code Development
- IAEI Involvement
- IAEI Codes and Standards
- NFPA NEC 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Draft Meeting
- Public Input and Public Comments
- General Terms and IAEI Characters

Copyright © IAEI 2023

NEC 2023  
**ANALYSIS OF CHANGES**

Your essential guide to the most important changes  
in the 2023 National Electrical Code

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Published and copyrighted  
by the International  
Association of Electrical  
Inspectors (IAEI)

A collaborative effort based on  
input from the IAEI NFPA Code  
Making Panel members, the IAEI  
Codes and Standards Committee,  
the IAEI Board of Directors, and  
the IAEI Staff

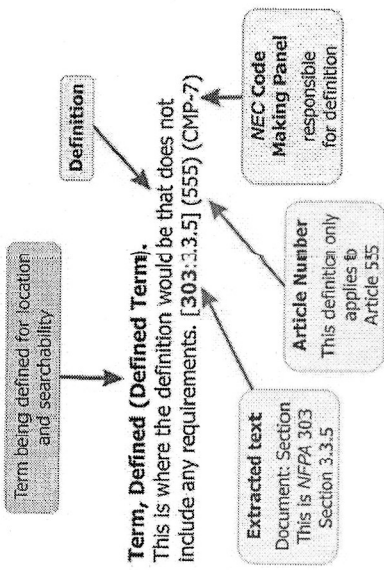


iaei.org

## Code-Wide Changes

- NEC Style Manual Changes
  - Definition Location
  - Reconditioned Equipment
  - Medium Voltage Requirements
  - Copper Clad Aluminum
  - New Articles for 2023 NEC
- Copyright © IAEI 2023

## Article 100- Definitions



Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Chapter 1 General

- Article 100
- Article 110

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Article 90 Introduction

- Use and application, arrangement, and enforcement of this Code
- Mandatory, permissive, and nonmandatory text

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Article 100 Definitions

- Covers all defined terms used in the Code

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Article 110 General Requirements for Electrical Installations

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Article 210 Branch Circuits Not Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Chapter 2 Wiring and Protection

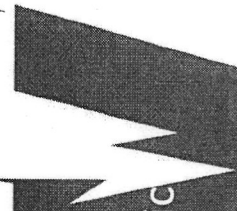
- Article 210 • Article 240
- Article 215 • Article 242
- Article 220 • Article 245
- Article 225 • Article 250
- Article 230
- Article 235

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Article 215 Feeders

Copyright © IAEI 2023





Article 220  
Branch-Circuit, Feeder, and Service  
Load Calculations

Copyright © IAEI 2023




Article 230  
Services

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 225  
Outside Branch-Circuits and  
Feeders

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 235  
Branch Circuits, Feeders, and  
Services Over 1000 Volts ac,  
1500 Volts dc, Nominal


Copyright © IAEI 2023





Article 240  
Overcurrent Protection

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 245  
Overcurrent Protection for Systems  
Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500  
Volts dc

Copyright © IAEI 2023



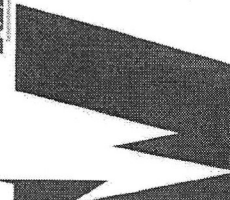
Article 242  
Overvoltage Protection

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 250  
Grounding and Bonding

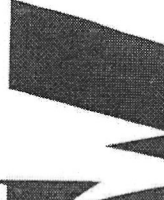
Copyright © IAEI 2023



**Chapter 3**  
**Wiring Methods and Material**

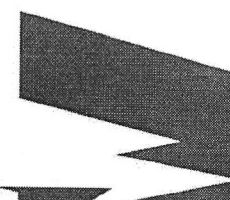
- Article 300 • Article 320 • Article 352
- Article 305 • Article 322 • Article 353
- Article 310 • Article 330 • Article 358
- Article 312 • Article 337 • Article 369
- Article 314 • Article 342 • Article 371
- Article 315 • Article 344 • Article 398

Copyright © IAEI 2023



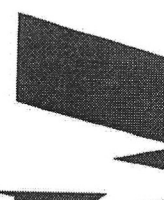
**Article 305**  
**Methods and Materials for**  
**Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac,**  
**1500 Volts dc, Nominal**

Copyright © IAEI 2023



**Article 300**  
**General Requirements for Wiring**  
**Methods and Materials**

Copyright © IAEI 2023



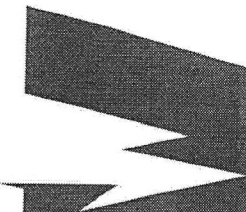
**Article 310**  
**Conductors for General Wiring**

Copyright © IAEI 2023



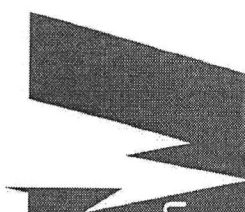
Article 312  
Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and  
Meter Socket Enclosures

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 315  
Medium Voltage Conductors,  
Cable, Cable Joints, and Cable  
Terminations

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 314  
Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction  
Boxes, Conduit Bodies, Fittings,  
and Handhole Enclosures

Copyright © IAEI 2023



Article 320  
Armored Cable: Type AC


Copyright © IAEI 2023





Article 337  
Type P Cable

Copyright © IAFI 2023




Article 342  
Intermediate Metal Conduits (IMC)

Copyright © IAFI 2023




Article 322  
Flat Cable Assemblies: Type FC

Copyright © IAFI 2023



Article 330  
Metal-Clad Cable: Type MC

Copyright © IAFI 2023



Article 353  
High Density Polyethylene Conduit  
(*HDPE Conduit*)

Copyright © IAETI 2023



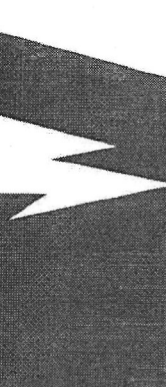
Article 358  
Electrical Metallic Tubing (*EMT*)

Copyright © IAETI 2023



Article 344  
Rigid Metal Conduit (*RMC*)

Copyright © IAETI 2023



Article 352  
Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride  
Conduit (*PVC*)

Copyright © IAETI 2023



## Article 369 Insulated Bus Pipe (BP) Tubular Covered Conductor (TCC) Systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023

## Article 398 Open Wiring on Insulators

Copyright © IAEI 2023

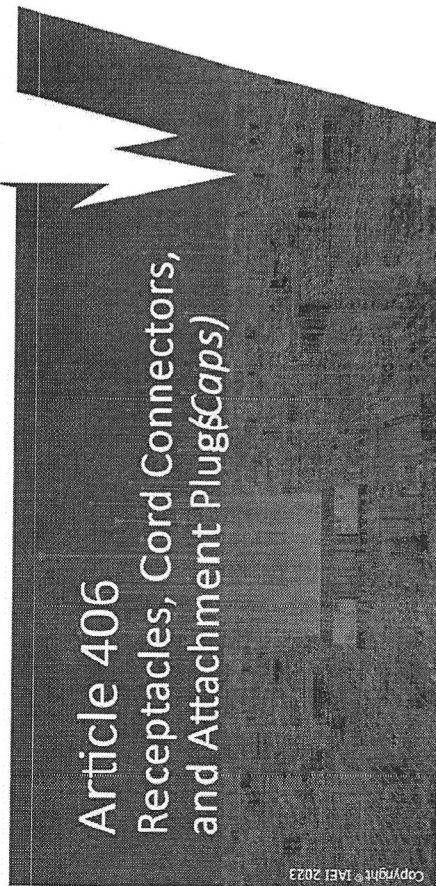
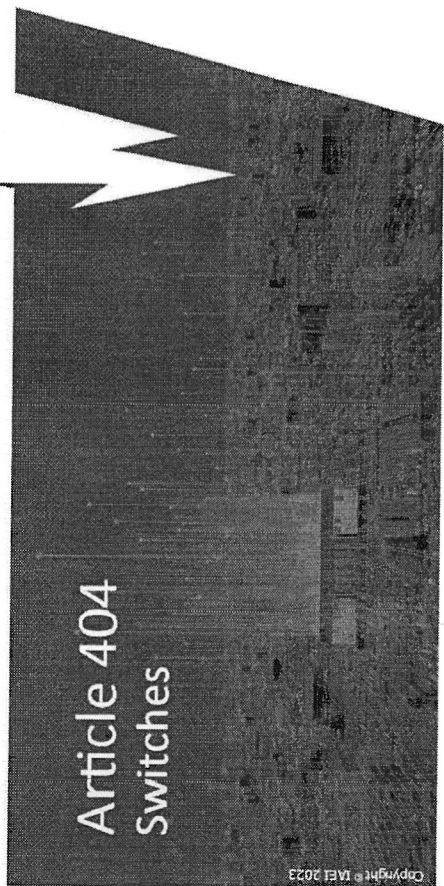
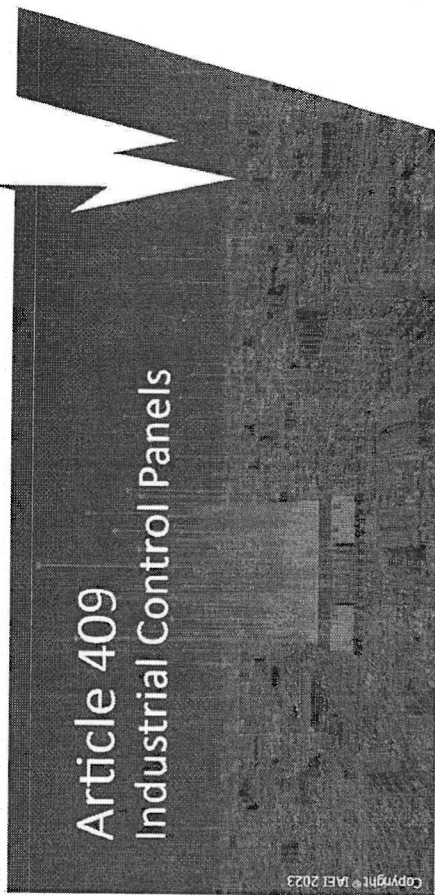
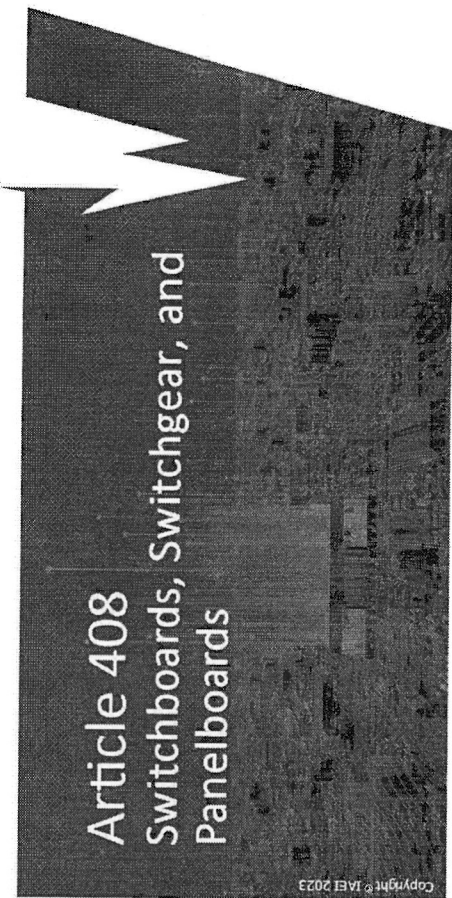
## Article 371 Flexible Bus Systems

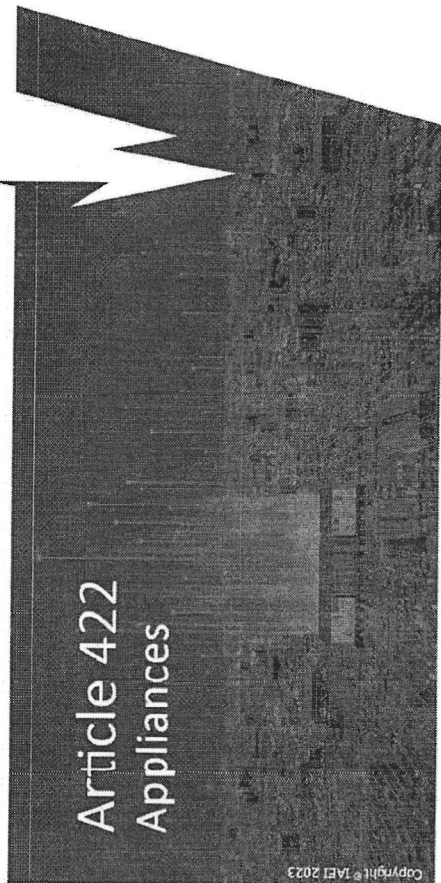
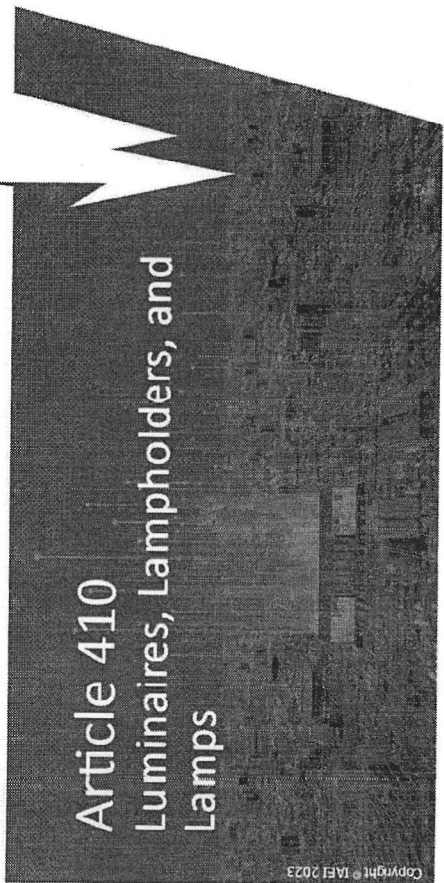
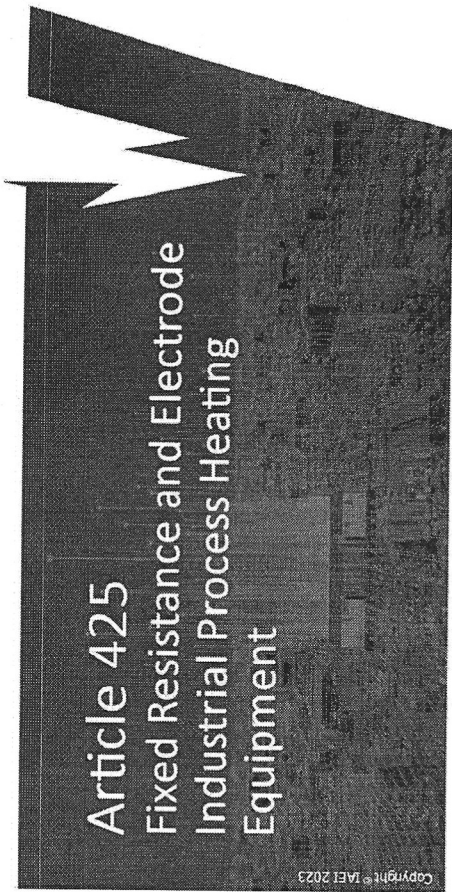
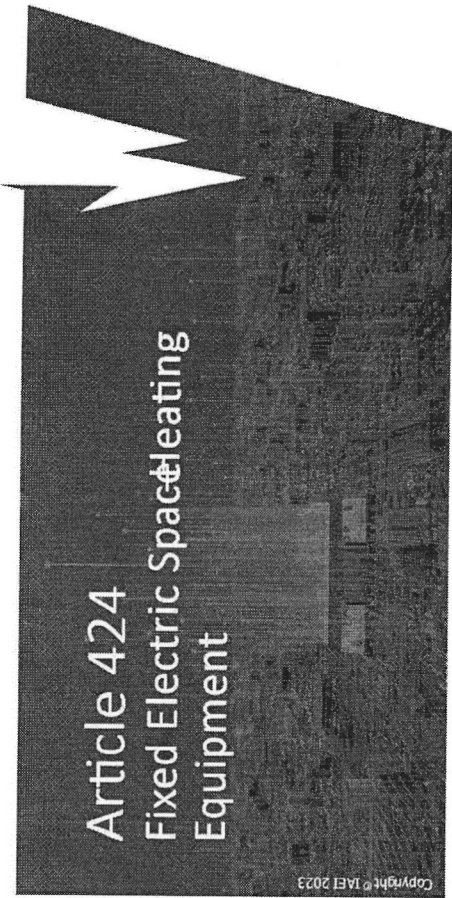
Copyright © IAEI 2023

## Chapter 4 Equipment for General Use

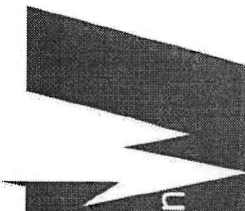
- Article 404
- Article 406
- Article 408
- Article 409
- Article 410
- Article 422
- Article 424
- Article 425
- Article 426
- Article 427
- Article 430
- Article 440
- Article 450
- Article 470
- Article 495

Copyright © IAEI 2023



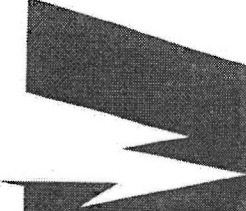






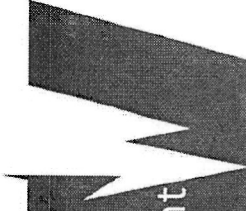
Article 426  
Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and  
Snow-Melting Equipment

Copyright © IAEE 2023



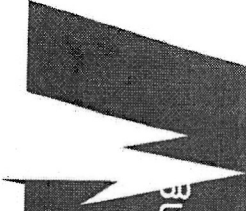
Article 430  
Motors, Motor Controls, and  
Controllers

Copyright © IAEE 2023



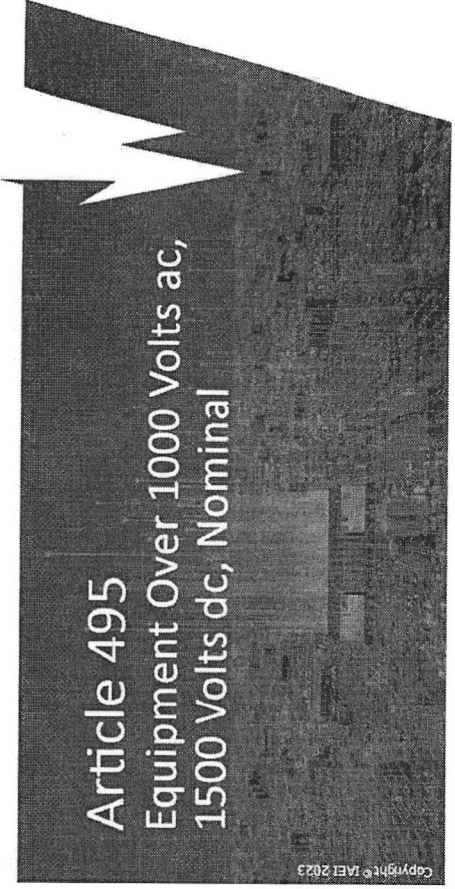
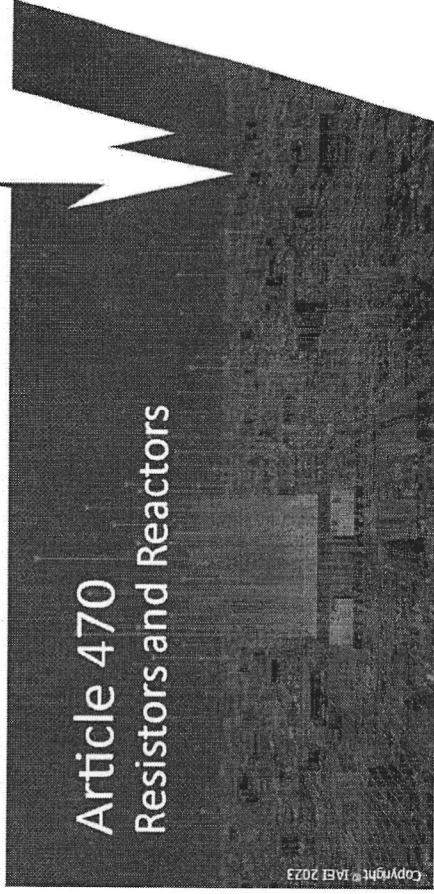
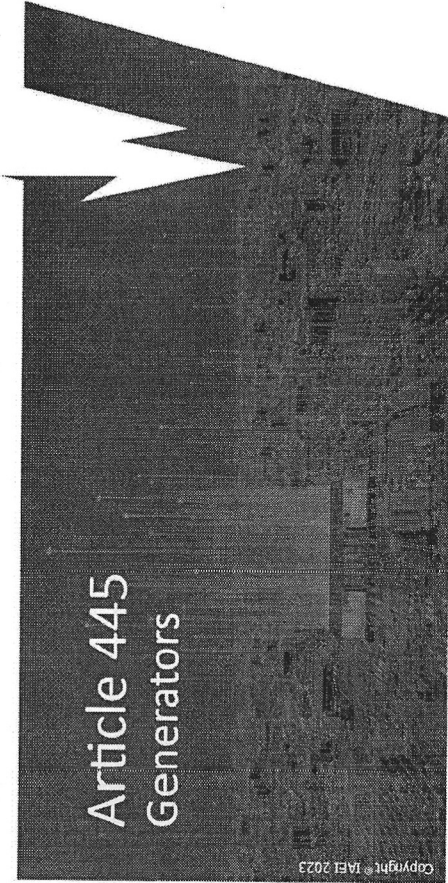
Article 427  
Fixed Electric Heating Equipment  
for Pipelines and Vessels

Copyright © IAEE 2023



Article 440  
Air-Conditioning and Refrigerating  
Equipment

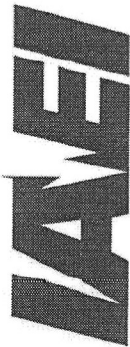
Copyright © IAEE 2023







Developed and presented by the International  
Association of Electrical Inspectors



The Electrical Safety Leader



INTERNATIONAL  
CODE  
COUNCIL®

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Visit us at [www.iaei.org](http://www.iaei.org)

[iaei.org](http://www.iaei.org)

**John Z. Grivensky, ESI #565**  
1245 Sageberry Dr.  
North Lima, Ohio 44452

**Experience:**

- Electrical Safety Inspector - 22 years
- Master Electrician (commercial/industrial/residential) – 39 years
- I.B.E.W. apprenticeship instructor – 29 years
- Mahoning County and City of Youngstown Electrical Plans Examiner – 15 years

**Education:**

- I.B.E.W. residential apprenticeship
- I.B.E.W. commercial/industrial apprenticeship
- Bachelor of Applied Science, Electrical Engineering from Youngstown State University
- Associate Degree, Vocational Instructor, from University of Tennessee

**Affiliates:**

- Past President of the International Association of Electrical Inspectors of the State of Ohio
- Current President of the International Association of Electrical Inspectors Association of Electrical Inspectors – Eastern Division
- Chairman of Mahoning County Licensing Board
- Secretary Treasurer of The Electrical League of Eastern Ohio

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-3 Analysis of 2023 NEC Code Changes Part 2 (Central Electric Inspection Bureau)

All certifications (5 hours)



### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: John Grivensky  
Organization: Electrical League of Eastern Ohio DSA Central Electric Inspection Bureau  
Address: 201 E. Commerce St. Suite 160 Youngstown OH 44503  
E-mail: office@centralinspections.org Telephone: 330-744-5238  
Website: centralinspections.org  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Analysis of Code Changes -- Part 2  
Course instructor: John Grivensky  
Course description: To introduce the student to the new code changes and it how it affects electrical system installations. This course was written using the reference material of the IAEE's Analysis of Changes 2023, the 2023 NEC, + IAEE's Analysis of 2023 Changes Powerpoint.  
Instructional hours per session: 5 Number of Sessions: 1  
Course Date(s) and Location: 12/10/23 201 E. Commerce St. Ste 160 Youngstown, OH 44503

**Special Content:**

Code Administration: \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Existing Buildings: \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Electrical Instruction:  Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_  
Plumbing Instruction: \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online? \_\_\_\_\_ On Demand \_\_\_\_\_ Webinar \_\_\_\_\_

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_  
Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation): \_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only: \_\_\_\_\_ Commercial Certifications: \_\_\_\_\_  
Administrative Course, All Certifications: \_\_\_\_\_

**Application materials included:**

- Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives
- Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)
- Assessment Materials (for online courses)
- Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

# Analysis of 2023 Code Changes – Part II

5 Hour Course to be offered December 16, 2023

## Timetable:

7:00am – 8:00am

## Introduction:

- 1) General Information 2023 National Electric Code

## Chapter V: Equipment for General Use

- 1) Article 500 – Hazardous (*Classified*) Locations Classes I, II, and III, Divisions 1 and 2
- 2) Article 505 – Zone 0, 1, and 2 Locations
- 3) Article 512 – Cannabis Oil Equipment
- 4) Article 515 – Bulk Storage Plants
- 5) Article 517 – Health Care Facilities
- 6) Article 518 – Assembly Occupancies

## **BREAK: 8:00 to 8:15 AM**

- 7) Article 530 – Motion Picture and Television Studios & Remote Locations
- 8) Article 547 – Agricultural Buildings
- 9) Article 550 – Mobile Homes, Manufactured Homes, and Mobile Home Parks
- 10) Article 551 – Recreational Vehicles and Recreational Vehicle Parks
- 11) Article 555 – Marinas, Boatyards, Floating Buildings, and Commercial and Noncommercial Docking Facilities
- 12) Article 590 – Temporary Installations

## Chapter VI: Special Equipment

- 1) Article 600 – Electric Signs and Outline Lighting
- 2) Article 620 – Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, Moving Walks, Platform Lifts, and Stairway Chairlifts
- 3) Article 625 – Electric Vehicle Power Transfer

## **BREAK: 9:15 to 9:30 AM**

- 4) Article 630 – Electric Welders



- 5) Article 646 – Modular Data Centers
- 6) Article 670 – Industrial Machinery
- 7) Article 680 – Swimming Pools, Fountains, and Similar Installations
- 8) Article 690 – Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Systems

### **Chapter VII: Special Conditions**

- 1) Article 700 – Emergency Systems
- 2) Article 701 – Legally Required Standby Systems
- 3) Article 705 – Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources
- 4) Article 706 – Energy Storage Systems
- 5) Article 722 – Cables for Power-Limited Circuits and Fault-Managed Power Circuits

**BREAK: 10:30 to 10:45 AM**

- 6) Article 725 – Class 2 and Class 3 Power-Limited Circuits
- 7) Article 726 – Class 4 Fault-Managed Power Systems
- 8) Article 760 – Fire Alarm Systems

### **Chapter VIII: Communication Systems**

- 1) Article 800 – General Requirements for Communications Systems
- 2) Article 805 – Communications Circuits
- 3) Article 840 – Premises-Powered Broadband Communications Systems

**BREAK: 11:45 AM to 12:00 PM**

### **Chapter VIII: Tables and Informative Annexes**

- 1) Chapter 9 Table 13
- 2) Informative Annex A – Product Safety Standards
- 3) Informative Annex E – Types of Construction

**Class Ends: 1:00 PM**

**Analysis of 2023 Code Changes – Part II**  
**(5) Hours “Code”**

References:

- I.A.E.I's Analysis of Changes NEC - 2023
- NFPA 70 National Electrical Code

Powerpoint

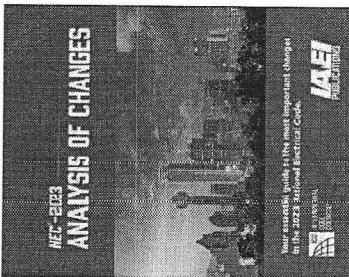
- I.A.E.I's Analysis of Changes – 2023 NEC

# IAEI's Analysis of Changes 2023 NEC

Your essential guide to the most important changes  
in the 2023 National Electrical Code



Copyright © IAEI 2023



Published and copyrighted  
by the International  
Association of Electrical  
Inspectors (IAEI)

A collaborative effort based on  
input from the IAEI NFPA Code  
Making Panel members, the IAEI  
Codes and Standards Committee,  
the IAEI Board of Directors, and  
the IAEI Staff

Copyright © IAEI 2023

[iaeil.org](http://iaeil.org)

# General Information 2023 National Electric Code

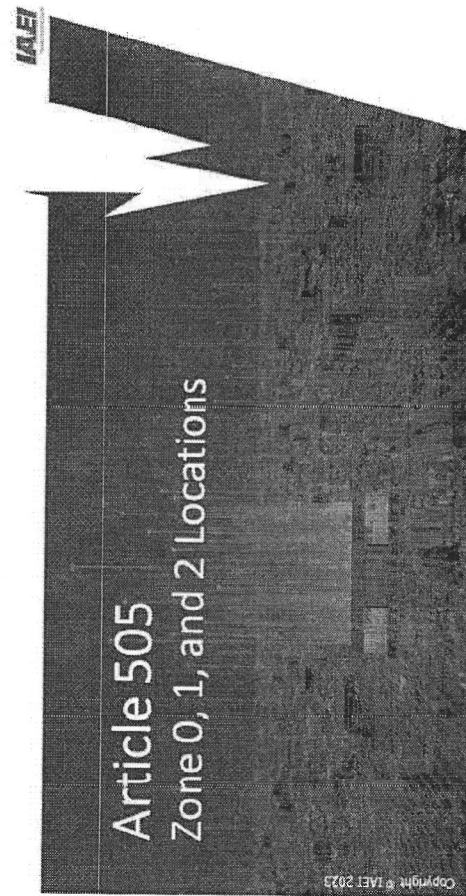
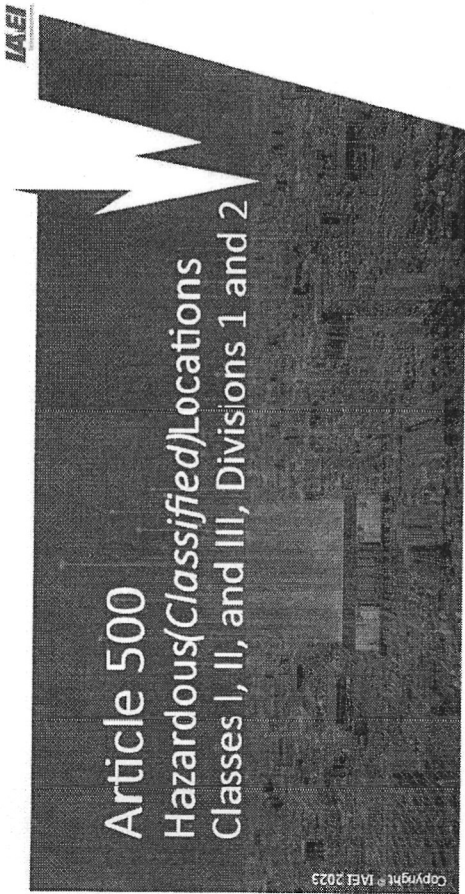
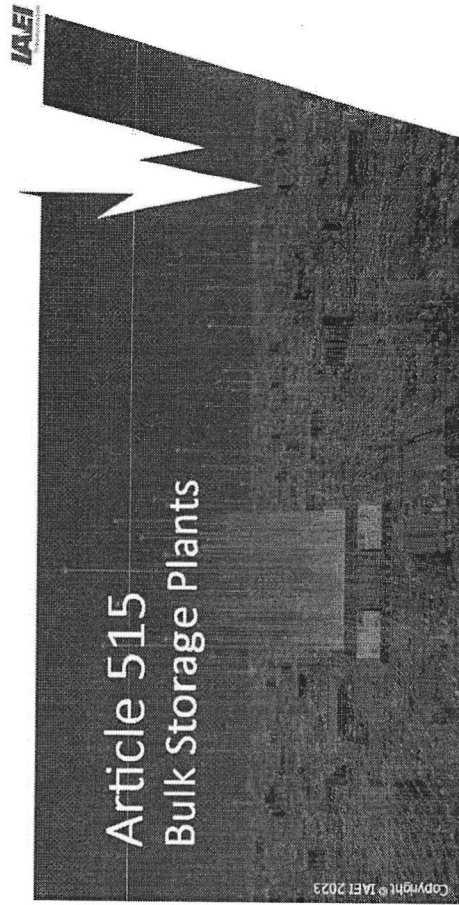
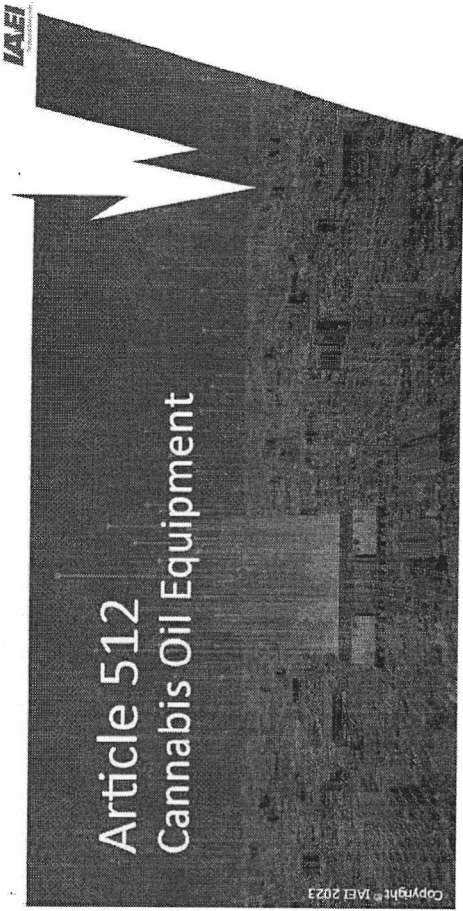
- Model Code Development
- IAEI Involvement
- IAEI Codes and Standards
- NFPA NEC 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Draft Meeting
- Public Input and Public Comments
- General Terms and IAEI Characters

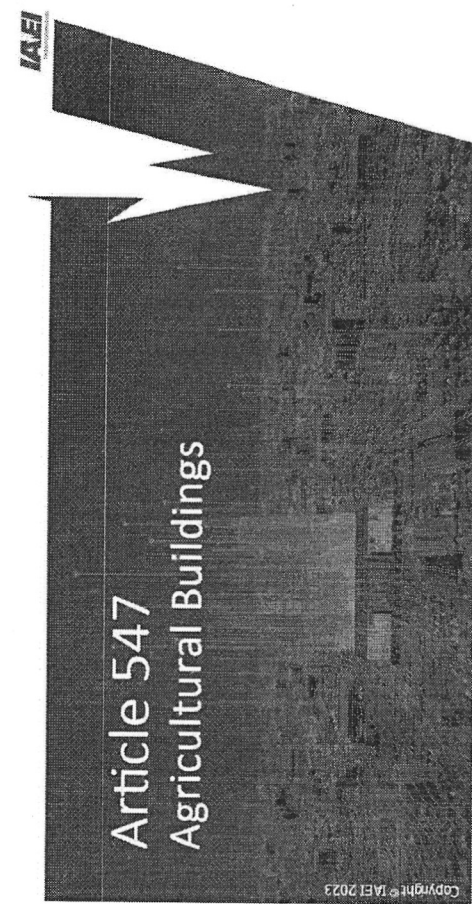
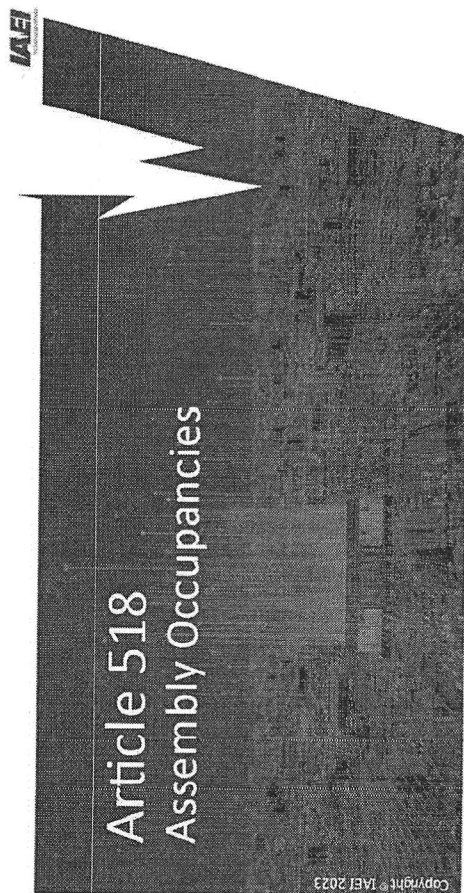
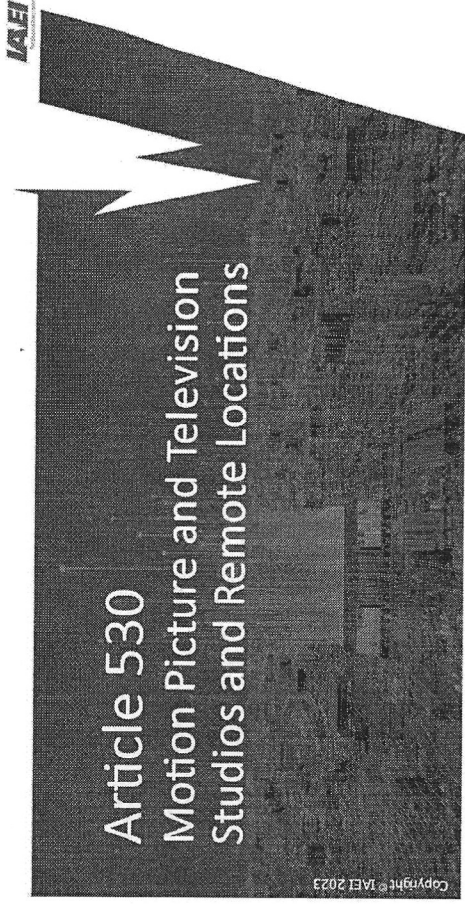
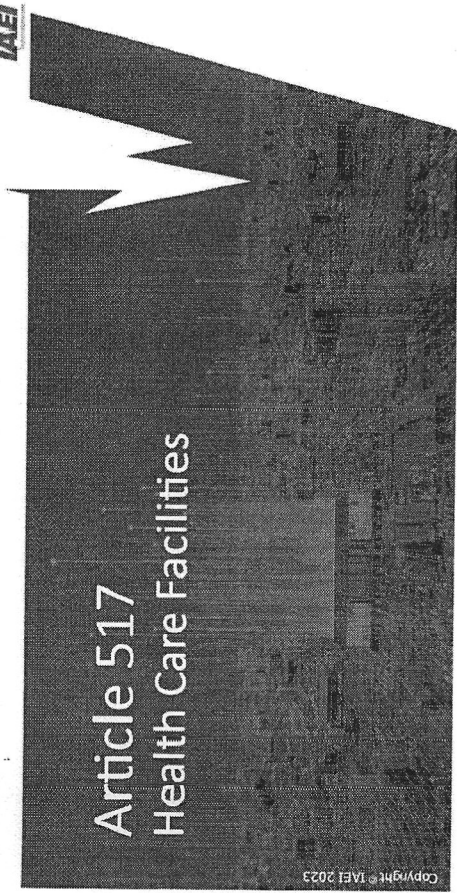
Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Chapter 5 Equipment for General Use

- Chapter 500
- Chapter 505
- Chapter 515
- Chapter 517
- Chapter 530
- Chapter 547
- Chapter 550
- Chapter 551
- Chapter 555
- Chapter 590

Copyright © IAEI 2023







Article 550  
Mobile Homes, Manufactured  
Homes, and Mobile Home Parks

Article 555  
Marinas, Boatyards, Floating  
Buildings, and Commercial and  
Noncommercial Docking Facilities

Article 551  
Recreational Vehicles and  
Recreational Vehicle Parks

Article 590  
Temporary Installations

# Article 620

## Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, Moving Walks, Platform Lifts, and Stairway Chairlifts

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Article 625

## Electric Vehicle Power Transfer System

Copyright © IAEI 2023

# Chapter 6

## Special Equipment

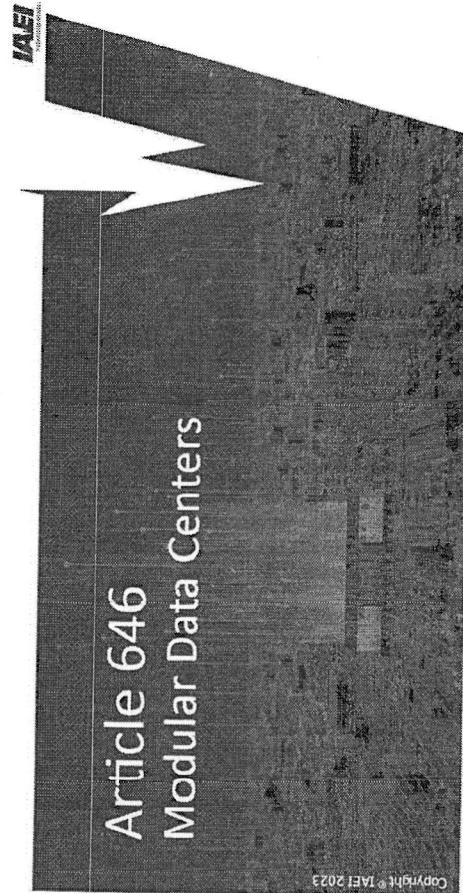
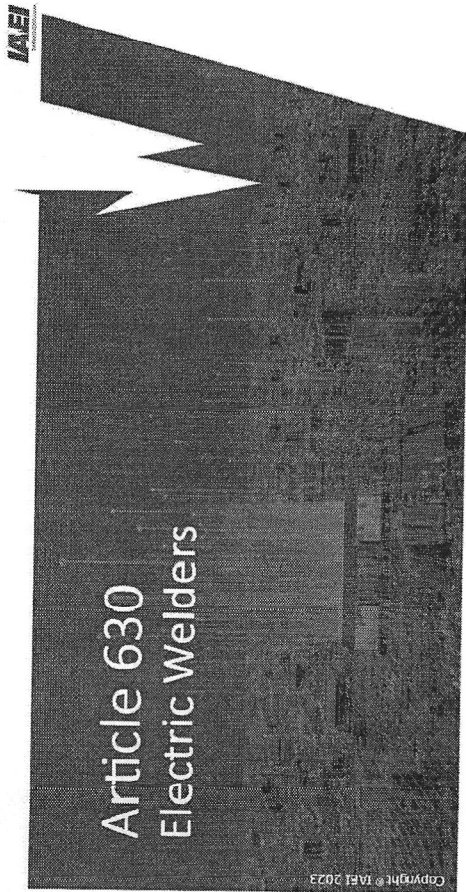
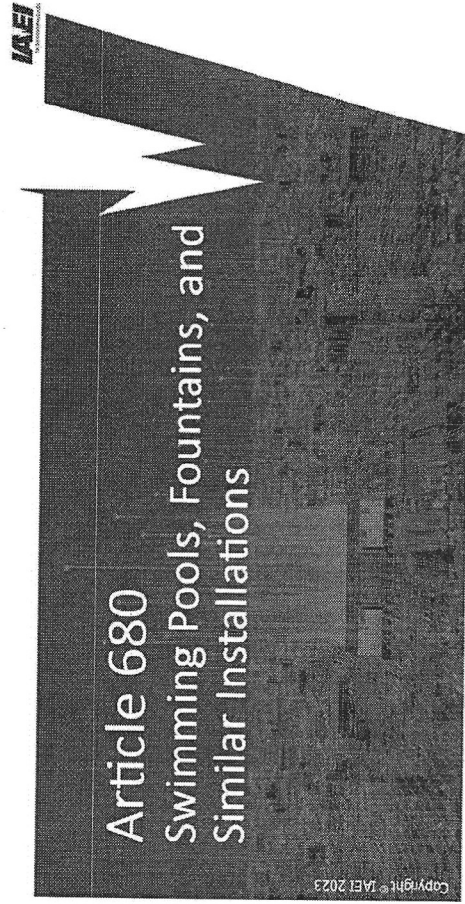
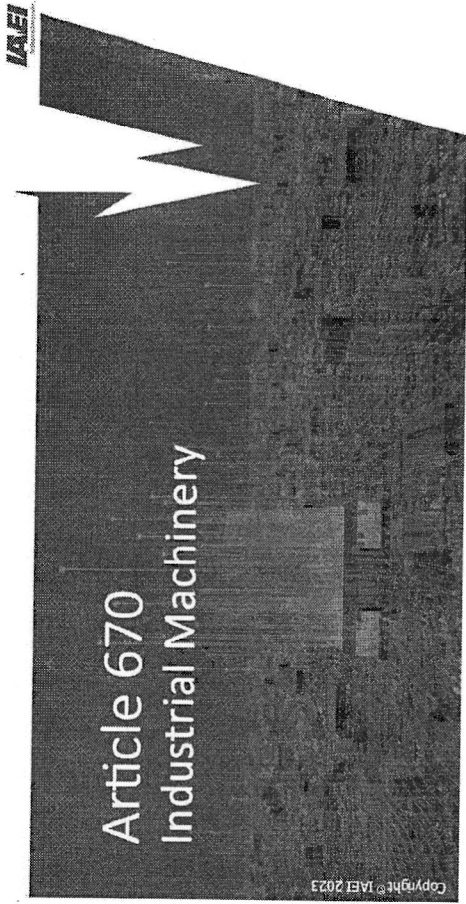
- Article 600 • Article 670
- Article 620 • Article 680
- Article 625 • Article 690
- Article 630
- Article 646

Copyright © IAEI 2023

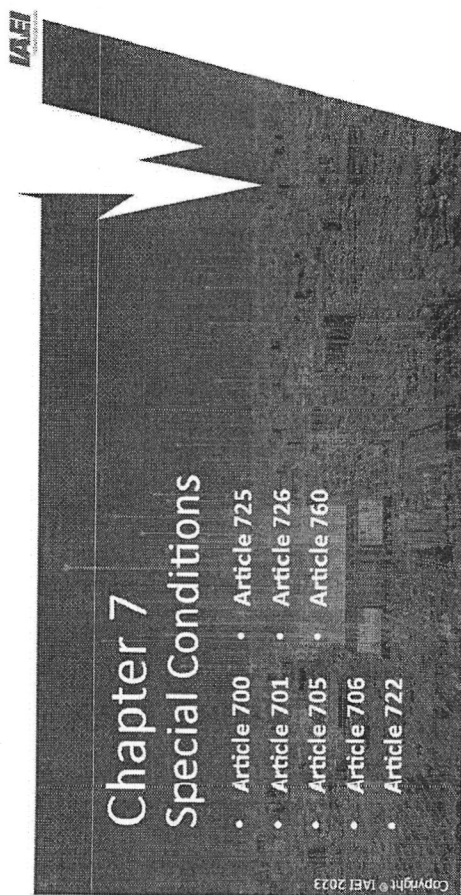
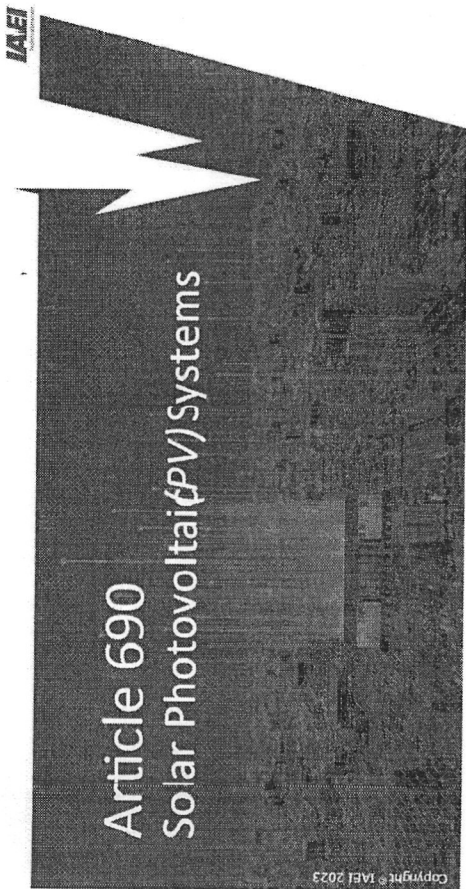
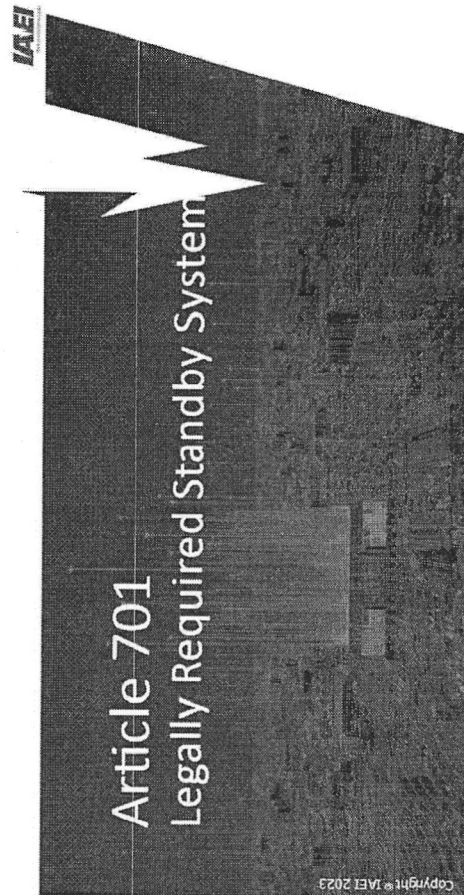
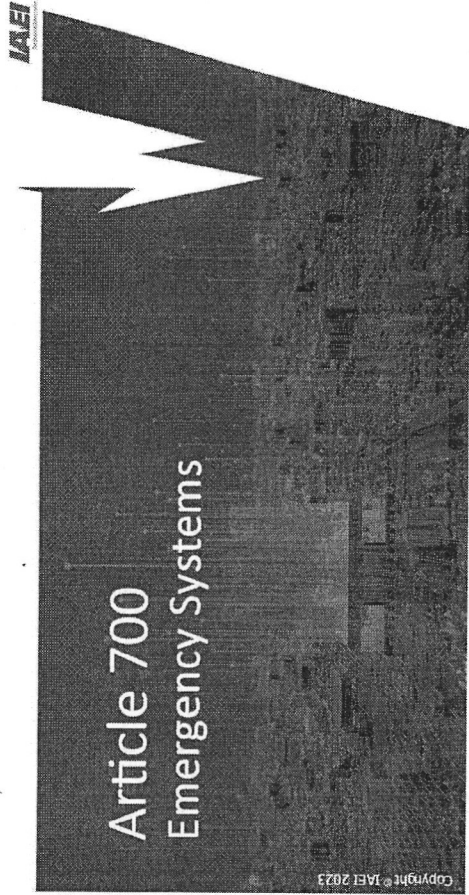
# Article 600

## Electric Signs and Outline Lighting

Copyright © IAEI 2023







**IAEI**

**Article 722**  
Cables for Power Limited Circuits  
and Fault Managed Power  
Circuits

Copyright © IAEI 2023

**IAEI**

**Article 725**  
Class 2 and Class 3 Power Limited  
Circuits

Copyright © IAEI 2023

**IAEI**

**Article 705**  
Interconnected Electric Power  
Production Sources

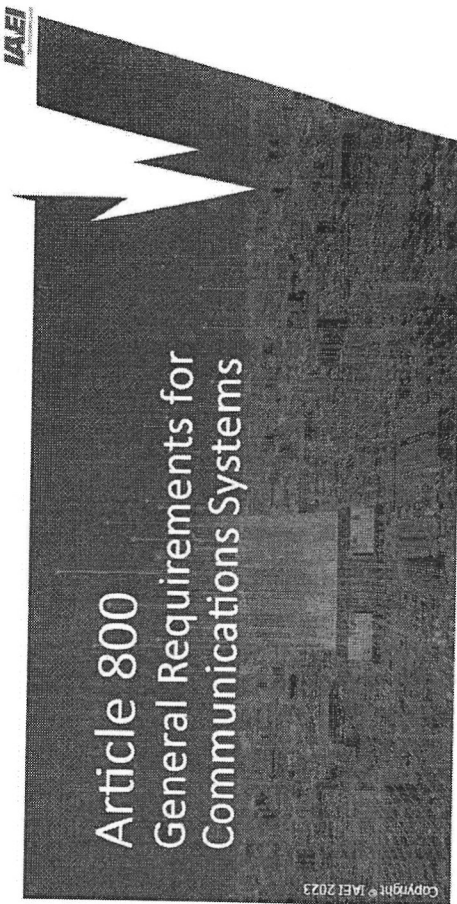
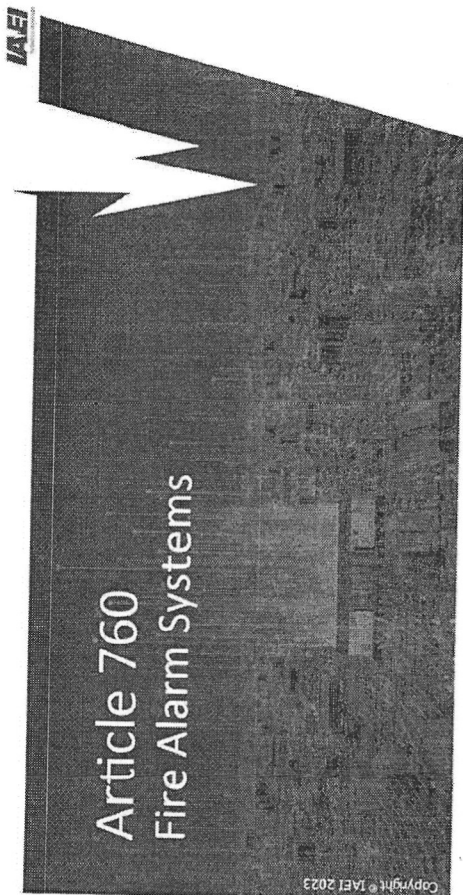
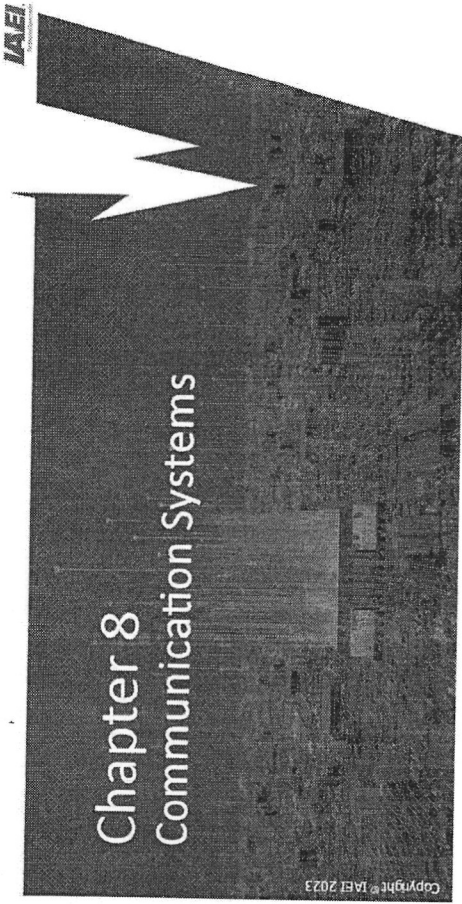
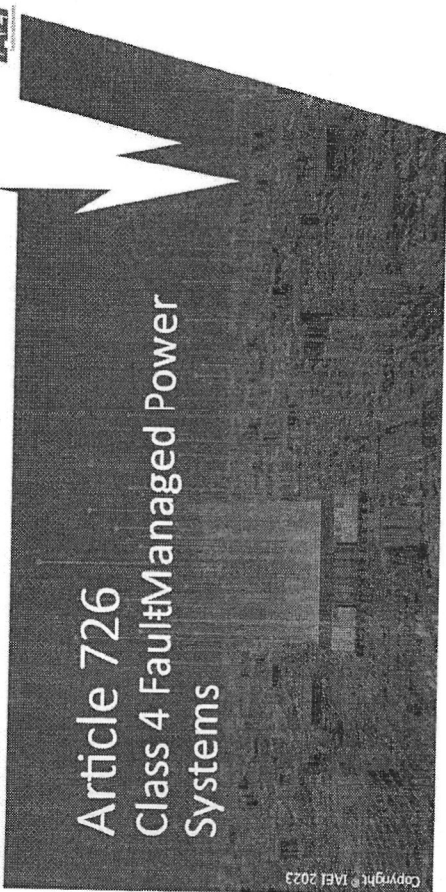
Copyright © IAEI 2023

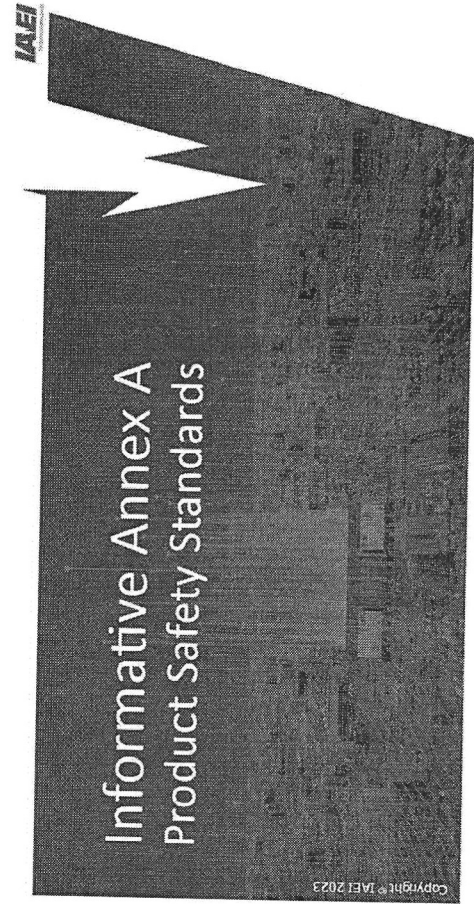
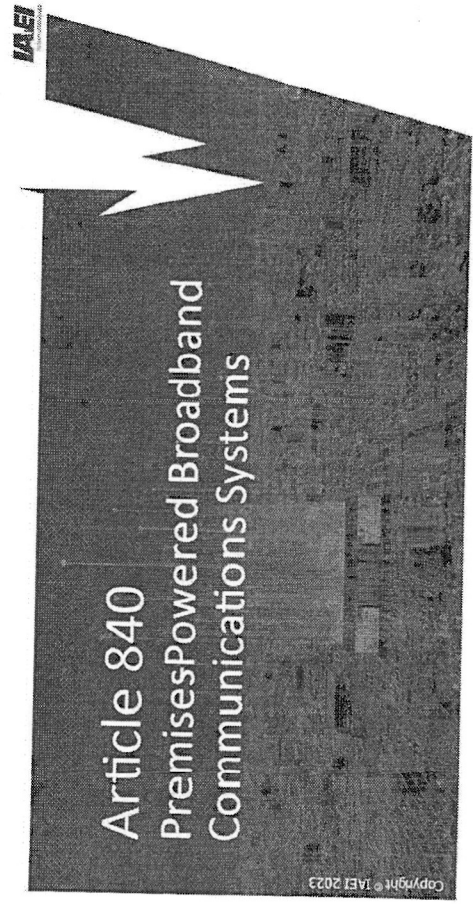
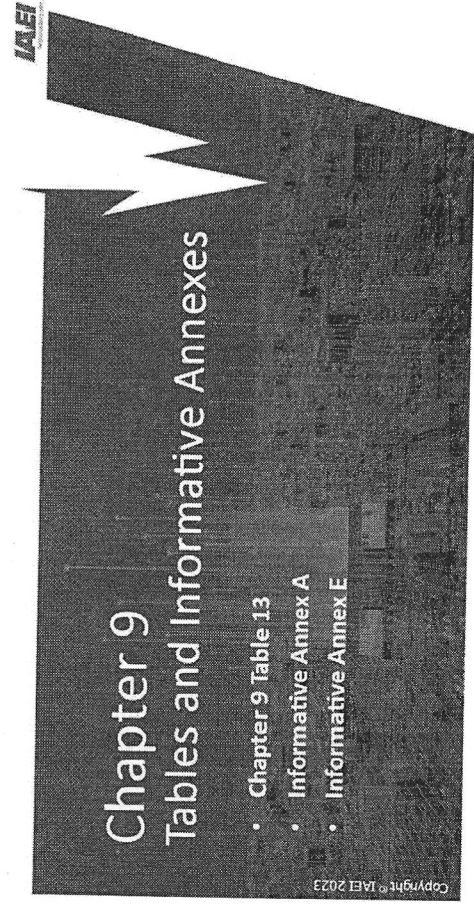
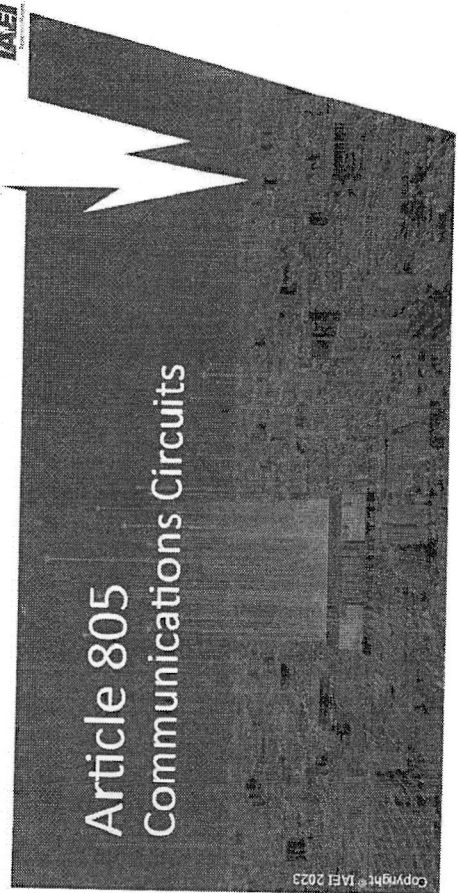
**IAEI**

**Article 706**  
Energy Storage Systems

Copyright © IAEI 2023







IAEI

# Informative Annex E Types of Construction

Copyright © IAEI 2023

IAEI

Developed and presented by the International  
Association of Electrical Inspectors

**IAEI**

The Electrical Safety Leader



INTERNATIONAL  
CODE  
COUNCIL®

Copyright © IAEI 2023

Visit us at [www.iaei.org](http://www.iaei.org)

iaei.org

**John Z. Grivensky, ESI #565**  
1245 Sageberry Dr.  
North Lima, Ohio 44452

**Experience:**

- Electrical Safety Inspector - 22 years
- Master Electrician (commercial/industrial/residential) – 39 years
- I.B.E.W. apprenticeship instructor – 29 years
- Mahoning County and City of Youngstown Electrical Plans Examiner – 15 years

**Education:**

- I.B.E.W. residential apprenticeship
- I.B.E.W. commercial/industrial apprenticeship
- Bachelor of Applied Science, Electrical Engineering from Youngstown State University
- Associate Degree, Vocational Instructor, from University of Tennessee

**Affiliates:**

- Past President of the International Association of Electrical Inspectors of the State of Ohio
- Current President of the International Association of Electrical Inspectors Association of Electrical Inspectors – Eastern Division
- Chairman of Mahoning County Licensing Board
- Secretary Treasurer of The Electrical League of Eastern Ohio

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-4 Building Officials Round Table (BOCONEO)

All certifications (nine sessions, 1 hour each)



**APPLICATION FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION APPROVAL  
COURSE CONDITIONS AND GUIDELINES**

The Ohio Board of Building Standards is committed to the ongoing education and professional development of board-certified personnel through the delivery of high-quality, accurate and engaging professional continuing education content. To this end, the Board reviews and approves Continuing Education Courses for building department personnel.

Board approval is granted for course instruction on current codes and standards, including the OBC, OMC, OPC, and RCO, and any other content areas directly related to the responsibilities of the certification for which credit is being requested.

**Promotion:** Any person or organization promoting an approved course is required to make full and accurate disclosure regarding course title, course approval number, number of credit hours, categories for which the BBS has approved the class, and fees in promotion materials and advertising. **The Board does not grant retroactive approval. It is recommended that courses be submitted for approval well in advance of any scheduling of classes and advertising.** Advertising may not falsely state BBS approval before approval is granted. Course providers may state that BBS approval is pending.

**Application Submission:** All Applications and associated materials shall be submitted by email in .pdf format. Instructions for completing the application are attached.

**Certificate of Completion:** Course providers shall provide participants a certificate of completion containing the following information:

- Name of participant
- Title of approved courses
- BBS approval #
- BBS approved certifications
- Date of the continuing education program
- Number of approved credit hours awarded, and
- Signature of authorized sponsor or instructor.

Any person or organization administering an approved course shall return a completed BBS Course Attendance form by email.

**Participants:** Participants must attend the complete course as presented by the instructor to receive credit hours approved by the Board. The organization or instructor of online courses shall plan and execute methods to verify the individual's attendance and completion of the course. No partial credit will be given to any participant who failed to complete the entire course as approved.

**Board approval:** All courses are approved for the calendar year in which application is made. Courses may be renewed so long as the referenced code is in effect, and the CEUs, certification and content remain unchanged. When the referenced code is updated, courses must be updated, and new approvals obtained.

**Facility/training area:** BBS Course may be delivered in person or online, or both, at the sponsor's option. Course facilities shall include the following:

**In Person Classes:**

- Sufficient seating capacity
- ADA accessible facilities
- Appropriate Audio/Visual devices for delivery
- Writing surfaces for participants

**Online Classes:**

- Web-accessible
- ADA accessible delivery
- Tech support available
- Live and recorded courses permitted

In-person facilities shall comfortably and safely seat at least the number of attendees present in the room and shall be climate controlled, non-smoking, and sound controlled so that outside noise will not interfere with the training.

### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: Dan Perno  
Organization: BOCONEO  
Address: Po Box 505  
E-mail: dperno5252@gmail.com Telephone: 440-476-3011  
Website: boconeo.org  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) BOCONEO Conference Email: boconeo@gmail.com

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Building Officials Round Table  
Course instructor: Varies : Open discussion between new BOs and experienced BOs highlighting a particular experienced BO monthly  
Course description: This is an open course for new Building Officials and Residential Building Officials to dicuss duties, policies and procedures in real life scenarios with experienced Building Offials from around the Conference. Attendees will improve competency on Building Official code application, procedures, duties, responsibilities and decision making process. This Round Table will provide opportunities for new BOs and RBOs to learn from those who have years of experience as BOs and RBOs  
Instructional hours per session: 1 Number of Sessions: 9  
Course Date(s) and Location: The 3rd Tuesday of the Month

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:   
Existing Buildings:   
Electrical Instruction:   
Plumbing Instruction:   
Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online?  On Demand  Webinar

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_  
Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation):  
Participation Activity Confirmation (Certificate)

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:  Commercial Certifications:   
Administrative Course, All Certifications:

**Application materials included:**

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives  
 Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)  
 Assessment Materials (for online courses)  
 Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

## Instructions for new Continuing Education Approval form

### Provider Information

1. Please include all contact information.
2. If course is not part of a conference, leave conference sponsor and email blank.

### Course Renewal

1. Indicate if the course is being submitted for renewal. Include prior approval letter and write in prior course number.
2. Certification approval for courses has now changed: all existing courses being renewed will be approved within the new classification system.
  - a. Courses previously approved for only residential certifications will be approved for all residential certifications.
  - b. Courses previously approved for at least on commercial certification will now be approved for all commercial certifications and all residential certifications.
  - c. Courses on required instruction topics, Ohio Ethics, Code Administration and Existing Buildings, will be noted as Administrative Courses and be approved for all certifications.
3. Courses being renewed should skip the New Course information section and are not required to submit outline, agenda, slides or other instructional materials for review. Skip to Special Content, and mark any item that applies to the course.

### New Course Information

1. Enter course title, name of instructor, and a brief description of the course content. Learning objectives may be substituted for course description, if desired.
2. Number of instructional hours per session is the length of instructional time.
3. Number of sessions: can be 1 or the number of sessions planned.
4. Course date(s) and location: not necessary at this time, enter if known.

### Special Content

1. Indicate if the course will meet instructional time in Code Administration or Existing Buildings.
2. Indicate if the course is a plumbing or electrical course, for ESIAC review and trainee course tracking.
3. If the course is associated with a conference, indicate the conference name and location, as this will allow BBS to coordinate approvals with the conference provider.
4. If the course will be offered online, specify whether it will be on demand or offered as a virtual webinar, or both. Include website where the course will be provided.

Course applicable for the following certifications

***This section represents a major change from previous BBS course approval forms.***

1. If the course is only for residential certifications, check 'Residential Certifications Only'. The course, if approved, will be approved for all residential certifications.
2. If the course is appropriate for any commercial certifications, check Commercial Certifications. The course, if approved, will be approved for all commercial certification **AND** all residential certifications.
3. If the course is intended to meet required instruction in Code Administration (Chapter 1) or Existing Buildings (commercial or residential) check 'Administrative Course, All Certifications'.

#### Application Materials Included

This is a checklist for the course submitter's use, to be sure all materials necessary for review are included with the application. All materials should be submitted in .pdf format, along with the application, via email to [Michael.Lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:Michael.Lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

Dear Mike and Meg,

The attached application is an effort to begin a Building Official's Round Table for monthly Continuing Education training for Building Officials and Residential Building Officials within BOCONEO.

As a newly minted Building Official, it has become evident to myself and my professional contemporaries that the need for Mentorship is both significant and prevalent. In the BOCONEO chapter alone there are more than a few new and or newer Building Officials that would benefit from a monthly Building Official Round Table. A Building Official Round Table would offer the opportunity for newer Officials to openly ask difficult questions directly to our much more experienced peers. Gaining perspective from multiple sources at one time, these Round Table discussions would help maintain consensus as well as introduce new ideas and methods for all attendees. It would also be a great opportunity, I believe, for any inspectors who aspire to become Building Officials, to get a firsthand look at some of the issues, problems, and decisions Building Officials are faced with daily as well as how we come to our conclusions.

These Building Official Round Table Discussions would be a Webex meeting offered once monthly in the same manner as Plans Examiner, Plumbing, and Electrical Round Tables without taking away from the topics of those specific Round Tables. In the name of continuity, there wouldn't be a single person presenting course material, it would be an open forum discussion with a designated host.

Presently, I have spoken to no fewer than a dozen Building Officials within BOCONEO, some new, some very experienced. To a person, each Building Official I have spoken to believes it would be a benefit to our members, to BOCONEO, our residents and ultimately to our industry.

With the 2015 to 2021 Code updates coming online early 2024, the proposed Building Official Round Tables will offer another tool to ensure Code competency and consensus amongst those of us charged with enforcing the Code.

As a member of the Education Committee for BOCONEO, I see this as an opportunity to continue educating our members, even at the highest levels to assist in achieving and maintaining Code Competency and ultimately Building Safety. An opportunity I feel so strongly about, I will offer to host these Round Tables,



present attendees with Continuing Education Credit Certifications for attendance and maintain a level of participation the Board of Building Standards deems acceptable.

The Board of Building Standards' consideration of and perhaps participation in the proposed monthly Building Official's Round Tables would be greatly appreciated. Please do not hesitate to contact me with any questions and/or concerns.

Appreciatively,

Dan Perno



Chief Building Official  
Mentor, Ohio

Education Committee Co-Chair  
BOCONEO

[perno@cityofmentor.com](mailto:perno@cityofmentor.com)

[dperno5252@gmail.com](mailto:dperno5252@gmail.com)

Work (440)974-5785 ext.1312

Cell (440)476-3011

Re: Building Official's Round Table  
Moderator Bio: Dan Perno

Hello members of the Committee,

My name is Dan Perno.

While serving in my new role as Chief Building Official for the City of Mentor, I have discovered challenges that are not always easily addressed within the pages of our Code books. After discussing these challenges with more than a few of my colleagues, it became evident to us that a Building Official Round Table is needed for such discussions, to lend the adequate amount of time to cover such topics without taking away from the other Round Tables and Continuing Education training sessions.

To begin my journey as a Code Professional, I joined BOCONEO and shortly thereafter started as a Plumbing Inspector in the City of Independence, Ohio in November of 2020. To be more of a value add to the City of Independence Building Department and further my career opportunities, I continued to apply for and test for State of Ohio certifications. By early 2023, I had acquired my PI, RBI, BI, RBO, ESI, PPE, BPE, and Interim BO. In February 2023, I was hired by the City of Mentor as the Chief Building Official.

I hold 21 current ICC certifications and 8 current Board of Building Standards Certifications.

I am an Education Committee Co-Chair for BOCONEO and a second alternate on the Educational Committee for ICC

Prior to my career as a Code Professional, I have a lengthy career in both the Construction and Industrial Maintenance fields.

As a Union Forman I managed crews of up to 20 journeymen and apprentices

As a Remodeling Contractor I managed all phases of small commercial and residential renovation and construction projects.

As a Field Superintendent I supervised, trained, and evaluated crews of trades professionals on multi-million-dollar projects.

As an Industrial Maintenance Professional, I was a member of a Process Development and Research and Development Fabrication Team for a multi-billion-dollar corporation.

I have a Certification in Basic Electricity 6/1994 from Auburn Career Center  
I have my OSHA 10 and OSHA 30

The following are some professional licenses from my history in the trades:

Lead Abatement Contractor – LC003631- expired 5/24/03

Asbestos Specialist – AS31859 – expired 6/25/18

Welding (Lubrizon) GTAW(Tig) 6G Stainless and Carbon Steel – expired 10/20

Welding (Lubrizon) SMAW(Stick) 6G Stainless and Carbon – expired 10/20

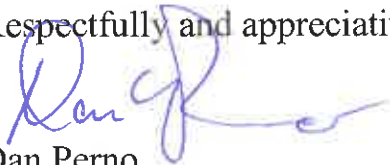
Committee members, the Building Official Round Table will be another tool in our professional toolbox to assist Building Officials and Residential Building Officials in ensuring building safety for their respective communities and residents. The Building Official Round Table will provide an excellent opportunity for new and potential Building Officials to benefit from the experience of many other veteran Building Officials.

Since this conversation has started, several weeks ago, I have been contacted by both seasoned and newly minted Building Officials alike, expressing their interest and enthusiastically sharing topic ideas and material input in anticipation of a Building Official Round Table.

If approved, I will humbly and dutifully serve as the moderator for each monthly Round Table on behalf of BOCONEO in the same fashion and schedule as the Plans Examiner, Plumbing, and Electrical Round Tables are done currently. Though I fully intend to benefit from the wisdom and experience of the discussions that will be had.

Your consideration is greatly appreciated.

Respectfully and appreciatively,



Dan Perno

Chief Building Official

City of Mentor

(440)975-5785 - office

(440)476-3011 – private cell

[perno@cityofmentor.com](mailto:perno@cityofmentor.com)

[dperno5252@gmail.com](mailto:dperno5252@gmail.com)

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-5 Concrete Construction Inspections (SWOBOA)

All certifications (3 hours)

Forensic Investigation of a Five Story Concrete building in  
Nassau, Bahama's following Hurricane Matthew...

See below for information requested.

**Photo:**



**Bio:** Mr. Dumford is the senior Materials Consultant and Senior Scientist for Terracon Consultants. He currently works out of the Terracon Cincinnati, Office. He is a Certified Weld Inspector, Certified Floor Profile operator, and NACE level 1. He has 44 years of experience in testing and inspection of commercial, industrial, nuclear and military industries. He formerly has worked for Kaiser Engineers in the Nuclear industry performing non-destructive and destructive testing of structural components including Concrete, structural steel and soils. He has worked two years for the US Government performing inspections of fabricated military components for both the Aegis and Patriot missile systems, and for the last 37-years has worked in the commercial/industrial realm.

**Abstract:** Terracon performed an investigation of a five-story concrete constructed building which had sustained significant damage, both before and after Hurricane Matthew in Nassau, Bahamas. The investigation included a visual, as well as destructive and non-destructive investigation of the entire building envelop. Non-destructive testing included Corrosion Potential Testing, Carbonation Testing of concrete, Impact-echo testing, Reinforcing steel locating and water-soluble chloride



testing. A thorough investigation of the building condition was then provided in a comprehensive report to the client.

**Learning Objectives:**

1. Presenting an overall view of the approach to performing a forensic investigation of a building structure. Attendees will be given insight as to how we approach an investigation of a building showing signs of distress, and the order in which we perform each portion of the investigation and why we decide such order.
2. Providing information of the philosophy used to determine the proper destructive and non-destructive testing necessary to provide the information to accurately assess the building condition. Attendees will be given the reasons for each type of testing performed based on the visual evidence noted during the investigation.
3. Presentation of the resulting causes of the extensive damage to the building which will allow attendees to utilize a logical approach to finding causes in their own investigations.

**APPLICATION FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION APPROVAL  
COURSE CONDITIONS AND GUIDELINES**

The Ohio Board of Building Standards is committed to the ongoing education and professional development of board-certified personnel through the delivery of high-quality, accurate and engaging professional continuing education content. To this end, the Board reviews and approves Continuing Education Courses for building department personnel.

Board approval is granted for course instruction on current codes and standards, including the OBC, OMC, OPC, and RCO, and any other content areas directly related to the responsibilities of the certification for which credit is being requested.

**Promotion:** Any person or organization promoting an approved course is required to make full and accurate disclosure regarding course title, course approval number, number of credit hours, categories for which the BBS has approved the class, and fees in promotion materials and advertising. **The Board does not grant retroactive approval. It is recommended that courses be submitted for approval well in advance of any scheduling of classes and advertising.** Advertising may not falsely state BBS approval before approval is granted. Course providers may state that BBS approval is pending.

**Application Submission:** All Applications and associated materials shall be submitted by email in .pdf format. Instructions for completing the application are attached.

**Certificate of Completion:** Course providers shall provide participants a certificate of completion containing the following information:

- Name of participant
- Title of approved courses
- BBS approval #
- BBS approved certifications
- Date of the continuing education program
- Number of approved credit hours awarded, and
- Signature of authorized sponsor or instructor.

Any person or organization administering an approved course shall return a completed BBS Course Attendance form by email.

**Participants:** Participants must attend the complete course as presented by the instructor to receive credit hours approved by the Board. The organization or instructor of online courses shall plan and execute methods to verify the individual's attendance and completion of the course. No partial credit will be given to any participant who failed to complete the entire course as approved.

**Board approval:** All courses are approved for the calendar year in which application is made. Courses may be renewed so long as the referenced code is in effect, and the CEUs, certification and content remain unchanged. When the referenced code is updated, courses must be updated, and new approvals obtained.

**Facility/training area:** BBS Course may be delivered in person or online, or both, at the sponsor's option. Course facilities shall include the following:

**In Person Classes:**

- Sufficient seating capacity
- ADA accessible facilities
- Appropriate Audio/Visual devices for delivery
- Writing surfaces for participants

**Online Classes:**

- Web-accessible
- ADA accessible delivery
- Tech support available
- Live and recorded courses permitted

In-person facilities shall comfortably and safely seat at least the number of attendees present in the room and shall be climate controlled, non-smoking, and sound controlled so that outside noise will not interfere with the training.

**Application for Continuing Education Course Approval**

**Provider Information:**

Name: SWOBOA  
Organization: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: 1201 W. Kemper Forest Park, Ohio  
E-mail: dedwards@forestpark.org Telephone: 513-595-5235  
Website: \_\_\_\_\_  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION INSPECTIONS  
Course instructor: TERRACON  
Course description: Discuss concrete and steel re-enforcement inspection as it also relates to Special Inspections  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Instructional hours per session: 3 hours Number of Sessions: \_\_\_\_\_  
Course Date(s) and Location: December 5th 2023 8:30 am- 11:30 am Forest Park Senior Center

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:  Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Existing Buildings:  Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Electrical Instruction:  Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_  
Plumbing Instruction:

Course to be offered online?  **On Demand**  **Webinar**

Course Website: \_\_\_\_\_

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation):  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:  Commercial Certifications:   
Administrative Course, All Certifications:

**Application materials included:**

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives  
 Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)  
 Assessment Materials (for online courses)  
 Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

## Instructions for new Continuing Education Approval form

### Provider Information

1. Please include all contact information.
2. If course is not part of a conference, leave conference sponsor and email blank.

### Course Renewal

1. Indicate if the course is being submitted for renewal. Include prior approval letter and write in prior course number.
2. Certification approval for courses has now changed: all existing courses being renewed will be approved within the new classification system.
  - a. Courses previously approved for only residential certifications will be approved for all residential certifications.
  - b. Courses previously approved for at least on commercial certification will now be approved for all commercial certifications and all residential certifications.
  - c. Courses on required instruction topics, Ohio Ethics, Code Administration and Existing Buildings, will be noted as Administrative Courses and be approved for all certifications.
3. Courses being renewed should skip the New Course information section and are not required to submit outline, agenda, slides or other instructional materials for review. Skip to Special Content, and mark any item that applies to the course.

### New Course Information

1. Enter course title, name of instructor, and a brief description of the course content. Learning objectives may be substituted for course description, if desired.
2. Number of instructional hours per session is the length of instructional time.
3. Number of sessions: can be 1 or the number of sessions planned.
4. Course date(s) and location: not necessary at this time, enter if known.

### Special Content

1. Indicate if the course will meet instructional time in Code Administration or Existing Buildings.
2. Indicate if the course is a plumbing or electrical course, for ESIAC review and trainee course tracking.
3. If the course is associated with a conference, indicate the conference name and location, as this will allow BBS to coordinate approvals with the conference provider.
4. If the course will be offered online, specify whether it will be on demand or offered as a virtual webinar, or both. Include website where the course will be provided.

Course applicable for the following certifications

***This section represents a major change from previous BBS course approval forms.***

1. If the course is only for residential certifications, check 'Residential Certifications Only'. The course, if approved, will be approved for all residential certifications.
2. If the course is appropriate for any commercial certifications, check Commercial Certifications. The course, if approved, will be approved for all commercial certification **AND** all residential certifications.
3. If the course is intended to meet required instruction in Code Administration (Chapter 1) or Existing Buildings (commercial or residential) check 'Administrative Course, All Certifications'.

#### Application Materials Included

This is a checklist for the course submitter's use, to be sure all materials necessary for review are included with the application. All materials should be submitted in .pdf format, along with the application, via email to [Michael.Lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:Michael.Lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)



# A Brief History of Special Inspections and Common Special Inspection Requirements

- Speaker/Presenter: Chris Dumford CWI
- Cell: 513-615-8299 [chris.Dumford@terracon.com](mailto:chris.Dumford@terracon.com)

## • **AIA BSI002**

- A Brief History of Special Inspections



# A Brief History of Special Inspections and Common Special Inspection Requirements

- Presented to the
- City of Forest Park Building Department

**AIA BSI002**

A Brief History of Special  
Inspections



Terracon  
Explore with us




# REGISTERED PROVIDER

- Terracon is a Registered Provider with The American Institute of Architects Continuing Education Systems. Credit earned on completion of this program will be reported to CES Records for AIA members. Certificates of Completion for non-AIA members are available on request.
- The program is registered with the AIA/CES for continuing professional education. As such, it does not include content that may be deemed or construed to be an approval or endorsement by the AIA of any material of construction or any method or manner of handling, using, distributing or dealing in any material or product. Questions related to specific materials, methods and services will be addressed at the conclusion of this presentation.



## AIA BSI002

A Brief History of Special Inspections 

# AIA BSI002

## A Brief History of Special Inspections

### LEARNING OBJECTIVES

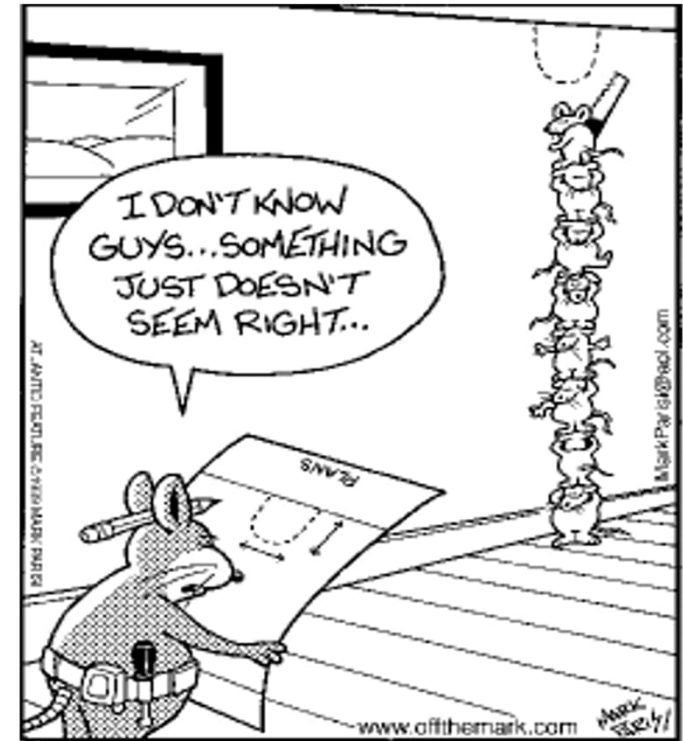
It is important to today's projects to have Special Inspections completed by a third party consultant. Learning more about this need, issues with not having them completed and how to make them effective are just part of what you will learn in this presentation.

This presentation will help attendees to:

- 1) What are Special Inspections?
- 2) How are they enforced?
- 3) What are common disciplines requiring special inspection?
- 4) How can you make Testing and Inspection Services more effective on your projects

# What are Special Inspections?

Special Inspections are the minimum required inspection hold points required by city, municipal, state, national or international building codes. The actual scope and frequency of the special inspections are usually outlined in an issued "Statement of Special Inspections..." which will outline the actual inspections required, by whom, and whether the inspections are required to be periodic or continuous.



## AIA BSI002

A Brief History of Special Inspections



# History of Special Inspections

- First seen in 1947 UBC under the designation of “Registered Inspectors”
- US House Subcommittee held hearings in 1982 to examine causes of structural failures with main question of “*Are there common problems associated with structural failures?*”
- Subcommittee concluded the 2 most critical factors to structural failures were:
  - Lack of organization and communication between parties on construction projects
  - Lack of sufficient inspection by the design professional of record (DPoR) during construction

**AIA BSI002**

History of Special  
Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us

# IBC Background

- The International Code Council (ICC) was est. in 1994 as a non-profit organization to develop a single set of comprehensive and coordinated national model of construction codes.
- Founders of the ICC are:
  - Building Officials and Code Administrators International (BOCA)
  - International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO)
  - Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI)

# Definition of Special Inspections

- 2018 IBC Chapter 17, Section 1704.2 requires Special Inspections as follows:
  - “Where application is made to the building official for construction as specified in Section 105, the owner or the owner’s authorized agent, other than the contractor, shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests during construction on the types of work specified in Section 1705 ...”

# Definition of Special Inspections

- Section 1705 outlines the type of work requiring special inspections and is in addition to inspections performed by the Building Official required by Section 110, and Structural Observations defined in Section 1704.6 performed by the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge (RDPiRC)
- Special Inspections do not take the place of inspections defined in Section 110 or 1704.6 nor vice versa

# Definition of Structural Observation

- 2018 IBC Chapter 17, Section 1702 defines Structural Observation for the following categories of construction:
  - Structures in Risk Category IV, high-rise buildings, when required by the registered design professional, and when required by the building official
  - Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F in specific Risk Categories
  - Structures designed for wind resistance where wind velocity is greater than 130 mph and in Risk Category III or IV



# Parties Involved in Special Inspections

- Local Building Official
- Owner
- Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge
- Special Inspector
- Testing Laboratory
- Contractor

**AIA BSI002**

A Brief History of Special Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us

# What is the goal of Special Inspections

- Improve communication between design professional and contractor
- Provide a quality assurance program that benefits all parties related to the proper fabrication, installation, and placement of specific structural components that require special knowledge, expertise, and attention
- Assist in providing a structure that is safe to the public

# Enforcement

- Although adopted by many states, local jurisdictions have wide latitude on interpreting and enforcing the requirements
- Most jurisdictions have allowed the design professionals to propose how they will comply with the Special Inspections requirements



So why do we need SI when we've done it this way thousands of times?



**AIA BSI002**

A Brief History of Special Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us

# Construction Requiring Special Inspections:

- Steel Construction
- Concrete Construction
- Masonry Construction
- Wood Construction
- Soils
- Driven Deep Foundations
- Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations
- Helical Pile Foundations
- Fabricated Items
- Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials
- Exterior Insulated and Finish Systems (EIFS)
- Others

**AIA BSI002**

A Brief History of Special Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us



# Soil Field Density Testing

- Soils field density testing is usually considered as a continuous inspection requiring not only monitoring of the backfill operations, but visual evaluation of the materials being used as well as lift thickness. Soils testing is usually performed to the requirements of a Civil Engineering report generated for the project that includes sub-surface investigations, specified backfill materials and required minimum dry density and moisture content of fill material.



**AIA BSI002**

A Brief History of Special Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us

# Concrete Testing

Preplacement Special Inspections:

- Reinforcing Steel inspection.
- Deck cleanliness and steel detailing operations complete.
- Subgrade condition (frozen, flooded out, are compaction operations completed?).
- Tendon placement verification completed.



## AIA BSI002

A Brief History of Special Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us

# Concrete Testing (Cont.)

Concrete testing can be specified as either continuous testing, or periodic testing depending on the size and scope of the concrete placement. Testing can include:

- Air Content (Air Entrained Concrete).
- Fabrication of Compressive Strength Cylinders.
- Slump Testing.
- Monitoring of placement time.
- Temperature control.
- Monitoring of placement and finish methods.
- Monitoring of post placement curing operations.



## AIA BSI002

A Brief History of Special  
Inspections

**Terracon**  
Explore with us



## Concrete Testing (Cont.)

Post Placement Special Inspections May Include:

- Flatness and levelness testing (FF/FL).
- Heat of hydration and concrete maturity testing .
- In-Situ Strength testing (Post tensioned slabs).
- Edge curl testing (automated warehouses).



# AIA BSI002

General History of Special  
Inspections

 **Terracon**  
Explore with us



## Foundation Inspections

Foundation Inspections are commonly divided into two categories, shallow foundations, and deep foundations:

### Shallow Foundations:

These are commonly known as footings and usually only extend below the frost line. Inspections include verification of soil bearing capacity, hand-augering of footing subsurface strata and inspection of reinforcing steel placement.

# AIA BSI002

A Brief History of  
Special Inspections



# Foundation Inspections (Cont.)

## Deep Foundations:

Deep foundations can include:

- Driven Piles
- Helical Piles
- Caissons
- Auger Cast Piles
- Several other newer technologies



# Structural Masonry

Structural Masonry is usually considered periodic inspection while grouting operations are usually continuous.



# Structural Steel

Structural steel observations are usually periodic and include welded connections, structurally bolted connections, deck observations, shear studs, anchor bolts and related structural components such as brick ledge angles, bridging etc.



# Additional Special Inspection Items

Some other disciplines that usually require special inspections include:

- EIFS (Exterior Insulating Foam Systems).
- Fireproofing (Thickness, Density, Adhesion/Cohesion).
- Firestopping.
- Exterior Caulking.
- Wood Framing.
- Light Gauge Metal Framing.

# Keys to a successful Testing and Inspection Program

- Well defined scope for testing and inspection
- Testing and inspection plan for report distribution to parties involved
- Determine need for full-time and support staff for testing and inspection
- Good communication between all parties:



## Keys to a successful Testing and Inspection Program

- Preconstruction meeting should discuss testing and inspection requirements
- Additional milestone meetings prior to the start of key construction items (earthwork, foundations, concrete, masonry, structural steel, MSE walls, other)
- Understand local building code requirements and invite local officials to meetings

# Common Questions related to Special Inspections

- Can Special Inspections help avoid delays in construction?
- Can Special Inspections save the owner money?
- Can Special Inspections reduce project construction costs?

# Questions and Discussion

Thank You For Your Time!



**AIA BSI002**

A Brief History of Special Inspections



**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-6 Significant Changes to the 2023 NEC Part A (Electrical Trades Center)

All certifications (10 hours in three sessions: 3.5 + 3.5 + 3)

# Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

## Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

### Provider Information

Name \*

Trent Parker

Organization

The Electrical Trades Center-

Email \*

parker@electricaltrades.org

Phone Number \*

(614) 463-5282

Address \*

947 GOODALE BLVD

City \*

COLUMBUS

State \*

OH

Zip Code \*

43212

Website

electricaltrades.org

Conference Sponsor (if applicable)

Conference Email

Check here if Course Renewal

Prior course number(s)' (i.e.

BBS2018-429)

Renewals will only be granted for identical content and hours, within the current code cycle. Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required

### New Course Information

Course title

Significant Changes to the 2023 NEC Part A

Course instructor

Sam Cronk

Course description

This extensive and popular program analyzes the major changes found in the first two Chapters of the 2023 NEC. Members of the twenty code-making panels contributed to the development of the authoritative text, which covers more than 400 of the most significant changes and includes interpretations by the group that enforces the NEC. This course will provide users a solid understanding and application of the requirements contained in the first two Chapters of the 2023 NEC.

This is a 3 night series that will meet for a total of 10 hours. Nights one and two will meet for 3.5 hours and the third night will meet for 3 hours.

Instructional hours per session

3.5

Number of Sessions

3

Course Date

2024-03-11

Course Location

947 Goodale Blvd. Columbus

Special Content

- Code Administration
- Existing Buildings
- Electrical Instruction
- Plumbing Instruction

Conference Course

Conference Name

Conference location

On Demand

Webinar

845



Course to be offered online?

Yes

No

Course Website

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation):

Course applicable for the following certifications \*

Residential Certifications Only

Administrative Course, All Certifications

Commercial and Residential Certifications

Application materials included \*

Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives

Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)

Assessment Materials (for online courses)

Presenter Bio

Prior Course Approval Letter

Upload less than 100mb (Please attach PDF files only) \*

File Name	Size
<a href="#">OBBS PART A.pdf</a>	14.70 MB

Applicant Full Name \*

Date of Submission

Instructions for new Continuing Education Approval form

**Provider Information**

1. Please include all contact information.
2. If course is not part of a conference, leave conference sponsor and email blank.

**Course Renewal**

1. Indicate if the course is being submitted for renewal. Include prior approval letter and write in prior course number.
2. Certification approval for courses has now changed: all existing courses being renewed will be approved within the new classification system.
  - a. Courses previously approved for only residential certifications will be approved for all residential certifications.
  - b. Courses previously approved for at least one commercial certification will now be approved for all commercial certifications and all residential certifications.
  - c. Courses on required instruction topics, Ohio Ethics, Code Administration and Existing Buildings, will be noted as Administrative Courses and be approved for all certifications.
3. Courses being renewed should skip the New Course information section and are not required to submit outline, agenda, slides or other instructional materials for review.

**Skip to Special Content, and mark any item that applies to the course.**

**New Course Information**

1. Enter course title, name of instructor, and a brief description of the course content.  
Learning objectives may be substituted for course description, if desired.
2. Number of instructional hours per session is the length of instructional time.
3. Number of sessions: can be 1 or the number of sessions planned.
4. Course date(s) and location: not necessary at this time, enter if known.

**Special Content**

1. Indicate if the course will meet instructional time in Code Administration or Existing Buildings.
2. Indicate if the course is a plumbing or electrical course, for ESIAC review and trainee course tracking.
3. If the course is associated with a conference, indicate the conference name and location, as this will allow BBS to coordinate approvals with the conference provider.
4. If the course will be offered online, specify whether it will be on demand or offered as a virtual webinar, or both. Include website where the course will be provided.

# Significant Changes to the NEC 2023

## Part A

### Syllabus

**Course Description:** This extensive and popular program analyzes the major changes to the *NEC*. Members of the twenty code-making panels contributed to the development of the authoritative text, which covers more than 400 of the most significant changes and includes interpretations by the group that enforces the *NEC*. This comprehensive course will provide users a solid understanding and application of the requirements contained in the 2023 *NEC*.

The course is a comprehensive analysis of the most important changes found in the first two Chapter of the 2023 *NEC*.

**Prerequisite:** None

**Required Material:** 2023 *NEC* Codebook  
Significant Changes to the *NEC* 2023 by the  
NJATC

# Course Outline:

## Day 1

### Introduction, Code-Wide Changes, New Articles for the 2023 NEC

90 Introduction

### Chapter 1: General, Articles 100 – 110

100 Definitions

110 Requirements for Electrical Installations

## Day 2

### Chapter 2: Wiring and Protection, Articles 200 – 220

200 General

210 Branch Circuits

215 Feeders

220 Branch-Circuit, Feeder, and Service Calculations

## Day 3

### Chapter 2: Wiring and Protection, Articles 225 – 220

225 Outside Branch Feeders and Circuits

230 Services

235 Branch-Circuit, Feeder, and Services over 1000 V

240 Overcurrent Protection

242 Surge Arresters

245 Overcurrent Protection Systems Rated Over 1000V

## 250 Grounding and Bonding



**SAMUEL D. CRONK**  
459 NORTHWOODS DRIVE  
MARYSVILLE, OH 43040

937-642-9352 HOME • 937-266-9550 CELL • spanielhunter1@gmail.com

---

**EDUCATION:**

- ♦ **Lebanon High School** • Lebanon, VA • Honors Graduate 1985
- ♦ **Charleston Trident Technical College** • Charleston, SC • Programmable Logic Controllers

**PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE:**

**Assistant Building Official/Building Official** – November 2020- Present

Union County Building Department • 233 W 6<sup>th</sup> St. Marysville., OH 43040

**Building Compliance Manager** – July 2013 to November 2020

City of Columbus Dept of Building and Zoning Services • 757 Carolyn Ave, Columbus, OH 43224

**Electrical Inspection Field Supervisor** – November 2002 to July 2013

City of Columbus Dept of Building and Zoning Services • 757 Carolyn Ave, Columbus, OH 43224

**Electrical Inspector** – August 1998 to November 2002

City of Columbus Dept of Building and Zoning Services • 757 Carolyn Ave, Columbus, OH 43224

**Journeyman Wireman** – October 1996 to August 1998

Atlas Industrial Electric • 5275 Sinclair Road, Columbus, OH 43229 • 614-841-4500

**Electrical Estimator & Project Manager** – April 1994 to October 1996

MJB Electric • 804 Busch Court, Columbus, OH 43229 • 614-847-1952

**Electrician** – August 1985 to April 1994

**QUALIFICATIONS:**

- ♦ Extensive knowledge and experience with the interpretation and application of the National Electric Code as it applies to design and installation in industrial, commercial and housing applications.
- ♦ Considerable experience working with other professionals, such as engineers and contractors, within the electrical community as well as the general public and homeowners.
- ♦ Highly trained, multi-certified journeyman electrician skilled in all aspects of numerous electrical, alarm and signal systems, with 31 years of experience in positions requiring increasing responsibility and managerial skills.
- ♦ Superb ability to adapt quickly to changes in policy and procedures.
- ♦ Very organized with excellent communication skills.
- ♦ Respond well to pressure and consistently meet deadlines with a positive attitude

**TRADE ACHIEVEMENTS:**

Ohio Certified Building Official, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Residential Building Official, interim, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Building Inspector, interim, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Electrical Safety Inspector, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Electrical Plans Examiner, PID# 303

I.A.E.I. Electrical Code Instructor for the Central Ohio Division

ICC Analysis of the 2005 and 2008 NEC Code Changes Instructor

IBEW Certified Journey Wireman

Former South Carolina Certified Journeyman Wireman

Former Ohio Licensed Electrical Contractor

Former Columbus JATC Instructor (Local 683)

Former Columbus Public Schools Adult Community Education Instructor

**REFERENCES AVAILABLE UPON REQUEST**

# Significant Changes

TO THE NEC® 2023

## Code-Wide Revisions and Chapter 1

electrical training ALLIANCE IN COLLABORATION WITH NECA

1

## Code-Wide Revisions

### Reconditioned Equipment

#### Change Summary

- There are now several reconditioned equipment requirements in the NEC.
- The second section of some articles (XXX.2) is now reserved for any requirements that either permit or prohibit reconditioning of equipment that is covered by the article.

Code-Wide Revisions © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

2

## Code-Wide Revisions

### Definitions

#### Change Summary

- Article 100 now contains all definitions. No definitions will be in the other articles of the Code.
- Article 100 will no longer be divided into parts.
- Definitions are assigned to code-making panels based on the articles assigned to the panel and how closely the panel aligns with the definition. The responsible panel is indicated in each definition.
- Some definitions only apply to a single article. Where that is the case, the article number appears toward the end of the definition.
- In a few cases, multiple definitions continue to be required.

Code-Wide Revisions © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

3

## Code-Wide Revisions

### New, Deleted, and Relocated Articles and Revised Article Titles for the 2023 NEC

#### Change Summary

- Some Articles are new, three were deleted, some had title revisions, and others were relocated.
  - 110 General Requirements for Electrical Installations (Revised title)
  - 210 Branch Circuits, Not Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal (Revised title)
  - 235 Branch Circuits, Feeders, and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal (New)
  - 245 Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal (New)
  - 305 General Requirements for Wiring Methods and Materials for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal (New)

Code-Wide Revisions © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

4

## Code-Wide Revisions

### New, Deleted, and Relocated Articles and Revised Article Titles for the 2023 NEC (continued)

#### Change Summary

- 315 Medium Voltage Conductors, Cable, Cable Joints, and Cable Terminations (Revised title and relocated)
- 335 Instrument Tray Cable: Type ITC (Relocated)
- 369 Insulated Bus Pipe (IBP)/Tubular Covered Conductors (TCC) Systems (New)
- 371 Flexible Bus Systems (New)
- 395 Outdoor Overhead Conductors over 1000 Volts (Relocated)
- 480 Stationary Standby Batteries (Revised title)
- 495 Equipment Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal (Revised title and Relocated)
- 510 Hazardous (Classified) Locations-Specific (Deleted)

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

5

## Code-Wide Revisions

### New, Deleted, and Relocated Articles and Revised Article Titles for the 2023 NEC (continued)

#### Change Summary

- 512 Cannabis Oil Equipment and Cannabis Oil Systems Using Flammable Materials (New)
- 712 Direct Current Microgrids (Deleted)
- 720 Circuits and Equipment Operating at Less Than 50 Volts (Deleted)
- 722 Cables for Power-Limited Circuits and Fault-Managed Power Circuits (New)
- 724 Class 1 Power-Limited Circuits and Class 1 Power-Limited Remote Control and Signaling Circuits (New)
- 725 Class 2 and Class 3 Power-Limited Circuits (Revised title)
- 726 Class 4 Fault-Managed Power Systems (New)
- 810 Antenna Systems (Revised title)

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

6

## Code-Wide Revisions

### NEC Style Manual Changes

#### Change Summary

- A new version of the style manual was issued in 2020.
- Text was simplified to avoid long paragraphs and long sentences by placing complex requirements into a list format.
- Many of the changes improved readability, and those changes are not covered in this book.

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

7

## Code-Wide Revisions

### Medium- and High-Voltage Requirements

#### Change Summary

- Many medium- and high-voltage requirements were removed from existing articles and moved to an article ending in number 5.
- For example, Article 235 now covers medium- and high-voltage services.
- New articles:
  - 235 Branch Circuits, Feeders, and Services Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
  - 245 Overcurrent Protection for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
  - 305 General Requirements for Wiring Methods and Materials for Systems Rated Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

8

## Code-Wide Revisions

### Medium- and High-Voltage Requirements (continued)

#### Change Summary

- 315 Medium Voltage Conductors, Cable, Cable Joints, and Cable Terminations
  - 395 Outdoor Overhead Conductors over 1000 Volts
  - 495 Equipment Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal
- Articles 395 and 495 were relocated from 399 and 490, respectively, for consistency with the numbering scheme for medium- and high-voltage articles.

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

9

## Code-Wide Revisions

### Not a Change?

#### Change Summary

- Prior to the 2002 *Code*, NM cable was limited to buildings of three stories or less.
- Section 334.10 permitted NM cable in buildings of Types III, IV, and V construction, but the cables had to be concealed within walls, floors, or ceilings that provided a thermal barrier of material that provided at least a 15-minute finish rating.
- Limitations in 334.12 provided some applications and occupancies where NM cable was not permitted to be used.
- *International Building Code* and *NFPA 5000* limited Type IV heavy timber construction to five stories above grade.
- The *NEC* requirements were based on these limitations for 20 years.

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

10

## Code-Wide Revisions

### Not a Change? (continued)

#### Change Summary

- The *International Building Code* changed its definition of Class IV construction to permit a heavy timber constructed building of up to 18 stories.
- *NFPA 5000* permits a Type IV heavy timber constructed building of up to 24 stories.
- These changes resulted in a significant change to the *NEC* that was not processed through the *NEC*.
- CMP 6 did not change the language.
- Significant changes took place in other codes outside of the *NEC* but affect the *NEC*.

Code-Wide Revisions

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

11

## 90.1

### NEW

### Scope

#### Change Summary

- Article 90 now has a scope that provides the scope of Article 90, rather than the scope of the *Code*.
- The material previously found in 90.1 has been combined with 90.2, which is now titled "Use and Application."
- This change provides consistency and clarity but does not make any technical change to the *Code*.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

12

## 90.1

NEW

**Article 90 Introduction****90.1 Scope**

This article covers use and application, arrangement, and enforcement of this Code. It also covers the expression of mandatory, permissive, and nonmandatory text, provides guidance on the examination of equipment and on wiring, planning, and specifies the use and expression of measurements.

**90.1 Purpose.****(A) Practical Safeguarding.**

The purpose of this Code is the practical safeguarding of persons and property from hazards arising from the user of electricity. This Code is not intended as a design specification or an instruction manual for untrained persons.

**(B) Adequacy.**

---

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

13

## 90.2

RELOCATE REORGANIZE

**Use and Application****Change Summary**

- Section 90.2 has a new title: Use and Application.
- All previous text in Section 90.1 has been blended into a reorganized 90.2
- The titles of 90.2(C) and (D) have been changed to accommodate the reorganization.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

14

## 90.2

RELOCATE REORGANIZE

**90.2 Scope Use and Application**

- (A) Practical Safeguarding (Formerly 90.1(A))
- (B) Adequacy (Formerly 90.1(B))
- (C) Installations Covered (Formerly 90.2(A))
- (D) Installations Not Covered (Formerly 90.2(B))
- (E) Relation to Other International Standards (Formerly 90.1(C))
- (F) Special Permission (Formerly 90.1(D))

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

15

## 90.4

REORGANIZE

**Enforcement****Change Summary**

- This section was reorganized for clarity.
- A list format is used to make this section clearer.
- A new reference was added to Informative Annex H to comply with the NEC Style Manual.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

16



## 90.4

## REORGANIZE



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

17

## 90.5 (C)

## REVISION

## Explanatory Material

## Change Summary

- If a referenced standard does not have an edition date, the latest edition can be assumed.
- Newer editions of standards could have been released after the Code committee considered the latest edition.
- Since references are not mandatory, there is no prohibition against using an updated edition.
- Standards references are for convenience only. Most installations can be completed without referring to the referenced standards.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

18

## 90.5 (C)

## REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

19

## Article 100

## REORGANIZE

## Article 100 Reorganization

## Change Summary

- Article 100 has been consolidated into an article that is not divided into parts.
- All of the definitions from other articles have been relocated into Article 100.
- The XXX.2 sections of various articles no longer contain definitions.
- If a term had multiple uses, it has been modified to facilitate each use. In many cases, terms were modified to cover all appropriate applications.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

20

## Article 100

REORGANIZE

**Article 100 Definitions**  
 Part I- General  
 Part II- Over 1000 Volts, Nominal  
 Part III- Hazardous (Classified) Locations

This definition is extracted from the definitions chapter of *NFPA 99* (3.3.30). In most other NFPA documents, definitions are numbered.

**Equipment Branch.**  
 A system of feeders and branch circuits arranged for delayed, automatic, or manual connection to the alternate power source and that serves primarily 3-phase power equipment. [99:3.3.30] (517) (CMP-15)

This definition only applies within Article 517.

Assigned Code-Making Panel

The format of many defined terms were edited to comply with the new *NEC Style Manual*. To assist in electronic searching, some defined terms appear in parentheses as it would be found in the document.

**Overcurrent Protective Device, Branch-Circuit. (Branch-Circuit Overcurrent Protective Device)**  
 A device capable of providing protection for service, feeder, and branch circuits and equipment over the full range of overcurrents between its rated current and its interrupting rating. (CMP-10)

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

21

## Article 100

REVISION

### Definition of Accessible (as applied to wiring methods)

#### Change Summary

- For a wiring method to be considered accessible, it must not be closed in or blocked by the structure.
- Accessible wiring methods must also not be blocked by other electrical equipment.
- Coordination with other trades is often needed to ensure that accessible wiring methods are not blocked by building mechanical or plumbing systems.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

22

## Article 100

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

23

## Article 100

REVISION

### Definition of Attachment Fitting, Weight Supporting

#### Change Summary

- This definition was revised to better describe the function of WSAF.
- The WSAF is a recognized component that is part of a listed luminaire or paddle fan.
- The combination of the WSAF and WSCR facilitate the modular replacement of luminaires and paddle fans in one- and two-family dwellings.
- Note also at the end of the definition the notation (CMP-18). This indicates the code-making panel that is responsible for the definition.
- NEMA WD6 recognizes WSAF configurations.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

24

## Article 100

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of SKYYX Platforms

25

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Motor Branch Circuit

#### Change Summary

- A new definition was added to differentiate between a branch circuit and a motor branch circuit.
- Branch circuits originate at the last overcurrent protective device supplying the circuit.
- Motor branch circuits include controllers and adjustable speed drives.

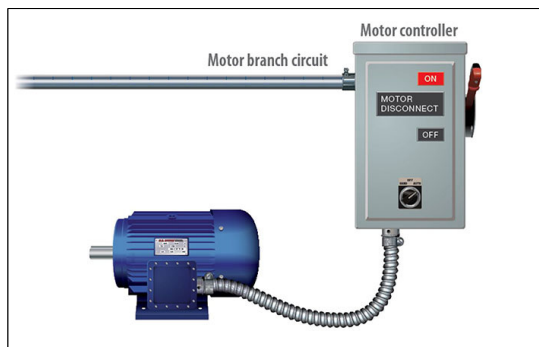
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

26

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

27

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Class 4 Definitions

#### Change Summary

- These definitions are for terms used in new Article 726, Class 4 (CL4) Power Systems.
- Class 4 power systems will be used with equipment used in 5G Internet communications systems.
- A Class 4 Power System is a fault-managed system that relies on a continuous electronic handshake to ensure proper operation.
- Faults in Class 4 Power Systems result in immediate termination of output power.

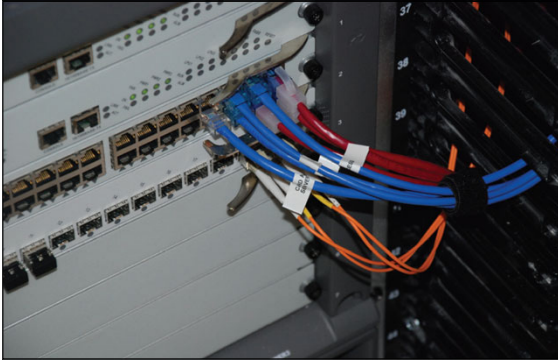
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

28

## Article 100

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

29

## Article 100

**NEW**

### Definition of Clothes Closet Storage Space

#### Change Summary

- A new simplified definition for clothes closet storage space has been added to Article 100.
- A clothes closet storage space is the area within a clothes closet in which combustible materials may be kept.
- The requirements for installation of luminaires remains in 410.16.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

30

## Article 100

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

31

## Article 100

**REVISION**

### Definition of Commissioning

#### Change Summary

- Revised definition to provide consistency in a commissioning process.
- Commissioning was previously covered only in Article 708, Critical Operations Power Systems.
- New commissioning requirements are found in 700.3, 701.3, and 706.7.
- Commissioning documentation should include as-built drawings and test results.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

32

## Article 100

### REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of PDE Total Energy Solutions

33

## Article 100

### REVISION

#### Definition of Corrosive Environment

##### Change Summary

- Pool chemicals can cause corrosion of electrical equipment.
- Corrosive locations are those where pool sanitizing chemicals are present, and there is inadequate ventilation.
- Reference to *NFPA 400* was removed because it was not helpful for pool electrical equipment installers.
- The reference to the EPA website was removed, as a direct reference to the appropriate publications is more helpful.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

34

## Article 100

### REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

35

## Article 100

### NEW

#### Definition of Counter (Countertop)

##### Change Summary

- A new definition was added for "counter (countertop)" to distinguish it from other work surfaces.
- An informational note reference was added for UL standards for receptacles and attachment plugs and GFCI devices.
- A second informational note references requirements for receptacles in countertops and work surfaces.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

36



## Article 100

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

37

## Article 100

**NEW**

### Definition of Energized, Likely to Become

#### Change Summary

- There is a new definition of the term *likely to become energized*.
- The term is used in 25 places in the 2020 NEC.
- *Likely to become energized* has been on a list of standard terms used in the *NEC Style Manual*, where it meant “failure of insulation on.” The new definition adds electrical spacing failure as an additional consideration.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

38

## Article 100

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

39

## Article 100

**REVISION**

### Definitions of Equipotential Plane

#### Change Summary

- There are now two definitions in Article 100 for Equipotential plane.
- The general definition is “Conductive elements that are connected together to minimize the voltage differences.” This definition is not limited to a single article.
- The second definition applies to natural and man-made bodies of water. This definition applies only to Article 682.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

40

# Article 100

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

41

# Article 100

NEW

## Definition of Fault Managed Power

### Change Summary

- Fault-managed power is one of the key definitions for new Article 726. Class 4 power systems are fault-managed power systems.
- Class 4 power systems provide a pulsed power output that relies on a continuous handshake to provide fault detection and ensure proper operation.
- Class 4 power systems can supply up to 450 volts dc line-to-line or 225 volts dc to ground to provide power and control of electronic equipment.

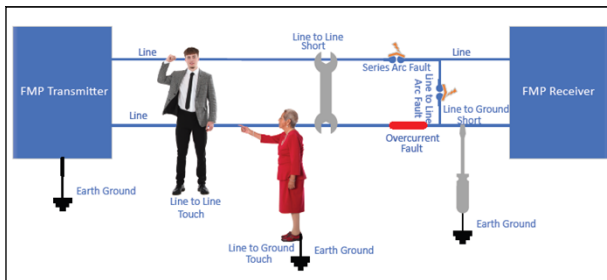
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

42

# Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Cisco

43

# Article 100

NEW

## Definition of Fibers/Flyings, Combustible

### Change Summary

- A new definition was added for combustible fibers/flyings.
- Combustible fibers/flyings consist of solid particles greater than 500  $\mu\text{m}$  in size that can form an explosible mixture when suspended in air at standard atmospheric pressure and temperature.
- In contrast, combustible dusts consist of solid particles that are 500  $\mu\text{m}$  or smaller that can form an explosible mixture.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

44

## Article 100

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

45

## Article 100

**NEW**

### Definition of GFCI, Special Purpose

#### Change Summary

- A new definition was added for Special Purpose Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter.
- SPGFCIs are used on circuits with voltage greater than 150 volts to ground.
- Traditional GFCIs are also known as Class A GFCIs. Special purpose GFCIs are either Class C, D, or E GFCIs.

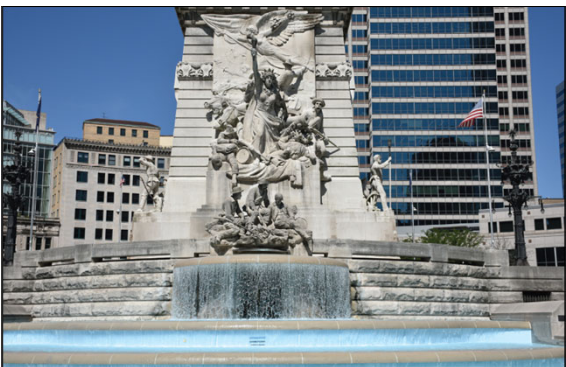
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

46

## Article 100

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

47

## Article 100

**NEW**

### Definition of Ground-Fault Detector-Interrupter

#### Change Summary

- GFDI protection is designed to provide ground-fault protection of photovoltaic dc circuits.
- As noted in 690.41(B), equipment that does not have ground-fault protection will often have a warning in the manual that indicates that the unit does not have a GFDI device.
- GFDIs are equipment protection, not personnel protection.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

48

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

49

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Industrial Installation, Supervised

#### Change Summary

- The term *Supervised Industrial Installation* is used in Articles 240 and 702, but it has been undefined until now.
- Industrial installations typically have a relaxation of some rules of the *Code*, as industrial installations are usually designed, installed, monitored, and maintained by qualified personnel.
- The definition was initially developed by CMP 10 and was revised by a task group including CMPs 1, 10, and 14; it remains limited to Article 240.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

50

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

51

## Article 100

REVISION

### Definition of Inverter, Multimode

#### Change Summary

- Multimode inverters can operate in both interactive mode and island mode.
- In the interactive mode, an inverter operates in parallel with the utility and can supply power back to the utility.
- In the island mode, it will separate from the utility to supply power to the premises through an energy storage system.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

52

## Article 100

### REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

53

## Article 100

### REVISION

#### Definition of Location, Wet

#### Change Summary

- The definition of “wet location” has been rewritten into a list format.
- The previous format consisted of a sentence with commas, which made it more difficult to interpret.
- An informational note was added that gives an example of a wet location.
- The definitions of damp location and dry location were much shorter and clearer, so no changes to them were necessary.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

54

## Article 100

### REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

55

## Article 100

### NEW

#### Definition of Locations, Hazardous (Classified)

#### Change Summary

- A new general definition has been added for Hazardous (Classified) Locations.
- Article 500 defines Classes I, II, and III, as well as the divisions and groups.
- Article 505 provides the classification system for gases, vapors, and liquids using the IEC Zone system.
- Article 506 provides the classification system for dusts and combustible fibers and flyings using the IEC Zone System.
- IEC uses the same zone system for dusts that is used for fibers and flyings.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

56



## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

57

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Microgrid, Health Care

**Change Summary**

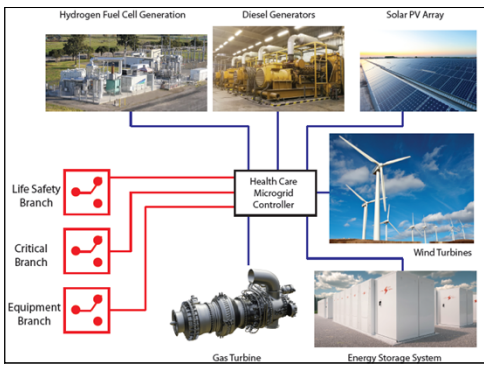
- A health care microgrid is now permitted to be used as the normal power source.
- If a health care microgrid is used as the normal source, it is not permitted to be used as the alternate source.
- Essential electrical systems are permitted to be supplied by a health care microgrid that also supplies non-essential loads.
- Note the nomenclature at the end of the definition that indicates that the source of this definition is *NFPA 99, the Health Care Facilities Code*.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

58

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

59

## Article 100

NEW

### Definitions of Panelboard and Panelboard, Enclosed

**Change Summary**

- The definition of "panelboard" was revised to recognize panelboards that are installed in an enclosure other than a cabinet or cutout box.
- A new definition was added for an "enclosed panelboard," which is installed in a cabinet, cutout box, or enclosure suitable for a panelboard application.
- Sections 110.16(A) and 110.26(D) are among the requirements that apply to enclosed panelboards.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

60

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

61

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Receptacle, Weight-Supporting Ceiling

#### Change Summary

- This is a new definition of a receptacle that was introduced in the 2017 Code.
- Weight-supporting ceiling receptacles (WSCR) are contact devices that are designed to mate with a weight-supporting attachment fitting (WSAF) to make an electrical connection and to support the weight of luminaires or paddle fans.
- A WSCR that is listed for fan support can also support luminaires without fans, while a WSCR that is listed for luminaire support will reject a paddle fan.

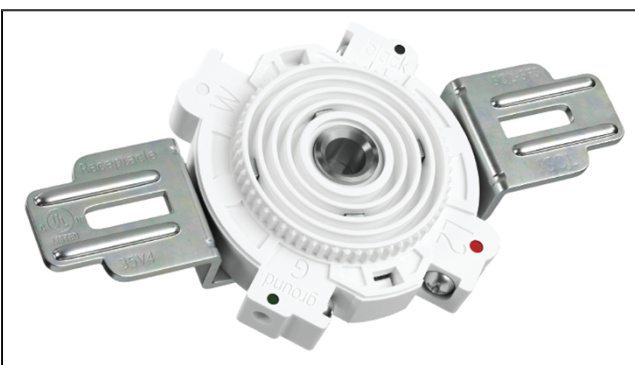
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

62

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of SKYX Platforms

63

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Servicing

#### Change Summary

- “Servicing” is defined as: The process of following a manufacturer’s set of instructions or applicable industry standards to analyze, adjust, or perform prescribed actions upon equipment with the intention to preserve or restore the operational performance of the equipment.
- “Reconditioned” is defined as: Electromechanical systems, equipment, apparatus, or components that are restored to operating conditions. This process differs from normal servicing of equipment that remains within a facility, or replacement of listed equipment on a one-to-one basis.
- The informational note points out that servicing includes maintenance and repair.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

64

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110      © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE      Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

65

## Article 100

NEW

### Definition of Stranding (Compact and Compressed)

**Change Summary**

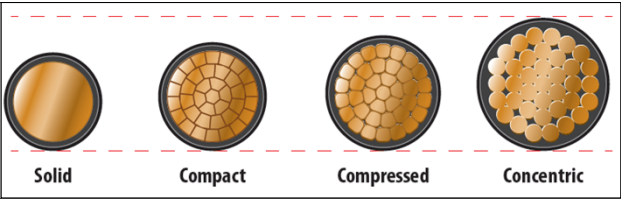
- New stranding definitions have been provided.
- Compact stranding: each layer is pressed together to minimize gaps between strands, reducing the overall diameter.
- Compressed stranding: conductors are pressed together, result is an overall diameter that is less than a concentric stranded conductor but greater than a compact stranded conductor.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110      © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

66

## Article 100

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110      © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

67

## Article 100

REVISION

### Definition of Type P Cable

**Change Summary**

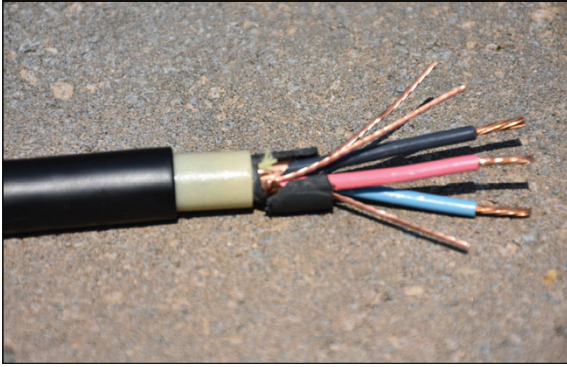
- Type P Cable has been used on drilling rigs for four decades.
- Type P Cable is limited to industrial locations where maintenance and supervision ensure that qualified personnel monitor and service the installation.
- Type P Cable is permitted in hazardous locations, where permitted in the article covering the location.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110      © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

68

## Article 100

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

69

## 110.3 (A)

REVISION

### Examination

#### Change Summary

- Cyber attacks on network connected electronic equipment are an increasing threat.
- Section 110.3(A)(8) now requires the evaluation of cyber security for network-connected life-safety equipment.
- An informational note was added that references standards for including the IEC 62443 series of standards on Industrial Automation and Control Systems and UL standards on cyber security, including UL 2900 and UL 5500.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

70

## 110.3 (A)

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

71

## 110.3 (B)

NEW

### Installation and Use

#### Change Summary

- Listed or labeled equipment is required to be installed and used in accordance with any instructions included in the listing or labeling. The same now applies to equipment that is identified for a use.
- Installation instructions are often misplaced after installation. This informational note points out that QR codes on products or information on manufacturer websites can provide installation instructions.
- Online product information is often easier to access after the product is installed.


Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

72

## 110.3 (B)

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

73

## 110.8

**REVISION**

### Wiring Methods

#### Change Summary


- Section 90.2(C) indicates that if the installation is covered by the *Code*, the wiring methods recognized by the *Code* are permitted to be installed in any building, occupancy, or premises wiring system.
- The definition of premises wiring in Article 100 includes interior and exterior wiring and associated hardware.
- Premises wiring does not include the internal wiring of appliances, luminaires, motor controllers, motor control centers, and similar equipment.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

74

## 110.8

**REVISION**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

75

## 110.12

**REVISION**

### Mechanical Execution of Work

#### Change Summary

- The terms *neat* and *workmanlike* were replaced with *professional* and *skillful*.
- This editorial change uses more descriptive and gender-neutral terms.
- The informational note change is simply editorial.
- Informational Note No. 1 to 110.12(C) was deleted because this section applies to cables and conductors; it does not apply to fiber optic cables.

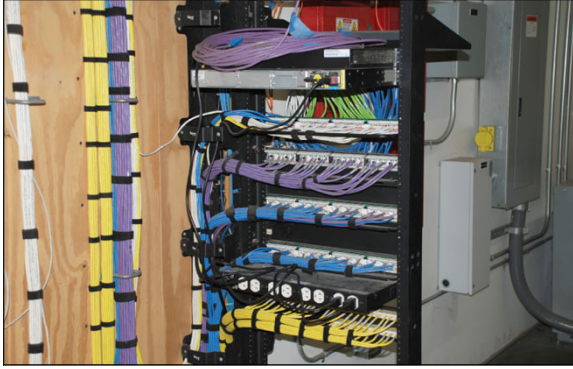
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

76



## 110.12

## REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

77

## 110.14 (A)

## REVISION

## Terminals

## Change Summary

- The requirement that terminal connections be “thoroughly good” has been replaced with the term *mechanically secure* to replace vague and unenforceable terminology.
- The text was revised to clarify that terminal connections must provide a good electrical connection.
- Requirements for connection methods for certain equipment, such as receptacles (covered by CMP 18), are the responsibility of the panel that covers that equipment.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

78

## 110.14 (A)

## REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

79

## 110.16 (B)

## REVISION

## Service Equipment and Feeder Equipment

## Change Summary

- Section 110.16(B) is expanded to apply to feeder supplied equipment, as well as service equipment.
- The requirement has been modified to make it clear that the required label is an arc flash warning label.
- The threshold for a required label has been lowered from 1,200 amperes to 1,000 amperes.
- The requirements for the content of the label have been deleted because they are included in 110.21(B).

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

80

## 110.16 (B)

**REVISION**

⚠ WARNING

Arc Flash & Shock Hazard  
Appropriate PPE Required

Date Label was Applied	
Nominal System Voltage	
Available Fault Current	
Service Overcurrent Device Clearing Time	

Arc Flash Boundary \_\_\_\_\_  
 At least one of the following: \_\_\_\_\_ or  
 (1) Incident Energy \_\_\_\_\_ at working distance of \_\_\_\_\_  
 Arc Flash PPE Category \_\_\_\_\_  
 (2) Minimum arc rating of clothing \_\_\_\_\_  
 (3) Specific level of PPE \_\_\_\_\_

Yellow Highlights indicate arc-flash warning label requirements in the NEC

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

81

## 110.17

**NEW**

### Servicing and Maintenance of Equipment

**Change Summary**

- This addition is significant because in addition to requiring a *qualified person* (a defined term), the individual must be a qualified person trained in servicing and maintenance of equipment.
- Servicing and maintenance must be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and applicable industry standards or as approved by the AHJ.
- Identified replacement parts must be verified under applicable product standards.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

82

## 110.17

**NEW**



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE Courtesy of Burlington Electrical Testing

83

## 110.20

**NEW**

### Reconditioned Equipment

**Change Summary**

- Equipment is generally permitted to be reconditioned, unless prohibited elsewhere in the Code.
- Requirements are provided for parts and sources of information.
- If listing is required, the equipment must be listed or field-labeled as reconditioned.
- If listing is not required, it must be listed or field-labeled as reconditioned or reconditioned in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

84

## 110.20

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

85

## 110.21 (A)

REVISION

## Reconditioned Equipment, Marking Requirements

## Change Summary

- The marking requirements for reconditioned equipment have been reorganized into list format.
- The original listing mark must be removed or made permanently illegible.
- The original equipment nameplate can remain, but the listing mark must be removed.
- The exception for industrial facilities still applies.

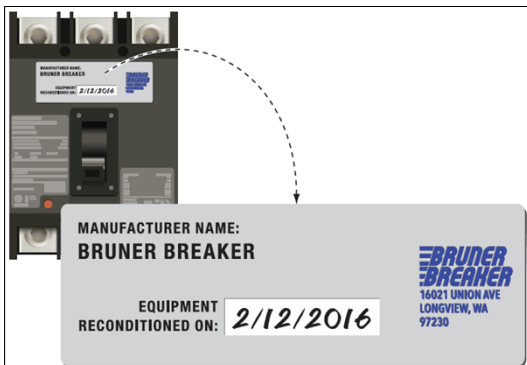
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

86

## 110.21 (A)

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

87

## 110.22 (A)

REVISION

## Identification of Disconnecting Means, General

## Change Summary

- Disconnecting means are required to be legibly marked to indicate their purpose, unless located and arranged to make the purpose evident.
- The marking must include the identification and location of the circuit source that supplies the disconnecting means, unless located and arranged to make the identification of the circuit source evident.
- This change is intended to make it easier for service personnel to quickly locate the power source. This is especially important in large and high-rise buildings.

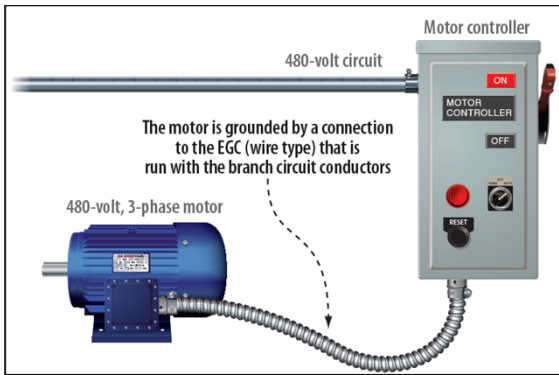
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

88

## 110.22 (A)

## REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

89

## 110.26

## REORGANIZE

## Depth and Width of Working Space

## Change Summary

- The requirement that open equipment doors must not impede entry or egress to the working space was relocated from 110.26(C)(2) to 110.26.
- Relocation of the open equipment door requirement to 110.26 means that it now applies to all equipment, not just large equipment.
- Access or egress is impeded if one or more simultaneously-opened equipment doors restricts access to less than 24 inches wide or 6 ½ feet high.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

90

## 110.26

## REORGANIZE



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

91

## 110.26 (A) (4)

## REVISION

## Limited Workspace Requirements

## Change Summary

- The limited access workspace requirements were modified to provide requirements for workspaces in front of duct heaters installed above partitions.
- The workspace must be unobstructed to the floor by fixed cabinets, walls, or partitions.
- A horizontal ceiling structural member or access panel is permitted in the space if the location of weight-bearing structural members does not result in a side reach of more than 6 inches to work inside the enclosure.

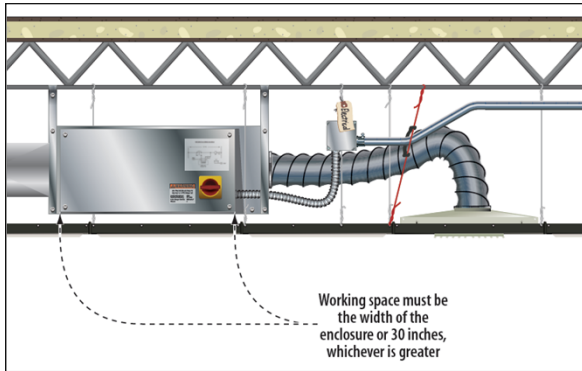
Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

92

## 110.26 (A) (4)

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

93

## 110.26 (A) (6)

NEW

## Grade, Floor, or Working Platform

## Change Summary

- Section 110.26 requires access and workspace around all electrical equipment to permit ready and safe operation and to permit maintenance.
- The grade, floor, or platform in the workspace must be clear of obstructions and tripping hazards.
- The grade, floor, or platform in the workspace must be as level and flat as possible.
- Similar requirements have been added to 110.34(A) for equipment operating over 1,000 volts.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

94

## 110.26 (A) (6)

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

95

## 110.26 (E)

REVISION

## Dedicated Equipment Space

## Change Summary

- The requirement for dedicated equipment space in 110.26(E) has been expanded to include all service equipment rated 1,000 volts or less.
- The requirement will now include service equipment for one- and two-family dwellings, including the emergency disconnects now required in 230.85
- A service rated disconnect will now have the same equipment space requirements as service rated switchgear and service rated panelboards for 1,000 volts or less.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

96



## 110.26 (E)

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

97

## Table 110.28

REVISION

## Table 110.28 Enclosure Types, Informational Notes

## Change Summary

- Informational Note No. 3 was revised to add a reference to 502.10(A)(2) for Class II, Division 1 locations.
- Informational Note No. 5 notes that some Type 4X enclosures are marked “for indoor use only.”
- Informational Note No. 6 notes that some Type 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures are ventilated, but still provide the required ingress protection.
- Informational Note No. 7 references the NEMA Standard for enclosure type ratings.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

98

## Table 110.28

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

99

## 110.29

NEW

## In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)

## Change Summary

- A new requirement has been added that establishes that “in sight from” means that the equipment must be visible and not more than 50 feet from the other equipment.
- This requirement was created to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*.
- Definitions are not permitted to contain requirements. The establishment of limits constitutes a requirement.
- The definition with the requirement still exists.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

100

## 110.29

NEW



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

101

## 110.31 (A) (4)

REVISION

## Locks, Personnel Doors

## Change Summary

- Personnel doors for electrical vaults containing equipment rated over 1,000 volts are now required to open at least 90 degrees. These doors are required to be equipped with listed panic hardware or listed fire exit hardware.
- There is a similar requirement in 110.26(C)(3) for equipment rated 1,000 volts and less.
- An informational note was added to reference two UL Standards: UL 305, Standard for Panic Hardware; and UL 10C, Standard for Safety for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

102

## 110.31 (A) (4)

REVISION



Chapter 1 • Articles 90, 100, and 110

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

103

# Significant Changes

TO THE NEC® 2023

## Chapter 2

electrical training ALLIANCE IN COLLABORATION WITH **NECA**

1

## 200.2 (A)

**REVISION**

Impedance grounded system

Supply Side Bonding Jumper

Overcurrent devices are not shown

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

3

## 200.2 (A)

**REVISION**

**General**

**Change Summary**

- This section was revised to correlate with the change in 250.36.
- “High-impedance grounded systems” are now referred to as “impedance grounded systems.”
- The grounded system conductor of impedance grounded systems is now referred to as the “impedance grounded conductor.” This section does not apply to the impedance grounded conductor.
- This section was changed from paragraph to list format.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

2

## 210.6 (D) & (E)

**REVISION RELOCATE**

**Branch Circuit Voltage Limitations**

**Change Summary**

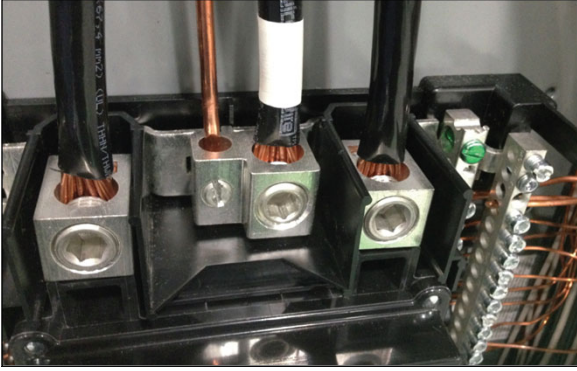
- The voltage limit in Section 210.6(D) was increased from 600 volts between conductors to 1,000 volts between conductors for consistency with other voltage limitations across the Code.
- The section has also been revised to reference a limit of 1,500 volts dc between conductors.
- Section 210.6(E) has been deleted.
- A new Article 235 has been created that will contain requirements for medium and high-voltage branch circuits, feeders, and services.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

4

## 210.6 (D) &amp; (E)

REVISION RELOCATE



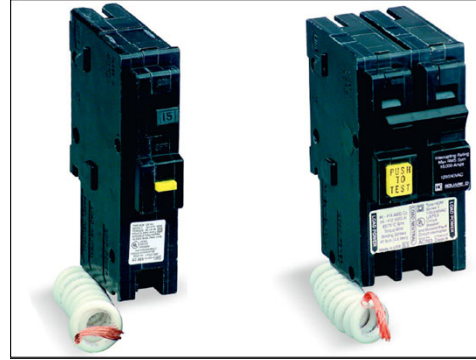
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

5

## 210.8

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Schneider Electric

7

## 210.8

REVISION

## GFCI Protection for Personnel

## Change Summary

- The term *ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel* in the first sentence is replaced with the term *listed Class A GFCI*.
- Elsewhere in the section, the acronym GFCI is used to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*, which requires the use of acronyms where practical.
- The definition of "Ground-fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI)" in Article 100 makes it clear that the term is used to describe a device that is intended to protect personnel. The informational note makes it clear that the device referred to is a Class A GFCI.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

6

## 210.8 (A)

REVISION

## Dwelling Units

## Change Summary

- The reference to fire alarm systems in an informational note to list item (5) has been deleted because it is covered in Article 760.
- GFCI requirements for kitchens now apply to all kitchen receptacles.
- GFCI requirements apply to any area of a dwelling unit with permanent provisions for food preparation, drink preparation, or cooking.
- Receptacles in bathroom exhaust fan assemblies that are not readily accessible do not require GFCI protection.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

8

## 210.8 (A)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

9

## 210.8 (B)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

11

## 210.8 (B)

## REVISION

## Other Than Dwelling Units

## Change Summary

- The GFCI requirements for other than dwelling units have been revised and clarified.
- List items (3) through (5) have been revised to clarify GFCI requirement for kitchens, food and beverage preparation and food serving areas, and any other preparation or food/beverage serving area where there is also cooking.
- A new requirement for GFCI protection of cord-and plug-connected fixed or stationary appliances has been added.
- A new GFCI requirement for receptacles within 6 feet of aquariums, bait wells, and similar open aquatic vessels or containers has been added.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

10

## 210.8 (D)

## REVISION

## GFCI Protection for Personnel-Specific Appliances

## Change Summary

- In the 2020 Code, the determination of which appliances required GFCI protection was assigned to CMP 17, who placed them in 422.5.
- Section 422.5(A) specified several appliances that require GFCI protection. They could be protected via a branch circuit device, or they could be protected by a device in the cord.
- This section contained convoluted cross references to 422.5(A) for the list of appliances and 422.5(B) for the protection method.
- This revision brings back the list of appliances to 210.8, and it now requires GFCI protection of the branch circuit or the outlet.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

12



## 210.8 (D)

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

13

## 210.8 (F)

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

15

## 210.8 (F)

REVISION

**GFCI Protection for Personnel-Outdoor Outlets****Change Summary**

- The requirements of 210.8(F) have been revised to indicate that it applies to all outdoor outlets other than those covered by 210.8(A), Exception No. 1, rated 150 volts or less to ground, and 50 amperes or less.
- A list of three locations has been added to clarify which locations are included.
- If equipment supplied by one of the specified outlets is replaced, the outlet will now be required to be GFCI protected.
- Exception No. 2 does not require GFCI protection for listed HVAC equipment installed prior to September 1, 2026.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

14

## 210.11 (C) (4)

REVISION

**Garage Branch Circuits****Change Summary**

- Section 210.11(C)(4) was revised to clarify that garages must be supplied by at least one 20-ampere branch circuit for receptacles with at least one receptacle for each vehicle bay. The circuits are not permitted to supply other garage receptacles.
- In a single-vehicle bay garage, the circuit is permitted to supply other outlets.
- The 20-ampere branch circuit was previously permitted to supply only readily accessible outdoor receptacle outlets. Exception No. 1 was revised to permit it to supply outdoor receptacle outlets.
- Additional branch circuits rated at least 15 amperes are permitted to supply other receptacle outlets.

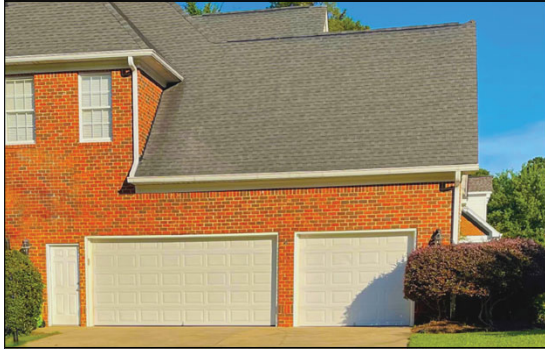
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

16

## 210.11 (C) (4)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

17

## 210.12

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

19

## 210.12

## REVISION

**Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection****Change Summary**

- The main rule of 210.12 was rewritten to align with changes made to the subsections of 210.12, including a new requirement that all AFCIs be listed.
- The title of 210.12(A) was changed to "means of protection." Information regarding the specific areas of the dwelling unit requiring AFCI protection has been moved into 210.12(B).
- Section 210.12(B), (C), and (D) have been changed into lists.
- Section 210.12(D)(3) has been added to require AFCI protection of 120-volt, single-phase 15- and 20-ampere branch circuits in areas designed exclusively for sleeping in fire stations, stations for rescue squads, and police stations.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

18

## 210.18

## REVISION

**Rating****Change Summary**

- Section 210.18 now recognizes 10-ampere individual branch circuits.
- Exception No. 1 has been revised to permit individual branch circuits greater than 50 amperes that supply non-lighting loads in locations with conditions of maintenance to ensure that only qualified persons service the installations. This had previously been limited to industrial locations.
- A new Exception No. 2 was added that prohibits 10-ampere branch circuits from serving receptacle outlets.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

20

## 210.18

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

21

## 210.19

REVISION RELOCATE



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Bill McGovern, City of Plano, TX

23

## 210.19

REVISION RELOCATE

**Conductors – Minimum Ampacity and Size****Change Summary**

- New branch circuit voltage limits have been added for ac and dc circuits.
- Section 210.19 now applies to branch circuits not exceeding 1,000 volts ac and 1,500 volts dc.
- The requirements for branch circuits exceeding 1,000 volts ac and 1,500 volts dc have been removed from this section and relocated to Article 235.
- There are several minor editorial changes to comply with the *NEC Style Manual*.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

22

## 210.23

REVISION

**Permissible Loads, Multiple-Outlet Branch Circuits****Change Summary**

- New requirements have been added to 210.23(A) for 10-ampere branch circuits.
- This section contains an ascending list from the smallest sized branch circuit to the largest. Therefore, the 10-ampere branch circuits appear first.
- 210.23(A)(1) lists the types of loads that are permitted to be supplied by a 10-ampere branch circuit, while 210.23(A)(2) lists the loads that are not permitted to be supplied by a 10-ampere branch circuit.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

24

## 210.23

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

25

## 210.52 (A) (2)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

27

## 210.52 (A) (2)

## REVISION

## Wall Space

## Change Summary

- The criteria for what is considered wall space that requires receptacles in dwelling units has been revised.
- Since there are wall spaces where receptacle installation is impractical, Section 210.52(A)(2) spells out which spaces must be considered wall space for receptacles.
- The space behind stationary appliances has been added to 210.52(A)(2)(1) to indicate that the wall space behind stationary appliances need not be considered as wall space that requires receptacles.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

26

## 210.52 (C)

## REVISION

## Countertops and Work Surfaces

## Change Summary

- A new exception was added to 210.52(C)(1) for countertops with wall space where a receptacle cannot be installed in the required wall space to permit installation as near as practicable.
- Receptacles are no longer required in 210.52(C)(2) for island and peninsular counter tops. If not installed, provision is required for a future installation.
- Receptacles are permitted to be in or on but not below countertops.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

28

## 210.52 (C)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of ABB Inc.

29

## 210.70

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

31

## 210.70

## REVISION

## Lighting Outlets Required

## Change Summary

- Section 210.70 has been revised to make it clear that switches of control devices are not permitted to rely only on battery power unless the lighting outlets are energized upon battery failure.
- A lighting outlet that is controlled by a listed wall-mounted control device is now required in laundry areas of dwelling units.
- A lighting outlet is required for exterior illumination of exits or entrances of dwelling units, attached garages, and detached garages with power. This does not apply to doors for vehicles.
- Dimmer control of lighting in accordance with 210.70(A)(2)(3) is not permitted, unless the listed control devices can provide dimming control that can provide maximum brightness at each location for stairway illumination.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

30

## 215.15

## NEW

## Barriers

## Change Summary

- The widespread acceptance of *NFPA 70E, Electrical Safety in the Workplace*, has brought attention to the need to prevent electrical hazards that can exist while trying to establish an electrically-safe work condition.
- In the 2020 *Code*, the requirements for barriers in panelboards, switchboards, and switchgear were relocated from 408.3(A)(2) to 230.62(C), where they only applied to services.
- A similar hazard exists for panelboards, switchboards, switchgear, and motor control centers that are supplied by feeders or transformer secondary conductors.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

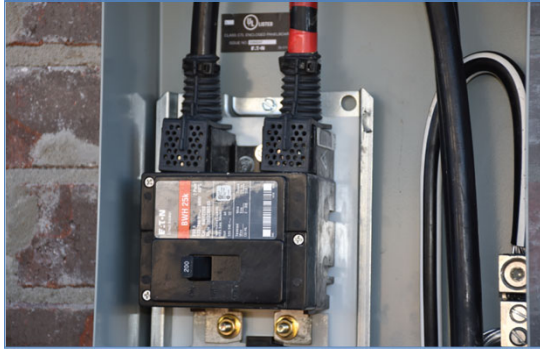
© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

32



## 215.15

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

33

## 215.18

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

35

## 215.18

NEW

**Surge Protection****Change Summary**

- During the 2020 *Code* cycle, a new surge protection requirement was added for dwelling unit services in 230.67 (expanded for 2023).
- Surge protection is now required for feeders that supply dwelling units, dormitory units, guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels, and patient sleeping rooms of nursing homes and limited care facilities.
- The use of sensitive electronic equipment in these newly added areas, supplied by services, is identical to its usage in dwelling units.
- A similar requirement was adopted in 225.42 for outside feeders.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

34

## Article 220

REORGANIZE

**Article 220 Reorganization****Change Summary**

- Article 220 has been rewritten to improve its usability. This change covers the reorganization only.
- Requirements that were in 220.11 and 220.10 were moved from Part II, Branch-Circuit Load Calculations, to Part I, General.
- Section 220.12 was relocated to Part III because it addresses feeder and service load calculations.
- Sections 220.14(J), (K), and (M) were relocated to 220.41, 220.43, and 220.44, respectively, because they deal with loads.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

36

## Article 220

**REORGANIZE**

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

37

## 220.5 (C)

**REVISION**

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

39

## 220.5 (C)

**REVISION**

### Floor Area

**Change Summary**

- Section 220.11 has been relocated from Part II of Article 220 to become 220.5(C).
- Garages and unfinished spaces, as well as unused spaces, are now included in the floor area calculations.
- Open porches continue to not be included in the floor area calculation if they cannot be adapted for future use as a habitable room or occupiable space.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

38

## 220.42

**REVISION**

### Lighting Load for Non-Dwelling Occupancies

**Change Summary**

- The lighting load requirements for non-dwelling occupancies have been moved from Part II to Part III, Feeder and Service Load Calculations.
- The informational note to 200.42(A) points out that unit load conditions of the table are now based on minimum load conditions and 80% power factor, not 100%, as previously indicated. These values might not provide sufficient capacity.
- The note to the table has been revised to make it clear that no additional multiplier is required for the unit loads.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

40

220.42

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

41

220.50

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

43

220.50

REVISION

### Motors and Air-Conditioning Equipment

#### Change Summary

- The title of Section 220.50 has been changed to "Motors and Air-Conditioning Equipment" to reflect the fact that it also provides a reference to the requirements for hermetic refrigerant motor-compressors.
- The section has been reformatted to clearly delineate the requirements for motors from those for air-conditioning equipment.
- The air-conditioning requirements now reference all of Part IV of Article 440 for sizing of the branch circuit conductors.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

42

220.53

REVISION

### Appliance Load – Dwelling Units

#### Change Summary

- Section 220.53 permits a demand factor of 75% to be applied to the nameplate rating of four or more appliances fastened in place rated at least ¼ horsepower or 500 watts.
- Electric vehicle supply equipment has been added to the list of loads that are not permitted to have a reduced demand factor.
- Section 625.41 requires that the EVSE branch circuit be sized for continuous duty loads.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

44

220.53

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

45

220.57

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

47

220.57

NEW

#### Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE) Load

##### Change Summary

- A new requirement has been added for sizing the load for electric vehicle supply equipment.
- The load must be sized at 7,200 volt-amperes or the nameplate rating of the equipment, whichever is larger.
- An informational note was added to reference 625.42, which provides the requirement for sizing an EVSE circuit.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

46

220.60

REVISION

#### Noncoincident Loads

##### Change Summary

- This section covers requirements for calculating noncoincident loads on feeders and services. Noncoincident loads are loads that are unlikely to be used simultaneously, such as heating and air conditioning.
- The largest of the loads is permitted to be used for calculating the size of the feeder or service.
- Where a motor or air-conditioning load is part of the noncoincident load and is not the largest of the noncoincident loads, 125% of the larger of the motor load or the air-conditioning load must be used.

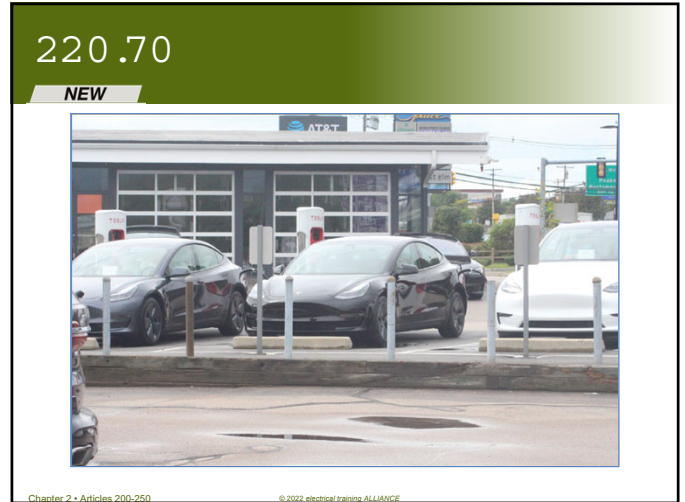
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

48



49



51

220.70

**NEW**

**Energy Management Systems (EMSs)**

**Change Summary**

- Section 220.70 will allow listed energy management systems to be used to limit the load on feeders or services.
- Upon malfunction, the EMS must disconnect the loads.
- Access to the settings must be restricted to authorized personnel in accordance with 750.30(C)(3).
- There are field marking requirements indicating the maximum current setting, the date of the calculation and setting, and identification of current-limited loads and sources.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

50

220.110

**NEW**

**Receptacle Loads – Health Care Facilities**

**Change Summary**

- Demand factors for receptacle loads in health care facilities have been added in 220.110, which is located in the new Part VI, Health Care Facilities.
- These new requirements are based on receptacle load data from health care facilities.
- Since load calculations and demand factors are found in Article 220, the demand factors are referenced in 517.22.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

52



## 220.110

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

53

## 220.120

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

55

## 220.120

REVISION

**Receptacle Loads****Change Summary**

- Table 555.6 has been relocated to 220.120.
- The relocation of demand factors is consistent with the decision to place requirements for demand factors in health care facilities into 220.110.
- Note No. 2 was revised to provide a method for shore power load calculations for slips using individual kilowatt-hour submeters.
- A new note has been added to the table that notes that if a circuit feeds a boat hoist and shore power for the same boat slip, only the load with the larger demand factor must be counted in the calculation because the loads are not coincident.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

54

## 225.41

NEW

**Emergency Disconnects****Change Summary**

- One- and two-family dwelling units that are supplied by a feeder now require an emergency disconnect that is installed in an outdoor, readily accessible location.
- If more than one disconnect is required, they must be grouped.
- The disconnecting means must be marked "EMERGENCY DISCONNECT."
- The disconnect marking is required to be on the outside front of the enclosure. The label must be red with white lettering.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

56

## 225.41

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

57

## 225.42

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

59

## 225.42

NEW

**Surge Protection****Change Summary**

- During the 2020 cycle, a new surge protection requirement was added for dwelling unit services in 230.67 (expanded for 2023).
- Surge protection is now required for outside feeders that supply dwelling units, dormitory units, guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels, and patient sleeping rooms of nursing homes and limited care facilities.
- A similar requirement is now located in 215.18 for feeders.
- There is no exception for outside feeder equipment for remotely-located SPD protection for upstream feeder or service equipment.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

58

## 230.7

REVISION

**Other Conductors****Change Summary**

- Service conductors have been prohibited from being in the same cable or raceway with branch-circuit or feeder conductors.
- Service conductors are now also prohibited from being installed in underground boxes or handhole enclosures with branch-circuit or feeder conductors.
- Intermingling service conductors with other conductors is a hazard to workers and to connected equipment.
- Grounding electrode conductors and supply-side bonding jumpers are permitted in the same raceway or enclosure as the service conductors.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

60

## 230.7

## REVISION



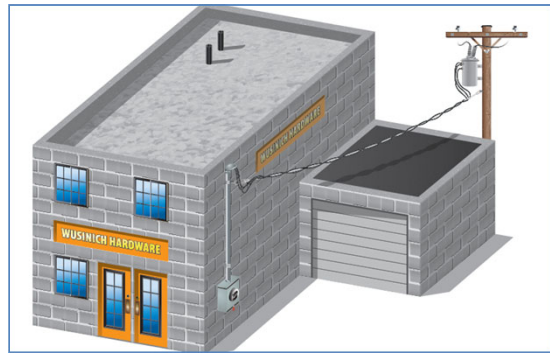
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

61

## 230.24 (A)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

63

## 230.24 (A)

## REVISION

## Above Roofs

## Change Summary

- The requirement for the minimum vertical clearance of overhead conductors above a roof surface has been increased from 2.5 meters (8 ft.) to 2.6 meters (8 ft. 6 in.)
- The vertical clearance extends 3 feet in every direction from the edge of the roof.
- The minimum clearance requirement for service conductors was less than for feeder conductors. Service conductors would be a greater hazard to workers on roofs than feeder conductors.
- The metric conversion in 225.19(A) was incorrect in the last edition of the Code.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

62

## 230.43

## REVISION

## Wiring Methods for 1000 Volts, Nominal, or Less

## Change Summary

- The list of permitted wiring methods for service entrance conductors has been revised.
- Type TC-ER cable is permitted where it is identified for use as service conductors.
- Flexible bus systems are a new wiring method that is now permitted for services.
- Article 371 provides installation requirements for flexible bus systems.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

64

## 230.43

REVISION



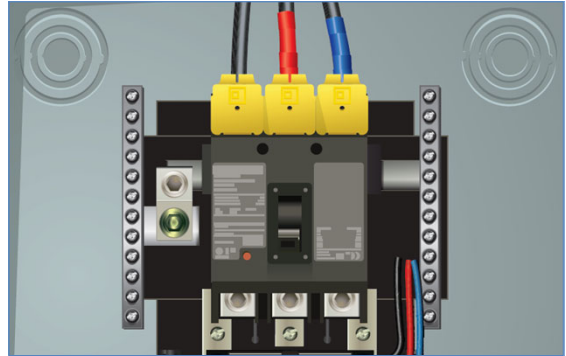
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

65

## 230.62 (C)

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

67

## 230.62 (C)

REVISION

**Barriers****Change Summary**

- Barriers are required in service equipment to minimize the likelihood of inadvertent contact with uninsulated, and ungrounded, service busbars and terminals.
- This requirement has been revised to make it clear that the requirement applies to protection from contact when the service disconnect is in the open position.
- The conductors and terminals being protected by barriers will remain energized when the service disconnect is in the open position.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

66

## 230.67

REVISION

**Surge Protection****Change Summary**

- Surge protection will now be required to be provided in service equipment for dormitories, guest rooms and guest suites of hotels and motels, and sleeping areas of nursing homes and limited care facilities.
- With the expansion of the requirements, the section was reformatted into list format.
- Surge protective devices must have a nominal discharge current rating of not less than 10 kA.

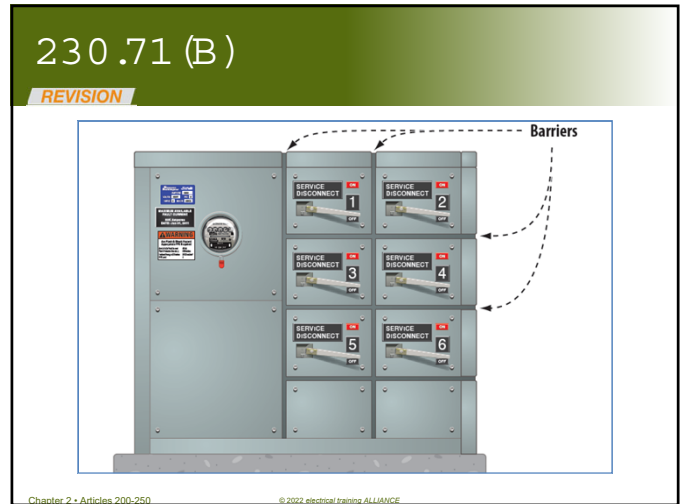
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

68



69



71

230.71 (B)

REVISION

**Two to Six Service Disconnecting Means**

**Change Summary**

- The requirements for barriers in vertical sections of switchboards were clarified.
- Transfer switches in service equipment are now required to be in separate compartments.
- Barriers between a service disconnect for a motor control center and motor disconnects are now required.
- An exception was added that permits the addition of service disconnects (up to six) in a single enclosure in an existing installation that was installed in compliance with editions of the *Code* prior to 2020.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

70

230.85

REVISION

**Emergency Disconnects**

**Change Summary**

- Section 230.85 was rewritten into a list format and the language was clarified.
- An exception was added to not require an outdoor service disconnect to be readily accessible, where an outdoor feeder disconnect is installed in accordance with 225.41.
- If multiple disconnects are required, they must be grouped.
- If disconnects are replaced, all of the requirements of this section apply. However, the exception to (C) permits some repairs.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

72



## 230.85

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

73

## Article 235

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

75

## Article 235

NEW

## Branch Circuits, Feeders, and Services Over 1000 Vac...

## Change Summary

- A new Article 235 has been created that covers requirements for branch circuits, feeders, and services over 1,000 volts ac or over 1,500 volts dc.
- This change is intended to locate the medium-voltage requirements to improve usability and clarity.
- Corresponding requirements have been deleted from Articles 210, 215, and 230.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

74

## 240.2

NEW

## Reconditioned Equipment

## Change Summary

- Section 240.2 has been created to indicate which equipment is permitted to be reconditioned.
- Equipment not permitted to be reconditioned includes GFPE, GFCI, low-voltage fuseholders, low-voltage nonrenewable fuses, molded-case circuit breakers, and low-voltage circuit breaker electronic trip units.
- Equipment permitted to be reconditioned includes low-voltage power circuit breakers, electromechanical relays, and current transformers.
- Reconditioned equipment covered by Article 240 must be listed.

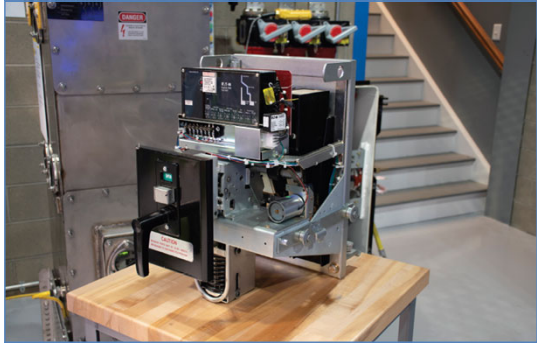
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

76

## 240.2

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Eaton

77

## 240.4 (B)

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

79

## 240.4 (B)

REVISION

## Overcurrent Devices Rated 800 Amperes or Less

## Change Summary

- Conductors must be protected from overcurrent in accordance with their ampacity. Where the ampacity does not equal a standard OCPD rating, the next standard size (not to exceed 800 amperes) is permitted to be used in accordance with 240.4(B).
- An adjustable trip OCPD is permitted to be used as long as the setting does not exceed the next standard rating size above the conductor ampacity.
- The means to adjust the setting of the adjustable trip mechanism must have restricted access in accordance with 240.6(C).

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

78

## 240.6 (D)

NEW

## Remotely Adjustable Trip Circuit Breakers

## Change Summary

- Remotely adjustable circuit breakers are permitted to have an ampere rating that is equal to the adjusted current setting (long-time pickup setting).
- Access can be achieved directly through a local nonnetworked interface or through a networked interface where the circuit breaker and software are identified as being evaluated for cybersecurity or the network has had a documented cybersecurity assessment.
- Two informational notes were added that reference cybersecurity standards and recognized methods of commissioning to identify cyber threats.
- A third informational note points out that continuous vigilance is necessary.

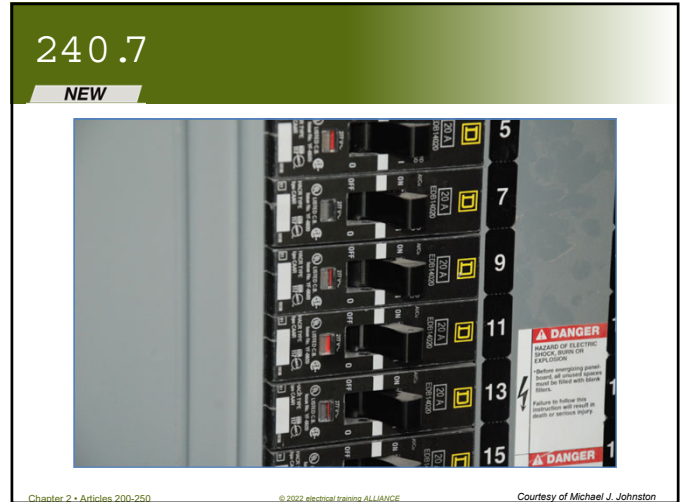
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

80



81



83

240.7

NEW

**Listing Requirements**

**Change Summary**

- Branch-circuit overcurrent protective devices are now required to be listed.
- The listing standards include *UL 489 Standard for Safety: Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures*, and *UL 1066 Standard for Safety: Low-Voltage AC and DC Power Circuit Breakers Used in Enclosures*.
- Products that are not listed must be evaluated for safety in accordance with 110.3(A) as the basis for approval by the AHJ. Jurisdictions do not have the facilities to properly evaluate circuit breakers.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

82

240.11

NEW

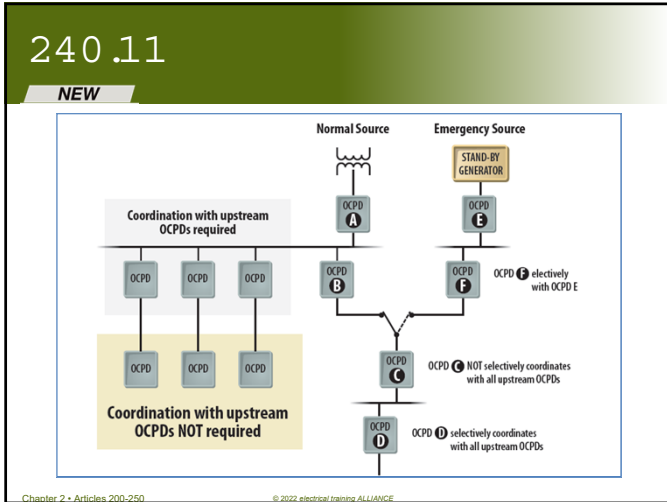
**Selective Coordination**

**Change Summary**

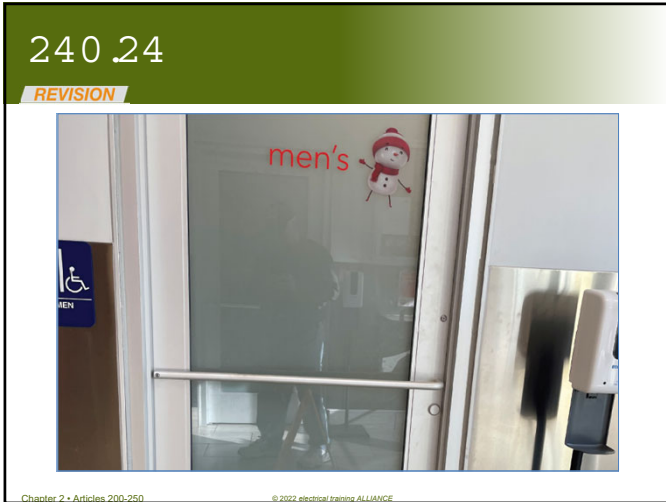
- Selective coordination of overcurrent protective devices limits the extent of an outage without opening the service.
- If there are feeders connected to the service that have loads that are not required to be coordinated, the uncoordinated loads could be capable of opening the service OCPD.
- The 2023 Code requires that when feeders are connected to a service that has loads that are required to be selectively coordinated, the feeders are also required to be selectively coordinated.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

84



85



87

### 240.24

**REVISION**

**Location in or on Premises**

**Change Summary**

- The use of a tool to access overcurrent protective devices will be permitted in enclosures designed for hazardous (classified) locations and for enclosures to protect against environmental conditions.
- Branch-circuit overcurrent protective devices will not have to be accessible to all residents in sleeping rooms in dormitory units.
- The prohibition against locating overcurrent protection in bathrooms of dwelling units, dormitory units, and guest rooms and guest suites has been expanded to include all bathrooms, showering facilities, and locker rooms with showering facilities.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

86

### 240.89

**NEW**

**Replacement Trip Units**

**Change Summary**

- Replacement trip units for circuit breakers must be listed for use in the specific circuit breaker type.
- The trip unit may be identical to the original, or it could provide additional features.
- Listing ensures that the new trip unit will not compromise the operation of the circuit breaker.
- This action correlates with the action taken during the 2020 cycle in 490.21(A)(5) for circuit breakers rated over 1,000 volts (245.21(A)(5) in this edition).

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

88

240.89

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

89

242.9

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

91

242.9

NEW

**Indicating****Change Summary**

- Surge protective devices are required to provide an indication that they are operating properly.
- A surge protective device can be damaged by a high-level surge, even if it has protected the equipment.
- Previously, the occupant may not have known that the SPD operation may have damaged it, precluding future protection.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

90

242.42

REVISION

**Surge Arrester Rating****Change Summary**

- Previously, the rating of a surge arrester was required to be equal to or greater than the maximum continuous operating voltage at the point of application.
- The duty cycle is now required to be not less than 125% of the maximum continuous operating voltage available at the point of application.
- The reference to silicon-carbon type surge arresters was deleted because they are no longer manufactured.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

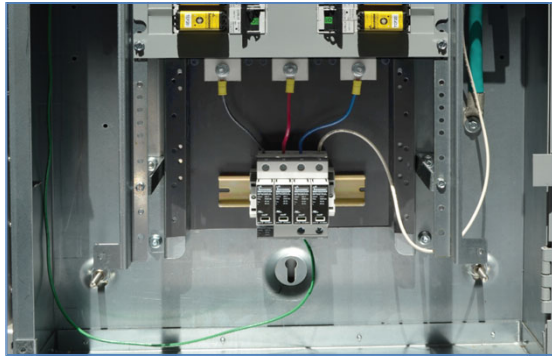
© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

92



## 242.42

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

93

## Article 245

NEW



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

95

## Article 245

NEW

**Overcurrent Prot. Sys. Rated Over 1000 Vac, 1500 Vdc****Change Summary**

- A new Article 245 has been created on overcurrent protection for systems rated over 1,000 volts ac and 1,500 volts dc.
- This new article will replace previous requirements for systems over 1,000 volts, which were located in Articles 240 and 490.
- This is one of several new articles that are intended to enhance the NEC's coverage of medium- and high-voltage applications.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

94

## 245.2

REVISION

**Reconditioned Equipment****Change Summary**

- This section was revised, placed into list format, and relocated to become 245.2.
- Medium- and high-voltage circuit breakers are now permitted to be reconditioned.
- Electromechanical protective relays and current transformers are now permitted to be reconditioned.
- Medium-voltage fuseholders and medium-voltage nonrenewable fuseholders are not permitted to be reconditioned.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

96

## 245.2

## REVISION



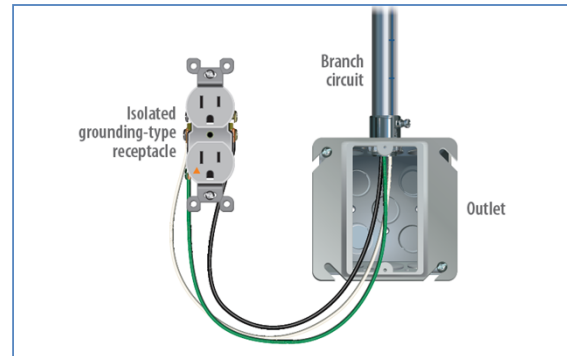
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

97

## 250.6

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

99

## 250.6

## REVISION

**Objectionable Current****Change Summary**

- This section was revised to recognize that bonding of various parts of electrical systems and equipment can also cause objectionable currents.
- 250.6(B) now provides remedies to objectionable currents resulting from bonding.
- 250.6(C) was revised to recognize that currents resulting from abnormal conditions may not be temporary and could also exist due to required grounding and bonding connections.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

98

## 250.20

## REVISION

**Alternating-Current Systems to Be Grounded****Change Summary**

- Alternating current systems are now required to be grounded in accordance with 250.20, unless prohibited elsewhere in the *Code*.
- A new informational note has been added to point to specific examples of applications where grounding is prohibited. In addition, 250.22 was deleted because it was a reference to some of these requirements elsewhere in the *Code*.
- 250.20(D) was revised to recognize that impedance grounded systems do not have a neutral conductor.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

100

## 250.20

## REVISION



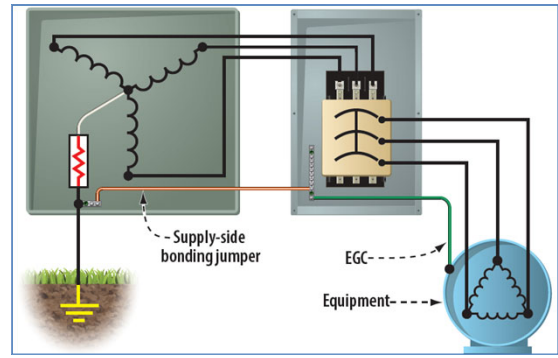
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

101

## 250.24

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

103

## 250.24

## REVISION

## Grounding of Service-Supplied AC Systems

## Change Summary

- The term *high impedance grounded system* is now changed to *impedance grounded system*.
- The conductor that connects to the neutral point through an impedance is not a grounded conductor – it is an impedance grounded conductor. Correlating changes were made in 250.36.
- Parallel grounded service conductors in two or more parallel raceways are required to be connected in parallel. The grounded conductor in each raceway is to be sized based on the conductor in the raceway.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

102

## 250.36

## REVISION

## Impedance Grounded Systems – 480 V to 1000 V

## Change Summary

- The term *high impedance grounded neutral system* is now changed to *impedance grounded system*.
- The conductor that connects to the neutral point through an impedance is not a grounded conductor – it is an impedance grounded conductor.
- The conductor is also not a neutral conductor.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

104

## 250.36

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

105

## 250.64

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Copperweld Bimetals LLC

107

## 250.64

## REVISION

**Grounding Electrode Conductor Installation****Change Summary**

- Section 250.64(B) has been updated to include copper-clad aluminum conductors in the requirements for securing and supporting.
- Section 250.64(D)(2)(2) has been revised to recognize that some buildings are supplied by branch circuits, rather than by feeders or services. This removes a conflict with 250.24(A)(1).
- A new 250.64(G) was added to prohibit grounding electrode conductors from being run through the ventilation openings of equipment.
- There were several minor editorial corrections in this section.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

106

## 250.68 (C)

## REVISION

**Grounding Electrode Conductor Connections****Change Summary**

- Interior metal piping that is electrically continuous with a metal underground water pipe electrode that is not more than 5 feet from the point of entrance is permitted to extend the grounding electrode.
- The measurement has been clarified in three places to make it clear that the measurement is along the water piping.
- In 250.68(C)(2) and (C)(3), there were references to "the usual steel tie wires" without explanation. The phrase "the usual" was deleted.

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

108

## 250.68 (C)

## REVISION



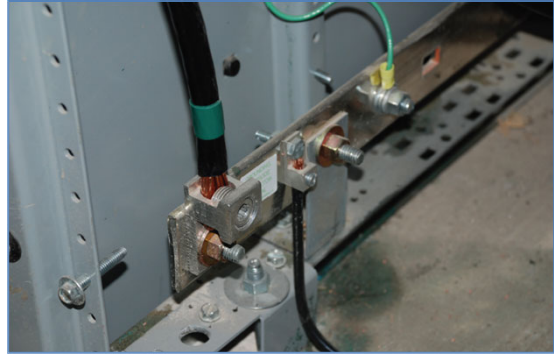
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

109

## 250.94 (B)

## REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

111

## 250.94 (B)

## REVISION

**Bonding for Communications Systems-Other Means****Change Summary**

- Section 250.94(B) was revised to clarify the requirement for the connection to a busbar, which is connected to the grounding electrode conductor. The conductor must be the larger of one of the following:
  - A conductor that is sized at least as large as the largest conductor connected to the busbar.
  - A 6 AWG conductor in accordance with 250.94(A)(4)

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

110

## 250.104 (C) &amp; (D)

## REVISION

**Bonding of Piping Systems and Exposed Struct. Metal****Change Summary**

- Changes were made in 250.104(C) to replace the vague language about conductors of "sufficient size" with a reference to Table 250.102(C)(1) to specify the size.
- Changes were made in 250.104(D)(3) to make it clear that the piping being referred to is metal water piping.
- Changes were also made to recognize that connections to grounding electrodes in the earth may be extended through portions of the pipe or structural electrodes that are above ground, provided the installation complies with 250.68(C).

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

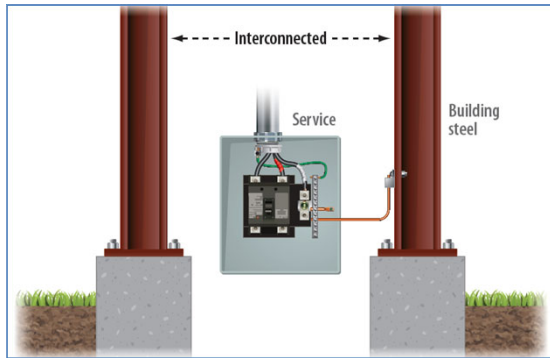
© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

112



## 250.104 (C) &amp; (D)

REVISION



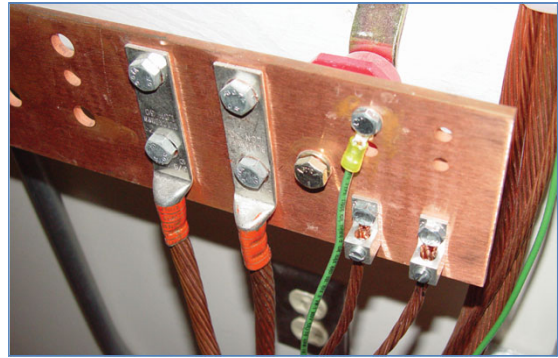
Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

113

## 250.118

REVISION



Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

115

## 250.118

REVISION

**Types of Equipment Grounding Conductors****Change Summary**

- Section 250.118, Types of Equipment Grounding Conductors, was reformatted into two subdivisions: (A) Permitted, and (B) Not Permitted.
- Section 250.118(A)(5)(f) and (A)(6)(f) were added for locations where there is a need for high resistance to corrosion. A stainless-steel core has a higher electrical resistance than other metals used in the construction of liquidtight flexible metal conduit. The bonding jumper can be internal or external to the liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- A requirement for a bonding jumper was also added to 250.118(A)(5)(e).

Chapter 2 • Articles 200-250

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

114

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-7 Significant Changes to the 2023 NEC Part B (Electrical Trades Center)

All certifications (10 hours in three sessions: 3.5 + 3.5 + 3)

# Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

## Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

### Provider Information

Name \*

Trent Parker

Organization

The Electrical Trades Center-

Email \*

parker@electricaltrades.org

Phone Number \*

(614) 463-5282

Address \*

947 GOODALE BLVD

City \*

COLUMBUS

State \*

OH

Zip Code \*

43212

Website

electricaltrades.org

Conference Sponsor (if applicable)

Conference Email

parker@electricaltrades.org

Check here if Course Renewal

Prior course number(s)' (i.e. BBS2018-429)

Renewals will only be granted for identical content and hours, within the current code cycle. Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required

### New Course Information

Course title

Significant Changes to the 2023 NEC PartB

Course instructor

Sam Cronk

Course description

This extensive and popular program analyzes the major changes to Chapters 3 and 4 of the 2023 NEC. Members of the twenty code-making panels contributed to the development of the authoritative text, which covers more than 400 of the most significant changes and includes interpretations by the group that enforces the NEC. This comprehensive course will provide users a solid understanding and application of the requirements contained in Chapters 3 and 4 of the 2023 NEC.

Instructional hours per session

3.5

Number of Sessions

3

Course Date

Course Location

947 Goodale Blvd. Columbus

Special Content

- Code Administration
- Existing Buildings
- Electrical Instruction
- Plumbing Instruction

Conference Course

Conference Name

Conference location

Course to be offered online?

- Yes
- No

On Demand

Webinar

Course Website

Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation):

Course applicable for the following certifications \*

- Residential Certifications Only
- Administrative Course, All Certifications
- Commercial and Residential Certifications

Application materials included \*

- Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives
- Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)
- Assessment Materials (for online courses)
- Presenter Bio
- Prior Course Approval Letter

Upload less than 100mb (Please attach PDF files only) \*

File Name	Size
<a href="#">OBBS PART B 2023.pdf</a>	7.51 MB

Applicant Full Name \*

Date of Submission

Instructions for new Continuing Education Approval form

**Provider Information**

1. Please include all contact information.
2. If course is not part of a conference, leave conference sponsor and email blank.

**Course Renewal**

1. Indicate if the course is being submitted for renewal. Include prior approval letter and write in prior course number.
2. Certification approval for courses has now changed: all existing courses being renewed will be approved within the new classification system.
  - a. Courses previously approved for only residential certifications will be approved for all residential certifications.
  - b. Courses previously approved for at least one commercial certification will now be approved for all commercial certifications and all residential certifications.
  - c. Courses on required instruction topics, Ohio Ethics, Code Administration and Existing Buildings, will be noted as Administrative Courses and be approved for all certifications.
3. Courses being renewed should skip the New Course information section and are not required to submit outline, agenda, slides or other instructional materials for review.

**Skip to Special Content, and mark any item that applies to the course.**

**New Course Information**

1. Enter course title, name of instructor, and a brief description of the course content.  
Learning objectives may be substituted for course description, if desired.
2. Number of instructional hours per session is the length of instructional time.
3. Number of sessions: can be 1 or the number of sessions planned.
4. Course date(s) and location: not necessary at this time, enter if known.

**Special Content**

1. Indicate if the course will meet instructional time in Code Administration or Existing Buildings.
2. Indicate if the course is a plumbing or electrical course, for ESIAC review and trainee course tracking.
3. If the course is associated with a conference, indicate the conference name and location, as this will allow BBS to coordinate approvals with the conference provider.
4. If the course will be offered online, specify whether it will be on demand or offered as a virtual webinar, or both. Include website where the course will be provided.



# **Significant Changes to the NEC 2023**

## **Part B**

### Syllabus

**Course Description:** This extensive and popular program analyzes the major changes to the *NEC*. Members of the twenty code-making panels contributed to the development of the authoritative text, which covers more than 400 of the most significant changes and includes interpretations by the group that enforces the *NEC*. This comprehensive course will provide users a solid understanding and application of the requirements contained in the 2023 *NEC*.

The course is a comprehensive analysis of the most important changes found in the Chapter's 3-4 of the 2023 *NEC*.

**Prerequisite:** None

**Required Material:** 2023 *NEC* Codebook  
Significant Changes to the *NEC* 2023 by the  
NJATC

## **Course Outline:**

### **Day 1 Chapter 3: Wiring Methods, Articles 300 – 358**

300 Wiring Methods and Materials

305 Systems Rated Over 1000V

312 Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures

314 Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes; Conduit Bodies;  
Fittings; and

Handhole Enclosures

315 Medium Voltage Conductors and Cables

342 Intermediate Metal Conduit: Type IMC

344 Rigid Metal Conduit: Type RMC

352 Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride Conduit; Type PVC

358 Electrical Metallic Cable: Type EMT

### **Day 2 Chapter 3: Wiring Methods, Articles 300 – 398 and Chapter 4: Equipment for General Use, Articles 400 – 410**

362 Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing: Type ENT

369 Insulated Bus Pipe: Type IBP

370 Cablebus

400 Portable Power Feeder Cables

404 Switches

406 Receptacles, Cord Connectors, and Attachment Plugs (Caps)

408 Switchboards, Switchgear, and Panelboards

409 Industrial Control Panels

410 Luminaires, Lampholders, and Lamps

## **Day 3: Chapter 4: Equipment for General Use, Articles 411 – 495**

411 Lighting Systems Operating at 30 Volts or Less and Lighting Equipment Connected

to Class-2 Power Sources

422 Appliances

424 Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment

430 Motors

440 AC & Refrigeration Equipment

445 Generators

450 Transformers and Transformer Vaults

460 Capacitors

480 Stationary Standby Batteries

498 Equipment Over 1000 V AC

**SAMUEL D. CRONK**  
459 NORTHWOODS DRIVE  
MARYSVILLE, OH 43040

937-642-9352 HOME • 937-266-9550 CELL • spanielhunter1@gmail.com

---

**EDUCATION:**

- ♦ **Lebanon High School** • Lebanon, VA • Honors Graduate 1985
- ♦ **Charleston Trident Technical College** • Charleston, SC • Programmable Logic Controllers

**PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE:**

**Assistant Building Official/Building Official** – November 2020- Present

Union County Building Department • 233 W 6<sup>th</sup> St. Marysville., OH 43040

**Building Compliance Manager** – July 2013 to November 2020

City of Columbus Dept of Building and Zoning Services • 757 Carolyn Ave, Columbus, OH 43224

**Electrical Inspection Field Supervisor** – November 2002 to July 2013

City of Columbus Dept of Building and Zoning Services • 757 Carolyn Ave, Columbus, OH 43224

**Electrical Inspector** – August 1998 to November 2002

City of Columbus Dept of Building and Zoning Services • 757 Carolyn Ave, Columbus, OH 43224

**Journeyman Wireman** – October 1996 to August 1998

Atlas Industrial Electric • 5275 Sinclair Road, Columbus, OH 43229 • 614-841-4500

**Electrical Estimator & Project Manager** – April 1994 to October 1996

MJB Electric • 804 Busch Court, Columbus, OH 43229 • 614-847-1952

**Electrician** – August 1985 to April 1994

**QUALIFICATIONS:**

- ♦ Extensive knowledge and experience with the interpretation and application of the National Electric Code as it applies to design and installation in industrial, commercial and housing applications.
- ♦ Considerable experience working with other professionals, such as engineers and contractors, within the electrical community as well as the general public and homeowners.
- ♦ Highly trained, multi-certified journeyman electrician skilled in all aspects of numerous electrical, alarm and signal systems, with 31 years of experience in positions requiring increasing responsibility and managerial skills.
- ♦ Superb ability to adapt quickly to changes in policy and procedures.
- ♦ Very organized with excellent communication skills.
- ♦ Respond well to pressure and consistently meet deadlines with a positive attitude

**TRADE ACHIEVEMENTS:**

Ohio Certified Building Official, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Residential Building Official, interim, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Building Inspector, interim, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Electrical Safety Inspector, PID# 303

Ohio Certified Electrical Plans Examiner, PID# 303

I.A.E.I. Electrical Code Instructor for the Central Ohio Division

ICC Analysis of the 2005 and 2008 NEC Code Changes Instructor

IBEW Certified Journey Wireman

Former South Carolina Certified Journeyman Wireman

Former Ohio Licensed Electrical Contractor

Former Columbus JATC Instructor (Local 683)

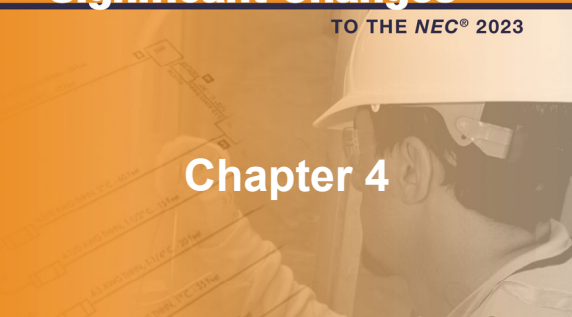
Former Columbus Public Schools Adult Community Education Instructor

**REFERENCES AVAILABLE UPON REQUEST**

# Significant Changes

TO THE NEC® 2023

## Chapter 4



electrical/training  
IBEW-NECA ALLIANCE IN COLLABORATION WITH NECA

1

## 400.40 through 400.52

**NEW** **REVISION**

### Portable Power Feeder Cables Over 2000 V, Nominal

#### Change Summary

- Article 400, Part III has a title change. It now covers portable cables of over 600 volts up to 2,000 volts.
- A new Part IV was added on portable power feeder cables over 2,000 volts, nominal.
- Portable power feeder cables can be used for connection of portable equipment and machinery or for wiring of cranes and hoists. Portable power feeder cables can also be used for temporary services and other temporary installations.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical/training ALLIANCE

2

## 400.40 through 400.52

**NEW** **REVISION**



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical/training ALLIANCE

3

## 404.1

**REVISION**

### Scope

#### Change Summary

- Article 404 applies to all switches, switching devices, and circuit breakers used as switches.
- Article 404 typically applies to switches operating at 1,000 volts or less but can apply to switches operating at higher voltages as specifically referenced elsewhere in the *Code*.
- There is a new generation of wireless control switches that are battery operated. These wireless switches are not covered by Article 404.
- An informational note was added that points to 210.70, which now has requirements that apply to wireless switches.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical/training ALLIANCE

4



## 404.1

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

5

## 404.14 &amp; 404.14 (D)

NEW REVISION

## Snap Switch Terminations

## Change Summary

- Section 404.14 has been revised to require that switches be listed and marked with their ratings.
- New 404.14(D) was added to provide requirements for conductors used on the terminals of switches based on the markings of the switches.
- Section 404.14(D)(3) also addresses the limited use of push-in terminals, which are restricted to 14 AWG copper conductors only.

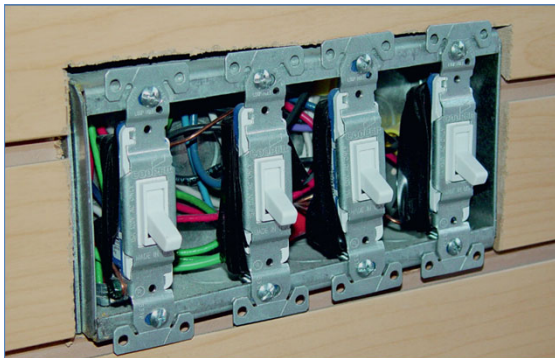
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

6

## 404.14 &amp; 404.14 (D)

NEW REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

7

## 404.16

NEW

## Reconditioned Equipment

## Change Summary

- Lighting, dimmer, and electronic control switches are not permitted to be reconditioned.
- Snap switches are an inexpensive and easily-replaceable item. Therefore, they are not permitted to be reconditioned.
- Knife switches, switches with butt contacts, and bolted pressure switches are permitted to be reconditioned.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

8

## 404.16

NEW



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Leviton

9

## 404.30

NEW

## Switch Enclosures with Doors

## Change Summary

- Doors of enclosures for switches that provide access to live parts when opened must be constructed so that either a tool or other approved means is necessary to open the door if the switch is in the closed position.
- A similar change was made in 690.13(A) and 690.15(A) during the 2020 cycle.
- This does not prohibit the use of a lock to prevent access.
- These changes are intended to restrict access by unqualified persons. The primary intent is to protect children.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

10

## 404.30

NEW



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

11

## 406.3

REVISION

## Receptacle Rating and Type

## Change Summary

- The title of 406.3(C) has been changed to CO/ALR Receptacles.
- Section 406.3(D) has been added to cover requirements for termination of conductors to receptacles.
- Push-in terminals are only listed for 14 AWG copper conductors and can only be used to connect receptacles on 15-ampere branch circuits.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

12

## 406.3

## REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

13

## 406.4

## REVISION

## General Installation Requirements

## Change Summary

- Section 406.4(D)(3) now requires replacement GFCI-type receptacles to be listed.
- Section 406.4(D)(5) provides requirements for replacement tamper-resistant receptacles. A tamper-resistant receptacle is not required if a non-grounding-type receptacle is replaced with another non-grounding-type receptacle. A tamper-resistant receptacle is also not required if a CO/ALR receptacle is replaced with another CO/ALR receptacle.
- Replacement receptacles must be provided with GFPE if required elsewhere in the Code.
- Floor receptacles must be protected in accordance with 406.4(G).

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

14

## 406.4

## REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

15

## 406.9

## REVISION

## Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations

## Change Summary

- Hinged covers of outlet box hoods in damp locations must be able to open at least 90° from the open to the closed position.
- If not designed to open 90°, it must be able to open fully.
- All receptacles in wet locations must be listed and identified as weather resistant.
- Other receptacles in wet locations that are attended while in use must be weatherproof with the attachment plug removed.
- The bathtub and shower space zones have been revised.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

16

## 406.9

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

17

## 406.12

REVISION

### Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

**Change Summary**

- Tamper-resistant receptacle requirements now include all dwelling units, boathouses, mobile homes, and manufactured homes, including their attached and detached garages.
- Requirements for tamper-resistant receptacles in medical facilities and other types of residential facilities have been revised and clarified.
- The exception has been clarified so that a tamper-resistant receptacle is not required for single receptacles that supply one appliance or duplex receptacles that are not readily accessible. The exception only applies if the receptacle is in the space designated for a specific appliance.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

18

## 406.12

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE Courtesy of Eaton Corporation

19

## 408.4

REVISION

### Descriptions Required

**Change Summary**

- The title of 408.4 has been changed from "Field Identification" to "Descriptions Required."
- Every circuit and circuit modification is required to be legibly and permanently described with its clear, evident, and specific purpose or use.
- All switchboards, switchgear, and panelboards supplied by a feeder in other than one- and two-family dwellings must be marked to indicate the location of the power source.

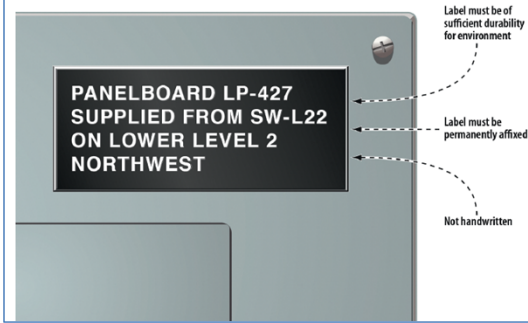
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

20

## 408.4

## REVISION

feeder supplied switchboard, switchgear and panelboards in other than dwelling must be marked to indicate the source.



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

21

## 408.9

## NEW

## Replacement Panelboards

## Change Summary

- A new 408.9 has been added to provide requirements for replacement panelboards.
- Panelboards listed for the specific enclosure are permitted to maintain their short-circuit current rating.
- Panelboards not listed for the specific enclosure with fault current over 10,000 amperes require field labeling. If fault current is less than 10,000 amperes, any previous listing marks must be removed.

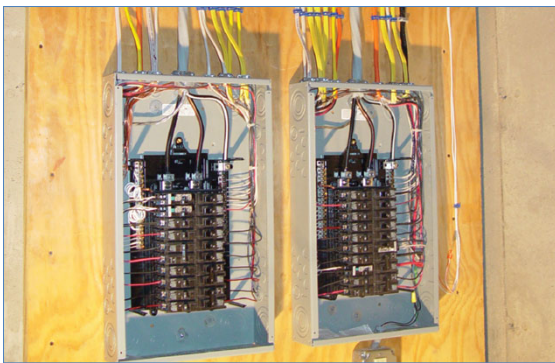
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

22

## 408.9

## NEW



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

23

## 408.43

## REVISION

## Panelboard Orientation

## Change Summary

- The 2020 *Code* prohibited panelboards from being installed in the face-up position because it created an unsafe working position and increased the likelihood that debris could accumulate in the panelboard.
- The requirement has also been modified for the 2023 *Code* to prohibit installation in the face-down position.
- Installation in a face-down position introduces working space concerns. Working on the panelboard would be awkward, increasing the likelihood of injury during an arc flash or arc blast incident.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

24



## 408.43

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

25

## 409.60

REVISION

**Bonding****Change Summary**

- Section 409.60 has been retitled "Bonding" and has been reorganized into list format for clarity.
- Section 409.60(A), "Grounding," requires an EGC sized in accordance with 250.122 to be connected to an equipment grounding bus or equipment grounding termination point provided in a single-section industrial control panel.
- Section 409.60(B) requires multisection industrial control panels to be bonded together using a bonding jumper sized in accordance with 250.102(D).

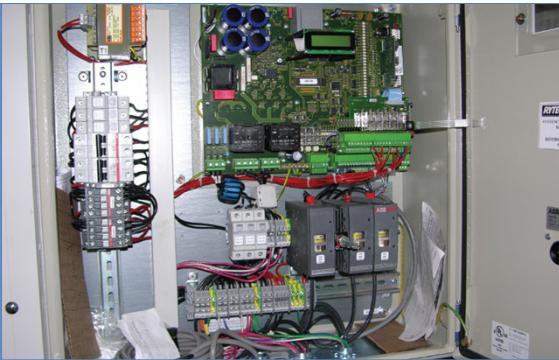
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

26

## 409.60

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

27

## 409.70

NEW

**Surge Protection****Change Summary**

- A new Section 409.70 has been added to require surge protection for safety circuits for personnel protection.
- A survey of facility managers in 2013 and 2014 by the Fire Protection Research Foundation found that 26% of safety circuits that were intended to protect personnel had surge damage.
- It was also found that 40% of the surges in industrial facilities were from causes within the plant rather than lightning-caused surges.


Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

28

## 409.70

**NEW**



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

29

## 409.110

**REVISION**

### Marking

#### Change Summary

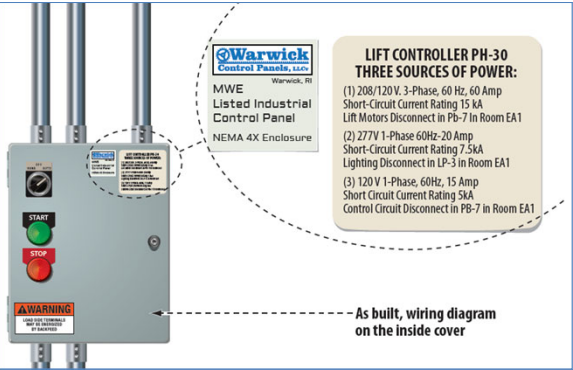
- The marking requirements for industrial control panels have been clarified.
- The voltage, number of phases, and full-load current are required to be marked on the exterior of the enclosure for each supply circuit.
- If the industrial control panel is supplied by multiple sources of supply with multiple disconnecting means, the location of all sources exceeding 50 volts is required to be marked on the exterior.
- The other required markings must be inside or outside of the enclosure.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

30

## 409.110

**REVISION**



**Warwick Control Panels, Inc.**  
Warwick, RI

MWE Listed Industrial Control Panel  
NEMA 4X Enclosure

**LIFT CONTROLLER PH-30**  
**THREE SOURCES OF POWER:**

(1) 208/120 V, 3-Phase, 60 Hz, 60 Amp  
Short-Circuit Current Rating 15 kA  
Lift Motors Disconnect in PB-7 in Room EA1

(2) 277V 1-Phase 60Hz-20 Amp  
Short-Circuit Current Rating 7.5kA  
Lighting Disconnect in LP-5 in Room EA1

(3) 120 V 1-Phase, 60Hz, 15 Amp  
Short Circuit Current Rating 5kA  
Control Circuit Disconnect in PB-7 in Room EA1

As built, wiring diagram on the inside cover

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

31

## 410.42

**REORGANIZE**

### Luminaires with Exposed Conductive Surfaces

#### Change Summary

- Section 410.42 was reorganized into a main rule that requires exposed conductive surfaces of a luminaire to be connected to an equipment grounding conductor.
- An exception covers parts that do not require an EGC connection, including:
  - Surfaces that are separated by a listed system of double insulation.
  - Small, isolated parts such as screws, clips, and bands that are separated by at least 1 ½ inches from terminals.
  - Portable luminaires with polarized attachment plugs.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

32

# 410.42

**REORGANIZE**



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

33

# 410.71

**REVISION RELOCATE**

## Disconnecting Means-Fluorescent or LED Luminaires

### Change Summary

- Section 410.130(G)(1) was moved into a new 410.71.
- The requirement has been expanded to include LED luminaire drivers that utilize double-ended lamps.
- LED luminaires are more energy-efficient but can still pose the same shock and electrocution hazards to workers.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

34

# 410.71

**REVISION RELOCATE**



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE Courtesy of Tom Garvey and Michael J. Johnston

35

# 410.190 through 197

**NEW**

## Provisions for Germicidal Irradiation Luminaires

### Change Summary

- A new Part XVII on germicidal radiation luminaires has been added to Article 410.
- Luminaires intended to emit germicidal radiation are required to be listed.
- Germicidal radiation luminaires must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- Germicidal luminaires are not permitted in dwellings, unless listed and identified for dwellings.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

36

## 410.190 through 197

NEW



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

37

## Article 422

DELETION REORGANIZE

## Appliances

## Change Summary

- Several sections in Article 422 were deleted because they were unnecessary for field applications.
- Section 422.6 requires that all appliances be listed. This eliminated the need for Sections 422.3 and 422.4.
- Sections 422.15 and 422.46 were deleted because they do not address unique field installation problems.
- Section 422.23 was deleted because it provides a redundant reference to the special permission requirement in 90.3.
- The flexible cord requirements in 422.43 were consolidated with other flexible cord requirements in 422.16(A).

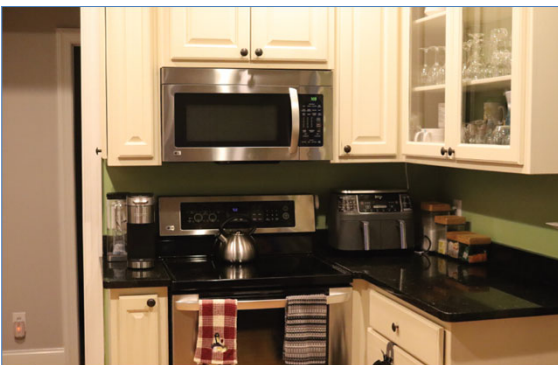
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

38

## Article 422

DELETION REORGANIZE



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

39

## 422.18

REVISION

## Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans

## Change Summary

- 422.18(A)(1) was revised to clarify that listed outlet boxes or outlet box systems must be identified for fan support.
- 422.18(A)(2) was revised to use the new terms for weight-supporting ceiling receptacle and weight-supporting attachment fitting.
- 422.18(B) was added to prohibit metal parts of paddle fans from being located within three feet horizontally and eight feet vertically from the top of a bathtub rim or shower threshold.

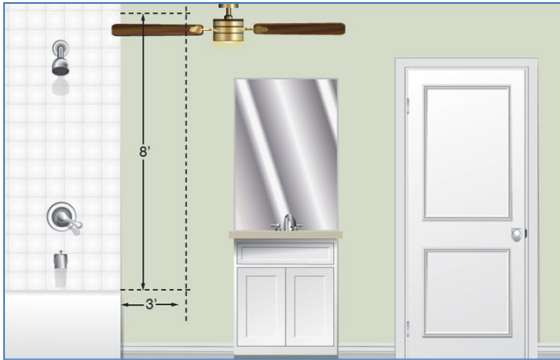
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

40

## 422.18

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

41

## 424.48

NEW

## Installation of Cables in Walls

## Change Summary

- Section 424.48 recognizes a new heating system that consists of heating cable sets or heating panel sets that can be installed in, on, or behind walls.
- Heating cables and cable sets are required to be GFCI and AFCI protected.
- Heating cables and cable sets are not permitted more than four feet above the floor.

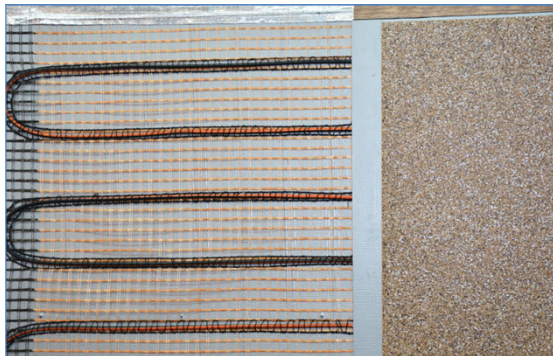
Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

42

## 424.48

NEW



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

43

## 430.1

REVISION

## Scope

## Change Summary

- Informational Note Figure 430.1 was revised to make it more useful. The table above the figure remains unchanged.
- For consistency, section numbers were removed from the figure.
- Blocks were added to the diagram indicating feeder overcurrent protection, motor controller disconnecting means, motor branch-circuit conductors, local motor branch-circuit disconnecting means (moved), and grounding.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

44



## 430.1

## REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

45

## 430.6

## REVISION

## Conductor Ampacity and Motor Rating Determination

## Change Summary

- For most general applications, the current values used for determining the ampacity of conductors, the ampere rating of switches, and the ampere rating of branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection are based on table values from Article 430, Part IV.
- New 430.6(A)(2)(3) was added to permit the use of nameplate current ratings for motors that exceed the motor sizes in Part XIV.
- Section 430.6 was changed into list format to make it easier to use.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

46

## 430.6

## REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

47

## 430.52 (C)

## REVISION

## Rating or Setting

## Change Summary

- Section 430.52(C)(3) was revised to recognize the higher available inrush current that is available for Design B premium efficiency motors that are protected by an instantaneous-trip circuit breaker.
- Section 430.52(C)(6) was revised to recognize the higher inrush current for Design B premium efficiency motors supplied by a self-protected combination motor controller.
- Design B premium efficiency motors have been mandated in new federal energy efficiency regulations. Design B and Design B premium efficiency motors have high inrush currents because they are low-impedance equipment.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

48

## 430.52 (C)

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

49

## 430.83 (F)

NEW

## Ratings

## Change Summary

- The new 430.83(F) prohibits installing a motor controller on a circuit where the motor controller's short-circuit current rating is exceeded.
- Section 430.8 generally requires motor controllers to be marked with their short-circuit current ratings.
- Section 110.20 requires the equipment short-circuit current ratings and other characteristics of the circuit to be selected and coordinated to permit the circuit protective devices to clear faults without extensive damage to the electrical equipment.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

50

## 430.83 (F)

NEW



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

51

## 440.8

REVISION

## Single Machine and Location

## Change Summary

- Air-conditioning and refrigeration equipment is prohibited from being installed within three feet horizontally and eight feet vertically above a bathtub rim or shower threshold, including the space directly above the shower or tub.
- This requirement primarily affects the installation of mini-split air-conditioning system evaporators.
- Bathrooms are typically very small rooms. A change in bathroom configuration may be necessary to accommodate the equipment of this type of system.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

52

## 440.8

## REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

53

## 440.22 (A)

## REVISION

## Rating or Setting for Individual Motor-Compressor

## Change Summary

- Section 440.22(A) was revised by splitting the last sentence and creating two new exceptions. The existing exception became Exception No. 3.
- The first exception addresses installations where the determined value of branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection does not correspond with the standard sizes of OCPDs.
- The second exception permits the value of an OCPD to be increased in size to as much as 225% if the motor will not start.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

54

## 440.22 (A)

## REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

55

## 445.6

## REVISION

## Listing

## Change Summary

- Previously, stationary generators rated 600 volts or less were required to be listed.
- This section now requires all generators to be listed. However, one-of-a-kind custom manufactured generators are permitted to be field labeled.
- UL 2200, Stationary Generator Assemblies, now also covers medium-voltage generators.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

56

## 445.6

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

57

## 445.11

REVISION

## Marking

## Change Summary

- The generator marking requirements were clarified.
- This criterion is needed to ascertain the performance characteristics of the generator and to establish the overcurrent protective device settings.
- A new requirement was added that prohibits mounting equipment on the generator assembly that conceals or obscures the generator nameplate.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

58

## 445.11

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

59

## 445.18 &amp; 445.19

NEW REVISION

## Disconnecting Means

## Change Summary

- Section 445.18 was divided into two sections. Section 445.18 addresses disconnecting means, and new Section 445.19 addresses emergency shutdown of the prime mover.
- Section 445.18(B) was revised to clarify the need for the ability to isolate the generator output terminals from the paralleling system bus.
- A labeling requirement was added to identify the generator emergency shutdown.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

60

## 445.18 &amp; 445.19

NEW REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

61

## 450.43 (C)

REVISION

## Accessibility

## Change Summary

- The title of 450.43(C) was changed from “Locks” to “Accessibility.”
- Transformer vault doors are required to open in the direction of egress. This has been modified to require that the door be capable of opening at least 90°.
- Similar changes for a 90° opening of egress doors have been implemented in 110.26(C), 110.33(A)(3), and 480.10(E).

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

62

## 450.43 (C)

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

63

## 460.24 (A)

REVISION

## Load Current

## Change Summary

- Switches used to switch capacitive loads on circuits over 1,000 volts, nominal, shall be specifically rated for the switching of capacitive loads.
- Switches are often evaluated for switching inductive loads, but not capacitive loads.
- Capacitive loads can generate recovery voltages of two to three times the rated system voltage, which can cause external equipment flashovers, rupture of capacitors, and damage to surge protective devices.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

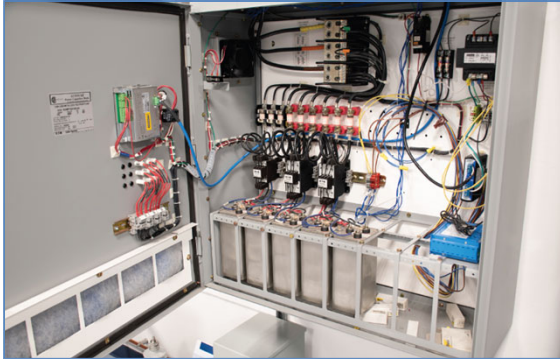
© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

64



## 460.24 (A)

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Eaton

65

## Article 480

REVISION

## Stationary Standby Batteries

## Change Summary

- The title of Article 480 has been changed from “Storage Batteries” to “Stationary Standby Batteries.”
- The scope of Article 480 has been revised to limit it to stationary batteries exceeding one kilowatt-hour.
- A new Informational Note No. 1 points to Article 706 for batteries that do not meet the definition of stationary storage batteries.
- A reference was added in Informational Note No. 2 to point to *NFPA 855*, which is a fire protection standard for energy storage systems.
- *NFPA 111: Stored Energy Systems* also covers battery installations.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

66

## Article 480

REVISION



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

67

## Article 495

REVISION RELOCATE

## Equipment Over 1000 Volts ac, 1500 Volts dc, Nominal

## Change Summary

- Article 490 has been relocated to become Article 495. The scope now covers equipment operating at more than 1,000 volts ac or 1,500 volts dc, nominal.
- Requirements for motors, capacitors, resistors, and reactors remain in Articles 430, 460, and 470, respectively.
- Requirements for transformers remain in Article 450. Moving those requirements may be warranted in the future.

Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

68

# Article 495

REVISION RELOCATE



Chapter 4 • Articles 400-495 © 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

# Significant Changes

TO THE NEC® 2023

## Chapter 3

electrical/training ALLIANCE IN COLLABORATION WITH NECA

1

## Article 300

REORGANIZE / NEW

### Limitations

### Change Summary

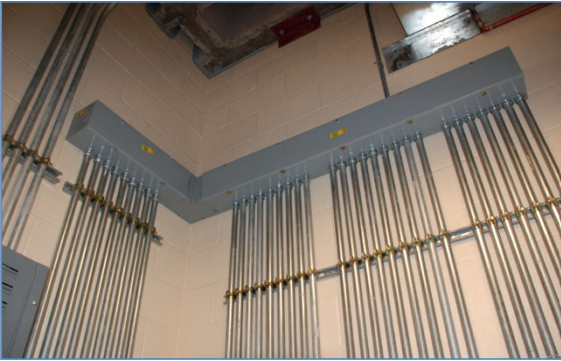
- Article 300 was reorganized to limit it to systems rated 1,000 volts ac, nominal, or less and 1,500 volts dc, nominal, or less.
- Medium- and high-voltage requirements have been moved to the new Article 305.
- This is the first cycle that 1,500 volts dc has been established as a limit.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308 © 2023 electrical/training ALLIANCE

2

## Article 300

REORGANIZE / NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308 © 2023 electrical/training ALLIANCE Courtesy of Bill McGovern, City of Plano, TX

3

## 300.2 & 300.3

REVISION

### Limitations

### Change Summary

- Section 300.2 has added a voltage limitation for dc systems that are covered by Article 300.
- Chapter 3 wiring methods apply to systems operating at 1,000 volts ac or less or 1,500 volts dc or less.
- Chapter 3 wiring methods are only permitted on systems operating over 1,000 volts ac and 1,500 volts dc if specifically permitted elsewhere in the Code.
- The scope of Article 305 states that it applies to installations exceeding 1,000 volts ac or exceeding 1,500 volts dc.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308 © 2023 electrical/training ALLIANCE

4

## 300.2 &amp; 300.3

## REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of PDE Total Energy Solutions

5

## 300.4 (E)

## REVISION

## Cables, Raceways, or Boxes Under Metal Decking

## Change Summary

- Section 300.4(E) will now only apply to installations beneath metal-corrugated roof decking.
- Exception No. 1 was revised to recognize that listed steel or malleable metal fittings and boxes provide protection from nail penetration.
- A new exception was added for corrugated roof decks that have a minimum 2-inch slab installed over the corrugated metal roof deck.

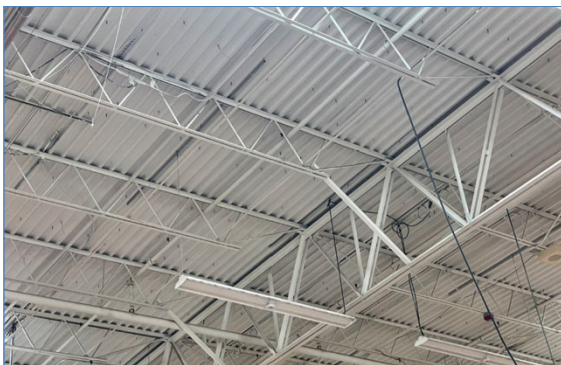
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

6

## 300.4 (E)

## REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

7

## 300.7 (B)

## NEW

## Expansion, Expansion-Deflection, Deflection Fittings

## Change Summary

- Section 300.7(B) requires raceways to be provided with expansion-deflection or deflection fittings where necessary to compensate for expansion, deflection, and contraction.
- Failure to provide these fittings can result in damage to the installation.
- Informational Note No. 1 provides references to tables that provide expansion information. It also provides information on the rate of expansion.
- A new informational note was added that references NEMA FB 2.40, *Installation Guidelines for Expansion and Expansion/Deflection Fittings*.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

8

## 300.7 (B)

NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of ABB Inc.

9

## 300.15

REVISION

**Boxes, Conduit Bodies, or Fittings – Where Required****Change Summary**

- Section 300.15 was clarified to indicate that a box or conduit body is required at conductor splice, termination, junction, and pull points.
- Wording was added to indicate that boxes or conduit bodies are required at “wiring method transition points,” which indicates a change in wiring method.
- Section 300.15(G) was revised to clarify that it also applies to direct-buried cables in addition to direct-buried conductors.

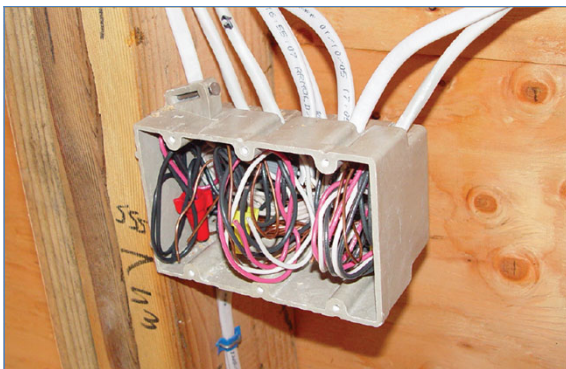
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

10

## 300.15

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

11

## 300.25 &amp; Exception

REVISION

**Exit Enclosures (Stair Towers)****Change Summary**

- Many buildings have exit enclosures (stair towers) to protect personnel who need to exit during a fire. These are often supported independently of the building.
- Exit enclosures that are required to have a fire rating must be served only by wiring methods serving equipment that is permitted by the AHJ to be in the stair tower.
- Luminaires for the exterior lighting of exit doors of exit enclosures are permitted to be supplied by a circuit that supplies the inside of the exit enclosure.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

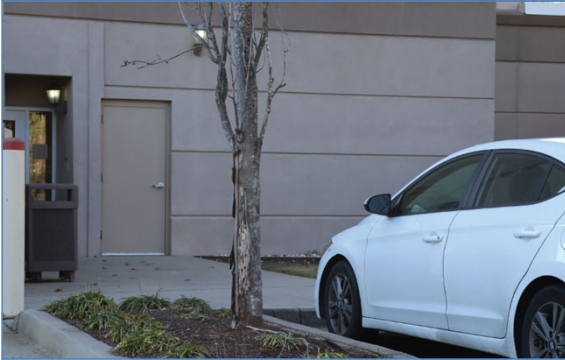
© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

12



## 300.25 & Exception

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

13

## 300.26

NEW

### Remote-Control and Signaling Circuits Classification

#### Change Summary

- The scope of Article 725 has been changed, requiring this clarification.
- Class 2 and 3 power-limited remote-control and signaling circuits remain in Article 725.
- Class 1 power-limited remote-control and signaling circuits were relocated to the new Article 724.
- Non-power-limited remote-control and signaling circuits are governed by the requirements of Chapters 1 through 4 of the Code.

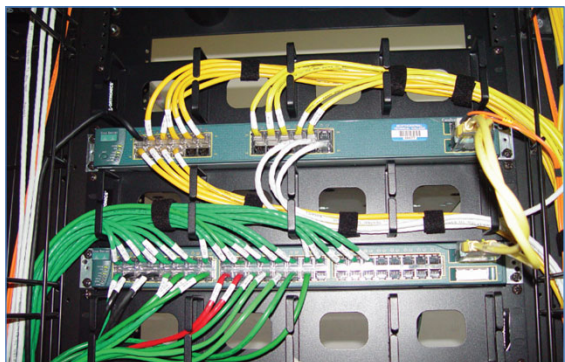
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

14

## 300.26

NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

15

## Article 305

NEW

### Systems Rated Over 1000 V ac, 1500 V dc, Nominal

#### Change Summary

- Article 305 has been created to separate the requirements for medium-voltage systems from the requirements of systems rated 1,000 volts ac or less and 1,500 volts dc or less.
- The bulk of Article 305 came from Part II of Article 300.
- Section 305.3 references the wiring methods permitted to be used over 1,000 volts ac and 1,500 volts dc.
- Requirements for services, feeders, and branch circuits for systems rated over 1,000 volts ac and over 1,500 volts dc are found in Article 235.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

16

## Article 305

**NEW**



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

17

## 312.8

**NEW**

### Splices, Taps, and Feed-Through Conductors

#### Change Summary

- A new 312.8(A)(3) has been added to recognize the additional bending space needed for conductors 4 AWG and larger.
- Where splices or where angle or U pulls are made with insulated conductors, 314.28(A)(2) requires the distance between the raceway and the opposite wall to be at least six times the largest trade size in a row.
- The six times rule also applies to straight-through conduit entries if the conductors are spliced.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

18

## 312.8

**NEW**



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Tom Garvey

19

## 312.10

**NEW**

### Screws or Other Fasteners

#### Change Summary

- Screws and other fasteners installed in the field that enter the wiring space are required to be those provided by or specified by the manufacturer.
- If not supplied or specified by the manufacturer, this section provides three criteria that can be used, where applicable.
- An exception allows screws that enter to extend into the enclosure not more than 7/16 inch if located within 3/8 inch of an enclosure wall.
- A similar requirement was added for screws and fasteners in 314.5.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

20

## 312.10

NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston

21

## 314.5

NEW

## Screws or Other Fasteners

## Change Summary

- New requirements for screws and other fasteners have been added to 314.5. Screws and other fasteners are required to have blunt ends.
- Specific requirements are provided for the permitted length, based on where in the box the screw or fastener is used.
- Longer screws are permitted where protected with an approved means.

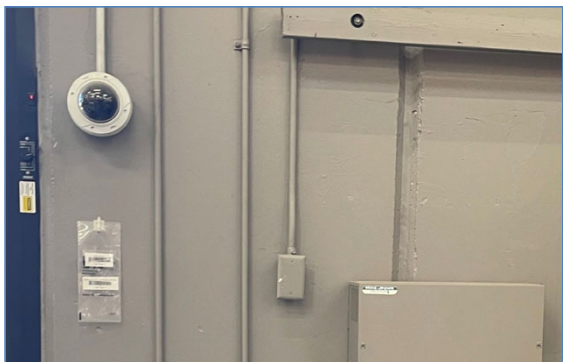
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

22

## 314.5

NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

23

## 314.16 (B)

REVISION

## Box Fill Calculations

## Change Summary

- The second paragraph of 314.16(B)(2) was deleted because the product line that it was intended for is not being produced.
- Equipment bonding jumpers were removed for the conductor fill calculation requirements in 314.16(B)(5). The panel concluded that if equipment bonding jumpers are run within raceways, they are considered an expansion of the equipment grounding conductor.
- 314.16(B)(6) was added to require a single volume allowance for a terminal block assembly based on the largest conductor terminated to the assembly.

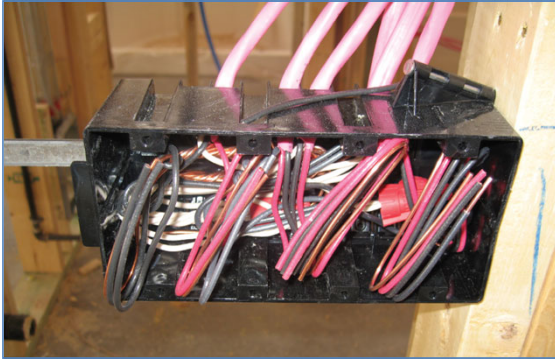
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

24

## 314.16 (B)

## REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

25

## 314.24

## REVISION

## Dimensions of Boxes

## Change Summary

- The title of 314.24 has been changed from “depth of boxes” to “dimensions of boxes” to recognize that this section deals with more than depth.
- The rearward projection of devices or equipment must not be greater than the center line of a knockout used for a side wiring entrance or a ½-inch clearance must be maintained between the device and the sidewall of the box.
- Where wiring enters the center portion of the rear of a box opposite the equipment, the minimum clearance must be increased to ½ inch.

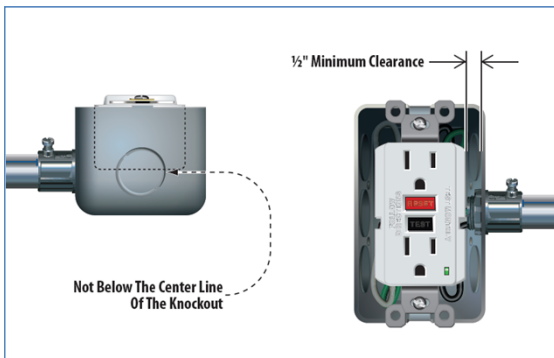
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

26

## 314.24

## REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

27

## 314.25

## REVISION

## Covers and Canopies

## Change Summary

- Section 314.25 was revised to clarify that conduit body enclosures must be enclosed by a cover, a lampholder, or a device.
- Like boxes, conduit bodies can contain splices, terminations, and devices. Therefore, conduit bodies should also be covered.
- The language in 314.25(A) and the informational note were revised to clarify that they apply to equipment grounding conductors.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2012 electrical training ALLIANCE

28

## 314.25

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

29

## 314.27 (C) &amp; (E)

REVISION

**Outlet Boxes, Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle Fans)****Change Summary**

- Outlet boxes used as the sole support of ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans are now required to be marked on the inside of the box so that the marking can be seen during a rough-in inspection.
- 314.27(C)(2) was simplified to recognize boxes that provide direct access through the box to structural framing capable of supporting a paddle fan, without the need to remove the box.
- The locking support and locking receptacle and the compatible attachment fitting have been renamed as "weight-supporting ceiling receptacle" and "weight-supporting attachment fitting."

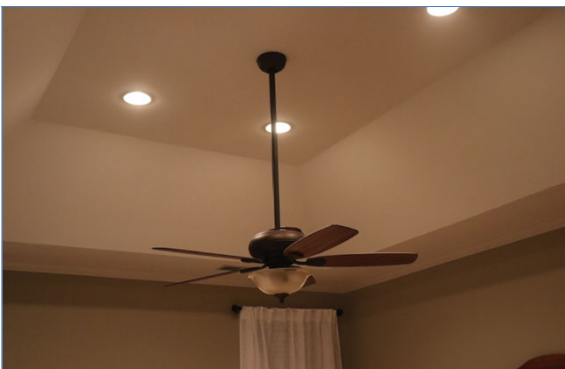
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

30

## 314.27 (C) &amp; (E)

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

31

## Article 315

REVISION RELOCATE

**Medium Voltage Conductors and Cables****Change Summary**

- Article 311 has been relocated to become Article 315, consistent with the numbering scheme for medium-voltage articles.
- The title and scope of Article 315 have been expanded to include cable joints and cable terminations.
- The scope of this article for dc cables is limited to cables rated 2,001 through 2,500 volts.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

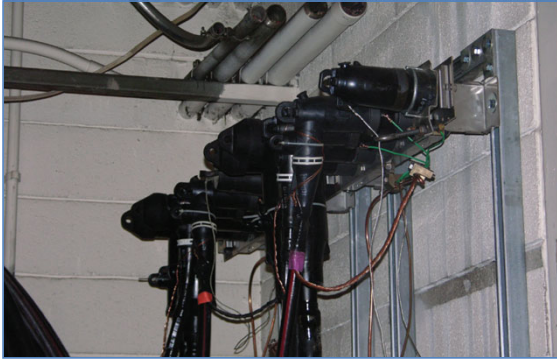
© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

32



## Article 315

REVISION RELOCATE



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

33

## 342.24

REVISION REORGANIZE

### Bends

#### Change Summary

- Sections 342.24 and 342.26 have been combined into a 342.24, Bends.
- This now clarifies the total degrees of bends between pull points.
- Since Chapter 3 articles follow the same format, the same change was made in Article 344, 348, 350, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 358, 360, and 362.

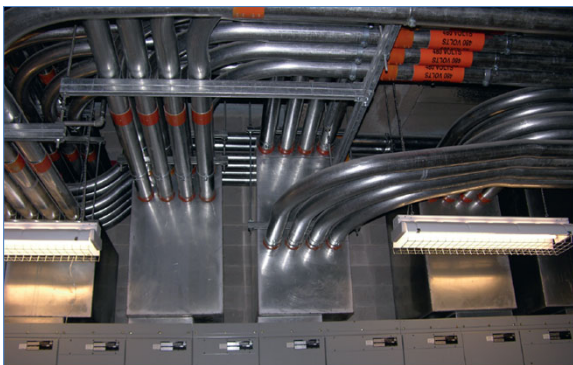
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

34

## 342.24

REVISION REORGANIZE



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

35

## 342.30 (A)

NEW

### Securing and Supporting

#### Change Summary

- Section 342.30(A) requires intermediate metal conduit (IMC) to be securely fastened.
- A new exception permits IMC in concealed work to be fished in finished buildings or in prefinished wall panels where secure fastening is impractical.
- This exception only applies to unbroken lengths of IMC without couplings in the concealed space.

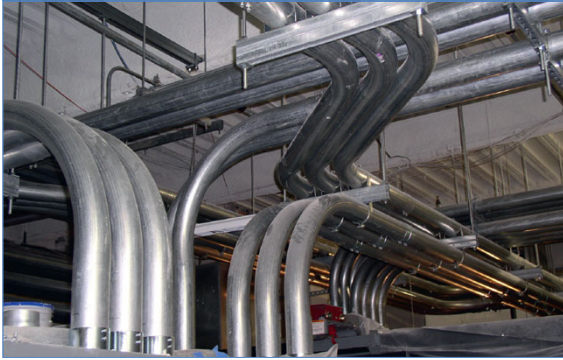
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

36

## 342.30 (A)

NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

37

## 344.28

REVISION

## Reaming and Threading

## Change Summary

- PVC-coated RMC is often used in areas subject to corrosion.
- New text was added to this section to require that the manufacturer's instructions be followed when threading PVC-coated RMC to prevent damage to the exterior coating.
- A new informational note was added that references NECA 101, *Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (RMC, IMC, EMT)*, which provides information on threading PVC-coated RMC.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

38

## 344.28

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Corrosion College

39

## 352.10

REVISION REORGANIZE

## Insert Uses Permitted

## Change Summary

- The uses permitted for PVC conduit have been clarified.
- PVC conduit is permitted to be embedded in concrete.
- Exposure to physical damage requirements have been removed from 352.10(G) and moved to the new 352.10(K), Physical Damage.
- Where subject to physical damage, Schedule 80 PVC conduit, along with listed Schedule 80 PVC conduit fittings, must be used.

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

40

## 352.10

REVISION REORGANIZE



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michael J. Johnston and Tom Garvey

41

## 358.10

REVISION

## Uses Permitted

## Change Summary

- Section 358.10 was revised to recognize two new permitted uses for EMT.
- EMT is permitted in direct burial applications where it is used with fittings that are identified for direct burial.
- EMT is recognized for manufactured wiring systems as permitted in 604.100(A)(2).

Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

42

## 358.10

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

Courtesy of Michel J. Johnston

43

## 362.10

REVISION

## Uses Permitted

## Change Summary

- Section 362.10(2) was revised to clarify that ENT is permitted to be installed in combustible or noncombustible buildings where the walls, floors, and ceilings meet the finish rating.
- The mandatory reference to *NFPA 13* was changed to an informational note reference.
- Section 362.10(6) was split into two sections to separate requirement for installations in poured concrete floors, ceilings, walls, and slabs from those where the ENT is embedded in concrete slabs.

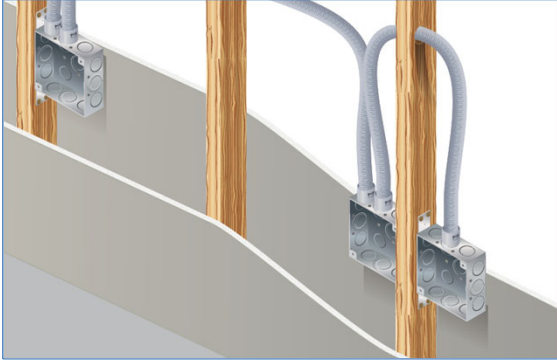
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2022 electrical training ALLIANCE

44

## 362.10

REVISION



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

45

## Article 369

NEW

## Insulated Bus Pipe (IBP)/Tubular Covered Conductors

## Change Summary

- The new Article 369 covers Insulated Bus Pipe (Type IBP).
- IBP is a cylindrical solid or hollow conductor with a solid insulation system having conductive grading layers and a grounding layer embedded in the insulation that is provided with an overall insulation or metallic material. It is permitted for up to 35 kV.
- IBP is required to be listed.
- IBP is permitted to be used in wet or damp locations when listed for wet or damp locations.
- IBP must not be accessible to unqualified persons.

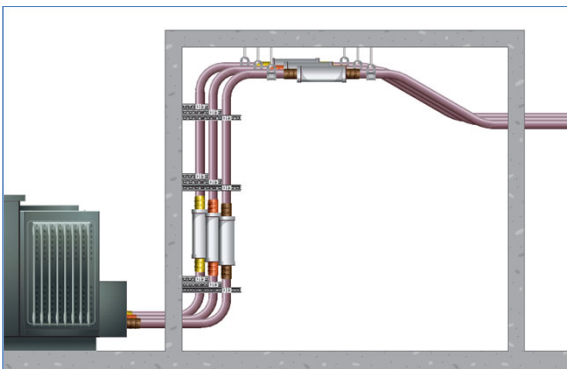
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

46

## Article 369

NEW



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

47

## 370.18

REVISION

## Cablebus Installation

## Change Summary

- Cablebus installation requirements have been simplified.
- Cablebus is permitted to be run through fire walls in accordance with 300.21.
- Since cablebus is a support system, similar to cable trays, the firestop requirements now refer to 300.21.
- The previous requirement for curbs where cablebus penetrates floors has been removed because cablebus is permitted in wet locations.

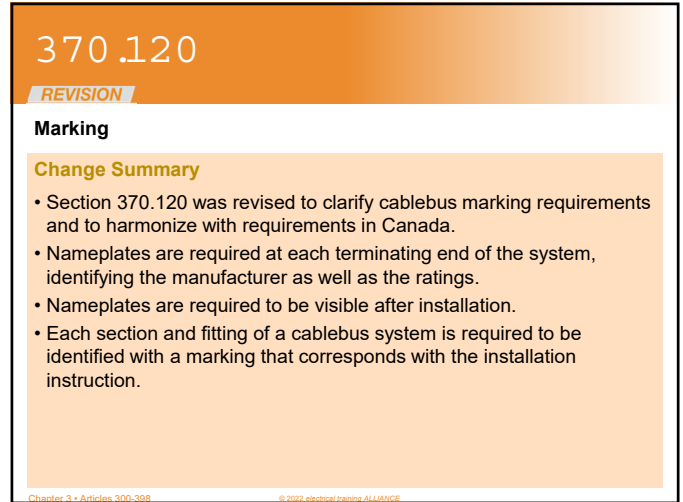
Chapter 3 • Articles 300-308

© 2002 electrical training ALLIANCE

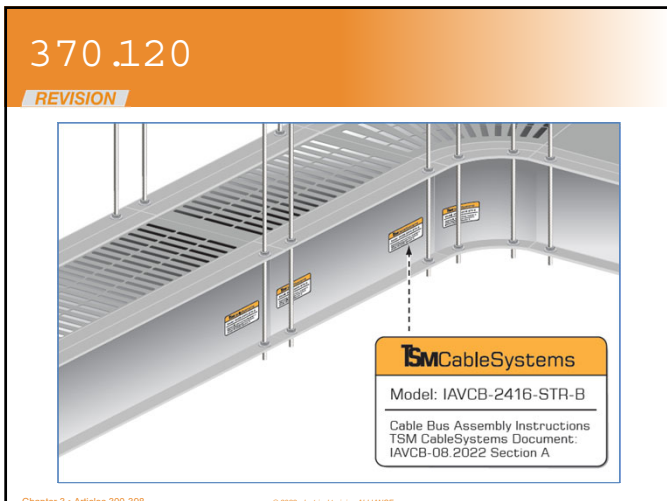
48



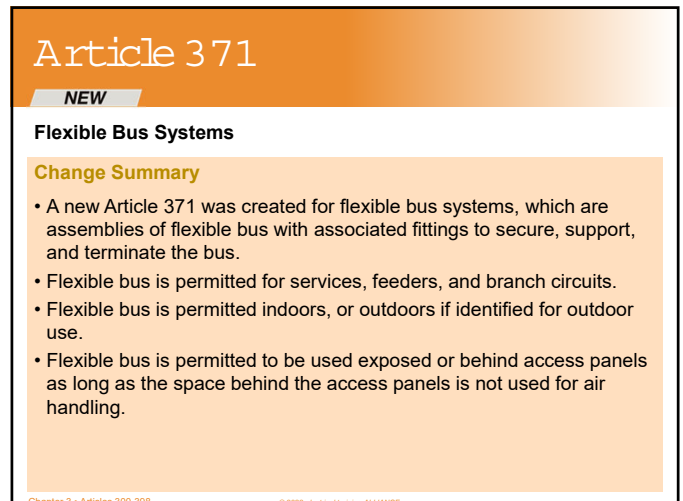
49



50



51



52



# Article 371

**NEW**



Chapter 3 • Articles 300-398

© 2021 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

Courtesy of Ward Judson, nVent

**File Attachments for Item:**

EC-8 Transformers 2023 NEC Article 450 (Ohio Certificate Renewal)

All certifications (4 hours)

### Application for Continuing Education Course Approval

**Provider Information:**

Name: Harold L. Plant  
Organization: Ohio Certificate Renewal  
Address: P.O. Box 211102, Columbus, Ohio 43221  
E-mail: mayda@ohiocertificate.com and Hal@ohiocertificate.com Telephone: 614-451-9003  
Website: ohiocertificate.com  
Conference Sponsor (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**Check here if Course Renewal:** \_\_\_\_\_ Prior course number \_\_\_\_\_ (i.e. BBS2018-429)  
*Renewals will only be granted for identical content and certifications, within the current code cycle.  
Attach a copy of prior course approval letter for confirmation. No further information is required.*

**New Course Information:**

Course title: Transformers 2023 NEC Article 450  
Course instructor: J.D. White  
Course description: This course provides a concise overview of transformer theory, including the components and functioning of a transformer. It explains the importance of transformers compared to other voltage modifiers, as well as primary and secondary isolation. The course covers installation locations and various connection methods, sizing, KVA, and calculations will be discussed.  
Instructional hours per session: 4 Number of Sessions: \_\_\_\_\_  
Course Date(s) and Location: 12/6/2023 webinar, online (TBD) and in-person (TBD)

**Special Content:**

Code Administration:  \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Course: \_\_\_\_\_  
Existing Buildings:  \_\_\_\_\_ Conference Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Electrical Instruction:  \_\_\_\_\_ Conference location: \_\_\_\_\_  
Plumbing Instruction:  \_\_\_\_\_

Course to be offered online?  **On Demand**  **Webinar**

Course Website: ohiocertificate.com  
Detail online course participation confirmation method (i.e. test, quizlets, participant activity confirmation):  
live proctor audio/visual confirmation or quizlets, activity confirmation

**Course applicable for the following certifications**

Residential Certifications Only:  \_\_\_\_\_ Commercial Certifications:  \_\_\_\_\_  
Administrative Course, All Certifications:  \_\_\_\_\_

**Application materials included:**

- Course Outline or Course Learning Objectives
- Presentation Materials/Slides (not required for roundtable courses)
- Assessment Materials (for online courses)
- Presenter Bio

Please submit application and materials in .pdf format to: [michael.lane@com.ohio.gov](mailto:michael.lane@com.ohio.gov) or [BBS@com.ohio.gov](mailto:BBS@com.ohio.gov)

## Ohio Certificate Renewal

(614) 451-9003

OhioCertificate.com

P.O. Box 211102 Columbus, Ohio 43221-1102



Ohio Certificate Renewal  
"Since 1994"

## Transformers 2023 NEC Article 450

### Transformer Theory:

- Know what's in the box
- How they work
- Magnetic Induction
- Turns Ratio

### Reason for Transformers verses other Voltage Modifiers:

- Available Voltage
- Needed Voltage
- Primary and Secondary Isolation

### Installation Locations:

- When set on Floors
- When elevated and set overhead
- In Building Voids, such as suspended ceilings

### Connections:

- Primary Windings 1Ph & 3Ph
- Primary means other than higher voltage
  - Primary Voltage Adjustment Taps
- Secondary Windings 1Ph & 3Ph
- Creating and connecting to Grounded Phase 1Ph & 3Ph

### Sizing Transformers:

- Calculation of Connected Load
- Sizing KVA of Transformer
- Sizing of Primary and Secondary OCP Device

### Calculations:

- Using Square Root of 3 (1.732) Why and When
- Calculation of Primary Amps
- Calculation of Secondary Amps
  - $\text{Primary KVA} = \text{Secondary KVA}$

# Ohio Certificate Renewal

(614) 451-9003

OhioCertificate.com

## Course Objectives

- Gain understanding of transformer fundamentals
- Gain understanding of multiple reasons for transformers
- Learn how and where transformers can be installed
- Learn methods of terminal connections
- Learn how and methods of grounding secondary system
- Learn distinction of when secondary is separately derived or not



# JD White

6048 Astor Avenue  
Columbus, OH 43232

614-546-7884  
jd.white2000@gmail.com

---

## Objective:

To provide timely and informative teaching relative to Electrical Theory, Electrical Practices, and NEC Updates. All teaching is primarily geared for licensed contractors, architects, engineers, electrical inspectors, and electrician apprentices. Electrical Design and Drafting of small to moderate sized projects, using AutoCAD.

## Work and Teaching

### Experience:

06/2007 - Present  
Columbus State Community College  
Title: Skilled Trades Apprenticeship Supervisor  
Supervisor: Doug House, 614-287-2576

01/2006 – Present  
Voltaire Electric Company, Inc. – Columbus, OH  
Electrical System Design and Drafting  
Title: Consultant 614-546-7884

06/2007 - Present  
Columbus State Community College  
Title: Adjunct Faculty Teaching:  
Electrical Courses, National Electric Code, Employability,  
Construction Overview, Construction Estimating,  
Manual Drafting, and AutoCAD  
Supervisor: Doug House, 614-287-2576

09/1999 – Present  
Electrician Apprenticeship Instructor  
Title: Year 1 – Year 4 Lead Instructor  
OCILB Instructor, as needed  
IEC Central Ohio 614-473-1050

10/2001 – Present  
OCILB Instructor, 1-2 seminars per year  
Ohio Contractor Training 614-203-1531

12/2008 – Present  
OCILB Instructor, 4 seminars per year  
Rebecca Warren Training 614-402-6551

# JD White

6048 Astor Avenue  
Columbus, OH 43232

614-546-7884  
jd.white2000@gmail.com

---

11/2017 – Present  
OCILB Instructor, 2-6 seminars per year  
HalfMoon Education Services 715-835-5900

10/2005 - 08/2006  
MG Abbott Electric Company – Columbus, OH  
Title: Commercial Electrician, Estimator, and ITS Coordinator  
Supervisor: Joe Abbott-President, 614-837-3614

07/1995 - 08/2005  
Just Dandy Electric Systems, Inc. – Columbus, OH  
Title: Owner, Electrician, Estimator, Project Designer...

08/1989 - 07/1995  
Safeway Electric Company, Inc. – Columbus, OH  
Title: Commercial Electrician, Commercial Division Manager  
Supervisor: Andy Untch, 614-443-7672

10/1987 - 08/1989  
Mansfield Wesleyan Church – Mansfield, OH  
Title: Senior Pastor  
Supervisor: Rev. Clyde Hanks-District Supervisor

09/1982 - 07/1987  
Delphos Wesleyan Church – Delphos, OH  
Title: Senior Pastor  
Supervisor: Walter Jefferies-District Supervisor

07/1976 - 09/1982  
MG Abbott Electric Company – Columbus, OH  
Title: Electrician, Field Supervisor  
Supervisor: Gene Abbott-Owner

07/1972 - 06/1974  
US Navy – Quonset Point-RI  
Title: ADJ (Aviation Machinist Mate Jet)  
Supervisor: Various

# JD White

6048 Astor Avenue  
Columbus, OH 43232

614-546-7884  
jd.white2000@gmail.com

---

## Licensure:

Electrical  
11/1990  
Cities of: Columbus, Elyria, Springfield, Youngstown, Toledo,  
Dayton, and others  
07/1992

Electrical State of Ohio  
02/1996  
State of Ohio #EL 14058

Fire Alarm Installer  
02/2003  
State of Ohio #54.25.3708

## Education:

06/2005 – 05/2015  
Columbus State Community College – Columbus, OH  
ATS Electrical System Architecture Designer

09/1982 - 05/1987  
Indiana Wesleyan University – Marion, IN  
Christian Ministries & Biblical Literature

06/1981 - 05/1982  
Columbus Technical Institute – Columbus, OH  
General Education Studies

06/1973  
GED Central High School, Columbus, OH

07/1972 - 08/1973  
Naval Aviation Technical Training Center  
Aviation A School Jet Engines – Memphis, TN  
Naval Aviation Technical Training Center  
Aviation B School Helicopters – Quonset Pt, RI  
Rating: Aviation Machinist Mate Jet

## References:

Joe Abbott - Previous Employer: 614-837-3614  
Barb Tipton – Present Employer: 614-473-1050  
Dr. Andy Rezin – Previous Supervisor: 614-551-8378  
Doug House – Present Supervisor: 614-287-2576  
**Other References Available Upon Request**

## Quizlets for Transformers 2023 NEC Article 450

These will be used to confirm engagement for online on-demand courses.

1. Which motion will induce voltage into the conductor?
  - a. A conductor passing through a magnetic field
  - b. A magnetic field passing over a conductor
  - c. Both a and b (correct answer)
  - d. None of the above
2. To adjust the voltage level of an alternator, you can either
  - a. Change the number of turns of conductor that are exposed to the revolving magnetic field (correct answer)
  - b. Change the composition of the conductor
  - c. Change the temperature of the conductor
  - d. Adjust the level of the magnetic force you subject the conductors to
  - e. None of the above
3. Between the primary and secondary coil is a
  - a. Series of polished rings
  - b. Magnetic coupler called the inductor (correct answer)
  - c. Several spacers
  - d. B and C
  - e. None of the above
4. The phase is
  - a. Where the relationship of primary to secondary is appreciated and calculated (correct answer)
  - b. The intensity of the applied magnetic field
  - c. The output voltage
  - d. none of the above
5. What are recommended locations for transformers?
  - a. In a sealed enclosure protected from air
  - b. Spaced from combustible materials such as walls at least 12"
  - c. Where they are protected from physical damage
  - d. Outdoors 6 inches off the ground
  - e. B and C (correct answer)
  - f. none of the above

# TRANSFORMERS

---

MORE THAN MEETS  
THE EYE!



2023 NEC Article 450

# TRANSFORMERS

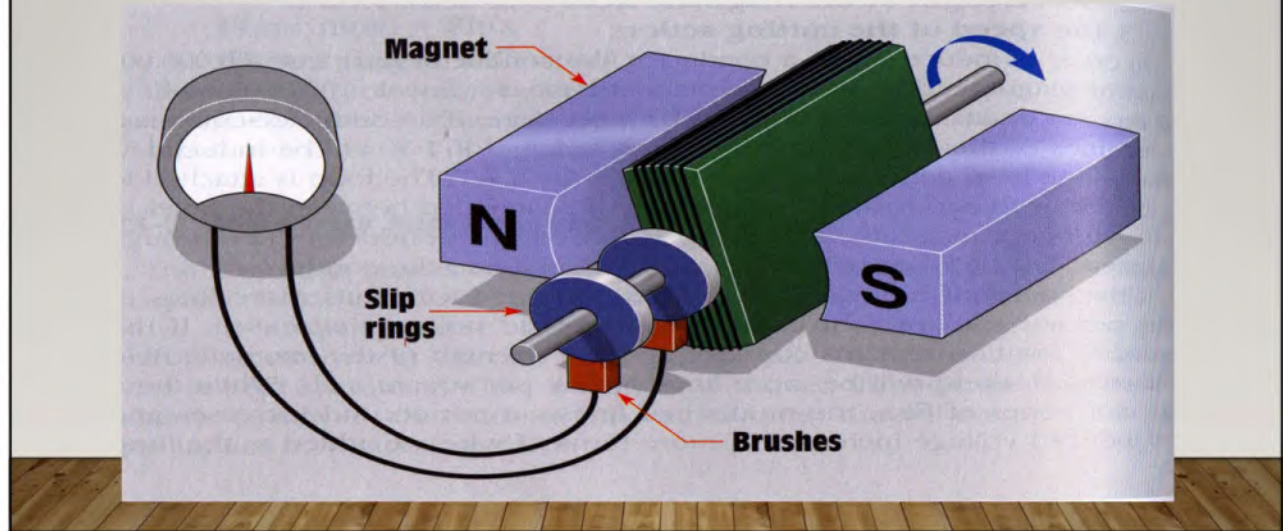
---

- Transformer Theory:
  - Know what's in the box, and how it works.
- Installation Locations:
  - Here, There, but not everywhere.
- Connections:
  - Knowing your H's and X's?
- Sizing Transformers:
  - Not to Big, and not to small.
- Calculations:
  - Making it all add up.



## UNDERSTANDING AC VOLTAGE

- To understand how transformers do what they do, and what makes it possible for them to function we must look at what AC Voltage is and what makes it so different from DC.



### Voltage generation:

A conductor can pass through a magnetic field, or a magnetic field can pass over a conductor. Either motions will induce a voltage into the conductor



---

This circular motion creates at least two attributes and modulus operandi of AC voltage.

1. A sine wave voltage output, where current tries to reduce the voltage level.
2. An expanding and collapsing magnetic field, where current increases the magnetic field.

---

To adjust the voltage level of an alternator, you can either change the number of turns of conductor that are exposed to the revolving magnetic field or you can adjust the level of magnetic force you subject the conductors to.

To adjust the frequency of the AC voltage produce you change the number of poles each phase has or you change the RPM.



## PART I: COMPONENTS OF TRANSFORMERS.

---

- The primary is always the coil which the source voltage is applied to the “H1, H2, and H3” terminals or leads.
- Current will be what causes a changing magnetic field (that is an expanding and collapsing magnetic field of flux) in the primary coil. This field of flux will have a circular or rotating motion and direction.

---

The secondary is always the coil which produces the induced voltage level, and is the terminal that loads are connected to.

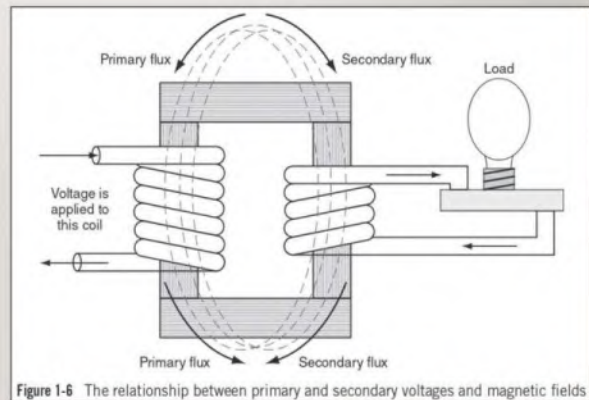
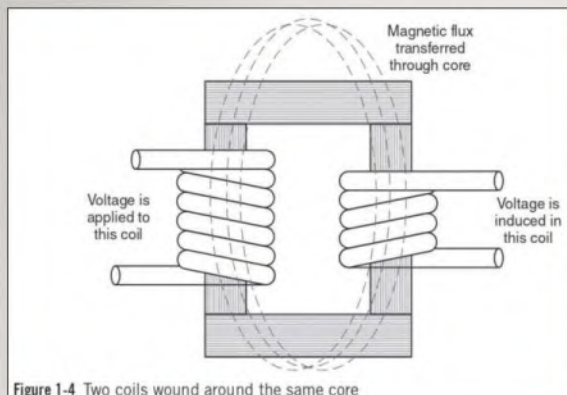
Between these primary and secondary coils is a magnetic coupler called the inductor, the function of the inductor is to transfer the rotating magnetic field of the primary onto the stationary coil of the secondary. There by inducing voltage into the secondary coil.

To aid in the magnetic coupling, the primary is wound around the secondary and both are wound around a laminated steel ferrous inductor.

What creates a difference of voltage between the primary and secondary is a relationship of number of turns of the conductor on both the primary winding and secondary winding.



## Primary and Secondary Windings





---

THIS RELATIONSHIP IS LOOKED AT AS A RATIO OF THE PRIMARY TO SECONDARY.

1:1 Both the primary and secondary have same voltage level.  
Primary and Secondary have same number of turns.

1:4 Secondary voltages are 4 times the primary voltage level.  
Primary has only 1 turn to each Secondary number of turns.

4:1 Primary voltage is 4 times the secondary voltage level.  
Primary has 4 turns to each Secondary 1 turn.

---

The phase is where the relationship of primary to secondary is appreciated and calculated.

It is often easy to look at the level of voltage and current of the line conductor and forget that the line levels only reflect the relationship of the individual phases.





---

Electricians need to understand what this ratio of primary : secondary is; for the purpose of understanding how voltage and amperage levels are affected.

Where the voltage level may be divided.  
The amperage level will be multiplied.

Where the voltage level may be multiplied.  
The amperage level will be divided.

Both: voltage and amperage will always be changed by the same ratio.

## PART 2: TRANSFORMER LOCATIONS

---

- Guard where subject to physical damage. NEC 450-8a
- Ventilated, transformers produce heat.
- Example of heat they produce, a 75KVA transformer is rated as 98% efficient that means 2% of 75,000 watts of heat are going to be put off at full load which is 1,500 watts of constant heat, heat that must be vented.

---

Spaced from walls must be at least 12" if wall is combustible, or greater if manufacture specifies so.

30" wide or width of transformer if greater than 30"

36" front access to terminal side of transformer and 42" front access if voltage is over 151V to ground.

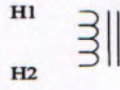
6'- 6" from floor to bottom of support, if elevated above other equipment.

In hollow space of structure as in a drop ceiling, where transformer is 50KVA or less. NEC 450-13b

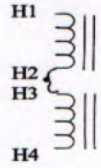
## PART 3: TRANSFORMER CONNECTIONS SINGLE PHASE

- The "H" terminals denote the primary coil/winding point of connection.
- The source voltage is always connected to the primary, whether you are transforming to decrease voltage or increase voltage. Primary is designed to apply the magnetic field of flux to the inductor.

Single phase connections.

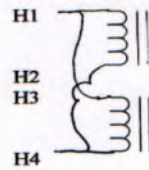


If dual voltage winding are provided on the primary:

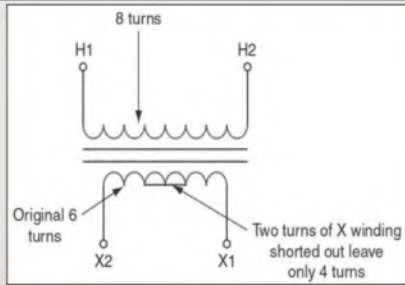


Higher of two listed Primary voltages.

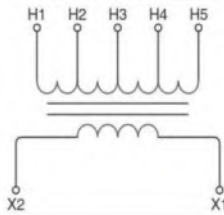
Or:



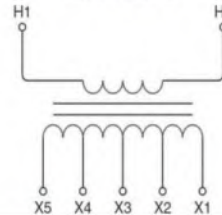
Lower of two listed Primary voltages.



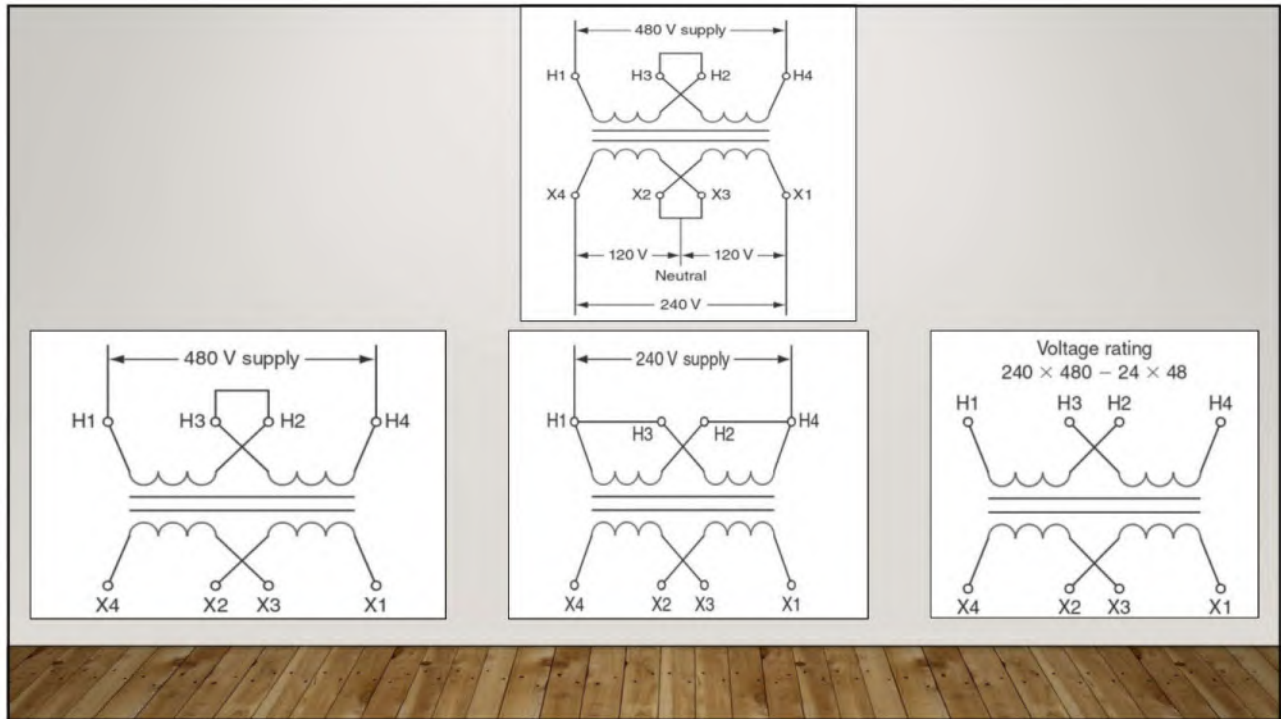
A transformer with a voltage rating of 120/208/240/277-120



A transformer with a voltage rating of 120-48/36/24/12





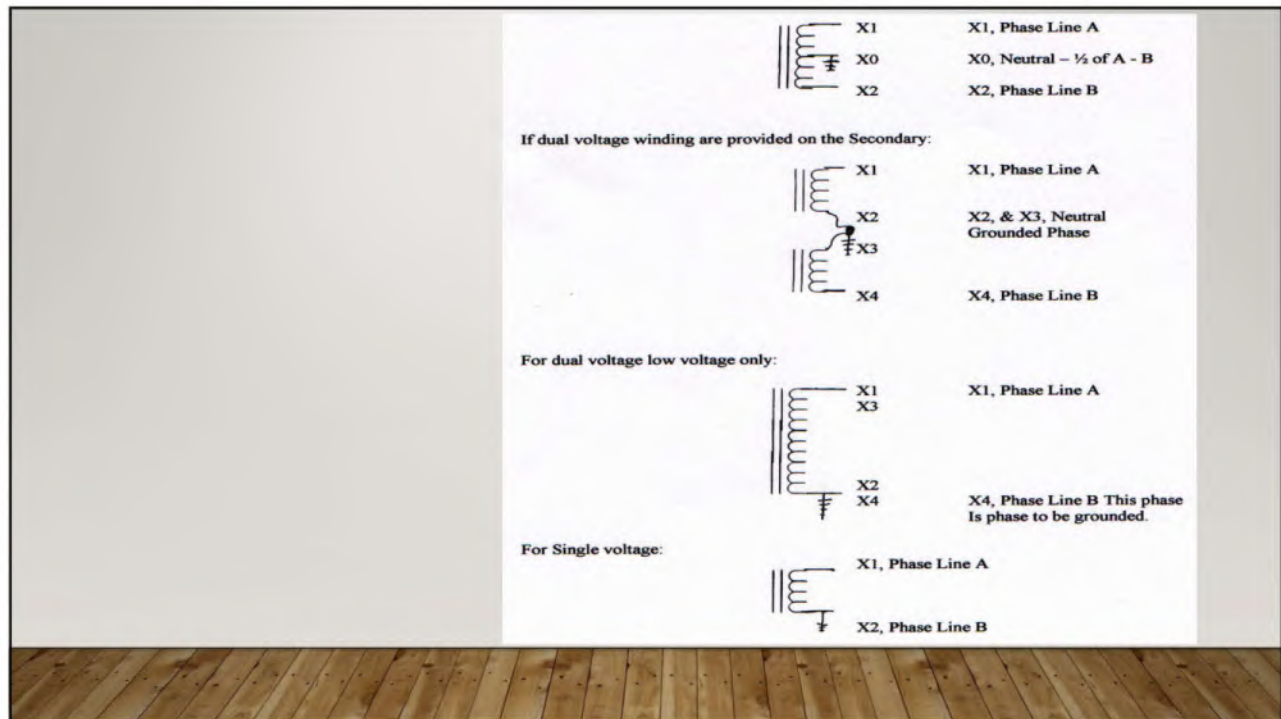


The “X” always denotes the secondary coil/winding terminals.

The secondary is where the induced voltage is.

It is here that loads of the voltage level sought are connected





## TRANSFORMER CONNECTIONS: THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS

### Three-Phase Advantages – Working Voltage

1. The horsepower rating of three-phase motors and the kVA rating of three-phase transformers are 150% greater than single-phase motors or transformers of similar frame size.
2. With Single Phase, apparent Voltage is Equal to Working Voltage ~ Work
3. With Three Phase, apparent Voltage is only 1.732 of the Working Voltage ~ Work
4. This is the reason 3Ph formulas use 1.732, which is the Square Root of 3.
5. Working of Voltage of 208=360V, 240=416V, 480=831V, & 600=1,039V
  - a) Important Note: 208V is a Wye System, and 240V is a Delta Systems
  - b) The way Volts and Amps are Calculated in these two systems is very different.

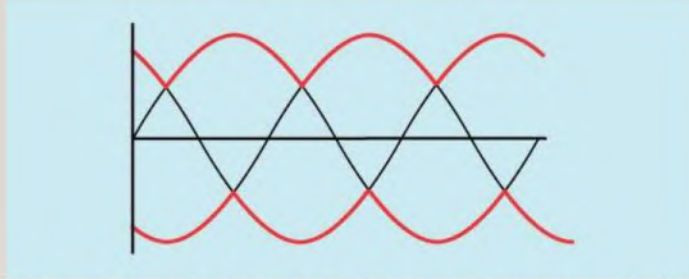


## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS

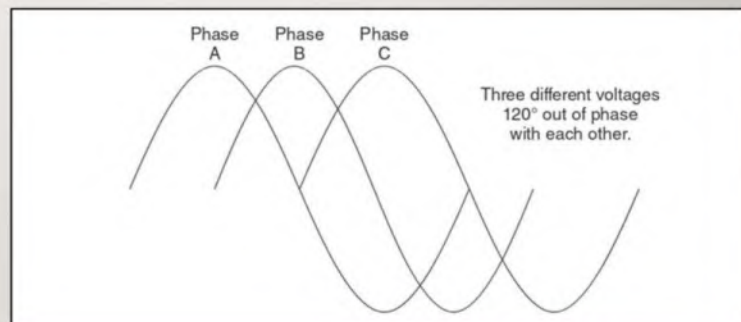
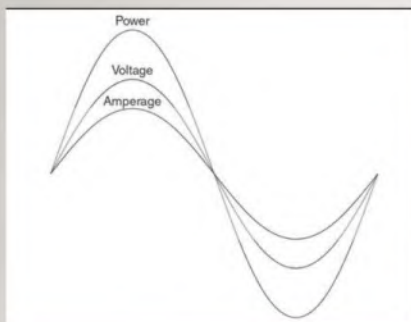
---

### Three-Phase Advantages- Voltage always Present

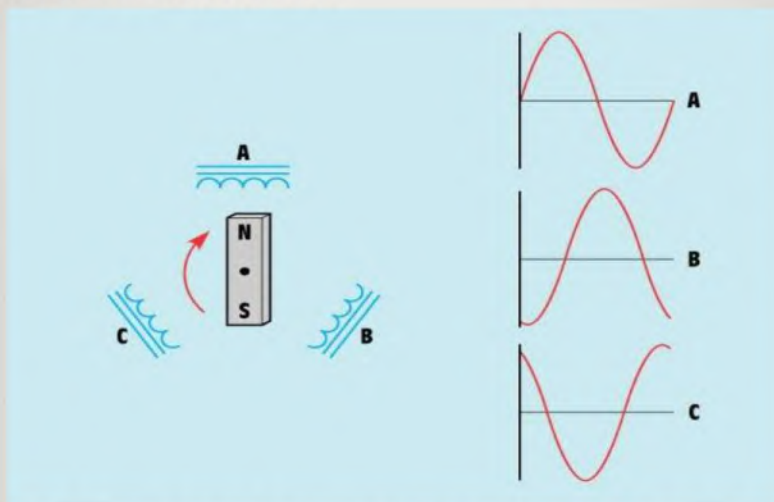
2. The power delivered by a single-phase system pulsates and falls to zero. The three-phase power never falls to zero. The power delivered to the load in a three-phase system is the same at any instant. This produces superior operating characteristics for three-phase motors.



**Three-phase power never falls to zero.**

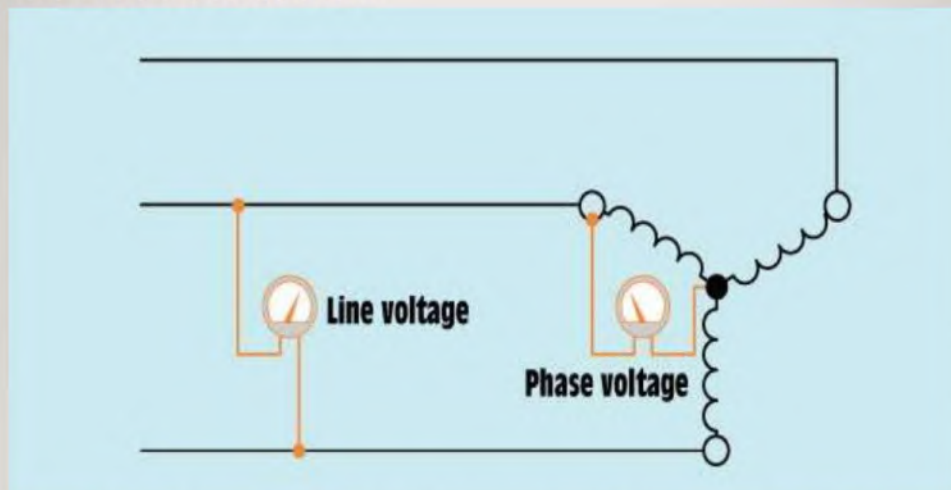


## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS



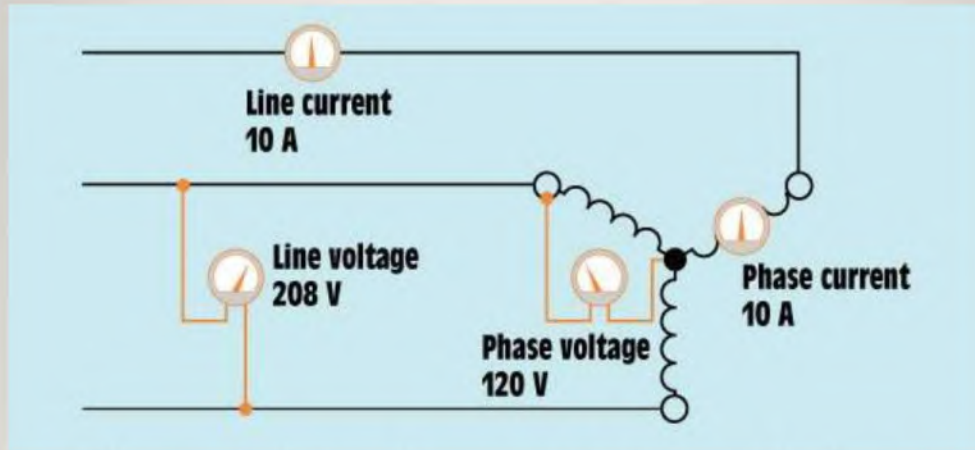
Three-phase voltages have 120 degrees of phase shift.

## WYE SYSTEM: VOLTAGES



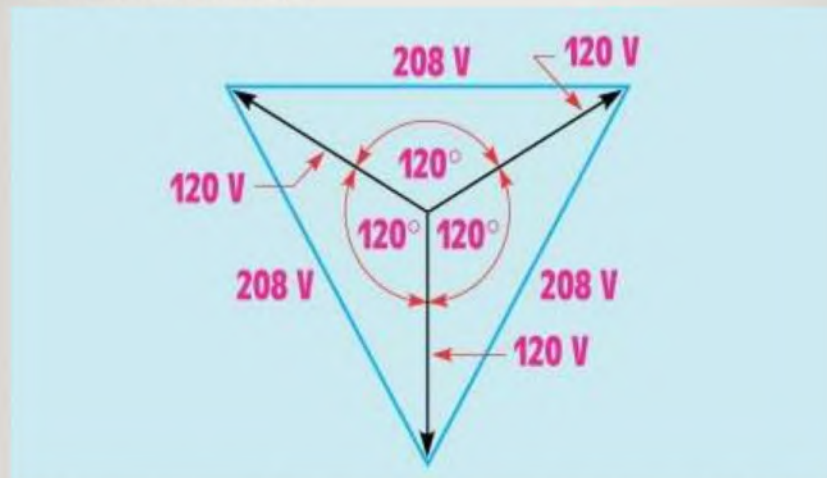
Line Volts is 1.732 of Phase volts in a wye System.

## WYE SYSTEMS: AMPERAGES & VOLTAGES



Line and phase Amperage in a wye System.

## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS



Vector sum of typical wye system voltages.

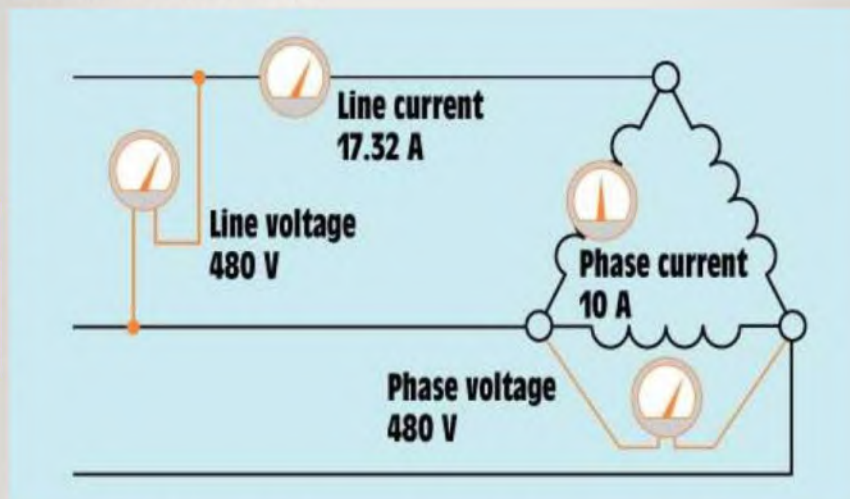


## THREE-PHASE: DELTA SYSTEMS

### Delta Connections

- In a Delta System, Line voltage is equal to the Phase voltage.
  - $E_{\text{Line}} = E_{\text{Phase}}$
- In a Delta System, Line Amperage is higher than the phase Amperage by a factor of the square root of 3 (1.732).
  - $I_{\text{Line}} = I_{\text{Phase}} \times 1.732$  or  $I_{\text{Phase}} = I_{\text{Line}} / 1.732$
  - A Key factor in Circuit/Feeder Calculations

## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS



Delta system voltage and current relationships.

## DELTA CIRCUIT CALCULATIONS

---

Example 20KW Heater Unit Calculation

Typical (Wye Calc)  $20,000W / 240 \times 1.732 = 48.11$  Amps  $\times 1.25 = 60A$   
310.16 #6CU, and 60A Breaker. Circuit will be Undersized.

Problem is Calculation was based on Phase Amps and not Line Amps

Needed:  $20,000W / 240 \times 1.732 = 48.11$  Phase Amps

Multiply by 1.732 = 83.11 Line Amps  $\times 1.25 = 104A$

310.16 #2CU, and 125A Breaker.

## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS

---

### Three-Phase Advantages – Amount of Conductor Needed

3. A three-phase system needs three conductors; however, each conductor is only 75% the size of the equivalent KVA rated single-phase system conductors.

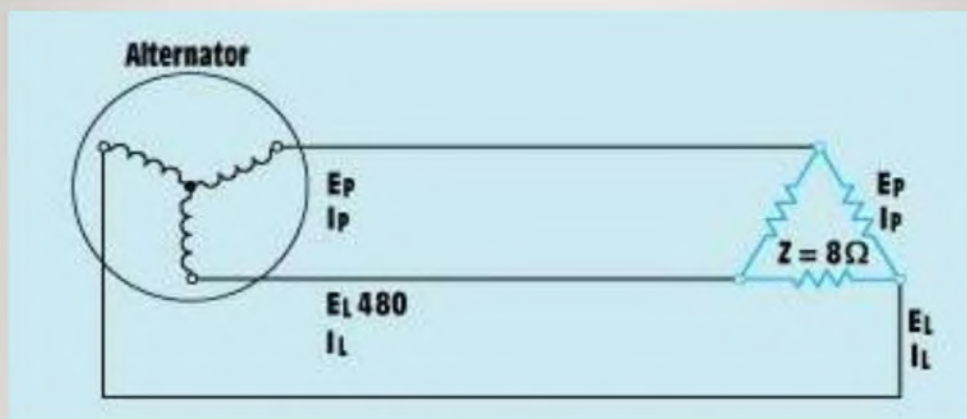


## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS

### Three-Phase Power

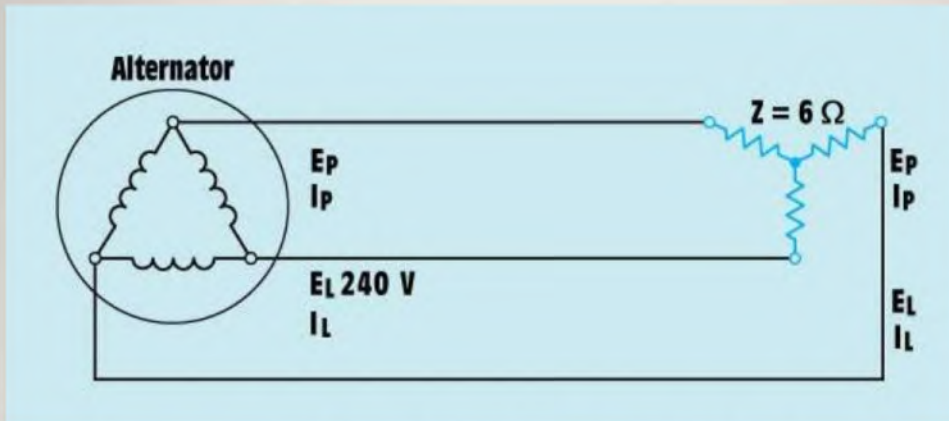
- Three-phase power can be computed in two ways, using line values or phase values.
- $VA = \sqrt{3} \times E_{Line} \times I_{Line}$
- $VA = 3 \times E_{Phase} \times I_{Phase}$
- This formula is the same for both: Wye or Delta circuits.
- The Line formula is best to use because you can always access the line for readings.

## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS



Example #1 given values.

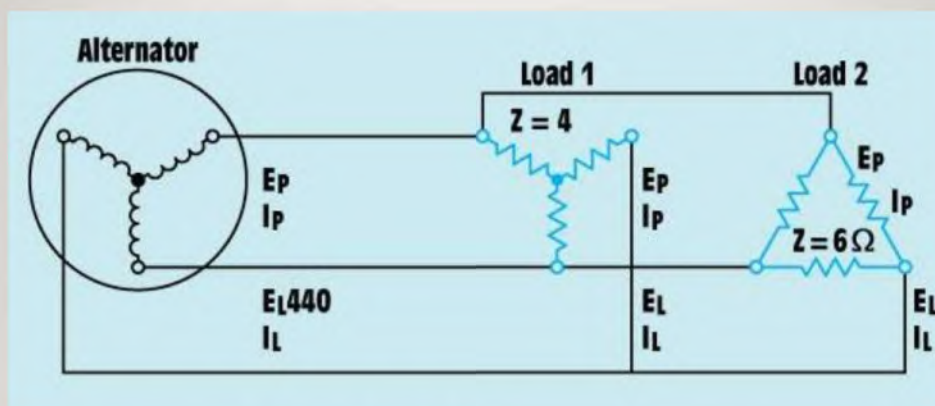
## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS



Example #2 given values.

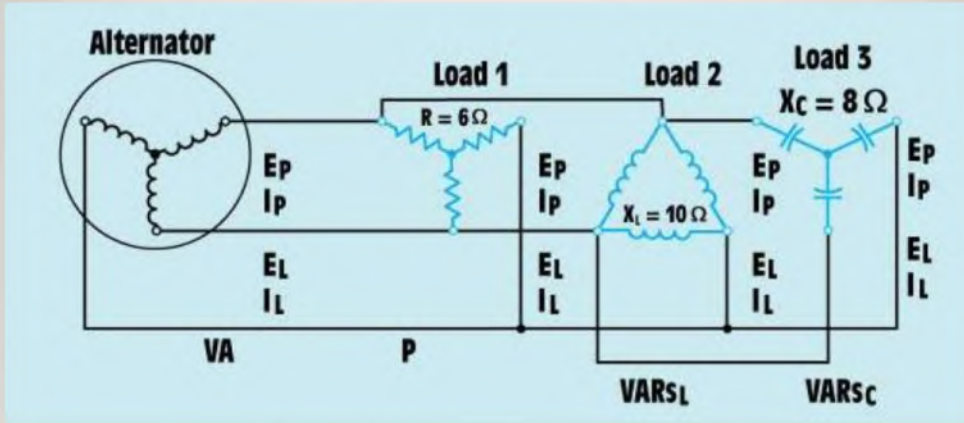


## THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS

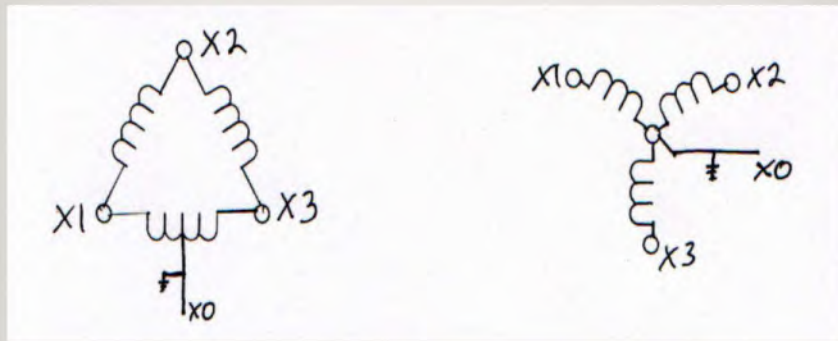


Example #3 given values.

# THREE-PHASE CIRCUITS



Example #4 given values.





---

Now let's determine the load amps by looking at the impedance of the load circuit, which we will determine to be 6 ohms.  $480V / 6 \text{ ohms} = 80 \text{ amps}$

the phase current is 80 amps and therefore, the line current is 138.56 amps.

$$80 \times 1.732 = 138.56$$



---

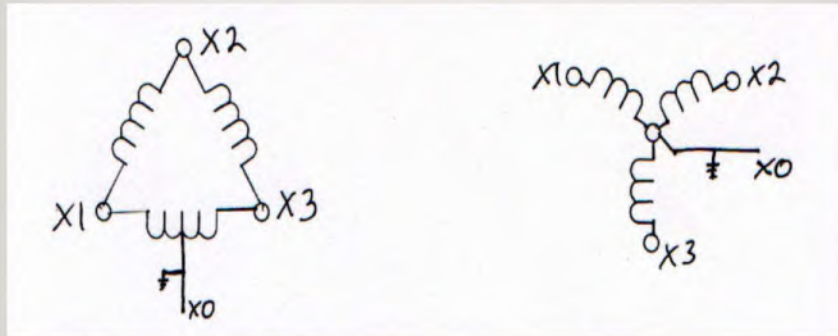
Second: WYE circuits, are shared series circuits.

Phase voltage is less than line voltage, it is line voltage / 1.732 the. Notice that phase current and line current are the same.

A WYE circuit can be the primary of a transformer, the secondary of a transformer, or the circuit within the equipment that we connect power to.

A WYE circuit does not require every item of the circuit be a WYE configuration.

WYE/delta configurations are very common.



Line voltage is 480V and therefore the phase voltage is 277 to determine this line voltage is / by 1.732 which equals 277V rounded.

Now lets determine the load amps by looking at the impedance of the load circuit, which we will determine to be 6 ohms.  
 $480V / 6 \text{ ohms} = 80 \text{ amps}$  .  
 the phase current is 80 amps and is also the line current 80 amps.



---

Note that the delta has the same voltage line and phase therefore the WYE can not.

Note that neither one has a same phase and line values, therefore if the line and phase value of the voltage is the same then the line and phase value of current are different.

Note that in both situations the phase value is the lesser by 1.732, when they are not the same.

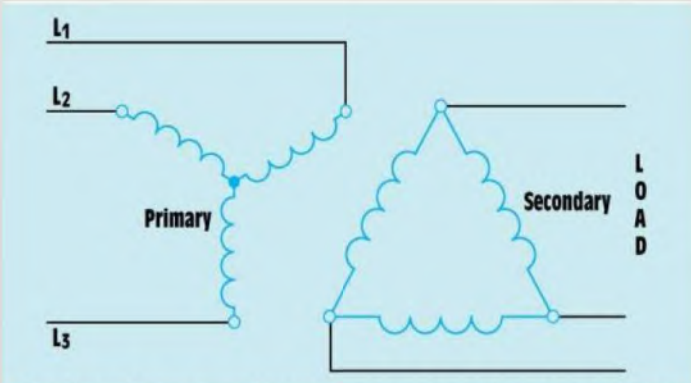


---

## TRANSFORMER CONNECTIONS THREE PHASE

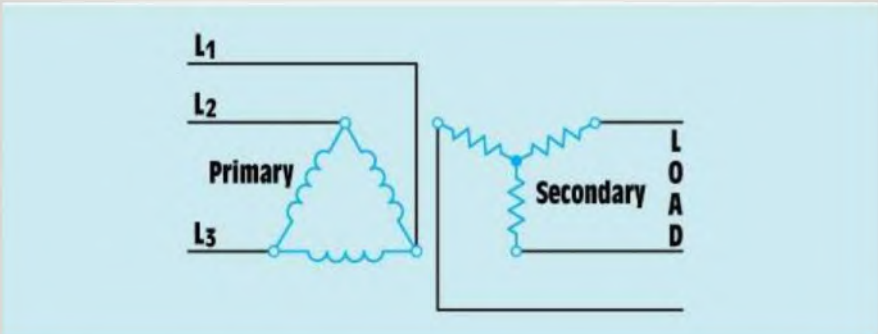
- Today, we enjoy transformer banks that are enclosed within 1 enclosure, and seldom do we look at the three phase transformer as a bank.
- However it is a bank of 3 single phase transformers, with 3 sets of primary coils wrapped around the secondary coils.
- Then to create the effect of a reactor (which enforces the  $120^\circ$  phase separation) they place these three sets of coils on one common inductor.

# THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS



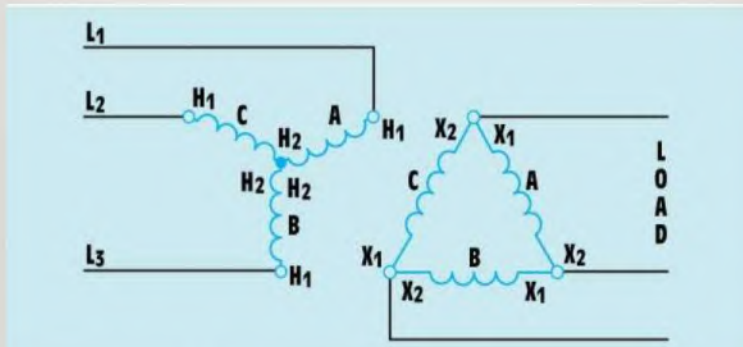
Wye-delta three-phase connection schematic.

# THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS



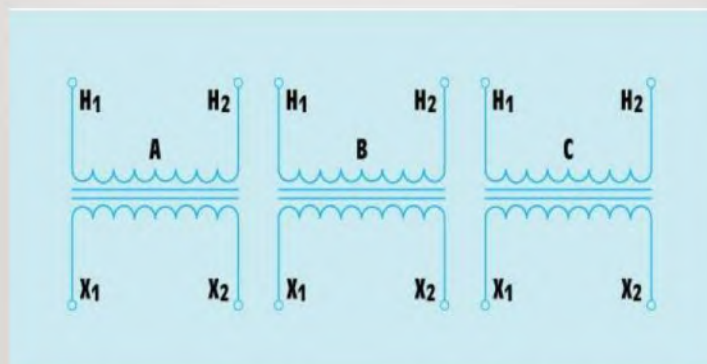
Delta-wye three-phase connection schematic.

# THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS



Winding identification.

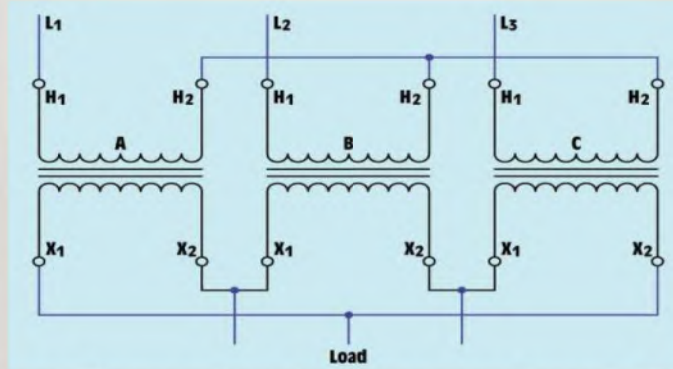
# THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS



Transformer bank without connections.

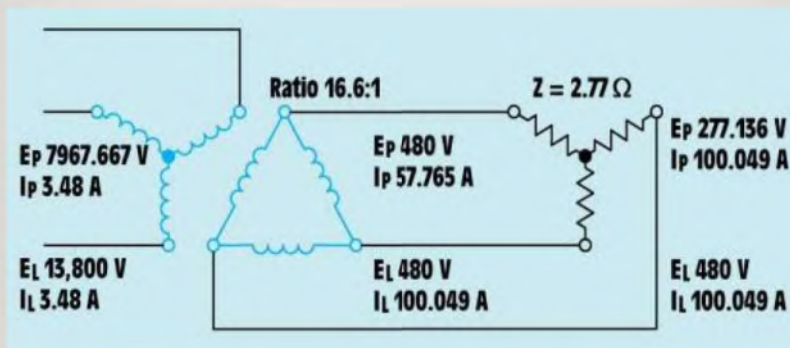


## THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS



Transformer bank connected wye-delta.

## THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS



Example #1 schematic with all values.

---

Primary connections are made to H1, H2, H3 terminals or leads.

This does not vary from a delta or a WYE circuit.

Secondary connections are made to X1, X2, X3, and XO. XO is only provided as a termination point on a 4 wire secondary.

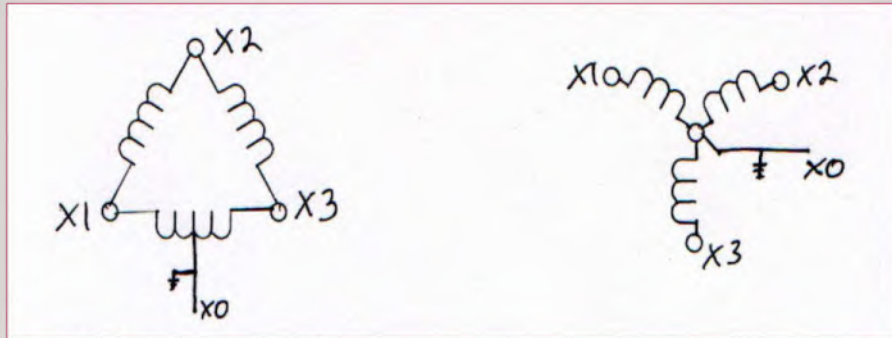


## TRANSFORMER CONNECTIONS NEUTRALS

---

- Where does the neutral come from? And do I need to install one from my source voltage?
- First the neutral is created by the secondary circuit connection.
- Second you do not want to install a neutral from the source it is of no use and will create bad "Karma".





## TRANSFORMER SECONDARY GROUNDING

---

- Grounding the secondary of isolation transformers is the only means by which you can ensure over current protection does its job if a fault from line to ground were to occur.
- Because the secondary is electrically isolated from the primary the induced voltage of the secondary does not recognize ground as a potential. It is this reason that the secondary must be tied to ground.

---

First rule of grounding the secondary, the neutral is always the grounded phase; but the grounded phase is not always the neutral.

To prevent a parallel path for faults, tie down at only one location, either at the transformer or at the secondary service disconnects.

The NEC does state one over the other however I've found one does make better sense than the other.

---

When best to ground at the transformer:

If the transformer is installed for the use of one piece of equipment and no service disconnect will be installed between the secondary and equipment, tie down at the transformer and install separate grounded phase and equipment ground conductors to the equipment.

---

When best to ground at the secondary service disconnect:

If the transformer is installed to feed a distribution panel that will have the service disconnecting means, then just as you would a utility provided power source ground there. That way all faults will be brought to the service disconnect and returned to the source via the grounded phase conductor.



## TRANSFORMER OVER CURRENT PROTECTION

---

- Primary OCP, you must know the KVA of the transformer to determine the full load amps.
- 3 Phase FLA =  $KVA * 1000 / (\text{Voltage} * 1.732)$
- 1 Phase FLA =  $KVA * 1000 / \text{Voltage}$



---

Most common transformer used to day is the 75KVA 480X120/208Y  
FLA= $75,000 / (480 \times 1.732)$  90.21Amps primary

If you only provide primary protection, it must be no greater than 125% of the 90.21 which is 112.76 amps or the next higher standard OCP rating which is 125 amps.

If you provide OCP for both the primary and secondary then the primary OCP is allowed to be 250% of primary FLA, 90.21Amps at 250% is 225.53 and 225 is a standard OCP rating. (The 0.53 may not be enough to sway the AHJ)

---

2. Secondary OCP, you must know the KVA of the transformer in order to determine the full load amps.

$$3 \text{ phase FLA} = \text{KVA} * 1000 / (\text{voltage} * 1.732)$$

$$1 \text{ phase FLA} = \text{KVA} * 1000 / \text{voltage}$$

---

Most common transformer used to day is the 75KVA 480X120/208Y  
FLA= $75,000 / (208 \times 1.732)$  208.19 amps secondary

If you provide secondary protection, it must be no greater than 125% of the 208.19 which is 260.24 amps or the next higher standard OCP rating which is 300 amps.

If the secondary OCP is a combination using the 6 switch rule which is allowed, note NEC 450-3b note #2. The aggregate of OCP can not exceed the maximum allowed for a single switch.

---

The reason 125% is used is because it is the reciprocal of 80%.  
80% is the maximum load that OCP can handle as a constant load without opening.

Transformers are 100% rated.





---

Secondary OCP locations:

1. The 10' rule.  
Conductors must be equal to or greater than computed loads.  
Conductors not allowed being less in ampacity than the OCP at termination.  
Conductors enclosed in a raceway.
2. The 25' rule.  
Conductors not allowed being less in ampacity than the FLA of the secondary.  
OCP must be a single device or the not to exceed 6 switches must be grouped.  
Conductors protected from physical damage.

---

## SECTION I: TRANSFORMER SIZING

---

- 1. Determine load that must be met by the transformer.
- Use the same calculations you would for determining the size of a service, if that service were going to be provided by a utility.

---

2. If grouping of service panels is allowed by the physical layout of the facility it is more efficient to have 1-150KVA transformer than to have 2-75KVA units. Also, you may determine as is often the case that the load that would normally be served by 2-75KVA units can actually be met by 1-112.5KVA unit.

---

3. Don't supply loads with a transformer that can be serviced by other available voltages and or phase configurations on site.

An example of this is having a 480/277Y, and using a 480X120/208Y transformer to provide 120V for lighting when that lighting could have been connected to the 277V available.

---

Presented by

JD White

jd.white2000@gmail.com

